LOCALIZATION IN
CLINICAL NEUROLOGY
SIXTH EDITION

Paul W. Brazis, MD
Professor of Neurology
Consultant in Neurology and Neuroophthalmology
Mayo Clinic—Jacksonville
Jacksonville, Florida

Joseph C. Masdeu, MD, PhD
Senior Staff Physician and Scientist
Section on Integrative Neuroimaging
National Institutes of Health
Bethesda, Maryland
Adjunct Professor of Neurology
New York Medical College
Valhalla, New York

José Biller, MD, FACP, FAAN, FAHA
Professor and Chairman
Department of Neurology
Loyola University Chicago
Stritch School of Medicine
Maywood, Illinois

UnitedVRG
Localization in clinical neurology / Paul W. Brazis, Joseph C. Masdeu, José Biller. – 6th ed.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

1. Nervous system--Diseases--Diagnosis. 2. Brain--Localization of functions. I. Masdeu, Joseph C. II. Biller, José. III. Title.

library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Care has been taken to confirm the accuracy of the information presented and to describe generally accepted practices. However, the authors, editors, and publisher are not responsible for errors or omissions or for any consequences from application of the information in this book and make no warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to the currency, completeness, or accuracy of the contents of the publication. Application of the information in a particular situation remains the professional responsibility of the practitioner.

The authors, editors, and publisher have exerted every effort to ensure that drug selection and dosage set forth in this text are in accordance with current recommendations and practice at the time of publication. However, in view of ongoing research, changes in government regulations, and the constant flow of information relating to drug therapy and drug reactions, the reader is urged to check the package insert for each drug for any change in indications and dosage and for added warnings and precautions. This is particularly important when the recommended agent is a new or infrequently employed drug.

Some drugs and medical devices presented in the publication have Food and Drug Administration (FDA) clearance for limited use in restricted research settings. It is the responsibility of the health care providers to ascertain the FDA status of each drug or device planned for use in their clinical practice.

To purchase additional copies of this book, call our customer service department at (800) 638-3050 or fax orders to (301) 223-2320. International customers should call (301) 223-2300.

Visit Lippincott Williams & Wilkins on the Internet: at LWW.com. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins customer service representatives are available from 8:30 am to 6 pm, EST.
This volume is dedicated to Drs. Frank Rubino and Sudhansu Chokroverty, who first taught us the skills and value of localization in clinical neurology.
This new edition of *Localization in Clinical Neurology* is again written for “frontline” clinicians who care for patients with neurologic disease processes and who are confronted with the “Where is it?” of neurologic disorders. This edition contains much updated information, some new charts on the differential diagnosis of clinical entities, and upgraded images to aid in neurologic localization, in addition to a new chapter on the localization of lesions of the autonomic nervous system. We hope that this volume may help in the clinician’s quest to diagnose patients with neurologic problems with greater accuracy and the least cost.

Dr. Brazis especially expresses his appreciation to his colleagues at the Mayo Clinics in Jacksonville, Scottsdale, and Rochester and expresses his gratitude to his teachers and friends: Drs. Neil Miller, Andrew G. Lee, Frank A. Rubino, Jonathan D. Trobe, James J. Corbett, James Bolling, and Michael Stewart.

Dr. Masdeu acknowledges the help of many colleagues and friends, too many to be mentioned by name, particularly at the New York Medical College, the Medical School of the University of Navarra, and the Section on Integrative Neuroimaging at the National Institutes of Health.

Dr. Biller is indebted to his colleagues at Loyola University Chicago, and foremost to his wife, Rhonda, his children, stepchildren, and his grandson, Selim, for their constant encouragement and unfailing patience.

*Paul W. Brazis*

*Joseph C. Masdeu*

*José Biller*
## Contents

**Preface** iv

1. **General Principles of Neurologic Localization** 1
2. **Peripheral Nerves** 25
3. **Cervical, Brachial, and Lumbosacral Plexi** 73
4. **Spinal Nerve and Root** 89
5. **Spinal Cord** 99
6. **Cranial Nerve I (The Olfactory Nerve)** 127
7. **Visual Pathways** 133
8. **The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System** 173
9. **Cranial Nerve V (The Trigeminal Nerve)** 305
10. **Cranial Nerve VII (The Facial Nerve)** 321
11. **Cranial Nerve VIII (The Vestibulocochlear Nerve)** 341
12. **Cranial Nerves IX and X (The Glossopharyngeal and Vagus Nerves)** 361
13. **Cranial Nerve XI (The Spinal Accessory Nerve)** 369
14. **Cranial Nerve XII (The Hypoglossal Nerve)** 377
15. **Brainstem** 385
16. **The Cerebellum** 403
17. **The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Hypothalamus and Pituitary Gland** 419
18. **The Anatomic Localization of Lesions in the Thalamus** 435
19. **Basal Ganglia** 455
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Cerebral Hemispheres</td>
<td>493</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Localization of Lesions in the Autonomic Nervous System</td>
<td>557</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Vascular Syndromes of the Forebrain, Brainstem, and Cerebellum</td>
<td>567</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>The Localization of Lesions Causing Coma</td>
<td>603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Index</td>
<td>631</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Introduction

Fittingly, a book on localization in clinical neurology should begin with a chapter explaining what the term localization means. Localization derives from the Latin term locus or site. Localization is the diagnostic exercise of determining from the signs (most often) or symptoms of the patient what site of the nervous system has been affected by a disease process. Important injury to the nervous system results in abnormal function, be it behavioral, motor, or sensory. Characteristics of the dysfunction often pave the way for a topographic (from the Greek term topos or place) diagnosis. Localization and topographic diagnosis refer to the same thing: the determination of where in the nervous system the damage has occurred.

Even in the age of sophisticated neurophysiology, neuroimaging, and molecular biology, the clinical diagnosis should precede the use of these other techniques if their full diagnostic potential is to be realized. Clinical localization has particular relevance to the adequate use of ancillary procedures. For instance, false-positive findings from “gunshot approach” neuroimaging can only be avoided by careful localization. As an example, congenital brain cysts, strikingly visible on imaging procedures, are often wrongly blamed for a variety of neurologic disorders, while the actual disease remains overlooked and untreated. The thoughtful use of ancillary procedures in neurology, guided by clinical localization, minimizes discomfort for patients and the waste of resources.

A Brief History of Localization: Aphasia as an Example

The history of localization is the history of early neurology, concerned with topographic diagnosis that would eventually lead to therapy. In few areas of neurology was the development of localization as interesting and so much at the center of famous controversies as it was in the case of aphasia. In fact, the oldest known document on neurologic localization concerns aphasia. It was recorded in an Egyptian papyrus from the Age of the Pyramids (about 3000–2500 BC), where an Egyptian surgeon described the behavior of an aphasic individual:

If thou examinest a man having a wound in his temple, penetrating to the bone, (and) perforating his temporal bone; . . . if thou ask of him concerning his malady and he speak not to thee; while copious tears fall from both his eyes, so that he thrusts his hand often to his face so that he may wipe both his eyes with the back of his hand . . . Edwin Smith surgical papyrus, Case 20, 2800 BC [12].

From the time of Hippocrates, in ancient Greece, it was documented that injury to the left part of the brain resulted in weakness of the right side of the body. However, paired organs in the body were thought to have identical functions. In the mid-19th century, Paul Broca (1824–1880) revolutionized the then current understanding of the functional organization of paired organs by describing lateralization of language to the left hemisphere [5,13]. He called aphemia the disorder that we now call Broca’s aphasia. In his 1865 paper, he wrote:

Now, this function of the intellectual order, which controls the dynamic element as well as the mechanical element of articulation, seems to be the nearly constant privilege of the left hemisphere convolutions, since lesions that result in aphemia are almost always localized in that hemisphere . . . That is tantamount to saying that we are left-brained with regard to language. Just as we control movements in writing, drawing, embroidering, etc, with the left hemisphere, so we speak with the left hemisphere.

Broca defined the inferior frontal gyrus as the area that, when injured, would lead to aphemia [13]. He also noted the variation in the expression of diverse lesions in the inferior frontal gyrus, characteristic of the plasticity found in cortical organization:

During the course of our study of brains of patients with aphemia, many times before, we had determined that the lesion of the third left frontal convolution was not always in direct relation to the intensity and the impairment of language. For example, we had observed that speech was completely wiped out as a result of a lesion with the size of 8 to 10 mm, whereas, in other cases, lesions that were tenfold more extensive had only partly impaired the capacity for articulate speech.

In the few years after Broca’s remarkable statements, knowledge about the localization of the
Current techniques, such as functional brain mapping, promise to clarify further the localization of mechanisms underlying neurologic dysfunction. For instance, conduction aphasia, initially described by Wernicke in 1874, has traditionally been associated with damage of the arcuate fasciculus, purportedly connecting Wernicke’s with Broca’s area. Recent neurophysiological and neuroimaging findings, obtained with the use of diffusion tensor imaging and other functional magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) techniques, are challenging this notion [6].

Clinical Diagnosis and Lesion Localization

Clinical diagnosis in neurology requires several steps:
1. Recognition of impaired function
2. Identification of what site of the nervous system has been affected, that is, localization
3. Definition of the most likely etiology, often resulting in a differential diagnostic list
4. Use of ancillary procedures to determine which of the different possible etiologies is present in the given patient
General Principles of Neurologic Localization

Each of these steps is important. The first one, recognition of impaired function, depends on a good history and neurologic examination. Only by storing the range of normal neurologic functions in their mind can physicians recognize an abnormal neurologic function. Inexperience or carelessness in examining a patient often results in overlooking a neurologic deficit and therefore missing a diagnosis. For instance, mild chorea may appear to the inexperienced as normal flicker of the eyes. The slow eye movements of a pontocerebellar disorder may pass completely unrecognized by someone who looks only for a full excursion of the eyes.

Abnormal neurologic findings come in the form of abnormal behavior, impaired posture or gait, difficulty with movements of the face or extremities, and, finally, sensory disturbances, including pain. Pain exemplifies well several of the difficulties physicians face when confronting possible neurologic dysfunction.

1. First, is the dysfunction real? Is the pain really there or is the patient trying to deceive? We have witnessed the plight of a paraplegic patient who had been repeatedly asked by health care personnel to stop pretending not to be able to move his legs. They had misinterpreted the triple flexion response witnessed when they pulled the sheets off the patient’s legs as evidence of volitional movement. Movement disorders, such as the dystonias, were frequently considered psychogenic in the past and have gradually emerged from this realm into a phase of general recognition of their “organicity.” Unless accompanied by clear psychiatric manifestations, neurologic symptoms or signs should be taken at face value.

2. Second, to what extent is the dysfunction pathologic, that is, indicative of injury serious enough to warrant a formal diagnostic workup? Many aches and pains do not reflect serious disease. Sending everyone with a “little pain” to a physician would hopelessly clog up the health care system. Interestingly, the child learns from falls and other minor injuries what to expect as “normal pain,” and when a person seeks medical attention for any symptom, the likelihood is that the problem is serious enough to warrant at least a thoughtful physical examination.

3. Third, is the dysfunction neurologic in origin? Is the pain due to injury of the affected body part or neurologic dysfunction? Is the dysfunction a manifestation of disease of the nervous system rather than of the organ mediating the function? Is the patient unable to walk because of arthritis or because the motor system is affected? All these questions find an answer when the physician recognizes patterns that belie neurologic impairment, for instance, in the case of pain, a characteristic radicular nature and distribution. In other cases, the neurologic examination may reveal other manifestations of unquestionable neurologic dysfunction. A patient with pain in the hand may also have atrophy of the muscles in the thenar eminence and a Tinel’s sign—pain on percussion of the median nerve at the wrist. Knowledge of localization tells us that the pain derives from injury of the median nerve at the point where the pain increases on percussion. What is needed to localize the lesion, in this case as in any other, is a good working knowledge of neuroanatomy.

Neuroanatomy is a key to localization. In this book, a synopsis of the anatomy of each structure of the nervous system precedes the discussion on localization of lesions of that structure. Neuroanatomy has two broad aspects: the morphology of the structure and its “functional representation.” Functional representation refers to the function mediated by a given structure of the nervous system. Damage to the structure alters the function mediated by this structure. For example, an injury to the oculomotor nerve results in mydriasis in the eye supplied by this nerve.

Neuroanatomy provides the road map for localization. Localizing is identifying the site of injury on the neuroanatomic map. As with any other map, we need either an address, with street name and number, or the intersection between two well-defined streets or roads. Injury expresses itself through neurologic dysfunction, be it behavioral, motor, or sensory. If we know what kind of dysfunction can result from injury of the different parts of the nervous system, we will be able to identify the source of the injury. Some types of dysfunction directly give us the address we are looking for. A combination of resting tremor, bradykinesia, and rigidity tells us that the substantia nigra of the patient has been injured. At other times, we use the approach of looking for the intersection between two streets. From some signs we deduce that a particular pathway must be affected. From others, we infer that a second pathway is affected as well. The injury must be in the place where these pathways meet. For instance, by the presence of left-sided hemiparesis we infer that the corticospinal tract has been affected. But the corticospinal tract can be affected at the level of the spinal cord, brainstem, or cerebral hemispheres. To precisely identify the location of damage we need to use other clues. If, in addition to the left-sided hemiparesis, we find a right third nerve palsy, we are well on our way to localizing the lesion. This well-known syndrome, named after Weber, typifies a general principle of localization: the lesion is where the two affected pathways cross. If the patient only had a third nerve palsy, the lesion could be anywhere between the
Localization in Clinical Neurology

fascicle of the nerve (in the brainstem) and the superior orbital foramen (in the orbit). The addition of a contralateral hemiparesis precisely defines that the lesion affects the crus cerebri on the same side of the third nerve palsy. This is where the corticospinal tract and the fibers of the third nerve meet. Neuroanatomy provides the roadmap for a correct assessment.

Localization tends to be more precise when the lesion affects the lower levels of the nervous system. When we localize lesions of the nervous system, it is helpful to think about the major syndromes that result from lesions at different functional and anatomic levels, from the muscle to the cortex. At the simplest level, injury to a muscle impairs the movement mediated by that muscle. One level higher, we find that injury to a peripheral nerve causes weakness of the muscles innervated by that nerve and sensory loss in its cutaneous distribution. Lesions in the spinal cord below the low cervical level cause weakness of one or both legs and sensory loss that often has a horizontal level in the trunk. Lesions in the cervical cord or brainstem typically cause weakness or sensory loss on one or both sides of the body, often more severe on one side, and findings characteristic of the level affected. For instance, lesions of the cervical cord may cause radicular pain or weakness affecting the arms or hands. Lesions of the lower pons give rise to gaze palsies or peripheral facial weakness. The localization of lesions in the cranial nerves (CNs) is fairly straightforward because they may affect a peripheral nerve or a neuroanatomic structure that is relatively simple, such as the visual pathways. As we ascend the neuraxis, the localization of lesions becomes less precise. Lesions in the cerebellum may cause ataxia. Lesions in the thalamus often, but not always, cause sensory loss and postural disorders, or memory loss. Lesions in the hemispheric white matter may give rise to weakness or visual field defects. Finally, lesions in the cortex manifest themselves by an array of motor, sensory, or behavioral findings that vary according to the area that has been injured.

Similarly, lesions of the lower levels tend to cause findings that change little over time, whereas lesions of the higher levels may be very “inconsistent” in the course of an examination. An ulnar nerve lesion may be responsible for atrophy of the first dorsal interosseous muscle. The atrophy diagnosed by the examiner will be consistent. By contrast, a patient with a Broca’s aphasia may have a great deal of difficulty repeating some words, but not others of apparently similar difficulty. The examiner may be puzzled and not know what to document: can the patient repeat or can she not? In this case, what should be noted is not whether the patient can do something, but whether she does it consistently in a normal way. Any difficulty repeating a sentence on the part of a native speaker of a language should be considered as abnormal. Higher neurologic function should be sampled enough to avoid missing a deficit that the more complex neural networks of higher levels can easily mask.

For the anatomic localization of lesions, the neurologic examination is much more important than the history. It must be noted that when we speak here about “examination,” we include the sensory findings reported by the patient during the examination. A complaint of pain or of numbness is usually as “objective” as a wrist drop. By tracking back the pathways that mediate the functions that we find are impaired in the neurologic examination, we can generally localize the site of the lesion, even without a history. The history, that is, the temporal evolution of the deficits witnessed in the neurologic examination, is important in defining the precise etiology. For instance, a left-sided hemiparesis is detected in the neurologic examination. If it occurred in a matter of minutes, cerebrovascular disease or epilepsy is most likely. If it evolved over a few days, we should think about an infection or demyelinating disease. If it developed insidiously, in a matter of months, a tumor or a degenerative process is more likely. In all of these cases, the localization is derived from the findings of the examination: we detect a left-sided hemiparesis. If we also find a right third nerve palsy and determine that it has appeared at the same time as the hemiparesis, we will emphasize the need for a careful look at the midbrain when we obtain an MRI. In this sense, the history is also important for localization: we may witness in the examination the end result of multiple lesions that affected the nervous system over time. In the previous example, if the third nerve palsy occurred when the patient was 10 years old and the hemiparesis appeared when he was in his sixties, the lesion responsible for the hemiparesis would probably not be in the midbrain.

Finally, there is the issue of discrete lesions versus system lesions. Much of the work on localization has been done on the basis of discrete lesions, such as an infarct affecting all the structures in the right side of the pons. Some types of pathologies tend to cause this type of lesion. Cerebrovascular disease is the most common, but demyelinating lesions, infections, trauma, and tumors also often behave like discrete, single, or multiple lesions. Other neurologic disorders affect arrays of neurons, often responsible for a functional system. Parkinson’s disease is an example. Here, the localization to the substantia nigra is simple. The localization of other degenerative disorders, such as the spinocerebellar degeneration of abetalipoproteinemia or vitamin E deficiency, is more complicated [56]. Here, the clinical syndrome
seems to point to the spinal cord, but the real damage is inflicted to the large neurons in the sensory nuclei of the medulla, dorsal root ganglia, and Betz cells. The puzzle is resolved when one realizes that the destruction of the corticospinal tract logically follows metabolic injury to the neurons that give rise to it. The larger neurons, with the longest axons reaching the lumbar segments, are affected first. The neuron may not die, but, incapable of keeping an active metabolism, it begins to retract its axon (dying-back phenomenon). Likewise, the lesion in the dorsal columns of the spinal cord (and peripheral nerve) simply reflects the damage inflicted to the larger sensory neurons by the lack of vitamin E. Therefore, a precise knowledge of the functional significance of the different structures of the neuraxis facilitates the localization of degenerative or system lesions as much as it helps with discrete lesions.

Having reviewed some general principles of localization in the nervous system, we will now review in more detail the principles of localization in the motor and sensory systems. Finally, we will review the localization of gait disorders.

**Localization of Lesions of the Motor System**

**Anatomy of the Motor System**

The motor neurons of the ventral horn of the spinal cord and the motor nuclei in the brainstem, whose axons synapse directly on striated muscles, are the “final common pathway” for muscle control. These large alpha (α) motor neurons supply the extrafusal fibers of the skeletal muscles providing the only axons to skeletal muscle. Scattered among the α motor neurons are many small gamma (γ) motor neurons, which supply the intrafusal fibers of the muscle spindles. These muscle spindles are the receptors for the muscle stretch reflexes. The motor neuron, together with its axon, and all the muscle fibers it supplies, is called the motor unit. The junction between the terminal branches of the axon and the muscle fiber is called the neuromuscular junction [23,49]. There is a somatotopic organization of the cell columns of anterior horn cells in the ventral gray horn of the spinal cord. Neurons that supply the axial muscles, including the neck muscles, are located in ventromedially placed columns; neurons that supply proximal muscles are situated in the midregion; and neurons supplying the musculature of the distal aspect of the limbs are located in laterally placed columns [23,49].

Motor neuronal cell groups receive input from the contralateral motor cortex (MC) through the descending corticospinal and corticobulbar tracts (Figs. 1.2A and B). The corticospinal tract contains on each side approximately 1 million fibers of various sizes, but only 3% of all the fibers originate from the giant pyramidal cells of Betz found in layer V in the primary MC. All corticospinal fibers are excitatory and appear to use glutamate as their neurotransmitter. The neurons from which the corticospinal and corticobulbar tracts arise are known as upper motor neurons [2,4,23,31,66]. The corticospinal pathway, which controls voluntary, discrete, highly skilled movements of the distal portion of the limbs, arises from somatotopically organized areas of the primary MC, lateral premotor cortex (PMC), and supplementary motor area (SMA). These fibers arise from both precentral (60%) and postcentral (40%) cortical areas. The corticospinal neurons are found primarily in Brodmann’s area 4 (40%), which occupies the posterior portion of the precentral gyrus (primary MC). The lateral PMC, on the lateral aspect of the frontal lobe, and the SMA, on its medial part, are located in Brodmann’s area 6 (20%). Corticospinal axons also arise from neurons in the primary sensory cortex in the postcentral gyrus (Brodmann’s areas 3, 1, and 2), particularly from area 3a, anterior paracentral gyri; superior parietal lobule (Brodmann’s areas 5 and 7); and portions of the cingulate gyrus on the medial surface of the hemisphere. Fibers of the corticospinal system descend in the corona radiata, the posterior limb of the internal capsule, the middle three-fifths of the cerebral peduncle, the basis pontis (where the tract is broken into many bundles by the transverse pontocerebellar fibers), and the medullary pyramids.

In the caudal end of the medulla, nearly 75% to 90% of the corticospinal fibers in the pyramid cross the ventral midline (pyramidal decussation or Mistichelli crossing) before gathering on the opposite side of the spinal cord as the lateral corticospinal tract. In the posterior limb of the internal capsule, the corticospinal tract is organized somatotopically, with hand fibers lateral and slightly anterior to foot fibers [32]. The corticospinal fibers also follow a somatotopic organization in the pons. Fibers controlling the proximal muscles are placed more dorsal than those controlling the more distal muscle groups. Because of the ventral location of the pyramidal tract in the pons, a pure motor hemiparesis of brainstem origin is usually observed with pontine lesions. Unilateral motor deficits may predominantly involve the upper or lower limb, but a difference in the pontine lesion location among these patterns of weakness distribution is not observed [43]. There is also a somatotopic organization of the corticospinal fibers within the medullary pyramids, with fibers of the lower extremities placed more laterally and decussating more rostrally than those of the upper extremities [24]. The remaining fibers that do not decussate in
Localization in Clinical Neurology

A simplified diagram of the motor system. A: Corticospinal tract. (continued)
the medulla descend in the ipsilateral ventral funiculus as the ventral or anterior corticospinal tract (Türck’s bundle). Most of these fibers ultimately decussate at lower spinal cord levels as they further descend in the anterior column of the spinal cord.

Therefore, only approximately 2% of the descending corticospinal fibers remain truly ipsilateral, forming the bundle of Barnes [2]. These ipsilateral descending projections control the axial musculature of the trunk and proximal limbs.
8 Localization in Clinical Neurology

The corticobulbar fibers, originating in the lower third of the cortical motor fields, especially the MC and SMA, descend in the genu of the internal capsule, the medial part of the cerebral peduncle, and the basis pontis, where they are intermixed with corticospinal fibers. The corticobulbar pathway has bilateral input to the nuclei of the trigeminal and hypoglossal CNs, as well as the facial nucleus supplying the upper facial muscles. Traditional localization concepts postulate that ventral brainstem lesions rostral to the lower pons result in contralateral central facial paresis, whereas lesions of the lower dorsolateral pons result in ipsilateral facial paresis of the peripheral type. However, an aberrant fiber bundle branching off the main pyramidal tract at the midbrain and upper pons, along the tegmentum in a paralemniscal position, has been described. Therefore, whereas the muscles of the lower face receive predominantly crossed corticobulbar input, the muscles of the upper face are represented in the ipsilateral, as well as the contralateral, hemisphere, with transcranial magnetic stimulation (TMS) studies showing that the amount of uncrossed pyramidal projections are no different from the muscles of the upper than those of the lower face [21,61]. TMS studies in patients with and without central facial paresis due to brainstem lesions have also shown that a supranuclear facial paresis may be contralateral to a lesion of the cerebral peduncle, pontine base, aberrant bundle or ventral medulla, or ipsilateral to a lateral medullary lesion [64].

The ventral part of the facial nucleus, innervating the lower two-thirds of the face, has a predominantly crossed supranuclear control. This schema of supranuclear facial muscle control holds true for voluntary facial movements. Emotional involuntary movements and voluntary facial movements may be clinically dissociated, and therefore, a separate supranuclear pathway for the control of involuntary movements probably exists. A prevailing view is that the SMA and/or cingulate motor areas are critical for emotional facial innervation [35]. Fibers mediating emotional facial movements do not descend in the internal capsule in their course to the facial motor nuclei. The right cerebral hemisphere is also involved in supranuclear emotional facial movement control and is “dominant” for the expression of facial emotion [10]. Furthermore, some of the facial corticobulbar fibers seem to descend ipsilaterally before making a loop as low as the medulla and decussating and ascending to the contralateral facial nucleus (located dorsolaterally in the caudal pons) that innervates the perioral facial musculature [17,62]. This anatomic understanding explains the emotional facial paresis of pontine origin resulting from the involvement of the dorsal lateral pontine area [33].

Within the MC, corticospinal neurons are somatotopically organized in patterns that reflect their functional importance (motor homunculus). The size of the cortical representation in the motor homunculus varies with the functional importance of the part represented; therefore, the lips, jaw, thumb, and index finger have a large representation, whereas the forehead, trunk, and proximal portions of the limbs have a small one. As an example, isolated hand weakness of cortical origin may present with loss of thumb and finger movements and impaired hand flexion and extension or with partial involvement of a few digits (pseudoradicular pattern). This cortical motor hand area has been localized in the middle to lower portion of the anterior wall of the central sulcus (Brodmann’s area 4), adjacent to the primary sensory cortex of the hand (Brodmann’s areas 3a and 3b) [60]. Neurons in the medial aspect of the MC and the anterior paracentral gyrus influence motor neurons innervating the muscles of the foot, leg, and thigh. Neurons in the medial two-thirds of the precentral gyrus influence motor neurons innervating the upper extremity and trunk. Neurons in the ventrolateral part of the precentral gyrus contribute to the corticobulbar tract and project to motor nuclei of the trigeminal (CN V), facial (CN VII), glossopharyngeal (CN IX), vagus (CN X), accessory (CN XI), and hypoglossal (CN XII) nerves to influence the cranio–facial–oral musculature [4,31]. As an example, each hypoglossal nucleus receives impulses from both sides of the cerebral cortex, except for the genioglossus muscle that has probably crossed unilateral innervation. Therefore, a lingual paresis may occur with lesions at different anatomic levels including the medulla, hypoglossal foramen, cervical (neck) region, anterior operculum, and posterior limb of the internal capsule [26].

Sensory cortical pathways (e.g., thalamocortical connections), corticofugal projections to reticulospinal and vestibulospinal tracts, direct corticospinal projections to the spinal cord, and projections to the basal ganglia and cerebellum have an active role in the planning and execution of movements. The cerebellum and basal ganglia are critically important for motor function [2,4,66]. The cerebellum has a major role in the coordination of movements and control of equilibrium and muscle tone. The cerebellum controls the ipsilateral limbs through connections with the spinal cord, brainstem, and contralateral MC through the thalamus. A corticofugal pathway of major clinical importance is the corticopontine pathway, which arises primarily from the precentral and postcentral gyri, with substantial contributions from the PMC, SMA, and posterior parietal cortices, and few from the prefrontal and temporal cortices. These fibers descend in the anterior limb of the internal
capule and the medial fifth of the cerebral peduncle before reaching the basis pontis, where they project to pontine nuclei. Second-order neurons from pontine nuclei cross to the contralateral basis pontis and give rise to the pontocerebellar pathway.

The basal ganglia play a major role in the control of posture and movement and participate in motor planning through reciprocal connections with ipsilateral MC. The corticostriate pathway includes direct and indirect projections from the cerebral cortex to the striatum. Corticostriate projections arise mainly from motor–sensory cortex (Brodmann’s areas 4 and 3, 1, and 2), PMC (Brodmann’s area 6), and frontal eye fields (Brodmann’s area 8). Direct corticostriate projections reach the striatum through the internal and external capsules and the subcallosal fasciculus. The indirect pathways include the cortico–thalamo–striate pathway, collaterals of the corticothalamo pathway, and collaterals of the corticopontine pathway. All parts of the cerebral cortex give rise to efferent fibers to the caudate and putamen. Cortical association areas project mainly to the caudate nucleus, whereas sensorimotor areas project preferentially to the putamen. These corticostriate projections mainly terminate ipsilaterally in a topographic pattern (e.g., the frontal cortex projects fibers to the ventral head of the caudate and rostral putamen). The cortex also sends fibers to the substantia nigra, subthalamic nucleus, and claustrum.

Another corticofugal tract of major clinical importance is the corticothalamic pathway. This pathway arises from cortical areas receiving thalamic projections and, therefore, serves as a feedback mechanism from the cortex to the thalamic nuclei. Except for the reticular nucleus of the thalamus, examples of such reciprocal connections include the anterior nucleus and the posterior cingulate cortex, the ventral lateral nucleus and the MC, the ventral anterior nucleus and the SMA, the ventral posterior nucleus and the primary sensory cortex, the lateral geniculate body and the primary visual cortex, the medial geniculate body and the primary auditory cortex, and the dorsomedial nucleus and the prefrontal cortex. Corticothalamic fibers descend in various parts of the internal capsule and enter the thalamus in a bundle known as the thalamic radiation.

Additional corticofugal tracts include the corticoreticular pathway, which arises from one cerebral hemisphere, descends in the genu of the internal capsule, and projects to both sides of the brainstem reticular formation, and the highly integrated corticohypothalamic tract, which arises from the prefrontal cortex, cingulate gyrus, amygdala, olfactory cortex, hippocampus, and septal area. Corticofugal areas from the frontal eye fields (Brodmann’s area 8) and the middle frontal gyrus (Brodmann’s area 46) project to the superior colliculus and centers in the brainstem reticular formation that influence the motor nuclei of the oculomotor (CN III), trochlear (CN IV), and abducens (CN VI) nerves.

The internal capsule, a compact lamina of white matter, contains afferent and efferent nerve fibers passing to and from the brainstem to the cerebral hemispheres, that is, continuous rostrally with the corona radiata and caudally with the cerebral peduncles. Located medially between the caudate nucleus and the thalamus, and laterally in the lenticular nucleus (globus pallidus and putamen), in a horizontal (Flechsig) section, the internal capsule is somewhat curved with its convexity inward. The prominence of the curve (genu) projects between the caudate nucleus and the thalamus. The portion in front of the genu is called the anterior limb, which measures approximately 2 cm in length and separates the lenticular nucleus from the caudate nucleus (lenticulocaudate segment of the internal capsule). The portion behind the genu is the posterior limb, which measures 3 to 4 cm in length and separates the lenticular nucleus from the thalamus (lenticothalamatic segment). The internal capsule extends further to include sublenticular and retrolenticular segments.

The anterior limb of the internal capsule contains frontopontine fibers, and thalamocortical and corticothalamic fibers (reciprocally connecting the frontal lobe to the thalamus), as well as caudatoputaminal fibers. Corticobulbar fibers, and perhaps motor corticopontine fibers, occupy the genu of the internal capsule. This fiber arrangement explains the facial and lingual hemiparesis with mild limb involvement observed in the causal genu syndrome. In the caudal half of the posterior limb of the internal capsule, the corticospinal bundle is somatotopically organized in such a way that the fibers to the upper extremity are located more anteriorly (i.e., shoulder, elbow, wrist, and fingers), followed by fibers to the trunk and then by the fibers to the lower extremity (i.e., hip, knee, ankle, toes), bladder, and rectum. As the corticospinal tract descends through the internal capsule, its fibers intermix with other fiber systems including corticobulbar, corticoreticular, and corticopontine fibers. Corticobulbar, corticothalamic, and thalamocortical fibers (carrying sensory tracts from the thalamus to the parietal lobes) are also located dorsal to the corticospinal fibers, in the posterior limb of the internal capsule. Finally, the sublenticular segment of the internal capsule contains the auditory and visual radiations, while the retrolenticular segment contains the visual radiations of Gratiolet’s radiating fibers and corticocerebral, corticostriatal, and corticotozentical fibers. The anterior limb of the internal capsule receives its vascular supply from the
focused neurologic examination; the answer to the last question requires detailed history and investigations. Lesions in the descending motor system can be located in the cerebral cortex, internal capsule, brainstem (cerebral peduncles, pons, medulla oblongata), or spinal cord. Cortical lesions leading to spasticity involve the primary motor and premotor cortical areas. Although the upper motor neuron type of paralysis is often referred to as pyramidal syndrome, lesions accounting for this clinical picture involve more than the pyramidal tract, and therefore, the usage of this term is to be discouraged. Lesions of the lower motor neurons can be located in the cells of the ventral gray column of the spinal cord or brainstem or in the axons of these neurons. The upper motor neuron syndrome may follow head or spinal cord injury, perinatal brain injuries, stroke, demyelinating diseases such as multiple sclerosis, or motor neuron diseases such as amyotrophic lateral sclerosis or primary lateral sclerosis. Although the upper motor neuron type of paralysis is often referred to as pyramidal syndrome, lesions accounting for this clinical picture involve more than the pyramidal tract, and therefore, the usage of this term is to be discouraged. Lesions of the lower motor neurons can be located in the cells of the ventral gray column of the spinal cord or brainstem or in the axons of these neurons.

Motor Signs and Symptoms and Their Localization

Patients with motor deficits may present with plegia or paresis. Plegia denotes complete paralysis; paresis denotes a lesser degree of weakness. However, in daily clinical parlance, the word paralysis is often used for both complete and partial loss of motor function. Muscle strength testing is graded according to the Medical Research Council’s scale for muscle power (Table 1.1), which has a good interobserver reliability. Normal grading means that the muscle is capable of holding the test position against strong pressure. Grade 4 is often subdivided into 4-, 4, and 4+ to indicate movement against slight, moderate, and strong resistance, respectively. Common patterns of weakness include monoplegia (single limb weakness), hemiplegia (loss of motor function down one side of the body), paraplegia (bilateral loss of lower limb motor function), quadriplegia or tetraplegia (loss of motor function in all four extremities), brachial diplegia (loss of motor function of both upper extremities), or facial diplegia (loss of motor function of both halves of the face). Other patterns seen in children include double hemiplegia, characterized by severe spasticity in all four extremities, which is more severe in the arms than in the legs, and cerebral diplegia, where the spastic paralysis usually affects all four extremities and involves the legs more than the arms.

When examining patients affected with any of these patterns of weakness, one should have three fundamental questions in mind: (a) where is the lesion? (b) Is the lesion focal, multifocal, or diffuse? and (c) What is the likely underlying cause? The first and second questions are answered by performing a focused neurologic examination; the answer to the last question requires detailed history and investigations.

Lesions in the descending motor system can be located in the cerebral cortex, internal capsule, brainstem (cerebral peduncles, pons, medulla oblongata), or spinal cord. Cortical lesions leading to spasticity involve the primary motor and premotor cortical areas. Although the upper motor neuron type of paralysis is often referred to as pyramidal syndrome, lesions accounting for this clinical picture involve more than the pyramidal tract, and therefore, the usage of this term is to be discouraged. Lesions of the lower motor neurons can be located in the cells of the ventral gray column of the spinal cord or brainstem or in the axons of these neurons.

The upper motor neuron syndrome may follow head or spinal cord injury, perinatal brain injuries, stroke, demyelinating diseases such as multiple sclerosis, or motor neuron diseases such as amyotrophic lateral sclerosis or primary lateral sclerosis. The clinical presentation of the upper motor neuron syndrome following cortical lesions is somewhat different from that of spinal cord lesions. Likewise, there may be subtle differences between incomplete and complete spinal cord lesions [57]. In general, spasticity is less severe with cerebral lesions than with spinal cord lesions. Damage to the upper motor neurons results in muscles that are initially weak and flaccid but eventually become spastic and exhibit hypertonia and hyperactivity of the stretch reflexes (hyperreflexia). Muscle stretch reflexes consist of a monosynaptic arc with large-diameter afferent (sensory) nerve fiber input from muscle spindle fibers and large-diameter efferent (motor) nerve fiber output from α motor neuron fibers. Clonus, characterized by a series of rhythmic contraction and relaxation of a group of muscles, is best seen at the ankle. Spasticity, a motor component of the upper motor neuron syndrome, is best characterized by a velocity-dependent increase in tonic stretch reflexes [39]. Spasticity predominates in anti-gravity muscles (flexors of the upper extremities and extensors of the lower extremities). Evaluation of muscle tone shows variable degree of resistance to passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scale</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>No muscle contraction visible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Flicker or trace of contraction, but no movement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Active joint movement when effect of gravity is eliminated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Active movement against gravity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Active movement against gravity and resistance, but weaker than normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Normal power</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

artery of Heubner, a branch of the anterior cerebral artery; the genu and the middle and inferior part of the posterior limb receive their blood supply from the anterior choroidal artery; while the superior aspect of the anterior and posterior limb of the internal capsule receives their blood supply from the lenticulostriate arteries, branches of the middle cerebral artery.
movements with changes in speed and direction of passive motion and a *clasp-knife character*; in other words, greater resistance is felt with faster stretches. Weakness of the muscles of the upper extremity is most marked in the deltoid, triceps, wrist extensors, and finger extensors; this predilection for involvement of the extensors and supinators explains the pronation and flexion tendencies of the upper limb. In cases of spastic hemiparesis, the affected arm is adducted at the shoulder, and flexed at the wrist and fingers. Weakness of the muscles of the lower extremity is most marked in hip flexors, knee flexors, foot dorsiflexors, and foot evertors.

Different anatomic substrates may underlie hyperreflexia and spasticity; likewise, spasticity must be clearly separated from flexor spasms (see subsequent text). As an example, corticospinal lesions in the cerebral peduncle do not result in spasticity, and lesions confined to the medullary pyramid may cause weakness and hyperreflexia without spasticity [58]. The upper motor neuron syndrome is associated with the presence of pathologic reflexes and signs, such as the extensor plantar reflex or Babinski’s sign, a disinhibited flexion withdrawal reflex, characterized by dorsiflexion (extension) of the big toe often accompanied by a spreading movement of the other toes (*“signe de l’eventail”). However, such response is to be considered normal until the age of 1 year. Furthermore, severe flexor or less-common extensor muscle spasms may also occur in response to a variety of nociceptive or nonnociceptive sensory stimuli, or may develop spontaneously. Flexor spasms, resembling the flexor withdrawal reflex, often consist of flexion of the hip, knee, and ankle, whereas extensor spasms often involve the extensors of the hip and knee with plantar flexion and ankle inversion. Unlike cerebral lesions, spinal cord lesions are often associated with marked flexor spasms, except for incomplete or high spinal cord lesions that usually have a dominant extensor tone. Severe flexor spasms may also be accompanied by bladder and, occasionally, fecal incontinence. Other manifestations (negative features) seen with the upper motor neuron syndrome include muscle weakness, muscle slowness, impaired dexterity, and fatigability. In addition, patients with severe spasticity may exhibit muscle deformities, contractures, and associated reactions including synkinesias [11].

Finally, the superficial reflexes (e.g., abdominal reflexes, cremasteric reflex, etc.) are absent on the affected side. With lesions above the pyramidal decussation, the previously discussed signs are detected on the opposite side of the body; with lesions occurring below the pyramidal decussation, these signs are observed ipsilaterally.

When the *lower motor neurons* or their axons are damaged, the innervated muscles will show some combination of the following signs: weakness or paralysis of the involved muscles, flaccidity, hypotonia, diminished or absent muscle stretch reflexes (hyporeflexia or areflexia), and eventually atrophy. In the spinal muscular atrophies, weakness and amyotrophy predominate in the proximal segments of the limbs, but distal, fascioscapulohumeral, scapulohumeral, and segmental forms are well known [19]. Some patterns of discrete muscle atrophy have localizing value, as is the case of early neuropathic compromise, with involvement of the first dorsal interosseus of the hand and the extensor digitorum brevis in the feet. Fasciculations, which are visible twitches of small groups of muscle fibers, may be present. No pathologic reflexes are elicited.

The *topographic diagnosis of a hemiplegia* requires a structured approach to patient evaluation on the basis of localization and a basic understanding of applied neuroanatomy. When a patient presents with hemiplegia or hemiparesis, it is important to determine whether the lower half of the face is involved with relative sparing of upper facial function. Then, one must determine whether the hemiparesis is proportionate or disproportionate (e.g., similar degree of muscle weakness of the upper and lower limbs). A careful search for neighboring signs or symptoms, such as ipsilateral hemisensory deficit, aphasia, homonymous hemianopia, anosognosia, side-gait, or history of partial motor or somato-sensory seizures could greatly assist with localization and in distinguishing organic from psychogenic hemiplegia.

Facial weakness can be of the upper or the lower motor neuron type. Muscles of the upper facial portion, which have bilateral cortical innervation, are not affected in supranuclear lesions, or at least not to the same extent as to the lower facial musculature. Thus, if there is facial weakness of the upper motor neuron type (involvement of the lower half of the face with relative sparing of muscles of the upper part of the face such as the frontalis and orbicularis oculi) on the same side of the hemiplegia, the lesion is generally localizable above the upper pons; likely sites are the MC, corona radiata, or internal capsule. However, a lesion on the cerebral peduncles and upper pons can also cause a hemiplegia or hemiparesis with an associated upper motor neuron type of facial paresis. If the hemiparesis is disproportionate, that is, the face and arm are characteristically more severely affected than the leg (e.g., faciobrachial predominance), the lesion is often corticospinal and laterally placed on the contralateral hemisphere. If the leg is more severely affected than the arm and face (e.g., crural predominance of the hemiparesis), the lesion most likely involves the contralateral paracentral region. In cases of internal capsule lesions, the hemiplegia is often proportionate, with equal involvement of the face and
upper and lower limbs. Internal capsular lesions usually cause a pure motor hemiplegia; other locations of lesions causing a pure motor hemiplegia include the basis pontis, the cerebral peduncle, and the medullary pyramid. Capsular lesions may rarely cause a facio-brachial or facial predominant type of hemiplegia. Infarctions in the territory of the anterior choroidal artery result in hemiparesis because of the involvement of the pyramidal tract in the posterior limb of the internal capsule, hemisensory loss due to involvement of the superior thalamic radiations situated in the thalamogeniculate segment of the posterior limb of the internal capsule, and hemianopia secondary to the involvement of the optic tract, the lateral geniculate body, the optic radiations, or combination of these (see Chapter 21). In cases of alternating hemiplegia, there are “crossed” signs, with CN involvement ipsilateral to the lesion and hemiparesis or hemiplegia contralateral to the lesion. This type of crossed syndrome points to a brainstem lesion (see Chapter 15). For example, a lesion at the level of the cerebral peduncle may damage the pyramidal fibers and the fascicle of CN III, causing an ipsilateral ocu- lomotor paresis with pupillary involvement and a contralateral hemiparesis including the lower portion of the face (Weber’s syndrome). Likewise, the presence of purposeful movements of the hand associated with rest, postural and a vigorous kinetic tremor (rubral tremor), would localize the lesion near the red nucleus in the midbrain.

In psychogenic hemiplegia, the lower half of the face ipsilateral to the hemiplegia is not involved. The protruded tongue, if it deviates at all, deviates toward the normal side [36]. The abdominal, plantar, and muscle stretch reflexes are always normal. The hand is not preferentially affected as in organic hemiplegia. The side-gait (patient is asked to move sideways along a straight line) is as a rule equally impaired in both directions alike [8,50].

If the patient presents with *paraparesis* or *paraplegia*, the lesion can be located in the cerebrum (e.g., parasagittal meningioma) or cervical or thoracic spinal cord, or may be peripheral (e.g., Guillain–Barré syndrome and bilateral lumbarplexopathies). In patients presenting with *quadriparesis* or *quadriplegia*, the lowest level of central nervous system pathology is in the high cervical cord (quadriparesis can also be due to diffuse peripheral problems). Examination of the muscle stretch reflexes can be used to find the lowest point at which the spinal cord pathology can be located. In a spinal cord lesion, the muscle stretch reflexes are lost at the level of the lesion and increased below this level. As an example, compression of the lower cervical spinal cord causes lower motor neuron signs at the corresponding segmental level and upper motor neuron signs below the lesion (e.g., spastic paraplegia).

With C5 spinal cord segment lesions, the biceps reflex (segments C5–C6) and the brachioradialis reflex (segments C5–C6) are absent or diminished, whereas the triceps reflex (segments C7–C8) and the finger flexor reflex (segments C8–T1) are exaggerated (see Chapter 3). Occasionally, percussion of a tendon accounts for unexpected results. Inverted or paradoxical reflexes resulting from combined spinal cord and root (e.g., radiculomyelopathy) pathology show contractions opposite of what may be expected. As an example, with a C5–C6 lesion, when the biceps tendon is tapped, there is no biceps jerk, but the triceps contract (inverted biceps reflex).

Single limb weakness may be due to an upper motor neuron lesion (e.g., anterior cerebral artery territory infarction and paracentral lobule mass lesion) or an extraduillary spinal cord lesion (e.g., Brown-Séquard syndrome, where there is ipsilateral lower motor neuron paralysis in the segment of the lesion, ipsilateral spastic paralysis below the level of the lesion due to interruption of the descending corticospinal tract, ipsilateral loss of proprioceptive function below the level of the lesion due to interruption of ascending fibers in the posterior column, and contralateral loss of pain and temperature due to interruption of the crossed spinothalamic tract). However, when patients present with an isolated monoplegia and no involvement, even minor, of the other limb or the face, a lower motor neuron type of syndrome, attributable to a root, plexus, or nerve lesion, must always be considered.

A wide range of conditions can affect the motor unit. Lesions of the lower motor neuron may involve the motor neurons, roots, plexus, peripheral nerves, neuromuscular junction, and muscle and are discussed in detail in subsequent chapters. Muscle weakness, atrophy, fasciculations, and exaggerated muscle stretch reflexes suggest motor neuron disease (e.g., amyotrophic lateral sclerosis). Diseases of the peripheral nervous system may affect motor, sensory, or autonomic neurons. Absent reflexes are indicative of dysfunction of large-diameter sensory fibers. However, the patient’s age must be taken into consideration because muscle stretch reflexes diminish with advanced age. As an example, an absent Achilles reflex after age of 80 may be a normal finding [15]. Generalized distal weakness is likely to be due to a peripheral neuropathy, although proximal weakness occurs in some cases and can imitate myopathy. Severe unilateral pain made worse with movement of the arm, minor sensory loss, weakness more proximal than distal, and atrophy of muscles innervated by the upper trunk of the brachial plexus suggest a diagnosis of *Parsonage–Turner syndrome* or neuralgic amyotrophy. Generalized proximal weakness is likely to be due to a myopathy or neuromuscular junction
disorder. Fluctuating weakness with a predilection for the extraocular muscles and proximal limb muscles, worse with exercise and better with rest, is the hallmark of myasthenia gravis. Symmetric upper and lower girdle muscle involvement associated with muscle pain and dysphagia is often seen in patients with idiopathic inflammatory myopathies. Asymmetric distal (e.g., foot extensors and finger flexors) and proximal (e.g., quadriceps) weakness may be a clue to the diagnosis of inclusion body myositis. Delayed relaxation of skeletal muscle following voluntary contraction is present in myotonic disorders. Episodic attacks of flaccid limb muscle weakness, with sparing of ocular and respiratory muscles, are characteristic of periodic paralysis. Pseudohypertrophy of the calves is seen in most boys with Duchenne’s muscular dystrophy. The Gowers’ maneuver, resulting from weakness in the proximal hip muscles, may be observed, with affected patients using their hands to rise from the ground. Other early features include hyperlordosis of the lumbar spine and a waddling wide-based gait and toe walking.

The Localization of Sensory Abnormalities

Anatomy of the Sensory System

The peripheral sensory unit consists of the sensory receptor (each with a characteristic modality and receptive field), its contiguous axon, the cell body in the dorsal root ganglion, the dorsal root, and its receptive field (each with a characteristic modality and receptive field), its contiguous axon, the cell body in the dorsal horn or dorsal column neurons (depending on the specific sensory system) [14]. Cutaneous sensory afferent fibers are histologically divided into C-type (small, thinly myelinated), A-δ (small, thinly myelinated), and Aα/β (myelinated).

The somatosensory pathways are illustrated in Figure 1.3. Small lateral group fibers (conveying pain, temperature, and soft touch) enter the spinal cord and dichotomize into collaterals, which ascend and descend one or two levels before synapsing in the dorsal horn. The secondary sensory neurons decussate in the anterior commissure of the spinal cord and then ascend in the contralateral anterolateral funiculi as the spinothalamic tracts. Within the spinothalamic tract, the fibers mediating sensation of pain and temperature appear to occupy the dorsolateral part of the anterolateral funiculus and those conveying the sensation of touch are found in the ventromedial part. The fibers in the spinothalamic tract are somatotopically arranged. At cervical levels, fibers from sacral segments are found most superficially followed by fibers originating at successively more rostral levels. Intraparenchymal lesions of the cord may therefore cause a loss of sensation of pain, temperature, and soft touch below the level of cord damage but with sparing of sacral sensation (i.e., “sacral sparing”). The somatotopic arrangement is maintained during the further course of the spinothalamic tract in the medulla, pons, and midbrain, with the tract ending in the thalamus, predominantly in the ventral-posterior–lateral (VPL) nucleus, the posterior complex, and parts of the intralaminar nucleus.

Large medial group sensory fibers (conveying proprioception, vibratory sensation, deep pressure, and soft touch) enter the white matter closely medial to the dorsal horn and ascend in the posterior column of the spinal cord ipsilateral to their corresponding nerve root and ganglion cells. These fibers give off few collaterals and terminate in the nucleus gracilis and cuneatus in the caudal medulla oblongata. During their ascending course, nerve fibers in the dorsal columns are steadily pushed more medially because fibers entering at succeeding rostral levels intrude between the ascending fibers and the dorsal horn. Therefore, fibers occupying the most medial part of the medial funiculus gracilis in the upper cervical region will belong to the sacral dorsal roots, and then follow the fibers from the lumbar dorsal roots (i.e., the fibers from the lower extremity are found more medially in the dorsal columns). Fibers belonging to the upper extremity are found more laterally in the funiculus cuneatus, close to the dorsal horn, with fibers from the upper cervical roots found more laterally than those from lower cervical roots. Of the thoracic fibers, approximately the lower six occupy the lateral part of the funiculus gracilis; the upper six occupy the medial part of the funiculus cuneatus. The ascending fibers of the dorsal columns are therefore somatotopically organized [14].

The axons of the cells of the nuclei gracilis and cuneatus form the medial lemniscus, which crosses the midline in the medulla. The segmental somatotopic organization present in the dorsal columns and their nuclei are maintained in the median lemniscus [40]. In the medulla, the fibers of the medial lemniscus, after crossing, occupy a triangular area dorsal to the pyramidal tract. Here, fibers from the gracile nucleus are situated ventrolaterally and those from the cuneate nucleus dorsomedially. This same arrangement is maintained in the pons. Further along the tract, a certain rotation takes place, so that fibers that were originally ventrolateral occupy the lateral position, whereas the originally dorsomedial fibers from the cuneate nucleus are found medially. In this order, the fibers enter the VPL nucleus of the thalamus.

The pathways for joint position sense and vibration sense are probably more complicated than the
scheme provided in the preceding text suggests (Fig. 1.4) [28]. Gilman reviewed the anatomic organization of joint sense and vibration sensation and noted that proprioception consists of the sense of position and movement of the limbs and body in the absence of vision [28]. Proprioception includes two components: the sense of stationary position of the limbs (limb position sense) and the sense of limb movement (kinesthesia). Each of these components can be tested individually. The primary afferent fibers innervating muscle spindles provide the principal receptors for both of these aspects of proprioception. Afferent fibers mediating proprioception enter the dorsal horn of the spinal cord and many of these afferents synapse with second-order neurons in deeper layers of the dorsal horn. Second-order neurons then ascend through the ipsilateral dorsolateral funiculus to synapse in the lateral cervical nucleus (LCN) located in the two upper cervical cord segments, immediately ventral to the dorsal horn. Post-synaptic neurons then project across the midline to the dorsal horn. Post-synaptic afferents then project across the midline and join the dorsal horn. Some proprioceptive afferents project directly into the dorsal columns and ascend the cord, terminating in the dorsal column nuclei. The dorsal columns (cuneate and gracile fascicles), however, mediate only the discrimination of frequency and duration of repetitive tactile stimuli. Most fibers conveying proprioception from the trunk and upper limbs that enter the cuneate fasciculus run their full length up to the medulla in this structure. In contrast, most fibers conveying proprioception from the lower limbs depart from the gracile fasciculus in the upper lumbar cord and terminate on the neurons of Clarke’s column; these neurons project to nucleus Z in the medulla, and neurons from this nucleus project to the medial lemniscus with fibers from the cuneate nucleus. The fibers remaining in the gracile fascicle principally contain these conveying tactile sensation. Afferents from the dorsal columns synapse in the dorsal column nuclei of the medulla. Axons from the gracile and cuneate nuclei form the medial lemniscus, which crosses the midline and receives fibers from the LCN and nucleus Z. The medial lemniscus ascends in the brainstem to terminate in the VPL nucleus of the thalamus.

Vibration sense is mediated by different receptors from proprioception [28]. These receptors include Merkel disk receptors and Meissner's corpuscles. Fibers mediating vibration enter the cord and bifurcate, with one branch terminating on neurons in the deeper layers of the dorsal horn and others entering the dorsal columns. Second-order neurons from the dorsal horn ascend through the ipsilateral dorsolateral funiculus, terminating on neurons in the LCN, which in turn projects fibers across the cord midline to ascend and join the medial lemniscus in the medulla. Other dorsal root collaterals enter the dorsal columns and ascend ipsilaterally, terminating in the dorsal column nuclei. Further projections from these pathways are the same as those conveying proprioception, although fibers for vibration and proprioception terminate in separate distributions within the thalamus and cerebral cortex.

From the thalamus, the sensory impulses are conveyed mainly to the somatosensory areas of the cerebral cortex (e.g., the postcentral gyrus). Within the somatosensory cortex, there is a somatotopic organization. For example, in the postcentral gyrus, the calf and foot are represented on the medial surface of the hemisphere, followed by the thigh, abdomen, thorax, shoulder, arm, forearm, hand, digits, and face. Therefore, a parasagittal lesion may cause sensory changes confined to the lower limb.

**Sensory Signs and Symptoms and Their Localization**

Sensory symptoms may be positive or negative. Positive symptoms include *paresthesias*, which are spontaneous sensations occurring without stimulation. *Hyperesthesia* refers to exaggerated sensation, *dysesthesia* to altered sensation, *allodynia* to a painful response to nonnoxious stimulation, and *hyperpathia* to exaggerated sensation to a painful stimulus. Hypesthesia is decrease in sensation, whereas anesthesia is complete loss of sensation; both may occasionally be associated with pain (*anesthesia dolorosa*). Proprioceptive impairment may cause ataxia and pseudoathetosis.

The localization of lesions affecting the somatosensory pathways is outlined in Table 1.2.

**Localization of Postural and Gait Disorders**

Both the sensory and motor systems play a crucial role in the maintenance of a stable stance, or posture, and in the mediation of gait. It is however worth summarizing separately the localization of disorders of posture and gait because they are frequent and require a slightly different approach. Posture and gait are complex functions that require input from the nervous system but can also be altered by the disorders of non-neurologic structures, including the muscles and joints. Often clinical bias tends to favor a nonneurologic diagnosis when the problem is actually in the neural control of gait or posture. Although initiated and modified voluntarily, both functions run largely in the background. For instance, when concentrating on getting something from the refrigerator, a person pays no attention to the complex movements of the
legs and paravertebral muscles while walking. Likewise, the person is not aware of the movements the same muscles make when shifting in bed, an activity mediated by similar neural structures.

Neurologic disorders of gait and posture can be localized using two main approaches:

1. **Characterization of the gait disorder the patient has.** In other words, we study how the patient walks or stands, or moves in bed, and from the pattern of movement or posture, we try to identify the lesioned structures. Some types of gait, such as the hemiparetic gait, are highly stereotypic and define the cause as damage to a specific structure (e.g., the corticospinal tract in the case of hemiparesis). Other types of gait, such as the cautious gait or central disequilibrium, may have many different etiologies and the lesion causing it is more difficult to localize.

2. **Identification of accompanying neurologic signs.** Many lesions causing neurologic gait disorders also cause other neurologic findings that may be helpful in localizing the lesion. In the case of the hemiparetic gait, we may find a Babinski’s sign pointing to a lesion in the corticospinal tract. Many structures of the nervous system participate in the control of gait, as indicated in the subsequent text. The signs or symptoms caused by lesions of these structures are described in the rest of the book.
General Principles of Neurologic Localization 17

Neural Structures Controlling Posture and Gait

At the simplest level of analysis, the act of standing and walking requires sensory information reaching specific brain centers and a motor output from these centers [51,53]. Sensory information includes proprioception, vision, and vestibular input. Some brain centers important for posture are the vestibular nuclei, the medullary and pontine reticular formation, the pedunculopontine and cuneiform nuclei (at the junction between the pons and midbrain), and the substantia nigra (in the midbrain). The cerebellum, basal ganglia, and thalamus play a major role in the central control of gait. In humans, the medial frontal cortex, particularly the SMA and the paracentral lobule, also contribute to the control of gait. On the motor side, the corticospinal, vestibulospinal, and reticulospinal tracts, among others, convey output from higher centers to the spinal cord. In turn, the anterior horn cells, through their axons, stimulate muscles that turn this output into specific movements.

EXAMINATION OF GAIT AND BALANCE

If a patient can stand from a low chair without using his or her arms, walk normally, maneuver turns well, walk on his or her heels and in tandem, and is steady with eyes closed and feet together and denies any imbalance or tendency to fall, gait and balance are probably normal. When examining a child, ask him or her to run for a brief stretch, while distracting from the action of running by asking to come and get something. If any abnormality is suspected from these screening maneuvers, the neural systems involved in gait should be tested further. Sensory systems can be tested by exploring the performance of the patient when one or two varieties of sensory input are removed and the postural reflexes depend on the remaining sensory information. For instance, the Romberg test explores the patient’s ability to maintain a steady upright posture with vision removed and the base of support reduced by keeping the feet together. Proprioceptive or vestibular loss will result in difficulty maintaining balance. To test the intactness of the corticospinal tract, spinal cord, peripheral nerves, and muscles, the patient is asked to wiggle the toes, draw a circle on the floor with each foot, and to extend the big toe against resistance. Proximal muscle strength in the legs can be tested by asking the patient to rise from a low chair without using his or her arms to prop himself or herself up. Despite the patient’s ability to complete all these tasks quite well, there may still be difficulty in walking and a propensity to walk on his or her heels and in tandem, and is steady.

FIG. 1.4. Diagram of the peripheral receptors and central pathways mediating joint position sense, vibration sense, and tactile sensation. The lower diagram on the right illustrates the receptors principally responsible for position sense, which are muscle spindle primary and secondary afferents. The upper diagram on the right illustrates the location and morphology of mechanoreceptors in glabrous (hairless) and hairy skin of the human hand. The receptors are located both in the superficial skin at the junction of dermis and epidermis and in the deeper dermis and subcutaneous tissue. Glabrous skin contains Meissner’s corpuscles, located in dermal papillae; Merkel disc receptors, located between dermal papillae; and free nerve endings. Hairy skin contains hair receptors, Merkel receptors, and free nerve endings. Subcutaneous receptors located in both glabrous and hairy skin include pacinian corpuscles and Ruffini’s endings. Merkel disc receptors, Meissner’s corpuscles, and pacinian corpuscles are capable of mediating vibration sense, but pacinian corpuscles are responsible for detecting vibration as tested clinically. Multiple receptors mediate tactile sensation, including Meissner’s corpuscles, Merkel discs, Ruffini’s endings, pacinian corpuscles, and hair follicle receptors. The diagram on the left illustrates the central pathways mediating joint position sense, vibration sense, and tactile sensation. Afferent fibers innervating pacinian corpuscles, muscle spindles, and tactile receptors make synaptic connections with dorsal horn neurons that project rostrally through the dorsolateral funiculus (DLF) and terminate in the lateral cervical nucleus (LCN) at spinal cord segments C1 and C2. Fibers from the LCN project across the midline and ascend into the medulla, where they join the medial lemniscus. Some afferent fibers innervating tactile receptors bifurcate in the dorsal horn, with one branch entering the dorsal columns (DCs) and the other making a synaptic connection on dorsal horn neurons with axons that cross the midline and project through the lateral spinothalamic tract (not shown in the diagram) or the DLF. Fibers in the DC are lamellated, with those from the sacral region (S) most medial, and lumbar (L), thoracic (T), and cervical (C) sequentially more lateral. DC fibers from sacral and lumbar segments terminate in the gracile (G) nucleus and fibers from thoracic and cervical segments terminate in the cuneate (C) nucleus of the medulla. Fibers projecting from the G and C nuclei pass across the midline and enter the medial lemniscus, which ascends to the ventral–posterior–lateral (VPL) nucleus of the thalamus. Thalamocortical fibers from VPL project to the primary somatosensory cortex (S1) of the postcentral gyrus. ML = medial lemniscus, LS = lateral sulcus, CT. (From: Gilman S. Joint position sense and vibration sense: anatomical organization and assessment. J Neural Neurosurg Psychiatry 2002;73(5):473–477, with permission.)
**TABLE 1.2** The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Somatosensory Pathways

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location of Lesion</th>
<th>Clinical Findings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peripheral nerve (mononeuropathy)</td>
<td>Sensory symptoms mainly in the distribution of sensory supply of nerve, but may radiate beyond the distribution of the damaged nerve. Sensory loss generally confined to the area supplied by the nerve. In general, the area of light touch loss is greater than the area of pain loss.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyneuropathy</td>
<td>Usually distal symmetric sensory loss (e.g., feet). Rare proximal sensory loss (e.g., proximal sensory neuropathy with porphyria or Tangier disease). Rare temperature-related sensory loss (e.g., leprosy). Sensory loss progresses according to axonal length. Sensory loss may preferentially affect certain modalities depending on the etiology (e.g., small fiber sensory loss with primary amyloidosis).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorsal root ganglion</td>
<td>Similar to dorsal root lesion. Diffuse involvement with dorsal root ganglionopathy (e.g., due to remote effect of cancer or Sjögren’s syndrome)—diffuse pansensory loss with sensory ataxia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorsal root</td>
<td>Irritative symptoms (e.g., radicular pain or paresthesias) and sensory loss in dermatomal (i.e., segmental) distribution. Because of overlap of innervation, interruption of one thoracic or upper lumbar dorsal root may give rise to sensory symptoms without definite sensory loss. Sensory loss to touch may extend over larger territory than pain and temperature loss.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal cord</td>
<td>Dorsal horn or central gray matter lesion produces the same ipsilateral segmental sensory disturbance as dorsal root lesion; segmental sensory loss “marks” the level of cord involvement. Lesion of anterolateral funiculus causes loss of pain and temperature sense on the contralateral side of the body at all levels caudal to the site of lesion; upper border of the sensory loss approximately corresponds to the lower border of the dermatome belonging to lowest preserved cord segment. If the lesion is limited to more superficial parts of tract, a more restricted sensory loss occurs, with upper segment of sensory loss found several segments farther caudally; the more so, the more superficial the lesion. If the lesion is deep and spares superficial fibers, sensory loss may “spare” the distal segments (e.g., “sacral sparing”). Lesion of the dorsal funiculus causes loss of vibratory and position sense and sensory ataxia below the involved segment ipsilateral to the lesion. Brown-Séquard (hemicord) syndrome (see Chapter 5). Central cord lesion (e.g., syringomyelia)—disassociation of sensory loss (see Chapter 5). Association of sensory abnormalities with other medullary signs and symptoms (e.g., CN XII paresis)—often “crossed” findings (CN palsy on one side of the face and sensory or motor loss on the opposite side of the body).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medulla oblongata</td>
<td>Loss of pain and temperature on the contralateral side of the body, may spare medial lemniscus functions. Frequently associated with involvement of the spinal tract and nucleus of CN V—decreased pain and temperature on the ipsilateral face and contralateral body (hemiagnesia alternans). Association of sensory abnormalities with other medullary signs and symptoms (e.g., CN XII paresis)—often “crossed” findings (CN palsy on one side of the face and sensory or motor loss on the opposite side of the body).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pons</td>
<td>Impairment of vibratory and position sense on opposite side of the body, may spare the spinothalamic tract. Often associated with ipsilateral CN XII paresis. Because of somatotopic organization, there may be sensory changes “below a level” or “to a level” mimicking spinal cord involvement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midbrain</td>
<td>Similar to the sensory changes outlined under medullary lesion but associated with pontine CN signs and symptoms (e.g., horizontal gaze palsies). Similar to the sensory changes outlined under medullary lesions but associated with midbrain CN signs and symptoms (e.g., vertical gaze palsies).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thalamus</td>
<td>Lesion of VPL nucleus results in sensory loss to all modalities on the opposite side of the face and body. Lesion of the postcentral gyrus causes localized sensory loss in part of the opposite half of the body (e.g., lesion of parasagittal postcentral gyrus causes sensory changes in opposite leg).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebrum</td>
<td>Somatotopic localization exists in the thalamus. Circumscribed lesion of the postcentral gyrus causes localized sensory loss in part of the opposite half of the body (e.g., lesion of parasagittal postcentral gyrus causes sensory changes in opposite leg).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CN = cranial nerve; VPL = ventral-posterior-lateral.
fall. This apparent discrepancy highlights the importance of neural systems critical for posture, which are distinct from the system mediating volitional leg and foot movements [51].

For the description of gait disorders and their localization, we will follow a classification reminiscent of the one by Marsden and Thompson [42]. They considered gait disorders in terms of the hierarchy of lower, middle, and higher sensorimotor levels.

**SENSORY AND LOWER MOTOR GAIT DISORDERS**

These disorders occur with myopathies or lesions of the peripheral nervous system or their nuclei of origin, particularly in younger patients. When a sensory system is affected in isolation, the disorder is seldom long lasting. Blind people, those with bilateral destruction of the semicircular canals, and those with prosthetic limbs can walk. Yet, some of the intact central mechanisms use the information arriving from the other sensory systems to eventually compensate for the single-modality sensory loss. The problem can be more devastating when multiple sensory systems are affected.

**Steppage Gait.** Severe deafferentation or a bilateral foot drop may result in an excessive flexion of the hips and knees with every step. With sensory loss, the heel tends to strike the ground heavily. The greater foot clearance is used to prevent the patient from tripping on the toes or on the floor irregularities that are poorly felt. The most common cause of this problem is severe thick-fiber neuropathy of the kind that are poorly felt. The most common cause of this problem is severe thick-fiber neuropathy of the kind that are poorly felt. The most common cause of this problem is severe thick-fiber neuropathy of the kind that are poorly felt. The most common cause of this problem is severe thick-fiber neuropathy of the kind that are poorly felt. The most common cause of this problem is severe thick-fiber neuropathy of the kind that are poorly felt. The most common cause of this problem is severe thick-fiber neuropathy of the kind that are poorly felt.

**Vestibular Ataxia.** Acute vestibular lesions cause instability and a tendency for the patient to veer or even fall to the side of the lesion. The base of support is widened and performance is markedly degraded by the Romberg's maneuver or when the patient is asked to walk with eyes closed.

**Visual Ataxia.** Acute distortion of visual perception can lead to ataxia, with a broad base of support and tentative steps. In the past, this type of gait difficulty was common after cataract surgery, with removal of the affected lens leaving the patient with a severe refractive defect. Lens replacement has reduced the incidence of this problem.

**Waddling Gait.** The waddling gait is seen with severe proximal muscle weakness. Weakness of the hip muscles, particularly the glutus medius, results in an excessive drop of the hip and trunk tilting to the side opposite the foot placement. The hips oscillate up and down with every step, making the patient seem to waddle. With muscle weakness, there is accentuation of the lumbar lordosis.

**SIMPLER GAIT DISORDERS OF CENTRAL ORIGIN**

Simpler gait disorders of central origin follow lesions located more centrally than the ones causing sensory and lower motor gait disorders. Disorders of pyramidal, cerebellar, or nigral motor systems cause distortion of appropriate postural and locomotor synergies [42]. In general, the correct postural and locomotor responses are selected, but their execution is faulty.

**SPASTIC GAIT**

Corticospinal tract lesions give rise to a spastic gait, unilateral or hemiparetic when the lesion is unilateral and paraparetic when the lesion is bilateral. The base of support is narrow, so much so that with bilateral lesions the legs tend to cross in front of each other in a pattern that has been called "scissors gait.” The leg is externally rotated at the hip. The knee is extended and stiff, so the patient walks as if on a stilts. The foot is plantar flexed and inverted; for this reason, the patient tends to scrape the floor with the outer edge of the foot; the patient's turns are slow. With each step the affected leg is rotated away from the body, then toward it (circumduction). There is also difficulty picking up the toes on the hemiparetic side, when instructed to walk on the heels and decrease cadence of gait. The lesion can be anywhere along the corticospinal tract. When the lesion is unilateral, the abnormality is easy to diagnose. Bilateral lesions, particularly when they cause a slowly progressive syndrome, are more difficult to diagnose early in the course of the disease. The cervical myelopathy of cervical spondylosis, a relatively common syndrome, belongs to this category. Cervical spondylosis tends to cause demyelinating lesions in the posterior columns and corticospinal tracts of the cervical spinal cord. The most common place of involvement is at the C5-C6 interspace. Severe lesions in this location result in paraparesis and clumsiness of the hand with atrophy in the small muscles of the hand. Milder lesions may only give rise to unsteadiness while walking or standing, often accompanied by a positive Romberg's sign [41]. The brachioradialis reflex may be depressed, and instead, a brisk finger flexor response is elicited when percussing the brachioradialis tendon (inverted radial reflex). Careful testing of vibratory sense may reveal a sensory level in the cervical region. Sometimes the patient perceives the stimulus better in the thumb than in the small finger. Early diagnosis is important because the myelopathy of cervical spondylosis is often progressive if untreated [55].

**CEREBELLAR ATAXIC GAIT**

Lesions of the anterior lobe of the cerebellum can also be accompanied by a discrete impairment in gait, and those affecting the flocculonodular lobe affect
equilibrium [27]. Cerebellar lesions may affect gait by causing disequilibrium and by altering limb and trunk kinematics and interlimb coordination [18]. The cerebellum does not appear to actually generate postural and gait synergies because these automatic responses, albeit very dysmetric, are present in dogs with total cerebellectomy [54]. Disturbances of gait and balance are primarily caused by lesions of the vestibulocerebellum and spinocerebellum or their connections. Lesions of the cerebellar hemispheres cause irregular timing, force, and cadence of leg movements, leading to inaccurate and variable stepping [30]. Lesions of the vestibulocerebellum, or flocculonodular lobe, can produce balance and gait disturbances that resemble those caused by vestibular lesions [18]. Tremor of the head and trunk, truncal imbalance, and swaying and falling in all directions are characteristic of vestibulocerebellar lesions. Vestibular nystagmus may be present. Although most often patients with cerebellar lesions tend to fall to the side of the lesion, some patients with lesions in the tonsillar area develop increased tone (and increased reflexes) in the ipsilateral side and fall to the contralateral side.

The clinical syndrome caused by lesions of the spinocerebellum is best characterized by alcoholic cerebellar degeneration, which primarily affects the anterior lobe of the cerebellum but also involves the olivary complex and the vestibular nuclei [65]. Patients with alcoholic cerebellar degeneration have a widened base, instability of the trunk, slow and halting gait with irregular steps and superimposed lurching. The gait abnormalities are accentuated at the initiation of gait, on turning, and with changes in gait speed. These patients may have severe gait ataxia without nystagmus, dysarthria, or arm dysmetria. Even the heel-to-shin test may give little inkling of the severity of the gait disturbance. The anterior lobe of the cerebellum is exquisitely sensitive to many metabolic injuries, not just alcohol. For instance, in severe hypoxia, the anterior lobe can be severely damaged, whereas the rest of the cerebellum may be spared.

PARKINSONIAN GAIT
The patient with Parkinson’s disease walks with a rigid trunk, reduced arm swing, slow and short steps, and a tendency for the knees to be flexed. The gait of patients with classical Parkinson’s disease differs from the gait of patients with the atypical Parkinsonian syndromes, such as progressive supranuclear palsy. Hysteresis, a term for the patient to begin running after taking a few steps, may be present with classical Parkinson’s disease, but seldom with atypical Parkinsonian syndrome. The base of support is generally normal in early Parkinson’s disease but is often widened in atypical Parkinson’s disease, which is also often accompanied by impaired balance. Whereas a stoop is characteristic of classical Parkinson’s disease, patients with progressive supranuclear palsy walk quite erect. Early reduction of arm swing is more characteristic of classical Parkinson’s disease. This disease follows destruction of neurons of the substantia nigra. The Parkinsonian syndromes are caused by more widespread lesions, some of which involve the lenticular nucleus.

CHOREIC, HEMIBALLISTIC, AND DYSTONIC GAITS
In choreic, hemiballistic, and dystonic gaits, the abnormal choreic, hemiballistic, or dystonic movements are superimposed on the normal gait. Whereas chorea or hemiballismus usually interferes little with the ability to walk, dystonia can cause severe gait difficulties. Intorsion of the foot is a relatively common dystonic movement in patients on dopaminergic agents. Chorea is most frequent, with lesions of the anterior putamen resulting in an excessive suppression of the inhibitory activity of the globus pallidus medialis over the lateral thalamus. Hemiballismus, most pronounced in the leg while the patient is sitting or lying down, abates partially in the lower extremity when the patient begins to walk. It is due to a lesion of the subthalamic nucleus. Dystonia can be found with lenticular nucleus lesions [7].

COMPLEX GAIT DISORDERS OF CENTRAL ORIGIN
Complex gait disorders of central origin are less well characterized than the ones previously described. Nonetheless, they are probably more common, particularly in the elderly population. In some cases, they are caused by lesions of brainstem nuclei. Some others are due to damage of the control loop that begins in the paracentral cortex and PMC and projects to the putamen. Through direct and indirect pathways, modified by input from the substantia nigra and subthalamic nucleus, the putamen projects to the mediodorsal globus pallidus, which inhibits the activity of thalamic neurons in the ventrolateral and ventral anterior nuclei. These thalamic nuclei send facilitatory projections to the frontal cortex. This loop probably plays an important role in mediating overlearned, unconscious motor activity that runs in the background, such as gait and postural reflexes. Patients with lesions in this loop can markedly improve their gait by paying attention to it. They have a faulty “automatic pilot” for postural reflexes. Finally, other gait disorders result from direct dysfunction of the cortex in the posterior portion of the medial frontal region.

The Cautious Gait. The cautious gait is characterized by a normal or mildly widened base, a shortened stride, slowness of walking, and turning en bloc [42,59]. Anyone who has to walk on an icy street may have adopted a similar gait pattern to minimize the risk
of falling. With this gait strategy, the center of gravity remains within the limits of the base of support. This gait disorder is seen mainly in older people. It may represent a milder or compensatory phase of any of the disorders causing poor balance and is not localizing.

Brainstem Disequilibrium. To a lesser or greater degree, patients with brainstem disequilibrium have poor equilibrium. Some may feel unsteady, although there is little evidence in the neurologic examination. Others are so unsteady that they cannot stand or even sit up unassisted.

It is well known that damage of the vestibular nuclei can result in marked impairment in equilibrium, with a tendency to fall to the side of an acute injury. Milder vestibular dysfunction may be an important cause of gait disturbances in older people without overt vestibular disease [20]. Fife and Baloh found vestibular dysfunction in 26 patients older than 75 years who complained of disequilibrium and in whom no cause was evident after clinical evaluation. Although none had Romberg’s sign, the patients tend to sway more and do poorer on semiquantitative gait and balance testing than the controls did [20]. Their base of support was slightly widened, their turns unsteady, and they had a tendency to stagger when pushed and veer when walking.

In patients with atherosclerosis, isolated pontine hyperintense lesions on MRI correlated with disequilibrium [37]. The lesions were located in the basis pontis, possibly involving the corticopontine or corticospinal fibers, the pontocerebellar fibers, and the pontine nuclei. The rest of the brain appeared normal on MRI. Pyramidal signs were equally distributed among patients and controls [37].

The laterodorsal region of the midbrain contains the mesencephalic locomotor region, which plays an important role in locomotion in animals [25]. Stimulation of this region in the cat induces rapid walking, followed by running. This area contains the cuneiform nucleus and the cholinergic pedunculopontine nucleus. In humans, loss of neurons in the pedunculopontine nucleus has been found in patients with progressive supranuclear palsy and Parkinson’s disease but not in patients with Alzheimer’s disease; perhaps implying a role of this nucleus in ambulation [69]. Discrete vascular damage in this region can give rise to severe disequilibrium and a loss of rhythm, alternating feet movement that characterize normal walking [44]. It is conceivable that other brainstem nuclei, still poorly identified, may also play an important role in postural mechanisms.

DISEQUILIBRIUM WITH AUTOMATIC PILOT DISORDER

The disorders described next are characterized not only by disequilibrium but also by a striking difference between the patients’ performance when they walk spontaneously and a better performance when they think about walking, for instance, by stepping over an obstacle or trying to take long strides. All of these lesions affect the corticobasal ganglionio-thalamo-cortical loop, described at the beginning of this section. The basal ganglia are part of an important loop that controls proximal movements participating in postural synergies.

1. Basal ganglia lesions. Early disequilibrium characterizes progressive supranuclear palsy and multiple system atrophy and helps differentiate them from early Parkinson’s disease. Acute lesions of the basal ganglia can also produce a syndrome of unsteadiness without the loss of isometric power, in which a patient without an apparent weakness cannot stand normally [38].

2. Thalamic lesions. Whereas chronic lesions of the basal ganglia are better known to cause axial motor impairment than acute ones, the opposite is true for thalamic lesions. A syndrome of impaired axial postural movements has been described with acute infarction or hemorrhage in the ventrolateral nucleus of the thalamus or suprathalamic white matter [46]. Although alert, with normal or near-normal strength on isometric muscle testing and a variable degree of sensory loss, these patients could not stand, and some with acute lesions could not sit up unassisted for several days after the acute insult. They fell backwards or toward the side contralateral to the lesion. These patients appeared to have a deficit of overlearned motor activity of an axial and postural nature. The syndrome has been called thalamic astasia and grouped by some among the central disequilibrium syndromes [34].

3. Hemispheric paracentral periventricular white matter lesions. The output of the thalamus that is critical for gait is directed to the areas of the cortex involved in lower extremity movements. This area of the cortex is the medial frontal region, specifically, the paracentral lobule and the SMA. The fibers reaching this area from the thalamus course through the periventricular white matter. Therefore, it is possible or even likely, that lesions in this area may result in impaired gait. Ischemic disease of the white matter is common in the elderly population. Beginning with a report in 1989, many studies have confirmed that white matter abnormalities on computed tomography scan and MRI correlate with impaired gait and balance in older people [3,16,47]. The kind of gait impairment seen in these patients corresponds to what has been termed the cautious gait [59]. Because the patients have poor balance, the steps are shorter, possibly to lessen the single-foot stance portion of
the gait cycle. Like patients with thalamic lesions, these individuals may seem to walk rather normally so long as they pay attention to their gait. However, when they engage the automatic pilot, and the motor control system begins to be relied on for involuntary movements, they tend to fall. Sudden buckling of the knees may precipitate them to the floor.

Disequilibrium may also be prominent in patients with hydrocephalus and with lesions in the medial aspect of the frontal lobe. However, these patients tend to have the gait disorder described in the subsequent text as “magnetic gait.”

Central disequilibrium is probably the most common cause of the so-called drop attacks, sudden falls without warning or loss of consciousness in older individuals. Drop attacks were originally attributed to the disease of the verteobasilar system, but this etiology of drop attacks in the elderly is probably not as common as subcortical hemispheric disease [45].

**Freezing of Gait.** With preserved balance, patients with isolated gait ignition failure or freezing of gait cannot start walking because of hesitation and may freeze in the course of locomotion, particularly on a turn [34,42]. Once the patient begins to walk, steps are short and shuffling, but they become larger and the foot clearance increases as the patient continues to walk. The base of support is normal. Postural responses are preserved. Eye closure does not induce abnormal swaying. Maneuvers that bring about a “cortical strategy,” such as trying to kick an imaginary ball, step over a cane, or count the steps, help the patient initiate and maintain gait. Minus the disequilibrium, this disorder mimics the “automatic pilot disorder” described in the previous section. The anatomic localization of this disorder is still undefined, in part because the phenomenology is not uniform: freezing in the course of walking normally along a straight line may not be the same as freezing initiating gait or making a turn. The second features are characteristic of mild magnetic gait [52], described in the following paragraph. Freezing of gait is present in a minority of patients with Parkinson’s disease and may antedate by years a diagnosis of progressive supranuclear palsy (PSP). As the upper brainstem is markedly affected in PSP, damage of this region could be most often responsible for freezing of gait.

**Magnetic Gait.** Magnetic gait is a disorder that corresponds to what has been described as frontal gait disorder, marche à petit pas or arteriosclerotic parkinsonism [34]. Meyer and Barron called it apraxia of gait because despite the severe gait disorder the patients can move their legs at will [48]. Although able to stand, these patients have such an inability to lift their feet and walk that their feet may seem to be glued to the floor. Some patients have great difficulty initiating walking and, when pushed forward, he heels are lifted but the toes seem to grab the floor. There may be a dissociation between gait and distal volitional movements, in that the patients may be quite able to draw figures with their feet or do the heel–shin maneuver normally. Given the preservation of even complex motor patterns for the lower extremities, it is perhaps better to not use the term apraxia for this type of gait. Milder forms of the same disorder resemble the Parkinsonian gait, with short, shuffling steps and truncal rigidity. Arm swing during walking may be preserved and, if so, helps differentiate this disorder from Parkinson’s disease [65]. The turns are very slow and broken down into many steps. Turning may bring up the tendency for the feet (or for one foot more than the other when the problem is asymmetrical) to become glued to the floor. Freezing may become evident as the steps halt and the patient remains motionless or develops tremor-like movements of the lower legs. Falls are common, particularly in patients who have disequilibrium. This disorder may be caused by bilateral lesions of the medial frontal cortex, severe hydrocephalus, or bilateral ischemic lesions of the white matter. Gait impairment is part of the classical triad for the diagnosis of normal-pressure hydrocephalus [1]. Some authors have described this entity as a rather prevalent cause of gait disorders in the aging population [22]. However, other studies, looking at the outcome of shunting for large ventricles in older individuals, have concluded that this is a relatively rare entity [29].

**Disequilibrium and Disorganized Gait.** Disequilibrium and disorganized gait has also been described as frontal disequilibrium [34]. There is disequilibrium and a disorganization of gait patterns, such that the patients do not move the legs appropriately for locomotion. They may cross the legs or move them in directions that are inappropriate to keep balance or even to sit up from a sitting position. This disorder has been described with a variety of frontal lobe lesions [34] and also with lesions in the mesencephalic locomotor center [44].

**References**


Localization in Clinical Neurology


54. Rademaker GJG. The physiology of standing: postural reactions and equilibrium, with special references to the behavior of decerebrate animals. Minneapolis University of Minnesota Press, 1980.


Principal Signs and Symptoms of Peripheral Nerve Disease

Disorders affecting mixed peripheral nerves cause various symptoms and signs corresponding, in anatomic distribution, to regions supplied by each nerve. To make a correct topographic diagnosis of peripheral nerve lesions, the clinician must thoroughly know the area of the sensory supply of each nerve, the muscles it innervates, and any muscle stretch reflex subserved by the nerve [377]. Certain nerves are purely motor, some are purely sensory, and others are mixed. The symptoms and signs of a peripheral nerve lesion include disturbances as detailed in the following text.

Sensory Disturbances

With the division of a sensory nerve, all modalities of cutaneous sensibility are lost only over the area exclusively supplied by that nerve (the autonomous zone). This zone is surrounded by an intermediate zone, which is the area of the nerve’s territory overlapped by the sensory supply areas of the adjacent nerves. The full extent (autonomous plus intermediate) of the nerve’s distribution constitutes the maximal zone. In clinical diagnosis, the autonomous zone of sensory loss for each nerve must be specifically sought to make an accurate topographic localization. In general, with peripheral nerve lesions, the area of light touch sensory loss is greater than the area of pinprick sensory loss. Pain and paresthesias may also help in localizing a peripheral nerve lesion, but these subjective sensations frequently radiate beyond the distribution of the damaged nerve (e.g., proximal arm pain in the carpal tunnel syndrome). Some patients describe pain that is evoked by nonnoxious stimulation of the skin innervated by a damaged nerve (allodynia).

Motor Disturbances

Interruption of the motor fibers in a motor or mixed nerve leads to lower motor neuron paresis or paralysis of the muscles innervated by that nerve. Atrophy of specific muscle groups and characteristic deformities follow. The muscle or muscle groups involved may become flaccid (hypotonic), with decreased resistance to passive motion. This hypotonia may be the result of weakness preventing voluntary activity [382].

The actions of agonist muscles, which have the same or similar mechanical effects on a joint, and antagonist muscles, which have the opposite effect, should be considered in testing the strength of a particular muscle. The action of a powerful agonist may conceal weakness in a smaller muscle (e.g., the pectoralis may compensate for subscapular muscle weakness). Also, certain muscles may appear weak because their action requires the support of paralyzed muscles (e.g., finger abduction by the dorsal interossei may seem weak when a radial nerve palsy prevents fixation of the wrist). A nerve often supplies several muscles with a similar action, and a lesion of that nerve results in weakness of the muscle group.

Disturbances of Muscle Stretch Reflexes

As a consequence of sensorimotor loss, the muscle stretch reflex subserved by each damaged nerve is decreased or absent.

Vasomotor, Sudomotor, and Trophic Disturbances

The skin subserved by the affected nerve may become thin and scaly. The nails may become curved, with retardation of nail and hair growth in the affected area. The affected area of the skin may become dry and inelastic and may cease to sweat. Because the analgesic cutaneous area is liable to injury, ulcers may develop.

Although ancillary procedures (e.g., electromyography and nerve stimulation studies, muscle and nerve biopsy, sweat tests) greatly aid in topographic diagnosis, the following discussion stresses only the bedside diagnosis and localization of individual peripheral nerve abnormalities.

Mononeuropathy Multiplex

Mononeuropathy multiplex (multifocal mononeuropathy) refers to the involvement of several isolated nerves. The nerves involved are often widely separated (e.g., right median and left femoral nerve). These multiple neuropathies result in sensory and motor disturbances that are confined to the affected individual nerves. Mononeuropathy multiplex is
usually due to a disseminated vasculitis that affects individual nerves (e.g., vasculopathy in diabetes mellitus or polyarteritis nodosa).

### Polyneuropathy

In polyneuropathy, the essential feature is the impairment of function of many peripheral nerves simultaneously, resulting in a symmetric, usually distal, loss of function. The characteristic features include muscle weakness with or without atrophy, sensory disturbances, autonomic and trophic changes, and hyporeflexia or areflexia. In general, the legs are affected before the arms. Polyneuropathy may be caused by different processes and may be mainly sensory (e.g., amyloidosis, paraneoplastic, leprosy), motor (e.g., Guillain–Barré syndrome, porphyria, lead intoxication), or both sensory and motor.

The loss of sensation in peripheral polyneuropathies may involve all modalities of sensation, but because nerve fibers of a specific caliber may be preferentially involved in the pathologic process, sensory impairment may be restricted to a certain form of sensation (dissociation of sensory loss). Preferential loss of pain and temperature perception may be seen in type I hereditary sensory neuropathy, amyloid neuropathy, Tangier disease, and in some cases of diabetic neuropathy. With these neuropathies, smaller-diameter nerve fibers conveying pain and temperature sensation are preferentially involved. A selective loss of touch pressure, two-point discrimination, and joint position sense (conveyed by larger myelinated fibers) with spared pain and temperature sensitivity may occur with Friedreich’s ataxia, vitamin B₁₂ deficiency, and the Guillain–Barré syndrome.

The pattern of sensory and motor deficits in many polyneuropathies (e.g., diabetic polyneuropathy) develops according to axonal length, with sensory changes initially occurring at sites most distal from dorsal root ganglia cells [309]. When the sensory abnormality in the limbs extends proximally to 35 to 50 cm from the dorsal root ganglia, there is also a region of sensory loss over the anterior torso in accordance with the length of axons traversing the body wall. This sensory abnormality is wider in the lower abdomen and tends to be narrower in the thoracic region because of the longer, more oblique course of the sensory fibers to the lower abdomen and the shorter course of the nerves traveling along the ribs. When nerves <20 to 24 cm in length become involved, a “beanie cap” of sensory change over the scalp vertex occurs owing to the distal involvement of the ophthalmic branches of the trigeminal nerves. In extreme sensory neuropathies, only the shortest (<12 cm) nerve fibers are spared, so that there is sensory loss over the entire body except for a band of intact sensation over the posterior midline from the occiput to the sacral region [309].

The axonal length principle may also be applied to motor neuropathies where often the intrinsic foot muscles are initially affected, followed by the peroneal innervated muscles, and then by gastrocnemius-soleus involvement [309]. The anterior tibial compartment is affected before the posterior tibial compartment because the former’s nerve supply is longer than the latter by more than 10 cm. When all muscle groups below the knee are affected, intrinsic hand muscle involvement will develop. Patients with peripheral motor neuropathies often have greater motor weakness of ankle dorsiflexors than foot plantar flexors on a biomechanical as well as a physiologic basis [47]. In fact in patients with greater weakness of ankle plantar flexors than dorsiflexors, who are able to walk on their heels but not on their toes, intraspinal disease (e.g., conus-cauda equina tumor, spinal muscular atrophy, spinal stenosis, carcinomatous meningitis) rather than peripheral polyneuropathy should be suspected [47].

In some neuropathies (e.g., Tangier disease), the short axons are preferentially involved, and hence the sensory loss starts proximally and progresses distally, sometimes to the point where the entire body, except for the hands and regions below the knees, shows sensory impairment. Porphyric neuropathy may also start proximally, with paresis affecting the proximal arms, proximal legs, distal arms, and then distal legs (in that order). The muscle stretch reflexes in porphyria may be completely lost except for preserved ankle jerks, and the sensory loss may involve only the trunk, face, and proximal arms and thighs.

In some other neuropathies, the initial onset and subsequent progression of clinical deficits may not be determined by the axonal length. For example, in lepromatous leprosy neuropathy, sensory loss occurs initially over the areas of the body having cooler surface temperatures (e.g., the tip of the nose, the malar areas of the cheeks) [308] because the proliferation of Mycobacterium leprae is greater in cooler tissues.

### Lesions of Individual Nerves

Although peripheral nerves originate inplexuses (discussed in Chapter 3), it is easier to understand the course of peripheral nerves before reviewing the anatomy of theplexuses, than to understand the symptomatology ofplexus lesions without the benefit of knowing peripheral innervation. For this reason, the authors have chosen to place this chapter first. Diagrams of the origin of each nerve in theplexus can be found in Chapter 3.
Nerve fibers do not randomly intertwine as they progress distally in nerve bundles. Evidence indicates that specific axons remain grouped together, particularly through their distal course, as they travel toward their destination [359]. Adjacent muscles and, similarly, adjacent sensory dermatomes are innervated by nerve fascicles that remain together within the nerve bundle. Therefore, ulnar neuropathies clinically “localized” to the wrist may actually be occurring at the elbow because of the preferential involvement of certain fascicles, whereas a proximal sciatic neuropathy sometimes masquerades as a peroneal neuropathy at the knee. These anatomic arrangements must always be taken into account when localizing pathologic processes [360].

**Dorsal Scapular Nerve (C4–C5)**

**ANATOMY**
The dorsal scapular nerve (a purely motor nerve) arises mainly from the C5 spinal nerve within the substance of the scalenus medius muscle. The nerve courses down behind the brachial plexus deep to the levator scapulae muscle (which it supplies) and terminates by piercing the deep surfaces of the rhomboids (major and minor). The rhomboids normally elevate and adduct the medial border of the scapula (they are antagonists of the serratus anterior) and, along with the levator scapulae, rotate the scapula so that the inferior angle moves medially. The rhomboids are tested by having the patient press his or her elbow backward against resistance while the hand is on the hip [377].

**NERVE LESIONS**
Because the dorsal scapular nerve derives from the proximal plexus, affection of this nerve in an upper brachial plexus neuropathy suggests a proximal lesion. The nerve may also be entrapped within the substance of the scalenus medius muscle. Isolated lesions of this nerve may occur in bodybuilders [241]. A dorsal scapular nerve lesion results in the lateral displacement of the vertebral border of the scapula, which is rotated, with the inferior angle displaced laterally. Rhomboid atrophy is concealed by the overlying trapezius muscle. Rhomboid paresis is evident if the elbow can be pressed back only weakly against resistance (keeping the hand on the hip). Weakness is also evident when the patient attempts to push the palm backward against resistance with the arm folded behind the back.

**Subclavian Nerve (C5–C6)**
This purely motor nerve emerges from the upper trunk of the brachial plexus and descends in the posterior cervical triangle to innervate the subclavian muscle. This muscle depresses and medially draws the lateral end of the clavicle. Lesions of the subclavian nerve cause no important clinical disturbances.

**Long Thoracic Nerve (C5–C7)**

**ANATOMY**
This purely motor nerve (Fig. 2.1) arises from the C5–C7 roots shortly after they emerge from the intervertebral foramina. After passing through the scalenus muscle, the two upper roots are joined by a contribution from the C7 root. The nerve runs posterior to the brachial plexus and inferiorly behind the clavicle and then crosses the outer border of the first rib to reach the serratus anterior muscle. The nerve further descends along the lateral thoracic wall, sending individual filaments to the muscle slips of the serratus.

The serratus anterior muscle fixes and stabilizes the scapula against the chest wall and is tested by observing for scapular winging (the vertebral border of the scapula stands away from the thorax, forming a “wing”) while the patient pushes extended arms against a fixed object (e.g., a wall) [377].

**NERVE LESIONS**
The long thoracic nerve lies superficially in the supraclavicular region where it is subject to trauma [115]. Therefore, it is injured most frequently as a result of pressure on the shoulder (e.g., sudden trauma or carrying heavy objects on the shoulder—**rucksack paralysis**) [273]. Direct trauma to the shoulder or the lateral thoracic wall while playing football, or during a fall, or an auto accident may compress the nerve. Chiropractic manipulation of the cervical spine may also cause nerve injury [264]. Work-related or athletic activities, especially those involving repetitive stressful movements of the shoulder or those in which the arm is in an outstretched overhead position, may cause stretch or traction injury [319]. The overhead arm positioning may be a factor in the development of isolated long thoracic neuropathy during surgery with general anesthesia [179]. In a review of 197 cases of long thoracic neuropathy, 32 cases were iatrogenic owing to local invasive procedures such as first rib resections, mastectomies with axillary node dissection, thoracotomy, scalenectomies, infraclavicular plexus anesthesia, and chest tube insertion [179]. The nerve may be injured in up to 10% of patients undergoing radical mastectomies and in approximately 1% of patients undergoing simple mastectomies [96]. Isolated long thoracic nerve palsy may also occur as a manifestation of neurogenic amyotrophy (Parsonage–Turner syndrome) [101] or, rarely, after radiation therapy for breast cancer [286]. Also, familial long thoracic nerve palsy may be a major manifestation of familial brachial plexus neuropathy [275], and painful long thoracic neuropathy has been described as the sole manifestation of Lyme disease [245].
Nerve paralysis usually causes no deformity of the scapula when the arm is at rest. If, however, the patient is asked to push the arm forward against resistance or hold the arms up in front of the body, the scapula becomes winged (winged scapula or scapula alata), especially in its lower two-thirds region. The patient often complains of weakness of the shoulder and fatigue on raising the arm above the head. With injuries caused by excessive nerve stretch during physical activities, the sharp pain in the shoulder may radiate to the neck and upper arm.

**Suprascapular Nerve (C5–C6)**

**ANATOMY**

This purely motor nerve (Fig. 2.2) is a branch of the upper trunk of the brachial plexus. The nerve passes downward beneath the trapezius to the upper border

**FIG. 2.1.** The long thoracic nerve.

**FIG. 2.2.** The suprascapular nerve.
of the scapula, where it passes through the suprascapular notch. This notch is bridged by the superior transverse scapular ligament, forming an osseofibrous foramen through which the nerve passes to enter the supraspinous area beneath the supraspinatus muscle. The nerve gives off branches to the supraspinatus and to the capsule of the shoulder joint and then courses around the free lateral border of the spine of the scapula to supply the infraspinatus muscle. Although the suprascapular nerve is said to have no cutaneous branches, rare cases have provided evidence for a cutaneous branch of the suprascapular nerve, as described in cadaveric studies [142].

The supraspinatus muscle normally abducts the humerus (mainly the first 15 degrees of abduction), whereas the infraspinatus muscle is mainly an external rotator of the upper arm.

NERVE LESIONS
The nerve may be injured in proximal upper brachial plexopathies and is also subject to damage in the supraclavicular region, especially with acute forced depression of the shoulder and its dislocation. Fractures of the suprascapular notch or excessive callus formation after scapular fracture may compress the nerve. The nerve may also be injured after repair of rotator cuff tears [412]. Repetitive forced cross-body adductions of the arm or repetitive motions involving the scapulohumeral and shoulder joints may also injure the nerve. Suprascapular nerve injury has even been reported after driving for 2 hours speaking on a mobile telephone with the phone cradled between the ear and shoulder, probably by the nerve being compressed by the hard edge of the phone (mobile telephone user’s shoulder droop) [152]. Other etiologies of nerve injury include occupational overuse, sports-related injuries (especially sports involving overhead motions such as tennis, weight lifting, canoeing, and volleyball), direct nerve trauma, and ganglion cysts [187, 195].

Entrapment lesions (e.g., ganglia, spinoglenoid cyst, etc.) may occur in the suprascapular foramen [13,60,208,229,292,325]. This entrapment causes shoulder pain, which is aggravated by shoulder girdle movements, weakness, and eventual atrophy in the two spinati muscles. The pain is deep, located along the superior border of the scapula often extending toward the shoulder joint, occasionally radiating into the arm, and is made worse by movements that adduct the scapula or rotate the head away from the involved shoulder. Suprascapinus paresis results in weakness of arm abduction, whereas infraspinatus paresis results in impaired external rotations at the shoulder joint. Suprascapular involvement may also occur with neuralgic amyotrophy [101].

Harbaugh et al. described a patient with suprascapular nerve entrapment at the suprascapular notch presenting with right shoulder pain and atrophy with weakness of the right supraspinatus and infraspinatus muscles [142]. The patient was noted to also have an area of numbness involving the right upper lateral shoulder. Although the suprascapular nerve is said to have no cutaneous branches, this case provides evidence for a cutaneous branch of the suprascapular nerve [142].

The branch of the infraspinatus muscle may be damaged in isolation by the entrapment of the suprascapular nerve at the spinoglenoid notch by a hypertrophied inferior transverse scapular ligament or a ganglion [7,191,208]. This results in shoulder pain, which is elicited by the external rotation of the shoulder joint, associated with weakness and wasting of the infraspinatus. Lesions at the suprascapular notch may also cause isolated infraspinatus weakness by involving only the portion of the nerve destined to innervate the infraspinatus muscle [41,191,351]. A lesion of the suprascapular nerve at the glenoid notch, causing isolated infraspinatus paresis and atrophy, may occur as a professional hazard in volleyball players [244]. Isolated infraspinatus paresis may also result from a nerve injury in body builders [44,241].

Subscapular Nerves (C5–C7)
ANATOMY
These purely motor nerves arise as branches of the posterior cord of the brachial plexus. The upper subscapular nerves supply the subscapularis, whereas the lower subscapular nerves supply the teres major.

NERVE LESIONS
Subscapular nerve palsies usually occur with posterior cord brachial plexus lesions. The arm is somewhat externally rotated, with some paresis of internal rotation, although the latissimus dorsi and pectoralis major muscles are usually able to compensate well for this paresis. The patient may complain of difficulty in scratching the lower back.

Thoracodorsal Nerve (C6–C8)
ANATOMY
This purely motor nerve, also known as the nerve to the latissimus dorsi, is a branch of the posterior cord of the brachial plexus and usually emerges from the plexus in a close association with the subscapular nerves. The nerve runs along the posterior axillary wall to reach and innervate the deep surface of the latissimus dorsi muscle. This muscle (along with the teres major) adducts and internally rotates the arm and depresses the raised arm. It is best tested by having the patient adduct the horizontally raised upper arm against resistance or by palpating the muscle bellies when the patient coughs [377].
NERVE LESIONS

Lesions of this nerve usually occur with damage to the posterior cord or proximal parts of the brachial plexus. Nerve lesions cause little deformity or atrophy, but proximal arm adduction is compromised. A combined movement comprising extension, adduction, and internal rotation, in which the dorsum of the hand is placed on the opposite buttock, readily reveals latissimus paresis. Isolated thoracodorsal nerve injury has been described in body builders [44,241].

Anterior Thoracic Nerves (C5–T1)

ANATOMY

The anterior thoracic nerves, purely motor nerves, (also called the pectoral nerves) are divided into the lateral anterior thoracic nerve (C5–C7), a branch from the anterior divisions of the upper and middle trunks of the brachial plexus, and the medial anterior thoracic nerve (C5–T1), a branch of the proximal section of the medial cord of the plexus. After these nerves descend posteriorly to the clavicle, the lateral nerve supplies the clavicular and upper sternocostal portions of the pectoralis major, and the medial division supplies the lower sternocostal portion of this muscle and the pectoralis minor.

The pectoralis major is an adductor and medial rotator of the humerus. It is tested by having the patient hold the arm in front of the body. The two portions can be seen and palpated when the patient resists attempts by the examiner to force the arm laterally [377].

Axillary Nerve (C5–C6)

ANATOMY

The axillary (circumflex) nerve (Fig. 2.3), a mixed nerve, arises as one of the terminal branches of the
posterior cord of the brachial plexus from spinal segments C5 and C6. It lies first on the lateral side of the radial nerve, then courses laterally and backward to pass just below the shoulder joint. It then goes through the quadrilateral space, an anatomical compartment bounded inferiorly by the teres major muscle, medially by the long head of the triceps muscle, laterally by the surgical neck of the humerus, and superiorly by the teres minor muscle and subscapularis muscle. The nerve descends on the subscapularis muscle behind the axillary artery and then winds around the surgical head of the humerus, accompanied by the posterior circumflex humeral artery. It passes deep into the deltoid and teres minor muscles, supplying both. It sends sensory branches to the capsule of the shoulder joint (articular branch) and to the skin of the upper lateral aspect of the arm (lateral cutaneous nerve of the arm).

The teres minor muscle is a lateral rotator of the shoulder joint. The central part of the deltoid muscle is tested by having the patient abduct the upper arm against resistance (15–90 degrees), the anterior part by elevating the arm forward against resistance (up to 90 degrees), and the posterior part by having the patient retract the abducted upper arm against resistance.

NERVE LESIONS

Lesions of the posterior cord of the brachial plexus affect this nerve as well as the radial nerve (e.g., crutch paralysis). Trauma is the most common cause of axillary neuropathy. The axillary nerve is thought to be most vulnerable to traction injury of the brachial plexus because it is tethered to the deltoid muscle very close to the shoulder [39,153,267]. The nerve is most often injured as it winds around the lateral aspect of the humerus in a relatively exposed position (e.g., with fracture and dislocation of the humerus), when the shoulder joint is dislocated or when the scapula is fractured [15]. The axillary nerve may also be injured during reduction of a shoulder dislocation [398]. Axillary neuropathy may occur secondary to intramuscular injection high in the posterior aspect of the shoulder [170], after sleeping in a prone position with the arm raised above the head, following laparotomy (attributed to suspending the forearm from the anesthesia screen to gain better abdominal exposure), with neuralgic amyotrophy [101] or by direct nerve injury in athletes [267,271]. The nerve may be injured directly or entrapped by a fibrous band in the quadrilateral space [113,231]. Other etiologies of axillary injury in the quadrilateral space include trauma in athletes (especially volleyball players, baseball pitchers, and tennis players), the use of prosthetic devices for the upper arm using a “figure of eight” type of suspension, and hypertrophy of contiguous muscles [267]. As the posterior humeral circumflex artery also runs in the quadrilateral space, subclavian angiography in the quadrilateral syndrome may reveal occlusion of this vessel when the arm is abducted and externally rotated [59].

Nerve injuries usually cause sensorimotor nerve palsy, but a purely motor nerve palsy is possible with nerve lesions at the humeral head. A purely sensory loss with no motor deficits is also possible [45]. For example, isolated damage to the sensory branch after arthroscopic surgery has been described [324]. In nerve lesions, the deltoid muscle becomes atrophic, causing a flattening or concavity of the shoulder contour. Teres minor paresis is usually not demonstrable on clinical examination because other muscles can perform its functions. Deltoid paralysis results in difficulty in abducting the arm, but other muscles of the shoulder girdle can compensate this function. An axillary cutaneous sensory defect is located on the outer aspect of the upper arm and is maximal on the patch of skin above the deltoid attachment.

Musculocutaneous Nerve (C5–C7)

ANATOMY

The musculocutaneous nerve, a mixed nerve (Fig. 2.4) arises from the lateral cord of the brachial plexus and proceeds obliquely downward between the axillary artery and the median nerve. The nerve pierces the coracobrachialis muscle and descends further between the biceps and brachialis muscles (it supplies all these three muscles). It may rarely innervate the pronator teres muscle (most often a median-innervated muscle). The nerve then continues distally as the lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm after it pierces the deep fascia over the anterior elbow. The coracobrachialis muscle is a forward elevator of the arm, the brachialis (which occasionally also receives innervation from the radial nerve) is an elbow flexor, and the biceps is an elbow flexor and forearm supinator (especially when the elbow is flexed at 90 degrees). The biceps is tested by having the patient flex the supinated arm against resistance [377]. The biceps reflex is subserved by the musculocutaneous nerve.

The autonomous zone of the lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm (a narrow band along the radial forearm) shows sensory loss with musculocutaneous nerve lesions. This zone of cutaneous sensory loss may extend from the elbow to the wrist and cover the entire lateral forearm from the dorsal to the ventral midline.

NERVE LESIONS

Nerve damage may result from lesions of the lateral cord of the brachial plexus. Proximal humeral lesions (e.g., fractures, osteochondroma) or shoulder...
dislocations may injure or compress the nerve [172]. Because the nerve is deep and is protected between the entry site into the coracobrachialis and the elbow, lesions are relatively uncommon here. A predominantly motor musculocutaneous neuropathy may develop after strenuous exercise of the upper extremity, probably due to nerve entrapment or stretch of the nerve where it passes through the coracobrachialis muscle in the upper arm [225]. Motor and sensory neuropathy may develop in this location after weight lifting, strenuous physical activity, rowing, football throwing, general anesthesia, or sleep [48,159,189,315] and has been described to occur with repetitive carrying of a heavy, rolled object by the shoulder with the object held in place by the arm curled around the object (carpet carrier’s palsy) [315]. Isolated biceps weakness may occur with distal motor nerve injury [44]. A purely sensory syndrome may result when the lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm is damaged in the cubital fossa or forearm. This sensory branch may be injured by compression [258], venipuncture [40], or cutdown procedures because it lies directly under the median cubital vein in the center of the cubital fossa. Typically, patients notice pain in the proximal forearm, often aggravated by elbow extension, and paresthesias along the radial aspect of the forearm. A pure sensory neuropathy has also been observed in windsurfers who flex the upper extremity slightly at the elbow with the hand gripped over the boom [163]; this has also been observed with nerve compression from a handbag (handbag paresthesia) [140] and with nerve compression by the biceps aponeurosis [80].

With lesions of the musculocutaneous nerve, atrophy of the biceps and brachialis results in wasting of the ventral aspect of the upper arm. Loss of coracobrachialis function is difficult to detect clinically. With biceps weakness, flexion of the elbow is weak (especially when the forearm is supine), and the biceps reflex is lost.

### Median Nerve (C6–T1)

#### ANATOMY

The mixed median nerve (Fig. 2.5) is formed in the axilla by the joining of the lateral cord of the brachial plexus (spinal segments C6–C7) with the medial cord (spinal segments C8–T1). The nerve then descends down the medial side of the arm in a close association with the brachial artery to the cubital fossa. From there, the median nerve enters the forearm between the two heads of the pronator teres muscle and gives off the anterior interosseous nerve, after which it dips under the sublimis bridge. It then courses deep to the flexor retinaculum at the wrist (carpal tunnel) to reach the hand. At a variable distance above the flexor retinaculum, the median nerve provides a palmar cutaneous branch, which crosses the flexor retinaculum either subcutaneously or through the superficial ligament fibers to supply the skin over the thenar eminence and proximal palm on the radial aspect of the hand. The median nerve passes through the carpal tunnel accompanied by the flexor tendons of the digits and emerges to divide into its terminal branches. These terminal branches include branches to the thenar muscles...
3. **Palmaris longus** (C7–T1), a flexor of the wrist.
4. **Flexor digitorum superficialis** (C7–T1), a flexor of the middle phalanges of the second, third, fourth, and fifth fingers. It is tested by having the patient flex the finger at the interphalangeal joint against resistance, with the proximal phalanx fixed.

After it passes between the two heads of the pronator teres muscle, the median nerve gives off no muscular branches until it reaches the elbow. As it passes between the heads of the pronator teres muscle, it supplies the following muscles:

1. **Pronator teres** (C6–C7), a forearm pronator. It is tested by having the patient pronate the forearm against resistance. This muscle may rarely be innervated by the musculocutaneous nerve.
2. **Flexor carpi radialis** (C6–C7), a radial flexor of the hand. This is tested by having the patient flex and abduct the hand at the wrist against resistance.
3. **Palmaris longus** (C7–T1), a flexor of the wrist.
4. **Flexor digitorum superficialis** (C7–T1), a flexor of the middle phalanges of the second, third, fourth, and fifth fingers. It is tested by having the patient flex the finger at the interphalangeal joint against resistance, with the proximal phalanx fixed.

The median nerve gives off no muscular branches until it reaches the elbow. As it passes between the heads of the pronator teres muscle, it supplies the following muscles:

1. **Pronator teres** (C6–C7), a forearm pronator. It is tested by having the patient pronate the forearm against resistance. This muscle may rarely be innervated by the musculocutaneous nerve.
2. **Flexor pollicis brevis** superficial head (C8–T1), a flexor of the terminal phalanx of the thumb, it is tested by having the patient flex the distal phalanx of the thumb against resistance, while the proximal phalanx is fixed.
3. **Flexor digitorum profundus I and II** (C7–C8), a flexor of the terminal phalanges of the second and
third fingers. It is tested by having the patient flex the distal phalanx of the second and third fingers against resistance, with the middle phalanx fixed.

3. **Abductor pollicis brevis** (C8–T1), an abductor of the metacarpal of the thumb. It is tested by having the patient abduct the thumb at right angles to the palm against resistance.

2. **Opponens pollicis** (C8–T1), a muscle that brings the metacarpal of the thumb into opposition. It is tested by having the patient touch the base of the little finger with the thumb against resistance.

3. **Superficial head of the flexor pollicis brevis** (C8–T1), a flexor of the proximal phalanx of the thumb.

4. **Lumbricals I and II** (C8–T1), flexors of the proximal and extensors of the two distal phalanges of the second and third fingers. They are tested by having the patient extend the finger at the proximal interphalangeal joint against resistance, with the metacarpophalangeal joint fixed and hyperextended.

The finger flexor reflex (C8–T1) is in part innervated by the median nerve.

It is important to be aware of potential variations in the innervation of the intrinsic hand muscles. Anomalous communications in the hand are sometimes referred to as *Riche-Cannieu anastomoses* [136] and are thought to involve communications between the motor branch of the median nerve and the deep ulnar nerve branch in the radial aspect of the hand. For example, the adductor pollicis and first dorsal interosseous muscles may be exclusively supplied by the median nerve (in 2% and 1% of individuals, respectively) and are therefore involved in median nerve lesions and spared in ulnar lesions. Also, the abductor pollicis brevis and the flexor pollicis brevis may be exclusively supplied by the ulnar nerve in 2% of individuals.

**NERVE LESIONS**

**Lesions in the Axilla and Upper Arm.**

Median neuropathies in the axilla are often associated with damage to the ulnar and radial nerves (triad neuropathy) or brachial plexus. Etiologies include crutch compression, sleep paralysis, penetrating trauma, shoulder dislocation, vascular malformations, and sheath hemorrhage [303]. In the upper arm, the nerve may be damaged by penetrating trauma, humerus fractures, sleep paralysis, and arteriovenous fistulas [383]. The median nerve may be compressed in the upper arm by an anomalous course of the brachialis muscle [246]. Median lesions in the axilla or upper arm result in paresis or paralysis of all the muscles innervated by the median nerve, with a sensory loss in the distribution of both the palmar cutaneous and palmar digital branches. There is atrophy of the thenar eminence, affecting especially the abductor pollicis brevis and the opponens pollicis. Because of this atrophy, with recession of the metacarpal bones of the thumb to the plane of the other metacarpal bones, the hand takes on an abnormal appearance called simian hand or ape hand. This appearance results from the unopposed action of the extensor pollicis longus (radial nerve) and the adductor pollicis (ulnar nerve). Because the second finger cannot be flexed and the third finger can be flexed only partially, when the person attempts to make a fist, these fingers remain extended. The hand then takes on the appearance of that of a clergyman offering benediction (benediction hand). Because all the median muscles are affected, there are pareses of forearm pronation, radial wrist flexion, distal flexion of the thumb, palmar abduction, and opposition of the thumb and flexion of the second and, to a lesser extent, the third fingers.

**Lesions at the Elbow.** Median nerve compression at the elbow may be due to tumors and other masses, Struthers’ ligament or other anomalous ligaments, supracondylar spurs, entrapment within the two heads of the pronator teres muscle, a large brachialis muscle, the overlying bicipital aponeurosis, venous varix, and bone or ligament injuries (e.g., elbow fracture or dislocation) [75,78,413]. Vascular causes include catheterization, thrombosis, anomalies such as a persistent median artery, an anomalously enlarged ulnar artery, or a false aneurysm of the brachial artery [141,143,284,299,413]. Motor and sensory signs and symptoms are as described earlier in Lesions in the Axilla and Upper Arm but elbow lesions may also cause an anterior interosseous or pseudoanterior interosseous syndrome (see subsequent text).

**Lesions at the Ligament of Struthers.** In approximately 1% of the population, an anomalous spur of the bone occurs 5 to 5 cm above the medial epicondyle on the anteromedial humerus. A fibrous tunnel may be formed by a ligament (ligament of Struthers) that connects this spur to the medial epicondyle. The median nerve may be compressed here by this ligament, causing motor and sensory signs and symptoms as described earlier in Lesions in the Axilla and Upper Arm [18,42]. The ligament may also compress the brachial artery or, rarely, the ulnar nerve [240].

**The Pronator Syndrome.** The median nerve may be entrapped or constricted where it passes between the two heads of the pronator teres muscle.
and under the fibrous arch of the flexor digitorum superficialis (pronator syndrome) [134,247]. Nerve injury is especially likely to occur if the nerve passes deep to a hypertrophied pronator teres. This syndrome has the following characteristics:

1. Pain may be present in the proximal forearm, especially on resistance to pronation of the fore- arm and flexion at the wrist.
2. Tenderness is observed over the pronator teres muscle on the application of deep pressure.
3. Frequently, there is a lack of involvement of the pronator teres, flexor carpi radialis, palmaris longus, and flexor digitorum muscles because nerve branches to these muscles often depart from the median nerve proper before the site of nerve compression.
4. There is sparing of the muscles innervated by the anterior interosseous nerve if this nerve takes a high origin from the median trunk.
5. Paresthesias and sensory loss are observed in the median field of innervation (both palmar and digital cutaneous areas).
6. Atrophy and paresis of the median thenar musculature occur.
7. Tinel’s sign may be present.

**The Anterior Interosseous Nerve Syndrome (Kiloh-Nevin Syndrome).** Isolated lesions of this nerve [131,134,392] are not uncommon and may be due to strenuous exercise, trauma, a fibrous band constricting the nerve, or an accessory head of the flexor pollicis longus (Gantzer’s muscle) entrappping the nerve [304]. Injury to the nerve may follow cutdown procedure (for catheterization) [109,180,327,393] or venipuncture [312] in the antecubital fossa or supracondylar fractures [75]. The nerve may also be involved as part of the Parsonage–Turner syndrome (neuralgic amyotrophy) [101,293], injured while the patient is in the prone position for spinal surgery [8], affected by vascular anomalies [284], or compressed by bronchogenic carcinoma metastatic to the forearm [272]. Bilateral anterior interosseous nerve syndromes due to cytomegalovirus infection have been described [97]. This purely motor syndrome has several characteristics:

1. Pain is present in the proximal forearm or arm lasting hours to days.
2. Mild paresis of forearm pronation (due to pronator quadratus weakness) is observed. The anterior interosseous nerve may rarely give rise to the nerve of the pronator teres muscle and, therefore, the syndrome may rarely present with weakness of the pronator teres [16].
3. Paralysis of flexion of the terminal phalanges of the second and third fingers (due to paralysis of the flexor digitorum profundus I and II) is observed.
4. Paresis of flexion of the terminal phalanges of the thumb (due to paresis of the flexor pollicis longus) is observed.
5. There is a characteristic pinch attitude of the hand while attempting to make a full circle by applying the pulp of the thumb to that of the index finger with firm pressure. This results from weakness of the flexor pollicis longus and the flexor digitorum profundus. There is hyperextension of the interphalangeal joint of the thumb, inability to flex the distal phalanges of the thumb and index finger, and proximal approximation of the thumb on the index finger.
6. Normal sensation is observed.

Because the anterior interosseous nerve has no cutaneous representation, this syndrome is often considered a purely motor syndrome. However, sensory fibers of the wrist radiocarpal, radioulnar, intercarpal, and carpometacarpal joints travel in the anterior interosseous nerve [88,392]. Injury to the terminal branch of the anterior interosseous nerve can cause persistent, dull, aching volar wrist pain [88].

A pseudoanterior interosseous nerve syndrome has been described [393], with partial median nerve compromise at the antecubital level. The nerve bundles that form the anterior interosseous nerve are primarily involved, and the motor findings are those described with the anterior interosseous nerve syndrome. The anterior interosseous nerve fascicle within the median lies posteriorly at the elbow and is, therefore, most prone to injury by fractures at this site [359]. Other median-innervated muscles are spared, and the only clinical finding betraying a more proximal median nerve lesion is some median distribution sensory change, as the sensory fibers from the index finger and thumb also lie posteriorly [359]. This syndrome has been noted with supracondylar fracture of the humerus, proximal radial fracture, venipuncture or arterial catheterization, and neurora. Median nerve entrapment may occur in the forearm because of an accessory bicipital aponeurosis [350] or because of enlarged communicating veins directly compressing the median nerve [54]. Other etiologies include arteriovenous fistulas in patients on chronic renal dialysis, fractures of the ulna or radius, and tumors [397]. This syndrome is characterized by paresthesias or paralysis of muscles innervated by the anterior interosseous nerve as well as more proximal median-innervated muscles (e.g., pronator teres and flexor carpi radialis). Sensation is intact. Median nerve damage proximal to the carpal tunnel may occur in wheelchair athletes [58].

**The Carpal Tunnel Syndrome.** The median nerve is particularly vulnerable to compression as it
Localiztion in Clinical Neurology

passes into the hand between the carpal bones and the transverse carpal ligament (carpal tunnel) [81,266, 301,356]. The incidence of carpal tunnel syndrome is increased among electronic-parts assemblers, frozen-food processors, musicians, cyclists, wheelchair athletes, and dental hygienists; repetitive wrist movements, vibrating tools, awkward wrist positions, and great force seem to correlate with this disorder [81]. Women are more commonly affected than men. The increased pressure within the carpal tunnel is usually caused by a nonspecific flexor tenosynovitis, but certain conditions such as diabetes mellitus, rheumatoid arthritis, pregnancy [386], amyloidosis, hypothyroidism, acromegaly, renal dialysis, and congenital narrowing of the carpal canal, may predispose to this syndrome. The frequency of carpal tunnel syndrome in computer users is surprisingly similar to that in the general population [357]. A carpal tunnel-like syndrome may also occur with compression of the median nerve in the distal forearm, proximal to the carpal tunnel (e.g., due to a thrombosed aneurysm of the epineural vessels) [52,114]. The carpal tunnel syndrome usually consists of four main symptoms:

1. **Bouts of pain or paresthesias in the wrist and hand** are observed that are often most severe and troublesome during the hours of sleep and that are relieved by shaking or rubbing the involved hand. Although these symptoms are usually localized to the wrist or median-innervated fingers, they may spread upward into the forearm [135,356]. For example, paresthesias and pain occurred proximal to the wrist in 36.5% of 255 patients in one study [356]. Patients may also report sensory symptoms in the hand outside the median distribution (e.g., in the whole hand, in an ulnar distribution, or in a radial distribution), but sensory signs do not extend beyond the median nerve distribution [135]. The symptoms are bilateral in over half the cases but usually appear first and are more severe in the dominant hand.

2. **Paresis and atrophy of the abductor pollicis brevis and opponens pollicis muscles** are present. Because the opponens pollicis is ocasionally anomalously supplied by the ulnar nerve, this muscle may be spared. In the carpal tunnel syndrome, the lumbricals are often normal because, in the carpal tunnel, fibers that innervate the lumbricals lie more posteriorly than those to the thenar muscles, protecting the lumbrical motor fibers from compression [211].

3. **Sensory loss on the radial palm, the palmar aspect of the first three-and-a-half fingers, and the dorsal aspect of the terminal phalanges of the second, third, and half of the fourth fingers is noted. This sensory loss is usually most prominent in the** appropriate fingertips. (Because the palmar cutaneous nerve takes its origin proximal to the wrist joint, the sensation on the thenar eminence and proximoral radial palm is spared. Therefore, if this area shows a sensory loss, the lesion is proximal to the wrist joint.) Because of the fascicular arrangement of median sensory fibers in the wrist, sensory abnormalities may be limited to one side of a digit or to a web space between two digits, falsely suggesting more distal median sensory branch impairment [359].

4. **Increased sensitivity of the damaged nerve fibers to mechanical deformation is observed. Because of this, various clinical tests may help detect a lesion at the carpal tunnel. Light percussion over the median nerve at the volar surface of the wrist may elicit a tingling sensation radiating into the hand in the median distribution (Tinel’s sign). When a blood pressure cuff is applied to the arm and compression is above systolic pressure, median paresthesias and pain may be aggravated (cuff compression test of Gilliatt and Wilson). Flexion of the wrist to 90 degrees for 30 to 60 seconds may aggravate paresthesias and pain (Phalen’s sign) as may hyperextension of the wrist.**

**Lesions of the Palmar Cutaneous Branch of the Median Nerve.** The palmar cutaneous branch arises about 5 cm above the wrist and courses distally on the radial side of the palmaris longus tendon. It passes subcutaneously or through a canal of its own within the transverse carpal ligament and then divides into branches supplying the skin over the thenar eminence. The nerve may be damaged by accidental lacerations and during carpal tunnel surgery. Other causes of neuropathy include compression by an abnormal palmaris longus muscle or by a ganglia and entrapment by scars or fascial bands [10,57,121,334,355]. Damage to the nerve produces pain, paresthesias, and numbness over the thenar eminence. Median nerve compression at the wrist may occur with handcuff compression [130].

**Lesions within the Hand.** Median nerve entrapment in the palm by the head of the left first metacarpal bone while holding golf clubs may cause a sensory neuropathy with hypesthesia in a median distribution [155]. Injury to the deep palmar branches of the median nerve in the distal carpal canal (e.g., by a palmar ganglion [178]) or at the thenar eminence produces a purely motor syndrome with weakness and wasting of the thenar muscles (abductor pollicis brevis, opponens pollicis, and superficial head of the flexor pollicis brevis) with no sensory abnormalities. Selective acute demyelination of the recurrent thenar motor branch of the median nerve owing to vibrations from a sander (vibration-
involving the adjacent sides of two fingers, depending on the nerve distribution. Damage to a proper digital branch produces sensory loss and paresthesias restricted to the side of the finger. Etiologies include trauma (e.g., lacerations, finger dislocations, and fractures), compression from musical instruments (e.g., flutist’s neuropathy), tendon sheath cysts and tumors, tenosynovitis, nerve ischemia (e.g., in diabetes), and nerve tumors [26,79,296].

Digital neuropathy is a pure sensory neuropathy of a digital nerve. It may be caused by acute or chronic local trauma or pressure, or accompany systemic illnesses such as rheumatoid disease, leprosy, Raynaud disease, dysproteinemia, or diabetes mellitus [137]. Digital neuropathy of the median and ulnar nerves may be caused by Dupuytren contracture [137]. Dupuytren tissue usually affects the palmar fascia, superficial to the digital nerves, and it may rarely affect the spiral cord in the digits. A spiral cord may cause sensory loss due to impingement of digital nerves or Dupuytren tissue may compress the

Lesions of the Palmar Digital Branches of the Median Nerve. The palmar digital nerves are the terminal branches of the median and ulnar nerves (Fig. 2.6). The median nerve divides into a number of branches after it emerges from the distal end of the carpal tunnel. Usually, it divides into two major branches, each of which then divides into the common digital nerves, which in turn divides into two proper digital branches. The two palmar digital branches to the thumb and to the lateral side of the second digit usually arise from the lateral terminal division of the median nerve. The other digital branches from the median nerve arise from the medial division and supply digital branches to the lateral three-and-a-half digits, but the entire fourth digit may be innervated by the median or ulnar nerve.

Lesions of a common palmar digital nerve in the hand cause sensory symptoms and loss usually induced median neuropathy) may cause weakness in the abductor pollicis brevis without sensory loss [176].

**Lesions of the Palmar Digital Branches of the Median Nerve.** The palmar digital nerves are the terminal branches of the median and ulnar nerves (Fig. 2.6). The median nerve divides into a number of branches after it emerges from the distal end of the carpal tunnel. Usually, it divides into two major branches, each of which then divides into the common digital nerves, which in turn divides into two proper digital branches. The two palmar digital branches to the thumb and to the lateral side of the second digit usually arise from the lateral terminal division of the median nerve. The other digital branches from the median nerve arise from the medial division and supply digital branches to the lateral three-and-a-half digits, but the entire fourth digit may be innervated by the median or ulnar nerve.

Lesions of a common palmar digital nerve in the hand cause sensory symptoms and loss usually involving the adjacent sides of two fingers, depending on the nerve distribution. Damage to a proper digital branch produces sensory loss and paresthesias restricted to the side of the finger. Etiologies include trauma (e.g., lacerations, finger dislocations, and fractures), compression from musical instruments (e.g., flutist’s neuropathy), tendon sheath cysts and tumors, tenosynovitis, nerve ischemia (e.g., in diabetes), and nerve tumors [26,79,296].

Digital neuropathy is a pure sensory neuropathy of a digital nerve. It may be caused by acute or chronic local trauma or pressure, or accompany systemic illnesses such as rheumatoid disease, leprosy, Raynaud disease, dysproteinemia, or diabetes mellitus [137]. Digital neuropathy of the median and ulnar nerves may be caused by Dupuytren contracture [137]. Dupuytren tissue usually affects the palmar fascia, superficial to the digital nerves, and it may rarely affect the spiral cord in the digits. A spiral cord may cause sensory loss due to impingement of digital nerves or Dupuytren tissue may compress the

**FIG. 2.6.** Palmar view of the right hand showing the course of palmar digital branches of the median and ulnar nerves.
ties such as baseball, by repetitive use injuries, and following finger surgery [263].

**Bowler's thumb** is a digital neuropathy of the palmar digital branch that supplies the medial side of the thumb due to chronic compression from a bowling ball [92,263]. This compression is usually due to perineural fibrosis but, infrequently, a bowler's thumb lesion is a traumatic neuroma caused by the proliferation of fibrous tissues, both around and within the digital nerve [263]. These phenomena are the result of adaptive changes in the thumb in response to frequent insertion and compression in the holes of the bowling ball. The clinical presentation of this condition may include paresthesias, hypesthesia, changes in two-point discrimination sense, or a positive Tinel's sign in the distribution of the involved digital nerve, which may be thick and firm to palpation. This condition is most commonly described in bowling enthusiasts, although similar involvement can be caused by other sporting activities such as baseball, by repetitive use injuries, and following finger surgery [263].

**Ulnar Nerve (C7–T1)**

**ANATOMY**

The ulnar nerve, a mixed nerve, (Fig. 2.7) is the main branch of the medial cord of the brachial plexus and derives from the seventh and eighth cervical and first thoracic spinal roots. It crosses the axilla beneath the pectoralis minor muscle and continues to the upper arm, where it lies medial to the brachial artery. In the distal arm it enters a groove between the medial humeral epicondyle and the olecranon process. The aponeurosis between the olecranon and medial epicondyle forms the roof of an osseofibrous canal (the cubital tunnel), the floor of which is formed by the medial ligament of the elbow joint. It then passes between the humeral and ulnar heads of the flexor carpi ulnaris to rest on the flexor digitorum palmar digital nerves against the relatively inelastic deep transverse metacarpal ligament.

**Bowler's thumb** is a digital neuropathy of the palmar digital branch that supplies the medial side of the thumb due to chronic compression from a bowling ball [92,263]. This compression is usually due to perineural fibrosis but, infrequently, a bowler's thumb lesion is a traumatic neuroma caused by the proliferation of fibrous tissues, both around and within the digital nerve [263]. These phenomena are the result of adaptive changes in the thumb in response to frequent insertion and compression in the holes of the bowling ball. The clinical presentation of this condition may include paresthesias, hypesthesia, changes in two-point discrimination sense, or a positive Tinel's sign in the distribution of the involved digital nerve, which may be thick and firm to palpation. This condition is most commonly described in bowling enthusiasts, although similar involvement can be caused by other sporting activities such as baseball, by repetitive use injuries, and following finger surgery [263].

**Ulnar Nerve (C7–T1)**

**ANATOMY**

The ulnar nerve, a mixed nerve, (Fig. 2.7) is the main branch of the medial cord of the brachial plexus and derives from the seventh and eighth cervical and first thoracic spinal roots. It crosses the axilla beneath the pectoralis minor muscle and continues to the upper arm, where it lies medial to the brachial artery. In the distal arm it enters a groove between the medial humeral epicondyle and the olecranon process. The aponeurosis between the olecranon and medial epicondyle forms the roof of an osseofibrous canal (the cubital tunnel), the floor of which is formed by the medial ligament of the elbow joint. It then passes between the humeral and ulnar heads of the flexor carpi ulnaris to rest on the flexor digitorum palmar digital nerves against the relatively inelastic deep transverse metacarpal ligament.

**Bowler's thumb** is a digital neuropathy of the palmar digital branch that supplies the medial side of the thumb due to chronic compression from a bowling ball [92,263]. This compression is usually due to perineural fibrosis but, infrequently, a bowler's thumb lesion is a traumatic neuroma caused by the proliferation of fibrous tissues, both around and within the digital nerve [263]. These phenomena are the result of adaptive changes in the thumb in response to frequent insertion and compression in the holes of the bowling ball. The clinical presentation of this condition may include paresthesias, hypesthesia, changes in two-point discrimination sense, or a positive Tinel's sign in the distribution of the involved digital nerve, which may be thick and firm to palpation. This condition is most commonly described in bowling enthusiasts, although similar involvement can be caused by other sporting activities such as baseball, by repetitive use injuries, and following finger surgery [263].

**Ulnar Nerve (C7–T1)**

**ANATOMY**

The ulnar nerve, a mixed nerve, (Fig. 2.7) is the main branch of the medial cord of the brachial plexus and derives from the seventh and eighth cervical and first thoracic spinal roots. It crosses the axilla beneath the pectoralis minor muscle and continues to the upper arm, where it lies medial to the brachial artery. In the distal arm it enters a groove between the medial humeral epicondyle and the olecranon process. The aponeurosis between the olecranon and medial epicondyle forms the roof of an osseofibrous canal (the cubital tunnel), the floor of which is formed by the medial ligament of the elbow joint. It then passes between the humeral and ulnar heads of the flexor carpi ulnaris to rest on the flexor digitorum palmar digital nerves against the relatively inelastic deep transverse metacarpal ligament.

**Bowler's thumb** is a digital neuropathy of the palmar digital branch that supplies the medial side of the thumb due to chronic compression from a bowling ball [92,263]. This compression is usually due to perineural fibrosis but, infrequently, a bowler's thumb lesion is a traumatic neuroma caused by the proliferation of fibrous tissues, both around and within the digital nerve [263]. These phenomena are the result of adaptive changes in the thumb in response to frequent insertion and compression in the holes of the bowling ball. The clinical presentation of this condition may include paresthesias, hypesthesia, changes in two-point discrimination sense, or a positive Tinel's sign in the distribution of the involved digital nerve, which may be thick and firm to palpation. This condition is most commonly described in bowling enthusiasts, although similar involvement can be caused by other sporting activities such as baseball, by repetitive use injuries, and following finger surgery [263].

**Ulnar Nerve (C7–T1)**

**ANATOMY**

The ulnar nerve, a mixed nerve, (Fig. 2.7) is the main branch of the medial cord of the brachial plexus and derives from the seventh and eighth cervical and first thoracic spinal roots. It crosses the axilla beneath the pectoralis minor muscle and continues to the upper arm, where it lies medial to the brachial artery. In the distal arm it enters a groove between the medial humeral epicondyle and the olecranon process. The aponeurosis between the olecranon and medial epicondyle forms the roof of an osseofibrous canal (the cubital tunnel), the floor of which is formed by the medial ligament of the elbow joint. It then passes between the humeral and ulnar heads of the flexor carpi ulnaris to rest on the flexor digitorum palmar digital nerves against the relatively inelastic deep transverse metacarpal ligament.

**Bowler's thumb** is a digital neuropathy of the palmar digital branch that supplies the medial side of the thumb due to chronic compression from a bowling ball [92,263]. This compression is usually due to perineural fibrosis but, infrequently, a bowler's thumb lesion is a traumatic neuroma caused by the proliferation of fibrous tissues, both around and within the digital nerve [263]. These phenomena are the result of adaptive changes in the thumb in response to frequent insertion and compression in the holes of the bowling ball. The clinical presentation of this condition may include paresthesias, hypesthesia, changes in two-point discrimination sense, or a positive Tinel's sign in the distribution of the involved digital nerve, which may be thick and firm to palpation. This condition is most commonly described in bowling enthusiasts, although similar involvement can be caused by other sporting activities such as baseball, by repetitive use injuries, and following finger surgery [263].

**Ulnar Nerve (C7–T1)**

**ANATOMY**

The ulnar nerve, a mixed nerve, (Fig. 2.7) is the main branch of the medial cord of the brachial plexus and derives from the seventh and eighth cervical and first thoracic spinal roots. It crosses the axilla beneath the pectoralis minor muscle and continues to the upper arm, where it lies medial to the brachial artery. In the distal arm it enters a groove between the medial humeral epicondyle and the olecranon process. The aponeurosis between the olecranon and medial epicondyle forms the roof of an osseofibrous canal (the cubital tunnel), the floor of which is formed by the medial ligament of the elbow joint. It then passes between the humeral and ulnar heads of the flexor carpi ulnaris to rest on the flexor digitorum palmar digital nerves against the relatively inelastic deep transverse metacarpal ligament.

**Bowler's thumb** is a digital neuropathy of the palmar digital branch that supplies the medial side of the thumb due to chronic compression from a bowling ball [92,263]. This compression is usually due to perineural fibrosis but, infrequently, a bowler's thumb lesion is a traumatic neuroma caused by the proliferation of fibrous tissues, both around and within the digital nerve [263]. These phenomena are the result of adaptive changes in the thumb in response to frequent insertion and compression in the holes of the bowling ball. The clinical presentation of this condition may include paresthesias, hypesthesia, changes in two-point discrimination sense, or a positive Tinel's sign in the distribution of the involved digital nerve, which may be thick and firm to palpation. This condition is most commonly described in bowling enthusiasts, although similar involvement can be caused by other sporting activities such as baseball, by repetitive use injuries, and following finger surgery [263].

**Ulnar Nerve (C7–T1)**

**ANATOMY**

The ulnar nerve, a mixed nerve, (Fig. 2.7) is the main branch of the medial cord of the brachial plexus and derives from the seventh and eighth cervical and first thoracic spinal roots. It crosses the axilla beneath the pectoralis minor muscle and continues to the upper arm, where it lies medial to the brachial artery. In the distal arm it enters a groove between the medial humeral epicondyle and the olecranon process. The aponeurosis between the olecranon and medial epicondyle forms the roof of an osseofibrous canal (the cubital tunnel), the floor of which is formed by the medial ligament of the elbow joint. It then passes between the humeral and ulnar heads of the flexor carpi ulnaris to rest on the flexor digitorum
profundus. Immediately distal to the elbow joint the nerve gives off its first two muscular branches, to the flexor carpi ulnaris and the flexor digitorum profundus III and IV, respectively.

1. Flexor Carpi Ulnaris (C7–T1). An ulnar flexor of the wrist. It is tested by having the patient flex and adduct the hand at the wrist against resistance.

2. Flexor Digitorum Profundus III and IV (C7–C8). A flexor of the terminal phalanges of the fourth and fifth fingers. It is tested by having the patient flex the distal phalanx against resistance while fixing the third phalanx.

The ulnar nerve then descends beneath the flexor carpi ulnaris and, in the distal forearm, gives off the palmar cutaneous branch, which supplies the skin over the hypothenar eminence. It then gives off a dorsal cutaneous branch, which supplies the dorsal ulnar aspect of the hand and the dorsal aspect of the fifth finger and half of the fourth finger. The ulnar nerve proper then enters the wrist lateral to the tendon of the flexor carpi ulnaris muscle. In the hand it gives off the superficial terminal branch, which is a sensory branch to the skin of the distal part of the ulnar aspect of the palm and the palmar aspect of the fifth and half of the fourth finger, and then passes between the pisiform carpal bone medially and the hook of the hamate carpal bone laterally (ulnar tunnel or canal of Guyon) as the deep muscular branch. This deep branch supplies several muscles:

1. Palmaris brevis (C8–T1). A cutaneous muscle at the proximal border of the ulnar aspect of the hand.

2. Abductor digiti minimi (C8–T1). An abductor of the fifth finger. It is tested by having the patient abduct the fifth finger against resistance while the volar aspect of the hand is on a flat surface.

3. Opponens digiti minimi (C8–T1). An opposer of the fifth finger.

4. Flexor digiti minimi (C8–T1). A flexor of the fifth finger. It is tested by having the patient flex the fifth finger at the metacarpophalangeal joint against resistance.

5. Lumbricales III and IV (C8–T1). Flexors of the metacarpophalangeal joints and extensors of the proximal interphalangeal joints of the fifth and fourth fingers. They are tested by having the patient extend the proximal interphalangeal joint against resistance, with the metacarpophalangeal joint hyperflexed and fixed.

6. Interosseous muscles (C8–T1). Flexors of the metacarpophalangeal joints and extensors of the proximal interphalangeal joints. The four dorsal interossei are finger abductors, whereas the three palmar interossei are finger adductors. They are tested by spreading or abducting the fingers against resistance. The median nerve innervates the first dorsal interosseous muscles in 1% of individuals. Rarely, the first dorsal interosseous muscle is innervated by the radial nerve (Froment–Rauber nerve). Rarely, all thenar muscles, including the opponens, may be innervated by the ulnar nerve (all-ulnar motor hand) [116,310].

7. Adductor pollicis (C8–T1). An adductor of the metacarpal of the thumb. It is tested by having the patient adduct the thumb at right angles to the palm against resistance. The median nerve innervates this muscle in 2% of individuals.

8. Deep head of the flexor pollicis brevis (C8–T1). A flexor of the first phalanx of the thumb.

NERVE LESIONS

Lesions above the Elbow. Processes causing damage to the ulnar nerve in the axilla or upper arm may also damage the median and radial nerves (triad neuropathy). Nerve compression may be caused by sleeping with the arm hanging over a sharp edge or the head of a sleeping partner compressing the nerve against the humerus, crutches or tourniquets, arteriovenous fistulas in dialysis patients, aneurysms, hematomas, nerve tumors, and other masses [277,367]. Supracondylar fractures of the humerus may also cause nerve injury [78,158]. Ulnar entrapment neuropathy in the midarm, proximal to the medial epicondyle, may be due to nerve compression by the medial intermuscular septum [253].

Lesions of the ulnar nerve above the elbow (e.g., a lesion of the medial cord of the brachial plexus) produce the following signs:

1. Abnormal appearance of the hand. The hypothenar eminence and interossei are atrophied and flattened. There is often a “claw-hand” deformity (main en griffe), in which the fifth, fourth, and, to a lesser extent, the third fingers are hyperextended at the metacarpophalangeal joints and flexed at the interphalangeal joints. The hyperextension at the metacarpophalangeal joints is due to paralysis of the interossei and ulnar lumbricals, which results in unopposed action of the long finger extensors (extensor digitorum); the flexion at the interphalangeal joints is due to the pull exerted by the long flexor tendons. Rarely, ulnar neuropathy may initiate or sustain a specific dystonia that is manifest by the flexion of the fourth and fifth digits [70].

2. Paresis or paralysis of the ulnar flexion. This applies to the ulnar flexion of the wrist and of the terminal phalanges of the fourth and fifth fingers, and at the metacarpophalangeal joints of the second to fifth fingers. Ulnar paresis also affects
extension at the interphalangeal joints of the second to fifth fingers, adduction and abduction of the second to fifth fingers, and abduction and opposition of the fifth finger. As a result of adductor pollicis affection, Froment’s prehensile thumb sign (signe du journal) may be present (when a sheet of paper is grasped between the thumb and index finger and pulled, the proximal phalanx of the thumb is extended and the distal phalanx is flexed if an ulnar nerve lesion is present).

3. In 15% to 31% of subjects, a median-ulnar communication exists (Martin-Gruber anastomosis) [136,206] in which axons descending in the median or anterior interosseous nerve cross through the forearm to join the ulnar nerve at the wrist. The median fibers ultimately innervate the intrinsic hand muscles, especially the first dorsal interosseous, adductor pollicis, and hypothenar muscles. Therefore, if a patient has an ulnar neuropathy above the forearm, these muscles may be spared or minimally involved if a median-ulnar communication is present. The entry point of the crossing fibers from the median to the ulnar nerve usually occurs 3 to 10 cm distal to the medial humeral epicondyle [381]. Ulnar-to-median communications in the forearm [363] and those of only sensory fibers [151] may rarely occur. The overall incidence of Martin-Gruber anastomoses is approximately 17% [206]. Four types of connections exist: type I (60%) send motor branches from the median to the ulnar nerve to innervate “median” muscles; type II (35%) send motor branches from median to ulnar nerves to innervate “ulnar” muscles; type III (3%) send motor fibers from the ulnar to the median nerve to innervate median muscles; and type IV (1%) send motor fibers from the ulnar to the median nerve to innervate ulnar muscles.

4. Sensory findings. Because all three sensory branches of the ulnar nerve are affected (palmar, dorsal, and superficial terminal cutaneous branches), paresthesias and sensory loss occur on the dorsal and palmar surfaces of the fifth and ulnar half of the fourth finger and the ulnar portion of the hand to the wrist.

Lesions at the Elbow (Cubital Tunnel Syndrome). The ulnar nerve is most commonly compressed at the elbow in the cubital tunnel [29,30,53,81,238,239] because this tunnel narrows during movement, especially elbow flexion. Nerve entrapment is due to the thickening of the aponeurotic arch (the humero-ulnar aponeurotic arcade) between the two heads of the flexor carpi ulnaris or bulging of the medial collateral ligament of the elbow joint (floor of the cubital tunnel) [63]. The nerve may also be entrapped by a ganglion cyst or other mass of the elbow (e.g., intraneural perineuroma), by dense fibrous bands bridged directly between the medial epicondyle and the olecranon proximal to the cubital tunnel proper, by an accessory anconeus epitrochlearis muscle, by supracollateral spurs, or at its point of exit from the flexor carpi ulnaris muscle distally by a thickened muscular septum between the flexor carpi ulnaris and the flexor digitorum profundus [28,63,64]. Patients with end-stage renal disease receiving hemodialysis may be especially predisposed to ulnar neuropathy by factors such as arm positioning during hemodialysis, underlying polyneuropathy, and upper extremity vascular access [256].

The ulnar nerve at the elbow is also subject to external trauma, especially during coma or general anesthesia [148,205] and may be severed by missile injury [414]. Deformity from previous elbow injuries may lead to a nerve stretch, eventually producing signs and symptoms long after the original injury (tardy ulnar nerve palsy). The syndrome produced by these lesions is the same as that described previously in the section Lesions above the Elbow. A reliable sign of ulnar entrapment by the flexor carpi ulnaris muscle is the ulnar flexion maneuver [108], in which increased paresthesias in the fourth and fifth digits follow 3 minutes of elbow and wrist flexion in ulnar deviation.

The main clinical features of the cubital tunnel syndrome, which differentiate it from tardy ulnar nerve palsy, are [238]:

1. No evidence of joint deformity or prior trauma
2. Frequent occurrence of bilateral symptoms and signs of ulnar neuropathy
3. A taut, palpably enlarged nerve in the ulnar groove
4. Electrophysiologic (electromyographic) localization to the cubital tunnel
5. Operative findings of a swollen, taut, hyperemic nerve, distally limited by the proximal border of the aponeurosis joining the two heads of the flexor carpi ulnaris muscle.

Ulnar neuropathy at the elbow often spares the flexor carpi ulnaris muscle. This was thought to occur because the nerve branches to the flexor carpi ulnaris may arise at or proximal to the medial epicondyle (in 10% of individuals), but the involvement of flexor carpi ulnaris more often correlates with the severity of the neuropathy and with whether compression is retroepicondylar or at the humero-ulnar aponeurotic arcade [62]. Sparing of the flexor carpi ulnaris with ulnar neuropathy at the elbow is unrelated to the level of origin of its innervating branch but rather related to the internal topography of the nerve, the severity of compression, and the level of...
compression [62,359]. Ulnar neuropathy at the elbow may preferentially compress the nerve fascicle to distal hand muscles while sparing the sensory branches as well as the motor fascicle to the more proximal flexor carpi ulnaris and flexor digitorum profundus, thereby mimicking a Guyon’s canal ulnar neuropathy when the lesion is, in fact, at the elbow [359].

Lesions in the Forearm. Etiologies of ulnar nerve compression in the forearm include a hypertrophied flexor carpi ulnaris muscle, fibrous and fibrovascular bands, hematomas, and handcuffs [61,62,150,322]. Ulnar nerve entrapment at the forearm or wrist may occur in wheelchair athletes [58]. Damage may also occur with fractures of forearm bones (e.g., Colles’ fracture) [304,379]. Ischemic neuropathy may occur in patients with arteriovenous shunts for dialysis [397]. The clinical features are as explained earlier for the section Lesions above the Elbow except that the flexor carpi ulnaris and the flexor digitorum profundus I and II muscles are often spared. In a patient with surgical section of the distal ulnar nerve in the forearm, ulnar sensation in the dorsal hand was spared in relation to the superficial radial sensory innervation of the ulnar hand dorsum (“paradoxical” preservation of ulnar sensory function) [230].

Lesions at the Wrist and in the Hand. An ulnar lesion at the wrist [330] causes the same motor findings as a lesion at a more proximal level, except that the flexor carpi ulnaris and the flexor digitorum profundus III and IV are spared. The sensory findings depend on the location of the nerve lesion with respect to the sites of origin of the palmar and dorsal cutaneous branches. If the lesion is distal to these two branches, the sensory loss is restricted to the distal palm and the palmar surfaces of the fifth finger and the medial fourth finger (the area of supply of the superficial terminal cutaneous branch). The proximal palmar area and the entire dorsum of the hand are then spared.

Ebeling, Gilliatt, and Thomas have divided lesions of the ulnar nerve in the hand into three groups [98]:

1. Compression of the nerve as it enters the hand. All of the ulnar-innervated muscles of the hand are affected, and because the lesion is proximal to the superficial terminal cutaneous nerve, there is sensory loss on the distal palm and the palmar surfaces of the fifth finger and the medial half of the fourth finger.

2. Compression of the proximal part of the terminal motor branch (usually due to nerve compression within the canal of Guyon or pisohamate tunnel) [289]. In these purely motor lesions, all the hand muscles innervated by the ulnar nerve are affected. Because the lesion is distal to the superficial terminal cutaneous branch, there is no sensory loss.

3. Distal compression of the terminal motor branch of the ulnar nerve. This purely motor lesion is distal to the site of origin of the motor fibers of the hypothenar muscles and is also distal to all sensory branches [165]. It therefore results in paresis and atrophy of the interossei, the medial two lumbricals, the deep head of the flexor pollicis brevis, and the adductor pollicis muscles only.

Others have divided ulnar lesions at the wrist and hand into four groups [65]:

Type 1. Weakness of all ulnar intrinsic hand muscles and ulnar sensory impairment (dorsal ulnar sensory branch distribution not involved) caused by compression (e.g., by a carpal ganglion [124]) just proximal to or within the Guyon’s canal (both superficial and deep branches affected).

Type 2. Weakness of muscles innervated by a deep ulnar branch (including hypothenar) owing to its compression at its origin, but normal sensation.

Type 3. Weakness of muscles innervated by a deep ulnar branch with sparing of hypothenar muscles owing to its compression distal to branches innervating the hypothenar muscles [165].

Type 4. Compression at the distal end of the Guyon’s canal, resulting in the sensory branch alone being affected.

Ulnar nerve compression at the wrist or hand is most frequently caused by a ganglion from one of the carpal joints followed by occupational neuropathy, laceration, ulnar artery disease (e.g., aneurysm), or carpal bone fracture [124,165,330]. Other causes include lipoma, external pressure, nerve tumor, and rheumatoid cyst [94,112,289,411]. These patients present with obvious atrophy of the first dorsal interosseous and adductor muscles without sensory changes. In patients who developed an ulnar neuropathy after kidney transplant surgery, the presence of an arteriovenous shunt in the hand may have played a role [415]. A rare cause of ulnar compression in the Guyon’s canal is calcinosis in scleroderma [375]. The motor branch of the ulnar nerve may be compressed by the arch of origin of the adductor pollicis muscle at the point where the nerve crosses the third metacarpal or where the nerve penetrates the adductor muscle [306].

Palmaris brevis spasm syndrome has been described to occur following the prolonged use of a computer mouse and keyboard [207]. Electrophysiologic studies suggest a distal ulnar motor branch lesion.
Lesions of the Dorsal Cutaneous Branch of the Ulnar Nerve. The dorsal cutaneous branch arises above the wrist and winds medially around the ulna, deep to the tendon of the flexor carpi ulnaris muscle. It supplies the skin of the dorsum of the hand and the fifth finger. Damage to this branch may occur with blunt trauma, lacerations, handcuffs (handcuff neuropathy), wrist surgery, vein injection in addicts, and repetitive wrist movements in a person using a code-sensing machine at a checkout counter (pricer palsy) [130,144,331,332,391]. Nerve entrapment may occur where the nerve passes under the flexor carpi ulnaris tendon [120]. Pain and other sensory disturbances occur in the distribution of the nerve.

Lesions of the Palmar and Dorsal Digital Branches of the Ulnar Nerve. As noted above, the palmar digital nerves are the terminal branches of the median and ulnar nerves (Fig. 2.6). The superficial terminal branch of the ulnar nerve arises within the Guyon’s canal, passes into the hand, and divides into three palmar digital branches that supply the fifth digit and the ulnar half of the fourth digit (Fig. 2.6). Sensory loss and symptoms may affect the medial and lateral palmar aspects of the fifth digit and the ulnar half of the fourth digit, the ulnar aspect of the fourth digit and the medial half of the fifth digit, or the ulnar half of the fourth digit, the medial half of the fifth digit, or the ulnar half of the fifth digit in isolation, depending on the location of the nerve injury. The dorsal digital nerves are formed from the branches of the superficial radial and dorsal ulnar cutaneous nerves. The dorsal ulnar cutaneous nerve sends dorsal digital branches to the dorsum of the ulnar half of the fourth digit and the medial and lateral halves of the dorsum of the fifth digit (Fig. 2.8). Etiologies of palmar and dorsal digital neuropathies are as discussed under the section Lesions of the Palmar Digital Branches of the Median Nerve.

Pseudoulnar Nerve Palsy. Pseudoulnar nerve palsy refers to isolated hand weakness apparently in an ulnar distribution that is due to contralateral cerebral infarction in the white matter of the angular gyrus of
the inferior parietal lobe [376]. Patients with this condition are found to have contralateral carotid artery stenosis. Isolated “ulnar” sensory loss and hand weakness may also occur with infarction, affecting the contralateral precentral gyrus and anterior aspect of the postcentral gyrus [274], and pseudounar sensory loss may occur with small cortical infarction of the midportion of the postcentral gyrus [66].

Radial Nerve (C5–C8)

ANATOMY
The radial nerve, a mixed nerve, (Fig. 2.9) derives from the posterior cord of the brachial plexus and comprises fibers from the spinal levels C5–C8. After descending posterior to the axillary artery, between the long and medial heads of the triceps, it then continues distally in the spiral groove of the humerus (in contact with the bone or separated from it by some fibers of the medial head of the triceps).

In the axilla, the nerve gives rise to the posterior cutaneous nerve of the arm, which supplies the skin over the posterior aspect of the arm as far down as the olecranon. A secondary sensory branch, the posterior cutaneous nerve of the forearm, arises either within or proximal to the spiral groove and innervates the skin on the distal extensor aspect of the arm and that of the forearm up to the wrist. Within or proximal to the spiral groove, two motor branches are given off. They supply the following two muscles:

1. Triceps (C6–C8), a forearm extensor subserving the triceps reflex. This muscle is tested by having the patient extend the forearm at the elbow against resistance.
2. Anconeus (C6–C8), a forearm extensor.
Localization in Clinical Neurology

After its course in the spiral groove, the radial nerve reaches the lateral aspect of the humerus and pierces the lateral intermuscular septum to occupy a position in front of the lateral cord of the humerus between the brachialis and brachioradialis muscles. Here it supplies the following muscles:

1. **Brachialis** (C5–C6), an elbow flexor. It is also innervated by the musculocutaneous nerve.
2. **Brachioradialis** (C5–C6), a forearm flexor. It is tested by having the patient flex the forearm against resistance, with the forearm midway between pronation and supination. This muscle subserves the radial reflex.
3. **Extensor carpi radialis longus** (C5–C6), a radial extensor of the hand. It is tested by having the patient extend and abduct the hand against resistance.

The radial trunk then bifurcates into a superficial branch and a deep branch. The **superficial branch** passes over the origin of the extensor carpi radialis brevis and down the forearm under the brachioradialis. It emerges in the distal forearm, as the **dorsal digital nerve**, and supplies the skin on the dorsal aspect of the hand and the dorsum of the first four fingers (the autonomous zone of supply is the skin over the first interosseous space).

The **deep branch** passes through the fibrous edge of the extensor carpi radialis by means of a slit in the supinator muscle (arcade of Frohse) to the posterior forearm. In the forearm, it is in contact with the interosseous membrane and is referred to as the **posterior interosseous nerve**. This purely motor nerve innervates the following muscles:

1. **Supinator** (C6–C7), a forearm supinator that is tested by having the patient supinate the forearm against resistance.
2. **Extensor carpi radialis brevis** (C5–C6), a radial extensor of the hand.
3. **Extensor digitorum** (C7–C8), an extensor of the metacarpophalangeal joints of the second through the fifth fingers. It is tested by having the patient extend the metacarpophalangeal joints against resistance.
4. **Extensor digiti minimi** (C7–C8), an extensor of the metacarpophalangeal joint of the fifth finger.
5. **Extensor carpi ulnaris** (C7–C8), an ulnar extensor of the hand that is tested by having the patient extend and adduct the hand at the wrist against resistance.
6. **Abductor pollicis longus** (C7–C8), an abductor of the metacarpal of the thumb. It is tested by having the patient abduct the carpometacarpal joint in a plane at right angles to the palm.
7. **Extensor pollicis longus** (C7–C8), an extensor of the thumb. It is tested by extending the thumb at the interphalangeal joint in a plane at right angles to the palm.
8. **Extensor pollicis brevis** (C7–C8), an extensor of the thumb that is tested by having the patient extend the thumb at the metacarpophalangeal joint against resistance.
9. **Extensor indicis** (C7–C8), an extensor of the second finger.

**NERVE LESIONS**

**Lesions in the Axilla.** Lesions of the posterior cord of the brachial plexus or high axillary lesions (e.g., due to crutches, shoulder dislocation, missile injuries) affect all the sensory and motor branches of the radial nerve. Lesions of the radial nerve at this location have been described as being due to nerve injury from the “windmill” pitching motion of competitive softball (windmill pitcher’s radial neuropathy) [338]. The following symptoms are observed:

- **Abnormal appearance of the hand.** Characteristically, the hand hangs in flexion (wrist drop). There is wasting of the dorsal arm (triceps) and muscle mass on the posterior surface of the forearm.

- **Motor loss.** There is paresis or paralysis of extension of the elbow, extension of the wrist, supination of the forearm, extension of all five metacarpophalangeal joints, and extension and abduction of the interphalangeal joint of the thumb. Elbow flexion tends to be weak. Abduction of the fingers is weak because the dorsal interossei require wrist flexion for their proper action. Ulnar involvement might be mistakenly assumed from this finding.

- **Reflexes signs.** There is hyporeflexia or areflexia of the triceps (C5–C8) and radial (C5–C6) reflexes.

- **Sensory loss.** There are paresthesias and sensory loss on the entire extensor surface of the arm and forearm and on the back of the hand and dorsum of the first four fingers.

**Lesions of the Posterior Cutaneous Nerve of the Arm and Forearm.** Entrapment of the posterior cutaneous nerve of the arm resulting in burning and tingling over the lower posterior arm may occur when the arm is drawn across the front of the body and the elbow is vigorously extended [218]. This purely sensory syndrome is likely due to the nerve stretch by tension from the long head of the triceps with extension during the above maneuvers, but it could also be due to posterior cutaneous nerve entrapment by the lateral head of the triceps. Isolated injury of the posterior cutaneous nerve of the arm or forearm may also be caused by injection, tourniquet application, arm injuries, and surgical procedures [67,69,94].

**Lesions within the Spiral Groove of the Humerus.** Lesions at this location are usually due to...
humeral fractures [111] or compressive lesions [55] (Saturday night palsy). The most common presentation of acute retrohumeral compression is one in which the subject wakens, often from a deep sleep (made deeper and perhaps more protracted by alcohol or sedatives), to find that he or she is unable to extend the wrist [55]. Tourniquet paralysis of the radial nerve may also occur. Newborns may have radial neuromas related to fractures, lacerations, compression, or entrapment [103]. The radial nerve may also be entrapped by a musculotendinous arch of the lateral head of the triceps muscle [254] or damaged after repetitive arm exercise when a sudden forceful contraction and stretch of the arm muscles results in a delayed upper arm radial nerve palsy [362]. Soldiers may develop radial nerve palsies at the lateral border of the humerus after military shooting training owing to the persistent kneeling shooting posture [356]. The windmill pitching motion of competitive softball may also injure the nerve in the spiral groove (another form of windmill pitcher’s radial neuropathy) [338]. These patients have the same symptoms as those described previously for Lesions in the Axilla.

3. Sensibility on the extensor surface of the forearm 2. The radial reflex is spared. The brachioradialis and extensor carpi radialis longus muscles are spared. Patients with this condition have atrophy and paresis of the extensor carpi ulnaris, extensor digiti minimi, abductor pollicis longus, and brevis, and extensor indicis. Because the extensor carpi radialis is unaffected while the extensor carpi ulnaris is paretic, the wrist deviates radially, especially when the patient attempts to make a fist. The patient might explain the variable presence of brachialis weakness or sensory impairment, either of which may be absent [359].

Lesions distal to the spiral groove and to the site of origin of the brachioradialis and extensor carpi radialis longus (prior to the bifurcation of the nerve) have symptoms that are similar to those seen with a spiral groove lesion, with the following exceptions:

1. The brachioradialis and extensor carpi radialis longus muscles are spared.
2. The radial reflex is spared.
3. Sensibility on the extensor surface of the forearm (posterior cutaneous nerve of the forearm) is more likely to be spared.

Progressive, severe, painless radial neuropathy may occur as a delayed complication of chronic intramuscular injection [236]. In patients with these symptoms, an exploration of the radial nerve revealed multifocal entrapment within the densely fibrotic triceps muscle at sites between the spiral groove and the distal course of the radial nerve near the elbow (chronic injection-induced triceps fibrosis). Isolated bilateral radial neuropathies distal to the radial groove at the posterolateral humerus have been described in a newborn [214]. The postulated mechanism included fetal activity for reasons including reduced amniotic fluid volume.

Lesions at the Elbow. The posterior interosseous nerve (deep motor branch of the radial nerve) may be injured or entrapped at the elbow [76,106]. Entrapment may be caused by the following:

1. A constricting band at the radiohumeral joint capsule.
2. The sharp edge of the extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle.
3. A fibrotendinous arch where the nerve enters the supinator muscle (arcade of Frohse) [56,348].
4. Its occurrence within the substance of the supinator muscle (supinator channel syndrome).
5. Other etiologies [76], such as lacerations and gunshot wounds; closed injuries due to fractures of the proximal radius or both radius and ulna; chronic repeated trauma related to stressful supination and pronation in swimmers, frisbee players, tennis players, violinists, and orchestra conductors [106, 204,216]; nerve compression by the repetitive movements of the forearm (upholsterer’s posterior interosseous neuropathy) [402]; carrying a knapsack supported by a hyperpronated and extended wrist with the elbow in a flexed position (knapsack paralysis) [282]; the use of a Canadian (Lofstrand) crutch [118]; brachiocephalic arterial venous fistula constriction (due to severe compression from a hypertrophied venous limb of the arteriovenous fistula) [317]; iatrogenic due to radial head resection and injury secondary to tumor removal; rheumatoid arthritis [278]; local mass (e.g., lipoma, fibroma, ganglia, traumatic aneurysm of the posterior interosseous artery, chondroma, neurofibroma, schwannoma) [106,404]; and amyloid neuropathy with multiple myeloma [307].

When the posterior interosseous nerve is damaged at these locations, the supinator muscle and the superficial sensory branch of the radial nerve are often spared. Patients with this condition have atrophy and paresis of the extensor carpi ulnaris, extensor digitorum, extensor digiti minimi, abductor pollicis longus and brevis, and extensor indicis. Because the extensor carpi radialis is unaffected while the extensor carpi ulnaris is paretic, the wrist deviates radially, especially when the patient attempts to make a fist. The patient
has difficulty in extending the metacarpophalangeal joints of all five fingers (drop-finger deformity), extending the wrist in an ulnar direction, extending the interphalangeal joint of the thumb, and abducting the thumb. Occasionally, an isolated paralysis of the descending motor branch of the posterior interosseous nerve may occur (e.g., due to constriction in the distal portion of the supinator muscle), resulting in a “drop-thumb” deformity owing to paresis of the extensor pollicis longus and brevis and abductor pollicis longus (the extensor indicis may also be involved) [146]. Some patients with radial or posterior interosseus nerve palsy demonstrate apparent weakness of ulnar-innervated muscles, such as the dorsal and palmar interossei and the abductor digitii minimi muscles [311]. These muscles insert on the extensor expansions, and their activation is associated with concomitant contraction of finger flexors and extensors. This apparent weakness may be due to their unopposed traction on the extensor expansion by the paralyzed extensor digitorum [311].

A focal myopathy that causes weakness of extension of the right index, middle, and fourth fingers at the metacarpal–phalangeal joints with no sensory deficit, thereby mimicking a posterior interosseous nerve syndrome, has been described [102].

Lesions of the Superficial Branch of the Radial Nerve (Cheiralgia Paresthetica). The superficial cutaneous branch of the radial nerve may be injured anywhere along its location in the forearm, resulting in a pure sensory syndrome (paresthesias and sensory loss) that affects the radial part of the dorsum of the hand and the dorsal aspect of the first three-and-a-half fingers. This neuropathy is sometimes called Wartenberg’s syndrome or cheiralgia paresthetica. (The autonomous zone of sensory loss occurs on the area of skin covering the first interosseous space.) Radial sensory entrapment [87] usually occurs with crush or twisting injuries to the wrist or forearm or may follow repetitive pronation–supination movements required in certain occupations. Pain or burning over the dorsum of the wrist with this entrapment is aggravated by pinching and gripping activities, and a positive Tinel’s sign may occur with percussion over the radial sensory nerve, especially where it exits from the deep fascia. The hyperpronation provocative test (pronation of the forearm with the ulnar flexion of the wrist) is often positive. The superficial cutaneous branch may also be entrapped in the forearm between the tendons of the brachioradialis and extensor carpi radialis muscles (here the nerve transits from the deep to the superficial branch) [86,347]. The nerve may be injured by handcuffs compressing the nerve against the distal radius (a type of handcuff neuropathy) [130,224,361]; by compression from wristwatch bands, bracelets, roped hands, or a cast; by direct nerve trauma or forearm lacerations; by nerve tumors; or as a complication of de Quervain’s tenosynovectomy.

Lesions of the Dorsal Digital Nerves. As noted in the preceding text, the dorsal digital nerves are formed from the superficial radial nerve and the dorsal cutaneous branch of the ulnar nerve (Fig. 2.8). The dorsal digital nerves that arise from four or five terminal branches of the superficial branch of the radial nerve supply the dorsal aspect of the thumb (through two branches) and the dorsal aspects of the second and third digits and the medial fourth digit. Sensory signs and symptoms occur in the distribution of the involved branches. For example, paresthesias and sensory loss confined to the radial side of the thumb may occur with a lesion of the distal dorsal digital nerve (in the thumb) [229]. Etiologies of dorsal digital neuropathies are as described earlier under Lesions of the Palmar Digital Branches of the Median Nerve.

Pseudoradial Nerve Palsy. Isolated flaccid weakness of the hand, predominantly affecting the wrist extensors and causing wrist drop, may rarely be due to a cerebral cortical infarct located in the precentral “hand knob” area [19].

Medial Cutaneous Nerves of the Arm and Forearm (C8–T1)

ANATOMY
These two purely sensory branches arise from the medial cord of the brachial plexus. The medial cutaneous nerve of the arm supplies the skin of the axilla and the medial part of the arm. The medial cutaneous nerve of the forearm divides above the elbow into anterior and posterior divisions that supply the skin of the anteromedial and posteromedial forearms, respectively, down to the wrist.

NERVE LESIONS
Injuries to the medial cutaneous nerve of the arm and forearm nerves may occur in the axilla, affecting the medial cord of the brachial plexus. A sensory loss occurs in the distribution of the individual nerve branches. The medial cutaneous nerve of the forearm may be affected in isolation by a stretch injury or by injury due to the placement of an arterial graft [68]. The nerve may also be damaged as a complication of an ulnar nerve surgery at the elbow [85].

Intercostobrachial Nerve (T2)
The intercostobrachial nerve arises as the lateral cutaneous branch of the second intercostal nerve. It crosses the axilla and the medial side of the arm within the subcutaneous tissue supplying the skin of these regions. The axilla is part of the T-1 and T-2, and perhaps T-3 dermatomes. The intercostobrachial
nerve is formed by predominantly T-2 fibers. Nerve injury results in pain and dysesthesia in the axilla and medial arm. Similar axillary sensory impairment can be caused by radiculopathies involving the upper thoracic roots, C-8 and T-1 root avulsions, and lower trunk brachial plexopathies, but the sensory disturbance with these lesions will involve surrounding areas in the corresponding dermatome and also are frequently accompanied by pain, weakness, and sometimes involvement of sympathetic fibers.

The intercostal brachial nerve is possibly the largest sensory nerve in the body and damage to the nerve may occur often following surgeries for breast cancer and axillary lymphadenectomy [51, 217, 370, 372]. Less frequently it can be injured from anesthesia for procedures in the arm, compression by a tourniquet or mechanical pressure therapy devices, entrapment, nerve traction, neoplastic compression or invasion, and radiotherapy [23, 167, 199, 217, 220, 370, 405]. A case of intercostobrachial mononeuropathy has been described caused by compression of the nerve in the axilla induced by pulling an unconscious woman by the axilla [220].

**Ilioinguinal (T12–L1), Ilioinguinal (L1), and Genitofemoral (L1–L2) Nerves**

**ANATOMY AND NERVE LESIONS**

The mixed iliohypogastric nerve arises from the anterior rami of spinal root segments T12 and L1. The nerve runs across the psoas muscle and then behind the kidney, crossing the quadratus lumborum muscle and reaching the iliac crest. It then pierces the internal oblique and transversus abdominis muscles, both of which it supplies. It terminates in the lateral cutaneous branch a sensory nerve that supplies the skin over the outer buttock and hip, and the anterior cutaneous branch a sensory branch that supplies the anterior abdominal wall above the pubis.

This nerve may be injured in the lumbar plexus, at the posterior or anterior abdominal wall, or distally near the inguinal ring. Lesions of this nerve result in little motor deficit but lead to pain or sensory loss in the area of the cutaneous supply of the nerve. Painful iliohypogastric neuropathies are not uncommon after lower abdominal surgery [365].

The mixed ilioinguinal nerve arises from the anterior ramus of the first lumbar spinal segment within the psoas muscle. It runs laterally and downward, parallel with the iliohypogastric nerve, to reach the iliac crest. This nerve, such as the iliohypogastric, supplies the internal oblique and transversus abdominis muscles. After piercing these two muscles, it enters the inguinal canal and passes to the superficial inguinal ring, from which its sensory fibers emerge. These fibers are distributed to the skin of the medial thigh below the inguinal ligament as well as to the skin of the symphysis pubis and the external genitalia.

This nerve may be injured in the lumbar plexus, at the posterior abdominal wall, at the anterior abdominal wall, or within the inguinal canal. Painful ilioinguinal neuropathies are not uncommon after lower abdominal surgery (e.g., hemiorrhaphy or appendectomy) [82, 354, 365], and entrapment of the nerve as it passes through the muscles of the abdominal wall, medial to the anterior superior iliac spine, has been described [198]. Neuropathy may occur after pregnancy, likely due to the stretching of the nerve [36, 339]. Lower abdominal and inguinal pain and paresthesias in professional ice hockey players were found to be due to multiple tears of the external oblique muscle and aponeurosis causing ilioinguinal nerve entrapment [202]. Lesions of this nerve cause the ilioinguinal syndrome, which consists of pain and sensory loss in the inguinal region. Motor findings are negligible.

Although the ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerves typically lie outside the gynecologic field of operation, they may become susceptible to injury when the Pfannenstiel incision is extended beyond the lateral border of the rectus abdominis muscle, into the substance of the internal oblique muscle [160]. The symptoms are attributed to suture incorporation of the nerve during fascial repair, direct nerve trauma with subsequent neuroma formation, or neural constriction as a result of the normal scarring and healing processes. The diagnostic triad for ilioinguinal/iliohypogastric nerve postsurgical entrapment syndrome consists of the following [160]:

1. Sharp, burning pain emanating from the incision site and radiating to the suprapubic, labial, or thigh areas
2. Paresthesia over the appropriate nerve distribution
3. Pain relief after infiltration with a local anesthetic

The onset of symptoms may be immediate or may occur months to years after the offending surgical procedure. The symptoms are exacerbated as a result of stretching, coughing, sneezing, and valsalva and can be relieved with hip flexion or by adopting a stooped posture when ambulating [160].

In a study of 33 patients with ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric neuralgias, 29 (88%) of them had injuries from iatrogenic causes, and four (12%) had injuries caused by blunt trauma [186]. In the 23 isolated ilioinguinal neuralgias, operation associated with neuralgias in 13 (57%) was a hemiorrhaphy followed by four (17%) after an appendectomy and three (13%) after a hysterectomy. Three (13%) patients had neuralgias resulting from blunt trauma. Nine (90%) of 10 ilioinguinal-iliohypogastric lesions were caused by iatrogenic causes, and 1 (10%) neuralgia resulted from blunt trauma [186]. In another
study of 264 cases of neuralgia of the pelvic plexus and nerves treated surgically, 25 were cases of solely ilioinguinal neuralgia and 24 were cases of combined ilioinguinal neuralgias [384]. Of these, iatrogenic injury was the most common etiology.

The genitofemoral nerve, a predominantly sensory nerve, arises from the first and second lumbar segments within the substance of the psoas muscle. It traverses the psoas muscle and, near the inguinal ligament, divides into two branches: external spermatic (genital branch) and ilioinguinal (femoral branch). The external spermatic (genital) branch (mainly L1) enters the deep inguinal ring, traverses the inguinal canal, and ends in the cremaster muscle and skin of the scrotum (or labia majoris) and adjacent medial thigh. The ilioinguinal (femoral) branch (mainly L2) passes behind the inguinal ligament lateral to the femoral artery and supplies the skin of the upper thigh over the femoral triangle.

Injury to this nerve may occur in the lumbar plexus, within the abdomen, or in the femoral or inguinal region [82,251,354] (e.g., after inguinal herniorrhaphy, appendectomy, cesarean section, hysterectomy, vasectomy, blunt abdominal trauma, and even due to wearing tight jeans [259]). Among 30 patients undergoing herniorrhaphy, 14 (47%) showed motor involvement of the genitofemoral nerve on electrophysiologic studies, whereas 6 of 26 (23%) patients not treated surgically had involvement of this nerve [20]. These findings indicate that subclinical motor involvement of the genitofemoral nerve is common after inguinal herniorrhaphy, but the herniated mass itself may also be responsible for motor involvement of this nerve in some patients before surgery. Postoperative injury to this nerve is most likely to occur during the removal of a large pelvic mass adherent to the sidewall or when biopsy or removal of the external iliac lymph nodes is performed [160]. Injury causes pain (genitofemoral neuralgia) and sensory loss in the area of the cutaneous supply of the nerve. The cremasteric reflex, which is subserved by this nerve, may be lost on the side of the nerve lesion.

Femoral Nerve (L2–L4)

ANATOMY

The femoral nerve, a mixed nerve, (Fig. 2.10) arises within the substance of the psoas muscle from the posterior rami of the second, third, and fourth lumbar segments. The nerve runs in the groove between the psoas and iliacus muscles (flexors of the thigh, both of which it supplies) and descends beneath the inguinal ligament (lateral to the femoral artery) to enter the thigh. Just distal to the inguinal ligament within the femoral triangle, it separates into the anterior and posterior divisions. The anterior division divides almost immediately into a muscular branch (to the sartorius muscle, a flexor, and evertor of the thigh) and a sensory branch, the anterior femoral cutaneous nerve that supplies the skin of the anterior and medial aspects of the thigh. The anterior cutaneous branch further divides into the intermediate femoral cutaneous nerve and the medial femoral cutaneous nerve. The medial femoral cutaneous nerve has an anterior branch that innervates the anteromedial thigh and a posterior branch that innervates the medial aspect of the leg just below the knee. The posterior division of the femoral nerve immediately divides into the sensory saphenous nerve and muscular branches. The muscular branches of the posterior division of the femoral nerve supply the following muscles:

1. Pectineus muscle (L2–L3), an adductor, flexor, and evertor of the thigh.
2. Quadriceps femoris muscle (L2–L4), an extensor of the leg. It is tested by having the patient extend the leg against resistance with the extremity flexed at the hip and knee. This muscle is also, particularly through the rectus femoris, an extensor of the thigh. The tendon of this muscle subserves the patellar reflex.

The saphenous nerve descends to the knee in the adductor (Hunter’s) canal, accompanied by the femoral artery, and becomes cutaneous between the tendons of the sartorius and gracilis muscles. It then joins the great saphenous vein and proceeds to the medial aspect of the lower leg as far as the medial malleolus.

NERVE LESIONS

The most common cause of femoral neuropathy is trauma, usually iatrogenic [184,200]. Common iatrogenic causes include inguinal herniorrhaphy, total hip replacement, intraabdominal vascular or gynecologic operations, and, less commonly, appendectomy, lumbar sympathectomy, laparoscopic procedures and inadvertent suturing of the nerve during abdominal hysterectomy [160,184,200,320]. A proximal femoral neuropathy may occur with pelvic surgery (e.g., hysterectomy) owing to the direct pressure exerted by the retractor blades or by an indirect compression of the nerve by compression of the adjacent psoas muscle by the tip of a retractor blade; the neuropathy may be bilateral [201]. In one study, improper placement of self-retaining or fixed retractors was the most common cause of femoral nerve injury arising in association with abdominal surgical procedures [160]. Unilateral or bilateral femoral neuropathy may also occur after surgery or childbirth in the lithotomy position, likely due to the compression of the nerve against the inguinal ligament or the excessive stretch of the nerve by abduction and external rotation of the
During the lithotomy position, the patient's thighs are extended and abducted, resulting in an 80- to 90-degree extreme angulation of the femoral nerve beneath the unyielding inguinal ligament and subsequent compression injury [160]. Awareness of what constitutes proper lithotomy positioning preoperatively, and assurance that patients are appropriately positioned before initiating the procedure, will serve to significantly reduce the risk of both sciatic nerve injury (see subsequent text) and femoral nerve injury intraoperatively [160].

In a study of 264 cases of neuralgia of the pelvic plexus and nerves treated surgically, 119 patients underwent surgical

**FIG. 2.10.** The femoral nerve.
Femoral neuropathy may also follow renal transplantation with possible pathophysiology including direct nerve compression and nerve ischemia [329]. A pseudoneuromas of the profounda superficial, caused by cardiac catheterization or percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty, may cause femoral nerve compression [166]. Femoral nerve damage may also occur in the course of renal transplantation owing to hematoma at the operative site [340]. Iliopsoas hemorrhage due to anticoagulation or hemophilia may damage the femoral nerve and is associated with deep loin, back, and groin pain as well as neuralgic pain in a femoral cutaneous distribution [200]. Delayed femoral neuropathy may also occur after inguinal radiation (usually developing 12–16 months after treatment) and is associated with a palpable mass of dense scar in the groin [203]. In intravenous drug abusers, iliopectineal infarction and acute femoral neuropathy may occur; this femoral involvement may be due to ischemia, inflammation, or compression of the nerve along its course through the iliopsoas muscle [173].

Femoral nerve injury may also be due to penetrating gunshot and stab wounds, blunt injuries, lacerations, femoral artery cannulation, and stretch or contusion injuries associated with pelvic fractures [184,200]. Acute stretch injuries may occur in gymnasts or dancers performing hyperextension hip exercises [237]. Tumors, including neurofibromas, schwannomas, sarcomas, ganglion cysts, leiomyosarcoma, metastases, and abscesses may also injure the nerve [184]. A large synovial cyst of the underlying hip joint in the extrapelvic part of the iliopsoas and external obturator muscles resulted in combined femoral and obturator nerve compression in one patient [366]. Ischemic neuropathy of the femoral nerve may occur in patients with diabetes. A localized hypertrophic mononeuropathy of the femoral nerve with progressive weakness and atrophy of the thigh has also been described [369].

Severe, combined, bilateral femoral and sciatic neuropathies have been described in the context of alcohol intoxication (‘hanging leg syndrome’) [318]. The findings were consistent with severe bilateral femoral neuropathies localizing to the inguinal ligaments combined with severe bilateral proximal sciatic neuropathies corresponding to the sites of compression near the glutal sulci. The suspected mechanism of femoral nerve injury is traction and compression of the inguinal nerve segment as it passes over the fulcrum of the superior pubic ramus.

A proximal lesion of the femoral nerve (e.g., at the lumbar plexus or within the pelvis) results in the following signs:

1. **Atrophy.** There is wasting of the musculature of the anterior part of the thigh.
2. **Motor signs.** There is weakness or paralysis of hip flexion (iliacus, psoas, and rectus femoris muscles) and an inability to extend the leg (quadriceps femoris). With paralysis of the sartorius muscle, lateral thigh rotation may be impaired.
3. **Sensory symptoms and signs.** Sensory loss, paresthesias, and, occasionally, pain occur on the anteromedial thigh and inner leg as far as the ankle.
4. **Reflex signs.** The patellar reflex is depressed or absent.

Lesions at the inguinal ligament result in similar findings, but thigh flexion is spared because of the more proximal origin of the femoral nerve branches to the iliacus and psoas muscles. A purely motor syndrome (quadriceps atrophy and paresis) may result from lesions within the femoral triangle that affect the posterior division of the femoral nerve distal to the origin of the saphenous branch. For example, isolated quadriceps paresis and atrophy may be due to localized nerve injury in weight lifters [44], selective atrophy of the distal portion of the vastus lateralis muscle followed by distal branch neuropathy due to stretching and compression of the nerve during strenuous exercise [265], and a muscle biopsy caused distal wasting of the vastus lateralis by injuring the distal femoral nerve [337]. Unilateral or bilateral anterior femoral cutaneous nerve injury, clinically sparing femoral branches to the saphenous nerve and quadriceps muscles, may occur following surgical dissection in the femoral triangles with femoral artery reconstructive surgery [32]. This purely sensory syndrome manifests by anterior-medial thigh pain and numbness and may occur after aortofemoral bypass graft surgery and other types of femoral artery reconstructive surgery. Isolated medial femoral cutaneous neuropathy, resulting in paresthesias and dysesthesias over the anteromedial thigh, after penetrating injury to the anteromedial aspect of the thigh has been described [209].

A purely sensory syndrome (pain, paresthesias, and sensory loss) may result when the saphenous nerve alone is damaged. The nerve may be entrapped proximally in the thigh by fibrous bands or branches of femoral vessels [250]. Isolated saphenous involvement may occur with femoral thrombectomy and femoral-popliteal bypass surgery [4] and after popliteal vein aneurysm resection with saphenous vein interposition [333]. Schwannomas of the nerve may develop in the thigh [99]. Spontaneous...
saphenous neuralgia [213] may result from nerve compromise in the subsartorial canal where the nerve crosses the femoral artery superficially and penetrates the roof of the canal. Medial knee and leg pain result, and tenderness over the subsartorial canal is present. The saphenous nerve may be damaged at the knee after medial arthroscopy or arthroscopy, in association with coronary artery bypass graft surgery, and by lacerations [205]. This nerve is most susceptible to injury where it pierces the aponeurotic roof of the adductor canal above the knee. Surfers who sit astride their boards and grip the boards between their knees may develop nerve compression (surfer's neuropathy) [105]. A meniscal cyst can compress the nerve at the knee [394]. In all these syndromes, the only sign is a sensory disturbance that affects the medial side of the lower leg.

Damage to the infrapatellar branch of the saphenous nerve results in numbness and paresthesias in the skin over the patella (gonyalgia paresthetica) [223]. When bending the knee, occasional pins-and-needles sensations are produced. Gonyalgia paresthetica usually develops insidiously without acute trauma and is often accompanied by sharp pain below and lateral to the knee. The infrapatellar branch may be injured during arthroscopy or other knee operations, by accidental trauma, or by nerve compression [154].

Obturator Nerve (L2–L4)

ANATOMY

The obturator nerve, a mixed nerve, (Fig. 2.11) arises from the anterior primary rami of the second, third,
NERVE LESIONS
The obturator nerve may be damaged within the lumbar plexus, near the sacroiliac joint, on the lateral pelvic wall, or within the obturator canal. Obturator neuropathy may result from orthopedic, gynecological, or urological procedures or injuries [192]. Nerve damage may occur with obturator hernia, after cancer surgery in the pelvis, secondary to iliofemoral hemorrhage, with pelvic fractures, with pelvic trauma, after pelvic surgery, after femoral artery procedures, after bilateral total knee arthroplasty with prolonged tourniquet use, and after hip surgery (e.g., due to nerve traction or encasement of the nerve by a spur of methylmethacrylate cement) [233,344]. From a gynecologic standpoint, the obturator nerve is most frequently injured during retroperitoneal surgery for gynecologic malignancies or endometriosis [160]. The node-bearing tissues of the obturator space obscure the location of the obturator nerve and predispose it to injury. Obturator nerve injury can also occur at the time of paravaginal defect repair, performed to address symptomatic lateral displacement cystocele [160]. Bilateral obturator nerve injuries may occur during urologic surgery owing to prolonged hip flexion, resulting in the stretching of each nerve at the bony obturator foramen [270]. Prolonged or difficult labor may cause neuropathy by the compression of the nerve between the fetal head and the bony pelvic wall [389]. Other etiologies of neuropathy include endometriosis, obturator hernias, lipomatosis of the nerve, nerve sheath tumors, obturator nerve ganglion, metastasis to the obturator canal, myositis ossificans, and nerve entrapment by thickened fascia overlying the adductor brevis muscle described in athletes [49,50, 242,257,290,321,323,344]. A large synovial cyst of the underlying hip joint in the extrapelvic part of the iliofemoral and external obturator muscles resulted in combined femoral and obturator nerve compression in one patient [366].

Obturator mononeuropathy in cancer patients is rare, but it may be the sole presenting sign of new or recurrent pelvic tumor or may occur as a complication of tumor surgery [169,298,316]. Tumor sites on pelvic computed tomography scan that correlate with obturator nerve compression or infiltration include the posterolateral wall of the upper pelvis or midpelvis, the anterior wall of the lower pelvis, and the external obturator and pectineus muscles extrinsic to the bony pelvis [298].

Patients with obturator neuropathy complain of leg weakness and cannot stabilize the hip joint. Nerve lesions result in wasting of the musculature of the inner aspect of the thigh, paresis of adduction of the thigh, and a sensory disturbance affecting the medial aspect of the thigh.

Obturator neuralgia, consisting of pain radiating from the obturator nerve territory to the inner thigh, may occur from compression of the obturator nerve in the obturator canal [295]. The pain is characterized by its localization in the inguinal region and anterointernal side of the thigh, going down to the internal side of the knee. It is worse when standing or in a monopodal stance and walking may cause the pain and a limp.

Lateral Femoral Cutaneous Nerve (L2–L3)
ANATOMY
The lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, a purely sensory nerve, (Fig. 2.11) derives from the primary rami of the second and third lumbar segments within the substance of the psoas muscle. It penetrates the psoas and crosses the iliacus muscle to the anterior superior iliac spine. It then passes medially to the spine beneath the inguinal ligament and enters the thigh beneath the fascia lata. The nerve runs downward and divides into two branches: the anterior division, which supplies the skin of the anterior thigh to the knee, and the posterior division, which supplies the skin of the upper half of the lateral aspect of the thigh.

NERVE LESIONS
The nerve is often damaged within the abdomen (e.g., by iliofemoral hemorrhage) or in the inguinal region [168]. Prolonged sitting in the lotus position may cause a lateral femoral cutaneous neuropathy (a form of lotus neuropathy) [227]. Compression or angulation of the nerve by the inguinal ligament near the anterior superior iliac spine may result in acute or subacute pain and paresthesias along an oval area on the lateral or anterolateral aspect of the thigh. These paresthesias are associated with sensory loss in the cutaneous distribution of the lateral femoral
cutaneous nerve (meralgia [meros, thigh; algos, pain] paresthetica or Bernard-Huet-Roth syndrome) [252,390, 400]. This sensory syndrome occurs especially in obese individuals who wear constricting garments (e.g., corsets, carpenters’ belts) and may be bilateral. Tight-fitting pants (e.g., hip-huggers) may be a precipitating factor for meralgia paresthetica, especially in thin persons with an aberrant pathway of the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve [268]. Meralgia paresthetica has also been reported from seat-belt trauma; after long-distance walking or cycling, iliac bone procurement for grafting, after abdominal surgery including abdominal hysterectomy by a suprapubic approach (thought to be due to prolonged postprocedure hip flexion to relieve the abdominal incisional pain); as a complication of a groin flap or renal surgery; after trauma; after total hip arthroplasty or cerebral; after heart surgery; after injection; lacerations, falls onto the buttocks, or with malignant tumor of the psoas muscle [12,25,35,37,164,182,384]. Nerve injury at the time of pelvic surgery may result from the inappropriate placement of lateral retractor blades associated with self-retaining or fixed retractors [160].

Seror and Seror reported the clinical and electrophysiological examinations in 131 cases of meralgia paresthetica among 120 unselected patients, 69 men and 51 women, aged 15 to 81 years [328]. All patients experienced permanent or intermittent pain and all but one had permanent sensory impairment of the thigh. The lateral aspect of the thigh was solely involved in 88 cases and the anterior aspect was also or exclusively involved in 32 cases. The right thigh was involved 62 times and the left 58 times. Symptom duration varied from 2 weeks to 20 years. Two cases had undergone previous spine surgery for presumed disk herniation with no benefit. A precise cause could explain the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve lesion in 46 cases, the other 74 cases being considered idiopathic (25% of patients were obese) [328].

**Gluteal Nerves (L4–S2)**

**ANATOMY AND NERVE LESIONS**
The gluteal nerves, purely motor nerves (Fig. 2.12) include the superior gluteal (from rami L4–S1) and inferior gluteal (from rami L5–S2) nerves, which supply the musculature of the buttocks. The **superior gluteal nerve** leaves the pelvis by way of the greater sciatic notch above the piriformis muscle (suprapiriform foramen) to supply the gluteus medius (L4–S1), gluteus minimus (L4–S1), and tensor fasciae latae (L4–S1) muscles, which are abductors and internal rotators of the thigh. These muscles are especially important in maintaining the horizontal plane of the pelvis during walking.

Lesions of the superior gluteal nerve may occur within the lumbosacral plexus, pelvis, greater sciatic foramen, or buttock. Etiologies of superior gluteal neuropathy include hip surgery, pelvic or hip trauma, hip fracture or dislocation, iliac artery aneurysm, fall on the buttock, injection, and entrapment of the nerve between the tendinous edge of the piriformis muscle and the ilium [2,132,287,288,373,401]. On walking, the pelvis tilts toward the side of the unaffected raised leg (Trendelenburg’s sign). There is paresis or paralysis of thigh abduction and medial rotation. Isolated complete paralysis of the tensor fasciae latae may develop secondary to intramuscular injection [249].

The **inferior gluteal nerve** leaves the pelvis by way of the greater sciatic notch below the piriformis muscle (infra piriform foramen), at which point it is near the sciatic nerve and the posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh. This nerve sends its branches to the gluteus maximus muscle (L5–S2), the main hip extensor, which is tested by having the patient extend the thigh against resistance.

The inferior gluteal nerve may be injured within the lumbosacral plexus, pelvis, greater sciatic foramen, or buttock. Nerve palsy results in paresis or paralysis of hip extension, which is most noticeable when the patient attempts to climb stairs.

Mononeuropathies of inferior and superior gluteal nerves due to hypertrophy of piriformis muscle have been described in a basketball player [243].

**Posterior Femoral Cutaneous Nerve (S1–S3)**

**ANATOMY AND NERVE LESIONS**
The posterior femoral cutaneous nerve, a purely sensory nerve arises from the anterior primary rami of the first through the third sacral segments. It leaves the pelvis through the greater sciatic notch and descends into the buttock deep into the gluteus muscle. It supplies the skin of the posterior thigh and popliteal fossa.

Damage to this nerve (which may occur in the sacral plexus, greater sciatic foramen, or buttock) results in a sensory disturbance in the cutaneous area of supply of the nerve. Neuropathy may be due to injections, lacerations, falls onto the buttocks, presacral tumors, and prolonged bicycle riding [14,162,188]. Posterior femoral cutaneous neuralgia due to a venous malformation consists of attacks of pain in the lateral scrotum, posterolateral perineum, and posterior thigh to the popliteal fossa [72].

**Pudendal Nerve (S1–S4)**

**ANATOMY AND NERVE LESIONS**
The pudendal nerve originates from the anterior rami of the first through the fourth sacral segments. It leaves the pelvis through the greater sciatic notch below the piriformis muscle (infra piriform foramen) and reaches the
before turning to reenter the pelvis through the lesser sciatic foramen. It is at this point that the surgeon can unknowingly entrap the pudendal nerve within the suture used to secure the apex of the vagina to the ipsilateral sacrospinous ligament. Incorporation of the pudendal nerve within this suture will result in immediate or delayed postoperative gluteal pain and associated perineal anesthesia or paresthesia [160]. Motor abnormalities are usually absent.

The pudendal nerve may be injured by buttock injections, pelvic fractures, hip surgery, and prolonged bicycle riding (pedaller’s penis) [128, 145, 234]. Nerve compression by pelvic varices has also been described [248]. Lesions of this nerve produce a sensory disturbance in the cutaneous area of supply of these nerves, erectile impotence, and difficulty with bladder and bowel control. Injury to the pudendal nerve at the time of vaginal surgery usually occurs in association with sacrospinous ligament fixation for vaginal vault prolapse [160]. As the pudendal nerve exits the pelvis via the greater sciatic foramen, it runs directly behind the lateral one-third of the sacrospinous ligament before turning to reenter the pelvis through the lesser sciatic foramen. It is at this point that the surgeon can unknowingly entrap the pudendal nerve within the suture used to secure the apex of the vagina to the ipsilateral sacrospinous ligament. Incorporation of the pudendal nerve within this suture will result in immediate or delayed postoperative gluteal pain and associated perineal anesthesia or paresthesia [160]. Motor abnormalities are usually absent.

**Sciatic Nerve (L4–S3) and Its Branches**

**SCIATIC NERVE PROPER**
The sciatic nerve, a mixed nerve (Fig. 2.12), the largest in the body, derives from the fourth and fifth lumbar and the first and second sacral spinal segments. It emerges from the sacral plexus and leaves the pelvis...
through the greater sciatic foramen below the piri-
formis muscle (infra-piriform foramen). The nerve
then curves laterally and downward beneath the glu-
teus maximus muscle; in the posterior aspect of the
thigh, it innervates the semitendinosus (L4–S2),
semimembranosus (L4–S2), and biceps femoris
(L4–S2) muscles (i.e., the hamstring muscles, which
are flexors of the knee joint) and the adductor mag-
nus (L2–L4) muscle, an adductor of the thigh (which
is also supplied by the obturator nerve). The nerve
proceeds downward in the thigh, and at the apex of
the popliteal fossa, it divides into its two terminal
branches, the tibial (medial popliteal) nerve (L4–S3)
and the common peroneal (lateral popliteal) nerve
(L4–S2).

**TIBIAL NERVE**
The tibial nerve (Fig. 2.13) crosses the middle of the
popliteal space and courses down the back of the leg.
In the popliteal fossa, it gives off the medial sural
cutaneous nerve. This branch supplies the skin on the
calf and then joins the lateral sural cutaneous nerve.

---

**FIG. 2.13.** The tibial nerve.
Localization in Clinical Neurology

(a branch of the common peroneal) at the level of the Achilles tendon, forming the sural nerve. The sural nerve supplies the skin on the lateral heel and lateral aspect of the foot and small toe. In the distal popliteal fossa, the tibial nerve sends branches to the gastrocnemius (S1–S2) and soleus (S1–S2) muscles, which are the main plantar flexors of the foot, and to the popliteus and plantaris muscles. The nerve then descends in a plane between the gastrocnemius and soleus muscles posteriorly and the tibialis posterior anteriorly. Here it gives off branches to the following three muscles:

1. Tibialis posterior (L4–L5), a plantar flexor and inverter of the foot. It is tested by having the patient invert the foot against resistance or walk on the toes. Inversion should be tested with the foot in complete plantar flexion, thereby eliminating the action of the tibialis anterior.
2. Flexor digitorum longus (L5–S2), a plantar flexor of the foot and of all the toes except the large toe. It is tested by having the patient flex the toes against resistance.
3. Flexor hallucis longus (S1–S2), a plantar flexor of the foot and that of the terminal phalanx of the great toe. It is tested by having the patient plantar flex the great toe against resistance.

The tibial nerve then passes inferior to the medial malleolus along with the tendons of the tibialis posterior, flexor hallucis longus, and flexor digitorum longus muscles and the posterior tibial artery and vein. At this location, the laciniate ligament roofs over these structures to form a fibroosseous tunnel (the tarsal tunnel). Within the tunnel the nerve divides into the medial plantar, the lateral plantar, and the median calcaneal nerves [269]. The medial plantar nerve (S1–S2) supplies the skin of the medial two-thirds of the sole of the foot and innervates the abductor hallucis, flexor digitorum brevis, flexor hallucis, and the first two lumbricals of the foot. The lateral plantar nerve (S1–S2) carries sensation to the lateral third of the foot and innervates the abductor digiti minimi pedis, flexor digiti minimi, adductor hallucis, interossei, and the third and fourth lumbricals of the foot. The median calcaneal branch supplies the skin of the medial aspect of the heel.

COMMON PERONEAL NERVE

The common peroneal nerve (Fig. 2.14) gives off the lateral sural cutaneous nerve in the popliteal fossa. This branch joins the medial sural cutaneous nerve (from the tibial nerve) to form the sural nerve. In the popliteal fossa, the common peroneal also gives off the lateral cutaneous nerve of the calf, which descends along the lateral head of the gastrocnemius muscle to supply the skin on the lateral aspect of the leg below the knee. The common peroneal nerve then rounds the head of the fibula and enters the substance of the peroneus longus muscle, where it divides into two branches: the deep peroneal (anterior tibial) nerve and the superficial peroneal nerve. The deep peroneal nerve gives motor branches to the following four muscles:

1. Tibialis anterior (L4–L5), a dorsiflexor and inverter of the foot. It is tested by having the patient dorsiflex the foot against resistance or walk on the heels.
2. Extensor hallucis longus (L5–S1), an extensor of the great toe and dorsiflexor of the foot. It is tested by having the patient dorsiflex the distal phalanx of the big toe against resistance.
3. Extensor digitorum longus (L5–S1), an extensor of the four lateral toes and dorsiflexor of the foot. It is tested by having the patient dorsiflex the toes against resistance.
4. Extensor digitorum brevis (L5–S1), an extensor of the large toe and three medial toes. It is tested by having the patient dorsiflex the proximal phalanges of the toes against resistance.

The terminal branch of the deep peroneal nerve passes under the tendon of the extensor hallucis longus on the dorsum of the foot and, after supplying the extensor digitorum brevis, innervates the skin on the first interosseous space and the adjacent skin of the sides of the first and second toes.

The superficial peroneal nerve supplies the peroneus longus and brevis muscles (L5–S1), which are plantar flexors and evertors of the foot. These are tested by having the patient evert the foot against resistance. The nerve terminates as a sensory terminal branch, which innervates the skin of the lateral distal portion of the lower leg and the dorsum of the foot and toes (except the first interosseous space).

In 20% to 28% of individuals, the lateral part of the extensor digitorum brevis (which extends to the fourth and fifth digits) is supplied by an accessory deep peroneal nerve [90,136,353], which is a branch of the superficial peroneal nerve. This branch reaches the extensor digitorum brevis by winding around the lateral malleolus.

An anomaly of innervation involving the proximal tibial nerve, common peroneal nerve, and sural nerve has been described [156,276]. Nerve fibers from the tibial nerve crossed over to join the common peroneal nerve in the popliteal fossa. In this case, the sural nerve was found to arise totally from the common peroneal nerve. The patient (who had suffered injury to the common peroneal nerve at the knee) had evidence of some activity (on electrophysiologic testing) in the peroneus longus muscle with otherwise complete paralysis of all common
peroneal innervated muscles [136,276]. Also, an all tibial foot has been described in which the tibial nerve innervated the tibialis anterior muscle along with the peroneal nerve, innervated the extensor digitorum brevis muscle, and coinnervated the skin between the first and second toes with the deep peroneal nerve [405].

NERVE LESIONS

Lesions of the Sciatic Nerve Proper. The sciatic nerve is frequently damaged in the sacral plexus, the pelvis, the gluteal region, or at the sciatic notch. Nerve injury may occur with fracture dislocation of the hip [107], with apophyseal avulsion fracture [349], after penetrating injury [297], after pelvic cancer or hip joint surgery (because of traction or a projecting spur of methylmethacrylate [46,100,125, 409], with compression by a heterotopic ossification [1], with infections (e.g., herpes simplex or zoster), after radiation therapy [280], with gluteal hemorrhage, or after intramuscular injection [193]. With injection, motor fibers are more susceptible than sensory fibers, and the peroneal division of the sciatic nerve is more severely injured because of its lateral position. Injury to the sciatic nerve may rarely occur at the time of laparotomy and generally results from sudden and unexpected pelvic hemorrhage requiring the placement of large mattress sutures deep within the lateral pelvis to control the bleeding [160]. Such an injury has also been reported in association with the laterally extended endopelvic resection technique, which is required at the time of exenterative pelvic surgery. In patients undergoing vaginal surgery, maximal tension on the sciatic nerve and subsequent traction-induced sciatic neuropathy occur when patients are positioned in lithotomy with

![FIG. 2.14. The peroneal nerve.](image-url)
Localization in Clinical Neurology

High sciatic lesions result in the following signs (high thigh lesions may selectively involve peroneal fibers):

1. **Deformity.** A *flail foot* is present because of paralysis of the dorsiflexors and plantar flexors of the foot. When the leg is passively lifted, the foot is plantar flexed and inverted (*foot drop*), but it also dorsiflexes loosely when the foot is passively moved back and forth.

2. **Atrophy.** There is wasting of the hamstrings and all the muscles below the knee.

3. **Motor signs.** There is paresis or paralysis of knee flexion (hamstrings), foot eversion (peronei), foot inversion (tibialis anterior), foot dorsiflexion (tibialis anterior and anterior leg musculature), foot plantar flexion (gastrocnemius and soleus), toe dorsiflexion (extensors of the toes), and toe plantar flexion (plantar flexors of the toes).

4. **Reflex signs.** There is a decrease or absence of the Achilles reflex (S1–S2), which is subserved by the tibial nerve.

5. **Sensory signs.** There are sensory changes (paresthesias and sensory loss) on the outer aspect of the leg and the dorsal of the foot (common peroneal distribution) and on the sole and the inner aspect of the foot (tibial nerve). The skin of the medial leg as far as the medial malleolus is spared because it is innervated by the saphenous nerve (a branch of the femoral nerve). The patient often complains pain in the sensory distribution and may have tenderness along the course of the nerve, especially paravertebrally, or in the buttock and posterior thigh. Tests that stretch the sciatic nerve (e.g., Lasegue’s test, Gower’s test) accentuate this pain.

6. **Trophic changes.** Loss of hair and changes in the toenails and skin texture may occur in the distal leg below the knee.

As the sciatic nerve is composed of two nerve trunks, medial and lateral, which become the tibial and peroneal nerves, respectively, partial sciatic lesions may differentially involve these trunks and thereby cause misleading localization deficits. Sciatic neuropathies can therefore be mistaken clinically for more distal neuropathies, especially common peroneal neuropathies or, less often, tibial neuropathies.

The sciatic nerve in the thigh may be injured by gunshot wounds, femur fractures, lacerations, and contusions. Nerve compression in the thigh may be due to fibrous bands and aneurysms; nerve tumors may also occur in this location. The sciatic nerve proper may also be damaged just above the apex of the popliteal space.
(e.g., owing to popliteal fossa aneurysm) [27]. The findings are the same as those seen with a more proximal sciatic lesion, except that the hamstring muscles are spared.

**Lesions of the Tibial Nerve.** The tibial nerve is most often damaged in the popliteal space, within the tarsal tunnel, or within the foot (abductor hallucis syndrome).

1. **Lesions at the popliteal fossa.** Lesions of the tibial nerve at this location result in paresis or paralysis of plantar flexion and inversion of the foot, plantar flexion of the toes, and movements of the intrinsic muscles of the foot. Sensory impairment is located on the sole and the lateral border of the foot. Etiologies of proximal tibial nerve entrapment include Baker's cysts, trauma (especially if associated with popliteal fossa hemorrhage), nerve tumors, and entrapment by the tendinous arch of the origin of the soleus muscle or a hypertrophic popliteus muscle [74,91,122,156,210,226,374]. Tibial nerve entrapment by the arch of origin of the soleus muscle can be distinguished from tibial nerve compression at the ankle and S1 radiculopathy by the presence of severe pain and tenderness and a positive Tinel's sign in the popliteal fossa [226]. In a retrospective study of 52 patients with main trunk tibial neuropathy, trauma and ischemia were the most frequent causes, followed by tumors [95].

2. **Lesions within the tarsal tunnel.** At the proximal end of the tarsal tunnel, the trunk of the tibial nerve may be compressed by any process that causes narrowing of the tunnel [83,127,262]. Rarely, the first symptoms of the tarsal tunnel syndrome emerge after an acute event (ischemic or traumatic) proximal to but not affecting the ankle (“decompensation” of a preexisting asymptomatic tarsal tunnel syndrome) [17]. Because the medial plantar, lateral plantar, and medial calcaneal nerves branch distal to this location, there are burning paresthesias in the sole of the foot and sensory loss affecting the skin of the sole and medial heel. Occasionally, the plantar nerves may be compressed individually within the tarsal tunnel (e.g., leading to medial plantar nerve symptoms and signs only). Etiologies of the tarsal tunnel syndrome include trauma to the ankle (e.g., fracture and dislocation), ill-fitting footwear, casts, posttraumatic fibrosis, ganglia or cysts, nerve tumors, abnormal muscles (e.g., abductor hallucis or accessory flexor digitorum longus), and compression by the adjacent flexor retinaculum and arteriovenous complex of the posterior tibial artery and veins [21,147,196,314,342,368,388,399].

Sensory symptoms are usually precipitated by standing or walking or by pressure applied at the ankle behind and below the medial malleolus (Tinel’s sign). Nocturnal pain is also quite common (analogous to carpal tunnel syndrome), and patients often attain relief by hanging the involved leg out of bed. Motor deficits are minimal, but atrophy and paresis are present on examination of the intrinsic muscles of the foot.

3. **Lesions within the foot.** The medial or lateral plantar nerves may be damaged within the foot. This damage results in pain, paresthesias, and sensory loss in the distribution area of the individual nerve (e.g., the medial two-thirds of the sole of the foot in medial plantar nerve lesions). There may be localized tenderness over the individual nerve and some intrinsic muscle atrophy and paresis. The medial plantar nerve may be compressed by the calcaneonavicular ligament, where the nerve pierces the abductor hallucis muscle, by a hypertrophic or fibrous abductor hallucis muscle, or by tendon sheath cysts [261,358]. The medial plantar nerve may also be injured by trauma (e.g., foot fractures) or schwannomas. Distal medial plantar neuropathy has been noted to occur frequently in infantry soldiers probably due to repeated mechanical injury causing nerve compression [157]. Two patients have been described with neuropathic medial plantar foot pain and tingling due to sciatic nerve schwannoma in the mid-thigh [126]. Lateral plantar neuropathy may be caused by ankle injury, surgical scarring, or schwannoma [31,138,260]. The most common site of lateral plantar nerve injury is at the passage of the nerve through the abductor tunnel at the instep of the foot [260]. Rarely, isolated medial calcaneal nerve compression (e.g., by ganglia or fascial entrapment) may occur, resulting in heel pain [269].

A plantar digital nerve may be compressed where it courses distally between the heads of the adjacent metatarsal bones, or stretched where it crosses the deep metatarsal ligament. Pain, usually in the third metatarsal space, is the result. This pain is referred to as Morton’s metatarsalgia. The digital nerve on the side of the large toe may be compressed by ill-fitting shoes or by scars following bunion surgery (Joplin’s neuroma) [11,73,235].

**Lesions of the Common Peroneal Nerve**

1. **Lesions at the fibular head.** The majority of peroneal palsies occur at the level of the fibular head, where the nerve is quite superficial and susceptible to injury [171]. Although the nerve may be damaged by nerve infarct, casts, ganglion, Baker cyst, cysts of the tibiofibular joint, hematoma,
tumor, or leprosy, most lesions are traumatic (laceration, traction, or compression) [22,161,171,177,185,297,395]. In one study of 318 knee-level common peroneal nerve lesions, there were 141 stretch/contusions without fracture/dislocations (44%), 39 lacerations (12%), 40 tumors (13%), 30 entrapments (9%), 22 stretch/contusions with fracture/dislocations (7%), 21 compressions (7%), 13 iatrogenic injuries (4%), and 12 gunshot wounds (4%) [183]. Stretch-induced peroneal neuropathy at the fibular head may be due to forceful inversion and plantar flexion of the ankle while kicking a football (punkter’s palsy) [212]. Postoperative peroneal palsies occur especially after operations performed in the lateral decubitus position or when the outer aspect of the upper leg rests against a leg strap or metal brace. The nerve may also be stretched by flexion of the hip and knee while the patient is in the lithotomy position (e.g., postpartum foot drop) and is especially liable to injury after total knee arthroplasty [300]. Compressive lesions of the common peroneal nerve are usually unilateral, but bilateral (often asymmetric) lesions may develop in patients who are habitual leg crossers, especially those who have just lost considerable weight, are emaciated (e.g., anorexia nervosa) or bedridden, or have sustained nerve infarcts secondary to vasculitis [171,395]. Compression may also occur with chronic squatting and with protracted sitting in the cross-legged position (e.g., strawberry pickers’ foot drop) [197,326] or during yoga (yoga foot drop) [71,222]. Bilateral peroneal palsy may occur during natural childbirth owing to prolonged pressure exerted by the patient’s palms directly over the upper lateral aspect of the shins while strongly drawing the knees toward her (pushing palsy) [6]. Drop foot, caused by peroneal neuropathy, may also occur during weight reduction (slimmer’s paralysis) [345]. Entrapment of the peroneal nerve in the fibular tunnel (fibular tunnel syndrome) may occur with a band at the origin of the peroneus longus muscle [228].

Intraneural ganglia are an underappreciated but treatable cause of common peroneal neuropathy [408]. Intraneural ganglia of the peroneal nerve develop from the superior tibio-fibular joint when disruption of the capsule allows dissection of synovial fluid along the articular branch of the peroneal nerve. In a study of 22 cases of intraneural ganglia causing common peroneal neuropathy compared in a case–control study to 11 cases of common peroneal neuropathy with imaging negative for intraneural ganglia, the intraneural ganglia group had a greater body mass index, more pain at the knee or in the peroneal distribution, more frequent fluctuating weakness with weight bearing, or a palpable mass at the fibular head [408]. The intraneural ganglia group was less likely to present with a history of weight loss, immobility, or leg crossing.

With lesions at the fibular head, the deep branch of the nerve is affected more commonly than the whole nerve [346,359], although the superficial branch alone may also be affected. With common peroneal neuropathies, weakness is usually more prominent in muscles supplied by the deep peroneal nerve than in muscles supplied by the superficial peroneal nerve, likely because of differing degrees of damage to individual fascicles within the common peroneal nerve [175,346,359]. When both branches (deep and superficial) are affected, there is paresis or paralysis of toe and foot dorsiflexion and of foot eversion. A variable sensory disturbance affects the entire dorsum of the foot and toes and the lateral distal portion of the lower leg. When only the deep branch of the peroneal nerve is affected, a deep peroneal nerve syndrome occurs (see subsequent section).

In some patients with common peroneal neuropathy, the extensor hallucis longus is the most severely affected muscle, producing big toe drop rather than foot drop [364]. This is presumably due to selective damage of the fascicle within the common peroneal nerve that contains the motor fibers that supply the extensor hallucis muscle [359].

Rupture of the tibialis anterior tendon (TAT) is an uncommon musculoskeletal condition that presents as foot drop but is rarely encountered by neurologists [181]. Most cases are caused by direct or indirect foot trauma. Diabetes, systemic lupus erythematosus, hyperparathyroidism, psoriasis, and gout may produce tenosynovitis and are other associated etiologies. Spontaneous TAT rupture is rare and may be the most difficult form to distinguish from a neurogenic etiology of foot drop. The most prominent clinical feature of TAT rupture is weakness of foot dorsiflexion. However, increased compensatory action of the extensor hallucis longus and extensor digitorum longus may minimize the degree of weakness and make identification more difficult. The absence of toe extensor, foot eversion, and hip abduction weakness helps to distinguish TAT rupture from other neuromuscular causes of foot drop, such as peroneal neuropathy, lumbosacral plexopathy, or L5 radiculopathy. The pathognomonic sign of TAT rupture is the presence of the retracted tendon, which produces a palpable defect or swelling along the dorsum of the ankle. Normal findings on needle
EMG of the tibialis anterior muscle are useful to distinguish TAT rupture from neuromuscular causes of foot drop where reduction in the recruitment of motor units would be seen. MRI of the ankle may confirm TAT rupture by identifying partial or complete ruptures of the tendon.

2. The anterior tibial (deep peroneal) nerve syndrome. This nerve may be injured in isolation at the fibular head or more distally in the leg. Nerve injury results in a motor deficit (paresis or paralysis of toe and foot dorsiflexion); sensory deficit is limited to the web of skin located between the first and second toes. If an accessory (anomalous) deep peroneal nerve is present, the extensor digitorum brevis muscle, or at least the lateral portion of this muscle, is spared [90]. Etiologies of proximal nerve injury include compressive masses (e.g., ganglia, osteochondromas, aneurysms), direct trauma (e.g., fibular fractures or surgery), thrombosis of crural veins [33], and occlusion of the anterior tibial artery.

Isolated deep peroneal nerve injury may complicate arthroscopic knee surgery [104]. At the level of the knee joint, the deep and superficial peroneal nerves are usually joined as the common peroneal nerve. Because of the fascicular structure, however, a partial nerve injury can result in an isolated injury to deep peroneal fibers [104].

The deep peroneal nerve may also be compressed at the ankle (anterior tarsal tunnel syndrome) [396]. The anterior tarsal tunnel syndrome is caused by ankle fractures, dislocations, sprains, ill-fitting shoes, or extreme ankle inversion and is due to distal deep peroneal compression beneath the crural cruciate ligament [396]. This compression results in paresis and atrophy of the extensor digitorum brevis muscle alone. The terminal sensory branch to the skin web between the first and second toes may be affected by lesions at this location. Iatrogenic, isolated weakness or paralysis of the extensor hallucis longus muscle is a common complication of proximal tibial and fibular osteotomy; the nerve supply to the extensor hallucis longus is at high risk for injury during tibial osteotomy because of the proximity of the bone to the motor branches [190]. A distal peroneal neuropathy may occur because of nerve injury during needle aspiration of the ankle joint. The deep peroneal sensory branch may be entrapped in the foot distal to the inferior extensor retinaculum as the nerve passes under the tendon of the extensor hallucis brevis muscle; a Tinel's sign can be elicited by percussion of the tendon, and numbness and tingling occur over the first web space of the foot [279].

3. The superficial peroneal nerve syndrome. The superficial peroneal nerve may be affected in isolation by lesions at the fibular head or by lesions more distally in the leg. Paresis and atrophy of the peronei (foot eversion) and a sensory disturbance affecting the skin of the lateral distal portion of the lower leg and dorsum of the foot are present. The web of skin between the first and second toes is spared (this is the area of supply of the deep peroneal nerve). If an accessory deep peroneal nerve is present, the lateral part of the extensor digitorum brevis muscle is paretic and atrophic [90]. The sensory portion of the superficial peroneal nerve may be affected in isolation (e.g., where it emerges from the fascia) owing to inversion injury or compression (e.g., by wearing high lace-up boots or skates) [24], causing a purely sensory syndrome. Symptoms may be accompanied by tenderness at the point of fascial perforation [352]. Iatrogenic needle-induced neuropathy of the dorsal medial interosseous branch of the peroneal nerve (during venography with the needle in the dorsum of the foot) has been documented [281]. Finally, an accessory deep peroneal neuropathy may occur in isolation (e.g., by trauma or entrapment by a fascial band), resulting in isolated atrophy and paresis of the extensor digitorum brevis [90,305].

4. Lesions of the lateral cutaneous nerve of the calf. The lateral cutaneous nerve of the calf is a cutaneous branch of the common peroneal nerve. Nerve injury may cause numbness, pain, and sensory loss over the posterolateral aspect of the leg, extending from the knee to the lower third of the leg. Mononeuropathy of this nerve is rare. One case of congenital entrapment mononeuropathy of this nerve by the tendon of the femoral biceps has been reported in the literature [139], as well as two cases of mononeuropathies in diabetics, in whom the nerve is susceptible to compression where it passes through the deep fascia into the subcutaneous space [110,119]. Lateral cutaneous nerve of calf neuropathy has also been described due to peri-popliteal cystic bursitis [123].

Lesions of the Sural Nerve. Sural neuropathies present with pain or paresthesias over the lateral ankle and border of the foot. The nerve may be damaged in the popliteal fossa, the calf, the ankle, or the foot. Most sural neuropathies are due to lacerations, trauma associated with fractures, Achilles tendon reconstructive surgery, arthroscopy, and stretch injuries due to sprains [129,133,283,291]. The nerve may be entrapped by tendon sheath cysts, ganglia, Baker's cysts, and scar tissue [255,283,341]. Damage to the sural nerve owing to external compression...
(e.g., the upper edge of a ski boot or tight elastic stockings) has been infrequently reported [133,291,335]. In a study of 36 patients with isolated sural neuropathy, 16 had various forms of ankle trauma, in three of whom the associated sural neuropathies developed following medical intervention [360]. In this study, three patients developed sural neuropathies associated with vasculitis, and there were single patients with schwannoma and ganglionic cyst.

The main entrapment neuropathies of the upper and lower limbs are summarized in Tables 2.1 and 2.2, respectively.

### References


Peripheral Nerves


Localization of Clinical Neurology


Localization in Clinical Neurology


254. Nakano KK. Neuralgic amyotrophy mani-


Peripheral Nerves


301. Ross MA, Kimura J.

302. Ross MA, Menche D, Pitman M.


319. Sawin PD, Loftus CM. Posterior interosseous nerve palsy after brachiocephalic arteriovenous fistula con-


Plexopathies are usually more difficult to recognize than lesions of individual peripheral nerves (peripheral neuropathies) or spinal roots (radiculopathies) because of the complex anatomy of the plexi. To localize a lesion accurately to a specific division of the plexus, the clinician must have mastered not only the anatomic intricacies of that division but also the motor and sensory supply of all peripheral nerve components supplied by the division.

This chapter reviews the anatomy of the cervical, brachial, and lumbosacral plexi and the localization of lesions within these plexi.

The Cervical Plexus

Anatomy

The cervical plexus, which is formed by the anterior primary rami of C1–C4 [53], is situated behind the sternocleidomastoid muscle and in front of the scalenus medius and levator scapulae muscles. It consists of a series of anastomotic loops situated near the spinal accessory (cranial nerve XI) and hypoglossal (cranial nerve XII) nerves. The branches of the cervical plexus may be divided into those that are predominantly sensory and those that are predominantly motor.

The cutaneous branches (Fig. 3.1), and their areas of sensory supply, include the following nerves:

1. The greater occipital nerve (C2): skin of the posterior scalp
2. The lesser occipital nerve (C2): skin of the mastoid process and lateral head
3. The great auricular nerve (C2–C3): skin of the lower cheek over the mandible, the lower part of the external ear, and the upper neck below the external ear
4. The transverse colli (cutaneous cervical nerves) (C2–C3): skin on much of the neck, especially the anterior neck
5. The supracleavicular nerves (C3–C4): skin immediately above the clavicle
6. It should be noted that there is no dorsal root from C1; therefore, C1 is a purely motor root.

The muscular branches of the cervical plexus (Fig. 3.2) include the following nerves and branches:

1. The ansa hypoglossi, which is a loop formed by fibers from the C1 root (the descending hypoglossal rami that course downward in company with the hypoglossal nerve proper) joining fibers from the C2 and C3 roots; the fibers of the ansa are distributed to the infrahyoid muscles (i.e., sternohyoid, omohyoid, sternothyroid, thyrohyoid, and geniohyoid), which aid in head flexion.
2. The phrenic nerve (C3–C5), which innervates the diaphragm.
3. Branches to the middle scalene and levator scapulae (C3–C4), which are essentially a lateral flexor of the neck and a rotator of the scapula, respectively.
4. Branches to the accessory nerve (cranial nerve XI), which supply the sternocleidomastoid (C2) and trapezius (C3–C4) muscles along with the accessory nerve proper.

Lesions of the Cervical Plexus

Injuries to the cervical plexus are infrequent, but any of its branches can be injured by penetrating wounds, surgical injury (e.g., carotid endarterectomy or radical dissection of malignancy), or various mass lesions. Involvement of the cutaneous branches results in altered sensation (e.g., sensory loss, paresthesias, or pain) in the distribution of these branches (e.g., after a lesion of the great auricular nerve, there is loss of sensation over the mandible and lower external ear). When the muscular branches of the cervical plexus are injured, there is weakness of the infrahyoid and scalene muscles (anterior and lateral head flexion), the levator scapulae (scapular rotation), and, to some degree, the trapezius (shoulder elevation) and sternocleidomastoid (head rotation and flexion) muscles as well. The muscles affected and the degree of paresis depend on the specific branch of the cervical plexus that is injured.

Individual branches of the cervical plexus may be damaged. The greater auricular nerve is most commonly damaged during surgery to the neck or face (e.g., face lift or parotid surgery) or during carotid endarterectomy [26,114]. Unilateral or bilateral greater auricular nerve damage may occur after hanging in suicide attempts (numb ear in resurrection) [6]. This nerve may also be injured by tumors and after cardiac pacemaker insertion [6]. The greater occipital nerve may be compressed or entrapped in its course through the muscles of the neck, especially the semispinalis and trapezius, or damaged by trauma or neurofibroma. The lesser occipital nerve may be injured during surgical procedures involving the posterior cervical triangle or by lacerations.
Injuries to the *phrenic nerve* (C3–C5) deserve special consideration. Unilateral or bilateral damage to the phrenic nerve is more often caused by a mediastinal process than by damage to the cervical plexus itself. Paralysis of this nerve results in loss of diaphragmatic movement on the affected side. When unilateral, this paralysis results in little disability at rest, but dyspnea may occur with exertion. On the affected side, the diaphragm fails to descend with inspiration and may paradoxically be drawn upward. Bilateral phrenic lesions may result in prominent exertional dyspnea and severe alveolar hypoventilation with hypocapnia. Occasionally, the phrenic nerve receives an anastomotic branch from the subclavian nerve, in which case diaphragmatic action may be normal after a proximal phrenic lesion.

Unilateral or bilateral phrenic nerve paralysis may occur in isolation (idiopathic diaphragmatic paralysis) or with more diffuse motor involvement as part of the Parsonage–Turner syndrome (neuralgic amyotrophy) [9,77,135]. Lin et al. reported a painless paralysis of the diaphragm caused by bilateral phrenic neuropathies with relatively acute onset and without antecedent factors such as infection or prior surgery thought to have occurred on an immune basis [85]. The phrenic nerve may also be damaged during operations in the neck or chest (e.g., open-heart surgery) or be compressed by aortic aneurysms, intrathoracic neoplasms, or enlarged mediastinal nodes [42,57,93,125,153]. The nerve may be injured in the neck during subclavian vein or internal jugular vein catheterization or as a complication of an indwelling central

**FIG. 3.1.** Sensory branches of the cervical plexus.

**FIG. 3.2.** Motor branches of the cervical plexus.
The Brachial Plexus

Anatomy

The brachial plexus (Fig. 3.3) is formed from the anterior primary rami of the segments C4, C5, C6, C7, C8, and T1 [53]. A communication branch between the T2 root and the brachial plexus is also common [87]. The plexus is approximately 15 cm long in adults and extends from the spinal column to the axilla. It is divided into five major components (in a proximal to distal direction): roots, trunks, divisions, cords, and branches (the mnemonic Robert Taylor Drinks Cold Beer serves as a means of remembering the names and order of these components).

The fifth and sixth cervical roots course downward between the scalenus medius and anterior muscles and unite to form the upper trunk of the plexus. The seventh cervical root also inclines downward between the scaleni and, at the lateral border of the scalenus anterior, emerges as the middle trunk of the plexus. The eighth cervical and first thoracic spinal roots unite behind a fascial sheet (Sibson’s fascia) and beneath the subclavian artery from the lower trunk of the plexus.

The three trunks traverse the supraclavicular fossa protected by the cervical and scalene musculature through most of their course. Lateral to the first rib, where the three trunks are located behind the axillary artery, they separate into three anterior and...
three posterior divisions. The three posterior divisions unite behind the axillary artery to form the posterior cord. The anterior divisions of the upper and middle trunks (C5–C7) unite to form the lateral cord, whereas the anterior division of the lower trunk (C8–T1) forms the median cord. The cords pass through the space formed by the first rib and clavicle (thoracic outlet) and then give off the major terminal branches (peripheral nerves).

The major branches of the brachial plexus and the site of origin of these branches are as follows.

**BRANCHES ORIGINATING FROM THE SPINAL ROOTS**

The distribution of these individual nerves is given in Chapter 2. The long thoracic nerve arises directly from C5–C7 roots and descends vertically behind the plexus to innervate the serratus anterior muscle. The nerve to the subclavian muscle arises from the C5 and C6 roots and travels anterior to the plexus to innervate the subclavian muscle. The dorsal scapular nerve arises from the C4 and C5 roots and innervates the levator scapulae and rhomboid muscles.

**BRANCH ORIGINATING FROM THE TRUNK OF THE BRACHIAL PLEXUS**

The suprascapular nerve (C5–C6) arises from the upper trunk near its origin and innervates the supraspinatus and infraspinatus muscles.

**BRANCH ORIGINATING FROM THE DIVISIONS OF THE BRACHIAL PLEXUS**

The anterior thoracic nerves (C5–T1) (also called the pectoral nerves) consist of the lateral anterior thoracic nerve (C5–C7), which arises from the anterior divisions of the upper and middle trunks of the plexus, and the medial anterior thoracic nerve (C8–T1), which is a branch of the medial cord of the plexus. They supply the pectoralis major and minor muscles.

**BRANCHES ORIGINATING FROM THE CORDS OF THE BRACHIAL PLEXUS**

The distribution of these individual nerves is given in Chapter 2. Branches of the lateral cord consist of (a) the musculocutaneous nerve (C5–C7) and (b) the lateral head of the median nerve (C5–C7). Branches of the median cord consist of (a) the median anterior thoracic nerve (C8–T1), (b) the musculocutaneous nerve of the arm (C8–T1), (c) the median cutaneous nerve of the forearm (C8–T1), (d) the ulnar nerve (C7–T1), and (e) the median nerve (C8–T1). Branches of the posterior cord consist of (a) the subscapular nerve (C5–C7), (b) the thoracodorsal nerve (C5–C8), (c) the axillary nerve (C5–C6), and (d) the radial nerve (C5–C8).

There may be considerable anatomic variation of the brachial plexus. In the prefixed plexus, all the components are shifted down one segment, resulting in a major contribution from the fourth cervical nerve. In the prefixed plexus, all the components are shifted down one segment, resulting in little or no contribution to the plexus from the fifth cervical nerve and a distinct contribution from the second thoracic nerve. These “one-level” variations in innervation occur in 3%–5% of patients and must be considered in any patient who does not fit the usual clinical presentation of a brachial plexopathy.

**Lesions of the Brachial Plexus**

Brachial plexopathies, in general, are usually incomplete and characterized by muscle paresis and atrophy, loss of muscle stretch reflexes, sensory changes (usually patchy and incomplete), and often, shoulder and arm pain (usually accentuated by arm movement). The most prominent sign of a brachial plexopathy is a clinical deficit that involves more than one spinal or peripheral nerve.

Brachial plexopathies are common and may present with a multiplicity of clinical syndromes that vary with the component of the plexus involved and the location of the lesion. Trauma is the most frequent cause of damage and may occur as a penetrating or closed injury (traction, avulsion, compression, or stretch) [29,39]. Traumatic stretch injuries are frequent consequences of motor vehicle accidents, especially in circumstances in which the victim is propelled from the vehicle (e.g., motorcycle, snowmobile, all-terrain vehicle, or boat). Gunshot wounds, lacerations, birth trauma, fracture—dislocations of the shoulder, and orthopedic shoulder surgeries are other common situations associated with brachial plexus injury [5,70,71,99,130]. Brachial plexopathy in birth trauma is most commonly noted in children presenting in the vertex position, where progression of the shoulder is blocked by the symphysis, causing traction of the brachial plexus (shoulder dystocia) [34]. The main risk factor for shoulder dystocia is macrosomia, which occurs in maternal diabetes. Repetitive arm use in baseball pitchers may cause pain and numbness in the arm likely because of a plexopathy [86]. Certain “traumatic” plexopathies may occur with a delayed onset (hours or weeks) because of neurovascular injury, with subsequent expanding hematoma or pseudoaneurysm [107].

The usual precipitants are fracture—dislocation of the humerus, gunshot wounds, and axillary artery trauma associated with medical procedures (especially orthopaedic procedures). Brachial plexus damage has also been described after reduction mammoplasty [7], subclavian vein catheterization [66,106], thoracoscopic sympathectomy [81], and thoracoscopic fusion in facioscapulohumeral muscular dystrophy [152].

Infraclavicular brachial plexopathy is a component of the medial brachial fascial compartment syndrome, a potential complication of percutaneous axillary
vessel puncture during axillary angiography or axillary regional block [17,133,134]. This syndrome consists of pain, weakness, and numbness during or following the percutaneous procedure and involves the infraclavicular brachial plexus, most often the median nerve alone, followed by combinations of median, ulnar, radial, and musculocutaneous nerve involvement. The syndrome is often caused by hematoma formation within the medial fascial brachial compartment and requires urgent surgery.

The brachial plexus is probably the most susceptible of all nerve groups to damage from poor positioning during anesthesia (positioning trauma), perhaps because of its long mobile course and proximity to bony structures [25]. Stretch of nerve fibers, rather than compression, is the chief cause of injury [25]. Usually, these plexopathies present with painless motor deficits, especially affecting the C5–C7 levels [16]. Upper plexus lesions occur with full arm abduction, whereas lower plexus lesions occur primarily when the arm is close to the side. Abnormal arm positioning during alcohol intoxication or coma may also damage the plexus [118].

Other causes of brachial plexopathy include serum- and vaccine-induced lesions, radiation injuries, infections and toxic causes, mass lesions (e.g., neoplasms and hemorrhage from anticoagulants), systemic lupus erythematosus, heroin addiction, CIDP, and hereditary disorders [11,18,97,112]. A brachial plexopathy (probably immune mediated) has been described secondary to botulinum toxin injection for torticollis [47,126], following intra-arterial administration of cisplatin chemotherapy [63], and after intra-venous high-dose cytarabine chemotherapy [116].

Inherited brachial plexus neuropathy has also been described (autosomal dominant inheritance), with recurrent episodes of brachial plexus neuropathy occurring in multiple family members [15,20,30,44,62,149]. The brachial plexus may also be involved in approximately 10% of patients with hereditary neuropathy with liability to pressure palsies, also an autosomal dominant condition, and recurrent brachial plexopathy may be the only symptom of entrapment in some families [8,19,95,100,148,149]. A variant of multifocal motor neuropathy in the brachial plexus may present with progressive arm weakness and tonic hand spasm [137].

Brachial plexopathy (radiculoplexopathy) may occur as a complication of coronary artery bypass graft surgery or cardiac valve replacement and usually affects the lower trunk or medial cord fibers [55,79,84]. Because there is a correlation between the site of jugular vein cannulation and the affected side in most cases, needle trauma is thought to play a role [79]. With open-heart surgery through median sternotomy, bilateral (although asymmetric) brachial plexopathies may occur, with pain being a prominent feature [50]. Brachial plexus injury may also follow liver transplantation [67].

Primary tumors of the brachial plexus (i.e., schwannomas, neurilemomas, hemangiomas, and neurinomas) are rare and usually present with a slowly growing swelling in the supraclavicular fossa or axilla, with little motor or sensory disabilities (except occasional pain) noted [10,88,101,108,117]. In a series of 25 patients with primary brachial plexus tumors, the presenting signs and symptoms included palpable mass (60%), numbness or paresthesias (44%), radiating pain (44%), local pain (16%), and weakness (12%) [10]. Localized hypertrophic neuropathy of the plexus, with progressive upper limb neurologic deficits, may rarely occur [119]. The plexus is more often affected by metastases (most frequently from breast cancer) or by direct infiltration from neighboring neoplasm, especially from carcinoma of the upper lobe of the lung (Pancoast tumor). With the latter lesions, the lower brachial plexus is initially affected, resulting in pain in the ulnar side of the hand, forearm, and arm, followed by other sensory symptoms and then by motor symptoms and Horner syndrome.

Patients with neurofibromatosis type I (NF 1) who develop pain or new neurological symptoms should have a rapid and thorough assessment for malignancy. The more extensive plexiform neurofibromas produce neurological complications in 27%–43% of patients with NF1 and may undergo malignant degeneration in 5% of cases. This point was illustrated by a patient with NF1 who developed a brachial plexopathy presenting with acute shoulder pain and weakness due to malignant degeneration of a plexiform neurofibroma of the plexus [102].

Brachial plexus lesions may also occur months to years after radiotherapy, usually for breast cancer and Hodgkin’s lymphomas [72,73]. It is often difficult to distinguish a plexopathy due to radiotherapy from that due to recurrent neoplasm or metastases. The clinical presentation may help distinguish these two causes of plexopathy [73]. With metastatic disease, the lower trunk (C8–T1) is predominantly or exclusively involved, severe pain is present at onset, and Horner syndrome is common. With radiation-induced plexopathy, the upper trunk or entire plexus is predominantly affected, paresthesias and weakness are more prominent than pain at the onset, and progressive lymphedema of the arm is more common. The numbness often involves the lateral aspect of the arm, and there is weakness of the shoulder girdle muscles. Some clinicians, however, have found no difference between the anatomic distribution of brachial plexus involvement in patients with neoplastic plexopathy and in those with radiation-induced plexopathy [52]. In both groups, weakness involved the muscles innervated pre-
Localization in Clinical Neurology

dominantly by the lower trunk or the entire plexus. Patients with neoplastic plexopathy had a (a) higher frequency of pain as the initial and predominant symptom, (b) shorter duration of symptoms before diagnosis, and (c) higher incidence of Horner syndrome than patients with radiation-induced plexopathy [52]. In a study of radiation plexopathy in breast cancer, the entire plexus was affected in 50%, the upper trunk in 18%, the lower trunk in 4%, with assessment of level not clinically possible in 28% [98]. In these patients, symptoms often started during or immediately after radiation therapy, with numbness or paresthesias and pain being the most prominent symptoms. In another study of radiation plexopathy in patients with breast cancer, however, the latency to onset of symptoms was 1 month to 15 years, with motor deficits, pain, and paresthesias as the initial symptoms at presentation [36]. An acute ischemic brachial plexopathy from occlusion of the subclavian artery may occur as a late complication of radiation therapy [45]. This disorder is predominantly motor, sudden in onset, and painless, with paresthesias often felt in the forearm and hand. An acute reversible brachial plexopathy has been reported in some patients shortly after radiation therapy for breast cancer [113]. The symptoms generally occurred approximately 4 months after radiation therapy and were characterized by mild shoulder pain and arm paresthesias with severe but reversible arm weakness. Radiation-induced malignant and atypical peripheral nerve sheath tumors may also affect the brachial plexus and may be difficult to differentiate from tumor recurrence or radiation plexopathy [40]. A paraneoplastic brachial plexopathy may occur in patients with Hodgkin’s disease, especially following radiation therapy [75,105]. Finally, in one case, dystrophic calcification, a heterotopic formation of calcium in soft tissue, caused entrapment of the posterior cord of the brachial plexus with an onset many years after surgery and radiation therapy [90].

Neuralgic Amyotrophy

Parsonage–Turner syndrome [35] is a disorder characterized by acute, severe pain located in the shoulder and radiating into the arm, neck, and back. To prevent pain, movement of the arm is avoided and it is held in a position of flexion at the elbow and adduction at the shoulder (the flexion-adduction sign) [141]. The pain is followed within several hours to days by paresis of the shoulder and, predominantly, proximal arm musculature. Sensory loss can occur but is generally not marked. The muscles innervated by the axillary, suprascapular, radial, musculocutaneous, and long thoracic nerves are most commonly affected. Unilateral or bilateral phrenic nerve paralysis may occur [77]. In fact, in a series of 33 patients diagnosed with idiopathic phrenic neuropathy, 17 patients had clinical features of neuralgic amyotrophy [132]. The pain usually disappears within several days and bilateral (usually asymmetric) involvement may occur. The process is thought to be a brachial plexitis or multiple mononeuropathies and is usually idiopathic, but may follow viral illness, immunizations, surgery, or childbirth [80,89,91]. Hereditary neuralgic amyotrophy is an autosomal dominant disorder with recurrent, episodic, painful, brachial neuropathy sometimes associated with characteristic features such as hypotelorism, short stature, and cleft palate [62].

The symptoms, course, and prognosis of neuralgic amyotrophy in a large group of patients with idiopathic neuralgic amyotrophy (INA, n = 199) and hereditary neuralgic amyotrophy (HNA, n = 47) was reviewed by van Alfen and van Engelen [136]. Generally, the course of the pain manifests itself in three consecutive phases with an initial severe, continuous pain lasting for 4 weeks on average. Sensory involvement was quite common and found in 78.4% of patients but was clinically less impairing than the initial pain and subsequent paresis. As a typically patchy disorder, INA was found to affect almost any nerve in the brachial plexus, although damage in the upper and middle trunk distribution with involvement of the long thoracic and/or suprascapular nerve occurred most frequently (71.1%). The authors found no correlation between the distribution of motor and sensory symptoms. In INA recurrent attacks were found in 26.1% of the patients during an average 6-year follow-up. HNA patients had an earlier onset (28.4 vs 41.3 years), more attacks (mean 3.5 vs 1.5), and more frequent involvement of nerves outside the brachial plexus (55.8% vs 17.3%) than INA patients, and a more severe maximum paresis, with a subsequent poorer functional outcome. In males the initial pain tended to last longer than it did in females (45 vs 23 days). In females the middle or lower parts of the brachial plexus were involved more frequently (23.1% vs 10.5% in males), and their functional outcome was worse. Overall recovery was less favorable than usually assumed, with persisting pain and paresis in approximately two-thirds of the patients who were followed for 3 years or more [136].

Total Plexus Paralysis

Total plexus paralysis is a rare syndrome that is usually due to severe trauma (usually a fall from a moving vehicle) and is characterized by the following signs:

Motor Signs. The entire arm is paralyzed and hangs limp at the patient’s side. All the arm’s musculature may undergo rapid atrophy.
Sensory Signs. There is usually complete anesthesia of the arm distal to a line extending obliquely from the tip of the shoulder down to the medial arm halfway to the elbow.

Reflex Signs. The entire upper extremity is areflexic.

**UPPER PLEXUS PARALYSIS (ERB–DUCHENNE TYPE)**

Upper plexus paralysis (Erb–Duchenne type) is a lesion that results from damage to the fifth and sixth cervical roots or the upper trunk of the brachial plexus. It is a common deficit and is usually due to forceful (traumatic) separation of the head and shoulder but may also be due to pressure on the shoulder (e.g., knapsack paralysis, mucksack paralysis, cadet palsy, or pack paralysis), firearm recoil [140], birth injury [5,34,103], and idiopathic plexitis (“neuralgic amyotrophy” or Parsonage–Turner syndrome). Sudden forceful depression of the shoulder during contact sports, especially football, may cause a transient episode of abrupt, intense burning dyesthesia and anesthesia involving one entire upper extremity, usually accompanied by generalized limb weakness (burners or stingers) [38,54,144]. The symptoms usually resolve in minutes without neurologic residual. Although symptoms in this condition involve the entire limb, findings are most prominent in the distribution of the upper trunk of the plexus [54,144]. Other sports reported to cause this syndrome include wrestling, hockey, basketball, boxing, and weight lifting [38].

The upper plexus syndrome consists of the following signs:

**Motor Signs.** The muscles supplied by the C5–C6 roots are paralyzed or paretic and atrophic. These include the deltoid, biceps, brachioradialis, and brachialis, and occasionally, the supraspinatus, infraspinatus, and subscapularis as well. The position of the limb is characteristic—the limb is internally rotated and adducted and the forearm is extended and pronated, the palm therefore facing out and backward. This is the so-called policeman’s tip or porter’s tip position. Shoulder abduction (deltoid and supraspinatus), elbow flexion (biceps, brachioradialis, brachialis), external rotation of the arm (infraspinatus), and forearm supination (biceps) are impaired.

Very proximal lesions may also cause weakness of the rhomboids, levator scapulae, serratus anterior, and scapular muscles. It has been noted that in some cases of obstetric brachial plexopathy, injured phrenic nerve, or C3–C5 roots may sprout into the adjacent injured upper and middle trunks of the brachial plexus. This aberrant regeneration produces cocontraction of the diaphragm and proximal limb muscles, resulting in the phenomenon referred to as respiratory synkinesis or the breathing hand [41].

This reinnervation may not be limited to the upper cervical roots because cases have been described of respiratory synkinesis selectively affecting intrinsic hand muscles (breathing hand) [41]. It is proposed that aberrant regeneration from upper thoracic roots and their intercostal nerves may produce respiratory synkinesis, resulting in the “breathing hand” [41].

**Sensory Signs.** Sensation is usually intact, but there may be some sensory loss over the outer surface of the upper arm, especially over the deltoid muscle.

**Reflex Signs.** The biceps and brachioradialis reflexes are depressed or absent.

**Middle Plexus Paralysis**

Lesions of the middle trunk or the corresponding individual anterior primary ramus of the seventh cervical root are rare but occur occasionally with trauma. The seventh cervical fibers to the radial nerve are primarily involved, and therefore the extensors of the forearm, hand, and fingers are paretic (including the triceps, anconeus, extensor carpi radialis and ulnaris, extensor digitorum, extensor digit minimi, extensor pollicis longus and brevis, abductor pollicis longus, and extensor indicis). Forearm flexion is spared because the brachioradialis and brachialis are innervated predominantly by the fifth and sixth cervical segments. The triceps reflex may be depressed or absent, and a sensory defect, although inconsistent and often patchy, may occur over the extensor surface of the forearm and the radial aspect of the dorsum of the hand.

**LOWER PLEXUS PARALYSIS (DEJERINE-KLUMPKE TYPE)**

The lower type of brachial plexopathy (Dejerine-Klumpke type) results from injury to the eighth cervical and first thoracic roots or the lower trunk of the plexus. It is usually the result of trauma, especially arm traction in the abducted position, but is also seen after surgical procedures and is associated with lung tumors (e.g., Pancoast tumor) or other mass lesions (e.g., aneurysms of the aortic arch). The lower plexus syndrome consists of the following signs:

**Motor Signs.** All the musculature supplied by the eighth cervical and first thoracic roots are paretic and eventually atrophic. Therefore, there is weakness of wrist and finger flexion and weakness of the intrinsic hand muscles. Often, a claw hand deformity is evident.

**Sensory Signs.** Sensation may be either intact or lost on the medial arm, medial forearm, and ulnar aspect of the hand.

**Reflex Signs.** The finger flexor reflex (C8–T1) is depressed or absent.
Lesions of the Cords of the Brachial Plexus

LESIONS OF THE LATERAL CORD
Lateral cord lesions are usually due to surgical or local trauma and result in paresis of the muscles innervated by the musculocutaneous nerve and the lateral head of the median nerve. Therefore, there is paresis of the biceps, brachialis, and coracobrachialis (which control elbow flexion and forearm supination) because of musculocutaneous nerve injury, as well as paresis of all muscles innervated by the median nerve except the intrinsic hand muscles. As a result, the following muscles are weak: pronator teres (forearm pronation), flexor carpi radialis (radial wrist flexion), palmaris longus (wrist flexion), flexor digitorum superficialis (middle phalangeal flexion of the second through fourth digits), flexor pollicis longus (flexion of the distal phalanges of the thumb), flexor digitorum profundus I and II (flexion of the distal phalanges of the second and third fingers), and pronator quadratus (forearm pronation). The biceps reflex is depressed or absent. Sensory loss may occur on the lateral forearm (the area of distribution of the lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm, a branch of the musculocutaneous nerve).

LESIONS OF THE MEDIAL CORD
Lesions of the medial cord of the brachial plexus result in weakness of the muscles innervated by the ulnar nerve and the medial head of the median nerve (the median-innervated intrinsic hand muscles). The ulnar muscles involved are the flexor carpi ulnaris (ulnar wrist flexion), flexor digitorum III and IV (flexion of the terminal digits of the fourth and fifth fingers), and all the ulnar-innervated small hand muscles. The median muscles involved are the abductor pollicis brevis (abduction of the metacarpal of the thumb), opponens pollicis (opposition of the thumb), superficial head of the flexor pollicis brevis (flexion of the proximal phalanx of the thumb), and the first and second lumbricals. With proximal lesions of the medial cord, the medial anterior thoracic nerve may be injured, resulting in some paresis of the lower sternocostal portion of the pectoralis major muscle and of the pectoralis minor. The finger flexor reflex is decreased or absent. Because the medial cutaneous nerves of the arm and forearm are branches of the medial cord, a sensory loss may be evident on the medial arm and forearm.

LESIONS OF THE POSTERIOR CORD
Lesions of the posterior cord result in disability in the fields of distribution of the subscapular, thoracodorsal, axillary, and radial nerves. Subscapular nerve injury results in paralysis of the teres major and subscapularis (internal rotators of the humerus), whereas thoracodorsal nerve injury results in latissimus dorsi paresis. Axillary injury manifests as deltoid (arm abduction) and teres minor (lateral rotation of the shoulder joint) paresis, as well as variable sensory loss in the distribution of the lateral cutaneous nerve of the arm (skin of the lateral arm). Radial injury results in paresis of elbow extension, wrist extension, forearm supination, and finger extension; there is a lesser degree of paresis of elbow flexion. When the radial nerve is involved, the triceps and radial reflexes are decreased or absent, and a variable sensory loss is present on the entire extensor surface of the arm and forearm and on the back of the hand and dorsum of the first four fingers.

Brachial Mononeuropathies
Injuries to individual peripheral nerves arising directly from the plexus are usually related to closed trauma (e.g., traction and compression injuries) or disease of the vasa nervorum (e.g., diabetic neuropathy). The clinical signs involve motor, reflex, and sensory disturbances in the entire distribution of each nerve involved. These findings are described in Chapter 2.

Thoracic Outlet Syndrome
(Cervicobrachial Neurovascular Compression Syndrome)
The thoracic outlet syndrome results from compression of the brachial plexus or the subclavian vessels in the space between the first rib and the clavicle (thoracic outlet) [23,111,145].

There are usually various predisposing compressive factors, including a cervical rib, an enlarged seventh cervical transverse process, a hypertrophied anterior scalene muscle (scalenus anticus syndrome), clavicular abnormalities (congenital or traumatic), or a fibrous band uniting the seventh cervical transverse process to the first rib or anterior scalene muscle [23].

The thoracic outlet syndrome [23] may be purely vascular, purely neuropathic, or, rarely, mixed.

VASCULAR SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS
Vascular thoracic outlet syndrome may be arterial or venous. With subclavian artery compression there may be recurrent coldness, cyanosis, and pallor of the hand. Frank gangrene of the digits or Raynaud’s phenomenon is rare. A bruit may be present over the supra- or infraclavicular areas, especially when the arm is fully abducted. When the arm is abducted to...
A droopy shoulder syndrome has been described in patients with thoracic outlet syndrome [124]. This syndrome consists of the following signs and symptoms:

1. Low-set, droopy shoulders, and a long swan neck with horizontal or downsloping clavicles
2. Pain or paresthesias in the neck, shoulder, chest, arms, or hands
3. Aggravation of symptoms by downward traction and relief by propping up the arms
4. Occurrence predominantly in women
5. Absence of vascular, neurologic, and electrophysiologic abnormalities
6. A Tinel’s sign over the brachial plexus
7. The second thoracic vertebra visible above the shoulder on lateral cervical spine films

The Lumbosacral Plexus

Anatomy

The lumbosacral plexus (Fig. 3.4) derives from the ventral primary rami of the twelfth thoracic through fourth sacral levels and is situated within the substance of the psoas major muscle. Anomalous derivations of the plexus (prefixed or postfixed) occur in up to 20% of healthy subjects. The lumbosacral plexus...
Localization in Clinical Neurology

gives off the following nerves (the distribution areas of these nerves are discussed in Chapter 2):

1. The iliohypogastric nerve (T12–L1)
2. The ilioinguinal nerve (L1)
3. The genitofemoral nerve (L1–L2)
4. The lateral femoral cutaneous nerve (L2–L3)
5. The femoral nerve (L2–L4)
6. The obturator nerve (L2–L4)
7. The superior gluteal nerve (L4–S1)
8. The inferior gluteal nerve (L5–S2)
9. The sciatic nerve (L4–S3)
10. The posterior femoral cutaneous nerve (S1–S3)
11. The pudendal nerve (S1–S4)

Lesions of the Lumbosacral Plexus

A lumbosacral plexopathy is recognized by pain and sensorimotor deficits in the distribution of multiple spinal and peripheral nerves in the lower extremity. Common causes are neoplasms (e.g., of the cervix, prostate, bladder, colorectum, kidney, breast, testis, or ovary, sarcomas, and lymphoma), which especially affect the plexus by direct invasion or by involvement of internal iliac, external iliac, or lower aortic lymph nodes [99]. Common primary masses of the pelvic plexus include neurofibromas, schwannomas, malignant nerve sheath tumors, and nonneural sheath tumors [139]. In patients with lumbosacral plexopathy and pelvic tumors, three clinical syndromes have been delineated [60,61]: (a) a lower (L4–S1) syndrome in 51%, (b) an upper (L1–L4) syndrome in 31%, and (c) a panplexopathy (L1–S3) in 18%. Seventy percent of these patients had the insidious onset of low back, pelvic, or radicular leg pain, followed weeks to months later by sensory symptoms and weakness. The quintet of leg pain, weakness, edema, rectal mass, and hydronephrosis should suggest plexopathy due to cancer [61]. In another series of 31 patients with lumbosacral plexus metastases, pain was the most prominent symptom (occurred in 87% of patients) with other symptoms including weakness (in 74%) and paresthesias (in 68%) [127]. Signs in these patients included decreased or absent muscle stretch reflexes in 81%, paresis in 81%, and decreased sensation in 74%. Seven patients had bilateral signs. A hot and dry foot (due to involvement of sympathetic trunk in the paravertebral retroperitoneal region by the tumor) may be the initial manifestation of a neoplastic lumbosacral plexopathy [24]. Radiation therapy may also cause a lumbosacral plexopathy, and it is often difficult to clinically distinguish a plexopathy due to radiation from that due to recurrent neoplasm or metastases [128,129]. The clinical presentation may help distinguish these two causes of lumbosacral plexopathy [128]. With tumor recurrence, pain is marked at onset and usually proximal (i.e., located in the thigh, buttock, and hip), and unilateral leg paresis is typical. With radiation-induced plexopathy, unilateral or bilateral indolent (usually distal) leg weakness is present early, and pain is evident in only 50% of individuals. Clinical or electrical myokymia was evident in 12 of 20 patients with radiation plexopathy. Paresthesias are uncommon in both tumor and radiation-induced cases. Radiation may also induce malignant and atypical peripheral nerve sheath tumors of the lumbar plexus [40].

Uncommonly, prostate cancer can present as a lumbosacral plexopathy occurring through direct pelvic spread. Ladha et al. reported two cases of lumbosacral radiculoplexopathy from infiltrative prostate cancer without evidence of other pelvic or extraperitoneal spread [76]. Tumor spreading along prostatic nerves into the lumbosacral plexus (i.e., perineural spread) was the postulated mechanism for this unusual mode of cancer dissemination.

Acute painless ischemic lumbosacral plexopathy, often without signs of limb ischemia, may occur with aortic dissection [43,82]. Ischemia of the plexus is thought to be due to interruption of blood flow through the lumbar segmental arteries and branches of the iliac arteries secondary to dissection of the aortic walls and the most proximal iliac artery walls just below the aortic bifurcation. Such ischemic lumbosacral plexopathies have also been described after aortofemoral or aortoloiac graft surgery by resection of nutrient arteries, after use of an intra-aortic balloon, after vasospasm caused by injection of drugs into the inferior gluteal or umbilical artery, and after intra-arterial (usually iliac artery) infusion of chemotherapeutic agents for pelvic malignancies [43,48,82,122,128]. Foot drop may be a harbinger of an ischemic lumbosacral plexopathy preceding identification of aortic occlusion [78], and exercise-induced ischemia of the lumbosacral plexus may occur in patients with high-grade stenosis or occlusion of the arterial supply of the plexus [150].

Other etiologies for lumbosacral plexopathy include retroperitoneal hemorrhage (e.g., from anticoagulant therapy or as a complication of hemophilia), psoas abscess (e.g., from tuberculosis or pyogenic osteomyelitis), trauma (e.g., pelvic fractures or gunshot wounds), surgery (especially pelvic procedures and abdominal aortic surgery), diabetes, herpesvirus infections, intravenous administration of heroin, and idiopathic retroperitoneal fibrosis [129]. In patients with pelvic trauma, lumbosacral plexopathy is most often noted with sacral fractures, sacroiliac joint separation, acetabular fractures, or femoral fractures [74]. In patients with traumatic lumbosacral plexopathies, the lower portion of the plexus is more often involved in case of motor vehicle accidents, whereas the upper
portion of the plexus is more often involved in case of gunshot wounds [22]. The diagnosis of retroperitoneal hematoma must be suspected in any patient receiving anticoagulants who complains of back, groin, thigh, or leg pain. Physical examination in these patients may reveal suprainguinal tenderness, and the pain may be aggravated by leg extension. Other clinical findings include a characteristic flexion and external rotation of the affected extremity. Sometimes the hematoma presents as a groin mass. Neuropathies involving the femoral nerve, the obturator nerve, and the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve are common. There may also be mild cardiovascular instability and evidence of blood loss and a decrease in hematocrit level. Most cases of retroperitoneal hematomas are due to the administration of intravenous or subcutaneous heparin. Because of the narrow therapeutic index and potential interactions of warfarin with other drugs, patients receiving this medication should be carefully monitored for potential complications. Retroperitoneal hematomas may be traumatic or nontraumatic. Other rare causes of retroperitoneal hematoma include ruptured aortic aneurysms, traumatic aortic rupture, ruptured ovarian artery aneurysms, ruptured lumbosacral artery pseudoaneurysms, ruptured pseudoaneurysms following acupuncture, femoral vein cannulation, cardiac catheterization, extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy, ruptured aneurysms in polyarteritis nodosa, pudendal blocks, acquired factor VIII–specific antibodies, pelvic fracture, and total hip arthroplasty. Retroperitoneal hematomas following cardiac catheterization are thought to arise from inadvertent puncture of the distal external iliac artery and are more prevalent in association with placements of coronary artery stents; most patients are treated with transfusion alone, and a small subset of patients unresponsive to volume expansion require surgery [1–3,21,49,51,56,64,65,69,94,121,147]. During labor and delivery, the descending fetal head may compress the lumbosacral trunk as it passes over the pelvic rim [37,68]. Intrapartum maternal lumbosacral plexopathy usually occurs in women of short stature and presents with weakness of ankle dorsiflexion, eversion, and inversion, associated with sensory loss in an L5 dermatome [68]. The resultant foot drop is almost always unilateral and, generally, on the same side as the infant’s brow during the descent. Postpartum lumbosacral plexopathy may occur after vaginal delivery and may be limited to autonomic and perineal manifestations (e.g., urinary difficulty, anorectal impairment, and sexual dysfunction) involving only S2–S4 without limb sensory or motor signs [59].

Diabetic lumbosacral radiculoplexus neuropathy (DLRPN) (also called diabetic amyotrophy) is a well-recognized subacute, painful, asymmetric lower limb neuropathy that is associated with weight loss and type 2 diabetes mellitus. Nondiabetic lumbosacral radiculoplexus neuropathy (LRPN) has received less attention [14,31–33,131,138]. Comparison of large cohorts with DLRPN and LRPN has demonstrated that age at onset, course, type and distribution of symptoms and impairments, laboratory findings, and outcomes are similar. Both conditions are lumbosacral radiculoplexus neuropathies that are associated with weight loss and begin subacutely and focally with pain but evolve into widespread, bilateral paralytic disorders. The disorder often begins focally or asymmetrically in the thigh or leg but usually progresses to involve the initially unaffected segment and the contralateral side. Although both are monophasic illnesses, patients have prolonged morbidity from pain and weakness, and many patients become wheelchair-dependent. Although motor predominant, there is unequivocal evidence that autonomic and sensory nerves are also involved. Cutaneous nerves from patients with DLRPN and LRPN show pathologic evidence of ischemic injury and microvasculitis. It is likely that DLRPN and LRPN are immune-mediated neuropathies that should be separated from chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy and systemic necrotizing vasculitis [31–33]. Recurrent idiopathic lumbosacral plexopathy has also been described [154].

Most injuries to the lumbosacral plexus primarily involve the lumbar segments, sacral segments, or individual peripheral nerves. The individual peripheral nerve syndromes are described in Chapter 2.

**Lesions of the Entire Lumbosacral Plexus**

Lesions of the entire plexus are rare and are usually incomplete. They result in paralysis or paresis of the entire lower extremity, with hyporeflexia or areflexia and sensory disturbance affecting the entire leg.

**Lesions of the Lumbar Segments**

Lesions of the lumbar segments are also usually incomplete, and they are most often due to tumor, hemorrhage, or surgical injury. If the entire lumbosacral plexus is injured, a syndrome that exhibits the following signs will result.

**Motor Signs.** There is paresis and atrophy, predominantly in the motor distributions of the femoral and obturator nerves. Therefore, there is weakness of thigh flexion (iliopsoas), leg extension (quadriceps), thigh eversion (sartorius), and thigh adduction (adductor muscles).

**Sensory Signs.** Sensation may be lost in the inguinal region and over the genitaiia (innervated by ilioinguinal, iliohypogastric, and genitofemoral nerves); on the lateral, anterior, and medial thigh (innervated by the lateral femoral cutaneous, femoral, and obturator nerves).
nerves, respectively); and on the medial aspect of the lower leg (innervated by the saphenous nerve, a branch of the femoral nerve).

Reflex Signs. The patellar reflex (femoral nerve) and cremasteric reflex (genital femoral nerve) may be decreased or absent.

Lesions of the Sacral Plexus

Lesions of the sacral plexus are frequently incomplete and occur most commonly with neoplasms or surgical trauma. If the entire sacral plexus is injured, the following syndromes result.

Motor Signs. Lesions of the sacral plexus result in motor disturbances in the field of distribution of the superior gluteal, inferior gluteal, and sciatic nerves. A “flail foot” results because of paralysis of the dorsiflexors and plantar flexors of the foot. There is weakness of knee flexion (hamstrings), foot eversion (peronei), foot inversion (tibialis anterior and posterior), foot plantar flexion (gastrocnemius and soleus), toe dorsiflexion (extensors of toes), and toe plantar flexion (plantar flexors of toes); all these muscles are in the sciatic distribution area. Paresis of abduction and internal rotation of the thigh (superior gluteal nerve palsy) and hip extension (inferior gluteal nerve palsy) occur.

Sensory Signs. Sensation may be lost in the distribution area of the sciatic nerve (outer leg and dorsum of the foot, sole, and inner aspect of the foot) and in the distribution of the posterior femoral cutaneous nerve (posterior thigh and popliteal fossa).

Reflex Signs. The Achilles reflex (ankle jerk) may be decreased or absent because of sciatic nerve involvement.

Sphincter Signs. Difficulty in bladder or bowel control may result from injury to the pudendal nerve.

References


Localization in Clinical Neurology


110. Robinson LR, Brownberger R, Raghav G. Respiratory failure and hyperventilation secondary to...


Anatomy of the Spinal Nerves and Roots

The afferent (sensory) fibers (Fig. 4.1) from the peripheral nervous system enter the spinal cord in the dorsal roots and have their perikarya in the dorsal spinal root ganglia. The dorsal roots enter the cord in the dorsolateral sulcus. The efferent (motor) fibers arise from the motor neurons located in the ventral horns of the spinal cord and exit the cord as the ventral roots. The ventral and dorsal roots unite to form the mixed spinal nerve, which then travels through the intervertebral foramen. After emerging from the foramen, the spinal nerve divides into anterior and posterior primary rami. The smaller posterior primary rami supply the skin on the dorsal aspect of the trunk with sensory fibers and also send motor fibers to the longitudinal muscles of the axial skeleton. The anterior primary rami supply the limbs (see Chapter 3), nonaxial skeletal muscles, and skin of the lateral and anterior trunk and neck (by way of the lateral cutaneous and anterior cutaneous branches, respectively). The anterior primary rami also communicate with the sympathetic ganglia through white and gray rami communicantes.

Principles of Spinal Nerve and Root Localization

The identification of spinal nerve lesions requires a precise knowledge of each group of muscles supplied by a single anterior spinal root (myotome) and each cutaneous area supplied by a single posterior spinal root (dermatome) (Fig. 4.2). Differentiation from peripheral nerve or plexus lesions thereby depends on the segmental character of the sensory and motor signs and symptoms.

Sensory Symptoms

Irritative lesions of a dorsal root result in radicular pain or root pain, which has a characteristic lancinating, electric, or burning quality. This pain is abrupt, sharp, well localized, referred to a specific dermatome or myotome, and characteristically accentuated or precipitated by maneuvers that cause increased intraspinal pressure or stretching of the dorsal nerve root (e.g., coughing, straining, sneezing, Valsalva’s maneuver, or spine movements). Pain is often the first manifestation of a sensory radiculopathy and may be associated with paresthesias or dysesthesias in the area involved.

Destructive dorsal root lesions result in hypesthesia or anesthesia that is confined to the specific dermatome involved. Because of the overlap of cutaneous supply by adjacent nerve roots, sectioning of a single dorsal root results in little or no sensory loss. Therefore, the absence of sensory loss does not exclude the possibility of a lesion affecting a single dorsal root. When multiple dorsal root lesions are present, sensory loss is evident, the area of analgesia being larger than the area of anesthesia to light touch.

Motor Signs

Ventral root lesions result in weakness and atrophy in the myotomal distribution of the affected root. Fasciculations may be evident in the affected muscle.

Reflex Signs

Lesions of the dorsal or ventral root may interrupt the afferent or efferent arc, respectively, of a specific muscle stretch reflex. Therefore, with ventral or dorsal lesions, hypo- or areflexia occurs in the muscle subserved by the affected spinal root.

Etiologies of Spinal Nerve and Root Lesions

The spinal roots may be injured by direct (e.g., missile or penetrating wounds) or indirect (e.g., spinal traction) trauma and are frequently compressed by lesions in and about the intervertebral foramina (e.g., disc disease, spondylitis, a hypertrophied ligamentum flavum, or primary or metastatic tumors of the vertebrae or spinal nerves). The most common disc prolapse in the cervical region is at the C6–C7 interspace, resulting in signs and symptoms of C7 root involvement [14,16,25]. In the lumbar region, the most common disc prolapse is at the L4–L5 or L5–S1 level, resulting in signs and symptoms referable to the L5 or S1 roots, respectively. The neurologic signs and
symptoms noted with irritation or damage of individual nerve roots by disc prolapse are outlined in Table 4.1.

A lumbosacral radiculopathy, most often involving the L2 level, and a polyradiculoneuropathy may occur as a complication of epidural analgesia or anesthesia [39]. A postradiation lumbosacral radiculopathy may occur years after irradiation of paraaortic lymph nodes in patients with neoplasms, especially testicular cancer [4]. These patients develop a motor disorder predominantly affecting the legs with mild sensory and sphincter abnormalities.

Certain generalized peripheral nervous system diseases have a predilection for the spinal roots (e.g., Guillain–Barré syndrome). Herpes zoster typically occurs in the distribution of sensory dermatomes, most often at a thoracic level [5,34]. Unilateral or bilateral radiculopathies may occur with Lyme disease, especially affecting the fifth cervical dermatome or lower thoracic levels [7,8,21]. Diabetes may cause thoracic root pain [10] or thoracoabdominal neuropathy [32,33], presenting with severe abdominal or chest pain, often not radicular in character. The presence of dysesthesias and abnormal findings on sensory examination of the trunk aid in the diagnosis of these diabetic neuropathies. Diabetic truncal neuropathy may result in sensory changes in a complete dermatomal band, in multiple dermatomal levels, in the distribution of the ventral or dorsal rami of the spinal nerves or branches of these rami, or in varying combinations of these distributions [32]. Diabetic truncal neuropathy may rarely present with focal, unilateral protrusion of the abdominal wall (pseudoherния), which may be associated with spontaneous, burning abdominal pain and hyperesthesia or which may be painless [22,36].

Patients with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome may develop a distinctive syndrome of rapidly progressive flaccid paraparesis and areflexia that is frequently associated with sphincter disturbances [31]. This acute lumbosacral polyradiculopathy may have multiple causes, including cytomegalovirus infection, metastasis from systemic lymphoma, or unknown causes [2,6,19,29,31].

The Localization of Nerve Root Syndromes

Lesions Affecting the Cervical Roots

Lesions affecting the spinal nerves and roots [37,38] give rise to motor and sensory segmental defects and
FIG. 4.2.  Map of dermatomes.
characteristic disturbances in muscle stretch reflexes. Each cervical segment is considered in more detail in this section. The individual spinal nerve root syndromes discussed are theoretical because clinical practice often presents lesions that affect multiple segments.

**LESIONS AFFECTING C1**
Because there is no dorsal root from C1, lesions of this root result in purely motor symptoms. This root supplies muscles that support the head, fix the neck, assist in neck flexion and extension, and tilt the head to one side. These include the longus capitis, rectus capitis, obliquus capitis, longissimus capitis and cervicis, multifidi, intertransversarii, rotatores, semispinalis, and infrahyoid muscles. C1 lesions usually result in minor motor difficulties.

**LESIONS AFFECTING C2**
Sensory symptoms and signs due to C2 lesions are localized to the scalp posterior to the interaural line (the C2 dermatome). The motor supply of this segment involves the same muscles responsible for head and neck movements as those innervated by segment C1. In addition, the C2 nerve helps supply the sternocleidomastoid muscle (head rotation and flexion), which is predominantly innervated by the spinal accessory nerve (cranial nerve XI).

**LESIONS AFFECTING C3**
Sensory disturbances occur on the lower occiput, the angle of the jaw, and the upper neck [24]. Paresis may occur in the scalene and levator scapulae muscles of the neck (including the infrahyoids, semispinalis capitis and cervicis, longissimus capitis and cervicis, intertransversarii, rotatores, multifidi), and in the trapezius (shoulder elevation), this last muscle being predominantly innervated by the spinal accessory nerve (cranial nerve XI). Diaphragmatic paresis may also result because the phrenic nerve receives some of its fibers from the C3 segment.

Irritation of the C3 nerve root may cause a painful, burning, red ear (red ear syndrome) [12]. The increased ear temperature may be caused by antidromic release of vasodilator peptides. This red ear syndrome may also occur with temporomandibular joint dysfunction and with thalamic lesions [12].

**LESIONS AFFECTING C4**
Sensory signs and symptoms occur on the lower neck. Paresis occurs in the scalene and levator scapulae muscles (lateral neck flexion and scapular rotation, respectively), rhomboid muscles (scapular elevation and adduction), trapezius muscle (shoulder elevation), and some muscles of the neck. Diaphragmatic paresis may also occur because some fibers reach the phrenic nerve. There is no reflex impairment.

**LESIONS AFFECTING C5**
C5 nerve root involvement results in neck, shoulder, and upper anterior arm pain. Sensory disturbances occur on the lateral arm with these lesions. Paresis occurs predominantly and variably in the following muscles: levator scapulae, rhomboids, serratus anterior, supraspinatus, infraspinatus, deltoid, biceps, and brachioradialis (for methods of examination of each of these muscles, see Chapter 2). Diaphragmatic
paresis may rarely occur owing to C5 fibers reaching the phrenic nerve. The biceps reflex (suberved by segments C5–C6) and the brachioradialis reflex (C5–C6) may be depressed.

**LESIONS AFFECTING C6**

This nerve root is often compressed by disc herniation at the C5–C6 vertebral level. A monoradiculopathy affecting the C6 nerve root is the second most common level of cervical radiculopathy after lesions of the C7 level [24]. C6 root involvement results in pain in the lateral arm and dorsal forearm. Sensory signs and symptoms occur on the lateral forearm, lateral hand, and the first and second digits. Paresis occurs predominantly in the following muscles: serratus anterior, biceps, pronator teres, flexor carpi radialis, brachioradialis, extensor carpi radialis longus, supinator, and extensor carpi radialis brevis (examination of these muscles is described in Chapter 2). The biceps reflex (segments C5–C6) and the brachioradialis reflex (segments C5–C6) may be depressed. An "inverted radial reflex" occurs when the lesion causes compression of the spinal cord at the C5–C6 level. A central disc prolapse or a horizontal bar due to degenerative disc disease is often responsible for this clinical finding. Damage of the corticospinal tract at the level of C5–C6 results in hyperreflexia at lower levels. Therefore, tapping the tendon of the brachioradialis muscle elicits no response by the brachioradialis but a brisk contraction of the finger flexors innervated by the C8–T1 segments.

**LESIONS AFFECTING C7**

This nerve root is often compressed by disc herniation at the C6–C7 vertebral level (the most common level of disc herniation) [16,25]. C7 root involvement results in pain in the dorsal forearm. In some patients, pain may be subscapular or located in the deep breast or chest [20]. Sensory disturbances occur on the third and fourth digits. Paresis occurs variably in the following muscles: serratus anterior, pectoralis major, latissimus dorsi, pronator teres, flexor carpi radialis, triceps, extensor carpi radialis longus, extensor carpi radialis brevis, and extensor digitorum (examination of these muscles is described in Chapter 2). The triceps reflex (C7–C8) may be depressed. Theoretical root syndromes discussed earlier are also related to an "idealized" brachial plexus and do not take into consideration the possibility of a prefixed or postfixed plexus (see Chapter 3).

**Lesions Affecting the Thoracic Roots**

**LESIONS AFFECTING T1**

Sensory disturbances occur on the medial arm. Paresis occurs variably in the following muscles: abductor pollicis brevis, opponens pollicis, flexor pollicis brevis, all lumbricals and interossei, adductor pollicis, opponens digiti minimi, opponens digiti minimi, flexor pollicis brevis, and adductor pollicis [13]. The finger flexor reflex (C8–T1) may be depressed. Sympathetic fibers destined for the superior cervical ganglia are interrupted, resulting in an ipsilateral Horner syndrome (ptosis, miosis, and anhidrosis).

There are frequent intradural communicating fibers between neighboring segments of the cervical posterior roots. These connections are most prominent between a specific cervical segment and the next caudal root. A lesion may therefore be falsely localized clinically to a segment one level higher than its actual location.

**LESIONS AFFECTING SEGMENTS T2–T12**

Lesions affecting the thoracic roots and spinal nerves are difficult to diagnose because thoracic and abdominal muscles are difficult to evaluate and there are no muscle stretch reflexes subserved by these levels. Therefore, clinical diagnosis relies predominantly on sensory symptoms and signs.

Thoracic nerves supply (by way of the intercostal nerves) the intercostal and abdominal muscles, which function predominantly in elevation and depression of the ribs, contraction of the abdomen, and flexion of the trunk. Thoracic nerve lesions result in intercostal muscle paralysis, which causes retraction of the costal interspace during inspiration and bulging of the interspace during cough or a Valsalva’s maneuver. Lower thoracic and upper lumbar root lesions may result in
excessive protrusion of the abdomen during inspiration. When the abdominal muscles are affected there may be difficulty in rising from a recumbent position, and if these muscles are paralyzed unilaterally the umbilicus is pulled toward the normal side during inspiration or head elevation against resistance (while the patient is in the prone position). When there is bilateral lower abdominal muscle paresis below or at the T10 level, this maneuver results in elevation of the umbilicus (Beever’s sign). Sensory disturbances are often predominantly or solely subjective. The patient complains of severe burning paresthesias or lightning-like pains. These occur in a unilateral or bilateral segmental distribution (radiating around the thorax or abdomen) and are precipitated by any maneuver that causes increased intraspinal pressure or stretching of the dorsal root (coughing, sneezing, Valsalva’s maneuver, neck flexion, spine movements). There may be sensory loss in the thoracic dermatome involved, but because of the overlapping cutaneous supply by adjacent nerve roots, complete section of a single dorsal root results in little or no sensory loss. An abdominal pseudohermia may be caused by herpes zoster truncal T12 radiculoneuropathy [15].

Axillary pain may be a heralding sign of neoplasm involving the upper thoracic root [28]. Pain in the arm that is severe or progressive may be indicative of a malignant pathology, and evaluation should target the upper thoracic root regions.

A benign condition of unknown etiology, termed notalgia paresthetica, has been described in which burning, pruritus, and paresthesias develop over an area (approximately the size of the palm of the hand) at the medial margin of the scapula [23]. Decreased sensitivity to pain may occur in this area, which is likely in the territory of the dorsal branches of roots T2 to T6.

Lesions of the Lumbar and Sacral Roots

LESIONS AFFECTING L1
Sensory signs and symptoms occur mainly in the inguinal region. Lower abdominal paresis (internal oblique, transversus abdominis) may occur but is difficult to demonstrate.

LESIONS AFFECTING L2
Sensory disturbances occur on the anterior thigh. Paresis may be present in the pectineus (thigh adduction, flexion, and eversion), iliopsoas (thigh flexion), sartorius (thigh flexion and eversion), quadriceps (leg extension), and thigh adductors. The cremasteric reflex (L2) may be depressed. With upper lumbar root lesions (L2–L4), the result of bent-knee pulling test is often positive [9]. The examiner pulls the half-prone patient’s knee backward while putting forward pressure on the buttock; the test result is positive when lumbar radicular pain is elicited.

LESIONS AFFECTING L3
Sensory signs and symptoms occur on the lower anterior thigh and medial aspect of the knee. Paresis occurs variably in the pectineus (thigh adduction, flexion, and eversion), iliopsoas (thigh flexion), sartorius (thigh flexion and eversion), quadriceps (leg extension), and thigh adductors. The patellar reflex (L2–L4) may be depressed.

LESIONS AFFECTING L4
L4 root involvement causes lower back, buttock, anterolateral thigh, and anterior leg pain. Sensory disturbances occur on the knee and the medial leg. Paresis occurs variably in the quadriceps (leg extension), sartorius (thigh flexion and eversion), and tibialis anterior (foot dorsiflexion and inversion). The patellar reflex (L2–L4) may be depressed. Rarely, neurogenic hypertrophy of the tibialis anterior muscle may occur with a chronic L4 lesion, perhaps because of excessive spontaneous muscle activity [17].

A recent study evaluated four office tests of quadriceps strength in symptomatic adults with radiographic evidence of L3 or L4 nerve root compression [26]. The study observed the performance of each test for its ability to detect quadriceps weakness when compared to the asymptomatic side. To determine the potential influence of radicular pain on the performance of the four tests, a control group of patients older than 40 years with clinical and radiographic evidence of L5 or S1 radiculopathies underwent identical testing of quadriceps strength. The L3 and L4 nerve roots innervate the quadriceps; therefore, quadriceps weakness may be a consequence of L3 or L4 radiculopathies. Thirty-three consecutive patients with L3 or L4 radiculopathies and 19 with L5 or S1 radiculopathies were studied. The four tests of quadriceps strength included: (a) single leg sit-to-stand test (with the seated patient asked to extend one leg, hold that foot above the floor, and rise to a standing position with the other leg; the patient could hold the examiner’s hand for balance); (b) step-up test (with the patient stepping up onto a standard 7-inch stepstool, again holding the examiner’s hand for balance); (c) knee-flexed manual muscle testing (with the patient supine, the hip flexed to 90 degrees, the knee maximally flexed, the patient attempts to extend the knee against the examiner’s resistance); and (d) knee-extended manual muscle testing (as in the knee-extended manual test but with the knee extended and the examiner trying to overcome knee extension). In L3 and L4 radiculopathies, unilateral quadriceps weakness was detected by the single leg sit-to-stand test in 61%, by knee-flexed manual muscle testing in 42%, by step-up test in 27% and by knee-extended manual muscle testing in 9% of patients. The sit-to-stand test detected weakness in all but one case in
The Localization of Lumbosacral Disc Disease

Herniation of a lumbar intervertebral disc may result in root compression (Table 4.1). Almost all lumbar herniations occur between the fourth and fifth lumbar or the fifth lumbar and first sacral interspaces. Not only the interspace level but also the location of the protruded disc determines which roots are predominantly affected (Fig. 4.3). For example, an L4–L5 protrusion that occurs posterolaterally affects the L5 root destined to leave the canal in the L5–S1 interspace. A very lateral L4–L5 protrusion, however, may affect the L4 root traversing the L4–L5 interspace, and a very medial lesion may affect the S1 root in its downward course. Central disc herniations are less common and may actually affect roots on both sides, resulting in bilateral pain, autonomic paralysis of the bladder and bowel, saddle anesthesia, and bilateral lower extremity weakness (cauda equina syndrome) (see Chapter 5).

Similarly, a very lateral disc protrusion at L5–S1 affects the L5 root (which leaves the canal in the L5–S1 interspace), whereas the usual posterolateral protrusion causes symptoms referable predominantly to an S1 distribution.

A thorough knowledge of this intervertebral space–nerve root relationship is necessary to localize these nerve root syndromes accurately to the appropriate sites of disc herniation.

Lesions Affecting L5
L5 root involvement causes lower back, buttock, lateral thigh, and anterolateral calf pain. Sensory signs and symptoms occur on the lateral leg, the dorsomedial foot, and the large toe. Paresis occurs in the gluteus medius, gluteus minimus, tensor fasciae latae (adduction and internal rotation of thigh), semimembranosus and semitendinosus (knee flexion), tibialis posterior (plantar flexion and inversion of foot), tibialis anterior (dorsiflexion and inversion of foot), peronei (foot plantar flexion and eversion), flexor digitorum longus (plantar flexion of foot and all toes except the large toe), extensor digitorum brevis (extension of the large toe and three medial toes), extensor hallucis longus (extension of great toe and foot dorsi- flexion), and extensor digitorum longus (extension of four lateral toes and foot dorsiflexion). With L5 root lesions, both the patellar (L2–L4) and Achilles (S1–S2) reflexes are spared.

Lesions Affecting S1
S1 root involvement causes lower back, buttock, lateral thigh, and calf pain. Sensory disturbances occur on the little toe, lateral foot, and most of the sole of the foot. Paresis occurs in the gluteus maximus (hip extension), biceps femoris (knee flexion), gastrocnemius and soleus (plantar flexion of foot), flexor hallucis longus (plantar flexion of foot and terminal phalanx of great toe), flexor digitorum longus (plantar flexion of foot and all toes except the large toe), all of the small muscles of the foot, and extensor digitorum brevis (extension of large toe and three medial toes). Rarely, an S1 radiculopathy may result in unilateral calf enlargement [18], likely because of a combination of increased amounts of connective tissue and fat and a varying degree of muscle fiber hypertrophy and atrophy [27]. The Achilles reflex (S1–S2) is depressed.

Lesions Affecting S2–S5
Sensory disturbances occur on the calf, posterior thigh, buttock, and perianal region. Bladder and bowel control may be impaired. The external anal sphincter may fail to contract in response to pricking of the skin or mucous membrane of the perianal region (absent anal wink).

The clinical syndrome of neurogenic pseudoclaudication of the cauda equina [3] most commonly results from lumbar stenosis. The stenosis can be congenital or developmental (e.g., achondroplasia, mucopolysaccharidosis) or acquired; that is, spondylo- lactic, traumatic, osteoporotic skeletal (e.g., Paget’s disease of bone), iatrogenic (e.g., postsurgical), or due to degenerative spondylolisthesis. Patients develop unilateral or bilateral, asymmetric pain in the buttock, thigh, or leg and occasionally neurologic signs (e.g., numbness, loss of reflexes, or paresis) after exertion. Coughing, sneezing, and straining rarely aggravate the pain. Interestingly, the straight leg-raising test result is often negative. These signs and symptoms are relieved by rest, flexion at the waist, and sitting, and are thought to be because of intermittent cauda equina ischemia brought on by the increased blood flow demand due to exercise. This syndrome must be differentiated from intermittent claudication of the cauda equina. A long term follow-up study. Brain 1978;101:211–222.

References


TABLE 4.2 Differential of Neurogenic from Vascular Claudications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical Manifestations</th>
<th>Neurogenic Claudications</th>
<th>Vascular Claudications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exertional pain</td>
<td>Yes, usually thigh and buttock</td>
<td>Yes, usually calf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise tolerance</td>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>Constant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effect of bicycle</td>
<td>No effect</td>
<td>Reproduces symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effect of incline</td>
<td>Worse walking down</td>
<td>Worse walking up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effect of standing</td>
<td>Reproduces symptoms</td>
<td>No effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weakness with exertion</td>
<td>Present at times</td>
<td>Absent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paresthesias with exertion</td>
<td>Uncommon</td>
<td>Rare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symptoms with back hyperextension</td>
<td>Reproduces symptoms</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actions needed for relief</td>
<td>Sitting, leaning forward</td>
<td>Stopping activity, independent of position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preventative measures</td>
<td>Using shopping cart to lean on</td>
<td>Walking slower</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time for relief</td>
<td>Variable (5–15 minutes)</td>
<td>Prompt (15–16 seconds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peripheral pulses</td>
<td>Preserved</td>
<td>Absent at rest or after exercise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weakness after exercise</td>
<td>Present often</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensory findings after exercise</td>
<td>Occasionally</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decrease in reflexes after exercise</td>
<td>Occasionally</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Personal communication. W. Neith Folger, M.D.
Anatomy of the Spinal Cord

Gross Anatomy and Relationship to Vertebral Levels

Anchored to the dura by the dentate (denticulate) ligaments, the spinal cord [15,18,22,29,36] extends from the level of the cranial border of the atlas, where it is continuous with the medulla, to the lower border of the first lumbar vertebra. During early fetal development, the spinal cord extends to the lower end of the sacrum, but at birth it extends only as far as the upper border of the third lumbar vertebra. At 20 weeks’ gestational age, the conus medullaris is at the L4–L5 level. By 40 weeks’ gestational age or at term, the conus medullaris is at the L3 level. By age of 2 months, it has reached the adult L1–L2 level [6]. The average length of the spinal cord is 45 cm in the adult male and 42 to 43 cm in the adult female. The corresponding average length of the spinal column is 70 cm. Cylindrical and flattened in a dorsoventral direction, the spinal cord fills one-third to one-half of the vertebral canal, and demonstrates both cervical and lumbar enlargements. The first enlargement corresponds to the segmental innervation of the upper extremities and extends from the C5 to T1 spinal levels, whereas the second corresponds to the innervation of the lower extremities and extends from L3 to S2. Below the lumbar enlargement, the spinal cord narrows, ending as the conus medullaris. From the conus medullaris, a fine pial thread known as the filum terminale passes down to the dorsum of the first coccygeal segment.

Although the spinal cord is a continuous and nonsegmental structure, the 31 pairs of nerves originating from it give it a segmental appearance. On this basis, the spinal cord is considered to have 31 segments analogous to the spinal nerves (8 cervical, 12 thoracic, 5 lumbar, 5 sacral, and 1 coccygeal). Due to the different growth rates of the spinal cord and the vertebral column, the more caudal (lumbar and sacral) spinal roots must travel a considerable distance in the subarachnoid space before they reach their corresponding intervertebral foramina. This lower group of roots congregates around the filum terminale in the spinal theca and is known as the cauda equina.

Cross-sectional Anatomy of the Spinal Cord

In its cross-section (Fig. 5.1), the spinal cord consists of the centrally placed gray matter surrounded by white matter. The gray matter is shaped like a modified H, with two lateral columns joined by a transverse commissure. Each lateral column has a dorsal horn lying dorsolaterally and a ventral horn lying ventrolaterally. The central canal of the spinal cord is located in the center of the gray commissure.

At the cervical level, the relation between the spine and the spinal cord roughly corresponds. However, the thoracic spinal cord is located in the spinal canal formed by the first to the eighth (T1–T8) thoracic vertebrae, the lumbar spinal cord in the canal formed between the ninth and the eleventh (T9–T11) thoracic vertebrae, and the sacral spinal cord in the canal formed between the twelfth thoracic (T12) and the second lumbar (L2) vertebrae. In the cervical region, the spinous process of a particular vertebra matches the level of the corresponding cord segment; in the upper thoracic region, there is a discrepancy of two segments (e.g., the fourth thoracic spinal segment overlies the sixth) and in the lower thoracic region, there is a discrepancy of three segments. The eleventh thoracic spinous process overlies the third lumbar cord segment, and the twelfth overlies the first sacral cord segment.

The external surface of the spinal cord is marked by a ventral median fissure and a dorsal median sulcus (continued by a dorsal median septum), which divide the cord into two symmetric halves. In the posterolateral surface, there is a dorsolateral sulcus marking the entrance of the dorsal roots. In the anterolateral surface, there is a ventrolateral sulcus that is not as well delineated as the other sulci because the ventral roots emerge as a number of separate twigs.
Bands of white matter known as the dorsal and ventral white commissures correlate with the gray commissure. The white matter comprises ascending and descending tracts.

**Major Ascending and Descending Tracts of the Spinal Cord**

**ASCENDING TRACTS**

Almost all the sensory afferent input to the spinal cord enters by way of the dorsal roots. The central end of a dorsal root splits into lateral and medial bundles. The finely myelinated or unmyelinated fibers of the lateral bundle bifurcate into short ascending and descending branches within the zone of Lissauer and terminate on the neurons of the dorsal horn. The axons of second-order neurons, with cell bodies presumably in laminae VI and VII, decussate over several segments by way of the ventral white commissure; they proceed to the ventrolateral quadrant of the spinal cord and ascend as the lateral spinothalamic (neospinothalamic) tract to reach the thalamus (ventral posterolateral nucleus). These fibers convey pain and temperature sensation and have a laminar configuration. As a consequence of this arrangement, fibers carrying information from cervical regions lie dorsomedially and those from sacral regions lie ventrolaterally. There also seems to be a segregation between pain and temperature fibers, with fibers carrying temperature information located dorsolaterally to pain-carrying ones.

Pain may also be conducted by way of the spinoreticulothalamic (paleospinothalamic) system. Fibers from this system have short axons that synapse in the

**LAMINA**

I Nucleus posteromarginalis
II Substantia gelatinosa
III and IV Nucleus proprius dorsalis
V Zone anterior to lamina IV
VI Zone at the base of dorsal horn
VII Intermediate zone
VIII Zone in the ventral horn (restricted to medial aspect in cervical and lumbar enlargements)
IX Medial and lateral anterior horn cell columns

Each half of the white matter of the spinal cord is separated into three funiculi by the gray matter and the intramedullary portions of the spinal roots, as follows:

1. The dorsal funiculus: the portion of white matter between the dorsomedian and the dorsolateral sulci
2. The lateral funiculus: the white matter between the dorsolateral and the ventrolateral sulci
3. The ventral funiculus: the white matter between the ventrolateral sulcus and the ventromedian fissure

**FIG. 5.1.** Anatomy of the spinal cord (cross section). Tract lamination: S = sacral segments; L = lumbar segments; Th = thoracic segments; C = cervical segments.
brainstem reticular formation and terminate in the intralaminar nuclei of the thalamus. The lateral spinothalamic tract conveys information that is perceived as sharp and localized pain, whereas the spinoreticulothalamic system is concerned with poorly localized pain sensation.

Fibers carrying tactile sensibility (light touch) also bifurcate after entering the zone of Lissauier and terminate with interneurons of the dorsal horn. The axons of second-order neurons, whose cell bodies presumably lie in laminae VI and VII, cross to the opposite side through the ventral white commissure and ascend as the ventral spinothalamic tract to reach the ventral posterolateral nucleus of the thalamus. Light touch is also transmitted by way of the dorsal funiculus–medial lemniscus pathway.

The heavily myelinated fibers of the medial bundle of the dorsal root pass over the dorsal horn into the dorsal funiculus. After giving rise to collaterals, which terminate largely in laminae III and IV, they ascend in the dorsal funiculus. The fibers from the lowermost part of the body (sacral, lumbar, and lower six thoracic levels) are located more medially and constitute the fasciculus gracilis, whereas those coming from the upper part of the body (upper six thoracic and all cervical levels) occupy a more lateral position and constitute the fasciculus cuneatus. The fasciculus gracilis ends in the nucleus gracilis of the medulla; the fasciculus cuneatus also reaches the dorsal surface of the medulla and terminates in the nucleus cuneatus. The axons of these two nuclei decussate in the lower medulla and ascend as the dorsal spinocerebellar tracts. The ventral spinocerebellar tracts also bifurcate after entering the zone of Lissauier and constitute the fasciculus cuneatus. The heavily myelinated fibers of the medial bundle of the dorsal root pass over the dorsal horn into the dorsal funiculus. After giving rise to collaterals, which terminate largely in laminae III and IV, they ascend in the dorsal funiculus. The fibers from the lowermost part of the body (sacral, lumbar, and lower six thoracic levels) are located more medially and constitute the fasciculus gracilis, whereas those coming from the upper part of the body (upper six thoracic and all cervical levels) occupy a more lateral position and constitute the fasciculus cuneatus. The fasciculus gracilis ends in the nucleus gracilis of the medulla; the fasciculus cuneatus also reaches the dorsal surface of the medulla and terminates in the nucleus cuneatus. The axons of these two nuclei decussate in the lower medulla and ascend as the dorsal spinocerebellar tracts. The ventral spinocerebellar tracts also bifurcate after entering the zone of Lissauier and constitute the fasciculus cuneatus. Other ascending tracts include the dorsal spinocerebellar and ventral spinocerebellar tracts, which transmit unconscious proprioceptive information from the lower limbs and the inferior half of the body to the cerebellum and the cuneocerebellar and rostrocerebellar tracts, which convey similar information from the upper limbs and rostral half of the body.

DESCENDING TRACTS

Five descending systems exert tonic effects on the α and γ motor neurons; these systems are therefore important in the postural control of the limbs. Two of these systems (the vestibulospinal tract and the medial reticulospinal tract) inhibit the antigravity muscles and facilitate the antagonists.

Corticospinal Tract

The fibers of the corticospinal pathway arise mainly from somatotopically organized areas from the primary motor cortex, lateral premotor cortex, and supplementary motor cortex of the contralateral hemisphere. The corticospinal neurons are found primarily in Brodmann’s area 4, which occupies the posterior portion of the precentral gyrus (primary motor cortex or MI). The lateral premotor and supplementary motor cortices are located in Brodmann’s area 6. Corticospinal axons also arise from neurons in the primary sensory cortex in the postcentral gyrus (Brodmann’s areas 3, 1, and 2), anterior paracentral gyri, superior parietal lobule (Brodmann’s areas 5 and 7), and portions of the cingulate gyrus on the medial surface of the hemisphere. These fibers descend through the corona radiata, the posterior limb of the internal capsule, and the ventral portion of the mesencephalon and pass down to the ventral portion of the medulla, where they form two large pyramids. When they reach the caudal portion of the medulla, approximately 90% of the 1 million fibers of each pyramid cross over in an interdigitated fashion to descend in a massive tract in the lateral funiculus of the spinal cord known as the lateral corticospinal tract. The fibers in the lateral corticospinal tract extend all the way through the spinal cord and terminate in laminae IV through VII and IX. The other 10% of the fibers that do not decussate descend in the ipsilateral ventral funiculus as the ventral corticospinal tract, which terminates (after crossing in the ventral white commissure) in lamina VIII of the cervical and upper thoracic regions.

Motor neurons that innervate the axial musculature are situated in an extreme ventromedial sector of lamina IX, whereas those that innervate the intrinsic extremity musculature are clustered within a dorsolateral sector; motor neurons for the limb girdle musculature are located in an intermediate position [2]. This ventromedial–dorsolateral gradient of the proximal–distal representation is also maintained within the intermediate zone (laminae V–VIII), which contains the propriospinal neurons. Propriospinal neurons projecting to the limb and axial motor neurons tend to project for considerable distances above and below the segment of origin, thereby influencing large groups of proximal muscles. By contrast, propriospinal neurons projecting to motor neurons that innervate the intrinsic muscles of the limb tend to project only short distances above and below the segment of origin, thereby influencing smaller, more restricted groups of distal muscles [2].
FIG. 5.2. The vascular supply of the spinal cord.

Corticorubrospinal Tract
Cells in cortical areas 4 and 6 and 1, 2, and 3 project to the ipsilateral red nucleus. The axons of some of these rubral cells decussate and descend through the brainstem tegmentum and lateral funiculus of the spinal cord as the rubrospinal tract.

Lateral Reticulospinal Tract
This tract originates in the medullary reticular formation, chiefly on the ipsilateral side, and descends in the ventrolateral funiculus.

Vestibulospinal Tract
Fibers originating in the lateral vestibular nucleus extend through the entire length of the spinal cord in the anterior region of the lateral funiculus. Fibers from the medial vestibular nucleus extend through the cervical and upper thoracic levels in the ventral funiculus.

Medial Reticulospinal Tract
This pathway originates in the pontine and lateral medullary reticular formations and descends largely uncrossed in the ventral funiculus of the spinal cord.

Arterial Supply to the Spinal Cord
The main arterial supply to the spinal cord arises from the anterior spinal artery (running along the anterior median fissure), the paired posterior (posterolateral) spinal arteries (coursing along the posterolateral sulcus), and the perimedullary plexus connecting them. The vascular supply of the spinal cord (Fig. 5.2) is divided into extraspinal and intraspinal systems [34,104,132].

EXTRASPINAL SYSTEM
(EXTRAMEDULLARY ARTERIES)
The lateral spinal arteries, present in early development, give rise to radicular arteries, radiculopial arteries, and radiculomedullary arteries. The latter, by means of the anterior and posterior spinal arteries, are responsible for most of the blood supply to the spinal cord. The radiculomedullary arteries are present only at certain segmental levels. Approximately 6 to 10 of them join the anterior spinal artery, running along the anterior median fissure, and 10 to 23 join the posterior spinal arteries. The anterior spinal artery arises from the anastomosis of two branches from the vertebral artery, extends from the level of the olivary nucleus to the tip of the conus medullaris, and supplies the ventral surface of the medulla and the anterior two-thirds of the spinal cord. Sulcal branches of the anterior spinal artery supply the anterior horn, the lateral horn, the central gray matter, and the basal aspect of the posterior horn. The posterior spinal arteries are paired branches of the intracranial vertebral artery or the posterior inferior cerebellar artery. The posterior spinal arteries also extend the length of the cord and supply the posterior horn and the posterior funiculus. This arterial system receives 10 to 20 posterior radicular vessels [34,132]. At the conus medullaris, the anterior and posterior spinal arteries are joined by the anastomosing ansa of the conus. Anastomotic radicular arteries, most of them branches of the aorta, feed both the arterial systems at various levels.
Three main functional regions in the vertical axis of the spinal cord have been distinguished according to their unequal blood supply:

1. The upper or cervicothoracic region, richly vascularized, embraces the cervical and first two thoracic cord segments. The first four cervical segments are supplied by the anterior spinal artery and have limited or no radiculomedullary supply. The lower four cervical and the first two thoracic segments receive their supply from two to four large radicular arteries arising from the vertebral and the ascending and deep cervical arteries. The most important of these radicular arteries is named the artery of the cervical enlargement typically arising between C4 and C8; it usually enters the spinal cord with the seventh and eighth cervical roots. A variable number of radiculomedullary vessels feed the posterior spinal arteries, and they predominate in the cervical enlargement.

2. The intermediate or midthoracic region, poorly vascularized, is supplied by the branches of the intercostal arteries and includes the third through the eighth thoracic segments. It receives a single radiculomedullary artery, which enters with the sixth, seventh, or eighth thoracic roots. There are two to three segmental feeders to the posterior spinal arteries.

3. The lower or thoracolumbosacral region enjoys a rich vascularization and is nourished by radiculomedullary branches of the intercostal and lumbar arteries. The most important source of supply to the anterior circulation depends on the great anterior radicular artery of Adamkiewicz (artery of the lumbar enlargement) that enters most frequently from the left side with the ninth, tenth, eleventh, or twelfth thoracic (75% of cases between T9 and T12) or first two lumbar roots, seldom from the lumbar region or higher segments between T6 and T8. Numerous posterior radicular arteries are also present in this region.

INTRASPINAL SYSTEM (INTRAMEDULLARY ARTERIES)
Branches of the anterior and posterior spinal arteries form a perimedullary circuitry around the cord. Branches arise from this plexus to supply a substantial amount of white matter and the dorsal horns of the gray matter. The arterial supply of the gray matter is richer than that of the white matter. The largest branches of the anterior spinal artery (sulcocommisural arteries) enter the ventral median fissure and supply the gray matter, except for the dorsal horns and the innermost portion of the white matter. The dorsal horns and funiculi are supplied by the paired posterior spinal arteries, the posterior medullary feeders, and the perforating pial branches.

Venous Drainage of the Spinal Cord
Veins draining the spinal cord have a distribution similar to arteries. Anterior longitudinal trunks consist of anteromedial and anterolateral veins. Sulcal veins drain the anteromedial portion of the spinal cord. Anterolateral regions of the spinal cord drain into the anterolateral veins. Posterior longitudinal venous trunks drain the dorsal funiculus. Throughout the coronal venous plexus, they are interconnected. At each spinal cord segment small radicular veins drain the nerve roots, but at some levels larger medullary veins will arise from the anterior median spinal vein. There are approximately 10 to 20 anterior medullary veins and a similar number of posterior medullary veins. The posterior half of the spinal cord drain into the posterior, and the anterior half of the spinal cord drain into the anterior medullary veins. These medullary veins unite with the radicular veins, internal and external vertebral plexus to form the intervertebral vein that drains blood from the spine and spinal cord. Prior to their exit from the dura mater, these veins are valveless.

Within the spinal canal’s epidural space (bounded by the posterior longitudinal ligament anteriorly, the ligamenta flava and the periosteum of the laminae posteriorly, and the pedicles of the spinal column and the intervertebral foramina laterally), there is also a longitudinally and circumferentially arranged network of valveless veins, known as the internal venous plexus (anterior and posterior). The internal venous plexus, lying external to the dura, communicates with the spinal cord through the medullary and radicular veins and with the vertebral body through basivertebral veins that run horizontally within the vertebral column, and drains into the external venous plexus (anterior and posterior), which surrounds the vertebral column. Both the internal and external venous plexus extend from the base of the skull to the sacrum. The vertebral venous plexuses also anastomose with the sacral, pelvic, and prostatic venous plexuses [95]. The vertebral venous plexus is often referred to as Batson’s plexus. These vascular networks of valveless veins, allowing bidirectional flow, provide a direct vascular route for the spread of prostate and other pelvic tumors.

Physiology of the Spinal Cord Circulation
Spinal cord blood vessels autoregulate in response to changes in systemic arterial blood pressure; they dilate when the $\text{PaCO}_2$ is increased, and constrict.
when it is reduced. Spinal cord perfusion is more directly affected by changes in systemic blood pressure than brain perfusion. Low peripheral vascular resistance with aortic hypotension diverts aortic outflow away from the spinal cord blood vessels. When peripheral vascular resistance in the lower extremities is high, aortic outflow is diverted toward the spinal circulation, increasing pressure and possibly spinal cord perfusion. If patient has hypertension and increased peripheral vascular resistance, a column of contrast medium in the aorta during aortography is diverted into the spinal cord circulation. If peripheral resistance is decreased, rapid forward flow occurs, and the aorta is virtually emptied of contrast at the end of one cardiac cycle and none is visible in the spinal arterial circulation.

Covered by the three membranes of the CNS, the dura mater, arachnoid, and the innermost pia-mater, the spinal cord is encased within a bony structure similar to that which protects the brain, so that any change in volume can take place only at the expense of the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), the blood, or the spinal cord tissue itself. Damage to the spinal cord typically occurs with more than 20 to 30 minutes of ischemia and during systemic hypotension with failure of the autoregulatory response. The resulting ischemic injury to the spinal cord affects areas with high metabolic demand, such as the anterior horn cells and gray matter before, leading to complete cord necrosis [104].

Lesions of the Spinal Cord

Spinal cord syndromes may develop acutely (within minutes or hours), subacutely (days or weeks), or chronically (developing over months or even years). According to the degree of functional impairment, spinal cord syndromes may be further classified as complete or incomplete.

Complete Spinal Cord Transection (Transverse Myelopathy)

With complete cord transection (Fig. 5.3), all ascending tracts from below the level of the lesion and all descending tracts from above the level of the lesion are interrupted [6,30,43]. Therefore, all motor and sensory functions below the level of spinal cord damage are disturbed. More often, the section is incomplete and irregular, and the findings reflect the extent of the damage. Transverse myelopathy of acute onset is often due to traumatic spine injuries, tumor (e.g., metastatic carcinoma, lymphoma), multiple sclerosis, or vascular disorders. Other causes include spinal epidural hematoma or abscess, paraneoplastic myelopathy, autoimmune disorders, hereditary intervertebral disc, and parainfectious or post-vaccinal syndromes [59]. The main causes of transverse myelopathy are summarized in Table 5.1.

**SENSORY DISTURBANCES**

All sensory modalities (soft touch, position sense, vibration, temperature, and pain) are impaired below the level of the lesion. Clinically, pinprick loss below a segmental level is most valuable in localizing the lesion. A sensory level may be easily missed unless carefully, and sometimes repeatedly, sought. In complete lesions, particularly with extramedullary pathology, the sensory level may be many segments below the level of the lesion. For instance, high thoracic lesions may present with levels in the upper lumbar segments. The somatotopic distribution of fibers in the lateral spinothalamic tract, with the lowest segments represented more superficially, has been invoked to explain this apparent discrepancy. More reliable band-like radicular pain or segmental paresthesias may occur at the level of the lesion and may be of localizing value for the appropriate spinal level. If the pain is cervical, it radiates to the arms; if thoracic in origin, it is circumferential to the chest or abdomen; and if lumbar or sacral, it radiates to the legs. Localized vertebral pain (over the vertebral spinous process), which is accentuated by palpation or vertebral percussion, may occur with destructive lesions (especially infections and tumors) and may also be of localizing value. Pain that is worse when recumbent and better when sitting or standing is common with malignancy.

---

**TABLE 5.1  Transverse Myelopathy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metastases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extrudal extension of mediastinal/thoracic lesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myelitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple sclerosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuromyelitis optica (NMO or Devic’s disease)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal cord ischemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal epidural hematoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal epidural abscess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paraneoplastic myelopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autoimmune disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herniated intervertebral disc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parainfectious/Postexanthematous (measles, rubella)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postvaccinial (rabies, polio)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumoral calcinosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---
FIG. 5.3. Spinal cord syndromes.

A medullary or lateral pontine lesion may cause a sensory deficit in the contralateral leg, trunk, or both to a specific level [83]. For example, a very laterally placed medullary lesion may damage the sacral and lumbar afferent fibers of the lateral spinothalamic tract but spare the more medial thoracic and cervical afferent fibers, resulting in a sensory loss below a specific lumbar level. A similar sensory level described with a parietal lesion is even more unusual [22].

MOTOR DISTURBANCES
Paraplegia or quadriplegia occurs below the level of the lesion due to an interruption of the descending corticospinal tracts. Initially, especially with acute
lesions, the paralysis is flaccid and areflexic because of spinal shock. Eventually, hypertonic, hyperreflexic paraplegia or tetraplegia occurs with bilateral extensor toe signs, loss of superficial abdominal and cremasteric reflexes, and extension and flexor spasms. Extension at the hip and knee occurs with incomplete or high spinal cord lesions, whereas flexion at the hip and the knee occurs with complete and lower lesions of the spinal cord.

At the level of the lesion, there are lower motor neuron signs (paresis, atrophy, fasciculations, and areflexia) in a segmental distribution because of damage to the anterior horn cells or their ventral roots. These lower motor neuron signs, which may be quite subtle in thoracic lesions, localize the lesion to a specific spinal cord level.

**AUTONOMIC DISTURBANCES**

Urinary and rectal sphincter dysfunction with incontinence may occur with transverse myelopathy. Urgency of micturition is the usual bladder symptom, with urinary retention a later problem, and incontinence not seen until very late. Constipation is the most common bowel symptom. Initially, a tonic and, later, spastic rectal and bladder sphincter dysfunction occurs with lesions at any spinal level. Bladder and bowel dysfunction result from bilateral lesions, which may also cause orthostatic hypotension. Anhidrosis, trophic skin changes, impaired temperature control, and vasomotor instability are seen below the level of the lesion. Sexual dysfunction (especially impotence) may be present. A lesion involving the cell bodies of the preganglionic sympathetic neuron located in the cervicothoracic cord may result in an ipsilateral Horner syndrome. After the phase of spinal shock, individuals with cervical and high thoracic (above T6) acute spinal cord injuries, may develop autonomic dysreflexia.

**Hemisection of the Spinal Cord (Brown-Séquard Syndrome)**

Functional hemisection of the spinal cord results in a characteristic syndrome (the Brown-Séquard syndrome, Fig. 5.3) [64], which consists of the following signs and symptoms:

- **Loss of pain and temperature sensation contralateral to the hemisection due to interruption of the crossed spinothalamic tract.** This sensory level is usually one or two segments below (caudal) the level of the lesion.
- **Ipsilateral loss of proprioceptive function below the level of the lesion due to interruption of the ascending fibers in the posterior columns (dorsal funiculi).** Tactile sensation may be normal or minimally decreased [107].

### TABLE 5.2: Brown-Séquard Syndrome

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Penetrating (stab wounds) or blunt trauma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Herniated cervical disc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posttraumatic arachnoiditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chiropractic manipulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor (primary or metastatic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple sclerosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other inflammatory/infectious causes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal cord ischemia/Spinal epidural hematoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal subdural hematoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hematomyelia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal cord herniation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Lesions Affecting the Spinal Cord Centrally**

The central spinal cord syndrome is best exemplified by syringomyelia, hydromyelia, hematomyelia, and intramedullary cord tumors (Table 5.3). The clinical course of syringomyelia is usually slowly progressive, and the syrinx rarely remains limited. Often the condition is associated with hindbrain abnormalities as seen in Chiari type I and type II or Dandy-Walker malformations, or as a late sequel to Dandy-Walker malformations.
quadruplegia, spinal trauma, spinal cord tumors, arachnoiditis or, rarely, with myelitis [108]. Acute atypical presentations are rarely seen [4]. Spinal cord damage starts centrally and spreads centrifugally to involve other spinal cord structures. Characteristically, the decussating fibers of the spinothalamic tract conveying pain and temperature sensation are compromised initially. This results in thermoanesthesia and analgesia in a "vest-like" or "suspended" bilateral distribution with the preservation of soft touch sensation and proprioception (dissociation of sensory loss). With forward extension of the disease process, the anterior horn cells become involved at the level of the lesion, resulting in segmental neurogenic atrophy, paresthesia, and areflexia. Lateral extension results in an ipsilateral Horner syndrome (due to involvement of the ciliospinal center of Budge with C8–T2 lesions), kyphoscoliosis (due to involvement of the dorsomedian and ventromedian motor nuclei supplying the paraspinal muscles), and, eventually, spastic paralysis below the level of the lesion (owing to the corticospinal tract involvement). Dorsal extension disrupts dorsal column function (ipsilateral position sense and vibratory loss), and with extreme ventrolateral extension, the spinothalamic tract is affected, producing thermoanesthesia and analgesia below the spinal level of the lesion. Because of the lamination of the spinothalamic tract (dorsomedial cervical sensation and ventralateral sacral sensation), sacral sensation is spared (sacral sparing) by intraparenchymal lesions. Syringomyelia may also occasionally cause a neuropathic arthropathy of the shoulder, elbow, and other joints [123]. Pain is present in approximately half of the patients. The fact that the initial manifestation of syringomyelia may be a neuropathic arthropathy is of major clinical importance [7].

An acute cervical central spinal cord syndrome can occur after severe hyperextension injuries of the neck [115]. Patients with this syndrome become quadriplegic after cervical trauma but regain strength in the legs in a matter of hours or even minutes. There is bladder dysfunction, usually urinary retention, and patchy and variable sensory loss below the level of the lesion. There is upper motor neuron distribution weakness more pronounced in the arms ("man-in-a-barrel syndrome"). Muscle stretch reflexes are initially absent. Considerable recovery is common. This syndrome is probably due to the damage to the central gray matter and lateral corticospinal tract at the cervical spinal cord enlargement.

Posterolateral Column Disease

The posterior and lateral columns in the upper spinal cord may be selectively damaged in subacute combined degeneration of the spinal cord due to vitamin B12 (cobalamin) deficiency [54] and numerous other conditions (Table 5.4). Protean disorders can result in cobalamin deficiency. These include pernicious anemia due to autoimmune parietal cell dysfunction (associated with defective gastric secretion and absence of intrinsic factor), rare congenital disorders, nutritional deficiencies with inadequate dietary intake (vegans), atrophy of the gastric mucosa, partial or total gastrectomy, functionally abnormal intrinsic factor, inadequate proteolysis of dietary cobalamin, insufficient pancreatic protease, bacterial overgrowth in the intestine, terminal ileum disease, tapeworm infection, disorders of plasma transport of cobalamin, dysfunctional uptake and use of cobalamin by cells, and nitrous-oxide administration. Vitamin B12 deficiency may also be found among malnourished infants, and in offsprings of strict vegan mothers.

The most common cause of cobalamin deficiency is pernicious anemia. Classic pernicious anemia produces cobalamin deficiency due to failure of the stomach to secrete intrinsic factor. Pernicious anemia is also associated with other autoimmune diseases, such as Addison’s disease, Graves’ disease, and hypoparathyroidism. In pernicious anemia, the neurological manifestations reflect myelin degeneration of the dorsal and lateral columns of the spinal cord, peripheral nerve dysfunction, and cerebral dysfunction.

Pathologic changes in cases of subacute combined degeneration predominantly involve the cervical cord, although changes may extent to the thoracic and lumbar cord regions. Microscopically, the spinal cord shows multifocal vacuolated and demyelinating lesions in the posterior and lateral columns. In longstanding cases, the posterior and lateral funiculi appear sclerotic and pale. The lesions spread laterally and longitudinally. The fibers with the largest diameters are preferentially affected. Most patients with subacute combined degeneration complain of paresthesias in the feet and, less often, in the hands, difficulties with gait and balance, and have signs of dorsal column dysfunction, including loss of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 5.4</th>
<th>Posterolateral Column Syndrome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extrinsic spinal cord compression (cervical spondylosis)</td>
<td>Subacute combined degeneration of the SC due to vitamin B12 deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrous oxide myeloneuropathy</td>
<td>HIV associated myelopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTLV-I associated myelopathy-tropical spastic paraparesis (HAM/TSP)</td>
<td>Copper deficiency myeloneuropathy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
proprception and vibration sense in the legs as well as sensory ataxia with a positive Romberg’s sign and bladder atony. Pain and temperature sensations remain intact because of the preservation of the spinothalamic tracts. Loss of position sense in the second toe and loss of vibratory sense for a 256-Hertz tuning fork are the earliest signs of dorsolateral column involvement. Bilateral corticospinal tract dysfunction results in spasticity, hyperreflexia, and bilateral Babinski signs. However, the ankle reflexes may be lost or become hyporeactive early in the process because of superimposed peripheral neuropathy. Myelopathic signs tend to be symmetric.

Nitrous oxide has multiple deleterious effects on cobalamin metabolism. Patients with unrecognized cobalamin deficiency may be particularly susceptible to brief exposures to nitrous oxide, which inactivates cobalamin-dependent methionine synthase and may cause a myeloneuropathy. In healthy subjects, this side effect on the methionine synthase methylcobalamin complex may be well compensated for by the large vitamin B12 stores in the liver and bone marrow. For patients with a preexisting vitamin B12 deficiency, even a short course of nitrous oxide anesthesia may deplete the few remaining stores. Furthermore, inactivation of methionine synthase by nitrous oxide may be more rapid in patients on cobalamin metabolism. Patients with unrecognized cobalamin deficiency may be particularly susceptible to brief exposures to nitrous oxide, which inactivates cobalamin-dependent methionine synthase and may cause a myeloneuropathy. In healthy subjects, this side effect on the methionine synthase methylcobalamin complex may be well compensated for by the large vitamin B12 stores in the liver and bone marrow. For patients with a preexisting vitamin B12 deficiency, even a short course of nitrous oxide anesthesia may deplete the few remaining stores. Furthermore, inactivation of methionine synthase by nitrous oxide may be more rapid in patients with low concentrations of vitamin B12 [81].

Posterior and lateral spinal cord involvement is also seen in cases of vacuolar myelopathy associated with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), human T-lymphotropic virus type 1 (HTLV-I), associated myelopathy (tropical spastic paraparesis), extrinsic cord compression (e.g., cervical spondylosis), copper deficiency myelopathy, and a variety of spinocerebellar ataxias.

The most common cause of spinal cord disease in patients with AIDS is AIDS-associated myelopathy. AIDS-associated vacuolar myelopathy frequently presents late in the course of HIV disease. Patients usually have a slowly progressive spastic paraparesis with brisk muscle stretch reflexes and bilateral extensor plantar responses, sensory ataxia with impaired vibration and position sense, normal cobalamin and folate levels, and increased CSF protein with pleocytosis. There may be associated dementia and a spastic bladder [129]. Gait is spastic, ataxic, or ataxospastic.

HTLV-I-associated myelopathy/tropical spastic paraparesis (HAM/TSP) is a chronic viral immune-mediated disorder of the spinal cord caused by the human lymphotropic virus (HTLV-I). Worldwide, millions of people are infected. Findings commonly encountered with HTLV-I-associated myelopathy include backache, leg paresthesias, urinary frequency, a slowly progressive paraparesis, muscle stretch hyperreflexia, Babinski’s signs, and impaired vibratory and position sense. CSF shows lymphocytic pleocytosis, elevated CSF protein, normal glucose content, and increased CSF IgG with antibodies to HTLV-I.

Copper absorption in humans seems to occur in the stomach and duodenum. A chronic progressive spastic-ataxic gait with proprioceptive deficits has been described in copper deficiency myelopathy (copper deficiency myeloneuropathy). Affected patients often exhibit a myelodysplastic picture with anemia, neutropenia, and thrombocytopenia, and persistently increased serum zinc levels. Serum vitamin B12, folate, and methylmalonic acid levels are normal. Serum copper and ceruloplasmin levels are low. Serum copper and ceruloplasmin levels are low. Serum copper and ceruloplasmin levels are low. Serum copper and ceruloplasmin levels are low. Serum copper and ceruloplasmin levels are low. Serum copper and ceruloplasmin levels are low. MRI may show diffuse increased signal intensity in the dorsolateral funiculi [65–68,110]. Copper deficiency myelopathy resembles the clinical picture of subacute combined degeneration of the spinal cord secondary to cobalamin deficiency. Copper deficiency may be a delayed complication of gastric surgery [68].

Posterior Column Disease

The posterior columns are selectively damaged by tabes dorsalis (tabetic neurosyphilis, progressive locomotor ataxia). Inflammation and degeneration of the dorsal roots cause secondary destruction of the posterior columns of the spinal cord. Tabes dorsalis usually develops 10 to 20 years after onset of luetic infection and results in impaired vibration and position sense and decreased tactile localization. The lower extremities are more affected than the upper. Patients often complain of increased unsteadiness in the legs. There is sensory ataxia, noted first at night or in the dark, and a positive Romberg sign due to proprioceptive interruption; the swaying begins as soon as the eyes are closed and occurs in all directions [72].

The gait is ataxic, and “stomping” or “double tapping.” Patients often look straight ahead when walking. The gait disorder is much more pronounced in darkness or with eye closure because visual cues can no longer be incorporated in maintaining balance. Often patients fall forward immediately following eye closure (wash-basin sign or positive “sink” sign). Lightning pains are the hallmark of tabes dorsalis [48]. Patients often complain of sudden, brief, sharp, lancinating jabs most frequently in the legs, develop urinary incontinence, and have absent patellar and ankle reflexes. The affected limbs are hypotonic but not weak. Hypertensile joints are common. Abdominal crises mimicking a surgical abdomen, occur in approximately 10 percent of patients. Laryngeal crises with stridor,
Anterior Horn Cell Syndromes

Certain disease processes (Table 5.6) selectively damage the anterior horn cells of the spinal cord [135]. The cranial motor nuclei may also be involved. This diffuse anterior horn cell involvement is best exemplified by the autosomal recessive spinal muscular atrophies, including (a) type I infantile progressive spinal muscular atrophy (Werdnig–Hoffman disease), (b) intermediate spinal muscular atrophy or type II spinal muscular atrophy, (c) type III juvenile progressive spinal muscular atrophy (Kugelberg–Welander disease), and (d) progressive spinal muscular atrophy in motor neuron disease. Adult onset of spinal muscular atrophy may involve the proximal or distal musculature or have a chronic asymmetric monomelic pattern. Pure lower motor neuron syndromes have been described in cases of hexosaminidase deficiency, poliomyelitis (postpolio syndrome), postradiation syndrome, Tangier’s disease, and Hirayama disease, also known as nonprogressive juvenile spinal muscular atrophy of the distal upper limbs (Hirayama disease).

Rectal, and vesical crises are less common. Trophic disturbances result in neurogenic arthropathies (Charcot joints), which are analgesic joints that disintegrate and become deformed as a result of chronic trauma. Many patients have diminished pain sensation demonstrated by insensitivity to pressure of the Achilles tendon (Abadie sign). Often, there is impaired light touch perception in the Hitzig zones (e.g., the central area of the face, the nipple area, the ulnar borders of the arms, the peroneal borders of the legs, and the perianal area). Many patients with tabes dorsalis also have small, miotic, and irregular pupils, unreactive to light, but normally reactive to accommodation (Argyll Robertson pupils), optic atrophy, eyelid ptosis, or ophthalmoplegia. With dysfunction of the posterior columns in the cervical region, neck flexion may elicit a sudden “electric-like” sensation down the back or into the arms (Lhermitte’s sign or “barber’s chair syndrome). Voiding dysfunction results from disturbed bladder sensation and sacral and suprasacral lesions innervating the detrusor muscle [44]. Merritt and Adams [85] described a triad of symptoms (lightning pains, ataxia, and dysuria) along with a triad of signs (Argyll-Robertson pupils, areflexia, and loss of proprioception).

Truncal and gait ataxia may occur with spinal cord lesions (e.g., metastatic tumor causing cord compression) without associated proprioceptive difficulties (e.g., the heel-to-shin test is normal). This truncal ataxia may be due to impaired conduction in the dorsal spinocerebellar tract and subsequent mismatched vermal integration of ventral spinocerebellar tract information (copy of efferent central instruction) and dorsal spinocerebellar tract information (afferent truncal feedback) [41].

Patients may present with ataxia as the primary manifestation of epidural spinal cord compression. In these patients, lower extremity dystonia, gait ataxia, or both may be the only neurologic signs; patients usually have thoracic spine compression, suggesting possible selective vulnerability of the spinocerebellar tracts in the thoracic spine to compressive ischemia [41]. Salient disorders associated with the posterior column syndrome are summarized in Table 5.5.

### TABLE 5.5 Posterior Column Syndrome

| Tabes dorsalis | Cervical spondylosis | Posterior spinal artery infarct | Posterior column ataxia with retinitis pigmentosa (AXPC1) – Ch 14q31-q32 |

Anterior Horn Cell Syndromes

Certain disease processes (Table 5.6) selectively damage the anterior horn cells of the spinal cord [135]. The cranial motor nuclei may also be involved. This diffuse anterior horn cell involvement is best exemplified by the autosomal recessive spinal muscular atrophies, including (a) type I infantile progressive spinal muscular atrophy of Werdnig-Hoffman disease, (b) intermediate spinal muscular atrophy or type II spinal muscular atrophy, (c) type III juvenile progressive spinal muscular atrophy or Kugelberg-Welander disease, and (d) progressive spinal muscular atrophy in motor neuron disease. Adult onset of spinal muscular atrophy may involve the proximal or distal musculature or have a chronic asymmetric monomelic pattern. Pure lower motor neuron syndromes have been described in cases of hexosaminidase deficiency, poliomyelitis (postpolio syndrome), postradiation syndrome, Tangier’s disease, and Hirayama disease, also known as nonprogressive juvenile spinal muscular atrophy of the distal upper limbs (Hirayama disease), related to flexion of the neck [47].

When diffuse anterior horn cell damage occurs, diffuse weakness, atrophy, and fasciculations are noted in the muscles of the trunk and extremities. Muscle tone is usually reduced and muscle stretch reflexes may be depressed or absent. Sensory changes are absent because the sensory tracts remain unaffected.

A variant of motor neuron disease (Vulpian-Bernhardt’s syndrome, man-in-a barrel syndrome, or progressive atrophy with flaccid paresis) may present with symmetrical atrophy and weakness of the arms, with minimal lower extremity or bulbar muscle atrophy.
involvement (flail arm syndrome). Patients with this syndrome often have strong legs although ultimately, many of them develop upper motor neuron signs. A pseudo-polyneuritic variant (flail leg syndrome) is also recognized. Both of these variants have a significantly better survival than classic amyotrophic lateral sclerosis ALS [137].

**Combined Anterior Horn Cell and Pyramidal Tract Disease**

This syndrome characterizes amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (motor neuron disease, Charcot’s disease, Lou Gehrig’s disease), in which degenerative changes occur in the anterior horn cells of the spinal cord (and in the motor nuclei of the brainstem) and in the corticospinal tracts. Progressive diffuse lower motor neuron signs (progressive muscular atrophy, paresis, and fasciculations) are superimposed on the signs and symptoms of upper motor neuron dysfunction (paresis, spasticity, and extensor plantar responses). Virtually any striated muscle may be affected, except the pelvic floor sphincter [58,79]. Rarely, patients may present with external ocular muscle abnormalities [43,71]. Onset of motor neuron disease is often focal or predominantly unilateral [93], with muscle weakness or atrophy of one hand or foot being the commonest presentation [60]. Muscle cramps are frequently associated complaints. Muscle stretch reflexes may be depressed (due to the lower motor neuron lesions) but are often exaggerated, especially in the lower extremities, due to concomitant corticospinal tract compromise. Sensory changes are usually absent, and abdominal superficial reflexes are characteristically preserved. Urinary and rectal sphincters are unaffected due to sparing of “X group” cells of Onuf’s nucleus located in the ventral margin of the anterior sacral (S2) horns [79,80]. Bulbar or pseudobulbar impairment is often superimposed, resulting in explosive dysarthria, dysphagia, emotional incontinence, and tongue spasticity, atrophy, or weakness. Recently proposed criteria helpful for clinical trials define the following diagnostic categories: clinically definite, clinically probable—laboratory supported, and clinically possible [130].

The marked heterogeneity of motor neuron disorders is best exemplified by the recent World Federation of Neurology classification, which includes 28 autosomal dominant syndromes, 37 autosomal recessive syndromes, and 16 different types of motor neuron disorders/dementia syndromes [74]. Of these, X-linked recessive spinal bulbar muscular atrophy, also known as Kennedy’s disease (X-linked bulbospinal neuronopathy), caused by an expansion of a normal cytosine-adenine-guanine (CAG) repeat within the first exon of the androgen receptor gene, is of paramount diagnostic importance because life span is not affected. This slowly progressive lower motor neuronopathy of men in the third to fifth decades is characterized by proximal lower motor neuron weakness associated with facial and tongue weakness and fasciculations, gynecomastia, testicular atrophy, hypogonadism, infertility, and diabetes [106]. A postural tremor of the hands may be seen as well.

Salient disorders associated with combined anterior horn cell and pyramidal tract syndromes are summarized in Table 5.7.

**Vascular Disorders of the Spinal Cord and Spinal Canal**

**Arterial Spinal Cord Infarction**

Spinal cord infarction is rare when compared with cerebral infarction, accounting for only 1%–2% of all strokes. Most spinal cord infarcts result from involvement of the territory of the anterior spinal artery [33,104,113,138]. Any segment of the spinal cord can be affected. The lower thoracic segment of the spinal cord and conus medullaris are most frequently involved. Patients with the anterior spinal artery syndrome have an abrupt onset of neurologic deficits, often associated with radicular or “girdle” pain. Loss of motor function (e.g., flaccid quadriplegia or paraplegia) occurs within minutes on hours below the level of the lesion (bilateral corticospinal tract damage). There is impaired bowel and bladder control, and thermoanesthesia and analgesia below the level of the lesion (compromise of the spinothalamic tracts bilaterally). Position sense, vibration, and light touch remain intact because of the preservation of the dorsal columns (supplied by the posterior spinal arteries). Patients may develop painful burning dysesthesias below the level of cord injury, likely related in part to selective neospinothalamic deafferentation and preservation of the posterior columns [131]. Concomitant infarcts to one or more vertebral bodies can be seen [141]. Spinal cord infarction often occurs in “watersheds” or boundary zones where the
major arterial systems supplying the spinal cord anastomose at their most distal branches. These boundary zones include the T1 to T4 and the L1 segments. Cells of the peripheral gray matter are more resistant to ischemia/anoxia than those centrally located. On an axial section, the watershed zone of the spinal cord involves the paracentral white matter of the lateral and anterior funiculi. According to Zulch, watershed infarction of the spinal cord is most likely to develop at the T4 segment along the boundary zone of supply between the anterior and posterior spinal arteries [142]. However, this traditional notion of increased ischemic vulnerability of the thoracic spinal cord watershed zone near T4 has been challenged [20].

Initially described with syphilitic arteritis, spinal cord infarction may result from aortic dissection, athroclerosis of the aorta and its branches, acute aortic thrombosis, following surgery of the abdominal aorta or repair of coarctation of the aorta, cervical spondylosis [55], fracture/dislocation of the spine or traumatic neck injury [53], spinal decompensation and stabilization [132], lumbosacral nerve root block [50], fibrocartilaginous embolism [86], after rib resection for sympathectomy [57], after thoracoplasty and thoracotomy [109], after spinal arteriovenous malformation (AVM) thrombosis or repair [20], following pinal region surgery in the sitting position [20], following severe arterial hypotension or cardiac arrest [62], celiac plexus block [20], with decompression sickness [109], with systemic lupus erythematosus, and with vasculitis [20,25,54]. Spinal cord infarction in AIDS may result from acute or chronic vasculitis or disseminated intravascular coagulation. In a substantial number of cases, no cause can be found.

Infarction in the territorial supply of the posterior (posteriorlateral) spinal arteries is uncommon. Manifestations include loss of proprioception and vibration sense below the level of the lesion and loss of segmental reflexes [56]. Infarction of the unilateral posterior horn and lateral column of the spinal cord with sparing of the posterior columns may also rarely occur with posterior spinal artery occlusion [56,61]. In instances of hypoxic myelopathy, the onset of symptom is more gradual; with the entity of spinal cord claudications, symptoms are precipitated by exertion. The salient features of the major clinical syndromes of spinal cord infarction are summarized in Table 5.8.

**Venous Spinal Cord Infarction**

Venous spinal cord infarction may also occur, mostly as a result of impaired blood drainage in patients with dural arteriovenous fistulas (AVFs) or with hypercoagulable states that cause in situ thrombosis. Since the spinal veins lack valves and drain into the azygos and pelvic venous system, there is a potential for retrograde embolization of thrombi associated with infectious abdominal processes, of fibrocartilaginous emboli from adjacent discs, and rarely of foreign materials (e.g., with sclerotherapy for esophageal varices [119]). Impaired epidural spinal cord venous drainage has also been implicated as a major pathogenetic mechanism in decompression sickness (Caisson disease), in which myelopathic symptoms, thought to be due to the release of nitrogen bubbles within the spinal canal, predominate [42]. Decompression sickness typically involves the white matter of the upper or middle thoracic spinal cord segments [68].

The differential diagnosis of spinal cord infarction includes any condition capable of rapidly producing a partial transverse spinal cord lesion, such as spinal cord compression, spinal cord trauma, acute parainfectious or demyelinating myelitis, and central spinal cord syndromes caused by tumors or hemorrhages.

The salient causes of arterial and venous spinal cord infarctions are summarized in Tables 5.9 and 5.10.

### Vascular Malformations of the Spinal Cord

Vascular malformations of the spinal cord may present with myelopathy, radiculopathy, or localized back pain. Symptoms result from either hemorrhage, ischemia due to arterial steal, venous hypertension, or

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical Manifestations of Spinal Cord Ischemia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anterior spinal artery syndrome</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back of neck pain of sudden onset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapidly progressive flaccid and areflexic paraplegia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of pain and temperature to a sensory level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preservation of proprioception and vibration sensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary incontinence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Posterior spinal artery syndrome</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of proprioception and vibratory sense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preserved pain and temperature sensation except for involved segment of cord, where global anesthesis is present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of myotatic and cutaneous reflexes below involved segment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absence of motor deficits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isolated focal motor or sensory deficits in extremities, which may represent lacunar infarctions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slowly progressive paraparesis or quadriplegias (Hypoxic Myelopathy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal cord claudication (Hemodynamic transient ischemic attacks or TIs)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**TABLE 5.8**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anterior spinal artery syndrome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Back of neck pain of sudden onset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapidly progressive flaccid and areflexic paraplegia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of pain and temperature to a sensory level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preservation of proprioception and vibration sensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary incontinence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Posterior spinal artery syndrome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Loss of proprioception and vibratory sense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preserved pain and temperature sensation except for involved segment of cord, where global anesthesis is present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of myotatic and cutaneous reflexes below involved segment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absence of motor deficits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isolated focal motor or sensory deficits in extremities, which may represent lacunar infarctions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slowly progressive paraparesis or quadriplegias (Hypoxic Myelopathy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal cord claudication (Hemodynamic transient ischemic attacks or TIs)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anterior spinal artery syndrome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Back of neck pain of sudden onset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapidly progressive flaccid and areflexic paraplegia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of pain and temperature to a sensory level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preservation of proprioception and vibration sensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary incontinence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Posterior spinal artery syndrome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Loss of proprioception and vibratory sense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preserved pain and temperature sensation except for involved segment of cord, where global anesthesis is present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of myotatic and cutaneous reflexes below involved segment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absence of motor deficits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isolated focal motor or sensory deficits in extremities, which may represent lacunar infarctions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slowly progressive paraparesis or quadriplegias (Hypoxic Myelopathy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal cord claudication (Hemodynamic transient ischemic attacks or TIs)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anterior spinal artery syndrome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Back of neck pain of sudden onset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapidly progressive flaccid and areflexic paraplegia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of pain and temperature to a sensory level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preservation of proprioception and vibration sensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary incontinence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Posterior spinal artery syndrome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Loss of proprioception and vibratory sense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preserved pain and temperature sensation except for involved segment of cord, where global anesthesis is present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of myotatic and cutaneous reflexes below involved segment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absence of motor deficits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isolated focal motor or sensory deficits in extremities, which may represent lacunar infarctions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slowly progressive paraparesis or quadriplegias (Hypoxic Myelopathy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal cord claudication (Hemodynamic transient ischemic attacks or TIs)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anterior spinal artery syndrome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Back of neck pain of sudden onset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapidly progressive flaccid and areflexic paraplegia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of pain and temperature to a sensory level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preservation of proprioception and vibration sensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary incontinence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Posterior spinal artery syndrome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Loss of proprioception and vibratory sense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preserved pain and temperature sensation except for involved segment of cord, where global anesthesis is present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of myotatic and cutaneous reflexes below involved segment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absence of motor deficits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isolated focal motor or sensory deficits in extremities, which may represent lacunar infarctions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slowly progressive paraparesis or quadriplegias (Hypoxic Myelopathy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal cord claudication (Hemodynamic transient ischemic attacks or TIs)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Anterior spinal artery syndrome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Back of neck pain of sudden onset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapidly progressive flaccid and areflexic paraplegia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of pain and temperature to a sensory level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preservation of proprioception and vibration sensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary incontinence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Posterior spinal artery syndrome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Loss of proprioception and vibratory sense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preserved pain and temperature sensation except for involved segment of cord, where global anesthesis is present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of myotatic and cutaneous reflexes below involved segment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absence of motor deficits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isolated focal motor or sensory deficits in extremities, which may represent lacunar infarctions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slowly progressive paraparesis or quadriplegias (Hypoxic Myelopathy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal cord claudication (Hemodynamic transient ischemic attacks or TIs)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
the lower thoracic or upper lumbar region. Dural AVFs are typically low-flow fistulas. The underlying pathophysiology is related to venous hypertension. If left untreated, chronic venous hypertension may lead to irreversible spinal cord injury. Most commonly observed among middle-aged men, the clinical picture is often characterized by a slowly progressive myelopathy. A majority of patients have some degree of leg weakness and variable degree of sensory loss and paresthesias particularly involving the buttocks and saddle region. Bladder, bowel, and sexual dysfunction may develop in some instances. Symptom exacerbation may occur. Venous thrombosis may cause abrupt clinical deterioration [23]. The rare syndrome described by Foix and Alajouanine results from an extreme form of spinal dural AVF [31,88].

Cavernous malformations can occur throughout the neuraxis. Vascular malformations of the spinal cord include AVMs, AVFs, epidural vascular malformations, cavernous malformations (CMs), and complex vascular malformations (metameric angiomatosis or Cobb syndrome, disseminated angiomatosis or Osler–Weber–Rendu Syndrome, etc) [8,27,38,84,102,140]. AVFs consist of a direct shunt between radiculomedullary arteries and a paraspinal vein without an intervening nidus. These malformations have been further subdivided into three types (type I, type II, and type II AVFs).

Spinal dural AVFs represent 80% of spinal cord vascular malformations. Spinal dural AVFs typically arise at the dural nerve root sleeve, and mainly involve the lower thoracic or upper lumbar region. Dural AVFs are typically low-flow fistulas. The underlying pathophysiology is related to venous hypertension. If left untreated, chronic venous hypertension may lead to irreversible spinal cord injury. Most commonly observed among middle-aged men, the clinical picture is often characterized by a slowly progressive myelopathy. A majority of patients have some degree of leg weakness and variable degree of sensory loss and paresthesias particularly involving the buttocks and saddle region. Bladder, bowel, and sexual dysfunction may develop in some instances. Symptom exacerbation may occur. Venous thrombosis may cause abrupt clinical deterioration [23]. The rare syndrome described by Foix and Alajouanine results from an extreme form of spinal dural AVF [31,88].

Cavernous malformations can occur throughout the neuraxis. Cavernous malformations may be solitary or multiple. Most central nervous system cavernous malformations are intracranial and have a predilection for the supratentorial compartment. Spinal cord cavernous malformations are rare. Estimates indicate that 80% of cavernous malformations are supratentorial, 15% are infratentorial, and 5% are intraspinal. Most spinal cavernous malformations are purely intramedullary. Rarely, a spinal cavernous malformation may be confined to the epidural space or vertebrae. Spinal cord cavernous malformations may present with symptoms and signs of myelopathy. Bleeding from a cavernous malformation is often mild but may be severe or even fatal. Spinal cord

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 5.9 Causes of Arterial Spinal Cord Infarction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Atherosclerosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe arterial hypotension or cardiac arrest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aortic surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traumatic laceration of the aorta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissecting aortic aneurysm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrombo-occlusive aortic disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peripheral vascular surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection (syphilis, tuberculosis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vasculitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinomatous meningitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neoplastic spread to the spinal cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypertensive small vessel disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subarachnoid hemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sickle cell anemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systemic lupus erythematosus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiphospholipid antibody syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disseminated intravascular coagulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervical spondylosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spine fracture or dislocation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertebral artery occlusion or dissection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rib resection for sympathectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lumbar sympathectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thoracoplasty for tuberculosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thoracotomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intercostal artery ligation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esophageal surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Celiac plexus block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decompression sickness (Caisson disease)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atheromatous emboli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholesterol emboli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibrocartilaginous emboli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atrial myxoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aortic or spinal cord angiography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intra-aortic balloon pump</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lumbar artery compression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supine hyperlordosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervical flexion myelopathy after valproic acid</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 5.10 Causes of Venous Spinal Cord Infarction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thrombophlebitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic meningitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decompression sickness (Caisson disease)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute myelogenous leukemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal cord glioma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyezthermia rubra vera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esophageal vein sclerotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liver abscess (embolization of venous material)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibrocartilaginous emboli</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


CMs have been reported in patients with familial intracranial cavernous malformations.


**Hemorrhages Affecting the Spinal Canal**

Hemorrhages affecting the spinal canal are rare, and can be categorized as epidural, subdural, subarachnoid, or intrinsic to the spinal cord parenchyma (hematomyelia). Hemorrhages involving the spinal canal may be spontaneous or follow trauma. Regardless of causation, they often manifest by sudden onset of severe localized back or neck pain, unilateral or bilateral limb weakness, numbness, urine retention, or fecal incontinence. Deficits may progress over minutes or hours, and may become permanent if not promptly recognized and treated. Signs and symptoms may mimic an acute disc herniation, transverse myelopathy, or a cauda equina syndrome.

Spinal epidural hematoma, more prevalent among adult men, is four times more common than spinal subdural hemorrhages. Spinal epidural hematomas have been associated with trauma, hemophilia, thrombocytopenia and other preexisting bleeding diatheses, use of anticoagulant therapy, therapeutic thrombolysis, dual antiplatelet therapy with aspirin and clopidogrel, liver disease with portal hypertension, and (c) complete cord transection. As in degenerative joint disease of the spine, the pain from metastatic spinal cord compression is exacerbated by movement, the Valsalva’s maneuver, straight leg raising, and neck flexion. Unlike the pain from degenerative joint disease, the pain from metastatic spinal cord compression is frequently exacerbated by recumbence [16].

**PAIN**

Oppenheim [92] distinguished three clinical stages of spinal cord compression: (a) radicular pain and segmental motor and sensory disruption, (b) incomplete transection (i.e., Brown-Séquard syndrome), and (c) complete cord transection. As in degenerative joint disease of the spine, the pain from metastatic spinal cord compression is exacerbated by movement, the Valsalva’s maneuver, straight leg raising, and neck flexion. Unlike the pain from degenerative joint disease, the pain from metastatic spinal cord compression is frequently exacerbated by recumbence [16].

Pain is an important early sign of cord compression and may be classified as one of three types: root (radicular) pain, vertebral pain, and funicular (central) pain.

1. **Radicular pain** is characterized as a unilateral, lancinating, dermatomal pain often exacerbated by cough, sneeze, or Valsalva’s maneuver. Radicular pain is common with extradural growths and rare with intramedullary lesions. An example of an extradural tumor causing radicular pain is the neurilemmoma (usually an intradural-extradural lesion). With neurilemmomas, root pain predominates and may be the exclusive
ular involvement, patients may have subjective sensory dermatomal complaints but, because of dermatomal overlap, they lack objective sensory changes. A descending progression of paresthesias is more common with intramedullary lesions, whereas ascending progression of paresthesias suggests an extramedullary lesion.

A sensory level of pain and temperature must be sought in all cases of suspected spinal cord disease. A sensory level is, however, not very helpful in distinguishing intramedullary from extramedullary lesions. A Brown-Séquard syndrome is more common with extramedullary lesions but certainly not unusual with intramedullary lesions.

Dissociated sensory loss and sacral sparing (owing to the somatotopic organization of the spinothalamic tract) are characteristic of intramedullary cord involvement. With intramedullary lesions, vibratory sensation is usually more impaired than position sense.

**DISTURBANCES OF SPHINCTER FUNCTION**

Urinary and fecal incontinence or retention may be the most unacceptable symptoms for many patients, causing them to seek medical attention. Early loss of sphincter control with associated saddle anesthesia is common with tumors arising in the conus medullaris (intramedullary) and with tumors affecting the cauda equina (extramedullary). Lesions at higher spinal levels (intramedullary or extramedullary) tend to be associated with disturbances of sphincter function only with extensive bilateral cord damage.

**AUTONOMIC MANIFESTATIONS**

Ocular sympathetic palsy (Horner syndrome) may be associated with either extramedullary or intramedullary tumors. Vasomotor and sudomotor abnormalities are of no clinical value in distinguishing intramedullary from extramedullary lesions. Sexual dysfunction is infrequent.

---

**TABLE 5.11 Clinical Guidelines to Differentiate Intramedullary and Extramedullary Tumors**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptoms/Signs</th>
<th>Intramedullary Tumors</th>
<th>Extramedullary Tumors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Radicular pain</td>
<td>Unusual</td>
<td>Common, may occur early</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertebral pain</td>
<td>Unusual</td>
<td>Common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper motor neuron signs</td>
<td>Yes, late</td>
<td>Yes, early</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower motor neuron signs</td>
<td>Prominent and diffuse</td>
<td>Unusual, if present, segmental distribution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paresthesiae progression</td>
<td>Descending progression</td>
<td>Ascending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sphincter abnormalities</td>
<td>Early with caudal lesions (conus/cauda equina)</td>
<td>Late</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trophic changes</td>
<td>Common</td>
<td>Unusual</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**DISTURBANCES OF MOTOR FUNCTION**

Motor dysfunction may be secondary to the compromise of the lower motor neuron, upper motor neuron, or both. Lesions compressing the corticospinal tract gradually and chronically result in spasticity, whereas acute lesions result in flaccid paresis.

Upper motor neuron signs tend to occur late with intramedullary lesions and early with extramedullary cord lesions. The coexistence of upper and lower motor neuron signs is suggestive of an intramedullary lesion but does not exclude an intradural-extramedullary process.

**SENSORY DISTURBANCES**

Paresthesias may follow a radicular or funicular distribution. Some patients may develop a “pins-and-needles” sensation distally, resembling a polyneuropathy, whereas others develop sensory symptoms that have an “ascending” pattern. Subjective sensory complaints may or may not be associated with objective sensory loss. For example, in cases of monoradic-
Localization of Spinal Cord Lesions at Different Levels

Foramen Magnum Syndrome and Lesions of the Upper Cervical Cord

Neurologic findings with lesions of the foramen magnum consist of a complex array of sensory, motor, and neuro-ophthalmologic findings [128]. Suboccipital pain in the distribution of the greater occipital nerve (C2) and neck stiffness occur early. Electric shock-like sensations radiating down the spine, which may be transmitted to the extremities, may occur with neck flexion (Lhermitte’s symptom) and indicate a lesion of the posterior columns (most often multiple sclerosis or cervical spondylosis) [39]. Subjective occipital paresthesias and, rarely, sensory findings indicative of posterior column dysfunction or a “syringomyelic” type of sensory dissociation may be present. Numbness and tingling of the fingertips are common. In addition to high cervical cord compressive findings (spastic tetraparesis, long tract sensory findings, bladder disturbance), lower cranial nerve palsies (cranial nerves IX–XII) may occur by regional extension of the pathologic process. An “around the clock” presentation of upper motor neuron distribution weakness typically involves the ipsilateral upper extremity, spreading to involve the contralateral lower extremity and then the upper extremity. This presentation eventually results in hemiparesis, triaparesis, or quadriparesis. Lesions at the foramen magnum may be associated with downbeat nystagmus, papilledema (secondary to CSF circulation obstruction), and cerebellar ataxia. The major diagnostic considerations include tumors (e.g., meningiomas, neurofibromas, gliomas, teratomas, metastases), cervical spondylosis, basilar invagination in Paget’s disease, syrinx, atlantoaxial subluxation (e.g., rheumatoid arthritis), multiple sclerosis, and Chiari I malformation. Chiari I malformation has been associated with suboccipital headache, ocular disturbances, dizziness, tinnitus, paresthesiae, muscle weakness, dysphagia, dysarthria, syncope, and sleep apnea [87].

Where the pyramidal tract decussates at the medullolateral junction with segregation of arm fibers (rostral) and leg fibers (caudal), a lesion can cause the unusual combination of contralateral upper extremity paresis and ipsilateral lower extremity paresis (hemiplegia cruciata). The term cruciate paralysis has also been used to indicate arm weakness in excess of leg weakness in patients with cervicomедullary junction injuries or malformations [24]. Patients with this condition may also demonstrate an onion-skin pattern of facial sensory loss, respiratory insufficiency, bladder dysfunction, and impairment of other cranial nerves [24].

Compressive lesions of the upper cervical cord (C1–C4 segments) [90] may compromise cranial nerve XI (C1–C5 cord segments), which innervates the sternocleidomastoid muscle and the upper portion of the trapezius muscle. In addition to sensory loss in the distribution of the affected level, there is an anomalous head position, inadequate contraction and atrophy of the sternocleidomastoid muscle, and inability to elevate the shoulder toward the ipsilateral ear. Diaphragmatic paralysis may be seen with lesions involving the C3–C5 cord segments, causing limited lateral expansion of the lower rib cage during inspiration. The involvement of the descending respiratory pathways at high cervical spinal cord levels can also be associated with respiratory insufficiency and respiratory arrest [51].

False localizing sensory and motor findings, including thoracic sensory levels, proprioceptive sensory loss, paresthesias of the hands, and clumsiness and atrophy of the hands, can occur with disorders afflicting the upper and midcervical cord. For example, midline disc protrusion at the C3–C4 level may be associated with numbness of the fingertips and palms, clumsiness of the hands, and a tightening sensation at the midthoracic level [89] and extradural lesions above C4 may cause finger and hand dysesthesias and hand atrophy [124]. An awareness of these “false localizing” signs is crucial to the physician’s ability to correctly identify such lesions [89,121,124].

Lesions of the Fifth and Sixth Cervical Segments

Compression of the lower cervical spinal cord causes lower motor neuron signs at the corresponding segmental levels and upper motor neuron signs below the lesion (e.g., spastic paraplegia). Lesions affecting the C5 and C6 segments cause lower motor neuron signs that affect especially the spinati, deltoid, biceps, brachioradialis, brachialis, pectorals, latissimus dorsi, triceps, and extensor carpi radialis muscles, among others. This lower motor neuron paresis of the arm is associated with spastic paraparesis of the lower extremities. Diaphragmatic function may be compromised (C5 affection). With C5 segment lesions, the biceps (segments C5–C6) and the brachioradialis (segments C5–C6) reflexes are absent or diminished, whereas the triceps reflex (segments C6–C8) and the finger flexor reflex (segments C8–T1) are exaggerated (the latter two are exaggerated owing to corticospinal tract compression at the C5 level). Therefore, C5 segmental lesions result in an inversion of the brachioradialis reflex. Tapping of the
radius elicits exaggerated finger and hand flexions without flexion and supination of the forearm. With C6 segmental lesions, the biceps (segments C5–C6), brachioradialis (segments C5–C6), and triceps (segments C7–C8) reflexes are depressed or absent, but the finger flexor reflex (segments C8–T1) is exaggerated. With complete C5 segment lesions, sensory loss occurs over the entire body below the neck and anterior shoulder; with C6 sensory lesions, the same sensory loss occurs, except that the lateral arm is spared.

Lesions of the Seventh Cervical Segment

With lesions of the C7 segment, diaphragmatic function is normal. Paresis involves the flexors and the extensors of the wrists and fingers. The biceps and brachioradialis reflexes (segments C5–C6) are preserved, whereas the finger flexor reflex (segments C8–T1) is exaggerated. There may be a paradoxical triceps reflex consisting of flexion of the forearm following tapping of the olecranon (weakness of the triceps prevents triceps contraction and elbow extension, while muscles innervated by normal segments above the lesion are allowed to contract). With C7 segment lesions, there is sensory loss at and below the third and fourth digits (including the medial arm and forearm).

Lesions of the Eighth Cervical and First Thoracic Segments

Lesions at the C8 and T1 segments level result in weakness that predominantly involves the small hand muscles. There is associated spastic paraparesis. With C8 lesions, the triceps reflex (segments C7–C8) and the finger flexor reflex (segments C8–T1) are decreased or absent; with T1 lesions, the triceps reflex (segments C7–C8) is preserved, but the finger flexor reflex (segments C8–T1) is decreased. With C8–T1 lesions, there may be a unilateral or bilateral Horner syndrome. Sensory loss involves the fifth digit and the medial forearm and arm as well as the rest of the body below the lesion.

Rarely, spondylotic narrowing of the spinal canal at the C3–C4 and C5–C6 levels may cause hand muscle (C8–T1) wasting with sparing of the C5 and C6 myotomes [125]. Presumably, this wasting is due to the anterior horn cell damage caused by stagnant hypoxia secondary to venous congestion of the low cervical cord induced by the midcervical lesion.

Spondylotic cervical myelopathy may present with a clinical picture dominated by a glove distribution sensory loss in the hands also known as the syndrome of numb, clumsy hands [111,133]. The hand sensory loss is often global, and in some patients the involvement extends proximally as far as the elbows. Motor findings in the hands may be no more than mild to moderate, as may be the motor and sensory findings in the legs. Most patients have compressive lesions, and the syndrome is thought to result from ischemia of the intrinsic border areas of collateralization between the superficial pial network and the central arterial supply to the cervical cord (Fig. 5.4), although venous stagnation may also play a role [133]. Another syndrome suggestive of cervical spondylotic myelopathy includes the sudden onset of quadriplegia or paraplegia after a minor fall in an elderly patient [101].

Lesions of the Thoracic Segments

Lesions of the thoracic segments are characterized by root pain or paresthesias that mimic intercostal neuralgia. Segmental lower motor neuron involvement...
ankle jerks are hyperactive. There is normal sensation on the upper anterior aspect of the thighs.

Lesions of the Fourth Lumbar Segment
There is better hip flexion and leg adduction than that found in L1–L3 lesions. Knee flexion and leg extension are better performed, and the patient is able to stand by stabilizing the knees. The patellar jerks (segments L2–L4) are not elicitable; the ankle jerks (segments S1–S2) are hyperactive. Sensation is normal on the anterior aspect of the thighs and superomedial aspects of the knees.

Lesions of the Fifth Lumbar Segment
There is normal hip flexion and adduction and leg extension. Owing to the normal strength of the quadriceps femoris muscles, the patient is able to extend the legs against resistance when the extremities are flexed at the hip and knee. The patellar reflexes (segments L2–L4) are present; the ankle jerks (segments S1–S2) are hyperactive. Sensory function is preserved on the anterior aspect of the thighs and the medial aspects of the legs, ankles, and soles.

Lesions of the First and Second Sacral Segments
With lesions of the S1 segment, there is weakness of the triceps surae, flexor digitorum longus, flexor hallucis longus, and small foot muscles. The Achilles reflexes (segments S1–S2) are absent, whereas the patellar reflexes (segments L2–L4) are preserved. There is complete sensory loss over the sole, heel, and outer aspect of the foot and ankle. The medial aspects of the calf and posterior thigh and the upper part of the dorsal aspect of the calf are also anesthetic.

Lesions of the Conus Medullaris
Lesions of the conus medullaris [3] cause paralysis of the pelvic floor muscles and early sphincter dysfunction. Disruption of the bladder reflex arc results in an autonomous neurogenic bladder characterized by loss of voluntary initiation of micturition, increased residual urine, and absent vesical sensation. Constipation and impaired erection and ejaculation are commonly present. Patients may have a symmetric saddle anesthesia. Pain is not common but may occur.

Lesions of the First Lumbar Segment
With L1 segmental cord lesions, all muscles of the lower extremities are weak. Lower abdominal paresis (internal oblique, transversus, and abdominis muscles) may occur, but this is difficult to demonstrate. The area of sensory loss includes both the lower extremities up to the level of the groin and the back, to a level above the buttocks. With chronic lesions, the patellar (segments L2–L4) and ankle jerks (segments S1–S2) are pathologically brisk.

Lesions of the Second Lumbar Segment
There is spastic paraparesis but no weakness of the abdominal muscles. The cremasteric reflex (segment L2) is not elicitable and the patellar jerks (segments L2–L4) may be depressed. The ankle jerks (segments S1–S2) are hyperactive. There is normal sensation on the upper anterior aspect of the thighs.

Lesions of the Third Lumbar Segment
There is some preservation of the hip flexion (iliopsoas and sartorius) and leg adduction (adductor longus, pectineus, and gracilis). The patellar jerks (segments L2–L4) are decreased or not elicitable; the ankle jerks are hyperactive. There is normal sensation on the upper anterior aspect of the thighs.
occur late in the clinical course and involves the thighs, buttocks, and perineum.

A tethered spinal cord (i.e., the tethered cord or the low conus syndrome) may present with a combination of various neurologic, urologic, orthopaedic, and dermatologic manifestations. Many of these conditions are seen in association with spina bifida occulta or prior reconstructive surgery of a myelomeningocele or lipomeningocele. Commonly, patients present with numbness of the feet, asymmetric muscle atrophy of the calf or thigh muscles, upper motor neuron signs, bowel and bladder dysfunction, foot deformities, pes cavus, equinovarus, talipes, scoliosis, and cutaneous manifestations of spinal dysraphism (e.g., lumbosacral midline hair tuft, midline nevus, dermal sinus tracts, hypertrichosis, and subcutaneous sacral lipomatous masses) [30,116].

Cauda Equina Lesions

Owing to the compression of the lumbar and sacral roots below the L3 vertebral level, cauda equina lesions cause early radicular pain in the distribution of the lumbosacral roots [6]. Pain may be unilateral or asymmetric and is increased by the Valsalva’s maneuver. With tumors of this region (e.g., ependymoma, schwannoma, meningioma), pain is often worse at night or when the patient assumes a recumbent position. With extensive lesions, patients develop flaccid, hypotonic, areflexic paralysis that affects the glutei, posterior thigh muscles, and anterolateral muscles of the leg and foot, resulting in a true peripheral type of paraplegia. Sensory testing usually reveals an asymmetric sensory loss in the saddle region, involving the anal, perineal, and genital regions extending to the dorsal aspect of the thigh, the anterolateral aspect of the leg, and the outer aspect of the foot.

The Achilles reflexes (segments S1–S2) are absent and the patellar reflexes (segments L2–L4) are variable in their response. Sphincter changes are similar to those noted with conus medullaris lesions but tend to occur late in the clinical course. Lumbar disc herniation may cause a cauda equina syndrome when the herniation is associated with a narrow spinal canal and a low-lying conus medullaris [120].

Although it can be concluded that lesions of the conus medullaris result in early sphincter compromise, late pain, and symmetrical sensory manifestations, whereas cauda equina lesions have late sphincter manifestations, early pain, and asymmetrical sensory findings, this distinction is often exceedingly difficult to establish and is of little practical value.

Evaluating a patient with a suspected myelopathy requires a thorough understanding of applied spinal cord neuroanatomy and physiology, and intimate knowledge of the vascular supply of the spinal cord as well as the diverse array of ever-expanding etiologies of myelopathies across the globe [3,5,10,16,24,46,51,70,89,90,98,100,101,103,105,110,111,116,119,120,121,124,125] (Table 5.12).

Neurogenic Bladder with Spinal Cord Lesions

The classification of the neurogenic bladder is complex and requires adequate functional neuroanatomic and urodynamic knowledge [13,14,25,32,112]. The storage and evacuation of urine ultimately depend on a spinal reflex arc. However, supraspinal input is needed to preserve continence and to postpone bladder emptying in appropriate circumstances. The afferent arc of the spinal reflex arises from the distention of the bladder stretch receptors, located in the bladder wall, and travels through the parasympathetic nerves to the center for micturition (detrusor center or sacral parasympathetic nucleus) located in sacral segments S2–S4 of the spinal cord. The efferent (parasympathetic) arc travels through the pelvic nerves to the pelvic plexus; postganglionic fibers travel from the plexus to the detrusor muscle. Most afferent fibers (conveying the sensation of bladder fullness) do not end in the sacral levels of the spinal cord but ascend to synapse on relay cells located in the dorsal pontomesencephalic reticular formation micturition center (located in the locus ceruleus, pontomesencephalic gray matter, and nucleus tegmentolateralis dorsalis). Other afferent fibers travel further rostrally to the cortical and subcortical micturition centers. The cerebral control of micturition is located in the superomedial portion of the frontal lobe, the anterior aspect of the cingulate gyrus, and the genu of the corpus callosum. Contributions from subcortical centers arise from the thalamic nuclei, the limbic system, the red nucleus, the substantia nigra, the hypothalamus, and the subthalamic nucleus. In addition, the anterior vermis of the cerebellum and fastigial nuclei are concerned with micturition. Positron emission tomography (PET) studies among volunteers have shown a lateralization of the specific areas responsible for the control of micturition, with preliminary evidence that cortical and pontine micturition sites are more active on the right than on the left side. Furthermore, micturition was associated with an increased blood flow in the right dorsomedial pontine tegmentum, the periaqueductal gray, the hypothalamus, and the right inferior frontal gyrus, whereas decreased blood flow was noted in the right anterior cingulate gyrus when urine was withheld [11,12].
## TABLE 5.12  Myelopathies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Congenital</th>
<th>Traumatic</th>
<th>Spondylogenic</th>
<th>Rheumatoid disease of the spine (RA)</th>
<th>Myelopathy in SLE</th>
<th>Spondyloarthropathies</th>
<th>Drug and toxic myelopathies</th>
<th>Systemic disorders</th>
<th>Physical agents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diastematomyelia (spinal notochord syndrome)</td>
<td>Nonpenetrating injuries</td>
<td>Craniovertebral junction abnormalities</td>
<td>Anterior atlantoaxial subluxation</td>
<td>SLE myelopathy</td>
<td>Ankylosing spondylitis</td>
<td>Neuroathyrosis (latirus sativus–β-oxalyl–amino–L-alanine)</td>
<td>Portocaval encephalo-myelopathy</td>
<td>Electrical or lightning injuries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Penetrating injuries</td>
<td>Atlantoaxial anomalies (Down’s syndrome)</td>
<td>Posterior atlantoaxial subluxation</td>
<td>Transverse myelopathy associated with antiphospholipid antibodies</td>
<td>Reactive arthritis</td>
<td>Konzo (cyanogenic glucosides from bitter cassava)</td>
<td>Inflammatory bowel disease</td>
<td>Radiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cervical spondylotic myelopathy</td>
<td>Vertical atlantoaxial subluxation</td>
<td>Herpes zoster myelitis</td>
<td>Psoriatic arthritis</td>
<td>Subacute myelo-optic neuropathy</td>
<td>Celiac disease</td>
<td>Caisson disease (decompression sickness)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cervical disc herniation with spinal cord compression</td>
<td>Cervical/thoracic spine pachymeningitis</td>
<td>Compression fracture (long-term corticosteroid use) with spinal cord compression</td>
<td>Associated with inflammatory bowel disease</td>
<td>Methotrexate, cytosine</td>
<td>Initial disorders</td>
<td>Electrical or lightning injuries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Thoracic disc herniation with thoracic spinal stenosis</td>
<td>Thoracic cord compression by rheumatoid nodules</td>
<td>Spinal epidural/subdural hemorrhages</td>
<td>Undifferentiated spondyloarthropathies</td>
<td>Intravenous heroin</td>
<td>Myelopathy with corpora amylacea–Polyglucosan body disease</td>
<td>Radiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Diffuse idiopathic skeletal hyperostosis (Forester’s disease)</td>
<td>Thoracic spinal cord infarction due to vasculitis</td>
<td>Epidural lipomatosis</td>
<td>Whipple’s disease</td>
<td>Intranasal insufflation of ecstasy and heroin</td>
<td>Hereditary spastic paraplegia (AD and AR)</td>
<td>Caisson disease (decompression sickness)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Osseous idiopathic ligamentous hyperostosis</td>
<td>Syringomyelia due to cervical cord compression</td>
<td>Tuberculous spondylitis</td>
<td>Atlantoaxial subluxation</td>
<td>Intramuscular injection of ecstasy and heroin</td>
<td>Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (sporadic/familial)</td>
<td>Surfer’s myelopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Percutaneous vertebral stabilization procedures</td>
<td>Transverse myelopathy associated with antiphospholipid antibodies</td>
<td>Atlantoaxial subluxation</td>
<td>Spondyloarthropathies</td>
<td>Subacute paraneoplastic necrotizing myelopathy (lung carcinoma, lymphoma)</td>
<td>System degeneration</td>
<td>Supine hyperlordosis (operating room)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Transverse myelitis due to sulfadiazine</td>
<td>Myelopathy in SLE</td>
<td>Subacute paraneoplastic necrotizing myelopathy (lung carcinoma, lymphoma)</td>
<td>Hereditary spastic paraplegia (AD and AR)</td>
<td>Cervical flexion myelopathy after valproic acid overdose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Transverse myelopathy associated with antiphospholipid antibodies</td>
<td>Spondylogenic</td>
<td></td>
<td>Spinal cord herniation</td>
<td>Spinal flexion myelopathy after valproic acid overdose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Spinal epidural/subdural hemorrhages</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Demyelinating**
- Multiple sclerosis
- Devic’s disease (neuromyelitis optica)
- Acute disseminated encephalomyelitis
- Postinfectious and postvaccinal myelopathies
- Inflammatory transverse myelitis
- Osmotic demyelination syndrome
- Leukodystrophies

**Infectious**
- Bacterial (tuberculosis, pyogenic infections)
- Viral (e.g., HIV, HTLV-1)
- Parasitic (e.g., schistosomiasis, hydatid disease)
- Other (e.g., syphilis, Lyme disease, Brucellosis, Mycoplasma)

**Granulomatous disorders**
- Sarkoidosis
- Wegener’s granulomatosis

**Vascular**
- Spinal artery (anterior, posterior) occlusion
- Aortic dissections/surgery/endovascular repair
- Vasculitis
- Venous spinal cord infarction
- Vascular malformations
- Primary CNS angiitis

**Metabolic**
- B12 deficiency
- Copper deficiency
- Vitamin E deficiency
- Hyperthyroidism
- Diabetes mellitus
- Mitochondrial disorders
- Skeletal fluorosis

**Spinal tumors**
- Tumors of bone (primary–secondary)
- Plasma cell dyscrasias multiple myeloma, solitary plasmacytoma
- Extramedullary (metastatic carcinoma, lymphomas, malignant melanoma)
- Intramedullary extramedullary (astrocytomas, glioblastoma multiforme, ependymoma, primitive neuroectodermal tumors, gangliocytoma, neurocytoma, lipoma, epidermoid cyst, meningoma)

**Nontumoral myelopathies**
- Subacute paraneoplastic necrotizing myelopathy (lung carcinoma, lymphoma)

**System degeneration**
- Hereditary spastic paraplegia (AD and AR)
- Spinal muscular atrophies
- Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (sporadic/familial)

**Inherited disorders**
- Syringomyelia
- Chiari malformations

**Miscellaneous**
- Hirayama disease
- Myelopathy with corpora amylacea–Polyglucosan body disease
- Eales’ disease
- Transhydrides amyloidosis (ATTRTyr69His)
- Surfer’s myelopathy
- Supine hyperlordosis (operating room)
- Cervical flexion myelopathy after valproic acid overdose

RA = rheumatoid arthritis; SLE = systemic lupus erythematosus.
From the pontomesencephalic micturition center, efferents to the spinal cord descend by way of the reticulospinal tracts (located medially and anteriorly in the anterior funiculus) to the detrusor motor neurons in the intermediolateral cell columns of the sacral gray matter (S2–S4). Efferents from the cortical and subcortical micturition centers descend by way of the pyramidal tracts to the pudendal nuclei (Onuf’s nucleus) in the sacral spinal cord (S2–S4). The pudendal nerves, whose motor neurons are located in the ventral horns of sacral segments S2–S4, innervate the striated muscle around the urethra.

The central sensorimotor pathways concerned with micturition and sphincter control can therefore be summarized as follows [112]:

1. Corticospinal pathways (from motor cortex to pudendal motor neurons), which are concerned with the voluntary control of the sphincters and pelvic floor.
2. The urethral reflex loop (from urethral afferents to pudendal motor neurons), which maintains the sphincter tone when the detrusor is inactive.
3. The detrusor reflex loop (detrusor afferents to pudendal motor neurons), which causes sphincter relaxation when the detrusor is active.
4. The cord loop (from brainstem structures to the conus medullaris), which coordinates detrusor and sphincter contraction and relaxation.
5. The cerebral loop (involving the brainstem, cerebral cortex, and basal ganglia structures), which initiates and inhibits switching between filling and voiding states.

As the normal bladder fills and urine is stored (Fig. 5.5), contraction of the detrusor muscle is inhibited. This inhibition requires intact pathways between the sacral cord and the pontine micturition center [32]. Facilitation of activity in the striated urethral sphincter also occurs during filling. Continence is promoted by both passive and reflex activities. In the passive filling phase, the intravesical pressure initially increases minimally owing to the elastic property of the smooth muscle and connective tissue in the bladder wall; retention is maintained at this low pressure because the proximal urethral pressure exceeds the pressure within the bladder. The continence reflexes occur when the intravesical pressure begins to exceed the pressure at the urethral orifice. Stimulation of frontal micturition centers by bladder distention enhances sympathetic activity (through hypogastric nerves), which results in inhibition of the detrusor muscle and contraction of the internal urethral sphincter, as well as somatic activity (through pudendal nerves), which causes external sphincter contraction.

Voiding (Fig. 5.6) is normally a voluntary act resulting from the coordinated relaxation of the urethral sphincter and contraction of the detrusor. Bladder fullness stretches afferents that activate the pontine micturition center that, in turn, activates the detrusor reflex and inhibits the sphincter; the pontine center coordinates the reciprocal relationship of the detrusor and sphincter and the reflex organization of filling and voiding states [112]. Lesions between the pontine center and the sacral cord interrupt pathways that are inhibitory to the detrusor and those that coordinate normal sphincter–detrusor activity [25,135]. These disorders may occur alone or in combination and include the hyperreflexic (reflex or spastic) bladder, detrusor–sphincter dyssynergia, poorly sustained detrusor contraction, and increased postmicturition residual volume [34].
The hyperreflexic neurogenic (spastic) bladder occurs with lesions above the level of the sacral bladder center and below the level of the pontomesencephalic micturition center. It occurs in conditions causing quadriplegia or paraplegia and in advanced cases of multiple sclerosis. Loss of the normal inhibition from higher centers results in detrusor contraction during bladder filling. The contractions may occur spontaneously or may be provoked by coughing or changing posture. In most cases, the detrusor becomes overactive, so there is urinary frequency, urgency, urge incontinence (the patient is unable to inhibit the detrusor reflex), and inability to initiate micturition voluntarily. Small volumes of urine stimulate uninhibited detrusor muscle contraction; the bladder capacity is reduced but residual urine may be increased (increased postmicturition residual volume). The bulbocavernous and superficial anal reflexes are preserved. With lesions above the splanchnic outflow, bladder fullness may induce a “mass reflex” with parasympathetic hypertension, headaches, diaphoresis, and bradycardia.

Simultaneous contraction of the sphincter and the detrusor during voiding (detrusor–sphincter dyssynergia) results in obstructed voiding, an interrupted urinary stream, incomplete emptying, and high intravesical pressures because the sphincter fails to relax correctly [32]. Upper urinary tract dilatation and kidney damage may develop subsequently. Abnormal hyperreflexic contractions may be poorly sustained and, in combination with dyssynergia, result in incomplete emptying.

After acute spinal cord injury, a variable period of spinal shock occurs during which the bladder is acontractile. Reflex detrusor activity returns in days to weeks and other types of bladder dysfunction (above) are then noted, but spinal shock persists occasionally.

An autonomous neurogenic bladder (detrusor areflexia) may be seen with complete lesions below the T12 segment that involve the conus medullaris and cauda equina. It occurs with sacral myelomeningocele and tumors of the conus medullaris-cauda equina region. This is also the type of neurogenic bladder that occurs during the initial shock phase of spinal cord injury. The bladder is paralyzed, and there is no awareness of the state of fullness. In most of these cases, there is urinary retention because the tone of the detrusor muscle is abolished and the bladder distends as urine accumulates. Inability to initiate micturition, overflow incontinence, and increased residual urine develop. There is associated saddle anesthesia with absence of the bulbocavernosus and superficial anal reflexes. Anal sphincter control is often similarly affected.

Stretch injury to the bladder wall (e.g., owing to anatomic obstruction at the bladder neck or even voluntary sphincter contraction) may cause distention of the bladder wall, decompensation of the detrusor muscle, and eventually bladder atonia. The bladder capacity may greatly increase, and its walls may become fibrotic. A large residual urine volume may therefore occur because of incomplete detrusor contractions.

A motor paralytic bladder may be seen with lesions involving the efferent motor fibers to the detrusor or the detrusor motor neurons in the sacral spinal cord. Some patients develop a motor paralytic bladder in association with lumbar spinal stenosis, lumbosacral meningomyelocele, or following radical hysterectomy or abdominoperineal resection. In most of these cases, patients suffer from painful

---

**FIG. 5.6.** Neural pathways for voiding (+ = excitatory; − = inhibitory).
Localization in Clinical Neurology

urinary retention or impaired bladder emptying. Residual urine is markedly increased. The bulbocavernosus and superficial anal reflexes are usually absent, but sacral and bladder sensation are present.

A sensory paralytic bladder may occur in tabes dorsalis, syringomyelia, or diabetes mellitus. It is caused by the impairment of the afferent pathways innervating the bladder or by the dysfunction of the posterior columns or lateral spinothalamic tract at the spinal cord level. Patients maintain voluntary initiation of micturition. Urinary retention, overflow incontinence, or urinary tract infection may be early symptoms. The bulbocavernous and superficial anal reflexes may be absent, decreased, or present.

Sexual Function

Neural and vascular mechanisms are closely integrated in the physiology of erection. Erection has a psychogenic and a reflex element; the reflex center for erection is in the conus medullaris [77]. The genital organs are innervated by three sets of peripheral nerves: (a) sacral parasympathetic (pelvic nerves), (b) thoracolumbar sympathetic (hypogastric and lumbar sympathetic chain), and (c) somatic ( pudendal nerves) [9]. The parasympathetic system is considered the main effector of penile erection (through pelvic nerves), but there is also evidence for a sympathetic erectile pathway through the hypogastric nerves [9]. There is a sympathetic erectile (and antierectile) outflow at about the T12 spinal cord level (which reaches the genitalia through the hypogastric nerves, the pelvic nerves, and the pudendal nerves) and a parasympathetic erectile outflow at the S2–S3 level (parasympathetic preganglionic fibers pass through the pelvic nerves to the pelvic plexus and innervate the corpora cavernosa through cavernous nerves). Descending erectile (and probably antierectile) pathways travel from the cerebrum through the lateral columns in the spinal cord. Therefore, spinal cord lesions above T12 impair psychogenic erection, whereas lesions of the conus medullaris or cauda equina abolish reflex erection. In men with complete spinal cord lesions below T12 to L2 or with complete cauda equina lesions, psychogenic erection may occur through the sympathetic outflow while reflex erection is absent [21].

Limbic and hypothalamic pathways, particularly originating from the medial preoptic anterior hypothalamic area, are particularly important in the control of penile erection [9,28]. Descending pathways concerned with erection pass through the medial forebrain bundle to the midbrain tegmental region and then through the ventrolateral pons and lateral funiculus of the cord to the lumbosacral centers [76].

Ejaculation is coordinated in a hypothetical ejaculatory reflex center in the T12–L1 cord region that sums the descending excitatory and inhibitory impulses and sensory impulses from the glans and frenum [112]. The descending and ascending pathways are probably located in the lateral columns. Spinal cord lesions above the T10 spinal level may cause an ejaculation, but a reflex ejaculation may be induced if the afferent (S2–S3) and efferent (T10–L2) pathways are intact. Even reflex ejaculation is not obtained if the cord lesion destroys the T12–L2 levels [19,112].

Fecal Incontinence

The anal sphincter mechanism comprises the internal anal sphincter (smooth muscle under autonomic control and accounting for 80% of resting sphincter pressure [117]), the external anal sphincter (slow-twitch striated muscle innervated by the pudendal nerves), and the puborectalis muscles (innervated by the pelvic branches of S3 and S4) [77]. The external sphincter and the puborectalis muscles behave as a functional unit, the voluntary sphincter [91]. A spinal reflex causes the striated sphincter to contract during sudden increases in abdominal pressure (e.g., cough or sneeze) [96,127]. Receptors in the pelvic floor (not the rectal wall) detect the presence of stool and are required for fecal continence [77]. Therefore, diabetes, pudendal neuropathy, or cauda equina lesions may develop overflow incontinence because of decreased rectal sensation [126,134]. With diabetes, autonomic neuropathy and diabetic diarrhea also contribute to fecal incontinence. Fecal incontinence, however, at least in the elderly, is most often caused by constipation.

Fecal incontinence may therefore occur with disorders of the sensory roots, conus, motor roots (S3–S4), or peripheral nerves. In these conditions, rectal examination may reveal reduced anal sphincter tone, and there may be diminished perianal sensation and loss of the anal skin reflex (anal wink). The colon may be hypotonic and distended and the anal sphincter lax from deafferentation or deeferrmentation. High spinal cord lesions may occasionally cause fecal incontinence; patients with high spinal lesions usually have better sphincter control than patients with low lesions. With cord lesions above the conus (and with some cerebral lesions), defecation may be urgent and precipitant. Since the same spinal segments and nearly the same spinal tracts subserve both bladder and bowel control, spinal cord diseases may often cause “double incontinence”; however, since the bowel is less often filled and its contents usually solid, fecal incontinence is usually less of a problem than urinary incontinence [1].
References


127. Symonds CP, Meadows SP. Compression of the spinal cord in the neighborhood of the foramen magnum. Brain 1937;60:52.


The olfactory receptors, the sensory cells of the olfactory epithelium, are located on the superior–posterior nasal septum and the lateral wall of the nasal cavity. These ciliated cells give off central processes that form small bundles (approximately 20 in number). These bundles, the filaments of the olfactory nerve, penetrate the cribriform plate of the ethmoid bone and enter the olfactory bulb. Here, the olfactory afferent fibers synapse with the dendrites of the second-order neurons called the mitral and tufted cells. At the points of synapse, conglomerates of fibers called the olfactory glomeruli are formed. The axons of the mitral and tufted cells leave the olfactory bulb and course posteriorly, as the olfactory tract, in the olfactory sulcus on the orbital surfaces of the frontal lobe. The olfactory tract divides into a median and a lateral olfactory stria on either side of the anterior perforated substance (the triangular area formed by the two striae is called the olfactory trigone). Some of these striaal fibers decussate in the anterior commissure and join the fibers from the opposite olfactory pathways, terminating in the contralateral cerebral hemisphere. Other striaal fibers, especially those of the lateral stria, supply the ipsilateral piriform lobe of the cerebral (temporal) cortex (the primary olfactory cortex) and terminate in the amygdaloid nucleus, septal nuclei, and hypothalamus.

Although relatively quantitative methods are available to test olfaction (e.g., tests of the minimal perceptible odor or measurements of olfactory fatigue), the sense of smell is usually tested by asking the patient to sniff various nonirritating substances (each nostril is tested separately) and then attempt to identify the odor (perception of the smell is of more value than identification of the specific substance). Irritating substances (e.g., ammonia) are to be avoided because they stimulate the trigeminal nerve fibers in the nasal mucosa as well as the olfactory fibers.

Localization of Lesions Affecting the Olfactory Nerve

Lesions Causing Anosmia

Anosmia (loss of smell) or hyposmia (diminished olfactory functioning) may or may not be apparent to the patient. He or she may have some difficulty in tasting various flavors because the identification of tasted substances depends in part on the olfactory system.

Decreased smell function occurs in the “normal” elderly. Generally, age-related decline in olfaction is more severe for men than for women. Approximately 2% of the population younger than 65 years has a chronic impairment of smelling. Between 65 and 80 years, this rises dramatically with about half of the population experiencing significant decrements in the ability to smell. For the population older than 80 years, this figure rises to nearly 75% [12]. The basis for age-related changes in smell function is multiple and includes ossification and closure of the foramina of the cribriform plate, development of early neurodegenerative disease pathology, and cumulative damage to the olfactory receptors from repeated viral and other insults throughout life [8].

Local nasal disease (e.g., allergic rhinitis, nasal obstruction, polyposis) must first be sought as the cause of anosmia, especially if the olfactory difficulty is bilateral. The most common cause of transient and bilateral anosmia is the common cold. Exposure to several airborne toxins, including herbicides, pesticides, solvents, and heavy metals can alter the ability to smell, especially when exposure has been chronic. Among the heavy metals, the best documented cases are for cadmium, chromium, nickel, and manganese [8].

After local nasal disease has been ruled out, anosmia, especially unilateral anosmia, should raise the suspicion of a lesion affecting the olfactory...
nerve filaments, bulb, tract, or stria. Because the cortical representation for smell in the piriform cortex is bilateral, a unilateral lesion distal to the decussation of the olfactory fibers causes no olfactory impairment.

Head injury [13,36,41] is probably the most common cause of disruption of the olfactory fibers prior to their decussation. Frontal impact produces less dysfunction than back or side impacts [13]. The olfactory nerve proper (olfactory filaments) may be torn by fractures involving the cribiform plate of the ethmoid bone, but closed head injury without fracture may also disrupt the olfactory pathways unilaterally or bilaterally. Closed head injury can produce

---

**FIG. 6.1.** The olfactory nerve (lateral view).

**FIG. 6.2.** The olfactory nerve (inferior view).
impairment of olfactory recognition despite relatively preserved olfactory detection [25]. Olfactory naming and recognition may be impaired by traumatic forces affecting the orbitofrontal and temporal lobes, and the degree of olfactory disturbances is directly related to the severity of the injury [25]. Disturbances of complex olfactory function (e.g., discrimination) despite the relatively preserved detection of odors have been reported with alcoholic Korsakoff syndrome [23] and following thalamic or prefrontal cortical lesions [34]. Significant olfactory dysfunction has also been described with Alzheimer disease [27,28,46], Lewy body disease [32], Huntington chorea (HC) [28], corticobasal ganglionic degeneration [33], Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease [42,52], frontotemporal dementia [33], multiple sclerosis [10,20], Parkinson disease (PD) [11,21,27,43], Refsum disease [17], spinocerebellar ataxias (including Friedreich ataxia) [4], Wilson disease [31], narcolepsy [39], pure autonomic failure [38], and in adults with Down syndrome [45]. Impaired olfaction can preclude clinical PD in men by at least 4 years and may be a useful screening tool to detect those at high risk for development of PD in later life [48]. Patients with PD have decreased performance on odor discrimination tests in addition to deficits of odor detection and identification [43]. REM (rapid eye movement) sleep disorder and olfactory dysfunction are common and very early features of alpha-synucleinopathies, in particular, PD [40]. Olfactory loss in patients with multiple sclerosis has been associated with plaque formation in the central olfactory (i.e., inferior frontal and temporal) brain regions [10].

Hawkes [19] noted that there has been an increase in interest in olfactory dysfunction because it was realized that anosmia was a common feature of idiopathic PD and Alzheimer-dementia (AD). In his review of PD, parkinsonian syndromes, essential tremor, AD, motor neuron disease, and HC, the following observations are made [19]:

1. Olfactory dysfunction is frequent and often severe in PD and AD.
2. Normal smell identification in PD is rare and should prompt the review of diagnosis unless the patient is a female with a tremor-dominant disease.
3. Anosmia in suspected progressive supranuclear palsy and corticobasal degeneration is atypical and should likewise provoke diagnostic review.
4. Hyposmia is an early feature of PD and AD and may precede motor and cognitive signs, respectively.
5. Subjects with anosmia and one apoE4 allele have an approximate fivefold increased risk of later AD.
6. Impaired sense of smell is increased risk of later AD.
7. Smell testing in HC and motor neuron disease, where abnormality may be found, is not likely to be of clinical value.
8. Biopsy of olfactory nasal neurons shows nonspecific changes in PD and AD and, at present, will not aid diagnosis.

Incidental Lewy bodies (ILB), the presence of Lewy bodies in the brains of deceased individuals without a history of PD or dementia during life, are thought to represent a presymptomatic stage of PD. Olfactory dysfunction is associated with ILB [35]. If ILB represent a presymptomatic stage of PD, olfactory testing may be a useful screening tool to identify those at high risk for developing PD.

Congenital anosmia or hyposmia may occur owing to cleft palate in men, absent or hypoplastic olfactory bulbs or tracts, familial dysautonomia, and Turner syndrome. A familial syndrome of permanent anosmia with hypogonadotropic hypogonadism (Kallmann syndrome) has also been described [50, 51]; patients with this syndrome may also have cerebellar ataxia and mirror movements of the hands [18].

Olfactory discrimination and detection may be abnormal after unilateral frontal or temporal lobectomy [53]. After temporal lobectomy, deficits in olfactory discrimination are confined to the nostril ipsilateral to the lesion. After frontal lobectomy, discrimination is also impaired; however, in patients with right frontal lesions including the orbital cortex, the impairment is found in both nostrils. Therefore, the orbitofrontal cortex is important in olfactory discrimination, and the nostril difference found in healthy subjects, together with the bithalamic impairment in patients with right orbitofrontal damage, suggests a relative advantage of the right orbital region in olfactory processing [53]. Anosmia may also complicate rhinoplasty, ethmoidectomy, laryngectomy, submucous resection of the nasal septum, radiotherapy [50], and surgery for anterior communicating artery aneurysms owing to the olfactory nerve dysfunction [15]. Olfactory damage is much more common after an anterior interhemispheric surgical approach rather than after a basal interhemispheric approach.

The olfactory bulb and tract are frequently affected by tumors of the olfactory groove (especially meningiomas) [49], which may cause the Foster Kennedy syndrome (see the discussion on Foster Kennedy syndrome in the next section). Tumors of the sphenoid or frontal bone (e.g., osteomas), pituitary tumors with suprasellar extension, nasopharyngeal carcinoma [44], and saccular aneurysms of the
These tumors may present with anosmia as well as persistent nasal obstruction and epistaxis [29]. They may occasionally involve the orbit and cause periorbital swelling, proptosis, diplopia, and visual loss [2,29].

### The Foster Kennedy Syndrome

The Foster Kennedy syndrome is occasionally noted with olfactory groove or sphenoid ridge masses (especially meningiomas) or space-occupying lesions of the frontal lobe. This syndrome consists of the following three signs:

1. **Ipsilateral anosmia** due to direct pressure on the olfactory bulb or tract.
2. **Ipsilateral optic atrophy** due to direct injury of the ipsilateral optic nerve.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 6.1 Conditions Associated with Disturbance of Olfaction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Congenital</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleft palate (in men)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Down syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Familial dysautonomia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kallmann syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turner syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Endocrine/metabolic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adrenal insufficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes mellitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudohypoparathyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Iatrogenic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethmoidectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypertelorism procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orbitofrontal lobectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postlaryngectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhinoplasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Submucous resection, nasal septum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporal lobectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infectious</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herpes simplex meningoencephalitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper respiratory tract, viral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Liver disease</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute viral hepatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cirrhosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Local processes</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hansen disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasal obstruction (adenoid hypertrophy, large inferior turbinates)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyposis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rhinitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sjögren syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neurologic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alzheimer disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frontotemporal dementia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huntington disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korsakoff syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple sclerosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meningiomas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giant anterior communicating artery aneurysm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Migraines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parkinson disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients with incidental Lewy bodies of the brain without dementia or parkinsonism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilson disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corticobasal ganglionic degeneration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinocerebellar ataxias, including Friedreich ataxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seizure disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temporal lobe tumors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rebound disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narcolepsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pure autonomic failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Psychiatric</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypochondriasis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major depression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posttraumatic stress disorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schizophrenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Uremia/dialysis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Miscellaneous</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystic fibrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giant cell arteritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupational exposure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarcoidosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HIV = human immunodeficiency virus.


- anterion portion of the circle of Willis (e.g., a giant anterior communicating artery aneurysm) may also compress the olfactory bulb or tract [26]. Any diffuse meningeal process (e.g., meningitis) may involve the olfactory pathways. The anatomic relationship of the frontal lobe to the olfactory bulb and tract is especially important. Mass lesions of the frontal lobe (e.g., glioma or abscess) often exert pressure on the olfactory system and may lead to anosmia even before clear-cut frontal lobe signs and symptoms are noted. Therefore, in any patient with personality changes or subtle signs of frontal lobe involvement, olfaction should be carefully tested.

*Esthesioneuroblastomas* (olfactory neuroblastomas) are tumors that arise in the upper nasal cavity, often superior and lateral near the ethmoid sinuses [29]. These tumors may present with anosmia as well as persistent nasal obstruction and epistaxis [29]. They may occasionally involve the orbit and cause periorbital swelling, proptosis, diplopia, and visual loss [2,29].
Lesions Causing Parosmia and Cacosmia

Parosmia or dysosmia (perversion of smell) and cacosmia (experiencing unpleasant odors) [7] are rare phenomena that are usually seen after a head injury or with a psychiatric disease (e.g., depression). Various scents are interpreted as “abnormal” and, often, unpleasant. Occasionally, these unpleasant odors may persist or occur spontaneously as an olfactory hallucination [14,24]. It is not clear whether these phenomena are of cortical origin (due to primary olfactory cortex injury), and therefore possibly ictal in nature, or are due to direct irritation of the olfactory pathways. Unilateral paroxysmal olfactory hallucinations (paroxysmal unilateral dysosmia) have been cured by resection of the homolateral olfactory bulb suggesting that, in at least some patients, olfactory hallucinations may be due to structural nerve damage [24]. Olfactory hallucinations (especially foul odors) may occur with partial seizures with complex symptomatology or with migraine [1,16]. Olfactory epileptic auras are not necessarily unpleasant [1]. In patients with olfactory epileptic auras, tumors are the most common etiology of the seizures, and mesial temporal sclerosis is relatively rare; the amygdala is the most likely symptomatic zone in these patients [1]. Hyperosmia (increased sensitivity to smell) may occur with migraine or hyperemesis gravidarum; phantosmia refers to the perception of an odor when none is present [5].

Hyposmia and parosmia have been associated with hypogeusia (diminished taste acuity) and dysgeusia (distorted taste perception) and have been correlated with zinc and vitamin A deficiencies [22]. Other conditions associated with altered olfaction include adrenal insufficiency, diabetes mellitus, hypothyroidism, pseudohypoparathyroidism, cystic fibrosis, and sarcoidosis [30].

Conditions associated with disturbances of olfaction are outlined in Table 6.1.

References

Localization in Clinical Neurology


Anatomy of the Visual System

The Retina

The retina extends anteroposteriorly from the ora serrata to the optic disc, which corresponds to the attachment of the optic nerve, slightly nasal to the posterior pole of the eyeball. Approximately at the posterior pole of the globe is the macula, a circular area of the retina that appears yellow when viewed with the ophthalmoscope. Each retina can be divided into four quadrants by a vertical and a horizontal meridian intersecting at the macula (Fig. 7.1). The horizontal meridian separates the retina into superior and inferior portions. The vertical meridian separates the nasal (medial) retina from the temporal (lateral) retina.

The first neuronal elements in the visual system are located deep in the retina, separated from the choroid by the retinal pigment epithelium. These elements, the rods and cones, contain pigments that, reacting to visible light, produce electrical activity. This activity is conveyed to the more superficially located ganglion cells by short bipolar cells and by horizontally disposed amacrine cells (Fig. 7.2). The ganglion cells send their axons predominantly to the lateral geniculate body or to the superior colliculus.

The photoreceptors, rods and cones, are oriented toward the pupillary opening rather than toward the center of the globe. The pigment of the rods is a glycoprotein called rhodopsin, which reacts to light within the visible wavelength, from 400 to 800 nm. Approximately 100 million rods are unevenly distributed throughout the retina. They become more tightly packed in the fundus of the globe but are absent from the optic disc (blind spot) and from the macula.

There are three different types of cones that react maximally to red, green, or blue light. The retina contains approximately 7 million cones, 100,000 of which are concentrated in the macular region. In the center of the macula, there is a small region (the foveola, measuring 0.35 mm across) that is devoid of vessels and neural elements other than the tightly packed cones. Visual discrimination is greatest here, where light can reach the photoreceptors avoiding the layers present in the rest of the retina.

An estimated 1.2 million ganglion cells populate the inner aspect of the retina. Their receptive fields become smaller in the region of the posterior pole of the globe, where ganglion cells are much more numerous than in the periphery and the cones have one-to-one connections with their own ganglion cells. By contrast, in the periphery, receptive fields overlap extensively. This anatomic arrangement may explain the relative sparing of the peripheral vision with lesions that affect the ganglion cells preferentially.

Morphologically different classes of retinal ganglion cells (M cells and P cells) project to different divisions of the lateral geniculate nucleus, which, in turn, project to the visual cortex in a segregated distribution. M cells make up approximately 10% of the retinal ganglion cells and are engaged with “where” the target of regard is in space. They are concerned with depth perception or stereopsis, are color ignorant, and have high contrast sensitivity, low spatial resolution, and fast temporal resolution. Retinal M cells project to magnocellular neurons in layers 1 and 2 of the lateral geniculate nucleus, which in turn project to 4C α neurons in cortical area 17. The 4C α neurons project to 4 β cortical area 17 neurons, which in turn project to cortical area MT (see Chapter 8). P cells only slightly outnumber M cells in the peripheral retina, whereas the macula is composed predominantly of P cells, which are concerned with “what is being seen” (they have color opponency, low contrast sensitivity, and high spatial resolution). P cells make up approximately 90% of retinal ganglion cells and project to parvocellular neurons in layers 3, 4, 5, and 6 of the lateral geniculate nucleus, which project to 4C β neurons in cortical area 17. The 4C β neurons project to layers 2 and 3 of cortical area 17 which, in turn, project to cortical area 18, which then sends fibers to areas V3 and V4 [48].

Certain pathologic processes may preferentially affect M cells or P cells. In Alzheimer’s disease, for example, there is a predominant loss of M cells in the retina, resulting in difficulty with determining motion and depth and inaccurate fast eye movements (saccades) with preserved acuity and color vision [168]. In optic neuritis (ON), more P than M ganglion cells are lost, which may explain contrast sensitivity abnormalities, central scotomata, and color vision impairment [198].

The axons of the ganglion cells constitute the innermost layer of the retina, which is separated from...
Localization in Clinical Neurology

**FIG. 7.1.** Retinal nerve fiber layer and arteries. Note the temporal raphe formed by the fibers from the superior and inferior retina.

**FIG. 7.2.** Diagrammatic representation of the retinal layers, disposition of fibers in the nerve fiber layer and optic nerve, and visual field defects caused by retinal or optic nerve lesions. The vertical bars (a, b, c) represent partial (a) to complete (c) retinal lesions; the corresponding field defects are depicted underneath. Retinal lesions affecting the nerve fiber layer have an arcuate shape with the base located peripherally and, in temporal retinal lesions, in the horizontal meridian. Compare with Figure 7.1.
the vitreous by a thin basement membrane. The position of the axons in the nerve fiber layer depends on their origin in the retina. As the axons converge toward the optic disc, the ganglion cells closer to the disc send their axons through the whole thickness of the nerve fiber layer. Therefore, the more peripherally generated axons are deeper in this layer, whereas the ones originating centripetally rest nearer to the vitreous (Fig. 7.2.)

Nerve fibers nasal to the optic disc and those originating in the nasal side of the macula (papillomacular bundle) take a straight course as they converge into the optic disc (Fig. 7.1). The remaining fibers arch around the papillomacular bundle, adopting a disposition that has a bearing on the visual field defects that are secondary to retinal and optic nerve lesions. Fibers from the superior half of the temporal aspect of the macula arch superiorly and then down toward the disc. Fibers from the inferior half of the temporal aspect of the macula arch inferiorty and then ascend to reach the disc. Fibers from the temporal retina, particularly those closer to the horizontal meridian, follow a similar course. Therefore, between the nerve fibers from the superior temporal retina and those from the inferior temporal retina a raphe is formed, located in the horizontal meridian (Fig. 7.1).

The axons of the ganglion cells on the temporal side of a vertical line drawn through the fovea project to the ipsilateral lateral geniculate body, whereas the ones from the nasal side cross at the optic chiasm (Fig. 7.3). However, this separation is not sharp. The neurons subserving the macular region and a vertical strip of approximately 1 degree, centered in the fovea, project to either lateral geniculate body.

The Optic Nerves and Optic Chiasm

Each optic nerve is approximately 50 mm long and has four portions from the globe to the chiasm (Fig. 7.4).

1. **Intraocular Portion.** In this portion, also called the optic nerve head (1 mm long), the axons become myelinated (central type of myelin). The fundus-copic appearance of the optic nerve depends on the angle of the nerve head to the eye. When the angle between the nerve and the sclera is <90 degrees, a rim or crescent of choroid or sclera may be seen on the flat temporal side of the disc, whereas the nasal edge appears elevated.

2. **Intraorbital Portion.** This section (25 mm long) is shaped like an elongated S to allow mobility within the orbit. Here the optic nerve is surrounded by fat contained in the cone formed by the ocular muscles. The apex of this cone (which is open to the optic foramen and the superior orbital fissure) is directed posteriorly and slightly
displaced nasosuperiorly in the orbit (Fig. 7.4). In addition to the ophthalmic artery, the ciliary ganglion and nerves, and the nerves to the extraocular muscles are in close relation to the optic nerve here.

3. Intracanalicular Portion. This portion (approximately 9 mm long) is the part of the nerve that travels the optic canal. Each optic canal is oriented posterosuperomedially, at an angle that approximates 45 degrees to the sagittal and horizontal planes. The ophthalmic artery and some filaments of the sympathetic carotid plexus accompany the optic nerve within the optic canal.

4. Intracranial Portion. This part (approximately 4–16 mm long, depending on the position of the chiasm) stretches between the proximal opening of the optic canal and the chiasm (Fig. 7.4). Each optic nerve lies above the respective carotid artery as this vessel exits from the cavernous sinus and gives off the ophthalmic artery. Inferomedially, the optic nerve lies over the bony roof of the sphenoid sinus, which can be quite thin, and over the contents of the sella turcica when the chiasm is posteriorly placed. Superior to each optic nerve is the horizontal portion of the anterior cerebral artery, which is overlaid by the gyrus rectus of the frontal lobe, the olfactory tract, and the anterior perforated substance (Fig. 7.5). The anterior communicating artery is superior to the optic nerves or to the optic chiasm.

Proximal to the angled optic canal, the optic nerves maintain a 45-degree angle to the horizontal plane, and the chiasm is similarly tilted over the sella turcica, with the suprasellar cistern lying between them. The relation between the chiasm and the sella varies between individuals. In brachycephalic heads the chiasm tends to be more anterior and dorsal than in dolichocephalic heads. Autopsy studies have shown that in approximately 5% of individuals the chiasm overlies the anterior margin of the sella (prefixed chiasm), in 12% it lies over the diaphragma sellae, in 79% it is above the dorsum sellae, and in 4% it projects behind the dorsum sellae (postfixed chiasm).
The chiasm is located below the suprachiasmatic recess of the third ventricle in close proximity to the hypothalamus. Above the chiasm are the lamina terminalis and the anterior commissure. Immediately posterior to it, the pituitary stalk runs an anteroinferior course. The optic tracts originate from the posterolateral corners of the chiasm (Fig. 7.5).

Nerve fibers in the optic nerve follow a topical arrangement similar to that found in the retina (Fig. 7.6). Superior retinal fibers run superiorly in the optic nerve, inferior fibers are below, and those from the temporal and nasal retina run in the corresponding parts of the optic nerve. In the proximal portion of the nerve, near the globe, the macular fibers occupy a wedge-shaped sector just temporal to the central vessels (Fig. 7.6). More distally, they shift toward the core of the nerve.

At the chiasm, more than half of the fibers (those originating in ganglion cells of the nasal retina) cross to reach the contralateral optic tract (Fig. 7.3). The ratio of crossed to uncrossed fibers is approximately 53:47. Fibers from the inferior part of the nasal retina are ventral in the chiasm and loop into the proximal portion of the contralateral optic nerve (Wilbrand’s knee) before reaching the lateral aspect of the optic tract (Fig. 7.7). Those from the superior nasal retina remain dorsal in the chiasm and become medial in the optic tract.

The anatomic existence of Wilbrand’s knee has come into question. Wilbrand was restricted to examining human subjects who had undergone enucleation. In the enucleated eye, the nerve fibers atrophied and became distinct from the nerve fibers of the normal eye as seen on myelin staining. Horton,

---

**Fig. 7.5.** Inferior aspect of the brain showing some relationships of the optic nerves, chiasm, and optic tracts.

**Fig. 7.6.** Disposition of the ganglion cell axons in a cross-section of the optic nerve. A: Distal portion, near the globe. B: Proximal portion, where the macular fibers have shifted to the core of the nerve.
FIG. 7.7. Crossing of nasal fibers in the optic chiasm. Fibers from the inferior retina make a forward loop into the opposite optic nerve (Wilbrand’s knee). The existence of Wilbrand’s knee has recently been questioned (see text). (Figure modified from Hoyt WF, Luis O. Visual fiber anatomy in the infrageniculate pathway of the primate. Uncrossed and crossed retinal quadrant fiber projections studied with Nauta silver stain. Arch Ophthalmol 1962;68:94–138.)

utilizing axon labeling techniques in enucleated monkeys, was unable to demonstrate crossing fibers looping into the contralateral optic nerve (Wilbrand’s knee) [72]. In one monkey that had undergone enucleation 4 years previously, however, nerve fiber topography similar to that described by Wilbrand was found. Horton hypothesized that Wilbrand’s knee may be an artifact of enucleation caused by atrophy of the optic nerve and not a normal anatomic finding. However, the concept of Wilbrand’s knee is still clinically useful (see subsequent text).

Uncrossed fibers, originating from the temporal retina, maintain their dorsal or ventral position in the chiasm. The macular fibers, which constitute a large proportion of the total number of chiasmal fibers, are also crossed and uncrossed. However, the separation between temporal and nasal ganglion cells is not sharp. Crossed and uncrossed fibers originate in both nasal and temporal sides of the macula. In the optic tract, the macular fibers occupy a dorsal position.

The Optic Tracts and Lateral Geniculate Bodies

The optic tracts extend from the dorsolateral corners of the chiasm to the lateral geniculate bodies. From the chiasm the tracts run posterolaterally, limiting the hypothalamus to a triangular space; they then sweep around the cerebral peduncles, and, as soon as they cross them, reach the lateral geniculate bodies in the posterior part of the ventral aspect of the thalami (Fig. 7.3). Several large vessels are located below the optic tracts. The posterior communicating artery crosses their distal portion in the suprasellar cistern. In the perimesencephalic cistern, the posterior cerebral artery and the basilar vein of Rosenthal are apposed to the tracts. Inferolaterally, the uncus of the temporal lobe covers the proximal portion of each tract (Fig. 7.5).

The lateral geniculate body, a thalamic nucleus, provides a relay station for all the axons of the retinal ganglion cells subserving vision. Neurons from the lateral geniculate body project, by way of the optic radiations, to the pericalcarine cortex of the occipital lobe, which is the primary cortical area for vision (Fig. 7.3). The lateral geniculate body is in the roof of the perimesencephalic cistern (cisterna ambiens), just medial to the hippocampal gyrus of the temporal lobe. Anteriorly, the lateral geniculate body receives the optic tract and sends out the ventral optic radiations, which lie in a close association with the posterior limb of the internal capsule. Dorsolaterally, the lateral geniculate body is covered by the optic radiations. Dorsomedial to the lateral geniculate body, the auditory radiations, originating from the medial geniculate body, pass on their way to the transverse temporal gyrus of Heschl, where the primary auditory cortex is located. Superomedial to the lateral geniculate body is the pulvinar of the thalamus.

Shaped on midsection like Napoleon’s hat, with its concave aspect (hilus) facing inferoposteromedially,
The lateral geniculate body has a deep brown color with stripes (striae) of white matter that are visible to the naked eye [76]. The geniculate neurons, as numerous as the fibers in the optic tract, are disposed in six laminae, numbered from I to VI, beginning from the hilus of the nucleus. Layers I, IV, and VI serve the contralateral eye, whereas II, III, and V are connected with the ipsilateral eye. These six laminae are clearly distinguished in the center of the lateral geniculate body, where the macular region of the retina is represented, but only one or two are present in the peripheral part of the nucleus, which receives axons from ganglion cells in the peripheral retina.

The postchiasmal shift in the position of the fibers (the superior retinal fibers become superomedial and the inferior fibers become inferolateral; Fig. 7.7) persists in the synaptic areas of the lateral geniculate body. This shift is straightened out in the optic radiations, where again the superior fibers correspond to the superior retina and those below to the inferior retina. A similar representation is found in the calcarine cortex.

The Optic Radiations

The optic radiations sweep posteriorly around the lateral aspect of the posterior portion of the lateral ventricles (Fig. 7.8), forming the external sagittal stratum, which is separated from the ventricle by the internal sagittal stratum, made up of occipitomesencephalic fibers. Three bundles can be distinguished in the radiations: (a) the upper bundle, originating in the medial part of the lateral geniculate body and corresponding to the superior retina, which courses through the deep parietal white matter and ends in the superior lip of the calcarine fissure; (b) the central bundle, originating from the medial part of the nucleus and serving the macular region, which travels through the posterotemporal and occipital white matter and ends in the posterior part of the calcarine fissure, on both lips; and (c) the lower bundle, originating from the lateral part of the nucleus and corresponding to the lower retina, which sweeps first anteriorly and then posteriorly around the temporal horn of the lateral ventricle (Fig. 7.8), terminating in the lower lip of the calcarine fissure. As they sweep lateral to the ventricle (Meyer’s loop), the lower radiations reach a point located approximately 5 cm behind the tip of the temporal lobe.

In the anterior part of the radiations, fibers corresponding to adjacent retinal units are spatially separated and the macular fibers, instead of being interposed between fibers from the superior and inferior peripheral retina, run medial to them. Also, fibers from either eye seem to have a similar anterior extent in Meyer’s loop, with those from the contralateral eye lying medial to the ones coming from the ipsilateral eye.
The Visual Cortex and Visual Association Areas

Cortical area 17 of Brodmann, located along the superior and inferior lips of the calcarine fissure in the medial aspect of the occipital lobe, receives the axons from the neurons of the lateral geniculate body and represents the first link in the cortical processing of visual information (primary visual cortex, see Chapter 20). The primary visual cortex actually extends farther than the posterior extent of the calcarine fissure, spreading for approximately 1 cm around the posterolateral aspect of the occipital pole. On cross-section of the cortex, a white matter stria (stria Gennari) can be seen with the naked eye. This characteristic feature has won the term striate cortex for area 17. The line of Gennari corresponds to a thick band of white matter in layer IV of the cortex, which is devoid at this point of pyramidal cells but is very rich in granular cells.

Each occipital lobe receives projections from the nasal half of the opposite eye and from the temporal half of the ipsilateral retina. More simply, it receives projections from the two halves of the retinas on the same side as the occipital lobe (Fig. 7.5). This unilateral representation includes the macular region. The superior and inferior retinal projections extend to the superior and inferior lips of the calcarine fissure, respectively. Finally, the macular retina is represented in the posterior pole of the calcarine cortex, whereas the more peripheral retina is more anteriorly represented [180]. The foveal representation is located at the occipital pole, where the striate cortex usually extends approximately 1 cm onto the lateral convexity of the occipital lobe. The extreme periphery of the visual field is represented anteriorly at the junction of the calcarine and parieto-occipital fissures. The central 10 to 15 degrees of vision fill most of the total surface area of the occipital cortex (as much as 50%–60%) (Figs. 7.9 and 7.10) [75,125].

Vascular Supply of the Visual Pathways

The vascular supply of the retina is derived from the ophthalmic artery, which branches from the carotid artery shortly after this vessel exits from the cavernous sinus. At the optic canal, the ophthalmic artery lies below and lateral to the nerve. At a point 5 to 15 mm from the globe, it gives off the central retinal artery, which pierces the optic nerve and courses forward in its core, to divide into a superior and an inferior branch at the optic disc (Fig. 7.1). Second-order nasal and temporal branches supply the nerve fiber layer and the inner layers of the retina (including ganglion cells). From the anatomic arrangement of these vessels, it follows that the complete occlusion of the central retinal artery results in global retinal ischemia, except when the macular area is supplied by cilioretinal arteries, and occlusion of one of its branches causes superior or inferior retinal ischemia. The consequence of such a lesion is an inferior or superior altitudinal field defect (Fig. 7.2). Infarction in the territory of the central retinal artery may be caused by emboli, thrombi, hypercoagulable states, migraine, and arteritis (e.g., giant cell arteritis).
In addition to the central retinal artery, the ophthalmic artery gives off dural branches (anterior falci- 
cine and recurrent meningeal arteries), orbital branches, and several posterior ciliary arteries. The 
posterior ciliary arteries form a rich anastomotic circle on the posterior aspect of the globe near the optic 
nerve and supply some sectors of the optic disc, the outer layers of the retina (including photoreceptors), 
and the choroid. In about half of the population, the region of the macula and papillomacular bundle 
receives its vascular supply from one or more cilioretinal arteries, which are branches of the posterior ciliary 
arteries (Fig. 7.1). This explains the sparing of central vision that occurs in some individuals despite central retinal artery occlusion (CRAO) with global retinal ischemia. Unlike ischemia in the territory of the central retinal artery, ischemia in the territory of the posterior ciliary arteries is seldom related to embolus but is usually caused by either atherosclerotic disease or hypotension (nonarteritic anterior ischemic optic neuropathy [AION]) or a vasculitis (arteritic ischemic optic neuropathy [ION] due to temporal or giant cell arteritis). However, field defects resulting from lesions in the territory of the posterior ciliary arteries are also altitudinal, and the differentiation of lesions in either territory rests on the opthalmoscoposcopic findings. Edema of the retina is obvious in the acute stages of retinal infarction owing to CRAO, but the retina may appear normal or show axonal swellings (cotton wool spots) in a segmental distribu-
tion in the presence of ischemia in the territory of the posterior ciliary arteries.

The distal part of the optic nerve (near the 
globe) is supplied by small branches of the oph-
thalmic artery and, as it approaches the chiasm, by 
thin vessels from the carotid and anterior cerebral 
arteries. Similarly, thin vessels originating in the 
region of the anterior communicating artery supply 
the dorsal aspect of the chiasm, whereas the inferior 
aspect receives arterioles from the carotid, posterior 
communicating, and posterior cerebral arteries. The 
latter two vessels also supply the optic tract, which in 
addition is fed by the anterior choroidal artery, a 
branch of the internal carotid. The lateral genicu-
late body receives a dual supply, from the anterior 
choroidal artery laterally and from the lateral poste-
rior choroidal artery medially. The upper (parietal) 
portion of the optic radiations is supplied by branches of the middle cerebral artery, whereas the lower part receives branches from the posterior cere-
bral artery. The posterior cerebral artery, particularly 
its calcarine branch running in the calcarine fissure, supplies the primary visual cortex. Anastomotic 
branches from the middle cerebral artery (generally 
the angular or posterior temporal arteries) also play 
an important role in the vascular supply of the 
occipital pole, in which the macular region is 
represented.
Localisation of Lesions in the Optic Pathways

The long course of the visual pathways along the base of the brain and their relative simplicity render them a very useful tool in lesion localisation. Various techniques of neuro-ophthalmologic testing are reviewed by Glaser [48]. Detailed quantitative testing allows the following:

1. The detection of subtle deficits that may escape detection by bedside maneuvers
2. Better definition of abnormalities, such as the exact shape of a field defect, which may be important in lesion localisation
3. The quantification of the extent and intensity of a deficit, which are very useful data when judging the evolution of a disease process

However, detailed testing requires equipment that is unavailable at the bedside and a degree of active cooperation that is often lacking in patients with brain disorders.

Lesions in the visual system may cause impaired visual perception or objective deficits. Impaired visual perception may include (a) poor discrimination of fine details of high contrast (visual acuity), which results in difficulty with tasks such as reading a printed page; (b) impaired color recognition; (c) impaired discrimination of objects that have little contrast with the background (contrast discrimination); and (d) visual field defects, the pattern of which is often the most helpful clue to lesion localization. Objectively, retinal changes caused by retinal or more proximal lesions can be seen with the ophthalmoscope, and an impaired pupillary response to light may betray a lesion in the afferent arc of this reflex.

Changes in Visual Perception

VISUAL ACUITY

Visual acuity, the capacity for visual discrimination of fine details of high contrast, such as small black letters on a white page, reflects the function of the macular region. A subnormal value of acuity indicates a fault in the visual system (e.g., optical faults, retinal lesions, or visual pathway lesions), faulty foveation (i.e., an eye motility defect), or poor cooperation, singly or in combination [42]. It remains unimpaired by unilateral lesions dorsal to the optic chiasm [42]. In practice, visual acuity is most often impaired by changes in the shape of the globe and in the refractory characteristics of the transparent media of the eye. Patients with these refractory defects regain a much better acuity when looking through a pinhole (pinhole test) because this maneuver restricts vision to the central beam of light, which is undisturbed by abnormal ocular distances or transparent media. At the bedside, visual acuity can be tested by asking the patient to read a “near card” with the Snellen optotypes printed on it. The card should be well-illuminated and held 14 inches in front of the patient’s eyes.

Once refractory defects have been excluded, it can be accepted that changes in visual acuity are secondary to lesions in the macular region or its projection. The macula is the only part of the retina that has high visual acuity. Virtually, all compressive and most noncompressive lesions of the optic nerve cause a drop in visual acuity, often even before a field defect can be detected. Medial chiasmal lesions behave in a similar manner. Lateral chiasmal lesions tend to impair visual acuity in the ipsilateral eye only. From these findings and from the sparing of visual acuity that occurs with retrochiasmatic lesions, Frisen postulated that acuity will remain normal if either the crossing or the noncrossing set of nerve fibers from the fovea remains intact [42]. Both sets of fibers are often affected with medial chiasmal lesions. Unilateral lesions of the optic tract, lateral geniculate body, visual radiations, or striate cortex do not impair visual acuity. When the retrochiasmal pathways are affected bilaterally, visual acuity fails to the same degree in both eyes.

CONTRAST SENSITIVITY

Contrast sensitivity testing may detect more subtle impairments in the function of the macula, optic nerve, and chiasm than visual acuity testing [18,103]. For instance, visual acuity may become normal after an acute ON, yet the patient may complain of “dimness” or “fuzzy vision” in that eye. This patient’s ability to perceive a series of bars that have very little contrast from the background will probably be abnormal. Impaired contrast sensitivity probably has localizing significance that is similar to that of impaired visual acuity, but it has been studied less thoroughly.

PERCEPTION OF COLOR

Color perception is often degraded in areas of the visual fields that correspond to a partial field defect. For instance, a scotoma for blue or for red may be demonstrated when vision for white targets is still good. In confrontation testing of the visual fields, one of the most useful techniques is to ask the patient which one of two identically bright red objects is more red, because a desaturation for red is often caused by lesions of the visual pathways. A color sample that appears red to the healthy eye appears more yellowish to the defective eye and passes from orange to yellow to colorless as disease severity increases. Impairment of color vision may also be detected by asking the patient...
to read numbers composed of an assembly of dots of different colors embedded in a background of differently colored dots (Ishihara or Hardy–Rand–Rittler pseudoisochromatic color plates). Color-blind patients cannot perform this task, which mainly reflects macular function. Because optic nerve and chiasmatic lesions often affect the macular fibers, monocular reading of the Ishihara or similar plates may be defective on the side of the lesion. However, Ishihara plates generally have poor sensitivity for acquired dyschromatopsia. It should also be noted that the interpretation of pseudoisochromatic color plates requires that the patient is able to “put the dots together” to make a visual whole. Therefore, patients with simultanagnosia (see Chapter 20) due to bilateral occipitoparietal damage (e.g., in the “posterior” form of Alzheimer’s disease) may have difficulty in identifying the images on the plates despite adequate visual acuity and the ability to name all the colors in the plates correctly [17].

Color vision loss usually parallels visual acuity loss (e.g., in ION), but in ON color vision loss may be much worse. In ON, chromatic sensitivity is more severely impaired than luminance sensitivity [132]. Another exception to the general rule of color vision failure paralleling visual acuity impairment is that color vision does not depend equally on perfect foveation and a well-focused retinal image, so that patients with nystagmus and anisometropia usually have normal color vision unless acuity is severely impaired. Acuity may also be normal with acquired achromatopsia due to cerebral cortical lesions [32,157].

Congenital color vision defects are much more common in men than women, with deficits mainly of red and green hues. Acquired color vision defects cluster primarily in the blue–purple or blue–green hues [131]. Therefore, bluish–purple objects may have superior sensitivity over red targets in assessing acquired dyschromatopsia. In general, patients with primary optic nerve disease frequently show a tendency for hue discrimination difficulties between reds and greens, whereas patients with primary retinocchoroidal disorders more frequently show evidence of hue discrimination difficulties between blues and yellows (Köllner’s rule) [63]. However, Köllner’s rule has numerous exceptions (e.g., primary open angle glaucoma is an optic nerve disease characterized by blue–yellow deficits).

Another way of revealing impaired color processing involves the flight-of-colors phenomenon, which consists of a succession of color impressions that normally follows shining a bright light into the eye. This phenomenon is absent or reduced in duration with acquired dyschromatopsia [39].

Impairment of color perception also occurs with lesions in the posterior visual pathways. A visual field defect for red may betray the presence of a lesion when the fields for white stimuli are full. Patients with bilateral lesions of the inferomedial occipital region often have color blindness with normal visual acuity [32,157].

**VISUAL FIELDS**

The shape and distribution of visual field loss closely reflects the site of the lesion (Fig. 7.11). Therefore, careful plotting of the visual fields is most helpful in the localization of lesions of the visual pathways when examining a cooperative patient [42]. In patients with a markedly reduced attention span or other disturbances in alertness or mentation, the gross extent of the visual fields can be estimated from the patient’s response to moving objects in different quadrants. A moving object strongly induces the patient to look at it. However, small field defects are missed with confrontation techniques [184]. In cooperative patients, visual field testing with the tangent (Bjerrum) screen or static or kinetic perimetry provides a detailed map of the visual fields. Testing of the central 20 to 30 degrees of vision is most important because very few disease processes affect the peripheral fields alone; exceptions to this are the tapetoretinal degenerations and retinal detachment (both diagnosed by ophthalmoscopic exam) and anterior visual cortex lesions [42].

Adequate visual field testing requires patient cooperation and a skilled examiner. Shadowing facial contours (e.g., the eyebrows and nose), ptosis, disorders of eye motility, blinks, pupillary size, eyelashes, and spectacle rims must all be taken into account when interpreting the visual fields [42]. Ametropia, presbyopia, or both may affect the fields. For example, uncorrected astigmatism may cause an upper temporal depression suggesting a chiasmatic lesion; however, unlike a true chiasmatic defect, this defect does not respect the vertical meridian and spares central fixation [42]. Spherical ametropia may cause generalized field depression and occasionally an upper temporal depression, which may run under the blind spot (barring of the blind spot) due to local ametropia or local deviation from the normal retinal curvature [42].

By convention, in representing the visual fields, the field for the left eye is represented to the left of the field for the right eye (Fig. 7.11). Therefore, the nasol retina of the left eye “sees” the temporal field of the left eye. This terminology explains why a chiasmatic lesion that destroys the nasal fibers from both retinas causes a bitemporal hemianopsia. Similarly, a macular lesion yields a central defect, whereas a lesion in the nasosuperior retina of the right eye results in a field defect in the temporoinferior portion of the visual field corresponding to the right eye.
Any localized area of poor vision surrounded by areas of normal vision is termed a scotoma. The blind spot, the projection of the optic nerve in the visual field, is a physiologic scotoma that cannot be perceived because it lacks representation in the brain. Angioscotomata, the shadow images of the superficial retinal vessels on the underlying retina, is another type of physiologic scotoma that may be noted under certain circumstances. Absolute defects involving the outer limits of the visual field are called contractions, whereas depressions are smoothly tapering but not absolute deficits in the field [42].

**Types of Visual Field Defects**

A central defect occupies the position of the macula (Fig. 7.2). A cecocentral defect affects the area of the macula and of the papillomacular bundle. Nerve fiber bundle defects are field abnormalities in which at least part of the border coincides with the course of the retinal nerve fiber layer [42]. Peripheral nerve fiber bundle defects in the nasal field tend to have an arcuate shape when they are secondary to retinal or optic nerve disease, as they often are. The field defect takes this arcuate shape because of the disposition of the fiber layer in the retina and in the optic nerve (Fig. 7.2). Arcuate field defects may occur with glaucoma, AION, drusen of the disc, and congenital optic pits. Small deep retinal lesions result in a discrete defect localized to the point of the lesion, because the fiber layer remains unaltered. Larger lesions affect the superficial fiber layer and therefore give rise to a fan-shaped arcuate defect, with its tip pointing to the lesion and its base...
fanning peripherally and toward the nasal horizontal meridian. Nerve fiber bundle defects occur most commonly with lesions in the optic nerve head, where the tip of the defect reaches to the blind spot (Fig. 7.2), but may also occur with branch retinal artery or vein occlusion and with juxtapapillary inflammation. Defects in the temporal field lateral to the blind spot have the appearance of a sector rather than an arcuate shape. Visual defects in the temporal field do not “respect” the horizontal meridian because neither the blood supply nor the fibers of the nasal retina are arranged along a horizontal raphe (as opposed to temporal retinal fibers). The straight course of the retinal fibers of the nasal retina toward the nerve head explains this sector configuration (Fig. 7.1).

*Enlargement of the blind spot* is often noted with any process causing disc swelling (e.g., increased intracranial pressure); however, any peripapillary retinal disorder (e.g., the peripapillary conus or crescent seen with aging, myopia, or glaucoma and congenital optic nerve pit) may also enlarge the blind spot. These abnormalities are usually observed on ophthalmoscopic examination.

Occasionally a field defect has the appearance of a ring, with preserved vision central and peripheral to the scotoma. Usually the center coincides with the fovea. Annular or ring scotomas may occur with retinopathies or optic neuropathies. Retinitis pigmentosa often results in a large midperipheral ring scotoma. Cancer-associated retinopathy (CAR) syndrome may also cause a ring scotoma, often associated with funduscopic evidence of arteriolar narrowing and optic atrophy [29]. Ring scotomas of small diameter may occur with macular lesions, especially associated with a “bull’s-eye” appearance on ophthalmoscopy (e.g., chloroquine retinopathy [64]) or with the retinal disorder fundus flavimaculatus [156]. Annular or ring scotomas may also occur with retinitis, choroiditis, retinal migraine, and myopia. Paracentral and arcuate scotomas are characteristic of glaucoma; fusion of superior and inferior arcuate defects gives rise to ring scotomata. These ring-shaped defects have a characteristic horizontal or nasal step (Fig. 7.2), which distinguishes them from lesions located more distally in the visual pathways. Physiologic ring scotomas may be caused by corrective lenses, the prismatic effects of strongly curved correcting lenses, and the shallow ring scotoma surrounding the blind spot [42].

When only central vision is intact, the visual field is said to be narrowed, and the patient has funnel vision, not to be confused with tunnel vision, a field defect characteristic of hysteria or malingering. This latter field defect can easily be mapped onto a tangent screen by plotting the fields with the patient seated 1 and 2 m from the screen (the target size is doubled at 2 m) or can be detected with confrontation methods. Logically, with an organic field defect, the field projected at 2 m is larger than the field plotted at 1 m (funnel vision). Identical fields are obtained when the constriction of the field is not due to a lesion of the visual system. Constricted visual fields with retained acuity may be due to glaucoma, retinitis pigmentosa, CAR, gyral bodies of the disc, postpapilledema optic atrophy, bilateral occipital infarcts with macular sparing, and feigned visual loss.

**Hemianopia** is a field defect that encompasses roughly half of the field, with a fairly sharp cutoff at the vertical or horizontal meridian (Fig. 7.11) [178]. Vertical hemianopia can be nasal or temporal. Horizontal or “altitudinal” hemianopia can be superior or inferior. When only one-fourth of the field is affected, the resulting deficit is called quadrantanopia.

Bilateral field defects are said to be homonymous when they are similarly located in both visual fields. They are congruous when there is a point-to-point correspondence of the defect in either field; otherwise they are called incongruous (Fig. 7.11).

**Unilateral visual inattention** refers to the phenomenon found in some patients with parieto-occipital lesions. No field defect is found on unilateral testing, but when stimuli are placed on both right and left hemifields, the patient appears not to see the object on the field opposite to the lesion. Unilateral visual inattention is often seen with incomplete homonymous defects and in the process of recovery of a dense field defect, particularly at the margins of the defect.

Dissociation of the perception of kinetic and static stimuli (Riddoch’s phenomenon) occasionally occurs with occipital lesions, and less often with lesions anywhere in the optic pathways (e.g., optic tract and optic chiasm lesions). In this case, the patient can still appreciate moving objects within the dense field defect for static stimuli [12]. In some cases, nonstriated projections might mediate visual function in the absence of striate cortex (e.g., through superior colliculus-pulvinar-prestriate cortex paths).

**Localization of Visual Field Defects**

Most important for lesion localization, is to note whether the field defect is monocular, in which case the lesion usually affects the retina or the optic nerve, or binocular, in which case the lesion is localized to or beyond the optic chiasm (Figs. 7.2 and 7.11). Obviously, multiple lesions in the visual pathways, which occur frequently with multiple sclerosis (MS) and other conditions, may result in bilateral loss even when the anterior optic pathways are involved. The pattern of the visual field loss can seldom differentiate retinal from optic nerve disease. However, retinal involvement generally accompanies obvious ophthalm-
moscopic abnormalities. Also, most optic neuropathies involve visual acuity; spared acuity should raise the suspicion of preretinal, retinal, or retrochiasmal disease [42].

Monocular visual field defects are almost always due to disease of the choroid, retinal pigment epithelium, retina, optic disc, or optic nerve. Lesions affecting the retina, nerve fiber layer, or optic nerve produce visual field defects in the ipsilateral eye, which correspond in position, shape, extent, and intensity to the lesion. Almost all retinal lesions resulting in visual field loss are visible ophthalmoscopically. Careful attention should be directed to the retina and retinal nerve fiber layer corresponding to the visual field defect. Patients with macular disease may also complain of metamorphopsia, micropsia, and positive photopsias (e.g., flashing lights), which are unusual in patients with optic neuropathies.

In assessing optic nerve-related visual field defects, several anatomic points are worth remembering:

1. Fibers from peripheral ganglion cells occupy a more peripheral position of the optic disc, whereas fibers from ganglion cells located closer to the disc occupy a more central position.
2. Peripheral fibers course peripherally through the entire extent of optic nerve.
3. The papillomacular bundle occupies a large sector-shaped region of the temporal disc. This bundle of fibers moves centrally in the more distal (posterior) portions of the orbital optic nerve.
4. All retinal fibers retain their relative positions throughout visual pathways except in the optic tract and at the lateral geniculate nucleus where there is a rotation of 90 degrees that becomes “straightened out” in the optic radiations.

Central visual field defects (unilateral or bilateral) are the result of damage to the papillomacular bundle or optic nerve. Any visual field defect produced by a retinal lesion may be produced by a lesion of the optic nerve [128] and virtually any etiology may be responsible (e.g., glaucomatous, degenerative, ischemic, traumatic, inflammatory, infiltrative, compressive, or vascular optic neuropathy). For example, unilateral central scotomas are often seen with ON, compressive optic neuropathies, or early macular disease. Bilateral central or cecocentral scotomas usually indicate hereditary (e.g., Leber’s hereditary optic neuropathy) or toxic-nutritional optic neuropathies, but may also be seen with bilateral macular lesions, bilateral compressive lesions affecting the optic nerves, or even bilateral lesions affecting the occipital poles. The clinical features and etiologies of bilateral superior and inferior altitudinal defects and bilateral central or cecocentral scotomas are noted in Table 7.1.

### TABLE 7.1
Clinical Features and Etiologies of Bilateral Superior or Inferior Altitudinal Defects and Bilateral Central or Cecocentral Scotomas

**Bilateral superior or inferior (altitudinal hemianopia)**
- Mostly caused by bilateral optic nerve or retinal disease
- Rarely, a large prechiasmal lesion compresses both nerves inferiorly to cause bilateral superior hemianopia. Compression of nerves from below may also elevate them against the dural shelves extending out from the intracranial end of the optic canals and cause bilateral inferior altitudinal defects
- Bilateral symmetric damage to postchiasmal pathways may cause bilateral altitudinal defects. Bilateral lesions of the medial aspect of the lateral geniculate body may cause bilateral inferior hemianopsias
- Bilateral occipital lesions may cause bilateral inferior, and less often, superior hemianopsias
- Bilateral “checker board” altitudinal hemianopsia—superior defect in one eye and inferior defect in the other eye
- Bilateral optic neuropathies
- Visual field defects may cause binocular diplopia because of vertical hemifield slide—preexisting minor phoria becomes a tropia because of vertical or horizontal separation or overlap of two non-overlapping hemifields; this phenomenon may also occur with broad arcuate defects

**Bilateral cecocentral or central scotomas**
May be bilateral optic neuropathy of any cause (e.g., compressive) but more common etiologies include the following:
- Toxic or nutritional amblyopia
- Bilateral demyelinating optic neuritis
- Syphilis
- Leber’s hereditary optic neuropathy
- Bilateral macular disease
- Bilateral macular involving occipital lesions

Adapted from Lee AG, Brazis PW. *Clinical pathways in neuro-ophthalmology: An evidence-based approach.* New York: Thieme Medical Publishers, 2003, with permission of authors.
Although monocular visual field defects are usually due to retinal or optic nerve disease, in the early stages of a chiasmatic lesion, the loss may be restricted to the temporal portion of the field corresponding to the ipsilateral eye [70]. This monocular (often scotomatous) temporal hemianopia (junctional scotoma of Traquair, Fig. 7.12) is attributed to the involvement of the ipsilateral optic nerve close enough to the chiasm to impair conduction selectively in ipsilateral crossing fibers but too anterior to affect nasal retinal fibers crossing from the fellow eye (i.e., nasal compression of the distal intracranial optic nerve ipsilateral to the defect) [70]. Also, lesions located in the most anterior extent of the calcarine cortex cause a crescent-shaped defect restricted to the temporal field of the contralateral eye from 60 to 90 degrees (monocular temporal crescent or “half-moon syndrome”) [26,109]. This is the only retrochiasmatic lesion that may cause a strictly unilateral visual field defect (Fig. 7.11). Similarly, an occipital lesion that spares the foremost part of the calcarine cortex results in a homonymous hemianopia that spares the unpaired temporal crescent (Fig. 7.11).

Monocular altitudinal defects (Fig. 7.2), which are often accompanied by macular sparing, are characteristic of disease in the distribution of the central retinal artery. Central vision may be spared because the blood supply for the macula often derives from the cilioretinal arteries (Fig. 7.1). AION (infarction involving the anterior portion of the optic nerve), due to ischemia involving the posterior ciliary arteri-ies, is another common cause of an altitudinal (usually inferior) defect (see subsequent text). Other causes of a monocular altitudinal defect include choroiditis, choroidal coloboma, retinal detachment, glaucoma, optic nerve hypoplasia, chronic atrophic papilledema, drusen, ON, optic nerve trauma, and masses affecting the optic nerve or chiasm. Bilateral altitudinal defects may result from bilateral lesions, often ischemic, of the retinas or optic nerves, but bilateral occipital lesions, especially trauma or infarction, may also be responsible for this type of defect (Table 7.1) [62,94,106,138]. Rarely, a large prechiasmal lesion compresses both nerves inferiorly to cause bilateral superior altitudinal defects. The compression of nerves from below may also elevate them against the dural shelves extending out from the intracranial end of the optic canals and cause bilateral inferior altitudinal defects. Bilateral lesions of medial aspect of the lateral geniculate body may cause bilateral inferior altitudinal defects. It is important to emphasize that the nerve fiber layer of the retina respects the horizontal meridian only in the nasal field, not in the temporal field; therefore, incomplete altitudinal field defects are more common with retinal lesions. Because of the anastomotic blood supply of the occipital pole, only altitudinal defects due to occipital infarcts spare macular vision [62,106]. Diagnosis of retinal branch artery occlusion or AION is aided by the presence of a unilateral altitudinal defect along with ipsilateral funduscopic changes and, in most bilateral cases, by sequential temporal development; bilateral occipital infarcts are
characterized by the sudden, simultaneous onset of altitudinal visual field defects with an absence of retinal or optic nerve abnormality or abnormalities of the pupillary response [106].

Bilateral ring defects may be the consequence of retinal disease, but bilateral occipital involvement can cause a similar field defect. In the case of occipital lesions, however, a vertical step can be regularly identified between the two halves of the ring (Fig. 7.11).

Bitemporal field defects [137] are most often due to a compressive mass lesion affecting the optic chiasm, such as pituitary tumors. Rarely, processes that cause rapidly developing hydrocephalus in children may result in bitemporal defects, perhaps through dilation of the optic recess of the third ventricle. True pure complete bitemporal hemianopias are rare because it is difficult for any pathogenetic mechanism, except trauma, to affect crossing fibers only. Bitemporal hemianopia may be peripheral, para-central, or central. The visual field defect may “split” or “spare” the macular central field. Certain anatomical relationships are important in evaluating chiasmal visual field defects:

1. The ratio of crossed to uncrossed fibers in the chiasm is 53:47.
2. Uncrossed fibers, both dorsal and ventral, maintain their relative position at the lateral aspects of the chiasm and pass directly into the ipsilateral optic tract.
3. Dorsal extramacular crossing fibers from each eye decussate posteriorly in the chiasm and then directly enter the dorsomedial aspect of contralateral optic tract.
4. Macular fibers that cross do so in the central and posterior portions of chiasm.
5. Some inferonasal retina fibers, primarily peripheral fibers, loop in Wilbrand’s loop (although the anatomic existence of this structure has been questioned).

Early chiasmal compression with pituitary tumors affecting crossing fibers in isolation usually results in relative rather than absolute defects limited to the central parts of the upper temporal quadrants. With increasing tumor growth, the contact area with the chiasm increases in size so that noncrossing fibers are always affected and acuity is impaired. Therefore, complete bilateral hemianopia almost never occurs in isolation and is usually combined with binasal depression and subnormal acuity [42]. Although most patients with midchiasmal compression demonstrate bitemporal superior visual depression, occasional patients may demonstrate bitemporal scotomas or, rarely, bilateral arcuate defects [48].

Clinically, three chiasmal syndromes may be recognized (Fig. 7.13) [128].

1. The anterior chiasm or junctional syndrome (different from the junctional syndrome of Traquair, above), in which a unilateral optic defect is associated with a superior temporal defect in the other eye.
2. Body of the chiasm syndrome, in which patients demonstrate bitemporal visual field defects. These visual field defects may be peripheral, central, or a combination of both, with or without “splitting of the macula,” and may be quadratic or hemianopic. Visual acuity is usually normal, and the optic discs are normal or pale.
3. The posterior chiasm syndrome, in which visual field testing reveals bitemporal scotomas (the peripheral visual fields are intact). Visual acuity and the optic discs are normal.

Lesions affecting the optic chiasm are listed in Tables 7.2 and 7.3. Superior bitemporal field defects may also occur with tilted discs, an optic disc anomaly in which the discs have an elliptical shape. This field anomaly differs from that due to a chiasmatic lesion in that with tilted discs, the defect crosses the median into the nasal field (i.e., does not “respect” the vertical meridian) [47,60]. Pseudochiasmal visual field defects (i.e., bitemporal defects that do not respect the vertical midline) may also be due to ametropia, astigmatism, colobomas, bilateral nasal retinal disease (e.g., schisis), glaucoma, and bilateral optic neuropathies. Rarely a bitemporal hemianopia due to retinal disease can respect the vertical meridian [170].

A central defect in one field with a superior temporal defect in the opposite field points to the involvement of the anterior angle of the chiasm, with damage of the ipsilateral optic nerve and of the loop made by the fibers from the inferonasal retina of the other eye (Wilbrand’s knee) (Figs. 7.7 and 7.13A). Because of its localizing implications, this type of visual field defect has been termed junctional scotoma (different from the junctional syndrome of Traquair, as explained in preceding text) [188]. Such junctional scotomas stress the importance of meticulous testing of the visual fields in the “normal” eye in patients with apparently unilateral visual impairment. As noted in the preceding text, the existence of Wilbrand’s knee has come into question. Nevertheless, whether Wilbrand’s knee exists anatomically, the localizing value of junctional visual field loss to the junction of the optic nerve and chiasm remains undiminished because chiasmal compression alone or ON affecting the junction of the posterior optic nerve and chiasm may result in the contralateral...
### TABLE 7.2 Compressive Chiasmal Syndromes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Most common</th>
<th>Less common</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Chiasmal glioma</td>
<td>• Abscess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Craniopharyngioma</td>
<td>• Anaplastic astrocytoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Dysembryoplastic neuroepithelial tumor</td>
<td>• Arachnoid cyst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Meningioma</td>
<td>• Aspergillosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Optic chiasm diastasis from pituitary tumor</td>
<td>• Cavernous hemangioma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Pituitary apoplexy</td>
<td>• Chiasmal hematoma (chiasmal apoplexy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Pituitary tumor (especially pituitary adenoma)</td>
<td>• Chondroma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Suprasellar aneurysm</td>
<td>• Choristomas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hemangiomma</td>
<td>• Colloid cyst of the third ventricle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hemangioendothelioma</td>
<td>• Dermoid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Histiocytosis X</td>
<td>• Dolichoectatic internal carotid arteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hydrocephalus and distention of the third ventricle</td>
<td>• Multiple ependymomas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Langerhans cell histiocytoma</td>
<td>• Nasopharyngeal cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Leukemia and lymphoma</td>
<td>• Neurofibroma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Lipoma</td>
<td>• Nonneoplastic pituitary gland enlargement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Lymphocytic hypophysitis</td>
<td>• Paraganglioma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Lymphohistiocytosis</td>
<td>• Plasmacytoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Melanoma</td>
<td>• Pneumocele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Meningeal carcinomatosis</td>
<td>• Rathke cleft cyst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Metastatic disease to brain or pituitary gland</td>
<td>• Rhabdomyosarcoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Mucocoele or mucopyocele</td>
<td>• Sinus histiocytosis with lymphadenopathy (Rosai–Dorfman disease)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Intracellar</td>
<td>• Sarcoid granuloma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Sphenoid sinus</td>
<td>• Schwannoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Multiple myeloma</td>
<td>• Septum pelliculatum cyst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Nasopharyngeal cancer</td>
<td>• Sinus tumors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Nonneoplastic pituitary gland enlargement</td>
<td>• Syphilitic granuloma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Paraganglioma</td>
<td>• Teratoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Plasmacytoma</td>
<td>• Tuberculomas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Pneumocele</td>
<td>• Venous malformation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Rathke cleft cyst</td>
<td>• Venous aneurysm arising from carotid-cavernous sinus fistula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Rhabdomyosarcoma</td>
<td>• Venous developmental anomaly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hemangioma</td>
<td>• Venous developmental anomaly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---


To note, superotemporal visual field defect (junctional scotoma) has been described [71,87].

Trobe and Glaser noted that junctional visual field loss due to a mass lesion in 98 of 100 cases [185]. The differential diagnosis of a junctional syndrome includes pituitary tumors, suprasellar meningiomas, suprachiasmatic aneurysms, craniopharyngiomas, and gliomas [188]. Chiasmal neuritis, pachymeningitis, and trauma are rare etiologies of the junctional syndrome [159,197]. Junctional visual field abnormalities may also occur on a functional (nonorganic) basis.

Binasal hemianopias and quadrantanopias may occur, are usually asymmetric, and often do not respect the vertical meridian. Binasal defects are usually due to bilateral intraorbital disease of the retina or optic nerve (e.g., chronic papilledema, ION, glaucoma, optic nerve drusen, or retinal disease such as sector retinitis pigmentosa or retinoschisis) [171]. Rarely, bilateral compression of the lateral chiasm may result in a binasal defect [144]. Bilateral nasal defect may occur with hydrocephalus with third ventricle enlargement causing lateral displacement of optic nerves against the supraclinoid portion of the internal carotid arteries. Binasal defects have also been described in patients with primary empty sella syndrome and with other suprasellar lesions [25,120]. An unusual binasal visual field impairment has been noted with spontaneous intracranial hypotension from a dural cerebrospinal fluid leak [73]. Some of these patients have a binasal defect with peripheral depressions that are most severe in the upper nasal quadrants but also involving the lower nasal and upper temporal quadrants.

Homonymous hemianopias appear with lesions in the retrochiasmatic pathways [79]. Homony-
for a lesion causing a scotomatous hemianopic visual field defect is the occipital lobe.

Optic tract lesions are often associated with a relative afferent pupillary defect (RAPD) (see subsequent text) in the eye with temporal field loss (contralateral to the side of the lesion) [8,20,145]. The RAPD that occurs in this setting reflects the difference in light sensitivity between the intact temporal and nasal hemifields. Its magnitude does not correlate with the difference in the number of crossed and uncrossed axons, but its sidedness contralateral to the side of the optic tract lesion is consistent with the greater percentage of decussating pupillomotor input [88]. Therefore, an afferent pupillary defect in the contralateral eye in a patient with normal visual acuity bilaterally and a complete homonymous hemianopia are usually indicative of optic tract involvement [128]. Another abnormality of the pupil that may occur with optic tract lesions is due to concurrent third nerve involvement by the pathologic process causing the tract damage. In these cases, the pupil ipsilateral to the lesion may be large and poorly reactive.

Visual Pathways

TABLE 7.3 Other Causes of Chiasmal Syndrome

| Hydrocephalus | Inflammatory |
| Cothalamin deficiency | Collagen vascular disease (e.g., systemic lupus erythematosus) |
| Demyelinating disease | Rheumatoid pachymeningitis |
| Empty sella syndrome (primary or secondary) | Sarcoïd |
| Chiasmal ischemia | Posthermorrhagic |
| Optochiasmatic arachnoiditis | Posttraumatic |
| Foreign body-induced granuloma (e.g., muslin) | Radiation necrosis |
| Idiopathic | Multiple sclerosis |
| Infection | Idiopathic chiasmal neuritis |
| Chronic fungal infection | Shunt catheter |
| Cryptococcus meningitis | Toxic |
| Cysticercosis | Tobacco–alcohol toxicity |
| Encephalitis | Ethylchlorvynol (Placidyl) |
| Epstein-Barr virus infection | Pheniprazine (Catron) |
| Meningitis | Trauma including postsurgical |
| Mucormycosis | Fat packing after trans-sphenoidal hypophysectomy |
| Nasopharyngeal and sinus infections | Tethering scar tissue causing delayed visual deterioration after pituitary surgery |
| Syphilis | Vasculitis |
| Tuberculosis | Intracranial vascular loop |
| | Hereditary (probably autosomal recessive) chiasmal optic neuropathy |
| | Nonorganic (functional) |


Homonymous hemianopia may, therefore, be caused by lesions affecting the optic tract, lateral geniculate body, optic radiations, or occipital lobe. Rarely, an occipital lesion may cause a monocular field defect (see preceding text). Homonymous hemianopias affecting the tract and lateral geniculate body tend to be incongruous, but the more posteriorly the lesion is located in the optic pathways, the greater the congruity of the defect in either field. In general, tumors produce sloping field defects, whereas vascular lesions produce sharp field defects. Complete homonymous hemianopias are nonlocalizing and may be seen with any lesion of the retrochiasmal pathway, including lesions of the optic tract, lateral geniculate body, optic radiations, and striate cortex.

In the optic tract, macular fibers lie dorsolaterally, peripheral fibers from the upper retina are situated dorsomedially, and peripheral fibers from the lower retinas run ventrolaterally. Complete unilateral optic tract lesions cause a complete macular splitting homonymous hemianopia, usually without impaired visual acuity, unless the lesion extends to involve the optic chiasm or nerve [173]. Partial optic tract lesions are more common than complete lesions and result in an incongruous field defect that may be scotomatosus [8,9,173]. The only other postchiasmal location for a lesion causing a scotomatous hemianopic visual field defect is the occipital lobe.

Optic tract lesions are often associated with a relative afferent pupillary defect (RAPD) (see subsequent text) in the eye with temporal field loss (contralateral to the side of the lesion) [8,20,145]. The RAPD that occurs in this setting reflects the difference in light sensitivity between the intact temporal and nasal hemifields. Its magnitude does not correlate with the difference in the number of crossed and uncrossed axons, but its sidedness contralateral to the side of the optic tract lesion is consistent with the greater percentage of decussating pupillomotor input [88]. Therefore, an afferent pupillary defect in the contralateral eye in a patient with normal visual acuity bilaterally and a complete homonymous hemianopia are usually indicative of optic tract involvement [128]. Another abnormality of the pupil that may occur with optic tract lesions is due to concurrent third nerve involvement by the pathologic process causing the tract damage. In these cases, the pupil ipsilateral to the lesion may be large and poorly reactive. Finally, many patients with chronic optic tract lesions develop bilateral optic atrophy with a characteristic “wedge,” “band,” or “bow tie” pallor in the contralateral eye (identical to that seen in some patients with bitemporal visual
field loss from chiasmal lesions), and a more generalized pallor in the ipsilateral optic nerve associated with loss of nerve fiber layer in the superior and inferior arcurate regions corresponding to the bulk of temporal fibers subserving the nasal visual fields (hemianopic optic atrophy) [128,173]. Hemianopic optic atrophy indicates the involvement of the postchiasmal, preoptic radiations (i.e., optic tract or lateral geniculate body damage) but has also been rarely described in congenital retrogeniculate lesions [4,78,128]. Etiologies of optic tract lesions include space-occupying lesions (e.g., glioma, meningioma, craniopharyngioma, metastasis, pituitary adenoma, ectopic pinealoma, abscess, sella arachnoid cyst), aneurysms, arteriovenous malformations, dolichoectatic basilar artery, demyelinating disease, neurosyphilis, and trauma, including neurosurgical procedures (e.g., temporal lobectomy, insertion of intraventricular shunt, pallidotomy for parkinsonism) [11,28,55,82,111,117,128,164,173,178,191]. A congenital optic tract syndrome has also been described [134].

In the lateral geniculate body, axons from ganglion cells superior to fovea are located medially, axons originating from ganglion cells inferior to fovea are located laterally, and macular fibers terminate in a large central area. As axons leave the lateral geniculate body they rotate back to their original positions so that within the optic radiations and the striate cortex, fibers that have synapsed with axons from superior retinas are located in superior radiations and above the calcarine fissure in the striate cortex, whereas fibers that have synapsed with axons from the inferior retinas are located in the inferior optic radiations and below the calcarine fissure. Upper field fibers originate in the medial aspect of lateral geniculate nucleus and travel through the parietal lobes, while lower field fibers originate from the lateral aspect of the lateral geniculate body and make a loop in the temporal lobe (Meyer’s loop or the Meyer-Archambault loop). Lateral geniculate body lesions may also cause a complete macular splitting homonymous hemianopia [58,77,128]. Partial lesions result in an incongruous homonymous field defect. Hemianopic optic atrophy may develop and no RAPD is usually evident.

Although lesions of the optic tract or lateral geniculate body often cause incongruous field defects, two relatively specific patterns of congruous homonymous field defects with abruptly sloping borders, associated with sectorial optic atrophy, have been attributed to focal lesions of the lateral geniculate body caused by infarction in the territory of specific arteries. Occlusion of the anterior choroidal artery may cause a homonymous defect in the upper and lower quadrants with the sparing of a horizontal sector (quadruple sectoranopia) (Fig. 7.14A), which is essentially diagnostic of a lateral geniculate body lesion in the anterior choroidal artery distribution [41,68,119]. This defect occurs because the lateral geniculate body is organized in projection columns oriented vertically that represent sectors of the field parallel to the horizontal meridians, and the anterior choroidal artery supplies to the hilum and anterolateral part of the nucleus. Bilateral lateral geniculate lesions may therefore cause bilateral hourglass-shaped visual field defects or bilateral blindness [34,127]. Quadruple sectoranopia has also been described with posterior cerebral artery infarction [96]. As noted in the preceding text, the lateral geniculate body has a dual blood supply; therefore, interruption of the posterior lateral choroidal artery, which perfuses the central portion of the lateral geniculate, causes a horizontal homonymous sector defect (wedge-shaped) (Fig. 7.14B) [14,41,119,135,176,190,195]. A similar sector defect may occur with lesions affecting the optic radiations [23] or, rarely, with lesions affecting the occipital cortex in the region of the calcarine fissure [56], lesions of the temporoparietal junction, parietotemporal lesions, or lesions in the distribution of the superficial sylvian artery territory [54]. Several patients have been described with bilateral lateral geniculate lesions with bilateral sectoral defects with the preservation of the visual fields in an hourglass distribution [53,133].

Patients with lesions of the lateral geniculate body may have no other signs or symptoms of neurologic involvement or may have associated findings related to thalamic or corticospinal tract involvement. Etiologies for lateral geniculate damage include infarction, arteriovenous malformation, trauma, tumor, inflammatory disorders, demyelinating disease, and toxic exposure (e.g., methanol) [14,34,53,55,68,101,119,127,135,176].

Superior homonymous quadrantic defects (“pie-in-the-sky” field defects; Fig. 7.11) may result from a lesion in the temporal (Meyer’s) loop of the optic radiations or in the inferior bank of the calcarine fissure. To cause a quadrantic defect the lesion has to be quite extensive; small lesions result in scotomata. In a study of 30 patients with superior quadrantanopias, lesions were occipital in 83%, temporal in 13%, and parietal in 5% [85]. In temporal lobe lesions, the superior quadrantic defect is usually, but not always, incongruous and the inferior margins of the defects may have sloping borders and may cross beyond the horizontal midline [128]. Also, the ipsilateral nasal field defect is often denser and comes closer to fixation than the defect in the contralateral eye. Macular vision may or may not be involved with the quadrantic defect [84,121,128]. Etiologies
Field defects were present in 31 of the 32 patients but none of the patients was aware of the deficits. Points nearest fixation were relatively spared and defects were greatest in the sector closest to the vertical meridian in the eye ipsilateral to the resection. Ipsilateral and contralateral field defects differed in topography and in depth. This study, therefore, demonstrated that certain fibers from the ipsilateral eye travel more anteriorly and laterally in Meyer’s loop and supports the hypothesis that visual field defects due to anterior retrogeniculate lesions are incongruous because of anatomic differences in the afferent pathway [80].

The involvement of the optic radiations in the depth of the parietal lobe gives rise to an inferior for temporal lobe dysfunction include space-occupying lesions (e.g., tumors, abscesses, hemorrhage), arteriovenous malformations, infarction, infections, congenital malformations, demyelinating disease, and trauma (e.g., temporal lobectomy) [80,84,121,178,187,203]. In one study, 36.6% of patients undergoing selective amygdalohippocampectomy for hippocampal sclerosis developed visual field defects owing to the interruption of the anterior bundle of the optic radiation fibers while opening the temporal horn through the inferior limiting sulcus of the insula [203].

Hughes et al. studied the visual field defects in 32 patients after temporal lobe resection [80]. Visual field defects were present in 31 of the 32 patients but none of the patients was aware of the deficits. Points nearest fixation were relatively spared and defects were greatest in the sector closest to the vertical meridian in the eye ipsilateral to the resection. Ipsilateral and contralateral field defects differed in topography and in depth. This study, therefore, demonstrated that certain fibers from the ipsilateral eye travel more anteriorly and laterally in Meyer’s loop and supports the hypothesis that visual field defects due to anterior retrogeniculate lesions are incongruous because of anatomic differences in the afferent pathway [80].

The involvement of the optic radiations in the depth of the parietal lobe gives rise to an inferior

quadrantic defect ("pie-on-the-floor" defect) (Fig. 7.11). Such defects are usually more congruous than those produced by lesions of the temporal lobe, and because the entire optic radiation passes through the parietal lobe, large lesions may produce complete homonymous hemianopia with macular splitting [128]. Patients may often be unaware of their visual field defects [152,193].

In a study of 41 patients with inferior quadrantanopias, 76% were due to occipital lesions, 22% to parietal lesions, and 2% to temporal lesions [83]. In patients with occipital lesions, the field defects often occurred in isolation, while other localizing signs of parietal involvement were evident in 89% of patients with parietal lesions. Therefore, although visual field defects may occur in relative isolation with parietal lobe lesions, lesions in this location more often betray themselves by other signs of neurologic dysfunction. Parietal lobe lesions may be associated with contralateral somatosensory impairment, including impaired object recognition, impaired position sense, impaired touch and pain sensation, and tactile extinction. Dominant parietal lesions may cause apraxia, finger agnosia, acalculia, right–left disorientation, alexia, and aphasic disturbances, whereas nondominant lesions may be associated with anosognosia (denial of neurologic impairment), autotopagnosia (failure to recognize hemiplegic limbs as belonging to self), spatial disorientation, hemispatial neglect, constructional apraxia (abnormal drawing and copying), and dressing apraxia [113].

Homonymous quadrantic visual field defects may occur with unilateral occipital lesions [74]. Often, these field defects have a sharp horizontal edge that would be difficult to develop with tumors or missile injuries because it is unlikely that they would injure only one bank of the calcarine fissure and leave the fellow calcarine bank untouched. Therefore, Horton and Hoyt [74] suggest that a lesion of the extrastriate cortex (areas V2 and V3) would more likely explain the sharp horizontal edge of the defect because areas V2 and V3 are divided along the horizontal meridian into separate halves flanking the striate (V1) cortex and, consequently, the upper and lower quadrants in the extrastriate cortex are physically isolated on opposite sides of the striate cortex. Although a lesion in this location (e.g., tumor) may have irregular margins, if it crosses the representation of the horizontal meridian in the extrastriate cortex, it produces a quadrantic visual field defect with a sharp horizontal border because of the split layout of the upper and lower quadrants of V2 and V3 [74]. A congruous inferior quadrantanopia with borders aligned on both the vertical and horizontal meridians has, however, also been described with a lesion of the superior fibers of the optic radiations near the contralateral trigone, where the fascicles of visual axons become compact as they approach the calcarine cortex [14]. Therefore, a homonymous quadrantanopia respecting the horizontal meridian is not a “pathognomonic” sign of extrastriate cortical disease but may occur with striate lesions [126]. A congruous inferior quadrantanopia with borders aligned on both the vertical and horizontal meridians has also been described with a lesion of the superior fibers of the optic radiations near the contralateral trigone where the fascicles of visual axons become compact as they approach the calcarine cortex [15].

Medial occipital lesions [75,158] cause highly congruous homonymous hemianopias (Fig. 7.11). When both the upper and the lower calcarine cortices are affected, a complete homonymous hemianopia, usually with macular sparing, develops. Sparing of the central 5 degrees of vision (macular sparing) is common with occipital lesions, probably due to a combination of a large macular representation and dual blood supply [128]. The central 10 to 15 degrees of vision fill most of the total surface area of the occipital cortex (as much as 50%–60%) [52,75,126,202]. Occipital infarcts in the distribution of the posterior cerebral artery are a common cause of such field defects and are most commonly due to emboli to the basilar apex (e.g., from a cardiac source, or vertebrobasilar atherosclerotic occlusive disease) [158].

Patients with purely occipital lesions are partially or fully aware of the hemianopia, whereas patients with larger or more anterior lesions, affecting parietal regions or associative pathways to the primary or secondary visual association cortex, may be unaware of their deficit [99]. Celesia et al., however, studied prospectively 32 consecutive patients with homonymous field defects due to ischemic infarcts and found hemianopic anosognosia, defined as the unawareness of visual loss in the homonymous hemifield (or hemi-quadrant), in 20 patients (62%) [24]. Hemianopic anosognosia occurred predominantly in right-sided lesions (16/26 patients or 62%), but was also present in four of six patients (or 67%) with left-sided lesions. Hemianopic anosognosia was associated with somatic anosognosia in nine patients and hemineglect in 17 patients. Eight patients had pure homonymous hemianopia without cognitive, motor, or somatosensory deficits, four of these patients had awareness of the visual defect, and three patients had hemianopic anosognosia. Patients in these two groups had similar anatomic lesions. Patients with phosphenes, photopsias, or visual hallucinations were usually aware of their visual field loss. The authors suggest that hemianopic anosognosia is most often related to failure of the discovery of the deficits, occasionally with severe visual hemineglect, sometimes to generalized cognitive
impaired, or to a combination of these factors. The authors further conclude that (a) there is no specific cortical area for conscious visual perception; (b) visual awareness is processed by a distributed network including multiple visual cortices, parietal and frontal lobes, the pulvinar, and the lateral geniculate bodies (lesions localized at various nodes or centers in the network may produce similar phenomena); and (c) both hemispheres are involved in visual processing and conscious awareness [24].

Lesions of the striate cortex may be classified into anterior, intermediate, and posterior locations [10,75,109,124,126,128]. Anterior lesions lie adjacent to the parieto-occipital fissure and affect the monocular temporal crescent of the contralateral visual field (temporal crescent or half-moon syndrome) [109]. This area constitutes <10% of the total surface area of the striate cortex. Conversely, the temporal crescent may be spared with lesions that destroy the entire calcarine cortex except for the anterior tip [109,114]. Posterior lesions are located in the posterior 50% to 60% of the striate cortex, including the occipital pole and operculum, and affect macular vision (i.e., the central 10 degrees in the contralateral hemifield). Intermediate lesions lie between the anterior and posterior confines and affect from 10 to 60 degrees in the contralateral hemifield (Figs. 7.9 and 7.10) [75,125].

Gray et al. report two patients with unique homonymous hemianopias from occipital lesions [51]. One patient had vertical meridian sparing and the other displayed horizontal meridian sparing. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) correlation with the defects confirmed that the vertical homanopic meridian is represented along the border of the calcarine lip and the horizontal meridian lies at the base of the calcarine banks deep within the calcarine fissure. Galetta and Grossman reported two patients further demonstrating that the horizontal meridian is represented at the calcarine fissure base in the primary visual cortex [44].

The most common cause of unilateral occipital disease is infarction in the distribution of the posterior cerebral artery [6,7,10,43,46,124,158,172]. Other etiologies include venous infarction, hemorrhage, arteriovenous malformation and fistulas, tumor, abscess, and trauma [5,104,117,129,130,189].

The clinical-anatomic correlations of homonymous hemianopia (HH) was studied in 904 cases [205]. HH were found in 852 patients. A total of 340 HH (37.6%) were complete and 564 HH (62.4%) were incomplete. Homonymous quadrantanopia (264 HH, 29%) was the most common type of incomplete HH, followed by homonymous scotomatosus defects (116 HH, 13.5%), partial HH (114 HH, 13%), and HH with macular sparing (66 HH, 7%). A total of 407 HH (45.0%) were isolated. Causes of HH included stroke (629 HH, 69.6%), trauma (123, 13.6%), tumor (102, 11.3%), brain surgery (22, 2.4%), demyelination (13, 1.4%), other rare causes (13, 1.4%), and unknown etiology (2, 0.2%). The lesions were most commonly located in the occipital lobes (45%) and the optic radiations (32.2%) [205]. The same authors noted that in patients with HH due to stroke, 84.4% were from infarction and 15.6% from primary intraparenchymal hemorrhage [206]. Spontaneous improvement of homonymous hemianopia is seen in at least 50% of patients first seen within 1 month of injury [204]. In most cases, the improvement occurs within the first 3 months from injury. Spontaneous improvement after 6 months postinjury should be interpreted with caution as it is most likely related to improvement of the underlying disease or to improvement in the patient’s ability to perform visual field testing reliably [204].

Kedar et al. evaluated the value of congruency in the localization of brain lesions in patients with homonymous hemianopia (HH) [93]. Five hundred and thirty patients with 548 incomplete HH were included (373 congruent HH and 175 incongruent HH). Stroke caused 75% of congruent HH and 55.8% of incongruent HH; trauma and tumors caused 20.5% of congruent HH and 34.5% of incongruent HH. The lesion locations in congruent HH versus incongruent HH included occipital lobe in 47.9% versus 21.3%, occipital lobe and optic radiations in 8.3% versus 5.6%, optic radiations in 32.4% versus 50.6%, optic tract in 7.2% versus 16.3%, and other locations in 4.2% vs 6.3%. Although there was a trend toward more congruent HH for lesions of the posterior visual pathways, 50% of optic tract lesions and 59% of optic radiation lesions produced congruent HH. The authors concluded that although lesions involving the occipital lobe characteristically produce congruent HH, at least 50% of lesions in other locations also produce congruent HH, especially if these lesions are stroke related. They suggested that the rule of congruency should be used cautiously and may not apply to optic tract lesions [93].

Bilateral occipital lobe lesions may occur from a single or from consecutive events and may cause bilateral homonymous scotomas, usually with some macular sparing (“ring” scotomas), that respect the vertical midline [69,128]. In some cases there may be “keyhole” fields with bilateral complete homonymous hemianopias except for macular sparing. Careful testing in these cases reveals that the macular sparing respects the vertical midline. Bilateral lesions affecting the superior or inferior calcarine cortices may produce bilateral altitudinal defects that may mimic the visual field abnormalities seen with bilateral optic nerve or retinal disease [62,106,138,147].
Bilateral homonymous hemianopia (double hemianopia) may occur from a single or from consecutive events and may result in cortical blindness. Cortical blindness is most often due to simultaneous or successive posterior cerebral artery occlusion. There are many etiologies of cerebral and cortical blindness, including hypoxia, infarction, hemorrhage, eclampsia, preeclampsia, hypertensive encephalopathy, tentorial herniation from cerebral mass, tumor, arteriovenous malformation, infection (e.g., progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy, Creutzfeldt–Jacob disease, subacute sclerosing panencephalitis, human immunodeficiency virus encephalitis, syphilis, encephalitis, abscess), inflammation (e.g., sarcoidosis), demyelinating disease, trauma, migraine, metabolic disorders (e.g., adrenoleukodystrophy, hypoglycemia, porphyria, mitochondrial encephalopathies), toxins (e.g., lead, mercury, ethanol, carbon monoxide), scorpion sting, alcoholic ketoacidosis, medications (e.g., cyclosporine, tacrolimus, interleukin-2), reversible posterior leukoencephalopathy syndrome (RPLES) (e.g., due to thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, bilateral carotid artery dissection, hypertension, preeclampsia, drugs), pre-eclampsia, radiation encephalopathy, Alzheimer’s disease, postictal after seizures, and complications of cerebral angiography [3,92]. These patients may be left with a small central field around the point of fixation (macular sparing or keyhole vision) or may have complete blindness. Occasionally, patients with cortical blindness deny their visual defect (Anton’s syndrome).

OTHER CHANGES IN VISUAL PERCEPTION

Patients with lesions in the anterior optic pathways usually complain of difficulty in reading and the dimming of vision. Altitudinal field defects are often described as a curtain coming down or the sensation of looking over the horizon. Vertical hemianopic defects are often detected when the patient finds himself colliding with objects in the blind field or is unable to see half of the page or the keyboard. Other, less-common subjective complaints also have some localizing value.

Metamorphopsia (objects appearing misshapen), micropsia (objects appearing reduced in size), and macropsia (objects appearing enlarged) may be due to retinal disease, which causes displacement of the receptor cells. Micropsia is probably related to excessive separation of the photoreceptors by edematous fluid (macular edema), whereas retinal macropsia is caused by the retinal photoreceptors being closer together than normal (e.g., from macular scarring). Micropsia may rarely occur with lesions of the optic chiasm. Irregular distortion (irregular metamorphopsia) results when the photoreceptors are no longer evenly spaced (e.g., scarring of the retina or retinal traction). Distorted perception of the shape and size of objects can also occur with occipital or temporal lobe disease. In this case the misperception is often transient because it is linked to the prodroma of migraine or to focal seizures. Hemimicropsia is a rare disorder of visual perception characterized by an apparent reduction of the size of objects when presented in one hemifield [30]. Hemimicropsia may result from contralateral focal lesions affecting the unimodal visual association cortex in areas 18 and 19 and the underlying white matter [30].

ON may cause movement phosphenes (a sensation of flashes of light when moving the eyes in the dark) [33]. This phenomenon may originate within the optic nerve and represent the visual equivalent of Lhermitte’s sign [33] (see Chapter 5) with the increased mechanosensitivity of the area of demyelination resulting in “spontaneous” impulse generation. Persistent photophobia may occasionally be a symptom of compressive lesions of the chiasm [91].

Albinism, cone degeneration, achromatopsia, and corneal, lenticular, and vitreous opacities may cause a painful intolerance of the eyes to bright light, called dazzle [59]. Central dazzle may occur with lesions of the optic nerves, chiasm, thalamus, occipitotemporal region, or brainstem [31,35,169]. Central dazzle has even been described with trigeminal sensory neuropathy secondary to a lesion in the trigeminal nucleus [59].

Patients with chiasmatic lesions and bitemporal hemianopia may lose central vision when their eyes converge, because convergence makes the bitemporal defects overlap. This deficit stands in the way of activities such as threading a needle or drawing. Chiasmal lesions may also cause image displacement in the absence of damage to the ocular motor nerves. Small motor imbalances, which are easily compensated by binocular fixation when the fields are full, are manifest in the presence of a bitemporal defect by horizontal or vertical deviation of the images from either eye (hemifield slide phenomenon).

Visual hallucinations may be seen with optic nerve and retinal disease. Retinal-associated hallucinations occur in the form of flashes of light referred to as retinal phosphenes (lights without structure) or photopsias (lights with geometric shapes). They are due to stimulation of retinal photoreceptors by diseased states (e.g., inflammation), traction (e.g., retinal detachment), or mechanical events (e.g., trauma). Entoptic ocular phenomena are not hallucinations but are visual sightings of ocular structures. Posterior vitreous detachment is a common condition that results in brief bursts of light flashes, especially with eye movements in the dark, and floaters in the vision. Optic disc
edema from any cause may also cause photopsias or phosphenes by irritation of the surrounding retina by edema. Simple or unformed hallucinations may also occur in patients with ON without significant optic disc edema.

Bilateral posterior brain lesions affecting the lateral tempo-occipital cortex and underlying white matter, especially the upper part of the occipital gyri and adjacent portion of the middle temporal gyri, may cause an unusual and severe disturbance of movement vision [207]. This disorder is characterized by a difficulty in perceiving motion stimuli in general, whereby all moving objects induce very unpleasant and disturbing experiences, especially when moving at higher velocities. The selectivity of the movement vision deficit and the irreversibility of the disorder support the idea that movement vision is a separate function that is subserved by a visual pathway specialized for the processing of visual motion.

**Objective Findings with Lesions of the Optic Pathways**

In addition to neurologic abnormalities, such as ocular motor paresis or hemiparesis, that are due to the involvement of neighboring structures, lesions in the optic pathways may betray their presence by changes in the appearance of the optic nerve or retina or by impairment of the afferent arc of the light reflex.

**OPHTHALMOSCOPIC APPEARANCE OF THE RETINA AND OPTIC NERVE**

Lesions of the retina and optic nerve may produce identical visual field defects and loss of visual acuity. However, retinal lesions are often apparent on ophthalmoscopic examination. Chronically increased intraocular pressure in glaucoma results in cupping of the optic disc. This finding is evident by the time visual acuity decreases or arcuate scotomas appear.

Many optic nerve lesions cause an initial swelling of the optic nerve head, appreciable with the ophthalmoscope, followed in time by optic atrophy. In general, the appearance of the optic nerve (e.g., normal, swollen, or pale) is not specific and cannot differentiate among various possible etiologies for optic neuropathy. Trobe et al. reviewed 165 color fundus photographs of several entities resulting in optic atrophy, including glaucoma, CRAO, ION, ON, hereditary optic neuropathy (Leber’s and non-Leber’s types), compressive optic neuropathy, and traumatic optic neuropathy [186]. These photographs were reviewed by five ophthalmologists as “unknowns.” Glaucoma, CRAO, and ION were correctly identified as the etiology by at least one of the five observers with an accuracy above 80%, but the remaining etiologies were correctly identified in <50% of cases! Helpful features in differentiating the entities included the following:

1. The presence of retinal arteriolar attenuation and sheathing in ischemic lesions (e.g., CRAO or ION)
2. Temporal pallor in entities selectively involving central vision and central visual field with sparing of peripheral visual field (e.g., ON and toxic optic neuropathies)
3. Superior or inferior (sector) optic disc pallor in ION

Although optic disc cupping was often identified in glaucoma, it was also seen in 20% of cases not associated with glaucoma. Optic disc cupping in glaucoma cases, however, was more profound than in nonglaucomatous cases and greater neuroretinal rim pallor occurred in the nonglaucomatous cases. In patients with glaucoma, there is often absence of at least part of the neuroretinal rim and the color of the remaining rim is normal. With nonglaucomatous optic neuropathy, rarely is any area of the rim completely absent and the remaining rim is often pale. Interestingly, only 11% of these cases with a known history of papillitis or ION had sufficient clues to identify previous disc swelling [186]. Another study suggested that optic disc appearance may help differentiate AION from ON although there are overlapping features [192]. Altitudinal disc swelling was more than three times more common in AION than ON, although most discs were diffusely swollen. Most patients with AION had hemorrhages, while most ON cases did not. Almost all discs with ON had normal color or were hyperemic; only 35% of discs with AION had pallid swelling. Pallid swelling was so rare in ON, however, in that of the discs with pallor, 93% had AION. Arterial attenuation was also much more typical of AION. AION was the clinical diagnosis in 82% of cases with altitudinal edema, in 81% of the cases with disc hemorrhage, in 93% of the cases with pallid edema, and in 90% of the cases with arterial attenuation. A pale nerve with hemorrhage, regardless of the type of edema, always represented AION (100%). A normal color nerve without hemorrhage reflected ON in 91% of the cases, increased from only 76% if hemorrhage was not considered. A hyperemic nerve with hemorrhage represented AION in 82% of cases, but if altitudinal edema was also present, AION incidence increased to 93%.

**Papilledema** (optic disc swelling secondary to increased intracranial pressure from any cause) is manifest by disc hyperemia (dilatation of capillaries in the disc surface), disc swelling, loss of venous pulsations, and blurring of the disc margins, followed later by associated retinal hemorrhages and exudates [128]. The presence of venous pulsations synchro-
nous with the arterial pulse is a reliable indicator of intracranial pressure below 180 to 190 mm of water; absent venous pulsations may be found in normal individuals and in patients with increased intracranial pressure [116]. Syndromes causing increased intracranial pressure are outlined in Table 7.4 [104].

The clinical features and clinical stages of papilledema are outlined in Tables 7.5 and 7.6.

Patients with a history of a ventriculoperitoneal shunt for hydrocephalus may develop papilledema and visual loss or signs of a dorsal midbrain syndrome (see Chapter 8) due to shunt failure. Usually computed tomography or MRI reveals recurrence of the hydrocephalus. However, in some individuals shunt malfunction may occur without apparent ventriculomegaly, perhaps due to “stiff ventricles” [89,110,141]. Shunt revision is, therefore, indicated when there are signs or symptoms of increased intracranial pressure, even if ventriculomegaly is absent, to prevent deterioration of visual function and potentially irreversible visual loss.
True disc swelling must be distinguished from pseudopapilledema and anomalously elevated discs caused by optic nerve head drusen [105,118,166]. Pseudopapilledema, with or without optic disc drusen, is not an uncommon condition. Drusen of the disc may be obvious, tiny, or buried. Ophthalmoscopic criteria that distinguish pseudopapilledema from true papilledema include the following [48]:
1. An absent central cup with small disc diameter
2. Vessels arise from the central apex of the disc
3. Anomalous branching of vessels, increased number of disc vessels, venous pulsations present
4. Disc may be transilluminated, with glow of drusen when present
5. Disc margins irregular with derangement of peripapillary retinal pigment epithelium
6. Absence of superficial capillary telangiectasia
7. No hemorrhages (rare exceptions)
8. No exudates or cotton wool spots

Other disc anomalies that may be mistaken for papilledema include “crowded” or hyperopic discs and tilted discs. In these cases, the peripapillary nerve fiber layer and the retinal vessels that traverse it remain normal, venous pulsations are usually present, there is no vascular engorgement or hemorrhages, there are no cotton wool spots, and the discs do not leak dye on fluorescein angiography. Myelinated nerve fibers may occasionally resemble disc swelling but are characterized by a white feathery appearance. Hyaloid traction on the optic disc and epipapillary glial tissue may also occasionally be mistaken for disc swelling.

When a lesion affects both optic nerves successively, optic atrophy may be seen in the eye involved earlier while the other still has disc edema (Foster-Kennedy syndrome). True Foster-Kennedy syndromes are associated with depression or loss of the sense of smell. Foster-Kennedy syndrome due to a basofrontal tumor (e.g., olfactory groove meningioma) may result from direct compression of the optic nerve on the side of the lesion, whereas contralateral papilledema is due to increased intracranial pressure. For example, intracranial meningiomatosis caused a Foster-Kennedy syndrome by unilateral optic nerve compression and blockage of the superior sagittal sinus resulting in increased intracranial pressure [1]. Bilateral direct optic nerve compression is a more common cause of Foster-Kennedy syndrome; however, the syndrome may even occur with longstanding increased intracranial pressure without direct optic nerve compression [194]. Pituitary adenoma may rarely cause the Foster-Kennedy syndrome [102]. Although classically described with frontal lobe tumors on the side of the optic atrophy, a pseudo-Foster-Kennedy syndrome occurs more often with bilateral and sequential ON, AION, arachnoiditis, syphilis, and occult trauma [174]. Lesions in the chiasm, optic tract, or lateral geniculate body may also induce optic atrophy.

Striking optociliary shunt vessels may appear in the region of the disc or at the disc margins in cases of chronic increased pressure in the optic canal or cranial cavity. They represent anastomotic channels between the central retinal vein and the peripapillary choroidal venous system, which are enlarged in an effort to bypass the compressed venous channels of the optic nerve. They are most commonly seen with central retinal vein occlusion or optic nerve sheath meningiomas but also occur with optic nerve glioma, neonatal hydrocephalus, pseudotumor cerebri, drusen of the optic disc, glaucomatous optic atrophy, high myopia, chronic atrophic papillitis, arachnoid cyst of the optic nerve, neurofibromatosis, optic nerve coloboma, and osteosclerosis [122].

Because the nerve fiber layer of the retina is composed of axons of ganglion cells on their way to the lateral geniculate body, any lesion between this nucleus and the eye may cause changes in the ophthalmoscopic appearance of the fiber layer. These changes, better appreciated with red-free light, may have one of four basic patterns: slit or rake defects, sector atrophy, diffuse atrophy, or density changes in the nerve fibers themselves [142]. Because the course of the axons through the anterior optic pathways is known, the retinal distribution of these changes may suggest the location of the process. For instance, chiasmatic lesions affect the fibers nasal to the optic disc and those nasal to the macula (papillomacular bundle; Figs. 7.1 and 7.2). As a result, sector atrophy occurs at both sides of the disc, and the remaining fibers, somewhat thinned out, adopt the shape of a vertically disposed bow tie, with the knot at the optic disc. This pattern is present in both eyes when the lesion is in the chiasm but may appear in only one eye, the one contralateral to the lesion, when the lesion is in the optic tract or geniculate body [173].

**PUPILLARY LIGHT REFLEX**

The fibers that constitute the afferent arc of the pupillary light reflex leave the visual sensory pathway just before the lateral geniculate body, without synapsing in it, to reach the dorsal midbrain. Retinal lesions must be quite large to impair the light reflex, but changes in pupillary responses, particularly the so-called RAPD or Marcus Gunn pupil, are very helpful in detecting asymmetric optic nerve or chiasmatic lesions. This pupillary sign is characterized by a normal bilateral pupillary response when the sound eye is illuminated, but pupillary dilatation occurs when the flashlight is quickly switched to the diseased side [181]. Anisocoria larger than 2 mm in
diameter may induce a small clinically RAPD in the eye with the smaller pupil [108].

Optic tract disease may cause a modest RAPD when the light is directed into the eye contralateral to the lesion [173]. It was thought that the RAPD resulted from the fact there are more crossed than uncrossed fibers (ratio 53:47 of crossed to uncrossed fibers) running in the optic tract. However, in patients with a unilateral optic tract lesion, the pupillary responses from full-field stimulation to each eye are the same as comparing the functioning temporal field with the functioning nasal field [88]. The percentage of decussating fibers is reflected in the ratio of the maximal pupil contraction amplitudes resulting from stimulus input between the two eyes. The RAPD that occurs in this setting reflects the difference in light sensitivity between the intact temporal and nasal hemifields. Its magnitude does not correlate with the difference in the number of crossed and uncrossed axons, but its sidedness contralateral to the side of the optic tract lesion is consistent with the greater percentage of decussating pupillomotor input [88]. RAPD without visual dysfunction may occur with lesions that selectively interrupt the pupillary afferents to the pretectal nucleus (e.g., lesions of the brachium of the superior colliculus) or damage the pretectal nucleus itself [45,90,97,153]. RAPD without visual dysfunction has been described with cerebral infarction, tumors of the pineal region, thalamic tumors, thalamic and midbrain glioma, and brainstem arteriovenous malformations [27,37,40,85,97]. A lesion affecting the brachium of the superior colliculus and the adjacent trochlear nucleus or fascicle (e.g., mesencephalic astrocytoma) may cause a contralateral RAPD without visual impairment and a contralateral superior oblique paresis [36]. Therefore, an RAPD may occur with disease of the macula, retina, optic nerve, optic chiasm, optic tract, brachium of the superior colliculus, or pretectal nucleus [38] (Table 7.7). Macular disease must be substantial and usually easily visualized on funduscopic examination to produce an RAPD. Lateral geniculate body lesions and those in the geniculocortical segment of the optic sensory pathways leave the pupillary light reflex unimpaired. In functional visual loss, there is no RAPD.

Cataracts, even when very dense and pigmented, produce little or no RAPD and, in fact, often increase the pupillomotor effectiveness of light [107,181]. Therefore, an RAPD may occur contralateral to an eye with a unilateral dense cataract, with the RAPD disappearing after cataract extraction [107]. If an RAPD is found in an eye with a cataract, a visual pathway defect should be suspected. An RAPD may occur in an eye with better visual acuity when visual loss is due to abnormality of the ocular media (e.g., corneal opacity, hyphema, anterior segment membrane, cataract, or vitreous opacity), amblyopia, refractive error, age-related macular degeneration, or cystoid macular edema [19]. An RAPD is not proportional to visual acuity loss but may be proportional to visual field loss [86,182].

Optic Neuropathy

The diagnosis of optic neuropathy is usually made on clinical grounds alone. The clinical features of optic neuropathies are summarized in Table 7.8 [111].

Two of the most common causes of acute optic neuropathy are AION and ON. Although there is considerable overlap in their clinical presentation, age can be used as an initial differentiating feature in many cases [161]. In younger patients (<40 years old) with acute unilateral optic disc edema and evidence of optic neuropathy, ON is more likely than AION. Conversely, in the older patient with acute optic disc edema and visual loss, AION is more common.

OPTIC NEURITIS

ON is an inflammatory or autoimmune disease process affecting the optic nerve causing relatively acute impaired vision, progressing over hours or days.

### TABLE 7.7

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Etiologies of a Relative Afferent Pupillary Defect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Optic nerve disease (unilateral, or, if bilateral, asymmetric)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Large amount of retinal disease (usually visible with ophthalmoscope)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Optic tract (contralateral)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Rarely amblyopia or vitreous hemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Contralateral RAPD may occur due to pretectal lesion without visual field loss (e.g., damage to brachium of superior colliculus or pretectal nucleus itself)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Anisocoria + RAPD must = two separate processes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Visual loss from cataracts, corneal disease, or media difficulties does not cause RAPD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

RAPD = relative afferent pupillary defect.

### TABLE 7.8

The Clinical Features of Optic Neuropathy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Decreased visual acuity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Decreased color vision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Visual field defect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ipsilateral relative afferent pupillary defect in unilateral or bilateral, asymmetric cases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Light-near dissociation of the pupils in bilateral and symmetric cases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Optic disc edema or disc atrophy (although the optic nerve may appear normal in retrobulbar optic neuropathy)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Visual function is lowest by 1 week, and the disease process is predominantly unilateral. ON is more common in women (77%) and usually affects patients who are 20 to 50 years of age (mean age, 32 years) [148]. Pain, often induced or exacerbated by eye movement, accompanies visual loss in >90% of patients [148]. The optic disc is normal in approximately two-thirds of patients (retrobulbar ON) and swollen in one-third [148]. Color vision is often affected more than visual acuity [152]. Visual function is especially decreased in the central 20 degrees of the visual field, with various abnormalities noted on perimetry [95]. In most patients, vision improves in the second or third week and is often normal by the fourth or fifth week. However, some patients do not improve to a functional level or at all. The clinical features of typical ON are outlined in Table 7.9.

ON is the presenting feature in 25% of patients with MS and occurs at some stage of the disease in 73%. In a study of 60 New England whites with isolated ON, the risk of clinical MS developing in 15 years was 69% for women and 33% for men [160]. In another study, life-table analysis showed that 39% of patients with isolated ON progress to clinically definite MS by 10 years of follow-up; 49% by 20 years; 54% by 30 years; and 60% by 40 years [162]. This latter study did not note any difference in the risk of developing MS between men and women. In the Optic Neuritis Treatment Trial, a prospective study of 388 patients who did not have probable or definite MS at study entry, the 5-year cumulative probability of developing MS between men and women. In the development of MS, with the 5-year risk of clinically definite MS ranging from 16% in 202 patients with no MRI lesions to 51% in 89 patients with three or more MRI lesions. The Optic Neuritis Study Group further studied 388 patients who experienced acute ON and followed up prospectively for the development of MS [150]. The 10-year risk of MS was 38%. Patients (160) who had one or more typical lesions on the baseline MRI of the brain had a 56% risk; those with no lesions (191) had a 22% risk.

Uhthoff’s symptom (worsening of vision under bright light or with exercise) may occur with ON; its presence may be a prognostic indicator for the early development of MS [175]. Occasionally, a chiasmatic syndrome may occur with ON (chiasmal neuritis) [159].

### NEUROMYELITIS OPTICA (NMO)

Neuromyelitis optica (NMO), which includes Devic’s disease, is a distinct clinical and pathologic entity separate from MS. This entity most commonly presents clinically with acute or subacute loss of vision in one or both eyes caused by optic neuropathy preceded or followed by a transverse or ascending myelopathy. The clinical features of NMO are outlined in Table 7.10.

In NMO, the primary pathologic change is loss of aquaporin 4 water channel protein on astrocytes, occasionally with secondary demyelination [163]. NMO is phenotypically similar to optic-spinal MS (OSMS) described in Asian MS populations; particularly in patients with longitudinally extensive transverse myelitis (LETM) [136].

In 2004, Lennon et al. reported a characteristic immunofluorescence autoantibody staining pattern of CNS tissues with serum from patients with NMO; IgG deposition occurred around microvessels of the pia, subpia, and Virchow–Robin spaces and colocalized with laminin [112]. This autoantibody was named NMO-IgG and was subsequently shown to bind to the predominant CNS water channel aquaporin-4 (AQP4). NMO-IgG positivity (and by inference anti-AQP4 antibody positivity) has now been included as one of the three supportive criteria in the recently revised diagnostic criteria for NMO [200]. Inclusion of NMO-IgG positivity as part of the diagnostic criteria for NMO has resulted in phenotypic spread. For example, involvement of the brain, previously considered an exclusion criterion for the diagnosis of NMO, is now acceptable. Hypothalamic and periventricular brain lesions in the appropriate clinical context appear to be specifically associated with NMO-IgG/anti-AQP4 seropositivity; this particular distribution of lesions corresponds with the distribution of AQP4 expression in the brain and preliminary experiments suggest anti-AQP4 autoantibodies may be pathogenic.

---

**TABLE 7.9** Features of Typical Optic Neuritis

- Acute, usually unilateral loss of vision
- Visual acuity (variable visual loss 20/20 to no light perception)
- Visual field (variable optic nerve visual field defects)
- A relative afferent pupillary defect in unilateral or bilateral but asymmetric cases
- Perineural pain (90%), especially with eye movement
- Normal (65%) or swollen (35%) optic nerve head
- A young adult patient (<40 years) but optic neuritis may occur at any age
- Eventual visual improvement
- Improvement over several weeks in most patients (90%) to normal or near normal visual acuity
  - 88% improve at least one Snellen line by day 15
  - 96% improve at least one line by day 30
- Visual recovery may continue for months (up to 1 year)
- Patients may complain of residual deficits in contrast sensitivity, color vision, stereopsis, light-brightness, visual acuity, or visual field

Clinical Features of Neuromyelitis Optica (NMO)

- Younger age patients
- Men = women
- Racial
  - May be more common form of demyelinating disease in African Americans who develop optic neuritis
  - May be more common in Asians who develop optic neuritis
- Recurrent optic neuromyelitis with endocrinopathies described in eight Atilllean women from Martinique and Guadeloupe
- Rarely familial
- Pathology differs from MS
  - Rarely familial
- Clinical features
  - Paraplegia (transverse myelitis)
  - Loss of vision
  - May have prodrome of fever, sore throat, and headache
  - Loss of vision
  - Visual loss may precede or follow paraplegia
  - Usually bilateral (hours, days, or rarely weeks between eyes)
  - Rapid and usually severe; complete blindness not uncommon
  - Central scotoma most common visual field defect
  - Ocular Coherence Tomography (OCT) with NMO optic neuritis is associated with thinner overall average retinal nerve fiber layer compared to MS
  - May cause recurrent NMO antibody positive optic neuritis without evidence of transverse myelitis
  - Ophthalmoscopy
    - Majority have mild disc swelling of both discs
    - Occasionally severe swelling with dilation of veins and extensive peripapillary exudates
    - May have normal optic discs
    - May have slight narrowing of retinal vessels
  - Visual prognosis
    - Usually some recovery of vision
    - Often recovers within 1 week or occasionally weeks to months
    - In some cases visual loss severe and permanent
    - OCT correlates with visual acuity and field loss
  - Paraplegia (transverse myelitis)
    - Usually sudden and severe
    - Often recover to some degree but may be permanent complete paralysis
    - Spinal cord MRI often shows abnormality extending over three or more vertebral segments
    - May have Lhermitte symptom, paroxysmal tonic spasms, and radicular pain
  - Intractable hiccup and nausea may herald acute exacerbation (may precede or accompany attack of optic neuritis or myelopathy)
  - Longitudinally extensive transverse myelitis (LETM) represents an inaugural or limited form of NMO in a high proportion of patients.
  - Course: monophasic or relapsing
  - Criteria for diagnosis
    - Definite NMO
    - Optic neuritis
    - Acute myelitis
    - At least two of three supporting criteria:
      1. Contiguous MRI spinal cord lesion extending over 3 or more vertebral segments
      2. Brain MRI not meeting diagnostic criteria for multiple sclerosis
      3. NMO-IgG (anti-aquaporin-4 antibodies) seropositive status
    - Rare associations
      - Rarely associated with demyelinating peripheral neuropathy
      - Rarely associated with axial myoclonus
      - Rarely associated with HIV-1 infection, systemic lupus erythematosus, Sjögren's syndrome, antiphospholipid antibody syndrome, and pulmonary tuberculosis
      - Rarely due to gluten sensitivity
      - Intractable hiccup and nausea (corticosteroid responsive) may occur associated with linear medullary lesion
      - Rarely acute illness with multifocal brainstem, cerebellar, and cerebral white matter necrosis
      - May be associated impaired cognitive performance
      - May occur following thymectomy for myasthenia gravis
      - May cause Parinaud syndrome
      - May cause one-and-a-half syndrome
      - May cause posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome (PRES)
      - May be associated with involuntary weight loss, spontaneous vomiting and behavioral change with imaging confirmed hypothalamic and brainstem involvement
      - May be associated with symptomatic narcolepsy
    - Laboratory studies
      - Serum autoantibody marker—neuromyelitis optica-IgG (NMO IgG) (shown to selectively bind to aquaporin-4 (AQP4) water channel, a component of the dystroglycan protein complex located in astrocyte foot processes at the blood brain barrier) indirect immunofluorescence assay—91% sensitivity; 91% specificity; in other study, >60% sensitivity and >99% specificity
      - NMO-IgG may be detected in the CSF when negative in the serum
      - NMO patients/serum IgG has a selective pathologic effect on cell membranes expressing aquaporin-4. IgG targeting astrocytic processes around nodes of Ranvier could initiate demyelination
      - Similar frequency of NMO-IgG in both childhood and adult NMO cases
      - NMO IgG antibodies also found in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) or Sjögren's
Other clinical phenotypes associated with NMO-IgG or anti-AQP4 positivity, but not fulfilling diagnostic criteria for NMO, include bilateral or recurrent ON, chronic relapsing inflammatory optic neuropathy (CRION), relapsing longitudinally extensive transverse myelitis (LETM), and acute brainstem and hypothalamic syndromes associated with abnormal imaging. It has also emerged that NMO-IgG/anti-AQP4 seropositivity may be associated with other systemic autoimmune diseases, most notably Sjögren syndrome, systemic lupus erythematosus, and myasthenia gravis.

Papais-Alvarenga described the clinical characteristics, course, and prognosis of ON in recurrent neuromyelitis optica [154]. ON was the initial feature in 53.3% of patients, most with unilateral disease. Recurrent ON before myelitis occurred in 18.3%. The visual impairment was severe (less than or equal to 20/200) at nadir of the visual index event in 78.3%, with a high remission rate. In the median disease duration of 8 years (range, 0.5–30 years), 380 relapses (118 ON, 223 myelitis, 39 ON and myelitis) occurred. At the last follow-up, 53.3% of patients had bilateral visual impairment and 63.3% were blind in at least 1 eye. A high mortality rate (23.3%) was due to cervical myelitis. Mortality rates were significantly higher among Afro Brazilian patients (58.3%) [154].

NMO is a relapsing disease. In the Mayo Clinic series of 96 cases of NMO, followed for a median of 7 years, the course was relapsing in 87% and monophasic in 13% of cases [201]. Secondary progression was only observed in 2 of the 96 patients. Unlike the situation in MS, most of the disability that accrues in patients with NMO is the result of a failure to recover from the initial attack or subsequent relapses: preventing relapses is therefore an important aim [201].

Matiello et al. report that after a median follow-up of 8.4 years, 6 of 12 patients (50%) presenting with recurrent ON, who tested positive for NMO-IgG, went on to have an episode of myelitis and fulfill diagnostic criteria for NMO, versus only 1 of 15 seronegative patients (7%); the seropositive patients had a poorer visual outcome versus the seronegative patients. NMO-IgG seropositivity at the initial presentation of LETM predicts relapse of myelitis or development of ON [123]. Twenty-three patients presenting with a first attack of LETM spanning three or more vertebral segments on MRI were followed up for 1 year: none of the 14 who were NMO-IgG seronegative developed recurrent myelitis or ON, vs 5 of 9 NMO-IgG seropositive patients [196].

**ANTERIOR ISCHEMIC OPTIC NEUROPATHY**

AION is the most frequent cause of optic disc swelling in adults older than 50 and usually affects individuals in the sixth to eighth decades [13,81]. It is due to the occlusion of the posterior ciliary artery, which may be due to athero-occlusion (nonarteritic AION) or temporal (giant cell) arteritis (arteritic AION). AION may also occur with collagen vascular diseases, the antiphospholipid antibody syndrome, diabetes, migraine, and with acute blood loss, surgery, or after cataract extraction [111]. With AION there is an acute or subacute, usually painless loss of vision with a sudden visual field defect, usually an altitudinal (especially inferior) defect [13,81]. A small cup to disc ratio (“disc at risk”) in the fellow eye is a predisposing factor to nonarteritic AION [21]. The optic disc is swollen and often pale, usually with small peripapillary flame-shaped hemorrhages. In contrast to ON, visual loss is usually permanent with subsequent optic atrophy, although 32.6% of patients improve somewhat over a 6-month period [81]. The clinical features of typical nonarteritic AION are outlined in Table 7.11. Arteritic AION differs from nonarteritic AION by affecting older patients, by its association (in 10% of patients) with premonitory transient visual symptoms (amaurosis fugax), by its causing more profound visual loss, by its association with other symptoms (headache, jaw claudication, and polymyalgia rheumatica), by its association with an elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate or C-reactive protein, and by evidence that steroid treatment prevents visual loss in the fellow eye [13,65–67,111]. ION presenting without disc swelling (posterior ION) is uncommon but its occurrence should always raise a concern for giant cell arteritis as the etiology.
to secondary intra-orbital venous congestion and “false localizing” proptosis [2]. Intermittent proptosis may occur with venous angioma within the orbit and develops when the patient strains, cries, bends the head forward, hyperextends the neck, coughs, or blows the nose against a closed nostril and when the jugular vein is compressed. During these episodes, the eye may become tense and painful, the pupil may enlarge, and occasional bradycardia or syncope may develop (oculocardiac syndrome). Pulsation of the globe may occur with congenital sphenoid dysplasia, with orbital cranial encephalocele with neurofibromatosis, from orbital arteriovenous malformations or venous varices, due to tricuspid regurgitation, with arterial pulsation of the orbital vein, due to arteriovenous fistula, or from transmission of pulsations of intracranial pressure through surgical or traumatic defects in the orbital wall [48].

Exophthalmos is most often caused by orbital Graves’ disease. Causes of pseudoxophthalmos include an enlarged globe (e.g., due to myopia, buphthalmos, or congenital cystic eye), eyelid or palpebral fissure asymmetry (e.g., due to lid retraction, ptosis, seventh nerve palsy, or postsurgical effect), extracocular muscle abnormality (weakness or paralysis), shallow or asymmetric bony orbits, or contralateral enophthalmos (e.g., metastatic breast cancer, orbital floor fracture, or congenital bone defect) [143].

Rather than causing proptosis, scirrhous carcinoma of the breast or carcinoma of the lung, gastrointestinal tract, or prostate metastatic to the orbit may cause progressive fibrotic change and enophthalmos [49, 50, 183]. This enophthalmos may be caused by posterior traction and tethering on the eyeball or by the tumor mass destroying the orbital wall resulting in “biologic orbital decompression.” Other causes of enophthalmos include senile orbital fat atrophy, traumatic orbital floor fracture, traumatic orbital fat atrophy, facial hemiatrophy (Parry-Romberg disease), facial osteomyelitis, and orbital fat necrosis [48, 61]. Pulsating enophthalmos in patients with type 1 neurofibromatosis may occur due to sphenoid wing dysplasia [167]. Spontaneous enophthalmos and ptosis of the globe (hypoglobus), unassociated with orbital trauma, may be associated with ipsilateral chronic maxillary sinusitis or hypoplasia (the “silent sinus syndrome”) [179, 199]. The apparent dissolution and resorption of the orbital floor causes the loss of inferior support and orbital expansion. Enophthalmos and hypoglobus unassociated with prior trauma, surgery, or other symptoms have been called the silent sinus syndrome, which is ipsilateral maxillary sinus hypoplasia and orbital floor resorption [179].
# TABLE 7.12 Signs and Symptoms in Visual Pathway Lesions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Visual Perception</th>
<th>Objective Evaluation</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Retina</strong></td>
<td>Normal, if macula is spared; decreased, if macula is affected</td>
<td>Corresponds to retinal damage; central, cecocentral, or arcuate defects sectorial ring with nasal step, altitudinal defects</td>
<td>Micropia, metamorphopsia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Optic nerve</strong></td>
<td>Decreased</td>
<td>Red most affected</td>
<td>Gaze-evoked amaurosis or phosphenes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Optic chiasm</strong></td>
<td>Decreased in both eyes when the medial part of the chiasm is affected; decreased in the eye ipsilateral to a lateral chiasmatic lesion</td>
<td>Red most affected</td>
<td>Impaired central vision on convergence; hemifield slide phenomenon with pseudodiplopia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Optic tract</strong></td>
<td>Normal with unilateral lesions</td>
<td>Red most affected in areas of visual field loss</td>
<td>Contralateral homonymous hemianopia; incongruous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lateral geniculate body</strong></td>
<td>Normal with unilateral lesions</td>
<td>Red most affected in areas of visual field loss</td>
<td>Contralateral homonymous hemianopia; may be incongruous; quadruple sectoranopia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual Perception</th>
<th>Objective Evaluation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Visual Acuity; Contrast Sensitivity</strong></td>
<td><strong>Color Perception</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optic radiations</td>
<td>Normal with unilateral lesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcarine cortex</td>
<td>Normal with unilateral lesions; with impaired lesions affecting both occipital poles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. Swelling of the eyelids and chemosis are seen.
6. Gaze-evoked amaurosis. This refers to loss of vision whenever the eye is placed in an eccentric position of gaze and has been noted most often with cavernous hemangiomas and optic nerve sheath meningiomas [16,15]. Gaze-evoked amaurosis has also been described with orbital osteoma, glioma, medial rectus granular cell myoblastoma, varix, pseudotumor cerebri, orbital trauma, and metastatic orbital tumor [100]. This phenomenon is thought to be due to decreased blood flow to the retina or optic nerve with eye movement (e.g., the mass compresses the central retinal artery) [98]. Although most often due to intrinsic orbital disease, gaze-evoked monocular obscurations in lateral and upward gaze have also been described with pseudotumor cerebri [146,155] and gaze-evoked transient visual loss on upward gaze has been noted with an intracranial internal carotid artery aneurysm [177].

7. Facial pain and paresthesias. Several branches of the trigeminal nerve may be affected by orbital disease, especially those of the ophthalmic division, which has a large number of branches passing through the orbit [165]. The extent of cutaneous sensory loss is indicative of the position of the orbital disease, with the lacrimal, supraorbital, or supratrochlear nerves being affected by disease along the orbital roof and the zygomatic and infraorbital nerves being affected by diseases along the orbital floor. Disease at the orbital apex or the superior orbital fissure may cause hypesthesia affecting several or even all of the periorbital dermatomes. In contrast with cutaneous sensory loss, however, corneal hypesthesia appears unrelated to the position of disease within the orbit [165]. If the tumor erodes through the floor of the orbit, it may damage the maxillary division of cranial nerve V (the trigeminal nerve), resulting in ipsilateral maxillary pain, anesthesis, or both, over the distribution of the maxillary branch of the trigeminal nerve. Orbital pain is common with orbital lesions, especially with orbital malignancy or inflammatory disease.

Goldberg et al. [49,50] described the manifestation of orbital metastatic tumors into five syndromes: (a) infiltrative—characterized by prominent restriction of motility, a firm orbit, ptosis, and often enophthalmos; (b) mass—characterized by proptosis, displacement of the globe, and often a palpable orbital mass; (c) inflammatory—characterized by pain, chemosis, erythema, and periorbital swelling; (d) functional—characterized by cranial nerve findings (e.g., problems with ocular motility) disproportionate with the degree of orbital involvement; and (e) silent—orbital metastatic lesions detected by computerized tomography or MRI but asymptomatic. Infiltrative and mass lesions were by far the most common manifestations. Direct metastases to the orbital muscles may occur, especially with carcinoma of the breast and malignant melanoma [22].

This chapter has dealt with the signs and symptoms that are most helpful in localizing a lesion in the optic pathways. These signs are summarized in Table 7.12, which also lists the most likely findings with lesions in each portion of the visual system.

References

11. Biousse V, Newman NJ, Carroll C, et al. Visual field deficits and prognosis after therapeutic intervention of interhemispheric tumor and metastasis: evidence of lateral geniculate body lesion on computerized tomography or MRI but asympto-


81. Ischemic Optic Neuropathy Decompression Trial Research Group (IONDT). Optic nerve decompression for nonarteritic anterior ischemic optic neuropathy (AION) is not effective and may be harmful. JAMA 1995;273:625–632.
Localization in Clinical Neurology


Visual Pathways


cases with comments on differentiation from migraine. Arch Ophthalmol 1975;93:250–256.
Abnormalities of ocular motility serve as valuable signposts for the localization of lesions of the cerebral hemispheres, brainstem, cranial nerves, and even striated muscle. Ocular symptoms and signs are particularly helpful when examining the patient in coma (see Chapter 22).

In this chapter, the term ocular motor refers to cranial nerves III (oculomotor), IV (trochlear), and VI (abducens), collectively, whereas the word oculomotor designates specifically cranial nerve III. This follows the convention adopted by Leigh and Zee [565] in their excellent review of ocular motility.

We first review the anatomy and localization of lesions of the ocular motor nuclei and nerves and then the control systems that the brain uses to produce precise, smooth, quick, stable, and binocular eye movements. Disturbances of these “supranuclear” mechanisms, nystagmus, and eyelid disturbances are then discussed.

Ocular Motor Muscles and Nerves

Orbital Muscles

Each eye globe is moved by six muscles: four recti (superior, inferior, medial, and lateral) and two oblique (superior and inferior). The horizontal recti arise from the annulus of Zinn and course along the medial and lateral orbital walls. The action of the medial (eye-in) and lateral (eye-out) recti requires no further comment. The superior rectus muscle originates from the annulus of Zinn, courses anteriorly upward over the eyeball, and laterally, forming an angle of 23 degrees with the visual axis of the eye. This muscle elevates the eye (displaces the cornea upward) when the eye is deviated outward (abducted) (Fig. 8.1). Likewise, the inferior rectus arises from the annulus, courses anteriorly downward over the eyeball, and laterally, forming an angle of 23 degrees with the visual axis, and primarily depresses the eye most efficiently when the globe is abducted. By contrast, when the eye is adducted (turned inward), the superior rectus intorts it (moves it counterclockwise in the case of the left eye), and the inferior rectus extorts it (moves the left eye clockwise). The superior oblique muscle arises from the annulus of Zinn and passes anteriorly and upward along the superomedial wall of the orbit, becoming tendinous before passing through the trochlea located on the nasal side of the superior orbital rim. The tendon is then reflected inferiorly, posteriorly, and laterally, forming an angle of 51 degrees with the visual axis. It passes inferior to the superior rectus and inserts in the posterolateral quadrant of the eyeball. The inferior oblique muscle originates from the peristeam of the maxillary bone, just posterior to the orbital rim, and passes inferiorty, superiorly, and posteriorly coursing underneath to the inferior rectus muscle and under the lateral rectus (at an angle of 51 degrees with the visual axis) to insert in the posterolateral portion of the globe. The oblique muscles have a similar but complementary action in moving the eyes in the vertical plane. They move the eyeball in a vertical plane when the eye is adducted and act as rotators when it is abducted.

Unlike the recti, however, the oblique muscles function as would be expected from the location of their insertional points in the anterior part of the orbit and in the posterior part of the globe. The superior oblique depresses the eye or twists it inwardly (counterclockwise by examiner’s view in the case of the left eye) and the inferior oblique elevates the eye or extorts it when abducted (moves the left eye clockwise by examiner’s view).

Two muscles, both in the upper eyelid, act together to widen the palpebral fissure. Müller’s muscle receives sympathetic innervation and is responsible for the wide stare that accompanies states of enhanced alertness. However, the levator of the lid, innervated by cranial nerve III, plays the greater role in eyelid opening. Eye closure (orbicularis oculi) is effected through cranial nerve VII.

Diplopia

The commonest subjective complaint elicited by lesions in the ocular motor system is diplopia [140,141]. This disorder occurs more frequently with lesions of the extraocular muscles or ocular motor nerves than with supranuclear brainstem lesions, which often result in gaze palsies. Diplopia results from lack of visual fusion. The perceived object is projected to noncorresponding points of the retina.
and is therefore seen as two objects. Often, particularly when the defect is mild, the patient sees a blurry, rather than a double, image.

Diplopia that is present monocularly remains present despite covering the fellow eye and then disappears when the involved eye is occluded. It may occur unilaterally or bilaterally. The second image is often described as a less clear and partially superimposed "ghost image" or a "halo" on the first image. A pinhole may dramatically reduce the patient’s symptoms. Monocular diplopia usually implies a problem within the eye itself and may respond to refraction, artificial tear trial, or contact lens trial. Etiologies of monocular diplopia include corneal and lenticular astigmatism and opacities, a foreign body in the aqueous or vitreous media, retinal disease, ocular surgery, strabismus, or psychiatric disease and are listed in Table 8.1.

Another form of monocular diplopia is cerebral polyopia [254,413,460,615,850]. Cerebral polyopia usually can be distinguished from monocular diplopia due to ocular disease because all of the images are seen with equal clarity, the multiple images do not resolve with a pinhole, and the images are unchanged in appearance whether the patient is viewing binocularly or monocularly. Some patients see only two images, while others may see many or even hundreds of images occurring in a grid-like pattern ("entomopia" or "insect eye") [586]. Some patients experience the polyopia only in certain positions of gaze. Patients with cerebral polyopia often have associated signs of occipital or parietooccipital region damage, such as homonymous visual field defects, difficulty with visually guided reaching, cerebral achromatopsia or dyschromatopsia, objectagnosia, and abnormal visual afterimages. The multiple images often appear in the field opposite the lesion. Cerebral infarction is the most common etiology, although cerebral polyopia may also occur with tumors, multiple sclerosis, encephalitis, seizures, and migraine [460].

Diplopia can sometimes occur without extraocular muscle abnormality. For example, the hemifield slide or slip phenomena is a rare cause of intermittent binocular diplopia noted in some patients with lesions of the optic chiasm [513]. This phenomenon occurs with complete or nearly complete bitemporal hemianopic visual field defects (see Chapter 7) with disruption of ocular fusion and decompensation of a previous phoria. The underlying pathophysiology is loss of binocularity due to lack of cortical representation of corresponding points in the visual field from each eye (i.e., transection of the chiasm creates two independent, free-floating hemifields, with each eye projecting only to the ipsilateral visual cortex). Patients complain of intermittent diplopia and difficulty with near work (e.g., threading a needle or

---

**Fig. 8.1.** Superior view of the right orbit. A. On abduction, the superior rectus acts as an elevator, and the superior oblique intorts the eye (brings the upper pole toward the nose). B. In adduction, the superior oblique acts as a depressor, and the superior rectus intorts the eye. In (B), the superior rectus has been removed to show the position of the superior oblique.

---

**Table 8.1** Ocular Causes of Monocular Diplopia

- Refractive error including astigmatism
- Poorly fitting contact lens
- Corneal abnormalities
  - Keratoconus
  - Corneal surface abnormality
  - Tear film disorders including dry eye
- Refractive surgery
- Lid abnormalities (e.g., chalazion, lid position abnormalities)
- Iris abnormalities (e.g., iridotomy/iridectomy, miotic pupils)
- Lens abnormalities
  - Cataract
  - Subluxation or dislocation
  - Intraocular lens (e.g., positioning holes, decentered lens)
- Retinal abnormalities (e.g., epiretinal membrane, scar)
sitting). On examination, no ocular motor palsy is noted despite the patients’ complaints of diplopia. If the eyes intermittently converge (esotropia), a blank space is produced between the vertical meridians as the eyes “slip” inwards and the remaining hemifields drift apart horizontally. Ocular divergence (exotropia) causes overlapping of the vertical meridians resulting in superimposition of images from noncorresponding retinal areas. Hemifield slide diplopia may also occur from altitudinal visual field defects [120].

**Testing for Diplopia**

Before diplopia testing is undertaken, it is important to ascertain visual acuity in both eyes and to inspect them for lens or retinal displacements. A forced duction test may be done to determine whether the restriction of eye movement is due to muscle weakness or to mechanical restriction in the movement of the globe. A positive forced duction test (i.e., restriction of eye movement on attempted forced ductions) may be seen with thyroid eye disease, extraocular muscle fibrosis, muscle entrapment (e.g., blowout orbital fracture), Duane retraction syndrome, Brown’s superior oblique tendon sheath syndrome, carotid-cavernous sinus or dural fistula, and direct orbital infiltration by inflammatory processes or tumors.

Horizontal binocular diplopia is usually due to disease processes affecting the medial and/or lateral rectus muscles, the innervation of these muscles (including oculomotor cranial nerves and neuro-muscular junction), or processes affecting fusion or convergence and divergence mechanisms [141]. By definition, patients with horizontal diplopia complain that the two images are side by side. The separation of images may vary or remain unchanged at far or near fixation. For example, the image separation from a left abducens nerve palsy is typically worse at distance than at near and worse on left gaze. Patients with vertical diplopia complain of seeing two images, one atop or diagonally displaced from the other [140]. If the patient complains of vertical diplopia in primary gaze, often one of the vertically acting extraocular muscles is underacting: the right and/or left inferior rectus, superior rectus, inferior oblique, or superior oblique. Etiologies of horizontal and vertical diplopia are listed in Tables 8.2 and 8.3, respectively.

To identify the muscle or nerve involved, subjective and objective tests should be used. Greater difficulty with near vision suggests impairment of the medial rectus muscle, oculomotor nerve, or convergence system. Abducens weakness results in horizontal diplopia when viewing distant objects. Vertical diplopia becomes worse on near vision when an oblique muscle is weak. Misalignment (deviation) of the visual axis when only one eye is viewing is referred to as a phoria. Misalignment of the visual axis with both eyes viewing is called a tropia. When strabismus (misalignment of the visual axes) exists, it is named by the direction of deviation: if the eyes turn in, esodeviation; if the eyes turn out, exodeviation; if one eye is down, hypodeviation; if one eye is up, hyperdeviation; and if one eye is torted, cyclodeviation. Strabismus may be comitant (the deviation is stable in nonextremes of gaze) or incomitant (the deviation varies in different gaze positions). Eye deviations from childhood strabismus are typically comitant while most of the acquired deviations are incomitant.

A phoria is a latent ocular misalignment that is kept in check by fusion. Fusion is the process of merging images from each eye into a single perception. Sensory fusion is the cortical integration of two images, while motor fusion represents the corrective movements of the eyes required to maintain eye alignment on the target of regard. Breakdown of fusion due to fatigue, stress, illness, etc. may allow a pre-existing phoria to become an intermittent or manifest tropia.

**SUBJECTIVE TESTING**

Although a peripheral nerve or muscle may be so severely affected that the diagnosis of ocular motor paresis can be made by mere inspection of the position of both eye globes in the orbit, often the objective findings are subtle and subjective diplopia testing is helpful. To ascertain which image belongs to which eye, a red glass may be placed in front of one eye, or each eye may be covered and uncovered alternately. Instead of a red glass, a simple instrument, the Maddox rod, can be used to separate the two images even more conclusively [565]. Two rules are then applied: First, image separation is greatest in the direction of the weak muscle. Second, in the position of greatest image separation, the image seen more peripherally corresponds to the eye with poorer motility. Paresis of the lateral or medial recti can be easily diagnosed using these rules. Vertical gaze palsies can also be diagnosed in this manner, taking into account the actions, described above, of the eight muscles that participate in vertical movement and the fact that with vertical deviation, the hypertropic eye registers the higher image. The following steps are often recommended:

1. Determine which eye is higher. If the right eye is higher (right hypertropia), the right depressors or the left elevators are weak.
2. Have the patient look to both sides. If the images now appear farther apart on left lateral gaze (right hypertropia worse on left gaze), either the right superior oblique or the left superior rectus is weak.
3. Have the patient look up and down toward the side where separation was greater. If this maneuver elicits greater separation on downgaze, the right superior oblique is the weak muscle.

These steps can be supplemented with Bielschowsky head-tilt test, which is usually positive with an oblique muscle palsy. Tilting the head toward the side of a weak superior oblique increases the separation of the images, which become single when the head is tilted opposite the side of the weak muscle. Normally a small counter-rolling of the eyes occurs with a head tilt. This counter-rolling is accomplished by contraction of the superior rectus and inferior oblique of one eye and by the inferior rectus and superior oblique of the other eye. When the action of the superior oblique muscle on one side is lacking, tilting toward that side results only in superior rectus contraction, which elevates and intorts the eye due to the induced ocular counter-rolling. Diplopia caused by a right superior oblique palsy is compensated by a leftward tilt of the head. Thus, a vertical muscle palsy must be suspected in patients with a head tilt.

**OBJECTIVE TESTING**

Objective diplopia testing is used when the patient is uncooperative or when there is misalignment of the eyes, suggesting ocular motor weakness, but the patient denies diplopia. This situation occurs more often with long-standing ocular motor weakness or with defects of visual perception. It may rarely occur with subacute lesions, however, when the image of the nonfixating eye is suppressed. In this instance, the patient may give a history of transient diplopia.

A *tropia* is a manifest deviation of the eyes and is diagnosed by the cover–uncover test. The patient fixate on a target and then each eye is covered and
uncovered. The patient is then observed for a shift in the noncovered eye. An absence of shift means there is no tropia (the patient is orthotropic) while a shift of the noncovered eye indicates the presence of a tropia (e.g., if the eye shifts inward, there is an exotropia). The cover–uncover test requires good enough vision to fixate on a target. The degree of deviation may be quantified with prisms with apex of prism aimed opposite to the direction of movement (base-out if esotropia).

If the cover–uncover test is negative, no tropia is present. A phoria is a latent deviation of the eyes kept in check by visual fusion. The alternate cover test breaks down fusional control and a latent deviation may be uncovered. The alternate cover test is performed by having the patient fixate on a target in each

---

**TABLE 8.3**  
**Etiologies of Binocular Vertical Diplopia and Hypertropia/Hyperphoria**

- **Supranuclear causes**
  - Supranuclear monocular elevation paresis (congenital or acquired)
  - Skew deviation
  - Vertical one-and-a-half syndrome
  - Wernicke’s syndrome
  - Parasympathetic superior rectus and levator palpebrae spasm with multiple sclerosis
  - Vitreous hemorrhage

- **Ocular motor nerve dysfunction**
  - Third nerve palsy
  - Fourth nerve palsy
  - Hypertropia (small) accompanying sixth nerve palsy
  - Superior oblique myokymia
  - Ocular neuromyotonia
  - Ophthalmoplegic migraine
  - Wernicke’s syndrome
  - Fisher syndrome
  - Guillain–Barre syndrome
  - Decompensation of a longstanding phoria
  - Increased intracranial pressure

- **Neuromuscular junction disease**
  - Myasthenia gravis
  - Botulism

- **Diseases of eye muscle**
  - Isolated paresis of a vertical-acting extraocular muscle (e.g., due to congenital causes, myasthenia gravis, Graves’ disease, botulism, trauma, postsurgery, trochleitis, orbital metastasis, orbital pseudotumor, muscle ischemia form giant cell arteritis, etc.)
  - Superior oblique muscle
  - Inferior oblique muscle
  - Superior rectus muscle
  - Inferior rectus muscle
  - Decompensation of a longstanding phoria
  - Graves’ disease
  - Acute ophthalmoplegia in the anti-GQ1b antibody syndrome
  - Chronic progressive external ophthalmoplegia (CPEO) syndromes
  - After surgery (e.g., cataract operation)
  - Postcerebral buckle surgery
  - Congenital strabismus syndromes
  - Dissociated vertical deviation (DVD)
  - Congenital “double elevator” palsy (monocular elevation deficiency)
  - Double depressor paralysis (unilateral paralysis of the inferior rectus and superior oblique; may be congenital or acquired)
  - Physiologic hyperdeviation on lateral gaze (asymptomatic)

- **Mechanical processes causing vertical eye misalignment**
  - Graves’ disease
  - Brown’s superior oblique tendon sheath syndrome
  - Congenital
    - Acquired (e.g., superomedial orbital trauma, tenosynovitis or myositis, adhesions, metastasis to the superior oblique muscle, frontal sinus osteoma, ethmoidal sinus mucocele, pansinusitis, ptosis, peribulbar anesthesia, blepharoplasty, maxillofacial or sinus surgery, and superior oblique tuck)
    - Canine tooth syndrome
    - Superior oblique click syndrome (e.g., due to schwannoma or giant cell tumor of sheath of superior oblique tendon)
  - Acquired Brown’s syndrome associated with underaction of the ipsilateral superior oblique muscle (“canine tooth syndrome”)
  - Orbital floor blowout fracture
  - Maxillary sinusitis (silent sinus syndrome)
  - Direct trauma to the extraocular muscles (e.g., intramuscular hematoma)
  - Congenital inferior rectus fibrosis
  - Anomalous orbital structures, such as extraocular muscles inserting into an abnormal location, fibrous bands, and discrete anomalous muscles
  - Strabismus fixus (generalized fibrosis of extraocular muscles)
  - Postoperative sequelae (including retinal detachment surgery, orbital surgery, strabismus surgery, inferior oblique muscle adherence syndrome, and cataract surgery)
  - Orbital inflammation (myositis) and pseudotumor
  - Metastatic infiltration of extraocular muscles
  - Orbital tumors
  - Fallen eye syndrome (longstanding superior oblique muscle paresis in patient who habitually fixate with the paretic eye may develop hypodeviation of the uninvolved eye caused by contracture of the contralateral inferior rectus muscle)
  - Rising eye syndrome (longstanding inferior oblique muscle palsy may result in contracture and fibrosis of the contralateral superior rectus)

- **Miscellaneous**
  - Hemifield slip phenomenon from dense bitemporal hemianopsia or heteronymous altitudinal field defects
  - Foveal displacement syndrome (e.g., due to subretinal or preretinal neovascular membranes)
2. Compare the amount of vertical deviation in right and left gaze. For example, if the right hypertropia increases in left gaze, either the right superior oblique or left superior rectus is underacting.

3. Compare the vertical deviation in right head tilt and left head tilt (Bielschowsky maneuver). For example, if the vertical deviation increases with right head tilt, the right superior oblique must be weak; if the hyperdeviation increases on left head tilt, the left superior rectus is weak.

Ductions (each eye moving separately) and versions (the eyes moving conjugately) must always be assessed. In assessing normal lateral eye excursion, an imaginary vertical line through the lower lacrimal punctum should coincide with a boundary line between the inner third and outer two-thirds of cornea. If more cornea is hidden, adduction is excessive; if more cornea is visible and if some sclera visible, adduction is limited. If abduction is normal, the corneal limbus should touch the outer canthus. If the limbus passes that point and some of cornea is hidden, abduction is excessive; if some of the sclera remains visible, abduction is limited.

Patients with binocular vertical diplopia may adopt a compensatory head, face, or chin position to move their eyes into a gaze angle that achieves binocular single vision. Underaction of the superior or inferior rectus muscles is compensated by chin flexion or extension that seeks to avoid the eye position of maximum image separation. Torsional diplopia is usually caused by underaction of the superior or inferior oblique muscles and may be associated with an angular head tilt. This head tilt is assumed to avoid the vertical and torsional image separation.

Ocular torsion may be measured with the double Maddox rod test that utilizes a red Maddox rod over
the right eye and a white Maddox rod over the left eye in a trial frame. A thin base-down prism may be placed before one eye to separate the horizontal lines induced. The tilt of the retinal image is opposite to the tilt of the horizontal line, as seen by the patient. Therefore, when the line is seen slanted toward the nose, an exyclodeviation is present while if the tilt is toward the temple, an incyclodeviation is present. A simple mnemonic rule is that the line is always tilted in the direction in which the offending muscle would rotate the eye if it were acting alone [972]. For example, a patient with right superior oblique muscle palsy will describe the red line to be lower than the white line and relatively intorted or slanted toward the nose. The Maddox rod is then turned until the two lines are parallel and the magnitude of the cyclotropia can be read off the trial frame. CycloDeviation may also be noted with indirect ophthalmoscopy [972].

**Childhood Strabismus**

These syndromes (Table 8.4) will be briefly discussed as they may be confused with acquired causes of esotropia (ET) and exotropia (XT) [972]. Most childhood esotropias are comitant and present at an early age with "crossed-eyes" or amblyopia. Childhood comitant esotropias may be due to hyperopia or impaired accommodation or convergence. Non-comitant childhood esotropias include A-pattern and V-pattern esodeviations, in which the esodeviation is worse on upward and downward gaze, respectively, retraction syndromes, and mechanical-restrictive esodeviation due to congenital fibrosis of the medial rectus muscle. Some patients with congenital nystagmus are able to decrease the amplitude or frequency of their nystagmus by convergence (nystagmus blockage syndrome) and thus an esotropia develops.

Occasionally, adults with a longstanding, essentially asymptomatic, esophoria may present with diplopia due to “decompensation.” This *decompensation of a longstanding esophoria* may occur after head trauma, with changing refractive needs, after cataract surgery, when the patient receives drugs that depress the central nervous system (e.g., alcohol or sedatives), with systemic illnesses, or for an unclear reason. History and examination often reveal supportive evidence for a long-standing strabismus, including a history of childhood strabismus or patching, the presence of an old head turn, and horizontal comitance. Childhood exotropia is less frequent than childhood ET. The XT may be intermittent or persistent and sometimes adults with exophoria or intermittent XT may present with diplopia due to inability to adequately compensate for the eye misalignment (decompensation of exophoria).

Decompensation of a longstanding phoria may also cause hypertropia and vertical diplopia [158]. Neuro-ophthalmologic history and examination often reveal supportive evidence for a long-standing strabismus including a history of childhood strabismus or patching, the presence of a head tilt or turn (old photos), and large vertical fusional amplitude (6–20 prism diopters). **Vertical fusional amplitudes** are measured by presenting vertically oriented prisms of gradually increasing strength in front of one eye after first neutralizing any manifest tropia. The amount of prism needed to produce diplopia over that needed to neutralize the tropia (if present) represents the fusional amplitude (normal vertical fusional amplitudes are 2 to 4 prism diopters).

Sensory deviations including ET or XT result from reduced visual acuity in one eye. These patients do not complain of diplopia because of the visual loss. Loss of fusion in cases of visual loss allow a pre-existing phoria to become manifest. Sidikaro and von Noorden reported 121 patients with sensory heterotropias and noted that ET and XT occurred with almost equal frequency when the onset of visual impairment occurred at birth or between birth and

### TABLE 8.4

**Classification of Childhood Strabismus Syndromes**

**Esodeviations**
- Comitant esodeviation
  1. Accommodative esotropia
  2. Nonaccommodative esotropia
- Noncomitant esodeviation
  1. Infantile (onset birth to 6 months)
  2. Acquired (includes esotropia with myopia, cyclic esotropia, and some cases of divergence insufficiency)
- Sensory esotropia
  1. Sensory esotropia
  2. Consecutive esotropia (after strabismus surgery)
- Partially accomodative esotropia
- Hypoaccomodative
- Nonrefractive
- Refractive
- Duane syndrome type I and III
- Congenital mechanical-restrictive esodeviations (e.g., congenital fibrosis) and other congenital oculomotility dysinnervation syndromes
- Secondary esodeviation
- A and V-pattern esotropia
- Consecutive exotropia type I and II
- Restrictive-congenital fibrosis
- Secondary
- Sensory exotropia
- Consecutive exotropia (after strabismus surgery)

**Exodeviations**
- Primary
- Duane syndrome type II
- Restrictive-congenital fibrosis
- Secondary
  1. Sensory exotropia
  2. Consecutive exotropia (after strabismus surgery)
Disease of the Ocular Muscles

Disease of isolated extraocular muscles, particularly when it affects the lateral rectus or the superior oblique or causes patterns of weakness that resemble central involvement, may be difficult to differentiate from neurogenic weakness. Processes that limit the range of motion of the globe by shortening or fibrosis of the muscles, such as old trauma or chronic progressive ophthalmoplegia, can be distinguished from neurogenic weakness because the forced duction test, described above, is normal in neurogenic weakness.

A mechanical restriction to free movement of the superior oblique tendon at the pulley may prevent the upward and inward movement of the globe (Brown’s superior oblique tendon sheath syndrome) [972,993]. Episodic vertical diplopia results due to intermittent trapping of the eye on gaze downward and inward or in the field of action of the superior oblique, thus mimicking paresis of the inferior oblique muscle. This prevents the eye from moving upward while adducted, imitating an isolated inferior oblique muscle palsy. The eye may then release suddenly, occasionally associated with the sensation or actual hearing of a click. This syndrome may be due to swelling of the superior oblique tendon behind the pulley and may be congenital or acquired. Acquired etiologies include superomedial orbital trauma, tenosynovitis or myositis, adhesions, metastasis to the superior oblique muscle, peribulbar anesthesia, blepharoplasty, frontal sinus osteoma, ethmoid sinus mucocele, pansinusitis, psoriasis, peribulbar anesthesia, blepharoplasty, implantation of an Ahmed valve glaucoma implant and maxillofacial or sinus surgery [23,60,275,810,911]. In congenital cases, MR imaging may show enlargement of the tendon-trochlea complex with this complex being of irregular shape and of intermediate signal intensity [827].

The superior oblique click syndrome is a form of intermittent acquired Brown’s syndrome with a clinical picture that alternates between a Brown’s-type syndrome and a superior oblique muscle palsy [983]. When the patient attempts to look up there is initially restriction but, sometimes after an audible click, the eye does eventually elevate. The click, often audible to the patient and/or the examiner, may signal the release of the restriction. The click is palpable in the superonasal orbit. Subsequently there may be initial limitation of downgaze. Lesions are located within the sheath of the anterior superior oblique tendon, and include schwannoma and giant cell tumor of the tendon.

Orbital blow-out fractures frequently incarcerate the inferior rectus muscle and its surrounding tissue. Characteristics findings include [60,264]:

- Ecchymosis of the involved eye.
- Diplopia often present in all positions of gaze immediately post trauma. This diplopia may persist in upgaze or downgaze.
- Paresthesia of the infraorbital area due to damage to the infraorbital nerve.
- Enophthalmos, either early or late.
- Entrapment of the inferior rectus, inferior oblique, and/or surrounding tissue. This results in restriction of upward gaze with positive forced duction testing. Inferior rectus paresis, resulting in hypertropia in primary position in the involved eye, may also occur due to direct nerve or muscle trauma.
- Hypotropia in primary position that increases in up gaze.
- Frequent intraocular damage.

Canine tooth syndrome is an ocular motility disorder comprising ipsilateral Brown’s syndrome and superior oblique muscle dysfunction. Ocular motility shows ipsilateral deficit of elevation and depression, maximum in an adducted position. Typically this follows a dog bite (hence the name) that damages the trochlea and superior oblique muscle concurrently. Canine tooth syndrome may also rarely occur with a closed head injury with impact to the occipital bone [785].

Thyroid (Graves’) ophthalmopathy is generally preceded by exophthalmos and orbital edema [80–82]. The myopathy of dysthyroid orbitopathy is attributed to inflammation and fibrosis of the muscles, sparing tendinous insertions. The diplopia is usually due to a “tight” rather than “weak” muscle. The inferior recti are usually most severely affected (causing an esotropia), followed by the medial recti, superior recti, and oblique muscles (the mnemonic “I'M SO glad I do not have thyroid eye disease” is useful in remembering the frequency of muscle involvement with the “I” standing for the inferior rectus, the “M” for the medial rectus, etc.). The lateral rectus is rarely affected; therefore, the presence of an exotopia in a patient with thyroid ophthalmopathy should raise the possibility of concomitant myasthenia gravis. Vertical diplopia caused by asymmetric involvement of the inferior or superior recti muscles is the most common presentation. Diplopia in thyroid ophthalmopathy may be worse in the morning and better as the day progresses [288]. Other components of dysthyroid orbitopathy include orbital congestion, upper lid retraction, lid lag on looking down, proptosis, conjunctival injection, and optic neuropathy due to compression of the optic nerve by enlarged extraocular muscles in the orbital apex.
The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System

### TABLE 8.5

**Typical Features of Graves’ Ophthalmopathy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Eyelid signs</th>
<th>Lid retraction (the most common clinical feature of Graves’ ophthalmopathy)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lid lag in downgaze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Exophthalmos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Enlargement of extraocular muscles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Increased orbital fat volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diplopia/ophthalmoplegia secondary to extraocular muscle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Visual loss due to a compressive optic neuropathy (CON)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Extraocular muscle involvement in the orbital apex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stretching of the optic nerve due to proptosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Severe proptosis and secondary exposure keratopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Signs and symptoms of orbital congestion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Due to proptosis with or without venous outflow obstruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Conjunctival injection and chemosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Eyelid and periorbital edema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tearing, photophobia, and orbital discomfort</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


The clinical manifestations of Graves’ ophthalmopathy are outlined in Table 8.5 [547].

Myasthenia gravis should be considered in any case of ocular motor weakness because it can easily mimic neuromyogenic paresis [981]. Weakness of the extraocular muscles occurs in close to 90% of myasthenics at disease onset, and at least 15% of all myasthenics will manifest only ocular signs. Of the 50–80% of patients with purely ocular symptoms and signs at onset that go on to develop generalized myasthenia gravis, most, but not all, develop generalized symptoms within 2 to 3 years of onset of the disorder [101]. Myasthenia gravis should be a diagnostic consideration in any patient who presents with painless, pupil-sparing, diplopia or ptosis. Any muscle may be selectively impaired, especially the medial rectus, and weakness characteristically increases with sustained effort. There is often asymmetric ptosis that becomes more pronounced on sustained upgaze. “Enhanced ptosis” may also be demonstrated (i.e., a worsening of ptosis on one side when the opposite eyelid is elevated and held in a fixed position) [356], but this sign is not specific for myasthenia because it may rarely be seen with senile ptosis, ocular myopathy, Lambert–Eaton myasthenic syndrome, Fisher syndrome, or even third nerve palsy [159,885]. During refixation from down to the primary position, the upper eyelid may bare the sclera transiently (Cogan’s lid-twitch sign). Also, a “peek sign” may occur: In an attempt to sustain forceful eye closure, the orbicularis oculi may fatigue, resulting in the patient “peeking” through the partially opened palpebral fissure. Myasthenia can mimic pupil sparing third nerve palsies, superior division third nerve palsies, abducens nerve palsies, or trochlear nerve palsies [250,623,705,866,981]. Eye movement abnormalities due to myasthenia may also mimic internuclear ophthalmoplegia [344,428], gaze palsy, one-and-a-half syndrome [224], complete external ophthalmoplegia, or other central lesions [981]. Also, certain intracranial mass lesions (e.g., parasellar tumors and aneurysms or midbrain gliomas) may mimic the weakness and fatigability of the lids and extraocular muscles seen with myasthenia gravis [14,630,637,748]. For example, isolated, intermittent unilateral ptosis was the presenting sign on a patient with a posterior carotid artery aneurysm [936]. Besides myasthenia gravis and dysthyroid orbitopathy, the differential diagnosis of chronic progressive external ophthalmoplegia (CPEO) includes oculopharyngeal dystrophy, Kearns–Sayre syndrome, myotubular myopathy, myotonic dystrophy, Bassen–Kornzweig syndrome (abetalipoproteinemia), Refsum syndrome, and Stephen syndrome (CPEO, peripheral neuropathy, and ataxia) [565].

Some of the earliest and most sensitive signs of extraocular muscle involvement with myasthenia gravis are abnormalities of saccadic eye movements and quick phases of nystagmus (see below). Large saccades may be hypometric and small saccades may be hypermetric. For large saccades, the eye may start off rapidly but slow in mid-flight and slowly reach the desired final eye position. Often a characteristic “quiver” movement occurs consisting of an initial small saccade followed by a rapid drift backward. During prolonged optokinetic nystagmus with a rotating drum, quick phases may become slow. Injection of edrophonium (Tensilon test) often reverses the extraocular muscle weakness in myasthenia gravis and may cause the saccades to become hypermetric. Sometimes with edrophonium injection the patient will be unable to hold steady fixation because of repetitive hypermetric saccades with overshoot of the target in both directions (macrosaccadic oscillations) [520,565].

**Botulism**, like myasthenia gravis, affects the neuromuscular junction and can cause similar eye findings, usually associated with blurred vision secondary to accommodative paresis [849]. Varying degrees of internal and external ophthalmoplegia may occur, sometimes with complete ophthalmoplegia. The *myasthenic (Lambert–Eaton)* syndrome may cause ptosis but seldom causes ophthalmoplegia [699].

Duchenne, Becker, and fascioscapulohumeral muscular dystrophy do not involve the extraocular
muscles in most patients. Myotonic muscular dystrophy patients often demonstrate ptosis and mild defects in ocular motility including slow, hypometric saccades with increased latency and impaired smooth pursuit [565]. Oculopharyngeal muscular dystrophy is an autosomal dominant disorder in which ptosis, limitation and slowing of saccades, weakness of the facial muscles and proximal limb muscles, and dysphagia begin after age 40 years. The ptosis in these patients is usually more prominent than the impaired ocular motility.

The syndrome of chronic progressive ophthalmoplegia (CPEO) is characterized by progressive limitation of eye movements and ptosis, usually without diplopia, and occurs in many disease processes. The pupils are spared but the orbicularis oculi are often involved. Saccades in CPEO are characteristically slow throughout the remaining range of movement, unlike those of myasthenia gravis in which initial saccadic velocity is often normal or increased. This impairment of saccades can often help in the differential of CPEO syndromes from myasthenia gravis.

Kearns–Sayre syndrome is a multisystem disorder characterized by progressive ophthalmoparesis starting in childhood or adolescence associated with atypical retinal pigmentary degeneration and heart block. Some patients have subjective diplopia and many have an exotropia. Pendular nystagmus may occur. Other clinical findings include hearing loss, short stature, cerebellar ataxia, upper motor neuron impairment of saccades can often help in the differential of CPEO syndromes from myasthenia gravis.

Autosomal recessive myopathy with external ophthalmoplegia has been described in inbred Arab families in Israel [588]. Onset is usually in childhood or the early teens with ophthalmoparesis, especially affecting upward gaze, without diplopia. Other findings include slow saccades, convergence impairment, facial and neck muscle weakness, nasal speech, mild proximal limb weakness, scoliosis, and scapular winging.

Occasionally, certain disease processes may cause isolated paresis of an individual extraocular muscle. For example, isolated inferior rectus paresis may develop with trauma, multiple sclerosis, myasthenia, or vascular disease and may also occur on a congenital or idiopathic basis [973]. Adduction impairment has been described as a manifestation of injury to medial rectus muscle after nasal septoplasty and radiofrequency ablation of the inferior turbinate [40]. Injection of Botulinum toxin (Botox) into the lateral canthal region may cause a transient lateral rectus paresis while inferior oblique paresis is an uncommon adverse effect of Botox injection into the lower lid [178]. The mechanism is postulated to be diffusion of the medication to the underlying involved muscle.

Orbital pseudotumor (idiopathic orbital inflammation) is a clinicopathologic entity with the following diagnostic criteria: (a) a unilateral orbital mass lesion, clinically presenting with signs of mass effect, inflammation, and/or infiltration; (b) neuroimaging showing a focal or diffuse inflammatory lesion; (c) histopathology demonstrating a fibro-inflammatory lesion; and (d) investigations eliminating identifiable local or systemic causes [11,533,634,635]. When the inflammatory process is confined to one or multiple extraocular muscles, the process is referred to as orbital myositis, although some authors feel that orbital pseudotumor and orbital myositis may be distinct clinicotherapeutic entities [634,635]. Patients present with acute or subacute orbital pain and diplopia. Findings include conjunctival chemosis and injection, ptosis, and proptosis. The process may be unilateral or bilateral. The illness is often monophasic but recurrent episodes may occur.

Various inflammatory, infectious, and neoplastic processes may present clinically as orbital pseudotumor or myositis. The differential diagnosis of orbital pseudotumor is outlined in Table 8.6. Orbital pseudotumor/myositis may be difficult to differentiate from thyroid orbitopathy. The clinical differential of these two entities is outlined in Table 8.7.

Fraunfelder and Richards have reported the association between 3-hydroxy-3-methyl-glutaryl-CoA (HMG-CoA) reductase inhibitors (statins) and diplopia, blepharoptosis (ptosis), and ophthalmoplegia [306]. Two hundred fifty-six case reports of ptosis, diplopia, and ophthalmoplegia associated with statins were reported. A total of 23 case reports described total ophthalmoplegia. Ptosis was reported alone eight times and in conjunction with diplopia 18 times. There were 62 positive dechallenge and 14 positive rechallenge case reports. The plausible mechanism of the diplopia, ptosis, or ophthalmoplegia may be a myositis of the extraocular muscles, the levator palpebrae superioris muscles, or both.

Retinal Disease Causing Diplopia

Binocular diplopia may occasionally occur with retinal disease. Burgess et al. described 11 patients with subretinal neovascular membranes in one eye who developed binocular diplopia before and after effective photocoagulation therapy (the foveal displacement syndrome) [159]. The diplopia was thought to be due to rivalry between central and peripheral fusional mechanisms. The subretinal neovascular membranes produced shift of the photoreceptor array toward the proliferating neovascular complex;
lesion inferior to the fovea produces a superior scotoma). The affected eye deviated upward (toward the scotoma). The distal diplopic image was downward (toward the retinal image).

The diplopia in this condition responds only transiently to prisms. Surgical removal of the subretinal neovascular membrane may correct the diplopia, at least transiently [142]. Foveal displacement syndrome may also occur in patients with preretinal membranes [84,94,299,848].

Ocular Motor Nerves and Localization of Lesions

Three brainstem nuclei contain the lower motor neurons that control the eye muscles: (1) the cranial nerve III (oculomotor) nucleus in the midbrain, (2) the cranial nerve IV (trochlear) nucleus at the level of the midbrain-pontine junction, and (3) the cranial nerve VI (abducens) nucleus in the lower pons. All are paired structures located in the dorsal part of the tegmentum at their respective levels. The sixth nerve innervates the lateral rectus, and the fourth nerve supplies the superior oblique. All the other muscles are innervated by the third cranial nerve. Muscles innervated by neurons on the same side (ipsilateral innervation) include the lateral (sixth nerve) and medial (third nerve) recti, the inferior rectus (third nerve), and the inferior oblique (third nerve). The superior rectus (third nerve) and the superior oblique (fourth nerve) are innervated by neurons located on the contralateral side. However, the fibers to the superior rectus cross at the level of the nucleus, so that nuclear lesions result in bilateral weakness. Similarly,
oculomotor nuclear lesions cause bilateral ptosis because the nuclear group for the levator of the lid is located in the midline (a single caudal subnucleus).

OCULOMOTOR NERVE (CRANIAL NERVE III)

Anatomy. The third nerve nuclear complex extends rostrocaudally for about 5 mm near the midline in the midbrain at the level of the superior colliculus (Figs. 8.3 and 8.4). It lies ventral to the Sylvian aqueduct, separated from it by the periaqueductal gray matter, and dorsal to the two medial longitudinal fasciculi. One unpaired and four paired rostrocaudal columns can be distinguished in the oculomotor nuclear complex. The unpaired column, shared by the right and left nuclei, is in the most dorsal location and contains the visceral nuclei (Edinger–Westphal nucleus) rostrally and the subnucleus for the levator palpebrae superioris caudally. The Edinger–Westphal nucleus mediates pupillary constriction. Of the four paired subnuclei, the most medial innervates the superior rectus muscle. This is the only portion of the oculomotor nucleus that sends its axons to the opposite eye. Decussating fibers actually traverse the contralateral subnucleus for the superior rectus. Hence, a destructive lesion in one superior rectus subnucleus results in bilateral denervation of the superior recti. Laterally in each oculomotor complex there are three subnuclei: dorsal (inferior rectus), intermediate (inferior oblique), and ventral (medial rectus). Actually, neurons supplying the medial rectus are distributed into three separate areas of the oculomotor nucleus.

In the substance of the midbrain (fascicular portion), the axons of the oculomotor neurons cross the medial longitudinal fasciculus (MLF) and the decussating fibers of the superior cerebellar peduncle and then diverge widely as they traverse the red nucleus before exiting on the anterior aspect of the midbrain just medial to the cerebral peduncles. Fibers for the elevators of the eye and eyelid are probably located laterally in the fascicular portion of the oculomotor nerve. In the subarachnoid space each third nerve passes between the superior cerebellar and the posterior cerebral arteries, courses forward near the medial aspect of the uncus of the temporal lobe, pierces the dura just lateral to the posterior clinoid process, and enters the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus (Fig. 8.5; see also Fig. 7.4). Here, the nerve runs over the

![Image](image_url)
FIG 8.4. The oculomotor nerve. Cross-section of upper midbrain with nucleus and course and distribution of axons to the eye. (From JR Daube et al. Medical neurosciences: An approach to anatomy, pathology, and physiology by system and levels, 2nd ed. Boston: Little, Brown, 1986. By permission of Mayo Foundation.)

FIG. 8.5. Coronal diagram of the cavernous sinus. V1 = ophthalmic division of cranial nerve V; V2 = maxillary division of cranial nerve V; V3 = mandibular division of cranial nerve V.
Pure unilateral nuclear lesions are very rare. Paresis of an isolated muscle innervated by the oculomotor nerve almost always results from lesions in the orbit or from muscle disease. However, nuclear lesions may give rise to isolated weakness of one of the muscles innervated by the oculomotor nerve (e.g., the inferior rectus) with the exception of the following muscles: superior rectus, levator palpebrae superioris, and constrictor of the pupil [95, 112, 191, 741, 895]. These muscles would be affected bilaterally even with small nuclear lesions. As medial rectus neurons probably lie at three different locations within the oculomotor nucleus, it is unlikely that a medial rectus paralysis (unilateral or bilateral) would be the sole manifestation of a nuclear lesion [943]. More characteristic of nuclear involvement is unilateral third nerve palsy, weakness of the ipsilateral and contralateral superior rectus, and bilateral incomplete ptosis [16, 517, 738]. Rarely, the ipsilateral superior rectus is spared while the contralateral superior rectus is paralyzed.

Localization of Lesions. Lesions can affect the third nerve in the brainstem (nucleus or fascicular portion), in the subarachnoid space, in the cavernous sinus, at the superior orbital fissure, or in the orbit [138, 547, 549] (see Table 8.8). Etiologies of oculomotor nerve palsies, based on localization, are outlined in Table 8.9.

### Table 8.8: The Localization of Oculomotor Nerve Lesions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Structure Involved</th>
<th>Clinical Manifestation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lesions affecting the third nerve nucleus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oculomotor nucleus</td>
<td>Ipsilateral complete CN III palsy; contralateral ptosis and superior rectus paresis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oculomotor subnucleus</td>
<td>Isolated muscle palsy (e.g., inferior rectus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isolated levator subnucleus</td>
<td>Isolated bilateral ptosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesions affecting the third nerve fasciculus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isolated fascicle</td>
<td>Partial or complete isolated CN III palsy with or without pupil involvement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paramedian mesencephalon</td>
<td>Plus–minus syndrome (ipsilateral ptosis and contralateral eyelid retraction)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fascicle, red nucleus, superior cerebellar peduncle</td>
<td>Ipsilateral CN III palsy with contralateral ataxia and tremor (Claude)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fascicle and cerebral peduncle</td>
<td>Ipsilateral CN III palsy with contralateral hemiparesis (Weber)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fascicle and red nucleus/substantia nigra</td>
<td>Ipsilateral CN III palsy with contralateral choreiform movements (Benedikt)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesions affecting the third nerve in the subarachnoid space</td>
<td>Complete CN III palsy with or without other cranial nerve involvement; superior or inferior division palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oculomotor nerve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesions affecting the third nerve in the cavernous sinus</td>
<td>Painful or painless CN III palsy; with or without palsies of CN IV, VI, and V1; CN III palsy with small pupil (Horner’s syndrome); Primary aberrant CN III regeneration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cavernous sinus lesion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesions affecting the third nerve in the superior orbital fissure</td>
<td>CN III palsy with or without palsies of CN IV, VI, V1; often with proptosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior orbital fissure lesion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesion affecting the third nerve in the orbit</td>
<td>CN III palsy; superior or inferior CN III branch palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oculomotor nerve; superior or inferior branch lesion</td>
<td>Visual loss; proptosis; swelling of lids; chemosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optic nerve; orbital structures</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
colliculofugal (supranuclear) pathways for the control of horizontal saccades travel in the mesencephalic tegmentum near the oculomotor nucleus (see below), unilateral infarction of the midbrain–diencephalic junction may cause an ipsilateral oculomotor nuclear lesion associated with palsy of rectus if the contralateral midbrain lesion selectively involves crossing superior rectus nerve fibers [228,531]. Bilateral third nerve palsies with sparing of the lid elevators may also be caused by nuclear lesions (the central caudal levator subnucleus is spared) [157,496]. As corticofugal and colliculofugal (supranuclear) pathways for the control of horizontal saccades travel in the mesencephalic tegmentum near the oculomotor nucleus (see below), unilateral infarction of the midbrain–diencephalic junction may cause an ipsilateral oculomotor nuclear lesion associated with palsy of nuclear lesions (the central caudal levator subnucleus is spared) [157,496]. As corticofugal and

### Table 8.9: Etiologies of Third Nerve Palsies (TNP) by Topographical Localization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nuclear TNP</th>
<th>Dural carotid cavernous sinus fistula</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Infarction or hemorrhage</td>
<td>Balloon test occlusion of the cervical internal carotid artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cavernoma</td>
<td>Cavernous sinus thrombosis or infection (e.g., tuberculosis); superior ophthalmic vein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumor</td>
<td>Thrombosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection</td>
<td>Tumors, including pituitary adenoma, meningioma, esthesioneuroblastoma, arachnoid cyst, neurinoma, nasopharyngeal carcinoma, myeloma, lymphoma, Hodgkin’s disease, and metastases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trauma</td>
<td>Pituitary infarction or hemorrhage (pituitary apoplexy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple sclerosis</td>
<td>Wegener’s granulomatosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Fascicular TNP | Gammaopathy |
| Infarction or hemorrhage | Intraneural hemorrhage |
| “Migraine” with MRI signal abnormalities during acute phase consisting of a thickening and enhancement of the nerve at it’s exit from the midbrain | Mucocele of the sphenoid sinus or sphenoid sinuses |
| Tumor | Tolosa–Hunt syndrome or other granulomatous diseases |
| Multiple sclerosis | Orbit |
| Stereotactic surgery | Infections, inflammations, and granulomatous processes (e.g., orbital pseudotumor) |
| Midbrain dysfunction in osmotic demyelination syndrome | Sphenoid sinus mucocele |
| | Tumors |
| | Dural arteriovenous malformation |
| | Trauma |

| Subarachnoid space | Unknown localization |
| Aneurysms of the internal carotid, internal carotid-posterior communicating, superior cerebellar, basilar, or posterior cerebral arteries | Congenital |
| Aneurysmal wrapping (gauze-induced granuloma or “gauzoma”) | Migraine |
| Ectatic vessels | Trauma |
| Middle cerebral artery arterio-venous fistula | Viral infections (including herpes zoster ophthalmicus, Ramsay Hunt syndrome, and cervical zoster) and immunizations |
| Tumors, especially meningiomas, chordomas, metastases, or primary tumors of the third nerve | Lyme disease |
| Glioblastoma multiforme | Diffuse neuropathic processes (e.g., Fisher syndrome and chronic inflammatory polyradiculoneuropathy [CIDP]) |
| Infectious or inflammatory processes of the meninges (e.g., sarcoidosis and Wegener’s) and carcinomatous or lymphomatous meningitis | Wernerne encephalopathy |
| Sjogren syndrome | Cervical carotid artery dissection, stenosis, or occlusion |
| Recurrent pta-infectious third nerve palsy with cisternal nerve enhancement on MRI | Subdural hematoma |
| Ophthalmoplegic migraine | Toxic effects of drugs |
| Subarachnoid hemorrhage with leukemia | Cocaine |
| Pseudotumor cerebri | Sildenafil citrate (Viagra) |
| Spontaneous intracranial hypotension | Infliximab |
| Trauma, especially during neurosurgical procedures | Internal carotid cisplatin infusion (inferolateral trunk carotid artery neurovascular toxicity) |
| Nerve infarction from diabetes, atherosclerosis, giant cell arteritis, or systemic lupus erythematosus (nerve infarction may also occur in the cavernous sinus or anywhere along the course of nerve) | Dental anesthesia |
| Unical herniation | Scorpion bite |
| Uniliximab therapy | Radiation therapy |
| Hydrocephalus | Associated with elevated anti-galactocerebroside and anti-GM1 antibodies |
| Cavernous sinus/superior orbital fissure | Autoimmune associated with anti-GQ1b IgG antibody |
| Aneurysm of the internal carotid or posterior communicating artery | Idiopathic recurrent third nerve palsies |

contralateral horizontal saccades [604]. Rarely, isolated bilateral ptosis with sparing of the extraocular muscles and pupils may occur with lesions involving the levator subnucleus and sparing more rostral oculomotor subnuclei [206,367,603]. After surgery for a fourth ventricle ependymoma, unilateral nuclear oculomotor palsies affecting only the levator and superior recti subnuclei have been described, resulting in third nerve paresis affecting only the levators and superior recti bilaterally [805]. Nuclear lesions affecting the pupil indicate dorsal, rostral damage and are often associated with supranuclear or nuclear vertical gaze palsies.

Although isolated inferior rectus paresis may occur due to damage of the inferior rectus subnucleus, a lesion just rostral to the third nerve nucleus selectively damaging the supranuclear descending pathway from the rostral interstitial nucleus of the medial longitudinal fasciculus (riMLF) to the inferior rectus subnucleus may also cause an isolated inferior rectus palsy [895].

Bilateral total ophthalmoplegia, bilateral complete ptosis, and large, unreactive pupils have been described with midbrain hematoma [999]. This constellation of findings was thought due to bilateral third nerve nuclear or fascicular damage or both, bilateral involvement of the interstitial nucleus of Cajal (INC) and the riMLF, and involvement of bilateral horizontal saccadic and smooth pursuit pathways (see below). A similar case was due to bilateral paramedian midbrain–thalamic infarction [925].

Fascicular lesions often accompany nuclear lesions because infarction is a common cause of nuclear third nerve palsy, and the paramedian branches near the top of the basilar artery often feed both structures. For example, infarction of the dorsal, paramedian midbrain may cause bilateral ptosis associated with unilateral paresis of all other muscles innervated by the oculomotor nerve (pupil spared) with sparing of the contralateral superior rectus muscle [580]. These unique findings suggest a lesion of the proximal third nerve fascicles and the central caudal subnucleus. Third nerve fascicular lesions are most often caused by infarction, hemorrhage, or demyelination. Pure fascicular lesions cause a peripheral type of oculomotor palsy that is associated both with ipsilateral involvement of all the muscles innervated by it and with sparing of the other eye. Furthermore, involvement of brainstem structures other than the fascicles of the third nerve helps in identifying the extent and location of the lesion. For example, ipsilateral third nerve palsy and contralateral downbeat nystagmus (see below) may be caused by unilateral paramedian thalmoeduncular infarction [696]. Fascicular involvement and concomitant damage of the red nucleus and superior cerebellar peduncle causes contralateral ataxia and outflow tract cerebellar tremor (Claude syndrome) [35,582]. A more anterior lesion, affecting the peduncle and oculomotor fascicle, gives rise to oculomotor palsy with contralateral hemiparesis (Weber syndrome). Although usually due to infarction, Weber syndrome may rarely be the presenting clinical manifestation of multiples sclerosis [596]. The third nerve palsy with Weber syndrome may affect or spare the pupillary fibers [793,794]. Larger lesions that affect the oculomotor fascicle and the red nucleus-substantia nigra region may produce oculomotor palsy with contralateral choreiform movements or tremor (Benedikt syndrome) [121], sometimes associated with contralateral hemiparesis if the cerebral peduncle is also involved [582]. Although pupillary displacement (corectopia), oval pupils, and irregularity of the pupils are occasionally found with peripheral third nerve lesions and are often due to focal pathology in the iris, they also may result from midbrain lesions (“midbrain corectopia”) [825].

Rarely, a unilateral or bilateral fascicular third nerve lesion may occur in isolation without other ocular motor or neurologic signs or symptoms [2,27,73,112,294,342,483,504,672,773,793,905,942]. Fascicular lesions, even when bilateral, may occasionally spare pupillary function [989] and bilateral preganglionic internal ophthalmoplegia (dilated nonreactive pupils) without motor involvement has been described with bilateral partial oculomotor fascicular lesions [396]. Because of the intra-axial topographic arrangement of fibers, fascicular lesions may cause third nerve palsies limited to specific oculomotor-innervated muscles [528,943]. For example, fascicular lesions have resulted in:

- Isolated inferior oblique paresis [174]
- Isolated paresis of the inferior rectus [550]
- A unilateral fixed, dilated pupil unassociated with other neurologic dysfunction [844]
- Paresis of the superior rectus and inferior oblique (monocular elevation paresis) without other evidence of oculomotor nerve involvement [192,333]
- Paresis of the superior rectus and medial rectus [794]
- Paresis of the levator muscle, superior rectus, and medial rectus [700]
- Paresis of the inferior oblique, superior rectus, medial rectus, and levator muscle with sparing of the inferior rectus muscle and pupil [668,822,843]
- Paresis of the inferior oblique, superior rectus, medial rectus, levator, and inferior rectus with pupillary sparing [145,416,668]
- Paresis of the left inferior rectus, left pupil, right superior rectus, convergence, and left medial rectus [943].

Based on these clinical studies, it has been proposed that individual third nerve fascicles in the ventral
The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System

FIG. 8.6. Schematic diagram of midbrain at level of superior colliculus. Proposed model of oculomotor fascicular organization in ventral midbrain tegmentum from lateral to medial is as follows: inferior oblique (IO) fascicles, superior rectus (SR) fascicles, medial rectus (MR) fascicles, levator palpebrae (lid) fascicles, inferior rectus (IR) fascicles, and, most medially, pupillary fibers (pupil). (From O Castro et al. Isolated inferior oblique paresis from brainstem infarction. Perspective on oculomotor fascicular organization in the ventral midbrain tegmentum. Arch Neurol 1990;47:235–237. Copyright 1990, American Medical Association. Reprinted with permission.)

Mesencephalon are arranged topographically from lateral to medial as follows: inferior oblique, superior rectus, medial rectus and levator palpebrae, inferior rectus, and pupillary fibers (Fig. 8.6) [174]. A rostral-caudal topographic arrangement has also been suggested with pupillary fibers most superior, followed by fibers to the inferior rectus, inferior oblique, medial rectus, superior rectus, and levator, in that order [794,822,943]. This model also serves the description of a “superior division” oculomotor palsies (i.e., paresis of the superior rectus and levator muscles without involvement of other groups) [368,420,527] and an “inferior division” oculomotor palsies (paresis of inferior rectus, inferior oblique, medial rectus, and pupillary fibers with sparing of the superior rectus and levator) [2,270,527] associated with intraaxial midbrain lesions. Thus, although superior and inferior divisional third nerve palsies have classically been localized to anterior cavernous sinus or posterior orbital lesions, such reports suggest that a divisional third nerve pattern may occur from damage at any location along the course of the oculomotor nerve, from the fascicle to the orbit [527].

Bilateral pupil-sparing third nerve palsies, assumed to be due to bilateral fascicular involvement, associated with gaze-evoked upbeat and rotatory nystagmus (see below) have been described with midbrain dysfunction in the osmotic demyelination syndrome after rapid correction of severe hyponatremia [403].

Fascicular or nuclear third nerve palsies may occasionally be associated with ipsilateral ptosis and contralateral eyelid retraction (plus–minus lid syndrome) [335,964]. This syndrome occurs with a small lesion located in the paramedian mesencephalon, involving the ipsilateral levator palpebrae fascicles as they emerge from the central caudal nucleus (the central caudal nucleus is spared), and the inhibitory pathways (the mesencephalic M-group neurons) projecting on the levator palpebrae motor neurons immediately before their entrance in the central caudal nucleus. The plus–minus syndrome has been described with bilateral glioma extending to paramedian midbrain and thalamic–mesencephalic infarction. The syndrome also may occur with peripheral processes, such as peripheral third nerve palsy, myasthenia gravis, orbital myositis, congenital ptosis, or orbital trauma, perhaps due to bilateral effort to overcome the ptosis resulting in lid retraction in the sound eye.

Çelebisoy et al. described a patient who presented with the acute onset of partial oculomotor paresis on one side and upper eyelid retraction on the other due to a vascular insult [176]. An electromyographic study revealed frontalis muscle overactivity on the side of lid retraction, indicating that not only was the supramotor control over the central caudal nucleus affected, but the inhibition of the frontalis muscle motoneurons was also disrupted. Based on these data, a premotoneuronal system was proposed that controls upper eyelid movements by affecting the frontalis muscle and orbicularis oculi muscle motoneurons in addition to the central caudal nucleus.
An isolated peripheral third nerve palsy is most often related to an ischemic neuropathy or to a lesion in its subarachnoid portion. Among these, compression by internal carotid-posterior communicating artery aneurysms is common. With ischemic lesions, the pupil is spared because the lesion is confined to the core of the nerve and spares peripherally situated pupillomotor fibers. Most patients with ischemic oculomotor palsies have complete resolution within 5 to 6 months of the onset of symptoms [169]. By contrast, compression of the third nerve by aneurysm characteristically causes dilatation and unresponsiveness of the pupil.

Compressive subarachnoid lesions may occasionally spare the pupil, however, perhaps due to the pressure of the lesion being evenly distributed and allowing the relatively pressure-resistant, smaller-caliber pupillomotor fibers to escape injury or to the lesion compressing only the inferior portion of the nerve, thus sparing the dorsally situated pupillomotor fibers [514,661]. With unruptured cerebral aneurysms, oculomotor paresis may be incomplete with at least one element of nerve dysfunction (i.e., ptosis, mydriasis, or extraocular muscle weakness) absent [79]. Intermittent, isolated ptosis has been described as the initial manifestation of a posterior carotid artery aneurysm [936]. Absence of an affected pupil in the setting of a complete motor oculomotor paresis almost always excludes a diagnosis of aneurysm. A patient has been described, however, in whom a painless, pupil-sparing, but otherwise complete oculomotor paresis was the only sign of an aneurysm arising from the basilar artery [593]. An isolated pupillary paralysis without ptosis or ophthalmoparesis is almost never caused by an aneurysm.

An oculomotor nerve palsy with a normal pupillary sphincter and completely palsied extraocular muscles and levator is almost never due to an intracranial aneurysms. This type of third nerve palsy is most commonly caused by ischemia, especially associated with diabetes mellitus [762]. Ischemic oculomotor nerve palsy may also occur with giant cell arteritis [98,119,223,762,763] and systemic lupus erythematosus [779]. Ischemic lesions of the oculomotor nerve often spare the pupil because the lesion is confined to the core of the nerve and does not affect peripherally situated pupillomotor fibers. The pupil may, however, be involved in diabetic oculomotor palsies [661,665] and diabetes may even cause a superior branch palsy of the oculomotor nerve [607]. In a prospective study of 26 consecutive patients with diabetes-associated third nerve palsies, internal ophthalmoplegia (pupillary involvement) occurred in 10 patients (38%) [436]. The size of anisocoria was 1 mm or less in most patients. Only two patients had anisocoria greater than 2.0 mm and it was never greater than 2.5 mm. No patient had a fully dilated unreactive pupil. The author concluded that pupil involvement in patients with diabetes-associated third nerve palsy occurs more often than has previously been recognized (14%–32% in other studies), although the degree of anisocoria in any patient is usually 1 mm or less. When commenting on this study, Trobe stated “we can presume that all patients who have oculomotor nerve palsies with anisocoria of greater than 2.0 mm are outliers for the diagnosis of ischemia” [931]. Shih et al. noted that 28.6% of patients with diabetic ischemic third nerve palsy had pupil involvement [836]. Patients with a third nerve palsy with a normal pupillary sphincter and completely palsied extraocular muscles should be observed at 24- to 48-hour intervals during the first week because some patients with aneurysms may develop delayed pupil involvement [514]. Atta et al. reported a patient who presented with fluctuating ptosis, intermittent vertical diplopia, and normal pupils [42]. Initial examination revealed only impaired elevation of one eye. Three days later, anisocoria was noted and an intracavernous carotid artery aneurysm was discovered on neuroimaging. Patients with isolated incomplete motor third nerve palsy with pupillary sparing (“relative pupil sparing”) may still have a mass lesion or aneurysm [437,439]. Patients with an isolated acquired third nerve palsy with a subnormal pupillary sphincter and partial or complete extraocular muscle palsies and patients with complete external and internal third nerve palsies occurring in isolation often harbor a compressive lesion (e.g., aneurysm) or meningeal infiltration [547,530].

Spontaneous resolution of aneurismal third nerve palsy may rarely occur. Foroozand et al. described a patient with a third nerve palsy that developed in the third trimester of pregnancy and was due to a posterior communicating artery aneurysm [300]. Prepartum complications forced postponement of surgery. The palsy spontaneously resolved over 3 weeks after delivery by C-section. Repeated angiogram showed that the aneurismal sac had shrunk from 10 mm to 4.5 mm.

 Superior division or inferior division oculomotor palsies may occur with subarachnoid lesions [371]. For example, superior division paresis has been described with a superior cerebellar-posterior cerebral artery junction aneurysm that compressed and flattened the interpeduncular oculomotor nerve from below [368], while isolated inferior division involvement has occurred with trauma, vasculitis or demyelinating disease, parasellar tumors (e.g., meningioma, schwannoma) [171,217], or basilar artery aneurysm [471]. Inferior division involvement with tumors may be pupil sparing, perhaps because
insidious tumor growth may spare pressure-resistant pupillomotor fibers. Monocular elevatory paresis from isolated superior retractor and/or inferior oblique dysfunction, is a common neuro-ophthalmic finding in patients with neurofibromatosis type 2 and is probably a sign of third nerve infiltration or compression by a schwannoma [263].

The third nerve in its subarachnoid course may also be damaged by ectatic vessels, tumors (particularly meningiomas, metastases, and chordomas), infectious and inflammatory processes of the meninges [823], meningiomas, metastases, and chordomas), infectious and inflammatory processes of the meninges [823], ischemia, and inflammation [263]. The third cranial nerve palsy may be the presenting neuro-ophtalmic sign in cases of third cranial nerve palsy as it occurs first, cranial nerve palsy may be the presenting neuro-ophtalmic sign in cases of traumatic [404], stretching during neurosurgical procedures, or in the Guillain–Barré syndrome. Third cranial nerve palsy may be the presenting neuro-ophtalmic feature of nasopharyngeal cancer [92].

The localization of lesions affecting the oculomotor system

Lesions in the neighborhood of the posterior clinoid process may for some time affect only the third nerve [404], stretching during neurosurgical procedures, or in the Guillain–Barré syndrome. Third cranial nerve palsy may be the presenting neuro-ophtalmic feature of nasopharyngeal cancer [92]. Elongation of the nerve by a herniated uncus causes, first, pupillary dilatation (Hutchinson pupil), associated with poor response to light but relatively preserved convergence, followed by weakness of the extraocular muscles when the pupil becomes fixed. Midbrain corectopia may also occur during transtentorial herniation. Enhancement and thickening of the interpeduncular segment of the oculomotor nerve has been noted on MR imaging of some children with ophthalmoplegic migraine [687].

In patients with neurofibromatosis type 2 and is probably a sign of third nerve infiltration or compression by a schwannoma [263].

The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System

In the cavernous sinus (see Fig. 8.3), compressive lesions often also involve the other ocular motor nerves and the ophthalmic branch of the trigeminal nerve [490]. Combined oculomotor paresis and sympathetic denervation are virtually pathognomonic of a cavernous sinus lesion. Compressive cavernous sinus lesions may also spare the pupil because they often preferentially involve only the superior division of the oculomotor nerve, which carries no pupillomotor fibers, or the superior aspect of the nerve anterior to the point where the pupillomotor fibers descend in their course near the inferior oblique muscle. The pupillary “sparing” with anterior cavernous sinus lesions may be more apparent than real, resulting from simultaneous injury of nerve fibers to both the pupillary sphincter and dilator, resulting in a midposition, fixed pupil [514]. A patient with a pupil-sparing “severe” motor third nerve palsy has been described with a cavernous sinus aneurysm [425]. With chronic lesions, aberrant regeneration (see below) may result in apparent pupillary sparing. Lesions in the neighborhood of the posterior clinoid process may for some time affect only the third nerve as it pierces the dura (e.g., breast or prostatic carcinoma) [216].

Sensory fibers from the ophthalmic division of the fifth cranial nerve join the oculomotor nerve within the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus [539]. The frontal-orbital pain experienced by patients with enlarging aneurysms could thus be caused by direct irritation of the third nerve [539]. Ischemic damage to the trigeminal fibers in the oculomotor nerve may also be the source of pain in ischemic-diabetic third nerve palsies [122]. This pain may be quite severe.

Medial lesions in the cavernous sinus, such as a carotid artery aneurysm, may affect only the oculomotor nerves but spare the more laterally located ophthalmic branch of the trigeminal nerve, resulting in painless ophthalmoplegia. On the contrary, lesions that begin laterally present with retroorbital pain first, and only later does ophthalmoparalysis supervene. A third nerve palsy may be the presenting or sole sign of a pituitary adenoma [809] or dural carotid-cavernous sinus fistula [402]. Pituitary apoplexy causes most often an oculomotor nerve deficit and involves the abducens nerve and the trochlear nerve with less frequency [828]. Occasionally, pituitary apoplexy may present as a painful third nerve palsy [772]. In immunosuppressed individuals, cavernous sinus infection with mucormycosis [290] or aspergillosis [259] may develop. A superior division third nerve palsy may result from intracavernous lesions [532]. The clinical findings and etiologies for processes located in the superior orbital fissure are similar to those of the cavernous sinus syndrome.

Lesions within the orbit that produce third nerve dysfunction usually produce other ocular motor dysfunction as well as optic neuropathy and proptosis (see Chapter 7). With space-occupying lesions, however, proptosis is a strong indication of an orbital location. When evaluating a patient with an oculomotor palsy for proptosis, it must be remembered that flaccidity of the muscles may result in proptosis of up to 3 mm on the paretic side. Many lesions extend from the cavernous sinus to the orbital apex and vice versa so that a clear separation between the two syndromes may be impossible. Isolated involvement of the muscles innervated by either the superior or the inferior oculomotor branch has classically been localized to an orbital process, often trauma or tumor, or a sphenocavernous lesion [189,532,870]. As noted above, however, the functional division of the oculomotor nerve is present probably even at the fascicular level, and a divisional pattern may occur from damage anywhere along the course of the nerve [527]. Superior division or inferior division third nerve paresis may occur with subarachnoid lesions. For example, Bhati et al. describe two patients (one with a posterior communicating artery aneurysm and the other following anterior temporal lobectomy for epilepsy) with superior divisional third cranial nerve paresis resulting from a lesion involving the cisternal portion of the nerve prior to its “anatomical” bifurcation [102]. Even
Localization in Clinical Neurology

ophthalmoplegic migraine may cause recurrent paroxysmal superior division oculomotor palsy [474]. Rarely, partial or complete oculomotor palsy may follow dental anesthesia, presumably due to inadvertent injection of an anesthetic agent into the inferior dental artery or superior alveolar artery with subsequent retrograde flow into the maxillary, middle meningeal, and finally the lacrimal branch of the ophthalmic artery [717].

Congenital third nerve palsy is rare, usually unilateral, and may occur in isolation or in association with other neurologic and systemic abnormalities, including congenital facial nerve palsies or other cranial neuropathies, facial capillary hemangioma, cerebellar hypoplasia, gaze palsy, ipsilateral nevus sebaceous of Jadassohn, mental retardation, digital anomalies, and septo-optic dysplasia (optic hypoplasia, mid-brain malformations, and hypothalamohypophyseal dysfunction) [61, 383, 426, 538, 710, 737, 820, 984]. All patients have some degree of ptosis and ophthalmoplegia, and nearly all have pupillary involvement. In most cases, the pupil is miotic rather than dilated, probably because of aberrant third nerve regeneration (see below), and usually trace reactive or nonreactive to light. Rarely the pupil may be spared [61].

Months to years after the occurrence of an oculomotor lesion, clinical findings of aberrant regeneration of the third nerve may be seen. They include elevation of the lid on downward gaze (pseudo-von Graefe phenomenon) or on adduction, but lid depression during abduction. The lid-gaze synkinesis is best seen with attempted adduction in downgaze. This horizontal gaze-lid synkinesis is similar to but of opposite direction from the lid synkinesis observed in Duane’s retraction syndrome (see below). Other findings with aberrant regeneration include limitation of elevation and depression of the eye with occasional eyeball retraction on attempted vertical gaze, adduction of the eye on attempted elevation or depression, and suppression of the vertical phase of the optico-kinetic response. The pupil may be in a miotic or middilated position; it may be fixed to light but may respond to accommodation (near-light dissociation) or constrict on adduction or downgaze. Aberrant regeneration to the iris sphincter may be too weak to constrict the pupil on exposure to light, but at the slit lamp, clear segmental contraction of the sphincter may be seen when the eye tries to move in any third nerve direction (Czarnecki’s sign) [213]. This gaze-evoked segmental constriction of the pupil may occur in portions of the sphincter that are unreactive to light, while other segments of the pupil have normal light reaction without Czarnecki’s sign [214]. Aberrant regeneration may be associated with lagophthalmos, presumably caused by co-contraction of the levator and superior rectus muscles during Bell’s phenomenon [219].

Aberrant regeneration may be seen after oculomotor damage due to congenital causes, trauma, aneurysm, migraine, and syphilis but is almost never caused by ischemic neuropathy [77]. A single case of aberrant regeneration has been described due to an ischemic stroke involving the third nerve fascicle in the cerebral peduncle [619]. Misdirection of regenerating nerve fibers is the likely cause, but it has also been postulated that the syndrome may be due to ephaptic neuron transmission of impulses or from chromatolysis-induced reorganization of oculomotor nuclear synapses. Ephaptic transmission would explain the transient oculomotor misdirection described with ophthalmoplegic migraine, pituitary apoplexy, giant cell arteritis, and non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma [554]. Long-standing lesions within the cavernous sinus, such as meningiomas, trigeminal neuromas, pituitary tumors, or large aneurysms, may present as a primary aberrant regeneration of the third nerve without a history of previous third nerve palsy [537]. Primary aberrant regeneration may rarely occur with extracavernous lesions [454, 953] and has even been described with posterior communicating artery aneurysms (in one case associated with papillary sparing) [172, 347]. Bilateral primary aberrant regeneration may also occur with abetalipoproteinemia (Bassen–Kornzweig syndrome) [200]. Rarely, the pseudo von Graefe phenomenon may develop contralateral to a regenerating paretic third nerve [370]. Also, combined oculomotor-abducens synkinesis has been described after severe head trauma, resulting in misdirection of nerve fibers to the right medial rectus and right lateral rectus [707].

Oculomotor paresis with cyclic spasms has been described in which ptosis, mydriasis, ophthalmoplegiasis, and decreased accommodation are cyclically interrupted by transient eyelid elevation, globe adduction, pupil constriction, and increased accommodation [309]. This cyclic spasm lasts 10 to 30 seconds and is usually congenital but has been noted with brainstem glioma. Miller and Lee described two patients with a history of previous skull base irradiation for intracranial tumor who years later developed acquired oculomotor nerve paresis with cyclic spasms [626]. Both patients developed unilateral lid retraction and ipsilateral exotropia with limitation of abduction during the spastic phase of the cycle, with ipsilateral ptosis, exotropia, and variable limitation of adduction during the paretic phase. The cycles were continuous and were not induced or altered by eccentric gaze.

Ophthalmoplegic migraine usually starts in the first decade of life and usually affects the oculomotor
nerve, although rare trochlear nerve or multiple oculomotor nerve involvement has been described [624]. Clinical criteria essential for the diagnosis of ophthalmoplegic migraine include: (1). A history of typical migraine headache (severe, throbbing, unilateral but occasionally bilateral or alternating). Headache may last hours to days; (2). Ophthalmoplegia that may include one or more nerves and may alternate sides with attacks. Extraocular muscle paralysis may occur with the first attack of headache or, rarely, precede it. Usually, however, the paralysis appears subsequent to an established migraine pattern. (3). Exclusion of other causes, by neuroimaging, surgery, or autopsy. With ophthalmoplegic migraine, the third nerve paresis reached a maximum as the headache began to resolve and persisted for 1 to 4 weeks. The third nerve paralysis during the attack is often complete or nearly so, but partial third nerve paresis, including superior division third nerve paresis, may occur [474]. Most patients have normal neuro-ophthalmologic examinations between attacks, but some patients may demonstrate partial third nerve paresis or even signs of aberrant regeneration. In some cases, MRI has revealed enhancement and enlargement of the cisternal portion of the oculomotor nerve during the attacks [170,737].

Ocular neuromyotonia (ONM) is a rare disorder characterized by episodic (lasting seconds to minutes) horizontal or vertical diplopia, occurring either spontaneously or following sustained (10 to 20 seconds) eccentric gaze [3,78,193,265,278,279,312,313,400,641,673–675,797,845,1007]. OMN may affect the oculomotor, trochlear, or abducens nerve. Most patients have had prior radiation therapy to the sellar or parasellar region (months to years before onset of the ONM) for tumors, including stereotactic radiation therapy [655], although in some cases no responsible structural lesion or history of radiation therapy is noted. Rarely ONM may be due to a compressive lesion, such as an aneurysm [3,278], dolichoectatic basilar artery [922], thyroid eye disease [193], Paget’s disease of bone [125], cavernous sinus meningioma [430], or cavernous sinus thrombosis secondary to mucormycosis [394]. One patient had fourth nerve involvement where spasms of the superior oblique muscle were induced only by alcohol intake [279], while another developed ONM several years after myelography with thorium dioxide (Thorotrast) [1007]. Banks et al. describe a unique example of oculomotor neuromyotonia from nonirradiated, stroke-related intramedullary lesions of the contralateral midbrain and thalamus [72]. OMN is thought to reflect impaired muscle relaxation due to inappropriate discharges from oculomotor, trochlear, or abducens neurons or axons with unstable cellular membranes.

Oohira and Furuya described a patient with neuromyotonia and synkinesis affecting the oculomotor nerve after radiation therapy [701]. During attacks of neuromyotonia, the ipsilateral eyelids were often spastically closed. The ocular neuromyotonia spontaneously resolved within 3 years, but the components of the synkinesis persisted. Ephaptic transmission in a damaged third cranial nerve was thought responsible for the neuromyotonia and synkinesis [701].

Primary aberrant regeneration associated with neuromyotonia of the third cranial nerve has been described as the cause of episodic diplopia in 52-year-old woman [184]. Between episodes, innervation of the right eye was mildly impaired and there was retraction of right upper lid on downward gaze (attributed to mild right CN III aberrant regeneration). On resuming primary position after prolonged left gaze, she developed a right esotropia and reduced abduction, supraduction, and innervation in the right eye considered signs of neuromyotonia. There was no history of cranial radiation and brain imaging was normal.

Congenital fibrosis of the extraocular muscles (CFEOM) are genetic disorders that may be due to failure of embryogenesis of the oculomotor subnuclei supplying specific ocular muscles. With CFEOM1 there is impaired development of the superior division of the oculomotor nerve and motoneurons to the superior rectus and levator palpebrae superioris [274]. Clinically there is bilateral ptosis and the eyes are deviated and fixed downward with the patient assuming a chin-up head position. Vertical eye movements are limited with pendular nystagmus and ocular retraction occurring on attempted upward gaze. Head movements are substituted for eye movements. CFEOM2 is characterized by congenital bilateral ptosis with the eyes fixed in extreme abduction or deviated down and out due to maldevelopment of all of the muscles supplied by the third cranial nerve [666,978].

TROCHLEAR NERVE (CRANIAL NERVE IV)

Anatomy. The trochlear nucleus lies caudal to the oculomotor nuclear group, dorsal to the medial longitudinal fasciculus, and at the level of the inferior colliculus, just ventrolateral to the cerebral aqueduct (Figs. 8.7 and 8.8) [137,341]. The nerve fascicles course posteroinferiorly around the aqueduct to decussate in the dorsal midbrain in the anterior medullary velum; they then emerge from the brainstem near the dorsal midline, immediately below the inferior colliculus. The cisternal segment then runs anteriorly over the lateral aspect of the
the cavernous sinus, the trochlear nerve lies below the oculomotor nerve and above the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve, with which it shares a connective tissue sheath [565]. The trochlear nerve enters the orbit through the superior orbital fissure and innervates the superior oblique muscle (see Fig. 7.4).

Localization of Lesions. Table 8.10 summarizes this section. The etiologies of trochlear nerve palsies, based on topographical localization, are brainstem, successively traversing the quadrigeminal, ambient, crural, and pontomesencephalic cisterns [341]; the cisternal part of the nerve is closely related to the tentorium cerebelli (see Fig. 8.8). After traveling on the undersurface of the tentorial edge, it pierces the dura at a point slightly below the point of entry of the oculomotor nerve into the cavernous sinus along the lateral aspect of the clivus just below the petroclinoid ligament. Within the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus, the trochlear nerve lies below the oculomotor nerve and above the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve, with which it shares a connective tissue sheath [565]. The trochlear nerve enters the orbit through the superior orbital fissure and innervates the superior oblique muscle (see Fig. 7.4).

Localization of Lesions. Table 8.10 summarizes this section. The etiologies of trochlear nerve palsies, based on topographical localization, are

![Diagram of the trochlear nerve (cranial nerve IV). Cross-section of lower midbrain shows nucleus and course and distribution to superior oblique muscle of opposite eye. (From JR Daube et al. Medical neurosciences: An approach to anatomy, pathology, and physiology by system and levels, 2nd ed. Boston: Little, Brown, 1986. By permission of Mayo Foundation.)](image1)

![Diagram illustrating normal course of fourth cranial nerve (IV N). CA = carotid artery; N = nerve; II, III, V, VI = optic, oculomotor, trochlear, trigeminal, and abducens nerves, respectively; V1, V2, and V3 = three divisions of cranial nerve V. (From LR Gentry et al. MR imaging of primary trochlear nerve neoplasms. Am J Neuro-Radiology 1991;12:707–713. Reprinted with permission.)](image2)
uninvolved eye occurs with spread of comitance and secondary contracture of the superior rectus muscle in the involved eye with the hypertropia involving the entire lower field of gaze. In a patient with a superior oblique muscle paralysis who habitually fixates with the paretic eye and in whom overaction of the ipsilateral inferior oblique muscle has developed, less than the normal amount of innervation will be required when the patient looks up and to the contralateral side. Since the innervation flowing to the opposite superior rectus is “determined” by the overacting ipsilateral inferior oblique (Hering’s law), the opposite superior rectus muscle will seem paretic (inhibitional palsy of the contralateral antagonist).

In these cases, the head tilt test will correctly determine which of the two eyes is paretic.

2. Excyclotropia, which is usually evident on fundus exam and double Maddox rod testing (Maddox rods of different colors over each eye) [930]. This cyclotropia is symptomatic only in acquired (vs congenital) cases. When viewing a horizontal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Structure Involved</th>
<th>Clinical Manifestation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lesions affecting the trochlear nucleus and/or fascicles (superior oblique palsy contralateral to lesions)</td>
<td>Isolated trochlear palsy (rare)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nucleus/fascicles alone</td>
<td>Vertical gaze palsy (Dorsal midbrain syndrome)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pretectal region</td>
<td>Dysmetria on side of lesion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior cerebellar peduncle</td>
<td>Horner’s syndrome on side of lesion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Descending sympathetic fibers</td>
<td>Ipsilateral paresis of adduction with nystagmus of contralateral abducting eye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medial longitudinal fasciculus (MLF)</td>
<td>Contralateral relative afferent pupillary defect (RAPD) without visual impairment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brachium of superior colliculus</td>
<td>Bilateral trochlear nerve palsies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior medullary velum</td>
<td>Nucleus/fascicles alone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesions affecting the trochlear nerve within the subarachnoid space (superior oblique palsy usually ipsilateral to lesion unless mesencephalon compressed)</td>
<td>Isolated trochlear palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trochlear nerve alone</td>
<td>Ipsilateral dysmetria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior cerebellar peduncle</td>
<td>Contraslateral hemoparesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebral peduncle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesions affecting the trochlear nerve within the cavernous sinus and/or superior orbital fissure</td>
<td>Isolated trochlear palsy (rare)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trochlear nerve alone</td>
<td>Ophthalmoplegia; pupil small, large, or spared; ptosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cranial nerves III, VI, sympathetic</td>
<td>Facial/retoorbital pain; sensory loss (forehead)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cranial nerve V (Ophthalmic division)</td>
<td>Proptosis; chemosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased venous pressure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesions affecting the trochlear nerve within the orbit</td>
<td>Superior oblique palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trochlear nerve, trochlea, superior oblique</td>
<td>Brown’s superior oblique tendon sheath syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muscle or tendon</td>
<td>Ophthalmoplegia; ptosis; restricted ocular movements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mechanical restriction of superior</td>
<td>Visual loss; optic disc swelling/atrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oblique tendon</td>
<td>Proptosis (occasionally enophthalmus); chemosis; eyelid swelling; etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other ocular motor nerves/extraocular muscles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optic nerve</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mass effect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

outlined in Table 8.11 [547]. Fourth cranial nerve palsies may cause [971,972]:

1. Incomitant hypertropia demonstrated with the three-step maneuver. The hypertropia increases on head tilt toward the paralyzed side (positive Bielschowsky’s test). Hypotropia may occur in the normal eye if the affected eye is fixating; if the unaffected eye is fixating, hypertropia occurs in the involved eye. This hypertropia is usually most prominent in the field of gaze of the involved superior oblique muscle (i.e., down and in), especially in cases of acute or recent onset. The hypertropia may also be most prominent in the field of gaze of the ipsilateral overacting inferior oblique muscle in subacute or chronic cases or evident in the entire paretic field (spread of comitance). Duction testing may variably reveal underaction of the ipsilateral superior oblique muscle, overaction of the ipsilateral inferior oblique muscle, or overaction of the contralateral superior oblique muscle. Pseudo-overaction of the superior oblique in the uninvolved eye occurs with spread of comitance and secondary contracture of the superior rectus muscle in the involved eye with the hypertropia involving the entire lower field of gaze. In a patient with a superior oblique muscle paralysis who habitually fixates with the paretic eye and in whom overaction of the ipsilateral inferior oblique muscle has developed, less than the normal amount of innervation will be required when the patient looks up and to the contralateral side. Since the innervation flowing to the opposite superior rectus is “determined” by the overacting ipsilateral inferior oblique (Hering’s law), the opposite superior rectus muscle will seem paretic (inhibitional palsy of the contralateral antagonist). In these cases, the head tilt test will correctly determine which of the two eyes is paretic.

2. Excyclotropia, which is usually evident on fundus exam and double Maddox rod testing (Maddox rods of different colors over each eye) [930]. This cyclotropia is symptomatic only in acquired (vs congenital) cases. When viewing a horizontal
as do some patients with acquired fourth nerve palsies.

3. Large vertical fusional amplitudes (>6 to 8 prism diopters) in primary gaze are characteristic of congenital cases.

4. Facial asymmetry (hypoplasia on side of head turn) suggests a congenital lesion.

Bilateral fourth nerve palsies result in an inability to depress either eye fully in adduction. There may be associated bilateral overaction of the inferior oblique muscles. Bilateral fourth nerve palsies are suggested by:

1. A right hypertropia in left gaze and left hypertropia in right gaze.
2. A positive Bielschowsky test on tilt to either shoulder ("double Bielschowsky test").
3. A large excyclotropia (>10 degrees).
4. V-pattern esotropia (15 prism diopters or more difference in esotropia between upwards and downwards gaze). The "V" pattern is caused by a decompensation of a congenital fourth nerve palsy from those with an acquired fourth nerve palsy. It is important to differentiate patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies from those with acquired fourth nerve palsies, as patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies usually do not complain of cyclotropia but the two images will be slanted with respect to each other with the apparent interaction of the lines pointing toward the side of the affected eye.

Head tilt, which is incorporated to eliminate the hypertropia and rarely the cyclotropia, is present in approximately 70% of patients and is usually away from the involved side but may be paradoxical (toward the involved side) in about 3% of cases. Paradoxical head tilt presumably results in a greater separation of images, thus allowing one of the images to be ignored.

It is important to differentiate patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies from those with acquired fourth nerve palsies, as patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies usually do not complain of cyclotropia but the two images will be slanted with respect to each other with the apparent interaction of the lines pointing toward the side of the affected eye.

Head tilt, which is incorporated to eliminate the hypertropia and rarely the cyclotropia, is present in approximately 70% of patients and is usually away from the involved side but may be paradoxical (toward the involved side) in about 3% of cases. Paradoxical head tilt presumably results in a greater separation of images, thus allowing one of the images to be ignored.

It is important to differentiate patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies from those with acquired fourth nerve palsies, as patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies usually do not complain of cyclotropia but the two images will be slanted with respect to each other with the apparent interaction of the lines pointing toward the side of the affected eye.

Head tilt, which is incorporated to eliminate the hypertropia and rarely the cyclotropia, is present in approximately 70% of patients and is usually away from the involved side but may be paradoxical (toward the involved side) in about 3% of cases. Paradoxical head tilt presumably results in a greater separation of images, thus allowing one of the images to be ignored.

It is important to differentiate patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies from those with acquired fourth nerve palsies, as patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies usually do not complain of cyclotropia but the two images will be slanted with respect to each other with the apparent interaction of the lines pointing toward the side of the affected eye.

Head tilt, which is incorporated to eliminate the hypertropia and rarely the cyclotropia, is present in approximately 70% of patients and is usually away from the involved side but may be paradoxical (toward the involved side) in about 3% of cases. Paradoxical head tilt presumably results in a greater separation of images, thus allowing one of the images to be ignored.

It is important to differentiate patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies from those with acquired fourth nerve palsies, as patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies usually do not complain of cyclotropia but the two images will be slanted with respect to each other with the apparent interaction of the lines pointing toward the side of the affected eye.

Head tilt, which is incorporated to eliminate the hypertropia and rarely the cyclotropia, is present in approximately 70% of patients and is usually away from the involved side but may be paradoxical (toward the involved side) in about 3% of cases. Paradoxical head tilt presumably results in a greater separation of images, thus allowing one of the images to be ignored.

It is important to differentiate patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies from those with acquired fourth nerve palsies, as patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies usually do not complain of cyclotropia but the two images will be slanted with respect to each other with the apparent interaction of the lines pointing toward the side of the affected eye.

Head tilt, which is incorporated to eliminate the hypertropia and rarely the cyclotropia, is present in approximately 70% of patients and is usually away from the involved side but may be paradoxical (toward the involved side) in about 3% of cases. Paradoxical head tilt presumably results in a greater separation of images, thus allowing one of the images to be ignored.

It is important to differentiate patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies from those with acquired fourth nerve palsies, as patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies usually do not complain of cyclotropia but the two images will be slanted with respect to each other with the apparent interaction of the lines pointing toward the side of the affected eye.

Head tilt, which is incorporated to eliminate the hypertropia and rarely the cyclotropia, is present in approximately 70% of patients and is usually away from the involved side but may be paradoxical (toward the involved side) in about 3% of cases. Paradoxical head tilt presumably results in a greater separation of images, thus allowing one of the images to be ignored.

It is important to differentiate patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies from those with acquired fourth nerve palsies, as patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies usually do not complain of cyclotropia but the two images will be slanted with respect to each other with the apparent interaction of the lines pointing toward the side of the affected eye.

Head tilt, which is incorporated to eliminate the hypertropia and rarely the cyclotropia, is present in approximately 70% of patients and is usually away from the involved side but may be paradoxical (toward the involved side) in about 3% of cases. Paradoxical head tilt presumably results in a greater separation of images, thus allowing one of the images to be ignored.

It is important to differentiate patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies from those with acquired fourth nerve palsies, as patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies usually do not complain of cyclotropia but the two images will be slanted with respect to each other with the apparent interaction of the lines pointing toward the side of the affected eye.

Head tilt, which is incorporated to eliminate the hypertropia and rarely the cyclotropia, is present in approximately 70% of patients and is usually away from the involved side but may be paradoxical (toward the involved side) in about 3% of cases. Paradoxical head tilt presumably results in a greater separation of images, thus allowing one of the images to be ignored.

It is important to differentiate patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies from those with acquired fourth nerve palsies, as patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies usually do not complain of cyclotropia but the two images will be slanted with respect to each other with the apparent interaction of the lines pointing toward the side of the affected eye.

Head tilt, which is incorporated to eliminate the hypertropia and rarely the cyclotropia, is present in approximately 70% of patients and is usually away from the involved side but may be paradoxical (toward the involved side) in about 3% of cases. Paradoxical head tilt presumably results in a greater separation of images, thus allowing one of the images to be ignored.

It is important to differentiate patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies from those with acquired fourth nerve palsies, as patients with congenital fourth nerve palsies usually do not complain of cyclotropia but the two images will be slanted with respect to each other with the apparent interaction of the lines pointing toward the side of the affected eye.

Head tilt, which is incorporated to eliminate the hypertropia and rarely the cyclotropia, is present in approximately 70% of patients and is usually away from the involved side but may be paradoxical (toward the involved side) in about 3% of cases. Paradoxical head tilt presumably results in a greater separation of images, thus allowing one of the images to be ignored.
decresce of the abducting effect of the superior oblique(s) in depression and overaction of the inferior oblique muscle(s).

5. Underaction of both superior oblique muscles and/or overaction of both inferior oblique muscles.

6. In general, bilateral fourth nerve palsies tend to have a smaller hypertropia in primary position than do unilateral fourth nerve palsies.

7. A “head-down” position as the patient has difficulty looking down with both eyes. The head-down position in a patient with a motorcycle helmet under his arm (implying bilateral fourth nerve palsies due to motorcycle trauma) has been called “Sogg sign.”

Although trochlear nerve palsy accounts for a majority of cases of acquired vertical strabismus [565], trochlear nerve palsies are less commonly recognized than oculomotor or abducens nerve palsies [98,763]. A lesion involving the trochlear nucleus or its fascicles may result in contralateral paresis of the superior oblique muscle [207,594]. Unilateral or bilateral superior oblique palsy may occur with nontraumatic etiologies, including nuclear aplasia, mesencephalic stroke, tumor, arteriovenous malformation, and demyelination [104,199,481,497,505,506,547,565,594,799,958]. Acquired bilateral superior oblique palsies may occur with lesions affecting the dorsal midbrain or superior medullary velum [76,694,886,958]. Although an isolated trochlear nerve palsy may be the sole or first sign of a dorsal mesencephalic tumor, hemorrhage, infarction, or multiple sclerosis [323,438,481,525,636,900,904], most mesencephalic lesions causing trochlear nerve palsies betray their presence by causing damage to neighboring structures [137]. Nontraumatic bilateral fourth nerve palsies, often associated with other midbrain signs, may be due to pinealoma, hydrocephalus, demyelinating disease, neurosurgical complication, subdural hematoma with herniation, metastasis, vascular malformation, and midbrain infarction or hemorrhage (all processes affecting the dorsal midbrain or anterior medullary velum) [137,199,799]. Unilateral lesions involving the fourth nerve nucleus or its fascicles, before decussation in the anterior medullary velum, and adjacent sympathetic fibers may produce an ipsilateral Horner syndrome and contralateral superior oblique paresis [207,369,658]. A unilateral mesencephalic lesion affecting the trochlear nerve nucleus (or its fibers prior to decussation) and the MLF may cause an ipsilateral internuclear ophthalmoplegia and a contralateral superior oblique palsy [948]. A lesion affecting the brachium of the superior colliculus and the adjacent trochlear nucleus or fascicle may cause a contralateral relative afferent pupillary defect without visual impairment (see Chapter 7) and a contralateral superior oblique paresis [272]. Ventrolateral extension of the lesion to the superior cerebellar peduncle may produce ipsilateral dysmetria and truncal ataxia. Bilateral superior oblique paresis associated with unilateral spinothalamic tract damage has been described with a small spontaneous mesencephalic tegmentum hemorrhage [258].

In children and adults, congenital abnormalities and trauma are the most common causes of isolated unilateral or bilateral trochlear nerve palsy in which an etiology can be determined [485,488,763]. Even minor head trauma may induce a trochlear nerve palsy in patients on anticoagulants or in patients with pre-existing structural disorder [440]. Its long course around the mesencephalon, near the edge of the tentorium, makes this nerve particularly vulnerable, and a blow to the forehead may cause a contrecoup contusion of one or both fourth nerves by shearing the nerve up against the rigid tentorium [60]. Severe frontal head trauma may cause bilateral fourth nerve palsies, probably due to contusion of the anterior medullary velum.

In the absence of other signs, it may be essentially impossible to make a topical diagnosis of an isolated trochlear nerve palsy without neuroradiologic assistance. Ischemic neuropathy caused by diabetes or other vasculopathies can affect any segment of the trochlear nerve. Patients with vasculopathic trochlear nerve palsy often resolve spontaneously within 4 to 6 months [526,789]. In the subarachnoid space, isolated fourth nerve palsy may occur with a superior cerebellar artery aneurysm at the level of the ambient cistern [9,203], with an internal carotid-posterior communicating artery aneurysm [837], or with a primary trochlear nerve neoplasm (e.g., schwannoma or neurofibroma) [286]. The latter should be especially considered in patients with neurofibromatosis [341,804]. Pituitary tumors may rarely present with an isolated trochlear nerve palsy [716]. A fourth nerve palsy associated with homonymous hemianopia and hemisensory deficit was described with a proximal posterior cerebral artery aneurysm [375]. Diffuse meningeal processes (e.g., meningitis) may cause unilateral or bilateral fourth nerve palsies [792]. With other lesions, precise localization depends on the damage done to neighboring structures. As the nerve courses anterolaterally around the midbrain, involvement of the superior cerebellar peduncle before the decussation may be manifest by ipsilateral cerebellar signs. A contralateral hemiparesis, predominantly involving the leg, would locate the lesion more anteriorly where the nerve swings around the cerebral peduncle. Tentorial meningiomas can cause the syndromes just described. Guillain–Barré syndrome or Fisher syndrome usually affects other ocular motor nerves as well [891]. Within the subarachnoid space, the nerve may also be injured by neurosurgical procedures, and it is probably here that nerve injury occurs following
lumbar puncture or spinal anesthesia [511]. Fourth nerve palsy has been described with superficial siderosis of the central nervous system [395,838]. Rarely, pseudotumor cerebri may be associated with a fourth nerve palsy [546,864].

Lesions in the cavernous sinus or superior orbital fissure may involve all the ocular motor nerves and the ophthalmic branch of the trigeminal nerve, with subsequent retroorbital pain on the affected side [490]. An isolated trochlear nerve palsy may be produced by an intracavernous internal carotid artery aneurysm [34], a dural carotid-cavernous sinus fistula [826], or a cavernous sinus meningioma [852]. An isolated trochlear nerve palsy may occur with herpes zoster ophthalmicus [32,364,565,813,893] or oticus [477], neonatal hypoxia, encephalitis, and as a complication of coronary angiography and bypass surgery.

Although orbital processes may damage the trochlear nerve, more often direct damage to the superior oblique muscle or trochlea is responsible for vertical diplopia with an orbital lesion [167]. Trauma, tumor, or other infiltrative processes are the usual etiologies. Motion of the superior oblique may be restricted by a tenosynovitis that prevents the tendon from passing freely through the trochlear pulley. Forced duction can be used to unmask this mechanical restriction of depression on adduction.

Rarely, myasthenia gravis may present with isolated superior oblique weakness simulating a trochlear nerve lesion [788]. Thyroid ophthalmopathy may present with what appears to be a unilateral superior oblique paresis (likely actually caused by a restrictive process of the opposite inferior rectus muscle) [180,650]. Decompensation of a latent superior oblique muscle or trochlea is responsible for vertical diplopia. This abducens-associated vertical deviation or peripheral nerve palsy in addition to abducens deviation greater than 5 prism diopters indicates skew deviation. Conversely, vertical deviations in sixth nerve palsy are consistent with normal hyperphorias that become manifest in the presence of esotropia. In peripheral sixth nerve palsy, static head roll to either side induces hyperdeviation in the eye on the side of the head tilt. Hyperdeviation of the same eye due to mechanical factors [851,997]. Small vertical deviations in sixth nerve palsy may also have an associated hyperdeviation, usually maximal to the side of the palsy, thought to be due to mechanical factors [851,997]. Rarely, myasthenia gravis may present with isolated superior oblique weakness simulating a trochlear nerve lesion [788]. Thyroid ophthalmopathy may present with what appears to be a unilateral superior oblique paresis (likely actually caused by a restrictive process of the opposite inferior rectus muscle) [180,650]. Decompensation of a latent superior oblique muscle or trochlea is responsible for vertical diplopia. This monocular disorder has both phasic and tonic components and is thought to be due to dysfunction restricted to the superior oblique motor unit, perhaps spontaneous discharge of trochlear motor neurons that have undergone regenerative changes [563,913].

Acquired vertical diplopia (see Table 8.3) is most often due to oculomotor palsies, trochlear palsies, and skew deviation (see below), but it may also be caused by myasthenia gravis, thyroid orbitopathy, Guillain–Barré syndrome, orbital floor fracture, orbital pseudotumor or infiltration, Brown syndrome, Fisher syndrome, botulism, chronic progressive external ophthalmoplegia (CPEO), vertical one-and-a-half syndrome (see below), and monocular supranuclear gaze palsy (see below) [140,482, 541,861,951]. An asymptomatic physiologic hyperdeviation on peripheral gaze, most often simulating the phenomenon of overaction of the inferior obliques, has been described [853]. Patients with sixth nerve palsies may also have an associated hyperdeviation, usually maximal to the side of the palsy, thought to be due to mechanical factors [851,997]. Small vertical deviations in sixth nerve palsy are consistent with normal hyperphorias that become manifest in the presence of esotropia. In peripheral sixth nerve palsy, static head roll to either side induces hyperdeviation in the eye on the side of the head tilt. Hyperdeviation of the same eye due to mechanical factors [851,997]. Small vertical deviations in sixth nerve palsy may also have an associated hyperdeviation, usually maximal to the side of the palsy, thought to be due to mechanical factors [851,997].

Involvement of the trochlear nerve should always be sought in the presence of a third nerve palsy. In this instance, abduction weakness prevents the superior oblique from depressing the eye. If the superior oblique is functional, however, it intorts the eye when the patient is asked to look down. This eye intorsion is subtle and best noted by watching the movement of a horizontally located conjunctival vessel.

Myokymia of the superior oblique muscle, a unicomocular rotatory microtremor, may cause episodes of vertical oscillopsia, shimmering, or transient diplopia [143,777]. This condition is usually benign. It may follow a superior oblique palsy and has a natural history of recurrent spontaneous remissions and relapses. The myokymia may occur in the primary position or be induced by movements into or away from the direction of action of the superior oblique muscle. Superior oblique myokymia may rarely be an isolated manifestation of tectal disease [226,645]. Superior oblique myokymia has also been described with lead intoxication and adrenoleukodystrophy [669]. Neurovascular compression of the trochlear nerve at the root exit zone may be responsible for many cases of superior oblique myokymia [1014]. This monocular disorder has both phasic and tonic components and is thought to be due to dysfunction restricted to the superior oblique motor unit, perhaps spontaneous discharge of trochlear motor neurons that have undergone regenerative changes [563,913].

**ABDUCENS NERVE (CRANIAL NERVE VI)**

**Anatomy.** The paired abducens nucleus is located in the dorsal lower portion of the pons, separated from the floor of the fourth ventricle by the genu of the facial nerve (facial colliculus) (Fig. 8.9). The abducens motoneurons are intermixed with internuclear neurons that send their axons across the midline to the opposite MLF, where they ascend through the pons and midbrain to end in the third nerve nucleus. Thus, the abducens nuclear complex coordinates the action of both eyes to produce horizontal gaze. Axons of the abducens motoneurons course anteriorly in the pons, through the medial lemniscus and medial to the facial nerve fascicles, to emerge in the horizontal
The sulcus between the pons and medulla, lateral to the corticospinal bundles. The abducens nerve then ascends along the base of the pons in the prepontine cistern and enters Dorello’s canal beneath Gruber’s (petroclinoid) ligament (see Fig. 7.4). In the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus, it lies between the carotid artery medially and the ophthalmic branch of the trigeminal nerve laterally (see Fig. 8.5; see also Fig. 7.4). In their course from the pericarotid plexus to the ophthalmic branch of the trigeminal nerve, the pupil’s sympathetic fibers join the abducens nerve for a few millimeters. After passing through the superior orbital fissure, the abducens nerve innervates the lateral rectus muscle.

**Localization of Lesions.** Table 8.12 summarizes this section. Etiologies of abducens nerve palsies based on localization are outlined in Table 8.13 [547].

![Image](https://example.com/image.png)

**TABLE 8.12 The Localization of Abducens Nerve Lesions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Structure Involved</th>
<th>Clinical Presentation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lesions affecting abducens nucleus</td>
<td>Gaze palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abducens nucleus</td>
<td>Möbius syndrome (gaze palsy with facial diplegia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorsolateral pons</td>
<td>Duane’s retraction syndrome (gaze palsy with globe retraction and narrowing of palpebral fissure with adduction)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesions of the abducens fascicle</td>
<td>Ipsilateral gaze palsy, facial paresis, dysmetria; occasionally with contralateral hemiparesis (Foville)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abducens fascicle</td>
<td>Isolated CN VI palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior paramedial pons</td>
<td>Ipsilateral CN VI palsy, Ipsilateral CN VII palsy, contralateral hemiparesis (Millard-Gubler)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepontine cistern</td>
<td>CN VI palsy with or without contralateral hemiparesis (if corticospinal tract involved)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesion of abducens nerve</td>
<td>CN VI palsy, deafness, facial (especially retroorbital) pain (Gradenigo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Petrous apex (Dorello’s canal)</td>
<td>Isolated CN VI palsy; CN VI palsy plus Horner syndrome; Also may affect CN III, IV, V1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cavernous sinus</td>
<td>CN VI palsy with variable affection of CN III, IV, V1; proptosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior orbital fissure syndrome</td>
<td>CN VI palsy; visual loss; variable proptosis, chemosis, lid swelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orbit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## TABLE 8.13
### Etiology of a Sixth Nerve Palsy by Topographical Localization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nuclear (Horizontal gaze)</th>
<th>Nuclear (Horizontal gaze)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Congenital (e.g., Möbius syndrome)</td>
<td>Congenital (e.g., Möbius syndrome)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demyelinating</td>
<td>Demyelinating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infarction or ischemia</td>
<td>Infarction or ischemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuroplasm (pontine and cerebellar)</td>
<td>Neuroplasm (pontine and cerebellar)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histiocytosis X</td>
<td>Histiocytosis X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trauma</td>
<td>Trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Werner–Korsakoff syndrome</td>
<td>Werner–Korsakoff syndrome</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fascicular</th>
<th>Fascicular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Demyelination</td>
<td>Demyelination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infarction</td>
<td>Infarction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuroplasm</td>
<td>Neuroplasm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-Hu paraneoplastic brainstem encephalitis</td>
<td>Anti-Hu paraneoplastic brainstem encephalitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trauma</td>
<td>Trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hematoma</td>
<td>Hematoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Migraine</td>
<td>Migraine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subarachnoid</th>
<th>Subarachnoid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aneurysm or vascular abnormality</td>
<td>Aneurysm or vascular abnormality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persistent primitive trigeminal artery</td>
<td>Persistent primitive trigeminal artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior inferior cerebellar aneurysm</td>
<td>Posterior inferior cerebellar aneurysm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertebrobasilar artery</td>
<td>Vertebrobasilar artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dolichoectasia of the basilar artery or vertebral artery</td>
<td>Dolichoectasia of the basilar artery or vertebral artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurovascular compression at root entry zone causing recurrent episodic sixth nerve palsies</td>
<td>Neurovascular compression at root entry zone causing recurrent episodic sixth nerve palsies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinomatous or leukemic meningitis</td>
<td>Carcinomatous or leukemic meningitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arnold-Chiari malformation or basilar impression</td>
<td>Arnold-Chiari malformation or basilar impression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Following procedures</td>
<td>Following procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervical traction</td>
<td>Cervical traction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lumbar puncture</td>
<td>Lumbar puncture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myelography</td>
<td>Myelography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post vaccination</td>
<td>Post vaccination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiculography</td>
<td>Radiculography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shunting for hydrocephalus</td>
<td>Shunting for hydrocephalus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal or epidural anesthesia</td>
<td>Spinal or epidural anesthesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intrathecal glucocorticoid injection</td>
<td>Intrathecal glucocorticoid injection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post microvascular decompression for trigeminal neuralgia</td>
<td>Post microvascular decompression for trigeminal neuralgia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inflammatory</th>
<th>Inflammatory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Retropharyngeal space inflammation</td>
<td>Retropharyngeal space inflammation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Necrotizing vasculitis</td>
<td>Necrotizing vasculitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarcoidosis</td>
<td>Sarcoidosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systemic lupus erythematosus</td>
<td>Systemic lupus erythematosus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wegener’s granulomatosis</td>
<td>Wegener’s granulomatosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fisher syndrome</td>
<td>Fisher syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infections</td>
<td>Infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brucellosis</td>
<td>Brucellosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lyme disease</td>
<td>Lyme disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syphilis</td>
<td>Syphilis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuberculosis</td>
<td>Tuberculosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cryptococcal meningitis</td>
<td>Cryptococcal meningitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cysticercosis</td>
<td>Cysticercosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV/CMV encephalitis</td>
<td>HIV/CMV encephalitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West Nile meningoencephalitis</td>
<td>West Nile meningoencephalitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudomonas skull-based osteomyelitis</td>
<td>Pseudomonas skull-based osteomyelitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuroplasm</td>
<td>Neuroplasm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abducens nerve tumor</td>
<td>Abducens nerve tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerbellopontine angle tumor</td>
<td>Cerbellopontine angle tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clivus tumor (e.g., chordoma, chordosarcoma, plasmacytoma)</td>
<td>Clivus tumor (e.g., chordoma, chordosarcoma, plasmacytoma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leukemia</td>
<td>Leukemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plasmacytoma</td>
<td>Plasmacytoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metastatic</td>
<td>Metastatic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Skull base tumor | Skull base tumor |
| Naopharyngeal carcinoma | Naopharyngeal carcinoma |
| Trigeminal nerve tumor | Trigeminal nerve tumor |
| Capillary hemangioma of Meckel’s cave | Capillary hemangioma of Meckel’s cave |
| Nonlocalizing sign of increased intracranial pressure | Nonlocalizing sign of increased intracranial pressure |
| Pseudotumor cerebri | Pseudotumor cerebri |
| Meningitis of any type | Meningitis of any type |
| Intracranial tumor | Intracranial tumor |
| Venous sinus thrombosis | Venous sinus thrombosis |
| Syndrome of headache, neurologic deficits, and cerebrospinal fluid lymphocytosis (HaNDL) | Syndrome of headache, neurologic deficits, and cerebrospinal fluid lymphocytosis (HaNDL) |
| Spontaneous cerebrospinal fluid leak with intracranial hypotension | Spontaneous cerebrospinal fluid leak with intracranial hypotension |
| Trauma (excluding surgical) | Trauma (excluding surgical) |
| Epidural hematoma of clivus (posttraumatic) | Epidural hematoma of clivus (posttraumatic) |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Petrous apex</th>
<th>Petrous apex</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neoplasm (e.g., nasopharyngeal carcinoma)</td>
<td>Neoplasm (e.g., nasopharyngeal carcinoma)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection</td>
<td>Infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complicated otitis media</td>
<td>Complicated otitis media</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mastoiditis (Gradensigo’s syndrome)</td>
<td>Mastoiditis (Gradensigo’s syndrome)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrombosis of inferior petrosal or transverse/sigmoid sinus</td>
<td>Thrombosis of inferior petrosal or transverse/sigmoid sinus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trauma</td>
<td>Trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basilar skull fracture</td>
<td>Basilar skull fracture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After balloon compression of retro-gasserian ganglion rootlets for trigeminal neuralgia</td>
<td>After balloon compression of retro-gasserian ganglion rootlets for trigeminal neuralgia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflammatory</td>
<td>Inflammatory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paget’s disease</td>
<td>Paget’s disease</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cavernous sinus</th>
<th>Cavernous sinus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cavernous sinus thrombosis</td>
<td>Cavernous sinus thrombosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cavernous sinus fistula</td>
<td>Cavernous sinus fistula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cavernous carotid artery dolichoectasia</td>
<td>Cavernous carotid artery dolichoectasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superior ophthalmic vein thrombosis</td>
<td>Superior ophthalmic vein thrombosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neoplasm</td>
<td>Neoplasm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasopharyngeal carcinoma</td>
<td>Nasopharyngeal carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pituitary adenoma</td>
<td>Pituitary adenoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plasmacytoma</td>
<td>Plasmacytoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphoma</td>
<td>Lymphoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hodgkin’s disease</td>
<td>Hodgkin’s disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemangioma</td>
<td>Hemangioma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemangioendothelioma</td>
<td>Hemangioendothelioma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malignant trigeminal nerve sheath tumor</td>
<td>Malignant trigeminal nerve sheath tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meningioma</td>
<td>Meningioma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sixth nerve tumors</td>
<td>Sixth nerve tumors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sphenoid sinus tumors</td>
<td>Sphenoid sinus tumors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skull base tumors</td>
<td>Skull base tumors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Squamous cell cancer of pterygopalatine fossa</td>
<td>Squamous cell cancer of pterygopalatine fossa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subarachnoid diverticulum</td>
<td>Subarachnoid diverticulum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sphenoid sinus mucocele</td>
<td>Sphenoid sinus mucocele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ischemia</td>
<td>Ischemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflammatory or infectious</td>
<td>Inflammatory or infectious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herpes zoster</td>
<td>Herpes zoster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actinomycoses</td>
<td>Actinomycoses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actinobacillus actinomycescomitans</td>
<td>Actinobacillus actinomycescomitans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tolosa–Hunt syndrome</td>
<td>Tolosa–Hunt syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internal carotid artery diseases</td>
<td>Internal carotid artery diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aneurysm</td>
<td>Aneurysm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissection</td>
<td>Dissection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dolichoectasia</td>
<td>Dolichoectasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balloon test occlusion</td>
<td>Balloon test occlusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisplatin infusion</td>
<td>Cisplatin infusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post radiofrequency rhizotomy for trigeminal neuralgia</td>
<td>Post radiofrequency rhizotomy for trigeminal neuralgia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesions affecting the *abducens nucleus* cause not only an ipsilateral lateral rectus paresis but also an ipsilateral gaze palsy to the same side because the abducens interneurons are involved. Lesions of the abducens nucleus early in life can cause Möbius syndrome or Duane retraction syndrome. In addition to horizontal gaze disturbances, patients with Möbius syndrome have facial diplegia and may have other cranial nerve abnormalities. Möbius syndrome is often more than a cranial nerve or nuclear developmental disorder. In a study of 37 patients with this disorder and facial weakness, 97% had bilateral and 3% had unilateral ocular abduction weakness [965]. Further analysis showed isolated abducens nerve palsy in 9%, a conjugated horizontal gaze paresis in 48%, features of Duane retraction syndrome in 34%, and CFEOM in 9%. Other signs included lingual involvement (77%), dysfunctions of palate and pharynx (56%), general motor disability (85%), poor coordination (85%), and respiratory abnormalities (19%). Möbius syndrome may thus be considered a disorder of rhombencephalic maldevelopment involving predominantly motor nuclei and axons, as well as traversing long tracts [965]. The disorder may be associated with gaze palsies, Duane retraction syndrome, feeding and respiratory problems, and poor motor development [965].

_Duane retraction syndrome_ is characterized by a narrowing of the palpebral fissure and occasionally globe retraction on adduction [194]. Duane syndrome is more common in females, affects the left more than the right eye, and may be bilateral. Three forms have been described [239]. In type I, abduction is limited, but adduction is normal. Some patients have impaired adduction but normal abduction (type II), whereas others have impairment of both (type III). These patients seldom complain of diplopia, although this symptom may develop later in life. Patients are not usually esotropic in primary gaze, do not develop amblyopia, and do not note diplopia if they look in the field of the paretic muscle (facultative amblyopia). In all types, there may be a vertical deviation of the adducting eye that takes the form of “upshoots” and “downshoots” with shifts of horizontal gaze. Unilateral type I syndrome may rarely be associated with restriction of upgaze in the affected eye [598]. The abducens nerve on the affected side is absent in type I Duane retraction syndrome patients and some type III patients, but is present in type II Duane patients as well as in some type III patients [500]. In terms of the presence or absence of the abducens nerve, type I and type 2 Duane retraction syndrome were homogenous, and type 3 Duane retraction syndrome was heterogeneous. Although Duane retraction syndrome is predominantly congenital, and is thought to be due to anomalous innervation of the lateral rectus muscle by the inferior division of the oculomotor nerve [239], acquired Duane syndrome has been described in patients with pontine glioma, with rheumatoid arthritis, following trigeminal rhizotomy, and after removal of an orbital cavernous hemangioma by lateral orbitotomy [239].

Engle reviewed the rare congenital oculomotor syndromes defined as congenital cranial dysinnervation disorders [273]. These disorders appear to
result from mutations in genes that are essential to the normal development and connectivity of cranial motor neurons. She highlighted the clinical features of three congenital syndromes: the human homeobox Al (HOXA1) syndromes, in which early motorneuron development is disrupted resulting in bilateral Duane syndrome; horizontal gaze palsy with progressive scoliosis, in which there is aberrant axonal targeting onto abducens motor neurons; and CFEOM type 1, in which there is aberrant axonal targeting onto the extraocular muscles [273].

Pontine tegmental lesions are discussed in greater detail in the section on central disturbances of eye movements. Acute lesions of the low dorsolateral pons cause an ipsilateral gaze palsy, facial paresis, and terminal dysmetria. A more extensive unilateral lesion causes contralateral hemiparesis (Foville syndrome), usually due to infarction in the territory of the anterior inferior cerebellar artery. More anterior paramedial lesions spare the abducens nucleus but affect the fascicles, resulting in ipsilateral abducens and facial weakness with contralateral hemiparesis (Millard–Gubler syndrome). Such lesions are often ischemic, but they also include neoplasms, granulomas, multiple sclerosis plaques, or Wernicke’s encephalopathy. Rarely, infarction, tumor, or hemorrhage affecting the abducens nerve fascicle may cause an isolated sixth nerve palsy [153,252,316,453,504,897], and chronic isolated sixth nerve palsies have been described with pontine glioma and extra-axial tumors [218,326]. An acute sixth nerve palsy may be a prominent or presenting symptom of multiple sclerosis [879,897,902] and an isolated fascicular abducens palsy has been described with Lyme disease [606].

Lesions that affect the abducens nerve in the preoptic cistern may compress the ipsilateral corticospinal bundles and result in contralateral hemiparesis. More often, stretching or compression of the trigeminal root results in associated ipsilateral facial pain. A frequent cause of isolated abducens involvement at this level is increased intracranial pressure, for example, due to pseudotumor cerebri (benign intracranial hypertension) [524]. Ophthalmic manifestations, including decreased vision, papilledema, and sixth nerve palsy, may occur in the syndrome of headache, neurologic deficits, and cerebrospinal fluid lymphocytosis (HaNDL) [639]. Spontaneous intracranial hypotension from a dural cerebrospinal fluid leak may also cause abducens palsies [29, 419,635,683,816] as may a lumbar puncture [903]. Cerebellopontine angle tumors may involve the abducens nerve. Compressive lesions in the preoptic cistern causing sixth nerve palsy include dolichoectatic basilar arteries, aneurysms, meningiomas of the clivus, chordomas, chondrosarcomas, schwannomas, and nasopharyngeal carcinomas [302,350,388,950,969,970]. In the preoptic cistern the nerve is also exposed to trauma, meningitis, meningeal carcinomatosis, and Guillain–Barré syndrome. A sixth nerve palsy may be the initial manifestation of sarcoidosis [791] or metastatic prostate cancer [682]. Transient and occasionally recurrent sixth nerve palsies may be the first presentation of acute leukemia [44,994]. Isolated bilateral abducens nerve palsies have occurred with rupture of a vertebral artery aneurysm [640] and with clival metastasis [955] and bilateral palsies have been described with West Nile meningoencephalitis [781].

Combined abducens nerve and hypoglossal nerve palsies are rare. This is often an ominous combination as it may be seen with nasopharyngeal carcinoma (Godtfredsen syndrome) and with other clival lesions, especially tumors (three-quarters of which are malignant) [491]. Although the combination of abducens nerve palsy with hypoglossal nerve palsy usually localizes the pathologic process to the clivus, lower brainstem lesions and subarachnoid processes (e.g., cysticercal meningitis) may also cause this unusual dual cranial nerve impairment [491].

Based on neurologic findings alone, it may be difficult at times to determine whether the nerve has been injured within the subarachnoid space or in its petrous portion, in Dorello’s canal. Concomitant involvement of the trigeminal nerve is more likely if the lesion is in the petrous portion. Other clinical findings may point to disease in the petrous bone, such as an otic discharge from chronic otitis media or mastoiditis, or deafness. An infectious or neoplastic process that spreads to the tip of the petrous bone may result in Gradenigo syndrome, which includes abducens nerve paresis, ipsilateral facial (usually retroorbital) pain, and deafness [221]. Trauma, inferior petrosal sinus thrombosis, vascular malformations, aneurysms, and tumors may also injure the nerve at this level.

Retroorbital pain, involvement of other ocular motor nerves, and, occasionally, an ipsilateral Horner syndrome point to the cavernous sinus as the site of the lesion. The sympathetic fibers to the eye join the abducens nerve for a short distance within the cavernous sinus, and thus a unilateral abducens nerve lesion associated with an ipsilateral Horner syndrome (Parkinson syndrome) is of localizing value [1,847,877]. Tsuda et al. described nine patients with both abducens nerve palsy and a postganglionic Horner syndrome [934]. Neoplasm in the cavernous sinus was observed in two patients, sphenoidal sinus cyst in two, intracavernous carotid aneurysm in two, epipharyngeal carcinoma in one, chordoma in the base of the skull in one, and meningioma in the middle cranial fossa in one. Herpes zoster ophthalmicus may also cause abducens palsy with a Horner syndrome [854]. Similar findings (without a Horner
The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System

In the orbit, or without retroorbital pain or visual impairment, the onset of headache and dysfunction of multiple cranial nerves may occur with ocular motor weakness and retroorbital pain. Facial sensation and visual acuity may be diminished. Tolosa–Hunt syndrome or painful ophthalmoplegia syndrome (see below) may result from excessive convergence. The most common variety is spasm of the near reflex (see below). Acute esotropia has been described with contralateral thalamic infarction in the territory of the penetrating branches of the mesencephalic artery (acute thalamic esotropia) [352]. Acute thalamic hemorrhage may cause bilateral asymmetric esotropia with the contralateral eye more affected than the ipsilateral eye [409].

Although a sixth nerve palsy is probably the most common cause of an acquired abduction deficit or esotropia (or both), other etiologies include thyroid disease, diabetes, collagen-vascular disease, giant cell arteritis [651,760,811,812].

Aneurysm is a rare cause of acquired sixth nerve palsy (vs oculomotor nerve palsy). Recurrent, unilateral, isolated, idiopathic lateral rectus palsy may occur in children [7] or adults [385,961]. An isolated abducens nerve palsy may occur with pregnancy, especially during the third trimester [318]. Combined oculomotor-abducens synkinesis has been described after head trauma [707].

Patel et al. studied 137 new cases of sixth nerve palsy over the 15-year period [711]. The age- and gender-adjusted annual incidence of sixth nerve palsy was 11.3/100,000. Causes and associations were: undetermined (26%), hypertension alone (19%), coexistent hypertension and diabetes (12%), trauma (12%), multiple sclerosis (7%), neoplasms (5%), diabetes alone (4%), cerebrovascular accident (4%), postneurosurgery (3%), aneurysms (2%), and others (8%).

A pseudo-palsy of the sixth nerve may result from excessive convergence. The most common variety is spasm of the near reflex (see below). Acute esotropia has been described with contralateral thalamic infarction in the territory of the penetrating branches of the mesencephalic artery (acute thalamic esotropia) [352]. Acute thalamic hemorrhage may cause bilateral asymmetric esotropia with the contralateral eye more affected than the ipsilateral eye [409].

Although a sixth nerve palsy is probably the most common cause of an acquired abduction deficit or esotropia (or both), other etiologies include thyroid disease, diabetes, collagen-vascular disease, giant cell arteritis [651,760,811,812].

Aneurysm is a rare cause of acquired sixth nerve palsy (vs oculomotor nerve palsy). Recurrent, unilateral, isolated, idiopathic lateral rectus palsy may occur in children [7] or adults [385,961]. An isolated abducens nerve palsy may occur with pregnancy, especially during the third trimester [318]. Combined oculomotor-abducens synkinesis has been described after head trauma [707].

Patel et al. studied 137 new cases of sixth nerve palsy over the 15-year period [711]. The age- and gender-adjusted annual incidence of sixth nerve palsy was 11.3/100,000. Causes and associations were: undetermined (26%), hypertension alone (19%), coexistent hypertension and diabetes (12%), trauma (12%), multiple sclerosis (7%), neoplasms (5%), diabetes alone (4%), cerebrovascular accident (4%), postneurosurgery (3%), aneurysms (2%), and others (8%).

A pseudo-palsy of the sixth nerve may result from excessive convergence. The most common variety is spasm of the near reflex (see below). Acute esotropia has been described with contralateral thalamic infarction in the territory of the penetrating branches of the mesencephalic artery (acute thalamic esotropia) [352]. Acute thalamic hemorrhage may cause bilateral asymmetric esotropia with the contralateral eye more affected than the ipsilateral eye [409].
ophthalmopathy, myasthenia gravis, ocular neuromyotonia, orbital pseudotumor, orbital trauma with medial rectus entrapment, convergence spasm, thalamic esotropia, Duane syndrome, Möbius syndrome, Wernicke–Korsakoff syndrome, divergence paralysis, spasm of the near reflex, midbrain pseudo-sixth, and cyclic oculomotor palsy [141].

The role for immediate neuroimaging in patients 50 years of age or older with acute isolated third, fourth, and sixth nerve palsies is controversial. Chou et al. prospectively evaluated 66 patients, aged 50 years and older (median 67 years, range 50–85), with acute isolated ocular motor mononeuropathies [190]. They found that clinical features, including time to maximal diplopic symptoms, were not predictive of etiology (median 2 days to maximal diplopic symptoms for both peripheral microvascular and other etiologies). The presence of any common vascular risk factor, including diabetes mellitus, hypertension, hypercholesterolemia, or coronary artery disease, was significantly associated with peripheral microvascular etiology in this cohort. Despite the high prevalence of peripheral microvascular ischemia as an etiology in this age group, other causes were identified by magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) or computed tomography (CT) scanning in 14% of patients. Diagnoses included brainstem and skull base neoplasms, brainstem infarcts, aneurysms, demyelinating disease, and pituitary apoplexy. Neuroimaging procedures may thus have a role in the initial evaluation of patients 50 years of age or older with acute ocular motor mononeuropathies [190].

MULTIPLE OCULAR MOTOR NERVE PALSIES

Acute bilateral ophthalmoplegia may result from multiple causes. In patients with acute bilateral ophthalmoplegia, the responsible lesion may be localized to the brainstem, to the cranial nerves, to the region of the cavernous sinus, and to the myoneural junction [238,480,565]. Acute bilateral ophthalmoplegia may be caused by myasthenia gravis, pituitary apoplexy, demyelinating disease, Fisher syndrome, brainstem ischemia or hemorrhage, botulism, diphtheria, Whipple disease, and Wernicke encephalopathy [238,951]. For example, complete bilateral ophthalmoplegia may due to bilateral infarcts in the territory of the paramedian thalamic arteries affecting the midbrain and thalamus [914,925].

Bilateral total ophthalmoplegia, bilateral complete ptosis, and large, unreactive pupils have been described with midbrain hematomas [999]. This constellation of findings was thought due to bilateral third nerve nuclear or fascicular damage or both, bilateral involvement of the interstitial nucleus of Cajal (INC) and the rMLF, and involvement of bilateral horizontal saccadic and smooth pursuit pathways (see below).

Because all three ocular motor nerves are supplied by the inferolateral trunk, an intracavernous branch of the internal carotid [540], a cavernous sinus vascular lesion (e.g., secondary to diabetes mellitus or traumatic internal carotid artery dissection) may cause a complete unilateral ophthalmoplegia, occasionally with pupillary sparing [591,952]. Spontaneous dissection of the cervical internal carotid artery may cause transient or persistent third, fourth, or sixth cranial nerve palsies [814]. Complete unilateral ophthalmoplegia may occur due to herpes zoster ophthalmicus [802].

The triad of ophthalmoplegia, ataxia, and areflexia may make up Miller Fisher syndrome (due to a demyelinating neuropathy induced by antibodies that is thought to be a clinical variant of Guillain–Barre syndrome) [774,951]. The initial symptom is usually diplopia; limb and gait ataxia appear 3 or 4 days later, or at times concurrently with diplopia. Early ocular findings include unilateral or asymmetric bilateral abducens paralysis, but there are reports of upward-gaze paralysis, pupil-sparing oculomotor nerve palsy, pseudo-internuclear ophthalmoplegia, rebound nystagmus (see below), or divergence paresis [494,774]. These usually progress to bilateral ophthalmoplegia within 2 or 3 days. Ptosis occurs in most patients, but associated pupillary paralysis is unusual. Isolated pupillary paralysis without other signs of third nerve involvement rarely occurs [990]. Isolated bilateral ptosis may be the only ophthalmologic sign [867]. Patients with Fisher syndrome, particularly those with ophthalmoplegia, often have antibodies directed against GQ1b IgG. Also, relapsing ophthalmoplegia with a chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyradiculoneuropathy (CIDP) may precede other findings by several weeks [250].

Acute ophthalmoplegia commonly occurs in anti-GQ1b antibody syndrome and manifests as various combinations of external and internal ophthalmoplegia [584]. Lee et al. described 34 patients with anti-GQ1b antibody syndrome [553]. Of these patients, 31 patients had ophthalmoplegia. The patients with ophthalmoplegia were classified into Miller Fisher syndrome (n = 13), acute ophthalmoplegia without ataxia (n = 11), Guillain–Barre syndrome with ophthalmoplegia (n = 6), and Bickerstaff brainstem encephalitis (n = 1). In patients with acute ophthalmoplegia without ataxia with anti-GQ1b antibodies, external ophthalmoparesis was present in all the patients and included mixed horizontal-vertical (n = 7), pure horizontal (n = 3), and pure vertical gaze palsy (n = 1). Binocular involvement was common, but unilateral ophthalmoparesis was also observed in 27.3%. Other findings included ptosis.
(n = 5, 45.5%) and internal ophthalmoplegia (n = 6, 54.5%). Other anti-GQ1b antibody syndromes had prominent neurologic signs including ataxia, weakness, and facial palsy in addition to ophthalmoplegia. The patterns of neuro-ophthalmologic findings did not differ between acute ophthalmoplegia without ataxia and other anti-GQ1b antibody syndromes with ophthalmoplegia. A unilateral oculomotor nerve palsy has been described with the anti-GQ1b antibody syndrome [423].

Keane investigated the causes of bilateral ocular paralysis in 31 patients [493]. Eighteen (58%) of 31 patients had Fisher syndrome (13 cases) or Guillaume–Barre syndrome (5 cases). Four cases resulted from midbrain infarction, three from myasthenia, and one each from pituitary apoplexy, skull base metastasis, botulism, mucormycosis, phenytoin toxicity, and trauma. Thus, many conditions may produce complete ophthalmoplegia on rare occasions, but Fisher syndrome, which paralyses the eyes in nearly one third of cases, was by far the commonest cause in Keane’s series [493].

Wernicke encephalopathy is characterized by the triad of ophthalmoplegia, mental confusion, and gait ataxia and is caused by thiamine deficiency [391,967]. It is commonly encountered in alcoholics, but other causes of malnutrition may cause the syndrome, including eating disorders, gastric bypass, bulimia, fast diets, deficient soy-based infant formulas, and nausea and vomiting due to pregnancy (hyperemesis gravidarum) or chemotherapy. The ocular motor findings in Wernicke encephalopathy include weakness of abduction, gaze-evoked nystagmus, internuclear ophthalmoplegia, vertical nystagmus (downbeat, upbeat, or torsional), impaired vestibular response to caloric stimulation, and horizontal and vertical gaze palsies that may progress to total ophthalmoplegia. Those patients who go on to develop Korsakoff syndrome develop severe, permanent memory loss and oculomotor abnormalities including slow and inaccurate saccades, impaired smooth pursuit, and vertical and gaze-evoked nystagmus. Children with Leigh syndrome (subacute necrotizing encephalopathy of infancy or childhood characterized by psychomotor retardation, seizures, and brainstem abnormalities) may show eye findings similar to those of Wernicke encephalopathy as well as see-saw nystagmus and the ocular tilt reaction (see below).

Carotid-cavernous sinus fistula (CCF) is an abnormal communication between the cavernous sinus and the carotid arterial system. CCFs can be classified by etiology (traumatic versus spontaneous), velocity of blood flow (high vs low flow), and anatomy (direct vs dural; internal carotid vs external carotid vs both). A direct CCF results from a single tear in the wall of the cavernous segment of the internal carotid artery. This produces a direct connection between the artery and one or more of the venous channels within the cavernous sinus. Direct CCFs most often result from head trauma, especially motor vehicle accidents, fights, and falls. A substantial percentage of direct CCFs are caused by rupture of a pre-existing aneurysm of the cavernous segment of the internal carotid artery. Direct CCFs may also be the iatrogenic, occurring after various diagnostic and therapeutic procedures including carotid endarterectomy, cranial and percutaneous retrograde arteriogram performed for the treatment of trigeminal neuralgia, transphenoidal surgery for pituitary adenoma, and various maxillofacial surgeries.

The ocular manifestations of a direct CCF usually are ipsilateral to the side of the fistula but may be bilateral or even contralateral. The lateralization of ocular manifestations depends on the venous drainage of the cavernous sinuses, including the connections between the two sinuses through the intercavernous sinuses and the basilar sinus, the presence or absence of cortical venous drainage, and the presence or absence of thrombosis within the sinus or a superior ophthalmic vein on one or both sides. Proptosis is one of the most common signs observed, occurring in almost all patients. When the superior ophthalmic vein is enlarged, the medial portion of the upper eyelid may be considerably stretched and swollen. Conjunctival chemosis occurs in most patients. As arterial blood is forced anteriorly into the orbital veins, the conjunctival and episcleral veins become dilated, tortuous, and filled with arterial blood. This arterialization of the conjunctival vessels is the hallmark of a CCF. Although it initially may be mistaken for conjunctivitis or episcleritis, the dilation and tortuosity of the affected vessels usually is quite distinctive. Ocular pulsations are caused by transmission of the pulse waves from the internal carotid or ophthalmic artery to the ophthalmic veins. Abnormal oculocarpusations may be visible, sometimes producing pulsing exophthalmos, or only palpable.

Exposure keratopathy is the most frequent corneal sign encountered in patients with a direct CCF. The keratopathy may be aggravated by trigeminal neuropathy caused by injury or by the effects of the fistula on the trigeminal nerve within the cavernous sinus. In many patients with direct CCF, the initial symptom is a pulsatile tinnitus that may be associated with an audible bruit. Diplopia occurs in 60%–70% of patients with direct CCF. The diplopia may be caused by dysfunction of one or more of the ocular motor nerves, the extraocular muscles, or both and the degree of limitation varies from mild limitation to complete ophthalmoplegia. Visual loss associated with a direct CCF may be immediate or delayed. Immediate visual loss is usually caused by
ocular or optic nerve damage at the time of head injury. Delayed visual loss usually is caused by retinal dysfunction, but it may be related to vitreous hemorrhage, anterior ischemic optic neuropathy, or even corneal ulceration. The ophthalmoscopic picture ranges from venous stasis retinopathy to one of frank central retinal vein occlusion.

Occasional patients complain of facial pain in the distribution of the first and rarely the second division of the trigeminal nerve. Some patients will have decreased corneal sensation, decreased facial sensation, or both perhaps related to ischemia or compression of the ophthalmic or maxillary divisions of the trigeminal nerve within the cavernous sinus. Glaucoma develops and 30%–50% of patients, most commonly due to increased episcleral venous pressure or orbital congestion.

A direct CCF should be suspected in any patient who suddenly develops chemosis, proptosis, and a red eye. If there is no history of trauma, one should consider the possibility of a ruptured cavernous aneurysm. Low flow fistulas present more subtly with a subjective bruit, mild proptosis, chemosis, conjunctival edema, and glaucoma. They lie posteriorly in the cavernous sinus and tend to drain posteriorly rather than into the superior ophthalmic vein. They may present with painful ophthalmoplegia without chemosis, dilated episcleral or conjunctival vessels, or proptosis (“white-eye shunt”). Abduction deficits are most common with any CCV but all eye movements may be affected.

The Pupil

SYMPATHETIC AND PARASYMPATHETIC INNERVATION

The iris contains two groups of smooth muscle with reciprocal action: the sphincter and the dilator. Pupillary size (normal = 2–6 mm, average 3 mm in ambient light; smaller in older persons) depends on the balance between sympathetic and parasympathetic tone. Sympathetic innervation, which dilates the pupil, proceeds ipsilaterally from the posterolateral hypothalamus through the lateral tegmentum of the brainstem, the intermediolateral gray matter of the cord at the C8-T2 segments (ciliospinal center of Budge-Waller), the sympathetic chain to the superior cervical ganglion, the carotid plexus, and the ophthalmic branch of the trigeminal nerve, reaching the pupil through the long ciliary nerves (Fig. 8.10; see also Fig. 7.4). From the Edinger–Westphal subnucleus in the rostral portion of the third nerve nuclear complex, parasympathetic tone reaches the constrictor of the pupil through the third nerve, synapsing first in the ciliary ganglion, which is located behind the globe in the orbit on the temporal side of the group.

FIG. 8.10. Sympathetic innervation of the pupil. The first-order neurons are located in the posterolateral hypothalamus. The second-order neurons are in the intermediolateral cell column of the low cervical and upper thoracic cord. The third-order neurons are in the superior cervical ganglion.
Pupillary asymmetry is often the point of departure for diagnosis of lesions in the pupillomotor pathways [909,547]. If anisocoria is present and the pupillary light reaction is normal in both eyes, then physiologic (simple) anisocoria [534], Horner syndrome, or sympathetic irritation should be considered. Several steps are taken to diagnose the cause of pupillary asymmetry.

PUPILLARY INEQUALITY (ANISOCORIA)
Except for midbrain lesions and some unusual cases of bilateral miosis due to sympathetic damage, structural lesions impinging on the pupillomotor pathways are often unilateral and result in pupillary inequality (anisocoria). If a large pupil (mydriasis) is poorly reactive to light and the visual afferent system is normal, then a defect in the efferent parasympathetic innervation to this pupil is likely. Because this pathway courses for the most part with the third nerve, lesions affecting it are often accompanied by a lesser or greater degree of weakness of the extraocular muscles innervated by the oculomotor nerve and by an impaired light reflex (see Fig. 8.11).

Careful examination of pupillary reaction to light and near and attention to distinctive associated signs and symptoms allows differentiation of the abnormalities in pupil size and response to stimuli. Old photographs may be helpful in defining the duration of anisocoria (asymmetry of pupillary size). Generally the history and examination will distinguish the major entities causing an abnormal large pupil (e.g., third nerve palsy, tonic pupil, iris damage, pharmacological dilation, or sympathetic irritation) or small pupil (e.g., Horner syndrome, simple anisocoria, pharmacologic miosis). Pharmacologic testing further confirms the diagnosis and allows topographical localization in many cases.
SIMPLE ANISOCORIA
If both pupils react normally to light, the patient may have simple anisocoria [906].

Between 15%–30% of the normal population have a difference in pupillary size of 0.4 mm or greater [534,906]. These patients have no associated ptosis or dilation lag and no evidence of iris injury or topical drugs. Topical cocaine will dilate both pupils equally (see pharmacologic testing of Horner syndrome below). Apraclonidine drops have no effect in eyes with intact sympathetic innervation (see below).

SYMPATHETIC DYSFUNCTION (HORNER SYNDROME)
If there is anisocoria and both pupils respond normally to light, it is likely that the smaller pupil is the abnormal one and that the anisocoria will become more pronounced when the lights in the examining room are turned off. While the lights are being turned off, one should look for a “dilatation lag” of the smaller pupil. If present, there may be more pupillary asymmetry 5 seconds after the lights are turned off than 15 seconds afterward. A dilatation lag implies poor sympathetic tone and is therefore indicative of a Horner syndrome. Horner syndrome comprises the triad of miosis, ptosis (due to paresis of Müller muscle), and anhidrosis of the forehead [906]. However, anhidrosis is inconsistent after postganglionic lesions. Theoretically, because the sympathetic fibers that innervate the forehead follow the external carotid artery, lesions distal to the carotid bifurcation would be unaccompanied by anhidrosis of the forehead (see Fig. 8.10). This is, however, an unreliable sign. Miosis may not be perceptible if the patient with a Horner syndrome is in a state of high sympathotonic activity, such as marked fear or anxiety. In these cases, high levels of circulating norepinephrine dilate the pupil.

Other signs of a Horner syndrome may include lower lid elevation (“upside-down” ptosis or “reverse ptosis sign”) due to paresis of the smooth muscle attached to the inferior tarsal plate, apparent enophthalmos, increased accommodation, and ocular hypotony. Pallor of the iris, resulting in different colors of the two irides (heterochromia iridis), may accompany oculosympathetic paralysis that was sustained early in life (before age 2) (congenital Horner syndrome). Progressive heterochromia may rarely occur with an acquired Horner syndrome in adults and has been described following sympathectomy, other cervical operations, and internal carotid cut down [245]. The clinical findings in Horner syndrome are summarized in Table 8.14.

The diagnosis of Horner syndrome can be confirmed by instilling in both eyes one drop of a 10% cocaine solution [470]. Another drop is instilled 1 minute later, and the result is read in 45 minutes with the patient in the dark. The normal pupil dilates after cocaine instillation, which blocks the presynaptic reuptake of norepinephrine at the neuromuscular junction in the dilator muscle, but in Horner syndrome the pupil fails to dilate. Antihypertensive medications prevent pupillary dilatation by cocaine. A solution of 1% hydroxyamphetamine hydrobromide (which releases norepinephrine into the synaptic cleft) instilled at least 48 hours after the cocaine test, dilates a pupil in Horner syndrome only if the lesion is preganglionic. No pharmacologic test available will differentiate a first-order from a second-order neuron Horner syndrome. Thus, a preganglionic Horner syndrome (with intact postganglionic third order neuron) will dilate after administration of topically hydroxyamphetamine 1% (Paradrine) while a postganglionic Horner syndrome pupil will not dilate (no norepinephrine stores). It should be noted that a false negative Paradrine test may occur with postganglionic Horner syndrome during the first week after injury [251].

Apraclonidine drops are now replacing cocaine for the diagnosis of Horner syndrome because they are easy to obtain. Testing with Apraclonidine (lopidine®) involves instillation of two drops of 0.5 or 1% apraclonidine in both eyes. After 30 to 45 minutes, a normal pupil does not dilate while a Horner pupil dilates and the anisocoria will reverse. The palpebral fissure enlarges (apraclonidine reverses the Horner syndrome). Apraclonidine is a direct α-receptor agonist (strong α2 and weak α1). It has no effect in eyes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 8.14 Clinical Findings in Horner Syndrome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Ipsilateral mild (usually &lt; 2 mm) ptosis (due to denervation of the Müller’s muscle of the upper eyelid)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• “Upside down ptosis” (from sympathetic denervation to the lower eyelid retractors)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Apparent enophthalmos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Anisocoria due to ipsilateral miosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Dilation lag (slow dilation of the pupil after the lights are dimmed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Increased accommodative amplitude or accommodative paresis (e.g., patients hold the near card closer to read)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Transient (acute phase) ocular hypotony and conjunctival hyperemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Variable ipsilateral facial anhidrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ipsilateral straight hair in some congenital cases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Heterochromia of the iris (usually congenital but rarely acquired) [249]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Rarely neurotrophic corneal endothelial failure with pain and stromal edema (rare) [1016]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ipsilateral nasal obstruction with contralateral rhinorrhea with infantile cases (rare) [887]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System

with intact sympathetic innervation but causes mild pupillary dilation in eyes with sympathetic denervation regardless of the lesion location (i.e., with denervation hypersensitivity, the a1 effect dilates the Horner pupil) [545].

A Horner syndrome may result from a lesion anywhere along a three–neuron pathway [248] that arises as a first-order (central) neuron from the posterolateral hypothalamus, descends in the brainstem and lateral column of the spinal cord to exit at the cervical (C8) and thoracic (T1–T2) levels (ciliospinal center of Budge) of the spinal cord as a second-order neuron. This second-order (intermediate) preganglionic neuron exits the ventral root and arches over the apex of the lung to ascend in the cervical sympathetic chain. The second-order neurons synapse in the superior cervical ganglion and exit as a third-order neuron. The neural fibers for sweating of the face travel with the external carotid artery. The third-order postganglionic neuron travels with the carotid artery into the cavernous sinus, on to the abducens nerve for a short course, and then travels with the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve, to join the nasociliary branch of the trigeminal nerve, pass through the ciliary ganglion, and reach the eye as long and short ciliary nerves. Etiologies of central (first order), preganglionic (second order), postganglionic (third order), and traumatic Horner syndrome are outlined in Table 8.15.

Patients with a central or first-order Horner syndrome can usually be identified by the presence of associated hypothalamic, brainstem, or spinal cord signs or symptoms. A central Horner syndrome may be seen with hypothalamic infarction, hemorrhage, or tumor [43,660,873], but it occurs more commonly following brainstem vascular lesions. Horner syndrome may occur with midbrain infarction [89] or anterior spinal artery thrombosis [857] and is part of the lateral medullary syndrome of Wallenberg [136,507]. The alternate clinical pattern of a central Horner’s syndrome with contralateral ataxic hemiparesis is a stroke syndrome of the diencephalic–mesencephalic junction, resulting from the involvement of the common arterial supply to the paramedian/anterior thalamus, the posterior hypothalamus, and the rostral paramedian midbrain [782]. A Horner syndrome involving the first-order neurons has been reported in midbrain lesions with a contralateral trochlear nerve palsy [207,369,658] and with bilateral abducens palsy due to pontine infarction [498]. Giant cell arteritis has been associated with a unilateral internuclear ophthalmoplegia and an ipsilateral Horner syndrome [39]. Lyme disease may result in a reversible preganglionic or central Horner syndrome [345].

The preganglionic (intermediate or second order) Horner syndrome may have neck or arm pain, anhidrosis involving the face and neck, brachial plexopathy, vocal cord paralysis, or phrenic nerve palsy. Neoplasm located in the neck, head, brachial plexus, or lung (e.g., glomus tumors, breast cancer, sarcomas, lung cancer, lymphoreticular neoplasms, neurofibroma, or thyroid adenoma [307]) may cause a second-order Horner syndrome as may mediastinal or neck lymphadenopathy. In patients with cancer and a brachial plexopathy, a Horner syndrome appears more often with metastatic disease than with radiation injury [521]. Pancoast tumor often involves the sympathetic chain [41]. Mass lesions in the neck may produce a preganglionic Horner syndrome associated with vocal cord paralysis and phrenic nerve palsy (Rowland–Payne syndrome) [427]. Cervicothoracic abnormalities causing a Horner syndrome include a cervical rib, pachymeningitis, hypertrophic spinal arthrosis, foraminial osteophyte, ruptured intervertebral disc, thoracic aneurysm, herpes zoster in T3-T4 distribution, and continuous thoracic epidural analgesia [583,733]. Neck, brachial plexus or lung trauma or surgery, including birth trauma (Klumpke paralysis), upper cervical sympathectomy, anterior C3-C6 fusion, and radical thyroid surgery may also cause a Horner syndrome [703,857]. Other causes of second-order Horner syndrome include internal jugular vein thrombosis in polycythemia vera [346], thoracic aneurysms, and infectious or inflammatory processes.

The postganglionic (third order) Horner syndrome patient may have ipsilateral pain and other symptoms suggestive of cluster or migraine headaches (e.g., tearing, facial flushing, rhinorrhea) [237,597]. Anhidrosis in postganglionic Horner syndrome is often absent, but because the sweat glands of the forehead are supplied by the terminal branches of the internal carotid nerve, involvement of these fibers after they have separated from the remaining facial sweat fibers may explain the occurrence of anhidrosis of the forehead with sparing of the rest of the face in these patients [638]. A Horner syndrome may accompany ipsilateral carotid artery occlusive disease, but carotid stenosis may instead give rise to a dilated, poorly reactive pupil, perhaps because of ischemia of the iris. Dissection of the internal carotid artery (e.g., traumatic, spontaneous) may result in a Horner syndrome [105,107,111,154,815]. Biousse et al., for example, studied 146 patients with internal carotid artery dissections and found that 44% (41 of 146) had a painful Horner syndrome that was isolated in half of the cases (32 out of 65) [107]. Biousse et al. state that “the association of a third order Horner syndrome and orbital and/or ipsilateral head pain or neck pain of acute onset is so characteristic that it should be considered diagnostic of internal carotid artery dissection unless
TABLE 8.15  Etiologies of Horner Syndrome

### Central Causes of Horner Syndrome
- Neoplasm
  - Hypothalamic/Pituitary
  - Third ventricle
  - Brainstem
  - Spinal cord
  - Infection
  - Syphilis
  - Poliomyelitis
  - Meningitis
  - Abscess
- Demyelination
- Inflammation (e.g., sarcoid)
- Trauma
- Hemorrhage
- Ischemia or infarction
  - Midbrain
  - Diencephalic-mesencephalic junction
  - Hypothalamic
  - Wallenberg syndrome
  - Giant cell arteritis (unilateral internuclear ophthalmoplegia with ipsilateral HS)
- Anterior spinal artery thrombosis
- Septic embolus
- Syringomyelia (if central or preganglionic Horner’s)

### Etiologies of Preganglionic Intermediate Horner Syndrome
- Neoplasm (including neck, head, brachial plexus, lung)
  - Glomus tumors
  - Breast cancer
  - Sarcomas
  - Lung cancer
  - Lymphomatous neoplasms
  - Neurofibroma or schwannoma
  - Neuroblastoma
  - Chordoma
  - Thyroid adenoma
  - Giant primary mediastinal hydatid cyst
- Syringomyelia (if central or preganglionic Horner’s)
- Mediastinal or neck lymphadenopathy
- Cervicothoracic abnormalities
  - Cervical rib
  - Pachymeningitis
  - Hypertrophic spinal arthritis
  - Foraminal osteophyte
  - Ruptured intervertebral disc
  - Thoracic aneurysm
  - Herpes zoster in T3-T4 distribution
  - Continuous thoracic epidural analgesia
- Neck, brachial plexus or lung trauma or surgery
  - Carotid endarterectomy
  - Birth trauma (Klumpke’s paralysis)
  - Surgical or procedural trauma
  - Subclavian or central venous catheterization
  - Upper cervical sympathectomies
  - Anterior C5-C6 fusion
  - Radical thyroid surgery
  - Chest trauma
  - Implantation of vagus nerve stimulator for epilepsy
- Internal jugular vein thrombosis in polycythemia vera
- Thoracic aneurysms
- Pseudoaneurysm of subclavian artery in an intravenous drug user
- Infection or inflammation (e.g., mediastinitis, pneumonia, retropharyngeal abscess)
- Thoracic endometriosis
- Ectopic cervical thymus or thymic rest
- Pneumomediastinum

### Etiologies of a Postganglionic Horner Syndrome
- Cavernous sinus lesions
- Inflammatory lesions of adjacent structures
  - Cervical lymphadenopathy
  - Orbit media (caroticocutaneous plexus)
  - Petrositis
  - Sphenoid sinus mucocoele
- Infectious
  - Severe purulent otitis media (caroticocutaneous plexus)
  - Herpetic geniculate neuralgia
  - Lyme disease
  - Meningitis
  - Sinusitis
- Neoplasm
  - Cavernous sinus
  - Cervical node metastasis
  - Cervical sympathetic chain schwannoma or neurofibromas
  - Metastatic
  - Orbital
  - Pituitary apoplexy
  - Prolactinoma
  - Systemic peripheral or autonomic disorders
    - Diabetes
    - Amyloidosis
    - Ross syndrome
    - Fisher syndrome
    - Mononeuritis multiplex due to CMV in patient with AIDS
    - Pure autonomic failure
    - Hereditary sensory and autonomic neuropathy (HSAN) type III
    - Familial dysautonomia
    - Dopamine beta-hydroxylase deficiency
    - Multiple systems atrophy (Shy-Drager syndrome)
- Trauma including surgery
  - Basilar skull fracture
  - Orbital fractures
  - Radical middle ear surgery
  - Injection or surgery of the Gasserian ganglion
  - Intracranial trauma to internal carotid sympathetic plexus
  - Tonsillectomy
  - Following coil embolization of an intracavernous carotid artery aneurysm
  - Carotid wall hernoma after stent placement for the treatment of carotid stenoses
  - Traumatic pseudoaneurysm of the internal carotid artery
neoplastic, or vascular disease of the cavernous sinus may result in ipsilateral retroorbital pain and a Horner syndrome (Raeder paratrigeminal neuralgia) [365]. Other causes of a third-order Horner syndrome include infectious or inflammatory lesions (e.g., cervical lymphadenopathy, otitis media, petrositis, sphenoid sinus mucocele, herpetic geniculate neuralgia, meningitis, sinusitis), neoplasms (e.g., cervical node proven otherwise” [107]. Table 8.16 outlines other neurologic signs and symptoms that may occur with carotid artery dissection.

Postganglionic Horner syndrome due to cavernous sinus lesions (e.g., thrombosis, infection, neoplasm) usually are associated with other localizing signs such as ipsilateral third, fourth, or sixth nerve palsy or trigeminal nerve dysfunction. Inflammatory, neoplastic, or vascular disease of the cavernous sinus may result in ipsilateral retroorbital pain and a Horner syndrome (Raeder paratrigeminal neuralgia) [365]. Other causes of a third-order Horner syndrome include infectious or inflammatory lesions (e.g., cervical lymphadenopathy, otitis media, petrositis, sphenoid sinus mucocele, herpetic geniculate neuralgia, meningitis, sinusitis), neoplasms (e.g., cervical node

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 8.15</th>
<th>Etiologies of Horner Syndrome (Continued)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Prolonged abnormal posture during coma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Chest tube placement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Head trauma with intracranial carotid artery injury</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Birth-related</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Vascular abnormalities of the internal carotid artery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Congenital anomalies (e.g., congenital agenesis of internal carotid artery)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Fibromuscular dysplasia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Takayasu’s arteritis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Carotid artery aneurysms or dissection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Jugular vein thrombosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Arteriosclerosis or thrombosis of the internal carotid artery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Agenesis of internal carotid artery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Giant cell arteritis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Traumatic Horner Syndrome**

- Direct or indirect trauma to the sympathetic chain
- Medical procedures
- Chest tube above the third posterior rib
- Extratracheal analgesia
- Lumbar epidural anesthesia
- Thoracic epidural analgesia
- Percutaneous catheterization of the internal jugular vein
- Swan-Ganz catheterization via the internal jugular vein
- Carotid artery damage (e.g., carotid angiography)
- Carotid wall hematoma after stent placement for the treatment of carotid stenoses
- Intracranial anesthesia
- Chiropractic manipulation
- Surgery
- Cardiac surgery
- Median sternotomy
- Intentional surgical damage (e.g., sympathectomy)
- Thoracic esophageal surgery
- Anterior cervical spine surgery
- Cervical sympathetic chain schwannoma resection
- Other
  - After patient malpositioning
  - Interscalene brachial plexus block
  - Stereotactic thalamotomy
  - Intrathecal bicillin injections in the neck
  - Traumatic internal carotid dissection
  - Traumatic pseudoaneurysm of the internal carotid artery
  - Injection into the carotid artery of heroin by a drug addict

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 8.16</th>
<th>Associated Signs and Symptoms of Carotid Artery Dissection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Ipsilateral orbital, facial or neck pain (present in 90% of cases; ipsilateral to involved vessel in 80%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Pain may occur without associated neurologic findings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Diplopia (transient or persistent)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• May be due to cavernous carotid involvement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• More likely due to transient or permanent impairment of blood supply through inferolateral trunk supplying third, fourth, and sixth cranial nerves</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Also possible due to orbital (extraocular muscle) ischemia or ophthalmic artery occlusion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• May have third, fourth, and/or sixth cranial nerve palsies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Transient carotid distribution ischemic attacks (e.g., amaurosis fugax), sometimes evoked by changes in posture</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Transient monocular “scintillations” or “flashing lights”, often related to postural changes or exposure to bright lights (possible choroidal ischemia)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Visual loss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Anterior (AION) or posterior (PION) ischemic optic neuropathy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Central retinal artery occlusion (CRAO), branch retinal artery occlusion (BRAO)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ophthalmic artery occlusion (often associated with head or neck pain)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ocular ischemic syndrome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Homonymous hemianopia from occipital lobe infarction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Horner syndrome (third order, often painful)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Harlequin syndrome (pallor of forehead and nose on side of Horner syndrome after physical activity)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Transient unilateral mydriasis (rare)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Neck bruit or swelling</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Other neurologic deficits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Dysequasia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Tinnitus (often pulsatile)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Syncope</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Other cranial neuropathy (VI, IX, X, XI, XII)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• TIA or cerebral ischemia in carotid distribution</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Skin biopsies might show ultrastructural connective tissue abnormalities.
A Horner syndrome that alternates from one eye to the other (“alternating” Horner syndrome) usually over days to weeks has been described with cervical cord lesions, syringomyelia, radiation myelopathy, and Shy–Drager syndrome [890]. Recurrent isolated Horner syndrome has also been described [659].

A Horner syndrome may be a precursor to benign transient episodes of pupillary distortion characterized by peaked elongation of the pupillary aperture (“tadpole-shaped” pupil) [910]. This benign phenomenon is likely caused by segmental spasm of the iris dilator muscle and may also occur in migraineurs and, rarely, in association with tonic pupils. Sym pathetic vasodilatory and sudomotor fibers from the stellate ganglion mediate the principal reflex control of human facial thermoregulatory flushing and sweating [181]. Heat stress, exercise, or sudden emotion in the patient with hemifacial cutaneous sympathetic denervation may elicit a dramatic alteration in facial appearance known as harlequin syndrome, in which a distinct line divides the denervated pale and dry half from the intact red and moist half. At rest, the only visible sign of sympathetic asymmetry may be oculosympathetic paresis, but this is not always present. In a report of 39 patients with harlequin syndrome, 64% had abnormal pupils, most commonly Horner syndrome (46%) on the nonflushing side [147]. This oculosympathetic deficit was almost always postganglionic. Whereas harlequin syndrome is usually benign and imaging studies are unrevealing, it is worth noting that in this series one patient in whom topical hydroxyamphetamine indicated a preganglionic oculosympathetic deficit had been treated for an apical lung (Pancoast) tumor. Another 13% of patients with harlequin syndrome had tonic pupils (see below) with attenuated light responses, slow but exaggerated near responses with light-near dissociation, and sector palsy, and two patients had supersensitivity to 0.1% pilocarpine. Sympathetic or parasympathetic pupillary abnormalities were bilateral in 15%, and combined sympathetic and parasympathetic deficits occurred in 7%. Harlequin syndrome has also been described with spontaneous dissection of the cervical carotid artery [806] and in association with Ross syndrome, which is a partial dysautonomia comprising the clinical triad of unilateral or bilateral tonic pupils, segmental anhidrosis involving the face or body, and tendon hyporeflexia [255,840]. Bilateral extreme miosis (“pinpoint pupils”) may be caused by the binocular application of strong parasympathomimetic agents, pontine hemorrhage, or the use of narcotics [158]. Unilateral extreme miosis suggests the use of a strong topical parasympathomimetic agent [298].

PARASYMPATHETIC DYSFUNCTION

If anisocoria is present and one of the pupils, generally the larger one, reacts poorly to light, the diagnosis can be narrowed to four possibilities:

1. Patients with anisocoria and a poorly reactive pupil should be evaluated for an ipsilateral third nerve palsy. Nuclear lesions involve both eyes. Pupillary irregularity or eccentricity (sector palsy) of the iris sphincter may result from lesions anywhere along the third nerve or in the midbrain but not from pharmacologic blockade. Pupillary dilatation and unresponsiveness, with relatively preserved extraocular muscle function, is characteristic of compression of the third nerve in the subarachnoid space, usually by the uncus of the temporal lobe or by an internal carotid-posterior communicating artery aneurysm [514]. Pupillary sparing is the rule with ischemic (e.g., diabetic) oculomotor neuropathy [668] and may be seen with systemic lupus erythematosus [779]. Compressive cavernous sinus lesions may spare the pupil because they often involve only the superior division of the oculomotor nerve, which carries no pupillomotor fibers, or the superior aspect of the nerve anterior to the point where the pupillomotor fibers descend in their course near the inferior oblique muscle. Also, the pupillary sparing may be more apparent than real, resulting from simultaneous injury to the pupillary sphincter and dilator with cavernous sinus lesions or from aberrant regeneration [514]. Although an extra-axial lesion (e.g., unruptured intracranial aneurysm) compressing the third nerve may cause a dilated pupil in isolation (or with minimal ocular motor nerve paresis) [79], in the absence of an extraocular motility deficit and/or ptosis, an isolated dilated pupil is usually not due to third nerve paresis. In addition, although intracranial aneurysms, especially those involving the posterior communicating artery-internal carotid artery junction, often produce a fixed and dilated pupil, this is almost always associated with other signs of a third nerve palsy [623]. Crompton and Moore reported two cases of isolated pupil dilation due to aneurysm but these patients developed severe headache and eventual signs of a third nerve palsy [205]. Fujinawa et al. reviewed 26 patients with an oculomotor palsy due to cerebral aneurysm and reported three with...
only ptosis and anisocoria [314]. Gale and Crockard observed transient unilateral mydriasis in a patient with a basilar aneurysm [322]. Miller reported an isolated internal ophthalmoplegia in a patient with a basilar aneurysm [623]. A patient with an isolated dilated left pupil in whom the ciliary ganglion was compressed by the combination of a duplicated superior cerebellar artery, the posterior communicating artery, and the P1 segment of the posterior cerebral artery has also been described [18]. Wfolch et al. described an oculomotor nerve paresis due to a neurinoma of the third nerve that began as an isolated internal ophthalmoplegia in 1979 and then developed into a more typical third nerve palsy in 1993 [988]. Kaye-Wilson et al. also described a patient who initially had only minimal pupil signs due to a neurinoma of the third nerve [475]. A mydriatic pupil was the presenting sign of a common carotid artery dissection with the pupil dilation preceding other signs and symptoms of a third nerve palsy and cerebral ischemia [518]. An 8-month-old boy has been described who presented with anisocoria, a sluggish reactive right pupil, and cholinergic supersensitivity as the only signs of what proved months later to be compressive third cranial nerve palsy due to an arachnoid cyst [38]. Thus, although there are rare exceptions, in a patient with an isolated dilated pupil in the presence of normal extraocular motility, a third nerve palsy can be safely excluded in almost every circumstance simply with close follow-up.

2. Damage to the ciliary ganglion or the short ciliary nerves, results in a tonic pupil. Initially there is an isolated internal ophthalmoplegia (a fixed, dilated pupil with loss of accommodation), but later there is mydriasis with a poor or absent reaction to light but a slow constriction to prolonged near effort (light-near dissociation). Redilation after constriction to near stimuli is slow and tonic. Segmental vermiform movements of the iris borders may be evident on a slit lamp exam (due to sector palsy of other areas of the iris sphincter), and cholinergic supersensitivity (see below) of the denervated iris sphincter may be demonstrated. The vermiform iris movements represent physiologic pupillary unrest or hippus that becomes more impressive because it occurs only in portions of the iris in which the iris sphincter still reacts. In some cases there is no reaction at all to light, with the iris sphincter palsy diffuse rather than segmental.

Tonic pupils are thought to be due to damage of the ciliary ganglion or short ciliary nerves with subsequent collateral sprouting, resulting in the iris sphincter being almost entirely innervated by accommodative elements. They occur from local damage to the ciliary ganglion or short ciliary nerves, as part of a widespread peripheral or autonomic neuropathy, or in otherwise healthy individuals (Adie tonic pupil syndrome) [547,623]. The clinical features of a tonic pupil are outlined in Table 8.17 and potential etiologies of a tonic pupil are listed in Table 8.18. Adie syndrome may be unilateral or bilateral, is more common in young women of age 20 to 40, and may be associated with impaired corneal sensation and depressed or absent patellar and Achilles tendon reflexes (the Holmes–Adie syndrome) [623]. With time, ciliary muscle dysfunction tends to resolve, and the pupil becomes progressively miotic (“little old Adie’s”). The pupillary light reflex does not recover and may worsen. Some patients may have primary miotic Adie pupils without passing through a mydriatic phase [776]. There is a tendency for patients with unilateral Adie syndrome to develop a tonic pupil in the opposite eye.

A tonic pupil may also be seen with hyporeflexia and progressive segmental hypohidrosis (Ross syndrome) [982]. Bilateral ciliary ganglion ischemia is also the likely cause of the bilateral, asymmetric mydriasis that has rarely been noted with giant cell arteritis [208]. Syphilis (e.g., taboparesis) may produce large pupils that are fixed to both light and near-effort; thus, patients with bilateral tonic pupils should have serologic tests for syphilis [296,907].

3. Damage to the iris due to ischemia, trauma, or an inflammatory process may cause mydriasis. Clinical characteristics suggesting abnormalities of the iris structure as a cause for mydriasis include: no associated ptosis or ocular motility disturbance (vs third nerve palsy); the pupil is often irregular with tears in pupillary margin due to tears in iris sphincter (vs smooth margin in drug related pupillary abnormalities); irregular contraction of the pupil to light; the eventual development of
A careful history is usually all that is required in patients with inadvertent or intentional (e.g., glaucoma medication, treatment with topical cycloplegics for uveitis) exposure to agents that may affect iris atrophy; and poor or no response of the pupil to 1% pilocarpine.

4. Mydriasis may be induced by the instillation of a parasympatholytic drug (e.g., atropine, scopolamine). Unilateral mydriasis may follow the use of transdermal scopolamine to prevent motion sickness [182], the accidental instillation into the eye of fluids from certain plants (e.g., jimsonweed) that contain belladonna and atropine-like alkaloids, and exposure to certain cosmetics and perfumes.

A careful history is usually all that is required in patients with inadvertent or intentional (e.g., glaucoma medication, treatment with topical cycloplegics for uveitis) exposure to agents that may affect

---

**TABLE 8.18** Etiologies of a Tonic Pupil

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Local (ocular or orbital) lesion affecting ciliary ganglion or nerve</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Campylobacter jejuni enteritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cellulitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chickenpox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytopathivirus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Choroiditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diptheria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herpes simplex virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herpes zoster virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herpes 6 virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTLV- II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Influenza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parvovirus B19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pertussis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scarlet fever</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simnths</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syphils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Varicella virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viral hepatitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post measles vaccination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflammation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iris/ivertis damage to ciliary ganglion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rheumatoid arthritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarcoidosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vogt-Koyanagi–Harada syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endometriosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infiltration of ciliary nerves by leukemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ischemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orbital vasculitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphomatoid granulomatosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Migraine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giant cell atenitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orbital or chooidal tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyarteritis nodosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local anesthesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inferior dental block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Injection of retrobulbar alcohol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cataract surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cryotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diathermy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penetrating keratoplasty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retinal surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Strabismus surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orbital surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laser therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orbital neural-glial hamartoma associated with a congenital tonic pupil.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quinine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trichloroethylene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trauma (non-surgical)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blunt trauma to ciliary plexus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orbital floor fracture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retrolublar hemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Damage to short ciliary nerves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuropathic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peripheral or autonomic neuropathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amyloidosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol-related</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Familial dysautonomia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hereditary neuropathy (e.g., Charcot–Marie–Tooth disease)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guillain–Barré syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fisher syndrome (including isolated bilateral internal ophthalmoplegia with IgG anti-GQ1b antibodies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyradiculoneuropathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute sensorimotor polyneuropathy with tonic pupils and abduction deficit with polyarteritis nodosa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pandysautonomia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Progressive autonomic failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shy–Drager syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosé syndrome (tonic pupil, hyporeflexia segmental anhidrosis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Segmental facial anhidrosis and tonic pupils with preserved deep tendon reflexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sjogren’s syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systemic infectious (e.g., syphilis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fibromuscular dysplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paraneoplastic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eaton–Lambert syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carcinomatous neuropathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital neuroblastoma with Hirschprung disease and central hypoventilation syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unilateral Adie pupil in patient with small cell lung cancer and anti-Hu antibodies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adie pupil with sensory neuropathy in a patient with serinmonia and anti-Hu antibodies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reversible tonic pupil with non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital neuroblastoma, Hirschprung disease, central hypoventilation syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malignant lymphoma in the cavernous sinus with bilateral total ophthalmoplegia and tonic pupils</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Following ocularotor nerve palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Following bone marrow transplantation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adie tonic pupil syndrome</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

pupil size. In general, in accidental pharmacologic pupillary abnormalities, a large pupil indicates increased sympathetic tone with dilator stimulation (e.g., ocular decongestants, adrenergic inhalants in the intensive care unit, etc.) or decreased parasympathetic tone with sphincter block (e.g., Belladonna alkaloids, scopolamine patch, anticholinergic inhalants, topical gentamicin, lidocaine injection in orbit, etc.). Small pupils indicate decreased sympathetic tone or increased parasympathetic stimulation (e.g., pilocarpine, glaucoma drops, anticholinesterases such as flea or tick collar or insecticides [293]).

Nurses, physicians, and other health care workers are particularly prone to inadvertent or intentional exposure to pharmacological mydriatics. The pupil size of patients with pharmacologic sphincter blockade is often quite large (>8 mm), often on the order of 10 to 12 mm in diameter, which is much greater than the mydriasis usually seen in a typical third nerve palsy or tonic pupil syndromes. The pupils are evenly affected 360 degrees (vs a tonic pupil) and smoothly affected around without irregularity (vs iris trauma). Adrenergic pharmacologic mydriasis (e.g., phenylephrine) may be clinically distinguished by blanched conjunctival vessels, residual light reaction, and a retracted upper lid due to sympathetic stimulation of the upper lid retractor muscle. Most eye-whitening drops (e.g., oxymetazoline, phenylephrine) contain sympathomimetics too weak to dilate the pupil unless the eye is abraded (e.g., contact lens wear). With adrenergic mydriasis, the pupil may react to bright light due to the working iris sphincter muscle that can overcome dilator spasm.

Cholinergic supersensitivity, which is characteristic of a tonic pupil, mediates pupillary constriction when 0.1% pilocarpine is instilled. This drug has no effect on normal individuals but causes miosis in tonic pupils. Cholinergic supersensitivity of the pupil may occasionally occur with nonischemic oculomotor nerve palsies and may be related to the degree of preganglionic injury to the pupillomotor fibers [432]. A stronger solution of pilocarpine (1%) causes constriction in the case of a third nerve lesion but does not modify pupillary size if the anisocoria is due to an atropinic drug or to iris damage. In the latter case, the iris may transilluminate, or its margin may appear torn on ophthalmoscopy or when it is examined with the slit lamp. Constriction after the application of 1% pilocarpine (after failing to contract with a 0.1% solution) may also occur with prior instillation of a parasympathetic agent that is “wearing off,” with the use of a sympathomimetic agent, or with acute Adie syndrome [158]. Some patients with Adie syndrome of recent onset may have a fixed dilated pupil that fails to contract to even a strong solution (e.g., 1%) of pilocarpine.

Lepore reported an unusual case of anisocoria [573]. A woman presented with anisocoria, ptosis on the right, and right-sided headache and neck pain. She was found to have Horner syndrome on the right, an Adie syndrome on the left, and fibromuscular dysplasia.

ARGYLL-ROBERTSON PUPIL
The Argyll-Robertson pupil is characteristically seen in patients with neurosyphilis. The pupils are usually involved bilaterally (though often asymmetrically) and are miotic and irregular, with variable iris atrophy. A decreased or absent pupillary light reaction is noted with an intact near response (light-near dissociation). Because an eye with reduced sensitivity to light (e.g., due to retinal or optic nerve disease) shows a better response to near effort than to stimulation with light, the definition of light-near dissociation requires good vision. Because the near reflex (miosis, accommodation, and convergence) has its supranuclear control via occipitomesencephalic pathways influencing the pupillary constrictor neurons in the visceral oculomotor complex by a different route than the retinomesencephalic afferents that control the light reflex, it may be unaffected by pretectal lesions that interrupt the pupillary light reflex. Indeed, the site of the lesion causing Argyll-Robertson pupils is thought to be in the rostral midbrain [907,908]. The miosis is likely due to the responsible lesion injuring supranuclear inhibitory fibers that affect the visceral oculomotor nuclei.

Light-near dissociation may also be seen with midbrain lesions (e.g., dorsal midbrain syndrome, encephalitis/meningitis, Wernicke encephalopathy and alcoholism, demyelination, pineal tumors, vascular disease). Other causes of light-near dissociation include sarcoidosis, diabetes, aberrant regeneration of the oculomotor nerve, Adie syndrome, familial amyloidosis, paraproteinemic neuropathy, syringomyelia, spinocerebellar ataxia type I, and myotonic dystrophy [908]. Diabetics of long-standing and patients with myotonic dystrophy may have small, poorly reactive pupils.

THE FLYNN PHENOMENON
In response to darkness, the pupils normally dilate bilaterally. However, paradoxical constriction of the pupils to darkness (Flynn phenomenon) may occur in patients with congenital achromatopsia, dominant optic atrophy, partial Leber’s congenital amaurosis, old bilateral optic neuritis, congenital nystagmus, strabismus and amblyopia, or congenital stationary night blindness [303].

PERIODIC PUPILLARY PHENOMENA
(EPIodic ANISOCORIA)
The pupil normally exhibits continual, symmetric, small contractions (hippus). Periodic pathologic pupillary movements (episodic anisocoria) are uncommon
and thought to be mediated by abnormal parasympathetic or sympathetic activity. Excess parasympathetic activity may be responsible for the periodic pupillary contractions of cyclic oculomotor palsy [309], ocular neuromyotonia [845], and the rhythmic pupillary oscillations that rarely accompany a complete third nerve palsy. Intermittent unilateral mydriasis may occur during or immediately following a seizure with ipsilateral or contralateral epileptic foci [1018], with migraine [860,998], with cluster headache [798], or as a transient phenomenon in otherwise healthy young adults. Unilateral pupillary mydriasis associated with ipsilateral visual loss and orbital or ocular pain may be caused by migraine but may also be caused by intermittent acute angle closure glaucoma. An episodic encephalopathy with dilated pupils has been described [450]. Unilateral ictal miosis may occur with contralateral epileptic foci [8] and bilateral miosis and internal ophthalmoplegia has occurred with left temporo-occipital seizure activity suggesting irritation of the cortical pupillary constrictive center in this region [778].

Jacobson reported 24 patients with benign episodic unilateral mydriasis [434]. The median age of the patients was 31 years (range, 14–50 years) and the median duration of events was 12 hours (range, 10 minutes to 7 days). Associated symptoms included visual blur, headache, orbital pain, monocular photophobia, monocular red eye, monocular diplopia, and monocular positional transient obscurations. Some cases were thought due to parasympathetic insufficiency of the iris sphincter (had associated impaired near vision, impaired accommodative function, and the anisocoria increased with added ambient light), while others had sympathetic hyperactivity of the iris dilator (associated with normal near vision and normal reaction of the pupil during the attack). No associated neurologic disorders were found in these patients.

Intermittent sympathetic nervous system pupillary abnormalities include cyclic sympathetic spasm, in which the pupil dilates concentrically for 40 to 60 seconds and which may occasionally be associated with lid retraction, facial hyperhidrosis, and headache (Claude-Bernard syndrome). Pupillary dilation may be restricted to a segment, giving the appearance of tadpole pupils [910]. Other autonomic abnormalities, including Horner syndrome, Adie pupil, and migraine are frequent in these patients. Pupillary dilation, brought about by elevation and stretch of the ipsilateral arm or leg, has been described as oculosympathetic spasm and may occur with lesions of the C3-C6 segments of the spinal cord, including syringomyelia, trauma, and infarction [515]. Localized autonomic hyperreflexia is hypothesized to explain this phenomenon. Pourfour du Petit syndrome is a rarely reported etiology of unilateral mydriasis, lid retraction, and exophthalmos. The cause is oculosympathetic hyperactivity by ipsilateral irritation of the sympathetic cervical chain. The classical signs of Pourfour du Petit syndrome are exactly the opposite of those of Horner syndrome and comprise mydriasis, lid retraction, exophthalmos, sweating, and paleness of the affected side. It is produced by stimulation of the ipsilateral sympathetic cervical chain and has the same causes as Horner syndrome. Cases have been reported following a puncture of the carotid artery, cannulation of the jugular vein, brachial plexus block, esophageal carcinoma, trauma, after parotidectomy, and after removal of a myxofibroma of the mandible [608]. Intermittent pupillary dilation may occur ipsilateral to a frontal lobe astrocytoma [100]. The tumor may have irritated proposed sympathetic relays that originate in the frontal cortex or excited parasympathetic inhibitory relays. Idiopathic alternating anisocoria without associated signs of oculosympathetic involvement has also been described [151]. Benign alternating anisocoria is a discreet entity that may be present in more than one member of a family [146].

Patients with Creutzfeld–Jakob disease who have a mutation of prion protein codon 200 that resulted in the substitution of lysine for glutamate (Glu/Lys) may develop rhythmic pupillary and palpebral oscillation [662]. Alternating dilation and constriction of the pupils combined with elevation and descent of the eyelids occurred in correspondence with periodic sharp wave complexes (PSWCs) on the electroencephalogram and with myoclonus of the head, face, and extremities. The onset of pupillary dilation and palpebral elevation coincided with the PSWCs. Initiation of these rhythmic pupillary and palpebral movements may depend on sympathetic activity, but the site of the generator is unclear. Such rhythmic pupillary and palpebral oscillation may be a feature of rapidly progressive Creutzfeld–Jakob disease (CJD) with predominant right hemispheric involvement [662].

Table 8.19 reviews pupillary signs of importance in the intensive care unit (ICU) setting.

**Supranuclear Control of Eye Movements**

The complex and precise array of eye movements that secure clear vision result from the interaction of a number of neural systems. Their combined output plays on the ocular motor nuclei in the brainstem; thus, the term supranuclear is appropriate to designate these systems. Many eye movements are involuntary—for example, the fine corrective movements that keep the eye in the appropriate orbital position,
The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System

**TABLE 8.19 Pupillary Signs in the ICU**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sign</th>
<th>Cause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unilateral large poorly reactive pupil</td>
<td>Third nerve palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contusion of eye</td>
<td>Accidental exposure to aerosolized anticholinergics or spilling of atropine droplets during preparation of the syringe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ipratropium</td>
<td>Bilateral midposition and fixed to light—brain death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oval unilateral nonreactive pupil—transitory appearance in brain death</td>
<td>Unilateral small, reactive—Horner syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilateral mydriasis with normal reaction to light</td>
<td>Traumatic carotid dissection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Episodic encephalopathy with dilated pupils (also associated with hyperthermia and tachycardia)</td>
<td>Brachial plexopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>During seizure</td>
<td>Internal jugular vein catheterization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Botulism</td>
<td>Extensive thoracic surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drugs—systemic atropine, aerosolized albuterol, atropine, magnesium sulfate, norepinephrine, dopamine, aminoglycoside, polypeptide, tetracycline overdose</td>
<td>Spastic miosis in acute corneal penetration injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oval unilateral nonreactive pupil—transitory appearance in brain death</td>
<td>Bilateral miosis (reaction present but may be difficult to see even with magnifying glass)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilateral pinpoint, reactive, acute pontine lesion, especially hemorrhage</td>
<td>Narcotic agents (e.g., morphine)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilateral miosis (reaction present but may be difficult to see even with magnifying glass)</td>
<td>Any metabolic encephalopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilateral pinpoint, reactive</td>
<td>Respiratory distress with hypercapnea and tachypnea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilateral miosis (reaction present but may be difficult to see even with magnifying glass)</td>
<td>Bilateral pinpoint, reactive, acute pontine lesion, especially hemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilateral midposition and fixed to light—brain death</td>
<td>Botulism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unilateral small, reactive—Horner syndrome</td>
<td>Bilateral miosis (reaction present but may be difficult to see even with magnifying glass)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Traumatic carotid dissection</td>
<td>Botulism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brachial plexopathy</td>
<td>Internal jugular vein catheterization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extensive thoracic surgery</td>
<td>Bilateral miosis (reaction present but may be difficult to see even with magnifying glass)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spastic miosis in acute corneal penetration injury</td>
<td>Botulism</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Despite ongoing head motion. Input for these corrective movements comes from the vestibular nuclei (vestibular system) or from the retina (optokinetic and smooth pursuit systems). The systems that permit a moving target to remain sharply focused in the fovea (smooth pursuit and vergence systems) are also largely involuntary, although the person may choose to glance or not to glance at a particular object. The system that produces rapid voluntary eye movements is called the saccadic system.

**The Vestibular System**

To be clearly perceived, images of the outside world have to slide over the retina at a speed of no more than a few degrees per second. Otherwise, things would appear blurry and fuzzy, like a photograph taken with a low shutter speed while the camera is moving. Without the appropriate corrective system, something similar would happen to the eye, anchored in the orbit and constantly jerked by manifold head movements. The vestibular system drives the eye with the same velocity but in a direction opposite to the disruptive head motion. Thus, the eye globe, like a gyroscope, keeps its stable position despite orbital movements. The vestibular nuclei basically coordinate the stabilization of gaze and posture and contribute to the perception of verticality and self-motion [366,559,565].

**THE VESTIBULOOCULAR REFLEX**

The reflex by which the vestibular system perceives head movement and makes the eyeball move in the opposite direction is called the vestibuloocular reflex.

**Labyrinth and Vestibular Nucleus.** The sensory arc of the reflex begins at the semicircular canals of the inner ear. Each of the three (horizontal, anterior, and posterior) semicircular canals is stimulated by movements in its plane and also induces eye movements in its plane (*Flouren’s law*). The corresponding semicircular canals of both ears are yoked in such a way that when the head rotates, one canal increases its rate of firing while the corresponding canal in the opposite ear slows its rate. The impulses travel by way of the vestibular nerve to the ipsilateral vestibular nuclear complex in the pontomedullary junction. Fibers from the ampullae of the semicircular canals terminate primarily in the superior nucleus and rostral part of the medial nucleus. When a vestibular nucleus is excited, it tends to deviate the eyes toward the contralateral side. However, each vestibular nuclear complex has neurons that increase their rate of firing with ipsilateral head rotations and others that increase their discharge rate with contralateral rotations. This feature, coupled with the existence of a vestibular commissure in the vicinity of the vestibular nuclei, may explain why vestibular function recovers when one side is damaged. From the vestibular nucleus the signal for horizontal eye movements is relayed to the abducens nucleus in the contralateral side of the lower pons. Vestibular nucleus neurons project not only to motor neurons but also send collaterals to the nucleus propositus hypoglossi and the cell groups of the paramedian tracts. The nucleus propositus hypoglossi and adjacent medial vestibular nucleus make up the *neural integrator*, which is crucial for gaze holding; the paramedian tract cells relay information about eye movements to the cerebellar flocculus.
Ocular Motor Nuclei, the Medial Longitudinal Fasciculus, and Vestibular Pathways.

The abducens nucleus has two types of intermingled neurons: motor neurons and internuclear neurons. The axons of the internuclear neurons cross to the contralateral side in the lower pons and, after ascending in the MLF, synapse in the portion of the oculomotor nucleus that innervates the medial rectus (Fig. 8.12). Thus, a horizontal vestibuloocular impulse originating in the horizontal canal is relayed from the ipsilateral medial vestibular nucleus to the contralateral abducens and ipsilateral medial rectus subnuclei neurons, resulting in deviation of the eyes to the contralateral side. There is also a direct pathway from the vestibular nuclei to the ipsilateral medial rectus subnucleus via the ascending tract of Deiters, which lies lateral to the MLF. The clinical significance of this pathway is unclear. Similar pathways (medial and superior) mediate vertical vestibular eye movements. Excitatory impulses from the vestibular nucleus cross in the brainstem and ascend in the MLF (for the posterior canal projection) and in the brachium conjunctivum, MLF, and ventral tegmental pathway (for the anterior canal projection), synapsing in the areas of the trochlear or oculomotor nuclei where the muscles involved in the appropriate movement are represented (Fig. 8.12). Inhibitory projections from the same canals ascend ipsilaterally in the MLF to synapse in ocular motor subnuclei that mediate relaxation of antagonist muscles. Stimulation of the posterior canal (e.g., by upward head acceleration) excites the ipsilateral superior oblique muscle and contralateral inferior rectus muscle. Thus, lesions of the MLF that cause internuclear ophthalmoplegia (see below) also impair the vertical vestibuloocular reflex.

Connections from the anterior and posterior semicircular canals also contact the nucleus of Cajal, which is important for eye–head coordination in roll and in vertical gaze holding, and the rostral interstitial nucleus of the MLF, which is important in generating quick phases of vestibular nystagmus in the vertical and torsional planes [559]. Vestibular nuclear output also projects to the spinal cord, to generate vestibulospinal reflexes, and to the thalamus and cerebral cortex, to provide inputs for perception of movement. Thus, the vestibuloocular reflex pathways also mediate posture and perception [559].

HEAD POSITION

In addition to information about angular acceleration registered by the semicircular canals, the labyrinth provides information about the static position of the head. This is registered by the utricle and the saccule, situated on planes perpendicular to each other, and reaches the extraocular muscles through pathways akin to the ones used by signals from the semicircular canals (Fig. 8.13). The principle projection from the saccule are to the ventral portion of the y-group, lateral superior vestibular nucleus, and to I. Oculomotor Nuclei, the Medial Longitudinal Fasciculus, and Vestibular Pathways.

The abducens nucleus has two types of intermingled neurons: motor neurons and internuclear neurons. The axons of the internuclear neurons cross to the contralateral side in the lower pons and, after ascending in the MLF, synapse in the portion of the oculomotor nucleus that innervates the medial rectus (Fig. 8.12). Thus, a horizontal vestibuloocular impulse originating in the horizontal canal is relayed from the ipsilateral medial vestibular nucleus to the contralateral abducens and ipsilateral medial rectus subnuclei neurons, resulting in deviation of the eyes to the contralateral side. There is also a direct pathway from the vestibular nuclei to the ipsilateral medial rectus subnucleus via the ascending tract of Deiters, which lies lateral to the MLF. The clinical significance of this pathway is unclear. Similar pathways (medial and superior) mediate vertical vestibular eye movements. Excitatory impulses from the vestibular nucleus cross in the brainstem and ascend in the MLF (for the posterior canal projection) and in the brachium conjunctivum, MLF, and ventral tegmental pathway (for the anterior canal projection), synapsing in the areas of the trochlear or oculomotor nuclei where the muscles involved in the appropriate movement are represented (Fig. 8.12). Inhibitory projections from the same canals ascend ipsilaterally in the MLF to synapse in ocular motor subnuclei that mediate relaxation of antagonist muscles. Stimulation of the anterior canal (e.g., by downward head acceleration) excites the ipsilateral superior rectus muscle and the contralateral inferior oblique muscle, whereas stimulation of the posterior canal (e.g., by upward head acceleration) excites the ipsilateral superior oblique muscle and contralateral inferior rectus muscle. Thus, lesions of the MLF that cause internuclear ophthalmoplegia (see below) also impair the vertical vestibuloocular reflex.

Connections from the anterior and posterior semicircular canals also contact the nucleus of Cajal, which is important for eye–head coordination in roll and in vertical gaze holding, and the rostral interstitial nucleus of the MLF, which is important in generating quick phases of vestibular nystagmus in the vertical and torsional planes [559]. Vestibular nuclear output also projects to the spinal cord, to generate vestibulospinal reflexes, and to the thalamus and cerebral cortex, to provide inputs for perception of movement. Thus, the vestibuloocular reflex pathways also mediate posture and perception [559].

HEAD POSITION

In addition to information about angular acceleration registered by the semicircular canals, the labyrinth provides information about the static position of the head. This is registered by the utricle and the saccule, situated on planes perpendicular to each other, and reaches the extraocular muscles through pathways akin to the ones used by signals from the semicircular canals (Fig. 8.13). The principle projection from the saccule are to the ventral portion of the y-group, lateral superior vestibular nucleus, and to
The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System

The vertical plane. This results in a slowing of the firing rate of the horizontal semicircular canal on the side of the infusion. Consequently, the eyes tend to deviate slowly to where the cold water has been infused. However, quick corrective jerks in a direction opposite to the slow motion keep the eyes looking in the direction willed by the individual who is alert. The resultant rhythmic eye movement with slow and quick components in opposite directions is termed nystagmus. In a comatose patient, the quick jerks are absent and the eyes remain deviated toward the side that has been cooled for 10 to 25 seconds.

Testing of patients with vestibular symptoms should include stimuli corresponding to the rotational head perturbations that occur during locomotion. Some patients with bilateral vestibular dysfunction may have stable gaze while sitting or standing but develop impaired vision and oscillopsia during walking because of excessive motion of images on the retina due to failure of the normal vestibuloocular reflex.

The clinical examination of patients for vestibular disorders includes tests that determine if there is any static or dynamic vestibular imbalance, maneuvers that determine if a change in head posture induces an imbalance (e.g., the Dix-Hallpike maneuver—see Chapter 11), and tests that estimate the gain and direction of the vestibulo-ocular reflex (VOR) [565]. For evaluation of static vestibular imbalance, initially one inspects the eyes with the


the uvula and nodulus of the cerebellum. The principle projections from the utricle are to the lateral part of the dorsal medial vestibular nucleus and the ventrolateral superior vestibular nucleus. There are also projections to the nodulus, flocculus, ventral paraflocculus, fastigial nucleus, and uvula. Ipsilateral (probably inhibitory) ocular motor connections travel over the ascending tract of Deiter’s, whereas contralateral connections travel in the MLF.

Linear or translational movements of the head (e.g., the up-and-down movements with running) are detected by the otolith organs by virtue of their sensitivity to linear acceleration [565]. The otoliths thus subserve the translational vestibuloocular reflex (TVOR), which has a latency of less than 35 msec. The medial utricle is excited by ipsilateral head tilt and causes counter-rolling of the eyes by connection to the vertical torsional muscles. Stimulation of the saccular nerve causes vertical eye movements with a preponderance of downward-directed slow phases.

CALORIC TESTING, NYSTAGMUS, AND TESTS OF VESTIBULAR DYSFUNCTION

The slow eye motions induced by the vestibular system cannot be appreciated in ordinary conditions. They become quite obvious, however, if there is a pathologic imbalance between the vestibular nuclei. Such imbalance can be produced by instilling a few milliliters of cold water in the external auditory canal while the head is kept at a 30-degree angle with the horizontal plane. This results in a slowing of the firing rate of the horizontal semicircular canal on the side of the infusion. Consequently, the eyes tend to deviate slowly to where the cold water has been infused. However, quick corrective jerks in a direction opposite to the slow motion keep the eyes looking in the direction willed by the individual who is alert. The resultant rhythmic eye movement with slow and quick components in opposite directions is termed nystagmus. In a comatose patient, the quick jerks are absent and the eyes remain deviated toward the side that has been cooled for 10 to 25 seconds.

Testing of patients with vestibular symptoms should include stimuli corresponding to the rotational head perturbations that occur during locomotion. Some patients with bilateral vestibular dysfunction may have stable gaze while sitting or standing but develop impaired vision and oscillopsia during walking because of excessive motion of images on the retina due to failure of the normal vestibuloocular reflex.

The clinical examination of patients for vestibular disorders includes tests that determine if there is any static or dynamic vestibular imbalance, maneuvers that determine if a change in head posture induces an imbalance (e.g., the Dix-Hallpike maneuver—see Chapter 11), and tests that estimate the gain and direction of the vestibulo-ocular reflex (VOR) [565]. For evaluation of static vestibular imbalance, initially one inspects the eyes with the
patient stationary and fixating on a distant object. With vestibular disorders, nystagmus (see below) may be present with the hallmark of vestibular nystagmus being that it is initiated or accentuated when fixation is removed (e.g., by using Frenzel lenses or +20 diopter lenses mounted on a spectacle frame). During gentle eye closure, the nystagmus may also be seen as a lid ripple with each quick phase. The effect of fixation on nystagmus may also be assessed by having the patient fix on a distant target with one eye while the examiner observes the opposite disc with an ophthalmoscope. Any optic nerve drift is noted; then the fixating eye is covered for a few seconds to compare the drift velocity with and without fixation. Be aware that the retina is behind the center of eye rotation and that the direction of horizontal and vertical eye movements observed is therefore opposite of the direction seen when viewing the eyes from the front.

**Dynamic vestibular imbalance** is assessed by single rapid head turns. A single head turn (the head impulse maneuver) is performed with the patient fixating upon the examiner’s nose while the head is briskly (less than 15 degrees) turned from one position to the other, both horizontally and vertically. If the rotational VOR is normal, gaze will be held steady. If the rotational VOR is abnormal, a corrective rapid eye movement (saccade) will occur at the end of the head movement to the side of the lesion to bring the image back to the fovea. For example, with rotation toward a left paretic labyrinth or left vestibular nucleus lesion, a corrective saccade will occur to the right. With bilateral vestibular lesions, the head impulse test will be abnormal in both directions. The head heave test may be positive bilaterally. Clinical testing for head-shaking nystagmus also detects asymmetry of velocity storage with peripheral and central vestibular lesions. While wearing Frenzel lenses, the patient vigorously shakes the head from side to side for 10 to 15 seconds. With unilateral peripheral vestibular lesions, there is asymmetry of velocity storage induced by greater peripheral input when the head rotates toward the intact side. The patient with a unilateral vestibular lesion may therefore show a horizontal nystagmus with the slow phases directed to the side of the lesion after the head shaking. However, it should be noted that with severe and complete unilateral vestibular lesions, or with bilateral lesions, velocity storage may be so impaired that head-shaking nystagmus does not occur. Central vestibular lesions (e.g., cerebellar degenerations) may cause vertical nystagmus, especially downbeat nystagmus, after horizontal head shaking (inappropriate cross-coupled nystagmus).

**Vestibular-reflex gain** may be assessed by testing visual acuity (e.g., a visual acuity card) while the examiner passively rotates the head or while the patient shakes the head at a frequency of 2 Hz. If vestibular gain is abnormal, acuity will deteriorate by several lines. Normal subjects lose only one line of acuity during head shaking while patients with bilateral complete vestibular lesions lose about five lines during vertical or horizontal rotation. Acuity impairment is much less with rotation in the “roll” (car to shoulder) plane since the image is still on the fovea.

**Full-Field Optokinetic Reflex**

The vestibuloocular reflex becomes fatigued after about 30 seconds. A different system is required to maintain the eyes on target during prolonged head motion in the same direction. The intermediate pathway probably includes retinal projections to the nucleus of the optic tract and accessory optic system that, in turn, project to the pontine nuclei, the vestibular system, and, via the inferior olive, the vestibulocerebellum. The slow eye movement tends to stabilize the image. This is the so-called optokinetic reflex that requires that the moving object fill most of the visual field (full-field stimulation) and differs from smooth pursuit of a target that is being followed while it is projected in the macular region of the retina. In humans, smooth pursuit probably plays a greater role than the full-field optokinetic reflex in stabilizing images in the retina. However, when the pathway that mediates pursuit (see Smooth Pursuit System, this chapter) is damaged, the more primitive full-field pursuit mechanism can be elicited. Unlike foveal pursuit, full-field pursuit builds up slowly (10–20 seconds) and decays gradually after the stimulus is terminated (optokinetic after-nystagmus). Thus, the optokinetic system acts as a velocity storage mechanism. Optokinetic stimulation may induce a compelling sensation of self-rotation called *circularvection* that develops even though no peripheral vestibular stimulation has occurred.

Lesions of the anterior visual pathways decrease optokinetic responses. Unilateral vestibular lesions cause a directional preponderance of optokinetic nystagmus, with increased slow-phase velocity toward the side of the lesion. Reversed optokinetic nystagmus is characteristically found in patients with benign congenital nystagmus (see below). In this case, the quick component beats in the direction of
the slowly moving optokinetic target. This actually represents the patient’s own gaze-modulated spontaneous nystagmus shifted to the primary position of gaze by optokinetic stimulation.

**Smooth Pursuit System**

An object is seen with most detail when its image falls in the fovea, located in the posterior pole of the retina. Two ocular motor systems allow visual images to remain in the fovea: smooth pursuit, as the object moves vertically or horizontally, and vergence eye movements (convergence and divergence) as the object moves along the depth axis of the visual field, particularly as it approaches the subject.

Images moving away from the fovea constitute the strongest stimuli for smooth pursuit. Under normal conditions, retinal slip is detected by the visual system and provides the necessary stimulus for pursuit, a velocity error. Image motion on the retina is not the only stimulus capable of eliciting smooth pursuit movements as some subjects can smoothly track their own outstretched finger when it is moving in front of them in darkness. At the bedside, handheld optokinetic drums or tapes provide an adequate stimulus for the foveal-pursuit system. The smooth pursuit system may also be tested by having the patient track a small moving target smoothly in a horizontal and vertical direction [565]. The smooth pursuit system cannot follow objects that move faster than 30 to 40 degrees per second, the lower range is the vestibuloocular reflex, discussed above, must be inhibited. Otherwise, as the head moves in the direction of the object, the eyes would be pulled in the opposite direction. The neural command for the head and eyes to follow an object inhibits the vestibuloocular reflex at the same time. Thus, abnormalities of the pursuit system may be expressed by an inability to inhibit the vestibuloocular reflex.

**Anatomy of the Pursuit System**

The anatomic pathways involved in the smooth pursuit system are complex [565,939] (Fig. 8.14). In monkeys, the sensory system includes a projection from the dorsolateral geniculate nucleus to the striate cortex, which then sends fibers to the middle temporal (MT) visual area. Area MT processes information about the speed and direction of target motion in the contralateral visual field and sends this information via an arcuate fiber bundle to the adjacent medial superior temporal (MST) area. Area MT projects contralaterally through the tapetum, major forceps, and splenium of the corpus callosum to area MT and MST of the contralateral hemisphere. Area MST combines an internal signal of eye velocity with the motion signal from area MT. The homologies of the MT and MST in humans are probably located in the lateral occipital cortex (area 19) and the adjacent ventrocaudal aspect of Brodmann area 39 (which corresponds to the angular gyrus) (Fig. 8.15) [643]. Both MT and MST project via arcuate fiber bundles to the posterior parietal cortex in the ventral bank of the intraparietal sulcus, which is concerned with attention to moving objects. Areas MT, MST, and the posterior parietal cortex all project to the frontal eye fields (FEF; Brodmann area 8).

Retinal information on the speed and direction of a moving target is abstracted in the visual cortex, especially areas MT and MST. Such processing takes into account current eye movements, encodes the direction and speed of complex moving stimuli, and allows for the effects of relative motion of the background during pursuit. These signals are passed on to the frontal areas, which may contribute predictive properties to the pursuit response.

Descending pursuit pathways run ipsilaterally from areas MT and MST through the internal sagittal stratum (along the lateral surface of the lateral ventricle), the retrolenticular internal capsule, and the posterior cerebral peduncle to terminate in the dorsolateral and lateral pontine nuclei. Another motor pathway projects from the FEF via the internal capsule and medial portion of the cerebral peduncle to the dorsolateral pontine nuclei (DLPN). The FEF generate volitional pursuit, which does not necessarily rely on a moving visual stimulus (e.g., predictive smooth pursuit or pursuit of a moving target that transiently disappears). Area MST generates reflexive pursuit, in which a moving visual stimulus is always required to elicit pursuit.

For horizontal pursuit, the left motor system mediates smooth pursuit eye movements to the left, while the right motor system mediates movements to the right. The pathway decussates twice at the pontocerebellar level. Pontine nuclei on the side toward which the eyes move send, through the middle cerebellar peduncle, excitatory mossy fibers to granule cells of the contralateral cerebellar cortex, including the flocculus, paraflocculus, uvula, and posterior
The cerebellum plays an important role in synthesizing the pursuit signal from visual and ocular motor inputs. The dorsal vermis and fastigial nuclei may contribute mainly to the onset of pursuit, while the paraflocculus and flocculus mainly sustain the pursuit response.

Vertical pursuit signals follow a similar path and, after synapsing in the vestibular nuclei, project rostrally through the MLF and brachium conjunctivum [730, 755] and probably traverse the interstitial nucleus of Cajal. Upward pursuit pathways are believed to decussate in the posterior commissure, as posterior commissure lesions abolish upward pursuit, before ending in the appropriate ocular motor nuclei. Downward pursuit fibers likely descend after reaching the interstitial nucleus of Cajal and do not traverse the posterior commissure. Upward and downward smooth pursuit may be restricted by unilateral midbrain lesions.

The cerebellum plays an important role in synthesizing the pursuit signal from visual and ocular motor inputs. The dorsal vermis and fastigial nuclei may contribute mainly to the onset of pursuit, while the paraflocculus and flocculus mainly sustain the pursuit response.

There is also another pathway concerned with smooth pursuit via the accessory optic system (AOS) and the nucleus of the optic tract (NOT) [565]. The AOS is composed of a group of midbrain nuclei that receives inputs mainly from the contralateral retina via the accessory optic tract. The AOS projects to the inferior olive and to the nucleus prepositus hypoglossi-medial vestibular nucleus complex.
and 39, providing evidence that this region includes the human homologues of monkey areas MT and MST (Fig. 8.15) [88,643].

Lesions occurring in a band extending from the occipito-temporal areas posteriorly, through the internal sagittal stratum, the posterior and anterior limbs of the internal capsule with adjacent striatum, to the dorsomedial frontal cortex anteriorly cause predominantly ipsilesional pursuit deficits [566]. Posterior thalamic hemorrhage may cause a deficit in smooth pursuit toward the side of the lesion by interrupting corticofugal fibers passing to the pontine nuclei near the posterior thalamus or the adjacent retrolenticular portion of the internal capsule [148]. This pursuit defect may be associated with hypometric saccades away from the side of the lesion due to associated disruption of the dorsal transthalamic pathway or the intermediate pathway mediating saccadic eye movements, or both.

Because of the double decussation in the brainstem of the motor pursuit pathways, patients with posterior fossa lesions may have impaired ocular smooth pursuit either contralaterally or ipsilaterally [321,458]. Unilateral midbrain lesions may result in ipsilateral pursuit defects [472,1016] as may basal pontine lesions that damage the pontine nuclei [337,452,896,974]. Impaired ipsilateral smooth pursuit with bilateral horizontal gaze evoked nystagmus was described with a right paramedian middle pontine infarct [10]. The impaired ipsilateral smooth pursuit in this case may have resulted from damage to the DLPN or the nucleus reticularis tegmenti pontis while damage to the cell group of the paramedian tracts may be the neural substrate of the gaze-evoked nystagmus. MLF lesions may disturb vertical smooth

FIG. 8.15. Locations of cortical areas involved in the cerebral control of eye movements (see text for description). MT = middle temporal visual area; MST = medial superior temporal visual area. In humans, MT and MST may form a contiguous cortical area. (From Leigh RJ and Zee DS. The neurology of eye movements, 4th ed. New York, NY: Oxford University Press, 2006, with permission.)

The NOT is a pretectal nucleus lying in the brachium of the superior colliculus from which it receives retinal inputs. It projects to pontine nuclei, including DLPN and nucleus reticularis tegmenti pontis (NRTP), and the inferior olive, which, in turn, projects to the cerebellum. The AOS and NOT may play a role in activating the transcortical-pontine-cerebellar pursuit pathway.

Lesions Affecting Smooth Pursuit

Smooth pursuit abnormalities occur with lesions anywhere along the course of smooth pursuit pathways [566]. Frontal lesions may impair ipsilateral smooth pursuit, especially to targets moving in a predictable pattern [644,770]. Bilateral occipital lesions abolish smooth pursuit. Parietal lesions decrease the amplitude and velocity of smooth pursuit toward the side of the lesion [564]. This deficit is most evident after hemispherectomy. Two distinct deficits of visual tracking for unpredictable stimuli have been described with unilateral posterior cerebral cortex lesions [557,912]. The first is a unidirectional deficit of smooth pursuit for targets moving toward the side of the lesion, in response to stimuli presented into either visual hemifield. The second deficit is a bidirectional inability to estimate the speed of a moving target in the visual hemifield contralateral to the lesion, causing inaccurate saccades to moving targets and impaired smooth pursuit initiation. These two deficits of visual tracking are similar to those described in monkeys with lesions of the MST and MT visual areas, respectively. Patients with retinotopic and directional deficits of smooth pursuit have lesions near the junction of Brodmann’s areas 19, 37,
pursuit. Unilateral pontine or rostral medulla lesions may slow down contralateral smooth pursuit more than ipsilateral pursuit while sparing the vestibuloocular reflex [458]. Thus, lesions of the pontine tegmentum that paralyze ipsilateral saccades can spare the vestibuloocular reflex, and smooth pursuit movement and the vestibuloocular reflex can be impaired independently by pontine or medullary lesions.

The cerebellar flocculus and vermis play an important role in the production of smooth pursuit [979]. The flocculus probably maintains pursuit during steady-state tracking, whereas the vermis may be more important when target velocity is changing [565]. Unilateral cerebellar damage results in transient impairment of pursuit in the direction of the involved side [974], whereas bilateral damage causes permanent impairment of smooth pursuit eye movements. A posterior vermal lesion may impair pursuit [721], and middle cerebellar peduncle lesions or floccular lesions may cause an ipsilateral pursuit defect [472,974]. Seventeen patients with acute, mainly unilateral cerebellar infarctions and an intact gain of the smooth pursuit system were compared with 11 patients with cerebellar lesions and deficient gain of sinusoidal smooth pursuit eye movements by means of lesion-mapping imaging [58]. The uvula and partly the vermal pyramid were found to be the structures commonly damaged in patients with deficient gain of the horizontal sinusoidal smooth pursuit eye movement, of the slow phase of optokinetic nystagmus, and impaired fixation suppression of the vestibulo-ocular reflex; and were less involved in patients with intact smooth pursuit system. This study gives evidence for an anatomical link between smooth pursuit eye movements, fixation suppression of the vestibulo-ocular reflex, and the slow phases of optokinetic nystagmus implying that the uvula and the vermal pyramid are important structures for generating slow phases within the smooth pursuit network in humans [58].

How well the smooth pursuit system works depends on the degree of attention elicited by the object being followed. Many drugs impair smooth pursuit, rendering it jerky or slow or abolishing it altogether. Pursuit gain is decreased with certain disseminated disorders, such as progressive supranuclear palsy (PSP) [308,595], Huntington disease, Gerstmann–Straussler–Scheinker disease [1008], and HIV-related illnesses [617].

Patients with lesions that impair pursuit are often unable to inhibit the vestibuloocular reflex. For instance, a patient with a left hemispherectomy, resulting in impaired pursuit to the left, followed smoothly an object turning to the right along with him. When rotating to the left, however, he had to make quick refixations to catch up with the target because the vestibuloocular reflex that in this situation tends to deviate the eyes to the right was not properly compensated for by foveal fixation and smooth pursuit. Inadequate suppression of the vestibuloocular reflex can be easily assessed by looking for quick refixations as the patient gazes at a finger in his outstretched arm while he is being rotated in a wheelchair or by slowly moving the head and target together from side to side.

The Saccadic System

Most obvious among the eye movements are the quick refixations called saccades. Their purpose is to place on the fovea objects of interest, which often have first been registered by the peripheral retina. Saccadic eye movements are also used to inspect a complex scene, such as a painting. A fairly complicated array of short refixations then takes place, as the diverse details of the painting are calibrated by placing them successively in the macular region. In addition to these types of saccades, a person may produce saccades at will or on command (volitional saccades) and can inhibit the tendency to glance at an object perceived by the peripheral retina. Other types of saccadic eye movements include the quick, corrective phase of vestibular and optokinetic nystagmus. On a command such as “look to your right,” saccades are produced with greater ease if the head as well as the eyes are turned in the appropriate direction. Turning the eyes while keeping the head still is somewhat more difficult.

Saccades are, thus, of several types [728]:

1. Reflexive saccades—externally triggered by the sudden appearance of a visual target on the peripheral part of retina (reflexive visually guided saccades) or a sudden noise in the immediate environment (reflexive auditory saccades).

2. Intentional saccades—internally triggered with a goal. These saccades may be visually guided (goal to catch on the fovea a target that has been visible on the peripheral part of the retina), predictive (goal to find the image of a target not yet or no longer visible when the image is expected at a specific location), or memory-guided (toward the remembered position of a target perceived a moment before on the peripheral part of the retina or toward the remembered position to which gaze was directed before a body rotation).

3. Antisaccades—made in direction opposite to a suddenly appearing lateral visual target (also intentional).

4. Spontaneous saccades—internally triggered but without a goal and occur during another motor activity (such as speech) or at rest in darkness.
Alertness is required for the production of saccades. The slow phase of the vestibulococular reflex can be elicited in a comatose patient by the doll’s head maneuver or by caloric stimulation. The eyes are then slowly driven by the vestibular reflex, but there are no corrective saccadic jerks.

### Mechanical Properties of Saccadic Eye Movements

Saccades are produced by a combination of two mechanical elements: (1) a **pulse** (a velocity command), which, overcoming the resistance of the orbital tissues and the inertia of the globe, changes the position of the eye in the orbit, and (2) a **step** (a position command) or change in tonic contraction of the orbital muscles, which, overcoming the elasticity of the orbital tissues, keeps the eye in the new position. A greater effort is required to keep the eye in a more eccentric position. The transition between the end of the pulse and the beginning of the step is actually not abrupt but gradual (actually a **pulse-slide-step**).

A subject asked to switch his gaze from one object to another produces saccades of larger amplitude when the objects are farther apart. The amplitude of the saccade is expressed by the degrees of the angle it subtends. The velocity of a saccade is expressed in degrees per second. There is an invariable relation between the size and the peak velocity of saccades. Larger displacements in the orbit require faster saccades.

Saccades subtending a few degrees have velocities as low as 100 degrees per second, whereas large refixations may reach peak velocities of 700 degrees per second. Elderly subjects and those who are drowsy, inattentive, or medicated produce slower saccades. Saccades compare the ocular position desired with the actual position and calculate the pulse and step to be generated to reach the desired position. Disease of these neural mechanisms results in saccades that have an abnormal velocity or erroneous amplitude (dysmetria) or fail to keep the eye steady in the desired position.

During saccades the visual field sweeps across the retina at high velocity, and concomitant visual blur is prevented by **saccadic omission**. Saccadic omission is caused by two factors: saccadic suppression, consisting of elevation of the threshold for detecting light during a saccade, and visual masking, a process by which the presence of a stationary, highly contoured visual background before or after a saccade eliminates the perception of the blurred visual image during the saccade [155]. A central inhibitory mechanism, for example, a reduced response of neurons in the superior colliculus, striate cortex, and other cortical areas during saccades, may underlie this saccadic omission [155].

### ANATOMY OF THE SACCADIC SYSTEM

Two types of neurons are important in the generation of saccades: burst neurons and omnipause neurons. Excitatory burst neurons (EBN) are located in the **PPRF** and lie rostral to the abducens nucleus in the dorsomedial nucleus reticularis pontis caudalis (NRPC). EBN project the excitatory pulse to the ipsilateral abducens nucleus (to both abducens motoneurons and internuclear neurons) that results in horizontal saccades. The step of innervation at the end of the saccade arises from the nucleus prepositus hypoglossi (NPH) and medial vestibular nucleus (MVN) that make up the **neural integrator for horizontal gaze**. Inhibitory burst neurons (IBN) for horizontal saccades lie caudal to the abducens nucleus in the nucleus paragigantocellularis dorsalis in the dorsomedial portion of the rostral medulla. The IBN send axons to the contralateral abducens nucleus to inhibit this nucleus during ipsilateral saccades. The IBN silence the activity in the antagonist muscles (contralateral lateral rectus and ipsilateral medial rectus) during horizontal ipsilateral saccades.

The PPRF, located anterior and lateral to the MLF, extends from the pontomesencephalic junction to the abducens nucleus. Impulses from the FEF are relayed to the pontine PPRF, which coordinates both vertical and horizontal saccades (the rostral PPRF probably coordinates horizontal saccades, whereas the caudal PPRF may be important in the generation of vertical as well as horizontal saccades). Signals for horizontal saccades proceed from the ipsilateral PPRF to the lower pons to the ipsilateral abducens nucleus and contralateral oculomotor nucleus through the MLF. Thus, the PPRF mediates a saccade to the same side of the pons but contralateral to the frontal eye field that originated the chain of command (see Fig. 8.16).

The EBN and IBN for vertical and torsional saccades are intermingled in the midbrain in the riMLF, located in the prerubral field of the ventral diencephalomesencephalic junction, rostral to the tractus retroflexus. Each riMLF contains neurons that burst for upward and downward saccades, but for torsional quick phases in one direction only (the...
right riMLF is responsible for the right eye extorting and the left eye intorting, while the left riMLF is responsible for the left eye extorting and the right eye intorting) [103]. Thus, an riMLF lesion will result in contralesional torsional deviation [160]. Projections from the riMLF to motorneurons innervating the elevator muscles are bilateral, with axon collaterals probably crossing to the opposite side at the level of the motorneurons (axons crossing within the oculomotor nucleus) and not in the posterior commissure [103]. Axons from the riMLF for depressor muscles are unilateral (burst neurons for downward saccades project to the inferior rectus subnucleus of the oculomotor complex and to the trochlear nucleus on the same side); thus, unilateral lesions of the riMLF will slow downward saccades but spare upward saccades. Inhibitory burst neurons for vertical and torsional saccades reside within the riMLF.

Axons from the riMLF send collaterals to the interstitial nucleus of Cajal (INC) (bilaterally for upward burst neurons and ipsilaterally for downward burst neurons), which provides the step of innervation for vertical and torsional saccades (vertical neural integrator), and to the cell groups of the para-median tracts (PMT), which project to the cerebellum. The INC projects to vertical motorneurons in the oculomotor and trochlear subnuclei on the contralateral side of the brainstem via the posterior commissure. The INC is important for holding the eye in eccentric gaze after a vertical saccade and co-ordinating eye–head movements in a roll. Unilateral lesions of the INC cause tonic torsion to the opposite side similar to riMLF lesions as well as the ocular tilt reaction (see below). The nucleus of the posterior commissure also contains neurons that burst for upward saccades that project through the posterior commissure to contact the riMLF and INC. The nucleus of posterior commissure and the riMLF also projects to the m-group neurons (located adjacent, medially, and caudal to the riMLF) which relay signals to the central caudal levator subnucleus of the oculomotor nerve and the elevator subnuclei of the eye elevators (superior rectus and inferior oblique). The m-group of neurons coordinates vertical eye and lid movements. Lesions of the m-group neurons or the posterior commissure may thus cause dissociated lid-eye movements during vertical saccades (e.g., impaired lid saccades in the presence of preserved eye saccades).
Lesions in structures within the mesencephalon (the riMLF, posterior commissure, and the INC) cause vertical saccadic palsies. Discrete lesions within these small nuclei do not likely cause selective palsies of upward and downward conjugate eye movements. More likely, lesions that disrupt projections from these nuclei to the oculomotor and trochlear nuclei are responsible. Such lesions are bilateral, or unilateral and so close to the midline that they involve axons that cross the midline within commissural fiber tracts. Either unilateral or bilateral pretectal lesions near the posterior commissure may injure projections from both riMLF and the INC, selectively impairing upward saccades.

Omnipause cells lie in the nucleus raphe interpositus, which is located in the midline, at the level of the abducens nerve. Omnipause cells send inhibitory projections to EBN in the pons, IBN in the medulla, and to the riMLF; omnipause cells discharge continually except immediately prior to and during saccades, when they pause. Thus, omnipause neurons inhibit all burst cells, preventing saccades when such movements are not desirable, as during visual fixation [727]. Lesions of omnipause cells likely have a slowing effect on saccades in all directions [465].

THE NEURAL INTEGRATOR

For eye movements, a pulse (velocity-command) causes a phasic contraction of the extraocular muscles that overcomes the viscous drag of the orbit and moves the eye to its destination. Once this destination has been reached, a step (position command) holds the eye steady at its new position by resisting the elastic restoring forces of the orbit. Thus, ocular motor neurons carry information about both eye position and eye velocity. A mathematical integration is necessary to convert velocity-coded information to position-coded information and the structures responsible are called the neural integrator. For conjugate, horizontal eye movements, the neural integrator responsible for gaze holding resides in the nucleus propositus hypoglossi (NPH) and the adjacent medial vestibular nucleus (MVN). The NPH/MVN have reciprocal connections with the vestibulocerebellum, especially the flocculus and paraflocculus that stabilize the neural integrator that is inherently “leaky.” The neural integrator for vertical conjugate eye movements resides in the interstitial nucleus of Cajal (INC).

Another group of paramedian neurons in the medulla that contributes to gaze holding is the nucleus parachæles, which lies between the abducens and hypoglossal nuclei. This structure receives inputs from the interstitial nucleus of Cajal and sends axons laterally close to the ventral surface of the brainstem, before entering the cerebellar peduncle. The nucleus parachæles is a component of cell groups of the paramedian tracts (PMT) which receive inputs from premotor nuclei concerned with eye movements and relay information to the vestibulocerebellum.

Gaze holding is tested by noting the patient’s ability to hold the eyes in an eccentric position in the orbit [565]. When the neural integrator is impaired (“leaky”), the eyes will drift back toward primary position at an exponentially decreasing rate. This necessitates a corrective saccade resulting in gaze-evoked nystagmus. Damage to the NPH/MVN or flocculus thus will cause gaze-evoked nystagmus with centripetal decelerating slow phases [426 A]. Wernicke’s encephalopathy commonly involves the NPH-MVN region, which likely accounts for the gaze-evoked nystagmus and other ocular features of this disease. A unilateral lesion of the NPH/MVN acutely results in partial loss of both ipsilateral and contralateral horizontal gaze holding. Bilateral lesions abolish neural integration for all conjugate horizontal eye movements—horizontal saccades are normal but the eyes cannot be held in the new position. Optokinetic and smooth pursuit movements are similarly affected. A patient who developed complete gaze failure following a lethal dose of lithium had selective loss of neurons and gliosis in the NPH-MVN region [209].

Bilateral lesions of the interstitial nucleus of Cajal result in a partial failure of vertical gaze holding while vestibulocerebellar damage makes the neural integrator deficient. Bilateral blindness may also cause an inability to hold gaze steady because the neural integrator depends on retinal inputs for its calibration.

COLLICULAR SYSTEM

The superior colliculi, which protrude as two small swellings or eminences from the tectum of the midbrain (i.e., the roof of the mesencephalon), contain neurons that discharge in relation to saccadic eye movements and act complementarily with the frontal eye field (FEF) in triggering visually guided and volitional saccades. The superior colliculus has a dorsally placed sensory portion and a ventrally located motor portion. The motor portion receives its excitatory input from the inferior parietal lobe (which receives occipital fibers), from the parietal eye fields (PEF) (Fig. 8.15) or lateral intraparietal area (LIP), and from the frontal eye field (FEF) directly. Other cortical afferents originate in the prefrontal and supplementary motor cortex.

The superior colliculus plays an important role in the triggering and inhibition of reflexive visually guided saccades [410, 731]. More caudally located superior colliculus neurons project to burst neurons in the contralateral PPRF and the ipsilateral riMLF.
The superior colliculus tends to deviate the eyes to the contralateral side, particularly when a novel stimulus appears in the visual field. The superior colliculus programs visually guided saccades by encoding motor error signals and probably initiates contralaterally directed spontaneous saccades and quick phases of nystagmus. Neurons at the rostral pole of the motor area of the superior colliculus appear to be important in maintaining steady fixation and they project to omnipause neurons. These fixation neurons suppress saccades and also may be involved in disengagement from fixation.

An important relay for projections to and from the superior colliculus may be the nucleus subcuneiformis, which lies lateral to the oculomotor nucleus in the central mesencephalic reticular formation. This structure's neurons discharge in relation to visually guided contralateral saccades and lesions impair the generation of contralateral visually guided saccades but not vestibularly induced quick phases. The central mesencephalic reticular formation receives collaterals from the superior colliculus in the predorsal bundle descending to the PPRF and receives ascending fibers from the PPRF. They project dorsally to the superior colliculus and caudally to the NRTP. Reduction of contraversive saccadic latency and development of square-wave jerks (see below) after central mesencephalic reticular formation lesions support a role of this structure in saccadic triggering.

The parietocollicular pathway is concerned with reorienting gaze to novel visual stimuli and, in particular, with shifting visual attention to the location of new targets appearing in extrapersonal space. The superior part of the angular gyrus (area 39 of Brodmann) in the posterior parietal cortex is the main area facilitating the triggering of reflexive visually guided saccades [727]. Because reflexive visually guided saccade latencies are increased bilaterally with right posterior parietal cortex lesions, whereas left posterior parietal lesions increase latency only for saccades made contralaterally, the right parietal region could be dominant for reflexive visually guided saccade control [727].

The superior colliculus receives two projections from the FEF: a direct one and an indirect one via the caudate nucleus and the pars reticulata of the substantia nigra. The direct FEF-collricular pathway is concerned with self-generated changes in gaze related to remembered, anticipated, or learned behavior (voluntary saccades) [565]. The FEF also acts on the superior colliculus, indirectly via the basal ganglia, in the process of maintaining and releasing fixation. The supplementary eye fields (SEF) (Fig. 8.15) are located in the posteromedial portion of the frontal lobe and have a role in planning saccades to visual and nonvisual cues as part of complex or learned behavior. This area plays a role in the control of sequential eye movements (just as it plays a role in programming sequential limb movements), and lesions here, especially in the dominant hemisphere, cause a specific deficit in generating a sequence of two or three memory-guided saccades [336, 339]. The dorsolateral prefrontal cortex (DLPFC, area 46 of Brodmann) (Fig. 8.15) is involved in saccades to remembered location of targets. Lesions of the dorsolateral prefrontal region thus result in deficits in making saccades to remembered targets. Lesions here also cause an inability to suppress reflex saccades toward a visual target when a patient is instructed to make a saccade in a direction opposite to the target (antisas- cade tasks) [726]. Thus, the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex is the main area in the cerebral hemisphere inhibiting reflexive visually guided saccades [727]. Medial frontal lobe lesions also affect the ability to maintain central gaze fixation [714].

Partial lesions of the striate cortex, which impair vision severely, may nonetheless leave unaffected the ability to produce saccades to novel stimuli in a portion of the visual field that is blind (“blind sight”) [211]. This phenomenon may be mediated by the superior colliculus, perhaps using extrastriatal pathways.

**HIGHER LEVEL CONTROL OF THE SACCADES**

Three different cortical areas are capable of triggering saccades [728, 937]:

1. **Frontal Eye Field (FEF)**—The frontal eye field (FEF) is located around lateral part of the precentral sulcus, involving both the posterior extremity of the middle frontal gyrus and the adjacent precentral sulcus and gyrus, just anteriorly to the motor cortex (Fig. 8.15). It includes Brodmann areas 6 and 4 (not 8). It projects fibers to the superior colliculus and also directly to the premotor reticular formations of brainstem, and receives multiple cortical afferent tracts, especially from the FEF, SEF, and prefrontal cortex (PFC or area 46 of Brodmann). From the FEF the impulses proceed caudally in a pathway (the ventral pedunculotegmental pathway) that runs in the anterior limb of the internal capsule and medial portion of the cerebral peduncle, decussates at the pontomesencephalic junction, and ends in the NRTP which, in turn, projects to the cerebellum. Other corticofugal pathways include the transthalamic pathway, which projects to the ipsilateral superior colliculus and possibly the riMLF, and a projection via the anterior limb of the internal capsule to the caudate, which, in turn projects via the pars reticulata of the substantia nigra, to the superior
colliculus. The PPRF and midline raphe nucleus (omnipause neurons) also receive FEF projections.

Bilateral stimulation of homologous points of both FEF is required to produce vertical movements. Some impulses reach the caudal PPRF and through a para-MLF pathway are conveyed to the mesencephalic reticular formation (bilateral MLF lesions do not impair the ability to generate vertical saccades). Others reach directly the midbrain and caudal diencephalon through the intermediate prefrontal oculomotor bundle.

The FEF controls:
A. Disengagement from fixation—perhaps through its fixation cells projecting both to the brainstem reticular formation and to the superior colliculus, in which other fixation cells exist.
B. Triggering of intentional retinotopic saccades (intentionally visually guided saccades, memory-guided saccades with visual input, predictive saccades, and correct antisaccades). That is, the FEF triggers intentional saccades to visible targets, to remembered target locations, or to the location where it is predicted that the target will reappear (i.e., saccades concerned with intentional exploration of the visual environment).
C. The amplitude of all (i.e., reflexive and intentional) contralateral retinotopic saccades.

The main role of the FEF is to explore the visual environment with intentional saccades, for which the simple retinoscopic framework is sufficient to calculate saccade amplitude.

2. Parietal Eye Field (PEF). The parietal eye field (PEF) is located in the region of intraparietal sulcus, that is, in the superior part of the angular gyrus and supramarginal gyrus (areas 39 and 40 of Brodmann) (Fig. 8.15). It projects to the FEF and the SC, but not directly to the brainstem reticular formation.

The PEF controls:
A. Perhaps disengagement from fixation (upstream from the FEF), probably by direct projections to the SC.
B. Triggering of saccades made reflexively on the sudden appearance of visual targets (i.e., saccades concerned with reflexive exploration of the visual environment)

The PEF is more involved in the reflexive exploration of the visual environment (triggering reflexive visually guided saccades) while the FEF is more involved in the intentional exploration of this environment (intentional visually guided saccades).

Visual attention is controlled mainly by the superior parietal lobule adjacent to the PEF (Fig. 8.15). Bilateral lesions affecting the PPC (posterior parietal cortex), including the PEF, or both this cortex and the FEF, result in Balint’s syndrome (see Chapter 20) and acquired ocular motor apraxia, respectively, with severe disturbances of visually guided saccades in both cases.

3. Supplementary Eye Field (SEF). The supplementary eye field (SEF) lies in the posteromedial part of the superior frontal gyrus in the supplementary motor area (SMA) (Fig. 8.15). It receives multiple cortical afferent tracts, in particular from PFC and the posterior part of the cerebral hemisphere. The SEF projects to the FEF, and, like the FEF, to the superior colliculus and to the premotor reticular formations.

The SEF controls:
A. Triggering and amplitude of memory-guided saccades with vestibular input (i.e., using spatiotopic information) and saccades using craniootopic information (i.e. saccades using extraretinal signals). In other words, the FEF and superior colliculus elicit saccades in retinotopic space, whereas the SEF elicits saccades in craniootopic space, that is, with eye position in the orbit. The SEF also appears to control spontaneous saccades.
B. Triggering sequences of saccades and in controlling saccades made during head or body movement (i.e., saccades concerned with complex motor programming).

The main role of the SEF could be to prepare motor programs, either combining several intentional saccades or coordinating intentional saccades with other body movements, which require the use of craniootropic or spatiotropic coordinates for calculating saccade amplitude. Like the SMA for sequences involving limbs, the SEF controls motor programs made up of several saccades.

Three other areas contribute to the preparation of certain types of saccades:

1. The prefrontal cortex (PFC, area 46 of Brodmann) plays a crucial role for planning saccades to remembered target locations. The dorsolateral PFC receives afferents from the PPC, and projects to the FEF, SEF, and superior colliculus. Lesions of the PFC, for example, with PSP, result in an increased percentage of unwanted reflexive visually guided saccades (in antisaccade paradigms); therefore, the PFC controls inhibition of saccades, probably via the SC rather than the FEF.
2. The PPC (posterior parietal cortex) is involved in visuospatial integration, and projects to the PEF and PFC. It is likely near the inferior parietal lobe adjacent to the PEF. The inferior parietal lobe is involved in the visuospatial integration.
used for calculating saccade amplitude; the PPC directs visual attention in extrapersonal space. As reflexive visually guided saccade latencies are increased bilaterally with right posterior parietal cortex lesions, while left posterior parietal lesions increase latency only for saccades made contralaterally, the right parietal region could be dominant for reflexive visually guided saccade control.

3. The hippocampus (medial temporal lobe) appears to control the temporal working memory required for memorization of the chronological order of sequences of saccades.

4. Experimental and clinical studies suggest that the dorsolateral prefrontal cortex (DLPFC) and the superior colliculus (SC) are crucial for the cancellation of reflexive eye movements toward distracting stimuli. However, the contribution of subcortical structures remains unknown. The basal ganglia provide serial tonic inhibitory connections between the DLPFC and the SC, and could therefore be involved in preventing the triggering of unnecessary saccades. The DLPFC could also exert its inhibitory effect on the SC through direct prefronto-tectal pathways that travel in the internal capsule. Since thalamic dysfunction may be responsible for reduced DLPFC activation, it may be hypothesized that the thalamus could also participate in saccadic inhibition. A study by Condy et al., however, suggested that neither the basal ganglia nor the thalamus plays a major role in reflexive saccade suppression, but support the hypothesis of a direct DLPFC inhibitory control of saccade triggering on the SC [204].

Thalamic structures also take part in saccadic eye movements. The laminar or intralaminar nuclei of the thalamus receive inputs from the FEF, SEF, and inferior parietal lobule as well as from the superior colliculus, basal ganglia, and cerebellum. This region of the thalamus may help control saccadic accuracy and the ability to match eye position to target position. The pulvinar may have a role in the maintenance and shift of visual attention (probably in coordination with the parietal cortex) [565] and pulvinar lesions may cause a paucity of spontaneous saccades into the contralateral field and increased saccadic latencies for all saccades, especially those directed contralaterally.

THE BASAL GANGLIA

Inhibitory neurons to the superior colliculus are located in the substantia nigra (pars reticulata). These neurons act in a tonic fashion, their activity ceasing immediately prior to visually guided and memory-guided saccades. The substantia nigra pars reticulata in turn receives inhibitory (and possibly excitatory) connections from the caudate nucleus that, in turn, receives afferents from the frontal lobe. For reflexive visually guided saccades, the frontal cortex is mainly inhibitory. Thus, some patients with frontal lesions affecting the superior part of the prefrontal cortex may be unable to inhibit unwanted saccades. The basal ganglia system for saccadic control thus has two serial inhibitory links: caudo-nigral inhibition (phasic, GABA mediated) and nigro-collicular inhibition (tonic, GABA mediated). Frontal pathways excite caudate neurons that block the inhibitory affect of the substantia nigra on the superior colliculus and, therefore, activate a saccade. The basal ganglia gate, selectively, reflexive, and voluntary saccades generated by the superior colliculus. The system facilitates the initiation of more voluntary, self-generated saccades made in the context of learned behavior (e.g., memory-guided or predictive saccades) and aids in steady fixation by preventing unwanted, reflexive saccade to disruptive stimuli [565]. Caudate lesions may cause loss of phasic superior colliculus disinhibition resulting in impaired saccade initiation, while lesions of the substantia nigra allow the superior colliculus to be released from tonic inhibition resulting in extraneous saccades (excessive and inappropriate saccades). Caudate lesions may also decrease the accuracy of memory-guided saccades [962].

SUMMARY OF THE SACCADIC PATHWAYS

In summary, the cerebral hemispheres dispatch trigger signals to omnipause neurons in the brainstem to start saccades and signals of desired saccadic amplitude and direction, or of final eye position, that determine the durations and directions of saccades. Cerebral control of saccades involves the parietal eye fields (PEF) and the FEF. The influence of the frontal (FEF) and parietal cortex (PEF) on the control of saccades appears to be via two parallel descending pathways. One pathway is from the FEF to the superior colliculus directly. This pathway appears to be concerned with self-generated changes in gaze related to anticipated, learned, or remembered behavior. Output from the FEF is also directed through the caudate nucleus, which projects to the substantia nigra pars reticulata. The pars reticulata projects, in turn, to the superior colliculus. The caudate inhibits the substantia nigra pars reticulata and the pars reticulata inhibits the superior colliculus. The substanti nigra pars reticulata neurons discharge during fixation and pause; the FEF works by disinhibiting superior colliculus burst neurons that fire before and during voluntary and visually evoked saccades. Thus, the FEF has a two-pronged excitatory effect on the superior colliculus, one direct and the other through the basal ganglia. The other pathway is...
The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System

The cerebellum plays a role in the control of saccadic eye movements. A major projection from the cortical eye fields is to the cerebellum, via the pontine nuclei. The NRTP lies ventral to the rostral PPRF and receives inputs from the FEF and SEF. The NRPT projects fibers to the dorsal vermis and caudal fastigial nucleus of the cerebellum and to the PPRF.

The dorsal vermis (lobules VI and VII also called the oculomotor vermis), and underlying fastigial nucleus, modulate the amplitude of the saccadic pulses. The caudal part of the fastigial nucleus, the fastigial oculomotor region (FOR), also receives a copy of the saccadic commands, which are relayed via the NRTP from the FEF and superior colliculus. The fastigial outflow passes contralaterally through the opposite fastigial nucleus, and then over the contralateral superior cerebellar peduncle in the hook bundle of Russel within the uncincate fasciculus to the contralateral superior colliculus and brainstem tegmentum (Fig. 8.17). Their axons terminate in the region of cells that generate saccades, including excitatory and inhibitory burst neurons and omnipause neurons. The FOR receives inhibitory input from Purkinje cells in the dorsal vermis lobules VI and VII. The fastigial nucleus might influence saccades by providing early drive to burst neurons during contralateral saccades (accelerate contraversive saccades) and a late brake during ipsilateral ones (decelerate ipsiversive saccades).

Stimulation of the dorsal vermis evokes conjugate saccades ipsilaterally; this effect represents stimulation of Purkinje cells that inhibit the underlying fastigial nucleus. Stimulation of the fastigial nucleus elicits contralateral saccades. Lateralpulsion of saccades is a form of dysmetria consisting of overshooting of horizontal saccades in one direction, undershooting in the other, and oblique misdirection of vertical saccades. Lesions of the dorsal vermis or brachium conjunctivum and uncinate fasciculus produce ipsilateral saccade hypometria and contralateral saccade hypermetria (contrapulsion) with contraversive deviation of vertical saccades, while lesions of the fastigial nucleus produce ipsilateral saccade hypermetria (ipsipulsion) and hypometria of contralateral saccades [338,565]. Unilateral FOR lesions often have a bilateral effect since neurons from the contralateral FOR pass through it. Bilateral FOR lesions produce hypermetric saccades and macrosaccadic oscillations (see below) [162]. The findings with unilateral fastigial nucleus lesions are similar to the lateralpulsion noted toward the side (ipsipulsion) of Wallenberg lateral medullary syndrome [17]. Here ipsipulsion may occur with damage to climbing fibers projections from the opposite inferior olivary nucleus through the inferior cerebellar peduncle to the dorsal vermis. If patients with the lateral medullary syndrome are asked to fixate straight ahead and then gently close their eyes, the eyes deviate to the side of the lesion reflected by corrective saccades that are noted when
eropulsion is thought due to a lesion of the efferent pathways from the caudal fastigial nucleus running in the uncinate fasciculus next to the superior cerebellar peduncle \[162,874\]. Ocular contrapulsion in patients with multiple sclerosis likely results from a lesion in the region of the superior cerebellar peduncle, involving the uncinate fasciculus \[310\]. Lesions causing ipsipulsion or contrapulsion of saccades are outlined in Fig. 8.17. Lateropulsion, with or without other aspects of ocular tilt reaction (OTR) or partial nuclear third nerve palsy, has also been described due to midbrain lacunar infarction \[55\].

Vermian cerebellar lesions also impair an interesting adaptive capability of the saccadic system (i.e., repair of ocular dysmetria). Normally, if lateral rectus weakness develops, the involved eye makes hypometric saccades. If the sound eye is then patched, or if the eyes are opened to re-acquire fixation. Climbing fiber damage increases Purkinje cell activity (i.e., decreases Purkinje cell inhibition) that, in turn, inhibits the ipsilateral fastigial nucleus. If damage occurs before the decussation of the olivocerebellar climbing fiber projections (e.g., with medial medullary infarction interrupting these fibers as they leave the inferior olive) contrapulsion results. Bilateral vermis lesions lead to hypometric saccades and bilateral FOR lesions to hypermetric saccades and macrosaccadic oscillations (see below) \[162\]. Infarction in the territory of the superior cerebellar artery, involving the superior cerebellar peduncle, causes contrapulsion of saccades: horizontal saccades away from the lesion are hypermetric, ipsilateral saccades are hypometric, and attempted vertical saccades are directed obliquely away from the side of the lesion \[753,874\]. This saccadic lateropulsion is thought due to a lesion of the efferent pathways from the caudal fastigial nucleus running in the uncinate fasciculus next to the superior cerebellar peduncle \[162,874\]. Ocular contrapulsion in patients with multiple sclerosis likely results from a lesion in the region of the superior cerebellar peduncle, involving the uncinate fasciculus \[310\]. Lesions causing ipsipulsion or contrapulsion of saccades are outlined in Fig. 8.17. Lateropulsion, with or without other aspects of ocular tilt reaction (OTR) or partial nuclear third nerve palsies, has also been described due to midbrain lacunar infarction \[55\].

Vermian cerebellar lesions also impair an interesting adaptive capability of the saccadic system (i.e., repair of ocular dysmetria). Normally, if lateral rectus weakness develops, the involved eye makes hypometric saccades. If the sound eye is then patched, or if
Lesions of the dorsal vermis (lobules IV-VI) and three principle syndromes:

1. Lesions of the dorsal vermis (lobules IV-VI) and fastigial nucleus cause enduring saccadic dysmetria, mild deficits of smooth pursuit, esodeviation, and, occasionally with deep nuclear involvement, macrosaccadic oscillations, an extreme degree of hypermetria. For example, lesions affecting the dorsal vermis cause ipsilateral saccadic hypometria and mild contralateral hypermetria, tonic deviation of gaze away from the side of the lesion, and impaired smooth pursuit for targets moving toward the side of the lesion [945]. Unilateral fastigial lesions cause ipsilateral hypermetria and contralateral hypometria of saccades (ipsipulsion), tonic gaze deviation toward the side of the lesion, and impaired smooth pursuit for targets moving away from the side of the lesion. Lesions of the uncinate fasciculus in the superior cerebellar peduncle cause ipsilateral hypometria and contralateral hypermetria of saccades (contrapulsion).

2. Lesions of the flocculus and paraflocculus (vestibulocerebellum) impair ipsilateral smooth pursuit and ipsilateral gaze holding, cause post-saccadic drift (pulse-step mismatch), impair the vestibulocerebellum reflex, and, due to impaired gaze-holding functions, cause gaze evoked, rebound, or downbeat nystagmus.

3. Finally, nodular and ventral uvular lesions prolong the vestibular responses, resulting in periodic alternating nystagmus, and may cause positional nystagmus, especially downbeat nystagmus, especially downbeat nystagmus [565]. Nystagmus is discussed below.

Other forms of nystagmus that may occur with cerebellar lesions include divergence nystagmus, centripetal nystagmus, seesaw nystagmus, and acquired pendular nystagmus (see below). Saccadic intrusions, including square-wave jerks and macrosaccadic oscillations (see below), may also occur with cerebellar disease.

Many degenerative processes can affect the cerebellum or its connections and produce cerebellar eye signs [565]. Patients with Friedreich ataxia have a decreased vestibulo-ocular response, saccadic dysmetria, ocular flutter, and prominent square-wave jerks, including rare examples of vertical square-wave jerks (see below) [280]. In some patients with Friedreich ataxia, saccadic velocity is essentially normal, while saccadic latency is prolonged [280].

Slow saccades (especially horizontal saccades) occur in primary hereditary cerebellar degenerations, especially in spinocerebellar ataxia type 2 (SCA2 or olivopontocerebellar atrophy), SCA7, and dentatorubral-pallidolysian atrophy (Haw River syndrome). Impairment of the VOR with saccadic hypermetria or hypometria is common with SCA 3 (Machado–Joseph’s disease), while the presence of downbeat, gaze-evoked, and rebound nystagmus with normal saccade speed is typical of SCA 6. SCA 6 is also associated with square-wave jerks (see below) and a stronger reduced downward smooth pursuit gain than an upward smooth pursuit gain with reduced horizontal smooth pursuit gain [126]. Periodic alternating nystagmus with periodic alternating skew deviation has also been described with SCA 6 [202]. SCA 8 causes gaze-evoked nystagmus with saccadic hypermetria, while SCA 20 may be associated...
with saccadic hypermetria, impaired smooth pursuit, and square-wave jerks. In spinocerebellar ataxia with saccadic intrusions (SCAS1), an adult onset autosomal recessive disorder, saccadic hypermetria with saccadic intrusions may be associated with an axonal peripheral polyneuropathy, corticospinal tract signs, and fasciculations [885]. Patients with paraneoplastic cerebellar degeneration have impaired output from the cerebellar cortex often manifest as downbeat nystagmus. Other reported findings with paraneoplastic cerebellar degeneration include horizontal gaze-evoked nystagmus, impaired smooth pursuit, and saccadic intrusions and dysmetria. Episodic vertigo and ataxia, often responsive to acetazolamide, may be associated with prominent cerebellar eye findings, including downbeat nystagmus. Patients with familial cortical myoclonic tremor with epilepsy (FCMTE) may have square-wave jerks, downbeat nystagmus, and a stronger reduced downward smooth pursuit gain than an upward smooth pursuit gain [126].

Several ocular motor deficits have been described in spinocerebellar ataxia type 17 (SCA17) mutation carriers [421]. Smooth pursuit initiation and maintenance are strongly impaired and visually guided saccades are hypometric but have normal velocities. Gaze-evoked nystagmus is found in one-third of the mutation carriers, including downbeat and rebound nystagmus. These changes are compatible with cerebellar degeneration. There is also a pathologic increase in error rates of antisaccades and memory-guided saccades pointing to a deficient frontal inhibition of reflexive movements, which is probably best explained by cortical dysfunction and may be related to other phenotypic SCA17 signs, for example, dementia and parkinsonism. Smooth pursuit impairment and saccadic disorders increased with disease duration [421].

Ataxia-telangiectasia is an autosomal recessive disorder characterized by progressive neurological deficits, including prominent ocular motor dysfunction. Unstable fixation often leads to difficulty reading and blurred vision. Nystagmus and saccadic intrusions are common in these patients [829]. Horizontal, vertical, and torsional nystagmus was present in straight ahead (spontaneous nystagmus) and eccentric gaze (gaze evoked nystagmus). The horizontal nystagmus may change directions (i.e., periodic alternating nystagmus—see below)). Two types of saccadic intrusions may occur—micro-saccadic oscillations and square-wave saccadic intrusions. Micro-saccadic oscillations are small amplitude (0.1–0.9 degrees) and high frequency (14–33 Hz) back to back horizontal saccades while square-wave saccadic intrusions ranged between 1 degree and 18 degrees with an intersaccadic interval ranging between 50 and 800 ms.

In ataxia-telangiectasia it is thought that degeneration of cerebellar Purkinje neurons disinhibits the caudal fastigial oculomotor region (FOR) and vestibular nuclei. Disinhibition of vestibular nuclei can cause nystagmus, including periodic alternating nystagmus, while disinhibition of FOR can affect saccade-generating mechanisms, leading to saccadic intrusions [829].

Anti-glutamic acid decarboxylase (anti-GAD) antibody formation has been associated with various neurologic manifestations including stiff person syndrome, limbic encephalitis, and a cerebellar dysfunction syndrome [261,269,796]. The stiff person syndrome is a rare neurologic disorder characterized by skeletal muscle rigidity and progressive, fluctuating muscle spasms. The anti-GAD antibody-related cerebellar syndrome causes the insidious onset of gait ataxia. Neuro-ophthalmologic findings with the anti-GAD antibody syndrome include gaze-evoked nystagmus, esotropia, poor saccadic initiation, saccadic dysmetria, and impaired smooth pursuit [24,261,269]. In patients with cerebellar dysfunction, there may be downbeat nystagmus, rebound nystagmus, square-wave jerks, skew deviation, slow and hypometric saccades, and impaired smooth pursuit on downward gaze [269].

The Arnold-Chiari malformation is an abnormality of the hindbrain including the caudal cerebellum, including the vestibulocerebellum, flocculus, paraflocculus (tonsils), uvula, and nodulus, and the caudal medulla. Presenting symptoms include oscillopsia that is brought on or accentuated by head movements, and dizziness, vertigo, cervical pain, and headaches, all of which can be brought on by Valsalva maneuver. A variety of ocular motor abnormalities may occur [565], especially downbeat nystagmus (both positional and spontaneous), occasionally with a torsional component and worse on lateral gaze. Other eye findings may include primary position unidirectional horizontal nystagmus, periodic alternating nystagmus, divergence nystagmus, positional nystagmus, rebound nystagmus including torsional rebound, convergence nystagmus, impaired pursuit eye movements with impaired VOR cancellation, esotropia, divergence paralysis, skew deviation accentuated or alternating on lateral gaze, saccadic dysmetria, and internuclear ophthalmoplegia. Patients with Dandy–Walker syndrome, a malformation of the cerebellar vermis that consists of a membranous cyst of the fourth ventricle and malformation of the cerebellar cortex and deep cerebellar nuclei, often have saccadic dysmetria. Ocular motor abnormalities, including nystagmus and strabismus, may occur with congenital agenesia of the vermis [166] or hypoplasia of the cerebellum [807]. Other rare syndromes associated with anomalous cerebellar development

...
The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System

include Joubert syndrome (a variable combination of psychomotor retardation, episodic tachypnea, retinal dystrophy, torsional nystagmus, pendular nystagmus, seesaw nystagmus, skew deviations that changes with lateral gaze and also spontaneously alternate as to which eye is higher, ocular motor apraxia, agenesis of the vermis, and fibrosis of the extraocular muscles) [535,600,805] and Coffin-Siris syndrome (developmental delay, hypotonia, cutaneous findings, and abnormalities of the roof of the fourth ventricle) [225].

Medulloblastoma arising in the posterior medullary velum frequently causes positional nystagmus due to involvement of the nodulus and uvula. Schwannoma of the eighth cranial nerve or meningioma may compress the flocculus and paraflocculus in the cerebellopontine angle and produce the vestibulocerebellar syndrome. In addition, patients may demonstrate Bruns’ nystagmus in which there is a coarse gaze-evoked nystagmus beating toward the side of the lesion and a fine vestibular nystagmus beating away from the side of the lesion.

Vascular syndromes affecting the cerebellum are discussed in Chapter 16. The anterior-inferior cerebellar artery (AICA), a branch of the basilar artery, supplies the vestibular nuclei, adjacent dorostral brainstem, and inferior lateral cerebellum. Infarction in the distribution of this vessel may cause vertigo, vomiting, hearing loss, facial weakness, and ipsilateral limb ataxia (see Chapter 16). Ocular findings may include gaze-evoked nystagmus, impaired smooth pursuit, and unilateral loss of vestibular functioning resulting in an asymmetric response to rapid head turns (e.g., in a patient with a left AICA infarction, the vestibular responses to quick head turns to the left may be hypometric, requiring a catch-up saccade to the right to regain fixation). Cerebellar infarction or hemorrhage may acutely expand and compress the brainstem producing either horizontal or vertical gaze disorders depending upon whether the compression is forward or rostral. Acute cerebellar hemorrhage or large infarction may cause nystagmus, horizontal gaze palsy toward the side of the lesion, skew deviation, and, occasionally, ocular bobbing as well as third, fourth, or sixth cranial nerve palsies.

ABNORMAL SACCADES

Saccadic eye movements are tested at the bedside by instructing the patient to fixate alternately upon two targets (e.g., the tip of the examiner’s finger and the examiner’s nose) noting saccadic latency, trajectory, accuracy, and conjugacy [565]. The quick phases induced by an optokinetic drum or tape also assess saccadic eye movements. Lesions in the structures that mediate the production of saccades may result in saccades that are inappropriate, inaccurate (hypermetric or hypometric), too slow or too fast, or saccades that are poorly initiated.

1. Inappropriate saccades, or saccadic intrusions, interfere with macular fixation of an object of interest. There are several types of inappropriate saccades:

A. Square-wave jerks take the eyes off the target and are followed after about 200 msec by a corrective saccade. They may appear normally in the young and the elderly, but when larger than 1 or 2 degrees they are pathologic, resulting from a variety of disorders especially cerebellar disease and PSP. Here they may be due to impairment of the normal fixation mechanism, which exerts its effect through the rostral superior colliculus. In cerebellar disease there may be damage to the fastigial nucleus, which projects to the rostral superior colliculus, and the superior colliculus is often involved pathologically in PSP. Square-wave jerks have also been described with Alzheimer disease, Huntington disease, Parkinson disease, mitochondrial encephalopathy with lactic acidosis and stroke-like episodes (MELAS), Wernicke–Korsakoff syndrome, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, Friedreich ataxia, AIDS–dementia complex, Gerstmann–Sträussler–Scheinker disease, adult-onset Alexander disease, spinocerebellar ataxia 6 (SCA 6), familial cortical myoclonic tremor with epilepsy (FCMTE), carbohydrate-deficient glycoprotein syndrome type 1 a, and schizophrenia [126,308,759,868,1008]. They may also occur with lithium or tobacco use. An increased frequency of square-wave jerks may be noted after unilateral pallidotomy for Parkinson disease [49]. Very frequent square-wave jerks (square-wave oscillations), due to an extreme degree of saccadic hypermetria, consist of eye oscillations about a target position or fixation point with an intersaccadic interval (vs ocular flutter or opsoclonus that have no intersaccadic interval). These oscillations may spontaneously wax and wane and are usually horizontal and conjugate. Square-wave oscillations may be seen with cerebellar disease, PSP, and cerebral hemispheric disease.

B. Macro square-wave jerks are similar to square-wave jerks but are of larger amplitude (20–40 degrees). They are occasionally present in the vertical plane and have been noted in multiple sclerosis, cerebellar hemorrhage, olivoponto cerebellar atrophy, multiple systems atrophy, and with Chiari malformation.

C. Ocular flutter is a burst of to-and-fro horizontal saccades without an intersaccadic interval. Unidirectional ocular flutter has been described on a probable postinfectious basis.
Localization in Clinical Neurology

[956]. Here bursts of ocular flutter consisted almost exclusively of initial rightward saccades and were clearly influenced by orbital eye position and the presence of a visual stimulus. Based on existing experimental data, it was proposed that dysfunction of vermal pause neurons in an unstable saccade network could account for such atypical ocular flutter characteristics.

Occasionally, otherwise normal individuals show intermittent, 15–30 Hz frequency, low-amplitude, horizontal oscillations (seen only with the ophthalmoscope) termed microsaccadic flutter [37]. Patients with microsaccadic flutter often complain of “shimmering,” “jiggling,” “wavy,” or “laser beams” with paroxysms of visual disturbances lasting seconds to hours. Dizziness or disequilibrium often accompanies the visual symptoms. Most patients are otherwise normal, although one patient had multiple sclerosis [37].

A new familial disorder, microsaccadic oscillations and limb tremor (µSOLT), was described in a mother and daughter who had tiny saccadic oscillations of the eyes and tremor of the hands [830]. This unique oscillatory movement disorder resembles other common tremor disorders (such as essential tremor) that occur in patients who have an otherwise normally functioning central nervous system. The authors hypothesize that µSOLT is caused by an inherited abnormality that results in abnormal membrane properties causing reduced external inhibition in the premotor neurons that generate the high-frequency discharge (burst) for saccades and for ballistic limb movements.

D. Opsoclonus (saccadomania) is similar to ocular flutter, except that in opsoclonus there are conjugate, involuntary, large amplitude saccades in all directions. Like ocular flutter, opsoclonus indicates brainstem, especially mesencephalic, or cerebellar disease. Opsoclonus persists during eye closure and during sleep and is thought to be due to dysfunction of omnipause neurons that normally exert tonic inhibition on burst neurons [418,764]. This disorder has been described in patients with purely pontine lesions [398] and may occur in patients with locked-in syndrome. Opsoclonus is often part of a syndrome with myoclonus of the trunk and limbs and cerebellar dysfunction and may be seen as a paraneoplastic effect with neuroblastoma or other tumors (especially small-cell lung cancer and breast cancer) [91,108,764]. These movements have been also been observed in patients with viral encephalitis and hepatitis, anti-GQ1b antibodies syndrome, anti-N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor autoimmune encephalitis, meningitis, Lyme disease, trauma, intracranial (especially dorsal mesencephalic) tumor, hydrocephalus, locked-in syndrome, intracranial hypertension from venous thrombosis, thalamic or pontine hemorrhage, multiple sclerosis, hyperosmolar nonketotic coma, primary Sjögren syndrome, sarcoidosis, AIDS, or toxic encephalopathy induced by lithium, phenytoin plus diazepam, cocaine, phencyclidine plus imipramine, diphenhydramine, strychnine, tolúene, organophosphates, chlordécone, cyclosporine A, thallium, or amitriptyline [247,547]. Opsoclonus evident only during eye closure has been described with hereditary cerebellar ataxia [399]. Ocular flutter has been described in a patient with multiple sclerosis with a lesion affecting the PPRF, suggesting that at least in some cases, ocular flutter may be due to lesions involving the PPRF [819].

Foroozam et al. described the clinical presentation of a disorder termed idiopathic microsaccadic opsoclonus [301]. A 67-year-old man with intermittent blurred vision and oscillopsia, which persisted with monococular occlusion, over a 5-year period was found to have high-frequency, small-amplitude back-to-back multivectorial saccadic movements that were visible with slit lamp biomicroscopy and direct ophthalmoscopy. Video-oculography showed a 20 Hz, 0.2 to 1 degree pattern of horizontal, vertical, and torsional microsaccades. This microsaccadic disorder has persisted for 5 years with no etiology. Microsaccadic opsoclonus is an idiopathic disorder that presents with oscillopsia and intermittent blurred vision.

Voluntary nystagmus (more correctly termed psychogenic flutter [565]) occurs in normal subjects and consists of bursts of high-frequency horizontal oscillations composed of back-to-back saccades. The movements may be vertical or torsional as well. This movement will completely disappear if patients are forced to keep their eyes open, since it requires tremendous volitional effort and cannot be sustained for prolonged periods of time [128]. Voluntary nystagmus is often accompanied by a “fixed look” required to produce the symptoms, eyelid flutter, and convergence spasm [808]. Voluntary nystagmus cannot be sustained for more than about 30 seconds and is often precipitated by convergence. In contrast to psychogenic flutter, pathologic saccadic eye oscillations, such as opsoclonus or ocular flutter, may be more continuous and are usually of lower frequency and larger amplitude.
2. Impaired initiation of saccades, with abnormally increased latencies, can be the consequence of disease anywhere in the pathways mediating saccade production. Saccades toward the side contralateral to the lesion are delayed with frontal or collicular damage. Pontine lesions impair saccades to the side of the injury. In all these cases the saccades tend to be hypometric as well. Saccadic latencies may actually be decreased in PSP or with focal hemispherical lesions [721,729].

A striking disorder of saccade initiation is ocular motor apraxia, characterized by an impaired ability to generate saccades on command, although reflexly induced saccades (both to visual targets during spontaneous visual search and to vestibular and optokinetic stimulation) and random saccades are normal. There is usually loss of voluntary pursuit eye movements as well. Patients have difficulties making horizontal and vertical saccades to command and following a pointer moved by the examiner. Gaze shifts are more easily achieved with combined head and eye movements, often in association with a blink. When acquired later in life, ocular apraxia usually occurs in the vertical as well as the horizontal plane and usually indicates bilateral hemispheric disease, especially affecting the frontal or frontoparietal region [227,340,723,724]. Acquired ocular motor apraxia is most often due to bilateral parietal or occipital and brainstem reticular formation of cortical inputs. Impaired scanning of a complex picture, leading to bizarre interpretations of visual scenes, is also characteristic of the patients with bilateral frontal disease. Some patients with ocular motor apraxia may show spasm of fixation, the inability to generate a voluntary eye movement to shift gaze when a fixation target in continuously present; only when the fixation target is removed can gaze be shifted. This spasm may be due to defects in the inhibitory control of the superior colliculus by the substantia nigra pars reticulata [565]. Ocular motor apraxia is similar to the defect called psychic paralysis of gaze seen in association with inaccurate arm pointing (optic ataxia) and simultanagnosia described as Balint syndrome (see Chapter 20). The lesions with Balint syndrome are more parietal and occipital and voluntary saccades may be made more easily than in response to visual stimuli and smooth pursuit is often also impaired. The main abnormality with Balint’s syndrome, thus, seems to be a defect in the visual guidance of saccades with impaired ability to conduct visual search [565].

Ocular motor apraxia in both the horizontal and vertical planes associated with ataxia and choreoathetosis may occur in hereditary spino-cerebellar degenerations (e.g., recessive ataxia with ocular apraxia) [12,74,544], with Niemann–Pick variants, or with ataxia-telangiectasia. It may also occur with variant ataxia-telangiectasia that presents in adulthood with variable neurologic findings especially extrapyramidal symptoms (choreoathetosis, dystonia, resting tremor) but also occasionally cerebellar ataxia, nystagmus, dysarthria, polyneuropathy, and/or anterior horn cell neuronopathy [957]. The diagnosis of variant ataxia-telangiectasia may be made by documenting an increased serum alpha-fetoprotein and by chromosomal analysis. The diagnosis of this entity is important as these patients have a high risk of malignancy [957]. Purely vertical saccadic apraxia (random but not voluntary saccades intact) associated with memory impairment has been described with bilateral medial thalamic lesions [627]. Saccadic abnormalities are common with Parkinsonian syndromes and with progressive ataxic syndromes [646,968].

Ocular apraxia may be congenital (Cogan congenital ocular motor apraxia) [392,719,736,835], in which the abnormality is almost always restricted to the horizontal plane and is associated with characteristic thrusting horizontal head movements sometimes with prominent blinking. Rare vertical cases since birth have also been described [260]. Most patients with congenital ocular motor apraxia show a defect in generating quick phases of nystagmus, which can be demonstrated by manually spinning the patient on a swivel chair, if necessary in an adult’s lap. Affected patients usually improve with age with the head movements becoming less prominent as the patients are better able to direct their eye movements voluntarily. Disorders associated with congenital ocular motor apraxia include ataxia telangiectasia (Louis-Barr syndrome), ataxia with ocular motor apraxia (AOA) types 1 and 2, Pelizaeus–Merzbacher disease, Joubert syndrome, Neimann–Pick type C disease, Gaucher disease, infantile and late-onset Tay–Sachs disease, abetalipoproteinemia (vitamin E deficiency), and Huntington disease [565].

Ataxia with oculomotor apraxia type 2 (AOA2) is an autosomal recessive disease due to mutations in the senataxin gene, causing progressive cerebellar ataxia with peripheral neuropathy, cerebellar atrophy, occasional oculomotor apraxia, and elevated alpha-feto-protein serum level [28]. Anheim et al. described 67 previously reported and 58 novel ataxic patients who underwent senataxin gene sequencing because of suspected AOA2 [28]. Polyneuropathy was found in 97.5% of
A syndrome of loss of voluntary gaze after cardiac surgery, especially of the aortic valve, has been described [241,271,387,562,632,926,954]. Affected patients report difficulties in seeing the environment clearly as they recover from the surgery. One associated syndrome is a form of ocular motor apraxia in which voluntary saccades, pursuit, and vergence movements are lost, whereas reflexive eye movements, including slow and quick phases of vestibular nystagmus, are preserved. Such patients may make normal velocity saccades using combined eye and head movements. Bihemispheric lesions are likely but may not be evident on neuroimaging. A second syndrome after cardiac surgery is a selective palsy of all rapid eye movements, including accades and quick phases (selective saccadic palsy), but with sparing of voluntary smooth pursuit and vergence eye movements. The saccadic eye movement deficit can be prominent horizontally or vertically but often saccades in all directions are involved. It is thought that this second syndrome reflects damage to neurons in the paramedian pons, including omnipause and premotor burst neurons. This selective saccadic palsy is similar to that which may be noted with Huntington disease and SCA 2.

Solomon et al. measured eye, eyelid, and head movements of 10 patients who developed selective palsy of saccades after cardiac surgery [859]. Patients showed varying degrees of slowing and hypometria of saccades in the vertical plane or both horizontal and vertical planes, with complete loss of all saccades in one patient. Quick phases of nystagmus were also affected, but smooth pursuit, vergence, and the vestibuloocular reflex were usually spared. The smallest saccades were less slowed than larger saccades. Affected patients were visually disabled by loss of ability to voluntarily shift their direction of gaze. Blinks and head thrusts modestly improved the range and speed of voluntary movement. The syndrome usually followed aortic valve replacement. Common accompanying features included dysarthria, labile emotions, and unsteady gait. The saccadic palsy either improved during the early part of the course or remained static.

3. Inaccurate or dysmetric saccades usually point to brainstem or cerebellar disease [125]. Patients with cerebellar disease often have significantly larger saccadic amplitudes (hyperm昙ia) at least in one direction [125]. Lesions of the superior vermis or brachium conjunctivum cause hyper昙ia away from the side of the lesion while lesions of the fastigial nucleus produce ipsilateral saccadic hyper昙ia. Wallenberg syndrome may be associated with ipsipulsion of saccades while superior cerebellar peduncle lesions, rostral cerebellar lesions, caudal lesions of the medulla, and medial medullary lesions cause contrapulsion of saccades (see above) [509,510,753,919]. Extreme saccadic hyper昙ia produces macrosaccadic oscillations (a series of hypermetric saccades) about the target. Macrosaccadic oscillations are different from square-wave jerks and consist of eye oscillations around the fixation angle with intersaccadic intervals approximately 200 msec [565]. They are usually conjugate, horizontal, and symmetric in both directions of gaze, but may occur in torsional or vertical planes. Macrosaccadic oscillations are encountered in cerebellar disease that involves the fastigial nucleus and with pontine lesions that involve omnipause neurons [47]. For example, a recessive disorder, designated spinocerebellar ataxia with saccadic intrusions, has been described in which affected patients showed overshooting horizontal saccades, macrosaccadic oscillations, and increased velocity of larger saccades while other eye movements were normal [885]. Macrosaccadic oscillations may be induced by edrophonium (Tensilon) in patients with profound ophthalmoplegia from myasthenia gravis [520]. Also, patients with a hemispheric lesion resulting in a homonymous field defect may make hypermetric saccades toward the side of the field defect in order to visualize objects placed in that direction. Patients with Lambert–Eaton myasthenic syndrome may have hypometric, closely spaced saccades; the characteristic facilitation of muscle power in this syndrome can sometimes be demonstrated during repetitive saccades as hypometria gives way to hyper昙ia [565].

In Alzheimer disease, saccades are often abnormal [295]. In advanced cases, there may be impersistence of gaze, manifested by large amplitude saccadic intrusions away from the intended position of gaze. When instructed to make saccades away from a target (antisaccadic task), some patients make reflex saccades toward the target (visual grasp reflex) [295].

Patients with frontotemporal lobar degeneration, corticobasal ganglionic degeneration, and PSP also have impaired performance of anti-saccadic tasks [331,726]; however, only the frontotemporal lobar degeneration subjects and not Alzheimer disease, corticobasal ganglionic degeneration, or PSP patients are able to spontaneously self-correct anti-saccade errors as well as controls [331]. Abnormalities of antisaccade tasks also occur with AIDS, Wilson disease, Huntington...
The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System

Patients with Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease may show a characteristic ocular abnormality—geotropic ocular deviation with skew and absence of saccades [1010]. When the head is turned to one side, the eyes very slowly deviate to that side, while the abducting eye moves upward and the adducting eye moves downward. Spontaneous ocular movements are very slow with no saccadic component. They may also develop periodic alternating nystagmus (see below) and slow vertical saccades (especially upward) suggesting involvement of the cerebellar nodulus and uvula, and brainstem reticular formation, respectively [359]. Another saccadic abnormality in Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease is periodic alternating gaze deviation with tonic deviation of the eyes and the head to one side for a period of two to two-and-a-half minute followed by slow deviation over 10 to 15 seconds to the opposite side where the head and eyes remain deviated for a similar duration before the cycle repeats. Centripetal nystagmus may also occur with Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease [406].

Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis spares the ocular motor neurons except in very advance cases so eye movements are normal until very late in the disease. Abnormal findings may include impaired smooth pursuit, square-wave jerks, inaccurate memory-guided saccades, and impaired antisaccade task consistent with frontal lobe involvement [565]. In a subset of patients, eye movement abnormalities may be prominent earlier in the course of the disease and consist of slowing of vertical saccades (likely due to loss of neurons in the riMLF), impaired smooth pursuit, and gaze-evoked nystagmus [45].

4. Abnormal saccadic velocity may have various causes. Saccades that appear to be too fast usually represent a normal-velocity saccade stopped in mid-flight. They are characteristically found in myasthenia gravis, when muscle fatigue (intrasaccadic fatigue) prevents the saccade from evolving to completion or slows the saccade in midflight so that the eye creeps up to its target. The saccade, rather than being too fast, is actually too small. This fatigue may cause the saccade to stop in midflight with a drift backward resulting in a relatively specific jelly-like bilateral quiver movement; this quiver consists of an initial small saccadic movement followed by a rapid drift backward. In myasthenia, large saccades may be hypometric and small saccades may be hypermetric. Edrophonium (Tensilon) injection may cause saccades to be hypermetric, sometimes with continuous to-and-fro movements about the target (macro-saccadic oscillations) [520,565].

Slow saccades occur in the direction of a paretic extraocular muscle or in the adducting eye...
with an ipsilateral MLF lesion. In these cases the range of motion is limited (hypometric saccades). When the range of motion is full, slow saccades in the horizontal plane usually result from bilateral PPRF disease while slowing in the vertical plane suggests impairment in the rMLF. Slow horizontal saccades probably reflect damage to EBN in the PPRF or omnipause neurons. Predominant slowing of horizontal saccades is characteristic of SCA 2 (olivopontocerebellar atrophy). Despite their slow velocity, patients with SCA2 usually make normal amplitude saccades. Slow saccades may also occur after cardiac surgery (see above), with other spinocerebellar ataxias (e.g., SCA 7), Parkinson disease, Huntington disease, Whipple disease, Alzheimer disease, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, tetanus, paraneoplastic syndromes (e.g., with anti-MA2 antineuronal antibodies and testicular carcinoma), AIDS-associated dementia, Wilson disease, ataxia telangiectasia, PSP, lipid storage disorders (e.g., Gaucher disease), and drug intoxication (anticonvulsants, benzodiazepines). Patients with progressive supranuclear palsy (PSP) have slowing of vertical (up and down) saccadic velocity while patients with corticobasal degeneration have preserved saccadic velocity with increased saccadic latency (i.e., delayed initiation), especially ipsilateral to the apractic side [561,769]. Slow saccades and saccadic dysmetria may occur with chronic petrol sniffing and lead encephalopathy [165]. Asymptomatic disconjugate slowing of horizontal saccades and vestibular-evoked eye movements, with mild conjugate slowing of vertical saccades, has been described with Kennedy disease [915]. Drowsy, inattentive, or sedated patients (e.g., anticonvulsants or benzodiazepines) may also have slow saccades.

Convergence System

Convergence and divergence (disjunctive) movements of the eyes bring about binocular vision. Like convergence, divergence is not a purely passive process but requires active contraction of eye muscles. Both eye movements aim at placing a point of the visual field in homologous points of both retinas, most often the maculae. Near objects elicit convergence, whereas distant ones elicit divergence of the axes of both eyes. Vergence movements are accompanied by accommodation of the lens to prevent the blur that results from a poorly focused image. An object approaching the subject in the sagittal plane induces the “near-triad” reflex composed of convergence, rounding of the lens (accommodation), and constriction of the pupil (miosis). Vergence movements are much slower than saccades or pursuit eye movements, proceeding over a period as long as 1 second. In most natural circumstances, however, vergence movements are used in combination with saccades or pursuit eye movements.

Two major types of vergence stimuli may be distinguished: retinal blur and retinal disparity. Retinal blur refers to a loss of image sharpness, while retinal disparity is the separation of images of an object such that they fall on noncorresponding parts of the retina. Retinal blur elicits accommodation and retinal disparity elicits fusional vergence.

The neuronal groups or pathways involved in convergence remain poorly understood [986]. Stimulation of areas 19 or 22 of the occipital cortex may induce some of the elements of the near-triad. Descending fibers from cortical convergence areas probably decussate in the thalamotectal area (perhaps in the paramedian thalamus) [740,986] and control pretectal vergence neurons. Verceng premotor neurons, so-called near response cells, lie in the midbrain dorsal and dorsolateral to the oculomotor nucleus and in the medial NRTP [611]. These near response cells can be divided functionally into convergence and divergence neurons [611]. Three sets of neurons intermixed in the midbrain reticular formation discharge only in relation to convergence or divergence movements: vergence burst, vergence tonic, and vergence burst-tonic cells. Vergence burst neurons have higher-frequency discharge before and during vergence and transmit eye velocity commands for medial and lateral motoneurons. Vergence tonic cells discharge in relation to the angle of convergence and carry eye position commands for motoneurons. Vergence burst-tonic cells combine the velocity and the position commands. Convergence cells project to medial rectus subdivisions of the ipsilateral oculomotor nucleus, providing medial rectus motoneurons with their convergence signal. Divergence neurons, however, do not project to either oculomotor nucleus. Most natural shifts of the visual point of fixation between targets are located at different distances and in different directions. Such sudden or “step” refixations require combined saccade-vergence movements. The vergence component of such movements is speeded up by the synchronous saccade and is sometimes referred as “fast” vergence. “Slow” vergence movements (less than 2 degree/second) can be induced by moving a target smoothly toward the patient’s nose, as is commonly done during a clinical examination. Neuronal structures for “fast” and “slow” vergence might be anatomically separated in the pons under natural viewing conditions. Lesions affecting the NRTP cause not only impaired conjugate smooth pursuit eye movements but also deficits in vergence to ramp and sinusoidal targets (constant peak vergence velocity of 1.5 degree/second) but not to “step” targets [751]. Pontine
nuclei thus appear to be involved in slow vergence control [751, 752]. “Fast” vergence may be impaired by midbrain and upper pontine lesions [751].

The cerebellum is part of the cortico–ponto–cerebellar circuit for conjugate eye movements [800]. The human cerebellum, in particular the vermis, is involved in the processing of dynamic vergence eye movements and cerebellar lesions elicit dissociable effects on fast and slow vergence eye movements [800].

Convergence and divergence neurons project to the medial rectus and lateral rectus, respectively. The cerebellar flocculus also has neurons that discharge in relation to the vergence angle. Patients with Chiari malformation or cerebellar degeneration can have an esotropia consisting of convergence bias or a divergence weakness with full abduction in each eye. A possible mechanism for this esotropia with floccular lesions is that the flocculus may have inhibitory projections to the medial rectus but not the lateral rectus motoneurons. Vergence movements involve fine coordination between the abducens and the oculomotor nuclei, but for vergence the link between these nuclei probably courses outside the MLF because MLF lesions respect convergence.

During convergence, the pupillary sphincter constricts to parasympathetic impulses from the Edinger–Westphal nucleus reach the pupil by way of the third nerve and ciliary ganglion. Lesions affecting the midbrain, third nerve, or ciliary ganglion may cause paresis of the iris sphincter. In these cases, the light reflex tends to be involved earlier and to a greater extent than convergence (light-near dissociation) because the contingent of pupillomotor fibers mediating convergence outnumber the ones mediating the light reflex. Adie tonic pupil, discussed above, exemplifies this differential innervation.

Convergence insufficiency is common among teenagers and college students (especially those with an increased visual work load) but may also be seen in the elderly, after mild head trauma, and with acquired cerebral lesions (especially those affecting the non-dominant parietal lobe) [565,693]. Patients with convergence insufficiency typically complain of eyestrain and ache. After brief periods of reading, the letters will blur and run together and often diplopia occurs during near work. Typically, the patient will close or cover one eye while reading to obtain relief from visual fatigue. Patients have an exodeviation greater at near than at distance but adduction is usually normal and there is a remote near point of convergence [972]. Parkinson disease and PSP are often associated with impaired or absent convergence [743].

Patients with convergence paralysis, as opposed to convergence insufficiency, often harbor a lesion of the midbrain. Diplopia exists only at near fixation, adduction is normal, and the patient is unable to converge. Preservation of accommodation or pupillary miosis at near confirms an organic etiology. Other signs of midbrain damage usually are present including impaired vertical gaze, upbeat or downbeat nystagmus, convergence–retraction nystagmus, and eyelid retraction. Many conditions are associated with convergence paralysis, including Parkinson disease, PSP, dorsal midbrain tumors, midbrain hemorrhage or infarction, multiple sclerosis, encephalitis, metabolic causes, trauma, subdural hematoma, and drugs [743,865]. Accommodation and convergence palsy has been described in a patient with bilateral rostral superior colliculus lesions [692]. Because descending fibers from cortical convergence areas probably decussate in the thalamotectal area, dissociated unilateral convergence paralysis has been described with thalamotectal hemorrhage [579] and bilateral paramedian thalamic infarction can cause selective loss of vergence control and dissociation of the light-near reflex [986].

Convergence spasm (spasm of the near reflex) most often occurs on a functional or nonorganic basis [352,972]. The spasm may be triggered by asking the patient to fixate an object held closely before the eyes; after the fixation object has been removed, the eyes will remain in a convergent position [972]. Quick saccades back and forth in the horizontal plane may also induce the spasm. Patients may initially be thought to have unilateral or bilateral abductedons nerve paresis or myasthenia gravis, but the observation of miosis during the spasm in a patient with apparent unilateral or bilateral limitation of abduction and severe myopia (8–10 diopters) indicates the correct diagnosis [352]. This miosis generally resolves as soon as either eye is occluded.

Increased or sustained convergence may also be seen with lesions of the diencephalic–mesencephalic junction. For example, a pseudo-sixth nerve palsy may occur from midbrain lesions (midbrain pseudo-sixth nerve palsy), perhaps due to an excess of convergence tone [616,740]. In a study of patients with pseudoabducens palsy and “top-of-the-basilar” infarcts, the smallest infarcts producing an ipsilateral pseudoabducens palsy were located just rostral to the oculomotor nucleus, near the midbrain–diencephalic junction [740]. Two patients with only contralateral pseudoabducens palsy had subthalamic and thalamic infarction and four patients with bilateral pseudoabducens palsy had larger infarcts involving the midbrain. All patients with pseudoabducens palsy had upgaze palsy. The authors concluded that lesions near the midbrain–diencephalic junction are important for the development of pseudoabducens palsy and that this abnormality and convergence–retraction nystagmus are both manifestations of abnormal vergence activity.
Inhibitory descending pathways for convergence may pass through the thalamus and decussate in the subthalamic region [740]. Thus, acute esotropia has been described with contralateral thalamic infarction in the territory of the mesencephalic artery (acute thalamic esotropia) [353]. Tonic activation of the medial rectus muscle in these cases could result from damage to direct inhibitory projections from the thalamus or impairments of inputs to midbrain neurons involved in vergence control. Acute thalamic hemorrhage may cause bilateral asymmetric esotropia with the contralateral eye more affected than the ipsilateral eye [409]. Acute acquired comitant esotropia in childhood may also occur with central nervous system tumors, especially brainstem and cerebellar tumors and tumors of the corpus callosum, and with Chiari I malformation [376]. The mechanism of acute acquired comitant ET is unknown. Other etiologies of increased or sustained spasm of the near reflex include thalamic esotropia, thalamic hemorrhage, pineal tumor, Wernicke–Korsakoff syndrome, posterior fossa lesions, Chiari malformation, encephalitis, vertebrobasilar ischemia, metabolic abnormalities, including phenytoin intoxication and hepatic encephalopathy, Miller Fisher syndrome, and internuclear ophthalmoplegia [20,565,735,908].

Weakness of divergence is characterized by intermittent or constant esotropia at distance with fusion at near [572,987]. When esotropia at distance due to divergence impairment occurs in an otherwise healthy individual, it is referred to as “divergence insufficiency,” while when it occurs associated with neurologic disease, it is called “divergence paralysis.” Divergence paralysis is associated with diverse central nervous system disease and can be mimicked by myasthenia gravis [572]. Although often described with posterior fossa disease, divergence paralysis is a nonlocalizing cause of horizontal diplopia and, thus, may govern divergence [572]. For example, divergence paralysis may be seen with lower pontine lesions; after trauma, lumbar puncture, or epidural block; with encephalitis, demyelinating disease, neurosyphilis, or tumors in and around the cerebellum; with increased intracranial pressure; with brainstem ischemia; with acute lymphocytic leukemia (ALL); as an initial sign of Miller Fisher syndrome; with Machado–Joseph disease (SCA 4); or associated with diazepam use [565,695].

Fixation System

Visual fixation consists of three types of miniature eye movements: microdrifts, microsaccades, and microtremor. They occur in horizontal, vertical, and torsional directions. Microsaccades have an amplitude of less than 26 minutes of arc, while microtremors consist of continuous high-frequency eye movements. The eyes also drift smoothly at rates of less than 20 minutes of arc per second and amplitudes of 2 to 5 arc-minutes to prevent fading of a stable image. Visual fixation is an active process. Attentive fixation controls slow drift and suppresses microsaccades.

Several cerebral areas are engaged in fixation. Area 7 of the parietal cortex is active in attending to the target. The supplementary eye field (SEF) participates in maintaining fixation with the eyes in a specific region of the orbit and inhibits visually evoked saccades. The lateral prefrontal cortex contains neurons that have increased activity during fixation and neurons that appear to suppress unwanted saccades. The FEF participates in disengaging fixation.

Nerve cells in the substantia nigra pars reticulata are tonically active during fixation and inhibit presaccadic burst neurons in the superior colliculus that fire in relation to saccades made to visual and remembered targets. Substantia nigra pars reticulata neurons pause before and during saccades, disinhibiting the superior colliculus burst neurons. The substanti nigra pars reticulata therefore functions as a gatekeeper for saccadic commands from the cerebral hemispheres to the brainstem and prevents unwanted saccades to extraneous targets. Fixation neurons in the rostral pole of the superior colliculus keep presaccadic neurons in the caudal superior colliculus silent, while the eyes remain fixated, until a new target appears and activates presaccadic buildup neurons, which inhibit fixation neurons. The superior colliculus projects to omnipause neurons in the midline of the pontine tegmentum. The fixation cells of the superior colliculus activate omnipause neurons that sustain fixation by tonically inhibiting saccadic burst neurons in the PPRF and riMLF.

Gaze Palsies

An understanding of the systems that coordinate eye movements clarifies why lesions at different levels of the brain spare some systems while affecting others. The resulting pattern of eye movements is helpful for lesion localization. Alternative pathways account for differential severity of the deficit related to a single lesion or to several lesions. For instance, a unilateral lesion in the frontal eye field (area 8) causes only transient gaze palsy, but simultaneous involvement of the ipsilateral superior colliculus causes severe impairment of contralateral saccadic eye movements.

CONJUGATE GAZE PALSIES

A conjugate gaze palsy is one in which both eyes are symmetrically restricted in their excursion to one side, up, or down.
HORIZONTAL CONJUGATE GAZE PALSY
Unilateral restriction of voluntary gaze to one side is most often due to contralateral frontal or ipsilateral pontine damage. The localization of lesions impairing horizontal smooth pursuit and saccadic eye movements is summarized in Tables 8.20 and 8.21, respectively.

**Frontal Lesions.** Frontal lesions causing gaze palsy tend to be rather acute, and the resulting palsy is transient. In the acute phase, the patient generally has a hemiparesis and “looks toward the lesion,” away from the hemiparesis (Prevost or Vulpian sign). The gaze palsy can be overcome with the oculocephalic maneuver or caloric stimulation (vs pontine gaze palsy). The head is also often turned in the same direction. If the process, most often a stroke, evolves favorably, the gaze palsy resolves in a few days, although impaired initiation and hypometria of voluntary saccades may remain. After clinical disappearance of the conjugate eye deviation, disorders of saccades (contralateral more than ipsilateral) and smooth pursuit (ipsilateral more than contralateral) may still be demonstrated for at least 6 months in a majority of patients [917]. In general, the larger the lesion, the more persistent the conjugate gaze deviation. Prolonged eye deviation after stroke often implies preexisting damage to the contralateral frontal region and, thus, early recovery of the gaze palsy may well be mediated by the contralateral unaffected eye field [871]. Sustained horizontal gaze is more common after large strokes affecting the post-Rolandic cortex or subcortical frontoparietal region and the internal capsule. Lesions in the corona radiata adjacent to the genu of the internal capsule may cause contralateral selective saccadic palsy (associated with contralateral supranuclear facio-palato-pharyngeal apraxia with no tongue or limb weakness) suggesting that the some of the descending pathways from the FEF may pass through the genu of the internal capsule in parallel with the corticobulbar tract [317].

After a hemispheric lesion, there may be a tendency for the eyes to become deviated toward the side of the hemiparesis with forced lid closure (Cogan spasticity of conjugate gaze). This finding can be elicited by asking the patient to close his eyes while the eyelids are kept forcibly open, tends to be of lateralizing value, and is seen more commonly with parieto-temporal lesions [880].

Lesions of the frontal eye field (FEF) may produce an ipsilateral horizontal gaze and head deviation that resolves with time. Contralateral voluntary saccades are hypometric and impaired smooth pursuit is noted bilaterally but more so for targets moving toward the side of the lesion. There may be impaired ability to inhibit inappropriate saccades to a novel visual stimulus as well. Lesions of the supplementary eye field (SEF) cause impairment of the ability to make a remembered sequence of saccades to visible targets, while dorsolateral prefrontal lesions cause impaired performance to antisaccade tasks.

Epileptogenic lesions in the FEF may cause transient deviation of the eyes and head to the contralateral side (the patient then “looks” away from the lesion) [348]. However, in most cases, as soon as the focal seizure ceases, the patient tends to “look” to the involved side. Ipsiversive head and eye movements during a seizure are more likely with temporal or frontal epileptiform foci and less likely with occipital foci [613,771,775,992]. Maintenance of awareness during versive movements always indicates a contralateral focus and an origin from the frontal lobe in most cases.
ments have been classified as either onset in the contralateral hemisphere. Turning movements may be followed by late ipsiversive nonforced movements during the secondary generalization. Thus, true versive head and eye movements are thought to be a reliable localizing sign contralaterally with equal frequency and are not of localizing significance. Thus, true versive head and eye movements occurred during seizures, but ipsilaterally directed saccades from opposite field are small and slow or absent with PPRF lesions.

8. Paraneoplastic loss of horizontal voluntary eye movements or slow horizontal saccades

9. Congenital and familial bilateral horizontal gaze palsy

10. Pseudo-horizontal gaze palsy with pontine lesions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 8.21</th>
<th>Localization of Lesions Causing Impaired Horizontal Conjugate Saccadic Eye Movements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Frontal lobe lesions</td>
<td>6. Bilateral ventral paramedian midbrain lesions involving ventral pedunculotegmental pathways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Transient neglect contralaterally</td>
<td>• Bilateral limitation of horizontal saccades</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Deficit in generating voluntary saccades</td>
<td>• Preserved pursuit and vestibulococular movements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Transient horizontal gaze deviation ipsilaterally acutely</td>
<td>• Ipsilateral conjugate gaze palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Gaze palsy overcome with the oculocephalic maneuver or caloric stimulation</td>
<td>• Ipsilateral horizontal gaze palsy with ipsilateral esotrophia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Late disorders of saccades (contralateral more than ipsilateral) due to frontal eye field (FEF) lesions</td>
<td>• Acutely, eyes deviated contralaterally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Prolonged eye deviation after stroke implies large stroke or pre-existing damage to the contralateral frontal region</td>
<td>• Doll's eye maneuver or cold caloric stimulation usually does not overcome gaze palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Impaired ability to make a remembered sequence of saccades to visible targets (supplementary eye field lesions)</td>
<td>• Saccades toward side of lesion are present in contralateral hemifield but are slow with abducens nuclear lesions; ipsilaterally directed saccades from opposite field are small and slow or absent with PPRF lesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Impaired performance of anti-saccade tasks (dorsolateral prefrontal lesions)</td>
<td>• Horizontal gaze-evoked nystagmus on looking contralaterally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Epileptogenic lesions in the frontal eye fields</td>
<td>• Bilateral horizontal gaze palsies with bilateral lesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Transient deviation of the eyes and head to the contralateral side</td>
<td>• Selective saccadic palsy (bilateral lesions of pons)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ipsiversive head and eye movements during a seizure may also occur.</td>
<td>• Voluntary saccades in both horizontal and vertical planes slow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Initial forced turning (versive) head and eye movements usually correspond to a contralateral epileptiform focus, but these initial contraversive movements may be followed by late ipsiversive or contraversive nonforced movements during the secondary generalization</td>
<td>• Smooth pursuit, the vestibulo-ocular reflex, the ability to hold steady eccentric gaze, and vergence eye movements preserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Unilateral parietal lesions</td>
<td>7. Pontine lesions affecting the abducens nucleus and/or the PPRF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ipsilateral horizontal gaze preference with acute lesions contralateral inattention with right-sided lesions</td>
<td>• Ipsilateral conjugate gaze palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Unilateral or bilateral increased saccade latencies</td>
<td>• Ipsilateral horizontal gaze palsy with ipsilateral esotrophia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hypometria for contralateral saccades</td>
<td>• Acutely, eyes deviated contralaterally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Saccadic slowing</td>
<td>• Doll's eye maneuver or cold caloric stimulation usually does not overcome gaze palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Bilateral parietal lesions</td>
<td>• Saccades toward side of lesion are present in contralateral hemifield but are slow with abducens nuclear lesions; ipsilaterally directed saccades from opposite field are small and slow or absent with PPRF lesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Acquired ocular motor apraxia</td>
<td>• Horizontal gaze-evoked nystagmus on looking contralaterally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Lesions in the corona radiata adjacent to the genu of the internal capsule</td>
<td>• Bilateral horizontal gaze palsies with bilateral lesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Contralateral selective saccadic palsy</td>
<td>• Selective saccadic palsy (bilateral lesions of pons)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Lesion (e.g., hemorrhage) deep in a cerebral hemisphere, particularly the thalamus</td>
<td>• Voluntary saccades in both horizontal and vertical planes slow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Eye deviation to the side of the hemiparesis (&quot;wrong way eyes&quot;)</td>
<td>• Smooth pursuit, the vestibulo-ocular reflex, the ability to hold steady eccentric gaze, and vergence eye movements preserved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Parasis of contralateral saccades</td>
<td>8. Paraneoplastic loss of horizontal voluntary eye movements or slow horizontal saccades</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Supranuclear contralateral gaze palsy associated with ipsilateral oculomotor palsies</td>
<td>• Associated with persistent muscle spasms of the face, jaw, and pharynx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Associated prostate carcinoma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

instances [613]. Initial forced turning (versive) head and eye movements (occurring in the first 10 seconds after seizure onset) usually correspond to a contralateral epileptiform focus, but these initial contraversive movements may be followed by late ipsiversive nonforced movements during the secondary generalization of the epileptiform activity [499,1000,1001]. Thus, the late version, unlike the initial version, is frequently ipsilateral and cannot be assumed to indicate seizure onset in the contralateral hemisphere. Turning movements have been classified as either versive (unquestionably forced and involuntary, resulting in sustained unilateral positioning) or nonversive (mild, unsustained, wandering, or seemingly voluntary movements) [1000,1001]. Contralateral versive head and eye movements occurred during seizures, but ipsilateral versive movements do not occur. Nonversive lateral head and eye movements occur ipsilaterally and contralaterally with equal frequency and are not of localizing significance. Thus, true versive head and eye movements are thought to be a reliable localizing sign [499,1000,1001].
With frontal lesions, when optokinetic nystagmus is elicited, the quick component toward the side contralateral to the lesion is impaired, but smooth pursuit is preserved if the lesion spares the parietal lobe.

**Parietal Lesions.** Acute parietal lesions may cause ipsilateral horizontal gaze deviation or preference. With right-sided lesions, there is also contralateral inattention. The latency of visually guided saccades to targets presented in either visual hemi-field is increased with right sided lesions, while left-sided lesions cause delay in only contralateral saccades. Bilateral parietal lesions cause Balint syndrome (simultanagnosia, inaccurate arm pointing or optic ataxia, and difficulty in making visually guided saccades—see Chapter 20).

**Thalamic Lesions.** Hemorrhages deep in a cerebral hemisphere, particularly those involving the medial thalamus, can also cause eye deviation to the side of the hemiparesis, opposite the lesion (“wrong way eyes”). The reason for this contraversive deviation is unknown but it may be an irritative phenomena as the intralaminar thalamic nuclei have a role in the production of contralateral saccades. Others have postulated that involvement of the descending ocular motor pathways from the contralateral hemisphere at the midbrain level is the most probable explanation for this phenomenon [618,916]. Thalamic lesions, especially hemorrhage, may also be associated with tonic downward and inward deviation of the eyes (the patients “peer at the tip of the nose”), with miosis, likely due to irritation or destruction of the neural structures involved in the vergence and vertical upward gaze in the mesodiencephalon [185]. Skew deviation and esotropia from abduction deficit may be involved in some patients. Caudal thalamic lesions may also be associated with esotropia (thalamic esotropia), without downward deviation, due to convergence excess. Downgaze paralysis and impaired horizontal saccades, reported with thalamic infarction, is probably due to involvement of the nMLF and midbrain descending smooth pursuit pathways, respectively (see below).

**Mesencephalic Lesions.** Occasionally, mesencephalic lesions may cause horizontal gaze palsies. Unilateral paramedian involvement of the midbrain tegmentum may cause paresis of contralateral saccades (probably due to disruption of the corticofugal transthalamic and/or the prefrontal ocular motor bundle) associated with monocular paralysis of adduction in the ipsilateral eye (nuclear or internuclear from a lesion of the MLF) and conjugate paresis of ipsilateral smooth pursuit [1016]. The horizontal vestibulo-ocular reflex is spared. These mesencephalic tegmental lesions likely disrupt prefrontal corticofugal pathways, colliculofugal pathways, and smooth pursuit pathways [1016]. Also, patients with unilateral infarctions of the midbrain-diencephalic junction may have supranuclear contralateral gaze palsies associated with ipsilateral oculomotor palsies [604]. Bilateral limitation of lateral saccades with preserved horizontal pursuit and vestibuloocular movements was described due to bilateral paramedian mesencephalic lesions between the two peduncles probably causing bilateral involvement of the ventral pedunculotegmental pathway, one of three corticofugal pathways for horizontal saccades coursing through medial aspect of cerebral peduncles [179]. Large midbrain lesions may lead to complete ophthalmoplegia. Lesions confined to the superior colliculus are rare but may cause defects in the latency and accuracy for contralateral horizontal saccades and impaired performance in antisaccade tasks.

**Pontine Lesions.** As noted above, the abducens nucleus receives: (1) excitatory and inhibitory fibers from the vestibular nuclei (vestibular, optokinetic, and pursuit eye movements); (2) PPRF connections (saccades); (3) fibers from the nucleus proprius hypoglossi/medial vestibular nucleus (gaze holding); and (4) projections from the contralateral medial rectus nucleus subdivision (oculomotor internuclear neurons that coordinate convergence) [565]. In pontine lesions affecting the abducens nucleus, the eyes look toward the hemiparesis (although hemiparesis is an inconstant finding) and often cannot be brought to the paretic side using the doll’s eye maneuver or ipsilateral cold caloric stimulation. Vergence is spared, since these movements depend on projections that pass directly to medial rectus motoneurons. Saccades, pursuit, optokinetic, and vestibular movements are all impaired toward the side of the lesion (nondissociated ipsilateral horizontal gaze palsy) [234]; thus, lesions of the abducens nucleus cause ipsilateral palsy of conjugate gaze. Saccades directed toward the side of the lesion are present in the contralateral hemifield of movement, but are slow because they now depend solely on projections to the intact abducens nucleus from the IBN of the contralateral medullary reticular formation and saccadic peak velocity is now a function of antagonist muscle relaxation rather than antagonist contraction [317]. Horizontal gaze-evoked nystagmus may be evident on looking contralaterally, probably due to involvement of fibers from the medial vestibular nucleus (which provide an eye position signal to the contralateral abducens nucleus) or to involvement of the cell groups of the paramedian tracts (PMT) (which may contribute to horizontal gaze holding via projections to the cerebellum). An ipsilateral facial nerve palsy often accompanies abducens nuclear lesions; however, isolated acquired unilateral horizontal gaze paresis (without cranial nerve V or VII involvement) may occur from a putative lesion of the abducens nucleus [625]. Bilateral horizontal gaze palsies may occur with bilateral lesions [839].
Horizontal pontine gaze palsy may be associated with ipsilateral esotropia [198].

Loss of horizontal voluntary eye movements may occur as a paraneoplastic phenomenon associated with severe, persistent muscle spasms of the face, jaw, and pharynx [63]. Prostate carcinoma has been associated with this syndrome, probably due to an autoimmune process that damages a subpopulation of brainstem neurons critical for horizontal eye movements and recurrent inhibition of bulbar nuclei. Other causes of bilateral complete horizontal gaze palsies include myasthenia gravis, botulism, Miller Fisher syndrome, and Wernicke encephalopathy.

When all rapid eye movements (saccades and quick phases of nystagmus) ipsilateral to the lesion are abolished with preserved ipsilateral vestibuloculor response, smooth pursuit, and gazed-holding ability, the PPRF is involved (dissociated ipsilateral horizontal conjugate gaze palsy). Acutely, the eyes are deviated contralaterally. Ipsilaterally directed saccades from the opposite field are small and slow or even absent and do not carry the eyes past the midline; this occurs with PPRF lesions because both EBN and IBN are impaired and there is no longer any inhibition of the antagonist muscles controlled by the abducens nucleus on the opposite side (vs abducens nucleus lesions) [317]. Nystagmus may occur when gaze is directed into the contralateral field of movement with the quick phase away from the side of the lesion. In some patients with PPRF lesions, vestibular stimulation can only drive the contralateral adducting eye into the ipsilateral field without any drive of the ipsilateral abducting eye. This occurs because the abducens fascicle travels through the PPRF in its course through the pons so that a PPRF lesion may be associated with an ipsilateral abducens nerve palsy (the abducens nucleus is spared). In some patients with PPRF lesions, axons conveying vestibular and pursuit input to the abducens nucleus may also be damaged and, thus, occasionally ipsilateral smooth pursuit and vestibular eye movements may be impaired.

Unilateral lesions of the pontine tegmentum may result in slowed ipsilateral horizontal saccades associated with abnormal vertical saccades [459]. Attempted vertical saccades in these patients are misdirected obliquely, away from the side of the lesion, and vertical components are prolonged. Unilateral damage to EBN and omnipause cells in the medial part of the caudal PPRF may cause these abnormal vertical and oblique saccades.

Bilateral PPRF lesions are uncommon and cause total horizontal gaze palsy with slowing of vertical saccades [787]. In selective saccadic palsy voluntary saccades, in both horizontal and vertical planes, are slow and the quick phases of vestibular and optokinetic nystagmus absent, while smooth pursuit, the vestibulocular reflex, the ability to hold steady eccentric gaze, and vergence eye movements are preserved (see also above) [387,676]. Pathologic study revealed lesions involving the median and PPRF and median basis pontis with sparing of the rostral mesencephalon and riMLF [387]. These findings suggest that the riMLF is dependent on inputs from the PPRF for the programming of normal vertical saccades [387]. It may be that lesions involving the PPRF may also damage omnipause neurons that project to the riMLF and, thus, vertical as well as horizontal saccades are slowed. In a case of selective saccadic palsy after cardiac surgery there was loss of voluntary and reflexive horizontal saccades with preserved vertical saccades (see above) [954]. This case supports the notion that anatomic pathways of premotor burst neurons that control horizontal saccades may be distinct from those that govern vertical saccades and that the intact vertical saccades in this case may have been due to preservation of premotor burst neurons in riMLF and INC.

In the syndrome of congenital paralysis of horizontal gaze associated with progressive scoliosis but mild or absent facial weakness, all horizontal conjugate saccades, pursuit, optokinetic, and vestibular eye movements are absent [124,565,720,783,834]. Some cases are familial [834]. Horizontal convergence is relatively preserved and some patients use this preserved convergence to help substitute for absent conjugate gaze shifts. Adaptive strategies to compensate for the horizontal gaze impairment also include the substitution of rapid head movements for eye saccades to change gaze rapidly [565]. Vertical saccades are preserved but vertical pursuit is often deficient. Some patients have small amplitude, horizontal or elliptical pendular nystagmus (see below) at approximately 2 Hz, sometimes accompanied by head shaking. Intermittent slow blinking of one or both eyes may be noted. MRI neuroimaging in some of these patients has revealed pontine and medullary hypoplasia, absence of the facial genu, a deep pontine cleft, and absence of the pyramidal tract decussation that may be responsible for the scoliosis [720,783]. The scoliosis is usually progressive and disabling.

A pseudo-horizontal gaze palsy may occur with pontine lesions damaging the MLF on one side (see below) and the contralateral abducens nerve fascicle. This pseudo-horizontal gaze palsy should be suspected if the gaze palsy is asymmetric, usually with the adducting eye more restricted than the abducting eye.

Periodic alternating gaze (PAG) is composed of (1) cyclic conjugate lateral deviation of the eyes, usually with compensatory head turning to the opposite side for 1 to 2 minutes; (2) a midline change-over period of 10 to 15 seconds; followed by (3) conjugate
deviation of the eyes to the other side with compensatory head turning for 1 to 2 minutes [556]. With the exception of one case of occipital encephalocele and a single case associated with schizencephaly and optic nerve hypoplasia [262], all cases of this rare condition studied radiographically or pathologically have demonstrated disease in the posterior fossa (e.g., pontine damage, posterior fossa ischemia, spinocerebellar degeneration, cerebellar medulloblastoma, Chiari malformation, cerebellar dysgenesis, etc.), especially affecting the inferior cerebellar vermis [556].

VERTICAL CONJUGATE GAZE PALSY

Nondominant Hemispheral and Thalamic Lesions. Bilateral pliosis and upgaze palsy has been described with right hemispheric lesions [30]. Thalamic lesions may be associated with vertical gaze palsies [947]. Although most of these lesions also involve midbrain structures involved with vertical gaze, in some patients no midbrain involvement is noted on neuroimaging suggesting involvement of supranuclear inputs [196,232].

Midbrain Lesions. The riMLF lies dorsomedial to the rostral pole of the red nucleus, medial to the fields of Forel, lateral to the periaqueductal gray and the nucleus of Darkschewitsch, and immediately rostral to the interstitial nucleus of Cajal. Unilateral lesions of the riMLF cause slowing of downward saccades. Each riMLF contain burst neurons for both upward and downward movements but projections to motoneurons innervating depressors (inferior rectus and superior oblique) are ipsilateral while those innervating elevators (superior rectus and inferior oblique) are probably bilateral. A unilateral lesion of the riMLF may occasionally cause combined up-and-downgaze palsies, perhaps by disrupting bilateral upgaze excitatory and inhibitory inputs and unilateral downgaze excitatory inputs [113]. A defect of torsional saccades is also produced with unilateral riMLF lesions; for example, with a right riMLF lesion, torsional quick phases in a clockwise (patient's view) are lost (i.e., extorsion of the right eye and intorsion of the left eye) [766].

Unilateral midbrain lesions affecting the riMLF cause contralesional deviations of voluntary saccades suggesting that each riMLF encodes torsional saccades in one direction, while both participate in vertical saccades [523]. Unilateral riMLF lesions can be detected at the bedside if torsional quick phases are absent during ipsidirectional head rotations in roll [103]. There is also a static contralesional torsional deviation with torsional nystagmus beating contralaterally. Bilateral riMLF lesions cause deficits of either downward saccades or downward and upward saccades [360,414,689]. Vertical gaze-holding, pursuit, and vestibuloocular reflexes are preserved. Lesions of the riMLF are usually infarcts in the distribution of the posterior thalamosubthalamic paraventricular artery that arises between the bifurcation of the basilar artery and the origin of the posterior communicating artery, with a single vessel often supplying both riMLFs. Somnolence and memory impairment often coexist due to damage to the medial thalamic nuclei.

Unilateral lesions of the interstitial nucleus of Cajal (INC—the neural integrator for upward gaze) cause impaired vertical and torsional gaze holding. Bilateral lesions cause impaired gaze-holding after all vertical and torsional eye movements with reduced range of all vertical eye movements but saccades are not slowed. Unilateral lesions of the INC also cause an ocular tilt reaction (skew deviation with ipsilateral hypertropia, extorsion of the contralateral eye, and intorsion of the ipsilateral eye with contralateral head tilt) with torsional nystagmus beating ipsilesionally (top pole quick phases rotates to the side of the lesion), while bilateral lesions cause upbeat nystagmus and neck retroflexion.

The posterior commissure (PC) is the route by which INC projects to ocular motoneurons. Inactivation of the posterior commissure causes vertical gaze-evoked nystagmus, but destructive lesions cause a more profound deficit of vertical gaze, probably due to involvement of the nucleus of the posterior commissure [103]. Lesions of the posterior commissure cause vertical gaze impairment affecting all classes of vertical eye movements, especially upward gaze, with loss of vertical gaze-holding (neural integrator) function [565]. The constellation of findings caused by lesions in this location has been variously designated as the Parinaud syndrome, Sylvian aqueduct syndrome, DBS syndrome, dorsal midbrain syndrome, and Koerber–Sakus–Elschnig syndrome [486]. The syndrome probably reflects damage to axon projections of the INC and damage to the nucleus of the posterior commissure. Unilateral midbrain lesions may cause the same syndrome by damaging afferent and efferent connections of the posterior commissure [414,755].

With the dorsal midbrain syndrome, there is impairment of all upward eye movements (although the vestibuloocular reflex and Bell's phenomenon may sometimes be spared). Downgaze saccades and smooth pursuit may be impaired, but downward vestibuloocular movements are spared. A sign of dorsal midbrain compression in hydrocephalic infants is a tonic downward deviation of the eyes while the retracted eyelids expose the epicorneal sclera (“setting sun” sign). Downbeating nystagmus may be present. The upper eyelid may be retracted, baring the sclera above the cornea (Collier “tucked lid” sign);
this sign is probably due to damage to posterior commissure levator inhibitory fibers or is a manifestation of normal levator–superior rectus synkinesis. Bilateral ptosis may result when the lesion extends vertically to involve the caudal central nucleus of cranial nerve III. The pupils are large and react poorly to light, but the near response is spared (light-near dissociation). Occasionally, skew deviation with the higher eye on the side of the lesion is noted. Convergence and divergence are often impaired. In some patients, convergence spasm may result in slow or restricted abduction ("midbrain pseudo-sixth") during horizontal refixations [740]. Attempted upgaze may result in convergence–retraction nystagmus, with quick adducting-retraction jerks. This phenomenon can be elicited at the bedside by having the patient watch a downward-moving optokinetic drum. In this case, the normal upward corrective saccades are replaced by convergence–retratory nystagmus, which is made up not by convergence movements but by opposed adducting saccades at least in some cases. As mentioned above, true convergence is often absent. The retraction of the eyes into the orbits results from irregular co-firing from several extraocular muscles, perhaps due to impairment of recurrent inhibition with the oculomotor subnuclei or abnormal vergence activity [740,750]. Fixation instability with square-wave jerks may also be noted. Table 8.22 summarizes the ocular findings that may occur with the dorsal midbrain syndrome.

Tumors are most often responsible for damage of the dorsal midbrain [486]. Hydrocephalus is another common etiology, especially when dilatation of the third ventricle and aqueduct or enlargement of the suprapineal recess cause pressure on and deformity of the posterior commissure. Patients with shunted hydrocephalus may develop features of the pretectal syndrome with shunt dysfunction even without any dilation of the ventricular system or elevation of intracranial pressure; thus, the observation of these clinical features provides a sensitive index of shunt dysfunction regardless of ventricular size or isolated measurements of intracranial pressure [109,195]. Less likely causes of pretectal syndrome include thalamic or midbrain hemorrhage or infarction, paraneoplastic encephalitis with anti-MA2 antibodies, hypoxia, multiple sclerosis, trauma, lipid storage diseases, Wilson disease, drugs (barbiturates, carbamazepine, neuroleptics), Whipple disease, syphilis, and tuberculosis [19,547,548,555,565]. A position-dependent Parinaud’s syndrome (i.e., the syndrome was manifest only with changes in head position) has been described with a subdural fluid collection over the cerebellar hemisphere [768]. A reversible dorsal midbrain syndrome may occur with spontaneous intracranial hypotension [285]. Upward gaze is often limited in Parkinson disease and may be rarely affected with vitamin B12 deficiency [486].

Convergence–retratory nystagmus may be mimicked by bilateral dysthyroid orbitopathy with bilateral involvement of both medial recti and inferior recti; saccadic upgaze attempts may cause convergence and retraction due to limitation of eye movements [158]. Other peripheral eye movement abnormalities that may mimic upgaze palsy or even convergence nystagmus include Lambert–Eaton myasthenic syndrome [215] and Fisher syndrome [494].

In a patient who developed sudden complete loss of vertical saccades, smooth pursuit, and vestibular eye movements bilaterally, MRI revealed a unilateral midbrain infarct involving the riMLF and the INC that spared the posterior commissure [21]. The lesion was presumed to have interrupted the pathways

---

**TABLE 8.22 Ophthalmic Findings with the Dorsal Midbrain Syndrome**

- Vertical gaze abnormalities, especially upgaze limitation, with or without associated limitation of downgaze
- Downward vestibulo-ocular movements may be spared
- Bell’s phenomenon may be spared
- Downward gaze preference or a tonic downward deviation of the eyes ("setting sun sign").
- Primary position downbeat nystagmus.
- Impaired convergence and divergence. The patient may, thus, be exotropic or esotropic with "A" or "V" patterns.
- Excessive convergence tone may result in slow or restricted abduction ("midbrain pseudo-sixth palsy") during horizontal refixations
- Convergence–retraction nystagmus, with quick adducting-retraction jerks predominantly on upgaze
- Pretectal pseudohobbing (nonrhythmic, rapid combined downward and adducting movements, often preceded by a blink, with movement followed by slow return to midline)
- Skew deviation often with the higher eye on the side of the lesion.
- Alternating adduction hypertropia or alternating adduction hypotropia
- Bilateral superior oblique palsies
- Fixation instability with square-wave jerks
- Eyelid abnormalities
  - Bilateral upper eyelid retraction, baring the sclera above the cornea (Collier’s “tucked lid” sign)
  - Bilateral ptosis (lesion of ventral caudal nucleus of third nerve)
- Pupillary abnormalities (large with light-near dissociation)
involved in vertical gaze just before they decussate, inducing an anatomically unilateral but functionally bilateral lesion. Previous reports of bidirectional vertical gaze palsy have shown lesions involving the PC or both riMLFs. This case is the first to show that a unilateral lesion of the riMLF and the INC that spares the PC may cause complete bidirectional vertical gaze palsy.

A patient with a diencephalic infarct displayed a persistent palsy of voluntary and visually guided vertical saccades with preserved vertical quick phases of vestibular nystagmus (i.e., reflexive vestibular quick phases) [466]. Vertical smooth pursuit had very low velocity in both directions without catch-up saccades. Vertical and torsional vestibulo-ocular reflex gains were normal. Preservation of vertical and torsional quick phases signified integrity of the riMLF. This case was the first to provide evidence that disruption of descending cerebral corticofugal pathways to the riMLF with preserved ascending projections from the PPRF to the riMLF can cause a dissociated palsy of vertical saccadic eye movements.

In summary, selective paralysis of downward saccades may occur with bilateral riMLF lesions while downgaze paralysis affecting all types of eye movements may occur with INC or posterior commissure lesions [414,431]. Pseudoptosis on attempted downward gaze may be noted as the levators relax. Paralysis of upgaze affecting all types of eye movements may occur with lesions of the posterior commissure and INC. Combined upgaze and downgaze palsies for saccades only is due to bilateral riMLF lesions while combined upgaze and downgaze palsies for all eye movements are due to damage to both INCs or the posterior commissure.

Downgaze is involved early in PSP [308]. The initial ocular motor deficit in PSP consists of slowing of vertical saccades and quick-phases, especially downward, with preserved range of movement. Later, vertical saccades and quick-phases are lost and horizontal saccades become slow and hypometric. Patients with PSP make errors when they are required to look in the opposite direction to that in which a target suddenly appears (antisaccade task). Bell’s phenomenon is usually absent. At a stage when full vertical excursions are still present, some patients with PSP display an inability to produce pure vertical saccades along a straight line in the midline. Instead, they can only accomplish vertical saccades by moving their eyes in a lateral arc (the “round the houses” sign) [742,784]. Horizontal eye movements may also be impaired (saccades and pursuit) and square-wave jerks inhibit fixation. Impaired vertical smooth pursuit occurs later, but vestibulo-ocular reflexes are preserved. Ultimately all aye movements may be lost, but vestibular movements are the last to be impaired.

Vertical saccade abnormalities are thought due to involvement of the riMLF, square-wave jerks to superior colliculus and adjacent central midbrain reticular formation (cMRF) damage, abnormal smooth pursuit to damage of the DLPN, and impaired antisaccade responses to frontal lobe dysfunction or involvement of the substantia nigra pars reticulata, which normally suppresses saccades. Convergence is often impaired, eye-opening apraxia may occur, and, eventually, complete ophthalmoplegia may develop. Other lid abnormalities include blepharospasm, inability to inhibit blinking in response to a flashlight stimulus (failure to habituate), eye-closing apraxia, lid retraction, and lid-lag. In some patients, an eye movement disorder resembling internuclear ophthalmoplegia (below) may occur, although vestibular stimulation may overcome the limited adduction.

A patient has been reported who had a parkinsonian syndrome with abnormal vertical eye movements that mimicked PSP but that was due to Whipple disease [48]. Eye movement recordings revealed marked slowing of upward saccades, moderate slowing of downward saccades, a full range of voluntary vertical eye movements, curved trajectories of oblique saccades, and absence of square-wave jerks. These features are atypical for PSP, in which the range of voluntary vertical eye movements is characteristically limited, horizontal smooth pursuit is commonly impaired, and fixation is disrupted by square-wave jerks. Also, in PSP downward eye movements are more severely affected. Besides Whipple disease, other disease processes with eye movement abnormalities resembling PSP include multiple infarcts affecting the basal ganglia, internal capsule, and midbrain; hydrocephalus; a syndrome after cardiac surgery; idiopathic striopallidodentate calcifications; autosomal dominant parkinsonism and dementia with pallidopontonigral degeneration; frontotemporal dementia; Lytico-Bodig (amyotrophic lateral sclerosis-parkinsonism-dementia complex of Guam); and Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease [256,461,607,647,715]. Cortical-basal ganglionic degeneration is associated with increased saccadic latencies but does not cause slowing of saccades [765,769,842]. Parkinson disease seldom produces slow saccades until late in the course. Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease slows saccades but both in a vertical and horizontal plane. In multiple systems atrophy, saccades are not slow but hypometric and positionally induced down-beat nystagmus may occur [758]. Diffuse Lewy body disease may present with supranuclear vertical and horizontal ophthalmoplegia [284].

Other causes of progressive impairment of downgaze include Niemann–Pick C disease and variant, adult-onset hexosaminidase A deficiency, olivopontocerebellar degeneration, ataxia-telangiectasia,
Wilson disease, Huntington disease, Whipple disease, Parkinson disease (rare), and Hallervorden–Spatz disease (rare) [291,390]. The DAF syndrome is an acronym suggested for a group of patients with prominent signs of downgaze paralysis, ataxia/athetosis, and foam cells; it is thought to be a variant of Niemann–Pick disease (e.g., sea-blue histiocytosis syndrome or juvenile dystonic lipidosis) [291].

Parkinson disease may be associated with square-wave jerks, hypometria of horizontal and vertical saccades (especially when patients are asked to perform rapid, self-paced refixations between two continuously visible targets) with normal saccadic velocity (except in advanced cases), impaired smooth pursuit, impaired convergence, and lid retraction and lag (vestibular eye movements are spared) [565]. Pallidotomy may induce square-wave jerks in parkinsonian patients. Other eye abnormalities in patients with Parkinson disease include complaints suggesting ocular surface irritation, altered tear film with dry eyes, visual hallucinations, blepharospasm, decreased blink rate, and decreased convergence amplitudes with convergence insufficiency [106].

Huntington disease may be associated with difficulties in initiating saccades (prolonged latency), which is often facilitated by an associated head thrust or eye blink. Other findings include impairment in the performance of antisaccade tasks, slow saccades, especially vertically, and impaired smooth pursuit (the VOR and gaze holding are preserved) [565]. Saccadic measures may provide biomarkers of disease progression in both preclinical and the early clinical stages of Huntington disease [351]. Initiation deficits of voluntary-guided, but not reflexive, saccades are characteristic of preclinical Huntington disease. Saccadic slowing and delayed reflexive saccades are demonstrated in clinical but not preclinical Huntington disease.

Dentatorubropallidoluysian atrophy or Haw River disease may also cause slow saccades. Ataxia telangiectasia may be associated with abnormalities in the systems that maintain fixation and shift gaze including abnormal reflexive and voluntary saccades (characterized by prolonged latency, hypometric amplitude, and the use of head movements to initiate gaze shifts) and impaired fixation [577]. The abnormalities of image stabilization most likely result from dysfunction in the cerebellar flocculus and paraflocculus while saccadic abnormalities may result from abnormal supranuclear control of the superior colliculus resulting from dysfunction in the cerebellar vermis or the basal ganglia. Tourette syndrome may be associated with blepharospasm and eye tics with involuntary gaze deviation [117,304]. Saccades, fixation, and pursuit eye movements are normal. Lesch–Nyhan disease is a hereditary disorder characterized by hyperuricemia, recurrent self-injurious behavior, and extrapyramidal features. Patients with this disorder may have impaired ability to make voluntary saccades and to perform antisaccadic tasks and may demonstrate blepharospasm and intermittent gaze deviations similar to ‘Tourette syndrome’ [449]. Kufor Rakeb disease (autosomal recessive, levodopa-responsive parkinsonism with pyramidal degeneration, supranuclear gaze palsy, and dementia) may be associated with hypometric, slow vertical saccades and limitation of up and down gaze [991]. Associated features include supranuclear gaze palsy; acute L-dopa-responsive oculogyric dystonic spasms; facial, faucial, and finger mini-myoclonus; visual hallucinations; L-dopa-provoked motor fluctuations; and widespread cerebral atrophy on neuroimaging. Patient with stiff person syndrome may have vertical greater than horizontal saccade hypometria with prolonged saccadic latency. Vertical pursuits may be saccadic but horizontal pursuits are normal [706].

In a consecutive series of 50 postresuscitation comatose patients, 28 (56.0%) developed tonic upward or downward eye deviation [451]. The authors suggested that both the upward and the downward deviations resulted from diffuse cerebrocerebellar damage sparing the brainstem. Upward deviation is an early sign, whereas downward deviation appears later and generally implies a transition to the vegetative state.

Etiologies of vertical gaze impairment are listed in Table 8.23.

**Oculogyric Crisis.** Oculogyric crises are episodic, spasmodic, conjugate ocular deviations, usually occurring in an upward and lateral (rarely downward or lateral) direction. The eye deviation is often accompanied by mental changes, especially disorders of attention in which pathologic fixation of a thought (obsessive, persistent thoughts) occurs [560]. This disorder of mood may precede or accompany the ocular deviation. The disorder may be due to impairment of the vertical neural integrator. The crises may be accompanied by dystonic or dyskinetic movements such as tongue protrusion, lip smacking, blepharospasm, choreoathetosis, and anterocollis. Oculogyric crises may be caused by encephalitis lethargica, degenerative diseases, such as familial Parkinsonism-dementia, Chédiak–Higashi syndrome, Tourette syndrome, head trauma, neurosyphilis, multiple sclerosis, ataxia-telangiectasia, brainstem encephalitis, third ventricular glioma, striatocapsular infarction, bilateral putaminal hemorrhage, or medications, such as neuroleptics (e.g., haloperidol and piperazine phenothiazines), lithium, tetrabenazine, cetirizine, and carbamazepine [253,305,581]. Oculogyric crisis has also been described as a paraneoplastic process with testicular cancer associated with anti-Ta antibodies [97] and may be the initial manifestation...
adduction weakness on the side of the MLF lesion and monocular nystagmus of the contralateral abducting eye [311]. However, unless the lesion is quite high, reaching the midbrain, convergence is preserved. Often patients with INO have no visual symptoms but others may complain of diplopia (due to limitation of adduction or skew deviation) or oscillopsia (in the horizontal plane due to the adduction lag or the abduction nystagmus; in the vertical plane it may occur during head movements and is caused of Wilson disease [552]. A patient with advanced non-Wilsonian cirrhotic liver disease developed extraocular muscle dystonia (oculogyric crisis) and severe orofaciolingual dyskinesias [289].

### DISCONJUGATE GAZE PALSYs

#### Horizontal Dysconjugate Gaze Palsies

**MEDIAL LONGITUDINAL FASCICULUS SYNDROME OR INTERNUCLEAR OPHTHALMOPLEGIA (INO).** Clinically, this syndrome is characterized by

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 8.23</th>
<th>Etiologies of Vertical Gaze Impairment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Primary and secondary tumors of the pineal, thalamus, midbrain, aqueduct of Sylvius, or third ventricle</td>
<td>• Tay-Sachs disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Midbrain or thalamic infarction or hemorrhage</td>
<td>• Gaucher’s disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hydrocephalus, especially when dilatation of the third ventricle and aqueduct or enlargement of the suprapineal recess cause pressure on and deformity of the posterior commissure</td>
<td>• Maple syrup urine disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Infectious or inflammatory etiologies</td>
<td>• Hyperglycinemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Encephalitis</td>
<td>• Hexosaminidase A deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Syphilis</td>
<td>• Wilson’s disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Sarcoidosis</td>
<td>• Kernicterus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Toxoplasmosis</td>
<td>• Wernicke’s syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Disseminated histoplasmosis</td>
<td>• Vitamin B12 deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Tuberculosis</td>
<td>• Leigh disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Whipple’s disease</td>
<td>• Trauma, including neurosurgical procedures from catheter compression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease</td>
<td>• Drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Multiple sclerosis</td>
<td>• Barbiturates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Neuromyelitis optica</td>
<td>• Neuroleptics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Degenerative diseases</td>
<td>• Carbamazepine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Progressive supranuclear palsy</td>
<td>• Drugs most often affect vertical gaze by causing oculogyric crisis, an episodic, spasmodic, conjugate ocular deviation that usually occurs in an upward and lateral direction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Cortico-basal ganglionic (corticobasal) degeneration</td>
<td>• Miscellaneous causes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Huntington’s disease</td>
<td>• Subdural hematoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Diffuse Lewy body disease</td>
<td>• Superficial CNS siderosis with hydrocephalus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Olivopontocerebellar degeneration</td>
<td>• Pseudotumor cerebri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Spinocerebellar atrophy type 1</td>
<td>• Tentorial herniation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Spinocerebellar ataxia type 7</td>
<td>• Postresuscitation coma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Autosomal recessive cerebellar ataxia syndrome with upward gaze palsy, neuropathy, and seizures</td>
<td>• Paraneoplastic encephalomyelitis (e.g., seminoma with positive anti-Ta antibody and encephalomyelitis with anti-Hu antibodies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Postencephalitic Parkinsonism</td>
<td>• Congenital defects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Motor neuron disease</td>
<td>• Cerebral palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Idiopathic striopallidodentate calcifications syndrome</td>
<td>• Following installation of brachytherapy for craniopharyngioma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Lytic-Bodig (amyotrophic lateral sclerosis/parkinsonism-dementia complex of Guam)</td>
<td>• Wolfram’s syndrome (hereditary diabetes mellitus with brainstem and optic atrophy, diabetes insipidus, and deafness)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Parkinsonism, dementia, and vertical gaze palsy in Guamanian with atypical neurogial degeneration</td>
<td>• Benign transient form in childhood (benign paroxysmal tonic upgaze of neonates and children)—may be associated with developmental delay, intellectual disability, or language delay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Kufor Rakeb disease (Autosomal recessive, levodopa-responsive parkinsonism with pyramidal degeneration, supranuclear gaze palsy, and dementia)</td>
<td>• Benign transient form in healthy infants (paroxysmal tonic downgaze lasting seconds to minutes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Progressive autosomal dominant parkinsonism with pallido-puto-rugal degeneration</td>
<td>• Migraine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Joubert syndrome</td>
<td>• Subdural fluid collection over the cerebellar hemisphere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Stiff-person syndrome</td>
<td>• Mesencephalic clefts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Anterior encephalo-ectases and posterior fossa aneurysms</td>
<td>• Miller Fisher syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Metabolic diseases</td>
<td>• Spontaneous intracranial hypotension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Basen-Kornzweig syndrome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
by a deficient vertical vestibulo-ocular reflex). Adduction weakness in INO results from disruption of the signals carried by the MLF—signals coming from the internuclear abducens nucleus and destined for the medial rectus subnucleus of the oculomotor nucleus. Impaired adduction can range from total paralysis to a paresis only apparent as slowing of adducting saccades. Although the weakness of the medial rectus affects all types of conjugate eye movements, it is most evident during saccades and the “adduction lag” is best brought out by having the patient make large horizontal saccades back and forth across the midline or during optokinetic testing using a tape or drum [855]. For example, with a right INO when the drum is rotated to the right the amplitude and velocity of the adducting quick phase of the right eye is smaller and slower than that of the abducting saccades in the left eye. When INO is due to demyelinating disease, there may be a discrepancy between the involvement of saccades and other movements because demyelinated fibers cannot carry the high-frequency discharges required during the saccadic pulse.

INO is often associated with skew deviation (see below) with the higher eye on the side of the lesion, likely reflecting imbalance of otolith outputs that cross in the medulla and ascend in the MLF. The pathogenesis of the nystagmus in the abducting eye is unclear but is likely a normal adaptive process that helps overcome the adducting weakness of the fellow eye [1019]. Thus, abduction nystagmus in INO depends on the medial rectus paresis and presumably is initiated by a visual error signal [898]. Vertical gaze-evoked nystagmus and impaired vestibular and pursuit vertical eye movements and vertical gaze holding may occur, especially with bilateral INO, because of interruption of MLF axons carrying vestibular and smooth pursuit signals to midbrain nuclei concerned with vertical gaze [565]. Vertical saccades are spared. INO may be associated with downbeat nystagmus with an incyclorotatory (torsional) nystagmus in the contralateral eye reflecting that a majority of posterior semicircular canal central fibers are conveyed via the MLF while some anterior semicircular canal pathways are not [601]. Ipsilateral torsional nystagmus [680] and jerk see-saw nystagmus [684] may also occur. Small amplitude saccadic intrusions may interrupt fixation with bilateral INO. Unilateral INO may be associated with transient (disappearing within three days) torsional nystagmus that is clockwise (examiner’s view) in cases of left INO and counterclockwise in right INO [281]. This torsional nystagmus is thought to be due to a decrease in vertical semicircular canal input to the trochlear and oculomotor nuclei due to the MLF lesion that results in tonic torsional imbalance that is corrected by a torsional saccade generated in the intact ipsilateral rostral interstitial nucleus of the MLF.

Patients with internuclear ophthalmoplegia or the one-and-a-half syndrome (see below) may also present with lateropulsion, which is a slow falling down to the side in a roll plane when sitting, standing, or walking [757]. Clinically, the neuroophthalmological constellation of these patients points to pontomesencephalic lesions, which are associated with a dynamic lateral body tilt accompanying the ocular motor signs. The body tilt is contralateral (contraversive) to the clinical brainstem lesion. The body tilt in the lateral (coronal) plane is likely due to a graviceptive dysfunction, occurring in the MLF or in its surrounding structures.

Bilateral INO is most often seen with multiple sclerosis and ischemic lesions [332,492,501]. Unilateral INO may result from brainstem infarction [268,501]. Although bilateral INO is more common with multiple sclerosis then with vascular insults, bilateral INO may occur with stroke as well as many other pathologic processes and, thus, the presence of a unilateral or bilateral INO cannot be used as a differential feature for etiologic diagnosis. For example, in a series of 100 patients with multiple sclerosis, 34 had INO that was bilateral in 14 and unilateral in 20 [657]. In another study of 51 patients with INO, 28 had multiple sclerosis and 23 had infarction; INO was bilateral in 33 patients and unilateral in 28 [417]. Most patients with nutritional, metabolic, degenerative, and drug-induced intoxication have bilateral INOs. Other causes of INO include Wernicke encephalopathy, trauma, post coronary artery catheterization, encephalitis, AIDS, cysticercosis, syphilis, brucellosis, sickle cell trait, neurosyphilis, tumors, mesencephalic clefs, Chiari malformation, hydrocephalus, arteriovenous malformation, metabolic disorders (e.g., Fabry disease, maple syrup urine disease, abetalipoproteinemia), episodic ataxia type 2, spinocerebellar ataxia type 7, syringobulbia, radiation effect, PSP, hepatic encephalopathy, pernicious anemia, Kennedy disease, and drugs (phenytoin, amitriptyline, phenothiazines, tricycles, propranolol, lithium, narcotics, barbiturates, and intravenous FK 506) [164,267,492,547,565,915]. Bilateral INO has been described with isolated pontomesencephalic hemorrhage due to cocaine abuse [243]. Bilateral INO with progressive bilateral visual loss may be the first sign of a paraneoplastic encephalomyelitis [732]. Bilateral damage to the MLF and subsequent lateral extension of damage to the region of the two abducens nerves fasciculi has been described as causing complete bilateral horizontal gaze paralysis in two patients with multiple sclerosis [622].
The pattern of extraocular muscle weakness with myasthenia gravis and the Guillain–Barré syndrome can mimic INO as can thyroid orbitopathy, orbital pseudotumor, partial oculomotor nerve palsy, Fisher syndrome, penicillamine-induced pseudoino, myotonic muscular dystrophy, and surgical paresis of the medial rectus muscle [53,428, 447,959]. Atypical INO with nystagmus in the adducting eye has been described with abetalipoproteinemia (vitamin E deficiency) [1005]. The vitamin E deficiency syndrome superficially resembles the WEBINO syndrome (below) in that patients demonstrate exotropia associated with adduction limitation and dissociated horizontal nystagmus on lateral gaze. However, in vitamin E deficiency, saccades are slower in the abducting eye, rather than the adducting eye, and the dissociated nystagmus is of greater amplitude in the adducting eye [1005]. This motility impairment is especially noted with abetalipoproteinemia with other findings including ataxia, weakness, posterior column dysfunction, and pigmentary retinopathy.

In bilateral internuclear ophthalmoplegia, the eyes are generally aligned in primary gaze. Instances of exotropia, with both eyes deviated laterally, have been termed wall-eyed bilateral internuclear ophthalmoplegia or WEBINO syndrome [283,297,429,462, 878]. This syndrome may occur with midbrain lesions involving both medial rectus subnuclei and both MLFs, or with bilateral MLF lesions in patients with a previously compensated strabismus (exophoria). Convergence is often absent [878]. WEBINO after subarachnoid hemorrhage could be considered a sign of possible acute hydrocephalus [429]. PSP may present with WEBINO syndrome [609,944]. A unilateral INO may also be associated with exotropia (wall-eyed monocular internuclear ophthalmoplegia or WEMINO syndrome) [424,457]; acutely unilateral INO may be even associated with an esophoria, perhaps due to increased vergence tone. Rarely, INO may be associated with exotropia in the contralateral eye due to overaction of the contralateral PPRF under fixation with the paretic eye [519].

Table 8.24 summarizes the clinical findings noted with internuclear ophthalmoplegia (INO).

What used to be called Lutz posterior internuclear ophthalmoplegia is now known as internuclear ophthalmoplegia of abduction [698,927]. Abduction, restricted on volition, can be fully effected by reflex maneuvers, such as cold caloric stimulation. Unilateral or bilateral internuclear ophthalmoplegia of abduction, occasionally associated with addition nystagmus of the contralateral eye, has been described with ipsilateral rostral pontine or mesencephalic lesions [901]. Abduction paresis is attributed to impaired inhibition of the tonic resting activity of the antagonistic medial rectus muscle. The prenuclear origin of the disorder is based on morphological and neurophysiological evidence of an ipsilateral inhibitory connection between the PPRF and the oculomotor nucleus running close to but separated from the MLF [901]. Thus, an ipsilateral midbrain or rostral pontine lesion may cause a supranuclear paresis of abduction.

### TABLE 8.24 Clinical Findings Noted with Internuclear Ophthalmoplegia (INO)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unilateral INO</th>
<th>Bilateral INO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ipsilateral adduction weakness, especially slow or fractionated adducting saccades (‘adduction lag’), and monocular nystagmus in contralateral abducting eye</td>
<td>Ipsilateral adduction paresis or lag with the eyes generally aligned in primary gaze.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May have esophoria acutely suggesting increased vergence tone</td>
<td>Exotropia, with both eyes deviated laterally (wall-eyed bilateral internuclear ophthalmoplegia or WEBINO syndrome)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convergence usually spared</td>
<td>Vertical gaze-evoked nystagmus and impaired vestibular and pursuit vertical eye movements (i.e., dissociated vertical nystagmus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skew deviation with the higher eye on the side of the lesion</td>
<td>Ipsilateral downbeat nystagmus and contralateral incyclorotatory (torsional) nystagmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertical gaze-evoked nystagmus and impaired vestibular and pursuit vertical eye movements (i.e., dissociated vertical nystagmus)</td>
<td>Ipsilateral torsional nystagmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ipsilateral downbeat nystagmus and contralateral incyclorotatory (torsional) nystagmus</td>
<td>Jerky see-saw nystagmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ipsilateral torsional nystagmus</td>
<td>Transient (disappearing within three days) torsional nystagmus which is clockwise (examiner’s view) in cases of left INO and counterclockwise in right INO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ipsilateral torsional nystagmus and contralateral incyclorotatory (torsional) nystagmus</td>
<td>Normal vertical saccades</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rare exotropia (wall-eyed monocular internuclear ophthalmoplegia or WEBINO syndrome)</td>
<td>Rare esotropia in contralateral eye due to over-excitation of contralateral PPRF when fixating with paretic eye</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rare exotropia in contralateral eye due to over-excitation of contralateral PPRF when fixating with paretic eye</td>
<td>Rare INO and the lesions of sixth nerve fasciculus (sparing the sixth nerve nucleus) causing impaired adduction in ipsilateral eye (“half” of a contralateral horizontal gaze palsy) and impaired ipsilateral abduction due to an ipsilateral sixth cranial nerve fascicular involvement (“half” of an ipsilateral horizontal gaze palsy) with sparing of the sixth nerve nucleus (the “half and half” syndrome).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rare INO and the lesions of sixth nerve fasciculus (sparing the sixth nerve nucleus) causing impaired adduction in ipsilateral eye (“half” of a contralateral horizontal gaze palsy) and impaired ipsilateral abduction due to an ipsilateral sixth cranial nerve fascicular involvement (“half” of an ipsilateral horizontal gaze palsy) with sparing of the sixth nerve nucleus (the “half and half” syndrome).</td>
<td>Occasional contralateral lateropulsion (a slow falling down to the side in a roll plane when sitting, standing, or walking)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occasional contralateral lateropulsion (a slow falling down to the side in a roll plane when sitting, standing, or walking)</td>
<td>Vertical gaze-evoked nystagmus (on looking up or down) and impaired vestibular and pursuit vertical eye movements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ipsilateral adduction paresis or lag with the eyes generally aligned in primary gaze.</td>
<td>Impaired vertical gaze holding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exotropia, with both eyes deviated laterally (wall-eyed bilateral internuclear ophthalmoplegia or WEBINO syndrome)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
"ONE-AND-A-HALF" SYNDROME. In these cases there is a conjugate gaze palsy to one side ("one") and impaired adduction on looking to the other side ("and a half") [722,977]. As a result, the only horizontal movement remaining is abduction of one eye which exhibits nystagmus in abduction. Vertical movements and convergence are spared. The responsible lesion involves the PPRF or abducens nucleus and the adjacent MLF on the side of the complete gaze palsy. A clinical distinction can be made between the horizontal gaze palsy in lesions affecting the rostral part of the PPRF and those at the level of the abducens nucleus [234]. When all rapid eye movements (saccades and quick phases of nystagmus) ipsilateral to the lesion are abolished with preserved ipsilateral vestibuloocular response, the rostral part of the PPRF is involved (dissociated ipsilateral horizontal conjugate gaze palsy). In contrast, lesions at the lower pontine level, affecting the PPRF and/or abducens nucleus, are associated with an ipsilateral horizontal gaze palsy and loss of reflex vestibular eye movements (nondissociated ipsilateral horizontal gaze palsy) [234]. Patients with the one-and-a-half syndrome often have exotropia of the eye opposite to the side of the lesion (paralytic pontine exotropia) because, due to the gaze palsy, the eyes tend to drift to the side opposite the lesion, but adduction in this direction is limited by the MLF lesion [833]. Rarely, a primary position esotropia may occur with the one-and-a-half syndrome, likely due to involvement of the abducens nerve fascicle superimposed upon a lesion of the PPRF and MLF [977]. Selective impairment of downgaze holding (impairment of vertical neural integration for downward eye movements) may accompany the one-and-a-half syndrome [882], suggesting that downward and upward velocity-to-position integration signals may flow separately in the MLF and its vicinity.

The one-and-a-half syndrome may be associated with ocular bobbing and, more often, facial nerve palsies (the "eight and a half syndrome") [266,667,949]. Patients with one-and-a-half syndrome and facial nerve palsies may develop oculopontal myoclonus weeks to years after the onset of the ocular motility problem [995,1013]. The one-and-a-half syndrome has also been described with facial diplegia (the "1½ syndrome" [1½ + 7 + 7 = 15½]) [54]. The one-and-a-half syndrome may also be associated with supranuclear facial weakness on the same side as the gaze palsy and internuclear ophthalmoplegia with lesions of the paramedian aspect of the dorsal pontine tegmentum, providing evidence for the existence of corticofugal fibers that extend to the facial nucleus in the dorsal paramedian pontine tegmentum [25].

The one-and-a-half syndrome is most often caused by multiple sclerosis, neumomyelitis optica (Devic disease), infarcts, hemorrhages, trauma, basilar artery aneurysms, brainstem arteriovenous malformations, and tumors [501,691,977]. A pseudo one-and-a-half syndrome may be caused by myasthenia gravis [71,224] and the Miller Fisher syndrome [75].

A somewhat similar syndrome may result from two separate lesions involving both MLFs and the roots of the abducens nerve on the side of the unilateral horizontal "gaze" palsy. However, in this case, if the "gaze" palsy is incomplete, the eyes would move disconjugately in the direction of the "gaze" palsy [722]. A true gaze palsy due to unilateral PPRF damage causes concomitant paresis of both eyes. Also, a unilateral INO may be associated with an ipsilateral abducens nerve palsy (fascicular involvement) without abducens nuclear or PPRF damage (i.e., no associated gaze palsy). Another type of one-and-a-half syndrome has been described with rostral brainstem infarction. The patient developed a left ptosis, right conjugate gaze palsy, and abduction paralysis of the left eye on attempted gaze to the left with adduction nystagmus of the right eye. The horizontal eye movement disorder was similar to a one-and-a-half syndrome except for an abduction paralysis and adduction nystagmus. The left ptosis and abduction paralysis were attributed to a left oculomotor fascicular involvement while the right-sided esotropia and abduction paresis were consistent with pseudo-abducens palsy. The left abduction paralysis with adduction nystagmus on the right side on attempted gaze to left was thought to be due to involvement of the para-MLF path on the left side (internuclear ophthalmoplegia in abduction) [175].

A different one-and-a-half syndrome has been described in a patient with mucormycosis of the cavernous sinus [173]. The patient had an ipsilateral sixth nerve palsy due to cavernous sinus involvement and a contralateral horizontal gaze palsy due to simultaneous carotid artery occlusion with infarction of the frontal lobe. Contrary to a pontine one-and-a-half syndrome, in which abduction in one eye is the preserved horizontal movement, this patient had only preserved abduction in one eye (contralateral to the sixth nerve palsy) [173].

A patient has been described with a dorsal pontine hemorrhage whose ocular motility examination suggested a left internuclear ophthalmoplegia with a partial left sixth nerve palsy [756]. It was postulate that the hemorrhage involved the left MLF and the sixth nerve fasciculus (sparring the sixth nerve nucleus). This was the first clinicoradiological report in the literature of a hemorrhagic internuclear ophthalmoplegia ("half" of a contralateral horizontal gaze palsy) and an ipsilateral sixth cranial nerve fascicular involvement ("half" of an ipsilateral horizontal gaze palsy).
gaze palsy) with sparing of the sixth nerve nucleus (the “half and half” syndrome) [757].

**VERTICAL DISCONJUGATE GAZE PALSYES.** Monocular elevation paresis (“double elevator palsy”) may occur with preterminal supranuclear lesions contralateral to the parametric eye or ipsilateral to the parametric eye that interrupt efferents from the rostral interstitial nucleus of the MLF to the superior rectus and inferior oblique subnuclei (often Bell’s phenomenon is intact) [414,899]. Double elevator palsy may simply be an asymmetric upgaze palsy that clinically presents as monocular elevation paresis in the more severely affected eye (thus, not a true monocular elevator palsy) [899]. It has also been described with paramedial midbrain infarcts affecting selectively the lateral-most fibers of the fascicular portion of the oculomotor nerve [668].

A **vertical one-and-a-half syndrome**, with vertical upgaze palsy and monocular paresis of down gaze on the side of the lesion [114,414,892] or contralateral to the lesion [414], has been described with thalamomesencephalic infarction [114], best explained by selective damage to supranuclear pathways or partial nuclear involvement [892]. Another vertical one-and-a-half syndrome has been described consisting of impairment of all downward rapid eye movements (including the vestibuloocular reflex) and downward smooth pursuit (nondissociated downgaze paralysis) associated with monocular paralysis of elevation [233]. Bell’s phenomenon and all types of horizontal eye movements were preserved. Bilateral mesodiencephalic region infarctions were found that may have affected the efferent tracts of the riMLF bilaterally and the premotor fibers to the contralateral superior rectus subnucleus and ipsilateral superior oblique subnucleus, either before or after the decussation in the posterior commissure [233].

The unusual combination of loss of depression in one eye and of elevation in the other occurred in a patient with a vascular malformation in the rostral midbrain. This abnormality was thought due to interruption of supranuclear pathways for vertical gaze and not subnuclear lesion of oculomotor nerve nuclear complex [790]. In another patient, monocular elevation paresis of the right eye was associated with contralateral paresis of downward gaze, and subtle bilateral ptosis. MRI disclosed a unilateral embolic infarction restricted to the mesodiencephalic junction involving the left paramedian thalamus. Preserved vertical oculocephalic movements and intact Bell’s phenomenon suggested a supranuclear lesion. This rare “crossed vertical gaze paresis” resulted from a lesion near the oculomotor nucleus affecting ipsilateral downward gaze and contralateral upward gaze fibers, originating in the riMLF [985]. Diplopia on downgaze due to a “double depressor” palsy of the inferior rectus and superior oblique muscles has been described with bilateral paramedian thalamic infarcts [708].

A coexisting vertical and horizontal one-and-a-half syndrome has been described with an infarct involving the right medial thalamus, left dorsal upper midbrain, and left cerebellum [894]. Only the right eye could abduct with monocular horizontal nystagmus, and only the left eye could gaze down.

**Skew Deviation.** Although vertical misalignment of the eyes may be caused by lesions of the oculomotor nerves or muscles (e.g., with myasthenia gravis), the term *skew deviation* is reserved for vertical misalignment resulting from supranuclear derangements [150]. The angle between the axes of the eyes may or may not be constant in various gaze positions but skew deviation is not associated with the presence of a primary and secondary deviation. Unlike the other causes of acquired vertical strabismus (e.g., superior oblique palsy, thyroid ophthalmopathy, myasthenia gravis, etc.), the eyes usually are not rotated in skew deviation [930]. Absence of rotation or cyclodeviation is best tested by Maddox rods of different colors over each eye. With skew deviation, the Bielschowsky head-tilt test (above) is often negative. However, cyclodeviation may occur with skew deviation (see below) [327]. Skew deviation occurs whenever peripheral or central lesions cause an imbalance of otolith inputs and can accompany lesions at different areas of the brainstem (mesencephalon to medulla) or cerebellum [652,884,996]. It may occur with paramedian thalamic infarction [599]. Occasionally, increased intracranial pressure, Miller Fisher syndrome [276], or hepatic coma may cause skew deviation.

When skew deviation varies in different gaze positions, it usually indicates a medullary lesion. Peripheral vestibular disease can cause contralateral hypertropia, in which the contralateral eye is higher than the ipsilateral eye. Lateral pontomedullary lesions affecting the vestibular nuclei may result in skew deviation with the lower eye on the side of the lesion. By contrast, the eye on the side of a unilateral MLF lesion tends to be higher.

Lesions near the posterior commissure occasionally are manifest with a skew deviation, in which the ipsilateral eye is higher, or there is slowly alternating skew deviation, in which one eye falls as the other rises [210]. This change of position takes from 10 to 30 seconds with the new position maintained for 30 to 60 seconds. Alternating skew deviation (incomitant skew) in which the hypertropia alternated on gaze to either side has been described associated with pretectal lesions including acute hydrocephalus, tumor, stroke, multiple sclerosis, trauma, lithium exposure, Wernicke encephalopathy, tentorial herniation, and spinocerebellar degenerations [478]. Patients with
bilateral adducting hypertropia (alternating skew on lateral gaze) with accompanying pretectal signs (e.g., upward gaze palsy, defective pupillary reaction, and nystagmus) may need urgent surgical intervention [15]. By contrast, alternating skew on lateral gaze (bilateral abducting hypertropia) with downbeat nystagmus and ataxia has been noted with lesions of cerebellum or of the cervico-medullary junction [384,652]. Skew deviation may be constant or transient; periodic or transient vertical divergence may occur with migraine or vertebrobasilar ischemia. Paroxysmal skew deviation has been described as a presenting sign of a unilateral astrocytoma [22]. Recurrent attacks (lasting 20 to 80 seconds) of contraction of the left frontalis muscle accompanied by skew deviation and torsional nystagmus have been ascribed to transient ischemia causing paroxysmal discharges of neurons of the vestibulo-ocular system and facial motor pathways [875]. Epileptic skew deviation has also been described [329]. Paroxysmal alternating skew deviation and direction-changing nystagmus has been noted after partial destruction of the uvula of the cerebellum [746]. The eye movement disorder was thought to result from a lesion of the left vestibular nuclei, causing right over left skew and right beating resting nystagmus, and a disruption of cerebellar inhibition of vestibular nuclei, causing alternating activity in the vestibular system with intermittent reversal of the skew deviation and paroxysmal nystagmus toward the side of the lesion. A patient with locked-in syndrome due to pontine infarction had dysconjugate vertical and torsional ocular movements [709]. When the patient was asked to look to the right, the right eye moved upward with intorsion and the left eye moved downward with extorsion. When the patient was asked to look to the left, the reversal cycle, with the left eye moving upward with intorsion and the right eye moving downward with extorsion, was observed. Horizontal gaze was limited to minimal movement. It was thought that this intermittent dysconjugate abnormality was mediated by the interstitial nucleus of Cajal. In some patients, skew deviation may be associated with ocular torsion and head tilt (the "ocular tilt reaction or OTR") [377]. In the OTR, the head tilt, conjugate eye torsion, and hypertropia are all to the same side suggesting that this reaction is a motor compensation of a lesion-induced apparent eye–head tilt; the contralateral head tilt represents a compensatory response to the perceived tilt of the subjective visual vertical [131]. Otolith inputs to the interstitial nucleus of Cajal (INC) from the contralateral vestibular (especially lateral vestibular) nucleus and motor outputs from the INC to cervical and ocular motoneurons are likely involved [377]. A left OTR could be due to a lesion of the left labyrinth, left vestibular nerve, left vestibular nucleus (e.g., Wallenberg syndrome), or right meso-diencephalon [31,136,377,487,688,767,966] suggesting the existence of a crossed graviceptive pathway (possibly the MLF) between the vestibular nuclei and the contralateral INC [377]. Thus, cases of OTR have been reported in vestibular nerve injury, auditory trauma, Wallenberg syndrome, lateral medullary compression, pontomedullary ischemia, and mesodiencephalic lesions [129,136,246,377,487,592,747,767]. The vertical diplopia and cyclotorsion occasionally noted in cases of vestibular neuronitis is likely a form of skew deviation that occurs as part of the ocular tilt reaction from a peripheral vestibular lesion [795]. The absence of brainstem signs in peripheral OTR helps to exclude a central cause for the vertical diplopia. The OTR may be tonic (i.e., persistent) or phasic (i.e., paroxysmal), the latter likely due to increased INC neuron activity (e.g., disinhibition) [377,405]. The differentiation between a trochlear nerve palsy and skew deviation may be difficult. With skew deviation there are usually accompanied brainstem findings and the hypertropic eye is intorted with extorsion of the fellow eye (vs the hypertropic eye being extorted with fourth nerve palsy). The OTR is a common sign in patients with unilateral cerebellar lesions, indicating that lesions of the cerebellum induce a dysfunction in otoliths pathways that mediate vestibular information in the roll plane [57]. This pathway travels from the brainstem to the vermis (including the cerebellar peduncles, dentate nucleus, pyramid of the vermis, nodulus, and uvula) and to the flocculus and tonsil. The specific structures lesioned, however, determine the directive of the signs, ipsilateral or contralateral. An affection of the dentate nucleus in particular is associated with contralateral signs of OTR, whereas in patients with ipsilateral signs, the dentate nucleus was spared and lesions were located in the middle cerebellar peduncle, tonsil, biventer, and inferior semilunar lobules. In another study of 31 patients with acute cerebellar strokes, all showing at least a significant tilt of the subjective visual vertical, 23 had a contraversive tilt of the subjective visual vertical [56]. These patients were compared with eight patients with ipsiversive tilts. MRI/CT lesion mapping revealed that in patients showing contraversive signs of OTR in general, and contraversive subjective visual vertical tilts in particular, the dentate nucleus was the commonly damaged structure. In contrast, in ipsiversive signs of OTR, the dentate nucleus was spared and lesions were located in the biventer lobule, the middle cerebellar peduncle, the tonsil and...
the inferior semilunar lobule. These data further suggest that the dentate nucleus is a critical anatomical structure within the cerebellum, belonging to a network involved in vestibular processing such as the perception of verticality. Therefore, a lesion of the dentate nucleus can lead to tilts of the subjective visual vertical in the contraversive direction, that is, a vestibular tone imbalance to the contralateral side, whereas cerebellar lesions excluding the dentate nucleus can induce a tone imbalance to the ipsilateral side.

Several patients have been described with tonic contraversive partial ocular tilt reactions due to unilateral caudal cerebellar lesions. The patients had tonic contraversive conjugate ocular torsion. Thus, the OTR, a brainstem otolith-ocular reflex of probable utricular origin, is under the inhibitory control of the ipsilateral caudal cerebellum, possibly the nodulus. This tonic contraversive OTR with unilateral cerebellar lesion is probably caused by an increased tonic resting activity in the ipsilesional vestibular nuclei due to a loss of inhibition from the lesioned nodulus [628]. A patient with a cerebellar infarct can, thus, present with imbalance as the only neurologic symptom and with conjugate ocular torsion as the only specific neurologic sign [628,649].

Brandt and Dieterich described two types of OTR [133]:

1. An ascending pontomedullary vestibulo-ocular (VOR)-OTR with ipsilateral lesions of the vestibulo-ocular pathway in the roll plane from the labyrinth to the vestibular nuclei. This type is characterized by dysconjugate ocular torsion and occurs if the anterior, posterior, or both semicircular canal or otolith pathways are affected. It simply reflects tone imbalance of the VOR.

2. A descending mesencephalic integrator-OTR with contralateral lesions of the rostral midbrain integrator center (INC) for eye–head coordination in the roll plane. This type is characterized by conjugate ocular torsion.

Skew deviation associated with concomitant ocular torsion and tilts of the subjective visual vertical toward the undermost eye is a sensitive brainstem sign of localizing and lateralizing value. In a study of patients with unilateral brainstem infarcts presenting with skew deviation and ocular torsion, all skew deviations were ipsiversive (ipsilateral eye lowermost) with caudal pontomedullary lesions and contraversive (contralateral eye was lowermost) with rostral pontomesencephalic lesions [150]. The ocular skew torsion sign indicates a vestibular tone imbalance in the roll plane secondary to graviceptive pathway lesions [130]. A dorsal midbrain syndrome with an ipsilateral skew deviation has been described due to a right paramedian thalamic infarct that perhaps impaired the tonic input of the thalamus on the INC [26]. OTR has also been described as a delayed complication of deep brain stimulation for Parkinson disease [704].

Lateropulsion, the postural component of OTR, is considered a sign of dysfunction of the vestibulo-ocular reflex in the roll plane and results from deviation of the subjective visual vertical from the gravitational vertical. The neuroanatomic substrate of the vestibulo-ocular reflex in roll is comprised of the vestibular nuclei, MLF, INC, rMLF, the vestibular subnuclei of the lateral thalamus, and the parietoinsular vestibular cortex. In addition, other pathways such as the tectospinal tract may be involved in the descending type of tone imbalance in roll caused by disturbances at the level of the INC or rMLF. Ipsiversive lateropulsion is seen in lateral medullary lesions, whereas pontomesencephalic and supratentorial disorders result in contraversive pulsion. Supratentorial syndromes lack head tilt and the ocular motor aspects of OTR.

Skew deviation associated with concomitant ocular torsion and tilts of the subjective visual vertical (SVV) toward the undermost eye is thus a sensitive brainstem sign of localizing and lateralizing value. The topographic diagnosis of vestibular syndromes in the roll plane may be summarized as follows [131,132]:

1. The fundamental pattern of eye–head tilt in roll, either complete OTR or skew torsion without head tilt, indicates a unilateral peripheral deficit of otolith input or a unilateral lesion of graviceptive brainstem pathways from the vestibular nuclei (crossing midline at lower pontine level) to the interstitial nucleus of Cajal (INC) in the rostral midbrain.

2. Skew deviation and tilts of the perceived visual vertical occur with peripheral or central vestibular lesions from the labyrinth to the visual cortex and represent the most sensitive sign of vestibular tone imbalance in roll.

3. All tilt effects, perceptual, ocular motor, and postural, are ipsiversive (ipsilateral eye lowermost) with unilateral peripheral or pontomedullary lesions below the crossing of the graviceptive pathways. They indicate involvement of medial and/or superior vestibular nuclei, mainly supplied by the vertebral artery.

4. All tilt effects in unilateral pontomesencephalic brainstem lesions are contraversive (contralateral eye lowermost) and indicate involvement of the MLF (paramedian arteries arising from the basilar artery) or INC and rMLF (paramedian superior mesencephalic arteries arising from basilar artery).
5. Unilateral lesions of vestibular structures rostral to the INC typically manifest with deviations of perceived vertical without concurrent eye–head tilt.
6. OTR in unilateral paramedian thalamic infarction (paramedian thalamic arteries from basilar artery) indicates simultaneous ischemia of the paramedian rostral midbrain including the INC.
7. Unilateral lesions of the posterolateral thalamus can cause thalamic astasia and moderate ipsiver- sive or contraversive skew deviation and tilts of the perceived visual vertical, thereby indicating involvement of the “vestibular” thalamic subnuclei (thalamogeniculate arteries).
8. Unilateral lesions of the parietoinsular vestibular cortex cause moderate, mostly contraversive skew deviation and tilts of the perceived visual vertical (temporal branches of the middle cerebral artery or deep perforators).
9. A skew deviation and tilts of the perceived visual vertical found with monocular but not with binocular viewing is typical for a trochlear or ocu- lomotor palsy rather than a supranuclear gravi- ceptive brainstem lesion.

Infarction in the distribution of the middle cere- bral artery, especially affecting the posterior insula, may cause contraversive, pathologic subjective visual vertical tilts [134]. The parieto-insular vestibular cortex therefore likely represents the integration center of the multisensory vestibular cortex areas within the parietal lobe.

Nystagmus and Other Ocular Oscillations

Nystagmus may be defined as a biphasic ocular oscillation containing slow eye movements that are responsible for its genesis and continuation. Fine nystagmus that may not be noticed by simple inspection of the eyes may be detected on funduscopic examination. It is important to take into account that the direction in which the retinal vessels can be seen to oscillate is opposite to the direction in which the globe oscillates. Changes in the amplitude of nystagmus when the patient fixates on an object serve to separate some varieties of nystagmus. Thus, nystagmus should be observed during fixation and after removing fixation by having the patient wear Frenzel lenses or by recording eye movements in the dark. A simple maneuver is to observe the rate and amplitude of the nystagmus on funduscopic examination with a hand-held ophthalmoscope while the patient fixates with the other eye. Then, as the lights of the examining room are turned off, thereby removing fixation, any changes in nystagmus are noticed.

The to-and-fro ocular movement that takes place as an individual watches the tree line when driving alongside a forest was described above as optokinetic nystagmus. This type of jerk nystagmus, with a slow drift and a quick corrective component, is more common than pendular nystagmus, in which the eyes move with the same speed in both directions.

Oscillopsia

Oscillopsia is an illusory perception of environmental movement and may assume four forms [158]: (1) associated with acquired jerk nystagmus (the environment moves in the direction opposite the slow phase of the nystagmus; no movement is perceived during the fast phase due to visual threshold elevation); (2) associated with pendular nystagmus (perceived as a to-and-fro movement); (3) associated with superior oblique myokymia (jellylike quivering); and (4) associated with bilateral labyrinthine dysfunction (continuous environmental jumping, e.g., with the heartbeat). Often oscillopsia is increased by movement of the head, as when walking, and then it is related to impair- ment of the vestibular system, which stabilizes images in the retina. Oscillopsia in the vertical plane may result from bilateral MLF involvement. Conditions that may cause oscillopsia even when the head remains still include acquired pendular nystagmus, paresis of an extraocular muscle, and epilepsy.

Optokinetic Drum

A hand-held optokinetic drum or tape does not test the optokinetic system but is useful in testing pursuit and saccades. When the drum is rotated to the patient’s right, a rightward slow phase (pursuit) is followed by a compensatory quick phase (saccade) to the left. Thus, the drum or tape is useful in the following situations [222]:
1. Asymmetry of the slow phase may be seen with hemispheral, especially parietal, lesions.
2. Early saccade impairment may be evident in diseases such as PSP, Huntington disease, olivopontocerebellar atrophy, congenital ocular motor apraxia, and sea-blue histiocytosis.
3. Internuclear ophthalmoplegia may be more clearly defined.
4. Vertical rotation may bring out retraction nystag- mus.
5. Hysteria or malingering may be supported because a patient cannot follow the tape or drum unless visual function is present.
6. With congenital nystagmus, reversal of optoki- netic nystagmus may occur (see below).

Nystagmus induced by optokinetic or vestibular stimuli is physiologic. Nystagmus in extreme lateral
or vertical gaze (end-point nystagmus) can also be found in normal persons. It tends to wane easily and belongs to the variety described below as “gaze-evoked” nystagmus. The following paragraphs deal primarily with the localizing value of the pathologic varieties of nystagmus.

**Jerk Nystagmus**

Nystagmus is generally named according to the direction of the fast, corrective component. Thus, horizontal nystagmus to the left implies that the eyes tend to drift slowly to the right, corrected by quick saccades to the left that bring the eyes back to where the patient wishes to look. Analysis of the slow component proves most helpful for the anatomic diagnosis of nystagmus. The slow component may have a uniform velocity or may reduce or gain speed as the eyes move in the direction of the slow component.

**Systems Classification of Nystagmus**

Although the velocity characteristics of nystagmus cannot be appreciated with the naked eye, the availability of electrooculography makes it advisable to follow this classification. Pathologic nystagmus may be due to disorders of the vestibular, gaze-holding, and visual stabilization and pursuit mechanisms.

**Vestibular Nystagmus**

Vestibular tone imbalance results in an asymmetric input to the horizontal gaze generator; vestibular nystagmus always shows linear (straight-line) slow phases reflecting a persistent drive of the eyes toward the damaged vestibular apparatus (labyrinth, nerve, nuclei). The slow phases of this nystagmus are decreased by fixation and increased in darkness, with eye closure, or with the use of Frenzel lenses. Fixation inhibition of nystagmus may be related to an opposing smooth pursuit force and requires the integrity of the cerebellar flocculus. Thus, nystagmus present during attempted visual fixation often reflects both the underlying disturbance creating the nystagmus and impaired smooth pursuit that fails to dampen the slow drift.

**Gaze Holding Nystagmus**

An impaired neural integrator (“leaky” integrator) may cause gaze-evoked nystagmus with a negative exponential slow phase. The velocity of the slow component decreases as the eyes move from the periphery of the orbit, where the pull due to the viscosity of the orbital tissues is greatest, toward resting in primary position. The inability of the gaze-holding mechanisms to keep the eyes eccentric in the orbit is often present with central or peripheral lesions causing weakness of eye movements. For this reason, this type of nystagmus is often referred to as “gaze-paretic” nystagmus. Because the gaze-holding mechanism depends in part upon the vestibular nuclei, nystagmus due to brainstem disorders often manifests the properties of both vestibular imbalance and disturbed gaze-holding.

**Visual Stabilization Nystagmus**

Disorders of the visual pathways may interfere with the ability to suppress eye drifts, for example, of vestibular origin, during attempted fixation on a stationary target. High gain instability of slow eye movement subsystems (e.g., the pursuit system) may also cause nystagmus, with the nystagmus slow phase having an exponentially increasing time course (“runaway” movements). Such nystagmus in the horizontal plane is seen in congenital nystagmus and in the vertical plane is seen with cerebellar disease. High-gain instability may also result in congenital or acquired pendular nystagmus.

**Clinical Classification of Nystagmus**

In assessing a patient with abnormal eye oscillations, it is first useful to note whether the oscillations are confined to one eye (monocular), involve mainly one eye (binocular asymmetric or dissociated), or involve both eyes symmetrically (binocular symmetric) [158].

**MONOCULAR EYE OSCILLATIONS AND ASYMMETRIC BINOCULAR EYE OSCILLATIONS**

Monocular eye oscillations and asymmetric binocular eye oscillations may be due to spasmus nutans and its mimickers, monocular visual deprivation or loss, monocular pendular nystagmus, internuclear ophthalmoplegia and its mimickers, partial paresis of extracocular muscles, restrictive syndromes of extraocular muscles, or superior oblique myokymia.

Spasmus nutans is a benign syndrome characterized by a triad of head nodding, nystagmus, and abnormal head posture [357,1012]. This condition usually has its onset in the first year of life and remits spontaneously between 1 month to several years (up to 8 years) after onset. The sinusoidal nystagmus is often intermittent, asymmetric or unilateral, and of high frequency and small amplitude with a “shimmering” quality. The nystagmus is usually horizontal but may have a vertical or torsional component. It may be variably disconjugate or disjunctive, greater on the abducting eye, and is more evident during convergence. The irregular head nodding with spasmus nutans has horizontal, vertical, or mixed components. Patients often also demonstrate a head turn or tilt. In all children with spasmus nutans, monocular nystagmus, or asymmetric pendular nystagmus, one must consider that the nystagmus may be due to...
tumor of the optic nerve, chiasm, third ventricle, or thalamus [33,282,674,856]. These latter patients may also have visual loss, optic atrophy, or other signs of tumor [512]. A myopic child suspected of having spasmus nutans should also undergo electroretinographic testing to exclude the diagnosis of congenital stationary night blindness [536].

Monocular nystagmus may occur in adults or children with acquired monocular visual loss and consists of small, slow vertical pendular oscillations in primary position of gaze. It may develop years after unihocular visual loss (Heimann–Bielschowsky phenomenon) and may improve if vision is corrected [739,856,1006]. Monocular, small-amplitude, fast frequency, and predominantly horizontal nystagmus in children may be caused by unilateral anterior visual pathway disease [355].

Epileptic monocular horizontal nystagmus has been described in a cognitively intact adult with normal vision [358]. Focal seizures originated in the occipital lobe contralateral to the involved eye, and an associated structural lesion was thought to represent a forme fruste of Sturge–Weber syndrome. It was hypothesized that the seizure discharge either activated a cortical saccade region and caused simultaneous supranuclear inhibition of ipsilateral eye movement or triggered monocular eye movement commands. Another patient has been described who developed ictal monocular horizontal nystagmus during a generalized seizure triggered by photic stimulation [443].

Acquired monocular pendular nystagmus may occur with multiple sclerosis, neurosyphilis, and brainstem infarct (thalamus and upper midbrain) and may be vertical, horizontal, or multivectorial [739]. Monocular downbeat nystagmus may occur with acute infarction of the medial thalamus and upper midbrain and with pontocerebellar degeneration; this abnormality is likely due to dysfunction of the ipsilateral brachium conjunctivum [115,442]. Contralateral unilateral downbeat nystagmus has been described with a paramedian thalmo-peduncular infarction [696]. Monocular rotatory nystagmus may occur with brainstem lesions [473].

Nystagmus is seen only in the abducting eye in internuclear ophthalmoplegia (INO) and in pseudono-INO syndromes (see above). Superior oblique myokymia (SOM) (described above) may also cause vertical oscillopgia, vertical or torsional diplopia, or both.

DYSCONJUGATE BILATERAL SYMMETRIC EYE OSCILLATIONS

If the ocular oscillations involve both eyes to a relatively equal degree, the next step in evaluation involves determining whether the eye movements are disconjugate (the eyes movng in opposite directions) or conjugate (both eyes moving in the same direction) [158]. When the oscillations are disconjugate, the examiner should determine whether the oscillations are vertical or horizontal. Vertical disconjugate eye oscillations are usually due to see-saw nystagmus. Horizontal disconjugate eye oscillations include convergence–retraction nystagmus (nystagmus retractorius), divergence nystagmus, repetitive divergence, and oculomasticatory myorhythmia.

**See-saw Nystagmus.** See-saw nystagmus refers to a cyclic movement of the eyes with a conjugate torsional component and a disjunctive vertical component: while one eye rises and intorts, the other falls and extorts; the vertical and torsional movements are then reversed, completing the cycle [665]. This nystagmus is usually pendular, but see-saw jerk nystagmus has been described with brainstem lesions affecting the mesodiencephalon or lateral medulla [229,376,380,734]. In some patients, one half-cycle of see-saw nystagmus alternates with oppositely directed quick phases (hemisee-saw nystagmus) [378]. Hemis-see-saw nystagmus may be associated with the ocular tilt reaction related to otolithic imbalance.

Etiologies of see-saw nystagmus are outlined in Table 8.25. Responsible lesions for see-saw nystagmus include large, extrinsic suprasellar lesions and may be vertical, horizontal, or multivectorial. See-saw nystagmus is usually pendular, but see-saw jerk nystagmus has been described with brainstem lesions affecting the mesodiencephalon or lateral medulla [229,376,380,734]. In some patients, one half-cycle of see-saw nystagmus alternates with oppositely directed quick phases (hemisee-saw nystagmus) [378]. Hemis-see-saw nystagmus may be associated with the ocular tilt reaction related to otolithic imbalance.

**See-saw Nystagmus**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 8.25</th>
<th>Etiologies of See-Saw Nystagmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Parasellar masses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Brainstem (e.g., meso-diencephalic junction, medial medullary) and thalamic stroke</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Multiple sclerosis</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Trauma, especially causing bitemporal visual field defects</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chiari malformation</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hydrocephalus</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Syringobulbia</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Paraneoplastic encephalitis (with testicular cancer and anti-Ta antibodies)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Whole brain irradiation and intrathecal methotrexate</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Septo-optic dysplasia, retinitis pigmentosa, and cone degeneration</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Congenital achiasmia with VACTERL (vertebral defects, anal atresia, cardiac defects, tracheoesophageal fistula, renal defects, and limb defects) syndrome</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Congenital see saw nystagmus</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Congenital see-saw nystagmus may lack the torsional component or even present with an opposite pattern that is, extension with eye elevation and intorsion with eye depression. With congenital cases, the binocular torsional eye movements may be in phase with clinically visible head oscillations (i.e., head movements are not compensatory for the torsional eye movements).
that compress the mesodiencephalon bilaterally (e.g., parasellar tumors) or focal mesodiencephalic or lateral medullary brainstem lesions (e.g., infarction). If a patient with pendular see-saw nystagmus has a focal lesion, then the lesion is usually a large, extensive, suprasellar lesion compressing or invading the brainstem bilaterally at the mesodiencephalic junction. Pendular see-saw nystagmus may also be congenital [610]. If, on the other hand, the see-saw nystagmus has an underlying jerk wave form, then the patient will have an intrinsic focal brainstem lesion, either in the lateral medulla (usually on the side opposite the torsional quick phases) or in the mesodiencephalon on the same side as the quick phases [377,380]. See-saw nystagmus likely represents sinusoidal oscillations involving central otolith connections, especially the interstitial nucleus of Cajal (INC) [378,380,467]. Discrete INC lesions may cause see-saw or hemi-see-saw nystagmus. See-saw nystagmus may also be in part due to an unstable visuovestibular interaction control system. Lesions in the optic pathways may prevent retinal error signals, essential for vestibuloculovenex reflex adaptation, from reaching the cerebellar flocculus and inferior olivary nucleus, thereby making the system less stable [665].

Besides tumor and infarction, disease processes causing see-saw nystagmus include syringomyelia and syringobulbia, brainstem or thalamic vascular disease, multiple sclerosis, trauma, hydrocephalus, albinism, septo-optic dysplasia, Leigh disease, retinitis pigmentosa, Chiari type 1 malformation, paraneoplastic encephalitis with testicular cancer and anti-Ta antibodies, and whole brain irradiation with intrathecal methotrexate [97,547]. Congenital see-saw nystagmus may lack the torsional component or even present with an opposite pattern (i.e., extorsion with eye elevation and intorsion with eye depression) [220]. With congenital cases, the binocular torsional eye movements may be in phase with clinically visible head oscillations (i.e., head movements are not compensatory for the torsional eye movements) [749].

Choi et al. reported a 20-year-old man with bilateral medial medullary infarction who showed transition of bowtie and upbeat nystagmus into hemi-seesaw nystagmus [186]. Follow-up MRI revealed near-complete resolution of the right medullary lesion. This transition of nystagmus suggests that the upbeat nystagmus was generated by bilateral lesions in the ascending pathways from both anterior semicircular canals, and that the hemi-seesaw nystagmus was caused by damage to the pathway from the left anterior semicircular canal. Other authors have noted hemi-seesaw nystagmus with medial medullary lesions [503].

HORIZONTAL DYSCONJUGATE EYE OSCILLATIONS
Convergence may evoke various forms of nystagmus (i.e., convergence-evoked nystagmus—see below). Convergence-retraction nystagmus is a disorder of ocular motility in which repetitive adducting saccades, which are often accompanied by retraction of the eyes into the orbit, occur spontaneously or on attempted upgaze saccades [702]. Sliding an optokinetic tape downward in front of the patient’s eyes may also elicit convergence-retraction nystagmus. Convergence-retraction nystagmus is primarily a saccadic disorder as the convergence movements are not normal vergence movements but asynchronous, adducting saccades. Mesencephalic lesions affecting the pretectal region (posterior commissure) are most likely to cause this type of nystagmus that is often associated with abnormalities of vertical gaze. The localization of these vertical gaze abnormalities and convergence-retraction nystagmus are discussed above. Occasionally, periodic lateralized epileptiform discharges (PLEDs) during electroencephalography have been found to occur in synchrony with retraction nystagmus [1011].

Pretectal pseudobobbing consists of nonrhythmic rapid eye movements that carry the eyes down and medially followed by a slow return to midline, each movement at times preceded by a blink [479]. This disorder has been reported in patients with acute obstructive hydrocephalus and the horizontal component may be a variant of convergence nystagmus. Convergence nystagmus has been described without vertical gaze abnormalities in patients with dorsal midbrain stroke and in patients with Chiari malformation [648,818]. Whipple disease may also cause convergence–divergence nystagmus at approximately 1 Hz (pendular vergence oscillations) [824]. Convergence nystagmus has been described in a patient with spasmus nutans [605]. Pendular nystagmus with a vergence component may occur in patients with multiple sclerosis and with brainstem stroke including an association with oculopalatal myoclonus/tremor.

Divergence nystagmus (with divergent quick phases) may occur with hindbrain abnormalities (e.g., Chiari malformation) and is associated with downbeat nystagmus [1006]. These patients have slow phases directed upward and inward. Repetitive divergence consists of a slow divergent movement followed by a rapid return to the primary position at regular intervals [679]. This rare disorder has been described with coma from hepatic encephalopathy. A similar disorder, probably related to seizures, was reported in a neonate in association with burst-suppression patterns of the electroencephalogram [671].
Oculomasticatory myorhythmia refers to acquired pendular vergence oscillations of the eyes associated with concurrent contraction of the masticatory muscles [6,401,589,821]. When the myorhythmia also involves nonfacial skeletal muscles, it is called oculofacial-skeletal myorhythmia. There is a smooth, rhythmic eye convergence, which cycles at a frequency of approximately 1 Hz, followed by divergence back to the primary position. Rhythmic elevation and depression of the mandible is synchronous with the ocular oscillations that persist in sleep and are unaltered by stimuli. The masticatory involvement may occasionally consist of a permanent bruxism leading to severe tooth abrasions [924]. Patients with oculomasticatory myorhythmia may also have paralysis of vertical gaze, progressive somnolence, and intellectual deterioration. This distinct movement disorder has been recognized only in Whipple disease. Whipple disease may also cause convergence nystagmus at approximately 1 Hz (pendular vergence oscillations) [824].

**BINOCULAR SYMMETRIC CONJUGATE EYE OSCILLATIONS**

Binocular symmetric conjugate eye oscillations may be divided into pendular nystagmus, jerk nystagmus, and saccadic intrusions [158].

**BINOCULAR SYMMETRIC PENDULAR CONJUGATE EYE OSCILLATIONS**

Binocular symmetric pendular conjugate eye oscillations may be due to congenital nystagmus, pendular nystagmus, oculopalatal myoclonus, spasmsus mutans (discussed above), and visual deprivation nystagmus. Congenital nystagmus may be noted at birth or in early infancy, or may emerge or enhance in teenage or adult life, often without apparent provocation [236,361]. It is seldom familial and most often idiopathic. Metabolic derangements and structural anomalies of the brain, including abnormalities of the eye or anterior visual pathways, have been occasionally responsible. More important, when it is found later in life it must be distinguished from other forms of nystagmus that have a potentially treatable cause. Congenital nystagmus may be wholly pendular or have both pendular and jerk components. Congenital jerk nystagmus has a slow phase with a velocity that increases exponentially as the eyes move in the direction of the slow phase. Occasionally congenital nystagmus may be purely vertical or torsional. Although irregular, congenital nystagmus is generally conjugate and horizontal, even on upgaze or downgaze (uniplanar); visual fixation accentuates it and active eyelid closure or convergence attenuates it [361]. The nystagmus decreases in an eye position (“null region”) that is specific for each patient. Despite the constant eye motion, these patients do not experience oscillopsia. When they are tested with a hand-held optokinetic tape or drum, the quick phase of the elicited nystagmus generally follows the direction of the tape (reversed optokinetic nystagmus) [379].

The cause of congenital nystagmus is unknown but it has been associated with many disease processes affecting the visual afferent system including ocular and oculocutaneous albinism, achromatopsia, optic nerve hypoplasia, Leber amaurosis, coloboma, aniridia, cone dystrophies, corectopia, congenital stationary night blindness, Chédiak–Higashi syndrome, Joubert syndrome, and peroxosomal disorders [547]. It has also been associated with hypothyroidism [745].

**Latent nystagmus** is common and generally congenital [235,363,1020]. It appears when one eye is covered. Both eyes then develop conjugate jerk nystagmus, with the viewing eye having a slow phase directed toward the nose (i.e., the quick phase of both eyes beat toward the side of the fixating eye). Although present at birth, latent nystagmus is often not recognized until later in life, when an attempt is made to determine monocular visual acuity during vision screening at school. Latent nystagmus is usually associated with strabismus, especially esotropia; amblyopia may occur and binocular vision with normal stereopsis is rare. In addition to horizontal strabismus, upward deviation of the covered eye (dissociated vertical deviation or alternating supraversion and supression) and a torsional, occasionally pendular, component to the nystagmus may occur [197]. Latent nystagmus is a marker for congenital ocular motor disturbance and does not indicate progressive structural brain disease [158].

**Manifest latent nystagmus** is an oscillation that occurs in patients with strabismus or acquired visual loss who have a jerk nystagmus in the direction of the fixing eye (i.e., right-beating nystagmus when fixing with the right eye and left-beating nystagmus when fixing with the left eye) [158]. Patients with infantile uniocular blindness may have a bilateral horizontal nystagmus that represents a manifest nystagmus of the latent type [529]. These patients often have a family history of strabismus; the monocular blindness (opacity of the media or suppression) acts as an occluder, making manifest what would have been latent nystagmus.

As noted above, pendular nystagmus is often congenital. Acquired pendular nystagmus may be wholly horizontal, wholly vertical, or have mixed components (circular, elliptical, or windmill pendular nystagmus). Pendular nystagmus may be symmetric, dissociated, or even monocular and often causes distressing oscillopsia and decreased visual acuity [36,51,85,585]. Damage to the dentatorubroolivary pathways (Guillain–Mollaret triangle) is found in
some cases of acquired pendular nystagmus, which is most often caused by multiple sclerosis, stroke, or tumor of the brainstem or other posterior fossa structures. In multiple sclerosis, pendular nystagmus may be a sign of cerebellar nuclear involvement [36], or result from optic neuropathy, but the most consistent finding on MR imaging is a lesion in the dorsal pontine tegmentum, perhaps affecting the central tegmental tract [85]. In a study of 27 patients with acquired pendular nystagmus, MR images were characterized by multiple areas of abnormal signal with statistically significant ones occurring in areas containing the red nucleus, the central tegmental tract, the medial vestibular nucleus, and the inferior olive [585]. The abundance of abnormal MR imaging signals, predominantly in the pons but also in the midbrain and the medulla, suggests that large or multiple structural lesions may be required to elicit pendular nystagmus. Acquired convergence-induced pendular nystagmus may occur with multiple sclerosis [86].

Other causes of acquired binocular pendular nystagmus include Pelizaeus–Merzbacher disease, mitochondrial cytopathy, Cockayne syndrome, neonatal adrenoleukodystrophy (a peroxisomal disorder), and toluene addiction [547,565]. Pendular nystagmus may also appear with blindness or monocular loss of vision; in the latter case, it may be monocular (see above). Binocular visual loss may cause nystagmus that has both horizontal and vertical components that change direction over seconds or minutes (i.e., a wandering null point) [354]. Blind patients may have windmill nystagmus, in which there are repeated oscillations in the vertical plane alternating with repeated oscillations in the horizontal plane.

**Horizontal pendular pseudonystagmus** has been described in patients with horizontal essential head tremor and bilateral vestibular dysfunction [152, 960]. The deficient vestibulo-ocular reflex results in oscillopsia in space when the head oscillates and funduscopic reveals a fine pendular motion of the eyes that is reduced by firm support of the head. Yen et al. described two renal transplant patients who developed pseudonystagmus and oscillopsia caused by immunosuppressant (tacrolimus)-induced head tremor and gentamicin-induced vestibulopathy [1009]. Although the patients were initially thought to have nystagmus, closer observation revealed no true nystagmus but corrective saccades compensating for an absent vestibulo-ocular reflex during the head tremor (pseudonystagmus). Typically patients with vestibulo-ocular impairment have only head movement induced oscillopsia but these patients had constant oscillopsia because the smooth pursuit system could not compensate for the loss of vestibular function at immunosuppressant-induced head oscillation greater than 1 Hz.

**Head-shaking nystagmus (HSN)** refers to the nystagmus induced by head oscillation, and usually beats to the healthy side in unilateral peripheral vestibulopathy [374]. In perverted HSN, the nystagmus develops in the plane other than that being stimulated, that is, downbeat or upbeat after horizontal head oscillation. Perverted HSN has been reported in diffuse cerebellar degeneration, with focal caudal cerebellar stroke, or with medullary lesions and signifies central vestibular lesion [502]. Horizontal head shaking at 2 to 3 Hz can induce nystagmus in patients with central vestibulopathy as well as in patients with peripheral vestibulopathy. Head shaking nystagmus may occur after lateral medullary infarction [187]. In all cases, the horizontal component beats toward the lesion side, that is, is ipsilateral. In most of the patients, MRI shows infarctions in the caudal or middle portion of the medulla that spares the rostral portion. Head-shaking nystagmus in lateral medullary infarction is likely due to unilaterally impaired noduloluvular inhibition of the velocity storage. This is consistent with the results of neuroanatomic studies that demonstrate that Parkinje cells controlling velocity storage in the nodulus and ventral uvula project to the caudal or middle portion of the vestibular nuclei, whereas those subserving visual–vestibular interactions in the flocculus project to the more rostral portion.

Palatal myoclonus or tremor is a continuous rhythmic involuntary movement of the soft palate that may be accompanied by synchronous movements of other adjacent structures, such as the face, pharynx, larynx, or diaphragm. The association of pendular nystagmus with palatal myoclonus is not infrequent and the condition is then termed oculopalatal myoclonus [362,888,918]. Oculopalatal myoclonus may be of two types [664]:

1. A lateral form, consisting of jerky, nystagmoid movements with simultaneous oblique and rotary components associated (and synchronous) with lateralized palatal myoclonus (in this form, the eye on the side of the myoclonus intorts as it rises and extorts as it falls while the opposite eye extorts as it rises and intorts as it falls).
2. A midline form in which vertical to and fro pendular eye movements occur synchronous with symmetric bilateral palatal myoclonus.

It has been postulated that the generation of oculopalatal myoclonus/tremor involves vestibulocular reflex adaptation mediated by the cerebellar flocculus as floccular integrity is preserved in most patients [664]. The lateral form implies unilateral disease while the midline form indicates bilateral disease. Damage to the dentatorubrooival pathways (Guillain–Mollaret triangle) is found in cases of...
oculopalatal myoclonus, which is most often caused by multiple sclerosis or vascular lesions of the brainstem. MR imaging often shows enlargement of the inferior olivary nuclei [888].

An alternate hypothesis for the cause of oculopalatal tremor/myoclonus concerns the electrotonic coupling of cells in the inferior olivary nucleus that depend on gap junction channels called connexions [565]. Connexons permit dendrite-to-dendrite transmission of ions and small molecules. Normally the deep cerebellar nuclei inhibit the inferior olive via a pathway that runs through the superior cerebellar peduncle and the central tegmental tract. Oculopalatal myoclonus/tremor may arise because of interruption of inhibitory projections from the deep cerebellar nuclei, which may project out of the superior cerebellar peduncle before looping back to the inferior olive in the central tegmental tract. Loss of this cerebellar inhibition may be followed by degenerative changes in the inferior olivary nucleus with hypertrophic degeneration, including development of connexons and electronic coupling between cell bodies if inferior olivary neurons, causing groups of these neurons to synchronize, creating a 1 Hz to 2 Hz oscillator. This synchronized signal is then sent to the cerebellar cortex on climbing fibers, stimulating pendular ocular and palatal oscillations [565].

In a patient with symptomatic ocular myoclonus, investigators measured regional cerebral metabolic rate of glucose use (rCMRGlu) before and after successful treatment with clonazepam [1002]. Even after the symptoms resolved, the rCMRGlu in the hypertrophic olive increased persistently, whereas that in the inferior cerebellar vermis contralateral to the hypertrophic olive decreased. The inferior cerebellar vermis, belonging to the vestibulocerebellar system, may thus be associated with the generation of symptomatic ocular myoclonus [1002].

Kim et al. determine the patterns of nystagmus in oculopalatal tremor (OPT) and correlate them with MRI changes in the inferior olivary nuclei [508]. Mixed torsional-vertical pendular nystagmus in OPT has been considered to signify unilateral brainstem damage and symmetric vertical nystagmus considered to indicate bilateral disease. Ocular oscillations were analyzed in 22 patients with OPT, 20 from focal brainstem lesions, with or without cerebellar lesions, and two from the progressive ataxia and palatal tremor syndrome. Fourteen patients had binocular symmetry of pendular nystagmus and eight showed dissociated pendular nystagmus. MRI demonstrated inferior olivary nucleus signal change, unilateral in 14 and bilateral in eight. Unilateral olivary changes were associated with symmetric pendular nystagmus in six and with dissociated nystagmus in eight patients. Bilateral olivary changes were visible in eight patients with symmetric nystagmus. Dissociated pendular nystagmus was associated with MR pseudohypertrophy of the inferior olivary nucleus on the side of the eye with greater vertical amplitude of oscillation. The authors concluded that dissociated pendular nystagmus predicted asymmetric (unilateral) inferior olivary pseudohypertrophy on MRI with accuracy, but symmetric pendular nystagmus was associated with either unilateral or bilateral signal changes in the inferior olivary nucleus [508]. Instability of eye velocity to position integration from damage to the paramedian tract projections and denervation of the dorsal cap of the inferior olive were the proposed mechanisms of the pendular nystagmus.

There may be an association between the one-and-a-half syndrome (see above) and oculopalatal myoclonus [995]. In five patients with one-and-a-half syndrome and facial nerve palsy, oculopalatal myoclonus developed in 4 months to 3 years. Involvement of the facial nerve may predict subsequent development of oculopalatal myoclonus.

**BINOCULAR SYMMETRIC JERK NYSTAGMUS**

**Binocular symmetric conjugate jerk nystagmus** may be divided into that which is present spontaneously and that which is induced [158]. Spontaneous jerk nystagmus may be further divided into forms present in primary position and forms present predominantly on eccentric gaze.

Spontaneous symmetric conjugate jerk nystagmus that occurs in primary position may be predominantly horizontal, predominantly torsional, or predominantly vertical. Spontaneous symmetric conjugate jerk nystagmus in primary gaze that is predominantly horizontal includes congenital nystagmus (above), latent nystagmus (above), vestibular nystagmus, periodic alternating nystagmus, drug-induced nystagmus, and epileptic nystagmus. Spontaneous symmetric conjugate jerk nystagmus in primary gaze that is purely torsional is a form of central vestibular nystagmus. Spontaneous symmetric conjugate jerk nystagmus in primary gaze that is predominantly vertical includes upbeat nystagmus and downbeat nystagmus.

Horizontal nystagmus in the primary position is often the result of peripheral vestibular disease. Vestibular nystagmus has a linear (constant velocity) slow phase. The horizontal component is diminished when the patient lies with the intact ear down and is exacerbated with the affected ear down. Peripheral vestibular lesions induce a tendency for the eyes to drift in a direction parallel to the plane in which the diseased canal lies. Horizontal nystagmus with the slow component toward the lesion (the opposite vestibular nuclei drive the eyes toward the diseased
Peripheral vestibular disease is suspected when associated neurological signs and symptoms of brainstem dysfunction are present. With periodic alternating nystagmus (PAN), the eyes exhibit primary position nystagmus, which, after 90 to 120 seconds, stops for a few seconds and then starts beating in the opposite direction [244]. A few beats of downbeat nystagmus, upbeat nystagmus, or square-wave jerks may appear in the interval between alternating sidebeat nystagmus. The nystagmus is usually not affected by visual fixation. Horizontal jerk nystagmus in the primary position not associated with vertigo is usually periodic alternating nystagmus [158]. This disorder may be associated with periodic alternating oscillopsia, periodic alternating gaze, or periodic alternating skew deviation [202,933]. PAN may be associated with periodic alternating head turns where the head turns in the direction of the quick phase and the eyes are moved into a position in the orbit that is the same as the direction of the slow phase, so minimizing the nystagmus by Alexander’s law.

PAN may be congenital, but it is often acquired and caused by disease processes at the craniocervical junction [397,547,565,923]. Etiologies of PAN are listed in Table 8.26. Periodic alternating nystagmus may be provoked by an attack of Meniere disease [183] and was associated with periodic alternating skew deviation in a patient with cerebellar degeneration [575]. Also, periodic alternating nystagmus may be a prominent finding in some patients with Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease, especially cases associated with cerebellar ataxia; the head turn, however, was in the same direction as the current slow eye deviation (when the cases had progressed to periodic alternating gaze deviation), suggesting that the head turns in these cases were not adaptive mechanisms but rather a manifestation of the underlying vestibular oscillation [359]. A possible variant of periodic alternating nystagmus, periodic alternating windmill nystagmus, has been described in blind patients and consists of oscillations in both the horizontal and vertical planes, 90 degrees out of phase. A periodic downbeat nystagmus has also been described, with cycle length

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TABLE 8.26</th>
<th>Etiologies of Periodic Alternating Nystagmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Congenital (may be associated with albinism)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Chiari malformation and other malformations of the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>craniocervical junction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Cerebellar degenerations (e.g., spinocerebellar ataxia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type 6), occasionally with anti-glutamic acid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>decarboxylase (GAD) antibodies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ataxia-telangiectasia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Cerebellar masses, including tumors, abscesses, and cysts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Brainstem infarction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Cerebellar infections, including syphilis and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• HIV-induced primary cerebellar degeneration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Encephalitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hepatic encephalopathy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Trauma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Multiple sclerosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Anticonvulsant medications (e.g., phenytoin intoxication)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Lithium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Following visual loss (e.g., due to cataract or vitreous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hemorrhage)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Epileptic PAN (after hypoxic encephalopathy)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Provoked by an attack of Meniere’s disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.5 minutes and the period of downbeat nystagmus lasting 1.5 minutes, in a patient with severe hypomagnesemia as a complication of scleroderma [257].

The nodulus and uvula of the cerebellum maintain inhibitory control over vestibular rotational responses by using the neurotransmitter GABA and over the time course of postrotational nystagmus. Thus, following ablation of these structures, the postrotational response is excessively prolonged, so that normal vestibular repair mechanisms act to reverse direction of the nystagmus [565], which may result in periodic alternating nystagmus. PAN has been described with a discrete nodular cerebellar lesion (ependymoma) [686] and with an isolated infarction of the cerebellar nodulus [448]. Thus, periodic alternating nystagmus is likely caused by lesions of the cerebellar uvula and/or nodulus or their connections with the brainstem vestibular nuclei. This vestibulo-cerebellar circuit would ordinarily be blocked by visual fixation, smooth pursuit, and optokinetic mechanisms, therefore, another prerequisite for periodic alternating nystagmus is that visual stabilization systems must be impaired either by loss of vision (e.g., cataracts, vitreous hemorrhage) or cerebellar flocular disease. Baclofen, a GABA-B agonist, may abolish periodic alternating nystagmus, adding further evidence to the importance of the nodulus and uvula in the generation of periodic alternating nystagmus.

Drug-induced nystagmus may be predominantly horizontal, predominantly vertical, or most commonly, mixed. It is most often seen with tranquilizing medications and anticonvulsants. Although drug-induced nystagmus is more often evident with eccentric gaze (see below), it may also be evident in primary gaze [158,761].

Nystagmus may occur as an epileptic phenomenon. Epileptic nystagmus is usually horizontal, may be seen with epileptiform activity ipsilateral or contralateral to the direction of the slow component of the nystagmus, and often is associated with altered states of consciousness, although consciousness may be preserved during the attacks [320,393,441,468,469,872,938]. The most commonly reported seizure focus site for epileptic nystagmus is the temporoparietal region. There are two postulated mechanisms for the eye deviation in epileptic nystagmus [320,393,441,468,469,938]. Ipsiversive eye deviation, with eye movement recordings and EEG showing seizure-induced ipsilateral linear slow phases, is postulated to result from stimulation of the smooth pursuit region in the temporoparietal cortex. If eye velocity is high or the eye reaches a far eccentric portion in the orbit, a normal resetting quick phase eye movement occurs after each slow phase, resulting in nystagmus. Contraversive eye deviations, with eye movement recordings and EEG showing seizure-induced contralateral quick phases, is thought due to stimulation of the saccade-controlling regions of the temporo-occipital or frontal cortex. If gaze-holding is defective (e.g., the neural integration is “leaky”), then velocity-decreasing slow phases bring the eyes back to the midline after each quick phase, resulting in nystagmus. Epileptic PAN has been described (after hypoxic encephalopathy) [653].

Spontaneous jerk nystagmus that is purely torsional is a rare form of central vestibular nystagmus. Often it is difficult to detect except by observation of the conjunctival vessels or by noting the direction of retinal movements on either side of the fovea. Purely torsional nystagmus may be present in primary gaze or elicited by head positioning, vigorous head shaking, or gaze deviation [587]. It may be suppressed by convergence. Purely torsional nystagmus may be seen with brainstem and posterior fossa lesions, such as tumors, syringobulbia, syringomyelia with Chiari malformation, lateral medullary syndrome, multiple sclerosis, trauma, vascular anomalies, postencephalitis, and sarcoidosis, and as part of the stiff-person syndrome [547,587,642,680,869]. Torsional nystagmus may also be seen in patients with the ocular tilt reaction, including in patients with unilateral internuclear ophthalmoplegia. It may also be congenital.

Contralesionally beating torsional nystagmus may be due to a midbrain lesion involving the rostral interstitial nucleus of the MLF (riMLF), while lesions of the interstitial nucleus of Cajal in the midbrain cause ipsilesional torsional nystagmus [407,408]. Torsional nystagmus occurring only during vertical pursuit has been described with cavernous angiomas of the middle cerebellar peduncle [292]. Nonrhythmic but continuous torsional eye movements have been reported as a paraneoplastic process [780].

**PREDOMINANTLY VERTICAL JERK NYSTAGMUS**

Spontaneous jerk nystagmus in primary gaze that is predominantly vertical includes upbeat nystagmus and downbeat nystagmus [67,161,725].

Downbeat nystagmus is usually present in primary position, but is greatest when the patient looks down (Alexander law) and to one side. On upward gaze, the nystagmus is less pronounced or disappears completely. Patients with downbeat nystagmus often complain of vertical oscillopsia due to retinal slip produced by the nystagmus slow phase. Downbeat nystagmus is often associated with horizontal gaze-evoked nystagmus; convergence may increase, suppress, or convert the nystagmus to upbeat nystagmus. The nystagmus may occasionally be disjunctive,
being more vertical in one eye and torsional in the other eye, especially when associated with an internuclear ophthalmoplegia (see above). Vertical smooth pursuit is impaired for downward tracking. Downbeat nystagmus may occur with cervicomедullary junction disease, midline medullary lesions, posterior midline cerebellar lesions, or diffuse cerebellar disease [161, 381, 558, 976, 1003]. Most responsible lesions affect the vestibulocerebellum (flocculus, paraflocculus, nodulus, and uvula) [463] and the underlying medulla. Deficient drive by the posterior semicircular canals, whose central projections cross in the floor of the fourth ventricle, has been postulated as an explanation for downbeat nystagmus. Interruption of downward vestibulocerebellar reflex pathways, which synapse in the medullary vestibular nucleus and cross in the medulla (beneath the nucleus prepositus hypoglossi) to reach the contralateral MLF, would result in upward smooth eye drift and a downward corrective saccade. Cerebellar, especially floccular and uvulonodular, lesions may cause this nystagmus by disinhibition of the cerebellar effect on the vestibular nuclei. The cerebellar flocculus contains Purkinje cells that send inhibitory projections to anterior canal but not posterior canal central pathways; therefore, disinhibition would lead to downbeat nystagmus. Damage to the nuclei propositus hypoglossi and the medial vestibular nuclei (the neural integrator) in the medulla has also been suggested as the cause of the nystagmus [209].

A patient with acute multiple sclerosis with a lesion of the caudal medulla (which contains the nucleus Roller and nucleus intercalatus) developed downbeat nystagmus with horizontal head oscillations (perverted head-shaking nystagmus) [629]. Other central vestibular lesions (e.g., cerebellar degenerations) may cause vertical nystagmus, especially downbeat nystagmus, after horizontal head shaking (inappropriate cross-coupled nystagmus). Etiologies of downbeat nystagmus [97, 209, 372, 547, 565] are listed in Table 8.27. Intermittent downbeat nystagmus, accompanied by episodic vertical oscillopsia, may be an early sign of Chiari malformation [1004] and was elicited by head extension and rotation in a patient with a vermician arachnoid cyst with associated obstructive hydrocephalus [177].

Forty percent of patients with downbeat nystagmus are classified as having idiopathic downbeat nystagmus, because no underlying pathology can be demonstrated by conventional MRI or laboratory tests [422]. Gray matter brain volumes of 11 patients with idiopathic downbeat nystagmus were compared

### TABLE 8.27

**Etiologies of Downbeat Nystagmus**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disorder</th>
<th>Etiology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Craniocervical anomalies, including cerebellar ectopia,</td>
<td>• Heat stroke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arnold-Chiari malformation, platybasia, basilar invagination, and Paget's disease</td>
<td>• Cephalic tetanus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Familial cerebellar degenerations including spinocerebellar ataxia 6</td>
<td>• Multiple sclerosis and other leukodystrophies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and 17, episodic ataxia type 2</td>
<td>• Syringomyelía/syringobulbia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Sporadic adult onset ataxia</td>
<td>• Trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Familial cortical myoclonic tremor with epilepsy (FCMTE)</td>
<td>• Superior canal dehiscence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Mitochondrial encephalopathy with lactic acid and stroke-like episodes</td>
<td>• Alcohol, including alcohol-induced cerebellar degeneration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(MELAS)</td>
<td>• Wernicke encephalopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Multiple system atrophy</td>
<td>• Thiamine deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Posterior fossa tumors (including pontomedullary astrocytoma,</td>
<td>• Alcoholics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cerebellar meningioma, ependymoma, and plexus papilloma of fourth</td>
<td>• Non-alcoholics (vomiting, drastic weight reduction diet, colonic surgery, chronic hemodialysis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ventricle)</td>
<td>• Paraneoplastic cerebellar degeneration (including testicular cancer with anti-Ta antibody and patients with anti-yo/anti-Purkinje cell antibodies)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Increased intracranial pressure (e.g., due to supratentorial mass)</td>
<td>• High serum and cerebrospinal fluid titers of glutamic acid decarboxylase (GAD) antibodies; stiff person syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and hydrocephalus</td>
<td>• Superficial siderosis of the CNS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Brainstem or cerebellar infarction, anoxia, or hemorrhage</td>
<td>• Congenital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Dolichoectasia of the vertebral arteries</td>
<td>• Vitamin B12 deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Rotational vertebral artery syndrome (compression of the dominant</td>
<td>• Magnesium deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vertebral artery during contralateral head rotation, usually at the</td>
<td>• Drugs, including lithium, tolouene, intravenous or epidural narcotics, amiodarone, and anticonvulsants (e.g., phenytoin, carbamazepine, felbamate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atlantoaxial joint)</td>
<td>• Transient finding in otherwise normal infants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Intermittent vertebral artery compression by an osteophyte</td>
<td>• Idiopathic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Encephalitis, including herpes simplex encephalitis, West Nile virus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encephalomyelitis, chronic aseptic meningitis, pontine encephalitis,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and HTLV-1 infection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

to healthy controls using voxel-based morphometry [422]. Small areas of localized gray matter atrophy were detected in the lateral cerebellar hemispheres (lobule VI) and ocular motor vermis of patients with idiopathic downbeat nystagmus, but not in the flocculus and paraflocculus. The focal atrophy found in the vermal and lateral cerebellar regions in downbeat nystagmus may lead to deficits in smooth pursuit eye movement initiation, which in turn causes hypofunction of the parafloccular lobe, associated with downbeat nystagmus. These data are in line with experiments in primates showing that ablation of the floccular and parafloccular lobes disrupts smooth pursuit and causes downbeat nystagmus.

Wagner et al. reviewed 117 patients with downbeat nystagmus [975]. In 62% (n = 72) of patients the etiology was identified (“secondary downbeat nystagmus”), the most frequent causes being cerebellar degeneration (n = 23) and cerebellar ischemia (n = 10). In 38% (n = 45), no cause was found (“idiopathic downbeat nystagmus”). A major finding was the high comorbidity of both idiopathic and secondary downbeat nystagmus with bilateral vestibulopathy (36%) and the association with polyneuropathy and cerebellar ataxia even without cerebellar pathology on MRI. The authors concluded that idiopathic downbeat nystagmus remains common despite improved diagnostic techniques. The findings allowed classification of “idiopathic downbeat nystagmus” into three subgroups: “pure” downbeat nystagmus (n = 17); “cerebellar” downbeat nystagmus (i.e., downbeat nystagmus plus further cerebellar signs in the absence of cerebellar pathology on MRI (n = 6); and a “syndromatic” form of downbeat nystagmus associated with at least two of the following: bilateral vestibulopathy, cerebellar signs, and peripheral neuropathy (n = 16). The latter may be caused by multisystem neurodegeneration.

Damage to the central projections of the anterior semicircular canals, which tend to deviate the eyes superiorly, has been suggested to explain upbeat nystagmus. Upbeat nystagmus is usually worse in upgaze (Alexander law) and, unlike downbeat nystagmus, it usually does not increase on lateral gaze [67]. Convergence may increase or decrease the nystagmus, or convert downbeat nystagmus to upbeat nystagmus [382,411]. A periodic downbeat nystagmus has also been described, with cycle length 3.5 minutes and the period of downbeat nystagmus lasting 1.5 minutes, in a patient with severe hypomagnesemia as a complication of scleroderma [257].

Upbeat nystagmus is usually associated with abnormalities of vertical vestibular and smooth pursuit eye movements and with saccadic intrusions, such as square-wave jerks, that alternate to the left and right and may create the pattern of bow-tie nystagmus. Damage to the ventral tegmental pathways, which may link the superior vestibular nuclei to the superior rectus and inferior oblique subnuclei of the oculomotor nuclei, may cause the eyes to glide down, resulting in upbeat nystagmus [754]. For example, upbeat nystagmus has been described due to a focal demyelinating lesion in the right dorsal tegmentum of the caudal pons suggesting that a lesion of the superior vestibular nucleus and its efferent crossing ventral tegmental tract could be responsible for upbeat nystagmus [921]. Medullary disease may cause upbeat nystagmus as may lesions of the anterior cerebellar vermis, perihypoglossal and inferior olivary nuclei of the medulla, pontine tegmentum, brachium conjunctivum, midbrain, and brainstem diffusely [161,381,411,464,495,656,929]. Medullary lesions invariably involve the perihypoglossal nucleus and adjacent medial vestibular nuclei, nucleus intercalatus, and ventral tegmentum, which contain projections from vestibular nuclei that receive inputs from the anterior semicircular canals. Primary position upbeat nystagmus may occur with unilateral medial medullary infarction, likely due to impairment of the vertical position-to-velocity neural integrator in the nucleus intercalatus of Staderini, a structure in the paramedian caudal medulla located caudal to the vestibular nuclei and to the most rostral of the perihypoglossal nuclei (nucleus prepositus hypoglossi and nucleus of Roller) [412,445,503]. Lesions of this structure may cause primary position upbeat nystagmus increased in downward gaze [690]. Etiologies of upbeat nystagmus [547,565,929] are outlined in Table 8.28. Primary position upbeat nystagmus and ocular lateral pulsion (i.e., saccadic overshoot or hypermetria away from the lesion and hypometria toward the lesion) have been described with hemispheric cerebellar lesions [96]. Primary position upbeat nystagmus combined with binocular elliptical pendular nystagmus is characteristic of Pelizaeus-Merzbacher disease [952]. Bow-tie nystagmus, in which quick phases are directed obliquely upward with horizontal components alternating to the right and left, is probably a variant of upbeat nystagmus [565].

The pathophysiology of spontaneous upbeat (UBN) and downbeat (DBN) nystagmus was reviewed and summarized by Pierrot-Deseilligny and Milea [725]. UBN due to pontine lesions could result from damage to the ventral tegmental tract (VTT), originating in the superior vestibular nucleus (SVN), coursing through the ventral pons and transmitting excitatory upward vestibular signals to the third nerve nucleus. A VTT lesion probably leads to relative hypoactivity of the drive to the motoneurons of the elevator muscles with, consequently, an imbalance between the downward and upward systems,
TABLE 8.28  Etiologies of Upbeat Nystagmus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary cerebellar degenerations and atrophies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chiasmal malformation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior fossa tumors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pseudotumor cerebi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brainstem or cerebellum infarction or hemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calvaria of brain stem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple sclerosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meningitis and brainstem encephalitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thalamic arteriovenous malformation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wernicke encephalopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Behcet syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital, including cases associated with Leber's congential amaurosis and other congenital anterior visual pathway disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelizaeus-Merzhaier disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miller Fisher syndrome (ataxia, areflexia, and ophthalmoplegia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle ear disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organophosphate poisoning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobacco-induced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticonvulsant intoxication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organoamino poisoning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporine A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paraneoplastic syndrome with testicular cancer and anti-Ta antibodies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Osmotic demyelination syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transient finding in otherwise healthy neonates</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


resulting in a downward slow phase. The results observed in internuclear ophthalmoplegia suggest that the MLF is involved in the transmission of both upward and downward vestibular signals. Since no clinical cases of DBN due to focal brainstem damage have been reported, it may be assumed that the transmission of downward vestibular signals depends only upon the MLF, whereas that of upward vestibular signals involves both the MLF and the VTT. The main focal lesions resulting in DBN affect the cerebellar flocculus and/or paraflocculus. Apparently, this structure tonically inhibits the SVN and its excitatory efferent tract (i.e. the VTT) but not the downward vestibular system. Therefore, a floccular lesion could result in a disinhibition of the SVN–VTT pathway with, consequently, relative hyperactivity of the drive to the motoneurons of the elevator muscles, resulting in an upward slow phase. UBN also results from lesions affecting the caudal medulla (nucleus of Roller and a cell group of the paramedian tracts). An area in this region could form part of a feedback loop involved in upward gaze-holding, originating in a collateral branch of the VTT and comprising the caudal medulla, the flocculus and the SVN, success-

sively. Therefore, Pietrot-Deseilligny and Milea suggest that the main types of spontaneous vertical nystagmus due to focal central lesions result from a primary dysfunction of the SVN–VTT pathway, which becomes hypoactive after pontine or caudal medullary lesions, thereby eliciting UBN, and hyperactive after floccular lesions, thereby eliciting DBN. Lastly, since gravity influences UBN and DBN and may facilitate the downward vestibular system and restrain the upward vestibular system, it was hypothesized that the excitatory SVN–VTT pathway, along with its specific floccular inhibition, has developed to counteract the gravity pull. This anatomical hyperdevelopment is apparently associated with a physiological upward velocity bias, since the gain of all upward slow eye movements is greater than that of downward slow eye movements in normal human subjects and in monkeys [725].

BINOCULAR SYMMETRIC JERK NYSTAGMUS PRESENT IN ECCENTRIC GAZE OR INDUCED BY VARIOUS MANEUVERS

Spontaneous binocular conjugate symmetric jerk nystagmus that is induced by eccentric gaze (gaze-evoked nystagmus) includes nystagmus due to brainstem/cerebellar disease, Bruns’ nystagmus, drug-induced nystagmus, physiologic nystagmus, rebound nystagmus, and convergence-induced nystagmus. Downbeat nystagmus and upbeat nystagmus may only occur on downward or upward gaze, respectively (see above).

With gaze-evoked nystagmus, the eyes fail to remain in an eccentric position of gaze but drift to midposition. The velocity of the slow component decreases exponentially as the eyes approach midposition. Usually gaze-evoked nystagmus occurs on lateral or upward gaze, less often on downward gaze. Gaze-evoked nystagmus is due to a deficient eye position signal. A “leaky” neural integrator or cerebellar (especially vestibulocerebellar) lesion may result in this type of nystagmus, which is more pronounced when the patient looks toward the lesion. Diseases of the vestibulocerebellum commonly cause gaze-evoked nystagmus often with a downbeating component. Cerebellopontine angle tumors may cause Bruns nystagmus, a combination of ipsilateral large-amplitude, low-frequency nystagmus that is due to impaired gaze-holding, and contralateral small-amplitude, high-frequency nystagmus that is due to vestibular impairment [565]. Gaze-evoked nystagmus is most often occurs as a side effect of medications, including anticonvulsants, sedatives, and alcohol. Gaze-evoked nystagmus has been described with adult-onset Alexander disease with involvement of the middle cerebellar peduncles and dentate nuclei.
Localization in Clinical Neurology

[602] and is also a feature of familial episodic vertigo and ataxia type 2 that is responsive to acetazolamide [66,68,135]. Physiologic or endpoint nystagmus is a benign low-amplitude jerk nystagmus with the fast component directed toward the field of gaze. It usually ceases when the eyes are brought to a position somewhat less than the extremes of gaze.

Rebound nystagmus is seen in some patients with brainstem and/or cerebellar disease (e.g., olivoponto-cerebellar atrophy, spinocerebellar ataxia type 17, anti-GAD antibody syndrome, brainstem/cerebellar tumor or stroke, Marinsco–Sjögren syndrome, Dandy–Walker cyst, Gerstmann–Straussler–Scheinker disease, adult-onset Alexander disease, myotonic dystrophy type 2, etc.) [13,118,578,602,1008]. After keeping the eyes eccentric for some time, the original gaze-evoked nystagmus may wane and actually reverse direction so that the slow component is directed centrifugally (centripetal nystagmus); it becomes obvious if the eyes are returned to midposition (rebound nystagmus). Rebound nystagmus probably reflects an attempt by brainstem or cerebellar mechanisms to correct for the centripetal drift of gaze-evoked nystagmus [565]. Transient gaze-evoked and rebound nystagmus may occur with episodes of migainous vertigo [685].

Convergence may change nystagmus by converting downbeat to upbeat, upbeat to downbeat, or pendular to upbeat. Convergence-evoked nystagmus is usually vertical (upbeat is more common than downbeat) and seen most commonly with multiple sclerosis or brainstem infarction [697]. Convergence may also increase or decrease the amplitude of nystagmus and may evoke horizontal (congenital or acquired pendular and jerk) or vertical (upbeat or downbeat) nystagmus [831]. Convergence-induced pendular nystagmus has been described as a congenital phenomenon (conjugate) and as an acquired phenomenon (disjunctive) with multiple sclerosis [86,697,831]. The effects of convergence on nystagmus are not to be confused with convergence nystagmus in which a slow abduction of the eyes is followed by quick adduction (see above).

Binocular symmetric conjugate jerk nystagmus that is induced includes optokinetic nystagmus, rotational/caloric vestibular nystagmus, positional nystagmus, Valsalva-induced nystagmus, and hyperventilation-induced nystagmus [158,565]. The first two types of induced nystagmus are physiological and, although abnormalities of these responses may aid in clinical diagnosis, they will not be further discussed.

Positional vertigo of the benign paroxysmal type, also known as benign paroxysmal positioning vertigo or positional nystagmus, is usually “idiopathic” and possibly related to degeneration of the macula of the otolith organ or to lesions of the posterior semicircular canal [64,69,127,128,319,542,980]. It has been proposed that otoconia detached from the otoconial layer (by degeneration or trauma) gravitate and settle on the cupula of the posterior canal causing it to become heavier than the surrounding endolymph and thus sensitive to changes in the direction of gravity (with positional change). After rapid head tilt toward the affected ear or following head extension, when the posterior semicircular canal is moved in the specific plane of stimulation, an ampullofugal deflection of the cupula occurs, with a rotational vertigo and concomitant nystagmus. Some patients show a strong horizontal nystagmus induced by lateral head positioning suggesting lateral (rather than posterior) semicircular canal irritation (lateral canal or horizontal canal variant of benign paroxysmal positional vertigo) [65,231]. Other causes of positional vertigo include trauma, infection, labyrinthine fistula, ischemia, demyelinating disease, Chiari malformation, and, rarely, posterior fossa tumors or vascular malformations [542]. Besides paroxysmal positional nystagmus, patients often also exhibit static (persistent) positional nystagmus while lying in a lateral position. This static nystagmus is predominantly horizontal with minimal vertical component [64]. Paroxysmal vertigo induced by certain head positions is the most common complaint; the patient is asymptomatic between bouts. The Nylen-Barany maneuver (briskly tilting the patient’s head backward and turning it 45 degrees to one side) allows a differentiation between a peripheral and a central origin for positional vertigo.

Paroxysmal vertigo induced by head rotation rarely occurs in patients with rotational vertebral artery syndrome (RVAS), which is characterized by recurrent attacks of vertigo, nystagmus, and ataxia that are mainly induced by head rotation [188]. RVAS is known to occur due to compression of the dominant vertebral artery during contralateral head rotation, usually at the atlantoaxial joint. Patients with RVAS have one hypoplastic vertebral artery and symptoms develop when the dominant VA is compressed by head rotation. Significant blood flow reduction in the posterior circulation by compression of the dominant vertebral artery in patients with one hypoplastic VA appears to be a requirement for the development of this syndrome. The initial nystagmus with RVAS is mostly downbeat, with the horizontal and torsional components usually beating toward the compressed vertebral artery side [188].

Nystagmus induced by the Valsalva maneuver may occur with Chiari malformation or perilymph fistulas [565]. Hyperventilation may induce nystagmus in patients with tumors of the eighth cranial nerve (e.g., acoustic neuroma or epidermoid tumors), after vestibular neuritis, or with central demyelinating
lesions [565,631]. Hyperventilation-induced nystagmus has the slow phase away from the side of the lesion (an excitatory or recovery nystagmus) and is likely due to the effect of hyperventilation upon serum pH and calcium concentration, which improves nerve conduction in a marginally functional, demyelinated nerve [565,631]. Hyperventilation may also induce epileptic nystagmus by inducing a seizure.

The superior semicircular canal dehiscence syndrome is characterized by vertigo and nystagmus induced by sound (Tullio phenomenon) or changes of middle ear (Hennebert sign) or intracranial pressure (Valsalva maneuver) and is caused by bony dehiscence of the superior semicircular canal [62,240,373,920]. There is a defect in the bony roof of the superior semicircular canal. The defect is covered by dura, so there is no direct communication of fluid between the CSF and the perilymphatic space. Although the etiology is unknown, a large case series of temporal bones revealed that the bone overlying the superior canal is thin (<0.1 mm) in 1.5% of individuals, which has led to speculation that in such individuals minor head trauma or an abrupt change in intracranial pressure (as in sneezing) may induce frank bony dehiscence. Superior canal dehiscence typically presents with sound-induced dizziness (Tullio phenomenon), and provocative maneuvers usually produce a mixed torsional and vertical nystagmus consistent with stimulation of the superior canal.

Pulse-synchronous torsional pendular nystagmus in association with unilateral superior canal dehiscence has been reported [373,920]. The nystagmus may be suppressible by the Valsalva maneuver or by lying supine. It is postulated that systemic arterial pulse pressure is transmitted intracranially, causing pulse-synchronous fluctuation in intracranial pressure. In superior canal dehiscence, intracranial pressure fluctuations may be transmitted from the intracranial compartment by CSF pushing against the dura overlying the defect in the bony roof of the superior canal, which in turn induces movement of the perilymphatic fluid and endolymphatic fluid in the superior canal, causing nystagmus and dizziness [373]. These patients may have head movement dependent oscillopsia. The sound- and pressure-induced nystagmus is in the plane of the superior semicircular canal (mixed vertical-torsional with the slow phases directed toward and the top pole rotating away from the side of the lesion) and CT of the temporal bone shows dehiscence of the bone overlying the affected superior semicircular canal. Patients may also have pulsatile oscillopsia and tinnitus and hyperacusis.

The basic mechanism for production of symptoms and signs with the syndrome is an internal perilymph fistula—“a third window”—so that sound and pressure changes displace endolymph in the anterior canal, deviating the cupula and exciting or inhibiting the anterior canal nerve. By triggering the characteristic torsional vertical nystagmus in the plane of the superior semicircular canal with either loud sounds or pressure changes in the middle ear or CSF, the diagnosis can usually be made [62]. Tilikete et al. reported a patient with bilateral superior canal dehiscence syndrome who presented with unusual manifestations including pulse-synchronous vertical pendular nystagmus and Valsalva-induced, up and counterclockwise-beating jerk nystagmus and suggested that normal communication between the inner ears and the intracranial space may explain the vertical pendular and pulse-synchronous nystagmus, modulated by increased intracranial pressure [920].

Saccadic Intrusions

Inappropriate saccades, or saccadic intrusions, interfere with macular fixation of an object of interest. The essential difference between nystagmus and saccadic intrusions lies in the initial eye movement that takes the line of sight away from the object of regard [565]. For nystagmus, it is a slow drift or slow phase as opposed to an inappropriate saccadic movement that intrudes on steady fixation. Saccadic intrusions are discussed above.

Lid Nystagmus

Lid nystagmus refers to eyelid twitches that are synchronous with the fast phase of horizontal nystagmus on lateral gaze. It has been ascribed to lateral medullary disease, where it may be inhibited by near effort. Lid nystagmus may also be provoked by convergence (Pick sign) with cerebellar or medullary pathology. In this situation, it consists of a slow down-drift of the lid corrected by an upward flick. Rhythmic upward jerking of the eyelids may be associated with vertical nystagmus, especially upbeat nystagmus, palatal myoclonus, or convergence–retraction nystagmus. In patients with vertical gaze limitation due to Miller Fisher syndrome, lid nystagmus may be evoked by upward movements of the head in attempted upgaze. Lid nystagmus unaccompanied by vertical nystagmus may reflect midbrain lesions [149]. Irregular lid tremor or lid flutter can occur in parkinsonism and certain metabolic diseases (e.g., Gaucher disease) [677].

The Eyelids

In normal adults, the upper lid just covers the upper cornea, and the lower lid lies slightly below the inferior corneal margin. Eyelid opening occurs with
contraction of the levator palpebrae superioris muscle, innervated by the oculomotor nerve. Accessory muscles include Müller’s muscle (sympathetic innervated), which is embedded in the levator and inserts mainly on the tarsal plate, and the frontalis muscle (innervated by the temporal branch of the facial nerve), which helps to retract the lid in extreme upgaze [817]. Tonus in the levator normally parallels that to the superior rectus muscle, and, at extreme downgaze, both muscles are completely inhibited. However, there is an inverse relationship between the levator and the superior rectus during forced lid closure where the eye elevates (Bell’s phenomenon). Eyelid closure occurs when levator motor neuronal activity ceases; rapid and firm eye closure is a function of the orbicularis oculi muscles, which are controlled by the facial nerve. Schmidke and Buttner-Ennever, in their excellent review of the nervous control of eyelid function [817], noted that the eyelid serves as a protector of the eye in a number of separable functions:

1. Tonic lid elevation when the eyes are open
2. Voluntary eye closure and eye opening
3. Involuntary adjustment of the eyelid to the vertical globe position, that is, lid-eye coordination
4. Periodic and reflex blinking
5. Firm eye closure in protective and expressive acts, for example, sneezing

In the first through third functions, only the levator palpebrae muscle is active; in the fourth and fifth functions, different parts of the orbicularis oculi contract while the levator is synchronously inhibited. Therefore, lid position, gentle eye closure, and lid-eye coordination are unaffected by facial nerve (cranial nerve VII) palsy, whereas blinking and firm eye closure are impaired [817]. Disorders of eyelid closure are discussed in Chapter 10.

The motor neurons for both levator muscles are in the unpaired central caudal nucleus (CCN), located at the dorsal caudal pole of the oculomotor complex adjacent to the medial rectus and superior rectus subdivisions. Within the CCN, motor neurons of both levators are intermixed; however, the premotor control of each levator is at least partially lateralized [817]. The close relationship of lid position to level of arousal (i.e., the lids lower involuntarily with increasing fatigue) has led some authors to conclude that the generator of tonic levator motor neuronal activity lies in the ventral periaqueductal gray of the brainstem dorsal to the caudal oculomotor nucleus (the “supraoculomotor area”); because this area receives afferents from the limbic system and reticular formation, both regions are functionally involved in level of arousal. Thus, destruction of the periaqueductal gray may cause ptosis. The cerebral cortex, particularly the right hemisphere, is associated with the voluntary control of tonic levator activity, whereas extrapyramidal dopaminergic pathways influence blinks; the region of the nuclear complex of the posterior commissure is involved in lid-eye movement coordination [817].

The rostral interstitial nucleus of the MLF (riMLF) is the principal premotor structure concerned with the generation of voluntary vertical saccades. Because of the close lid-eye coordination in all types of vertical gaze changes, it is likely that the premotor control of saccadic signals to the levators also comes from the riMLF [817]. However, the control of lid-eye coordination also involves interposed premotor structures.

Ptosis

Drooping of the eyelid (ptosis or blepharoptosis) can be measured with the limbus or central light reflex used as reference points. The usual position of the adult upper eyelid margin is 1.5 mm below the upper limbus or 3 to 4 mm above the light reflex (the margin reflex distance). If the vertical distance from limbus to limbus is 11 mm, then 4 mm of ptosis would result in bisection of the center of the cornea or pupil by the lid margin. The palpebral fissure and upper eyelid fold are measured in the primary position of gaze. Normally, the upper lid fold is located 5 to 7 mm above the upper lid margin. It is also important to measure levator function in the evaluation of ptosis; the amount of excursion of the upper eyelid from maximal straight downgaze to maximal upgaze may be determined with a millimeter rule. Levator function is usually 10 to 12 mm or more (contraction of the frontalis muscle, which attempts to overcome the ptosis, must be neutralized by pressing the thumb over the center of the patient’s eyebrow while measuring). About 2 mm of movement probably is transmitted from contraction of the superior rectus muscle, so that a measurement of 2 mm or less can be considered no levator function. Movement of 4 mm or less is classified as poor levator function; from 5 to 7 mm as fair levator function; and 8 mm or more as a good levator function.

Ptosis has multiple etiologies, including supranuclear lesions, lesions of the oculomotor complex, oculosympathetic lesions, lesions of the neuromuscular junction, diseases of the muscle, and local mechanical lid abnormalities [547]. Etiologies of ptosis are outlined in Table 8.29. Acquired ptosis may be associated with marked loss of the superior visual fields in both primary gaze and reading gaze [712]. A unilateral ptosis may be associated with eyelid retraction on the opposite side due to Hering’s law of equal innervation [620].
TABLE 8.29  
Etiologies of Ptosis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Congenital Ptosis</th>
<th>Myopathies associated with ptosis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Isolated</td>
<td>• Chronic progressive external ophthalmoplegia (CPEO)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Nonisolated</td>
<td>•Congenital fibrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Associated other ocular defects</td>
<td>•Congenital myopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Congenital cataracts</td>
<td>• Central core myopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Epicanthus</td>
<td>• Centronuclear myopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Functual abnormalities</td>
<td>• Multisite myopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Refractive error/strabismus and amblyopia</td>
<td>• Nonsite myopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Associated non-ocular defects (e.g., skeletal, CNS)</td>
<td>• Fiber type disproportion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Blepharophimosis syndrome</td>
<td>• Congenital muscular dystrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Synkinesis ptosis (e.g., Marcus-Gunn jaw winking ptosis)</td>
<td>• Diabetes (possibly due to hypoxia to levator)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Myogenic (e.g., congenital fibrosis)</td>
<td>• Familial periodic paralysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Neurogenic (e.g., third nerve palsy)</td>
<td>• Myotonia congenita and myotonic dystrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Neuromuscular junction disease (e.g., signs of myasthenia gravis such as fatigue, enhancement, variability, Cogan’s lid twitch sign)</td>
<td>• Oculopharyngeal dystrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Combined valproate and hydantoain embryopathy with anomalous septum pellucidum</td>
<td>• Rapidly progressive adolescent-onset oculopharyngeal somatic syndrome with rimmed vacuoles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• X-linked congenital isolated ptosis</td>
<td>• Inflammatory and infiltrative myopathies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Isolated myositis of levator muscle (may be idiopathic or due to statin medication)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Hypothyroid myopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Late-onset glycogenosis type II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 3-Hydroxy-3-Methyl-Glutaryl-CoA Reductase Inhibitors (“statins”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Recurrent ptosis due to myopathy of the levator palpebrae superioris muscle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Etiologies of nonisolated ptosis

| • Mechanical (e.g., lid mass, infection, or inflammation) |
| • Myogenic (e.g., external ophthalmoplegia) |
| • Neurogenic (e.g., ocular motor deficit and/or diplopia, other neurologic findings, Horner syndrome, cyclic orotic with cyclic blepharoposis) |
| • Neuromuscular junction disease (e.g., signs of myasthenia gravis such as fatigue, enhancement, variability, Cogan’s lid twitch sign) |
| • Medications (e.g., 3-Hydroxy-3-Methyl-Glutaryl-CoA Reductase Inhibitor or “Statin” use) |

Mechanical causes of ptosis

| • Redundant skin or fat on the upper eyelid (e.g., dermatochalasis) |
| • Tumors or cysts of the conjunctiva or eyelid |
| • Infection (e.g., preseptal or orbital cellulitis) |
| • Retained foreign body post trauma |
| • Cicatricial scarring (e.g., posttraumatic, postsurgical, or postinflammatory) |
| • Levator dehiscence after Sub–Tenon’s capsule Triamcinolone injection |
| • Inflammation and edema |
| • Graves’ disease |
| • Blepharochalasis |
| • Dermatomyositis |
| • Infiltration |
| • Amyloid |
| • Sarcoid |
| • Neoplastic (e.g., breast or lung cancer) |
| • Waldenström’s macroglobulinemia |
| • Primary or metastatic tumors or orbital pseudotumor |
| • Neurofibroma |
| • Hemangioma |
| • Dermoid |
| • Lymphoma |
| • Contact lenses related |
| • Foreign body reaction |
| • Giant papillary conjunctivitis (GPC) |

Myopathies associated with ptosis

| • Contact lens migration |
| • Distraction of the levator from excessive eyelid manipulation |

Neurogenic conditions associated with ptosis

| • Third nerve palsy |
| • With or without partial or complete ophthalmoplegia |
| • With or without aberrant regeneration |
| • Alternating ptosis in abetaliproteinemia |
| • Brainstem infarct |
| • Horner syndrome |
| • Fisher syndrome |
| • Acute inflammatory polyradiculoneuropathy (Guillain–Barré syndrome) |
| • Chronic inflammatory polyradiculoneuropathy (CIDP) |
| • Cerebral palsy |
| • Circellular palsy following craniovertebral decompression of Chiari I malformation |
| • Minor head trauma in patient with chronic hydrocephalus (supranuclear ptosis) |
| • Putaminal hemorrhage |
| • Paradoxic supranuclear inhibition of levator tone |
| • Seizure-induced |
| • Thiamine deficiency |
| • Wernicke disease |
| • Traumatic anterior upper eyelid displacement |
| • Recurrent isolated ptosis (lasting 6–10 weeks) in presumed ophthalmoplegic migraine of childhood |
| • Relapsing alternating ptosis (episodes lasting days)—reported in two siblings |
Supranuclear ptosis may be unilateral or bilateral [46,50,87,681,1015]. Unilateral supranuclear ptosis is usually due to a lesion of the opposite cerebral hemisphere, especially ischemic lesions (e.g., middle cerebral artery infarction) [168], but may also occur with tumor and arteriogenous malformations [590]. Bilateral supranuclear ptosis may be seen with unilateral or bilateral hemorrhagic disease [681]. The preponderance of right-sided lesions in cases of cerebral ptosis suggests a dominance of the right hemisphere in lid control [46,817]. Large hemispheric infarcts may cause complete bilateral ptosis that may be a premonitory sign of an impending herniation [46]. Bilateral ptosis has been described following acute right fronto-temporo-parietal lobe lesions all associated with conjugate gaze deviation to the right [570]. This ptosis is usually transient, implying that the intact hemisphere assumed motor control. Ptosis of unknown mechanism may be noted with parkinsonism [212].

Bilateral ptosis associated with supranuclear downward gaze paralysis, but with other ocular motor functions relatively intact, has been described with midbrain glioma [163]. The downward gaze paralysis was likely due to bilateral riMLF, whereas the bilateral ptosis was thought due to the tumor destroying the periaqueductal gray dorsal to the oculomotor nucleus (i.e., the “supraoculomotor area”), which is concerned with premotor control of the levator motor neurons. Bilateral ptosis, thought due to damage to premotor levator pathways, associated with selective upward gaze paralysis has been described after minor head trauma in a patient with chronic hydrocephalus [881].

Apraxia of eyelid opening refers to an inability to open the eyes voluntarily in the absence of ptosis or blepharospasm. Patients with this condition do not have true ptosis but have difficulty in overcoming levator inhibition [574]. They must thrust their heads backward to attempt eyelid opening or must open their lids manually. Apraxia of eyelid opening may occur with lesions of the right hemisphere or bilateral cerebral hemispheric lesions [455,681] but may also be seen with diseases of the extrapyramidal system [156,349,484,522,765]. A levodopa-responsive apraxia of eyelid opening may also occur in the absence of any other CNS signs [242]. The etiologies of apraxia of eyelid opening are outlined in Table 8.30 [4,5,110,444,516,547,955].

Aramideh et al. correlated the clinical findings of apraxia of eyelid opening with synchronous levator palpebrae (LP) and orbicularis oculi (Ooc) electromyographic (EMG) recordings [30]. EMG was characterized by either intermittent LP inhibition (ILPI) or a continuation of Ooc activity [928] following voluntary closure of the eyes (pretarsal motor persistence or PMP). From this study it appears that:

1. In some patients there may be intermittent involuntary eye closure as a result of ILPI. Persistence of ILPI following eye closure would interfere with eye opening. When there is no ILPI, these patients have no difficulty opening their eyes at will following voluntary closure.
2. In other patients, closure of the eyes due to ILPI may activate Ooc. These patients have PMP in addition to ILPI and are unable to open their eyes at will following voluntary closure.
3. Patients who have PMP alone may be unable to open their eyes at will following voluntary closure. Once open, the eyes do not have the tendency to close by themselves.

Ptosis may occur on the side of eye adduction (likely due to paradoxical supranuclear levator inhibition) with Duane syndrome (see above). Rarely, mouth opening may be associated with ptosis (inverse Marcus Gunn phenomenon) due to synkinesis between the oculomotor and trigeminal nerves. Ptosis may also be psychogenic or functional in nature [415]. Ptosis may also occur with lesions of the oculomotor nucleus, fascicles, or nerve and is often associated
with other signs of oculomotor dysfunction (e.g., mydriasis). A patient has been described with isolated, intermittent ptosis as the first sign of a posterior carotid artery aneurysm [936]. Lesions of the central caudal nucleus cause bilateral ptosis [621]. A mild ptosis is also evident with oculosympathetic lesions (Horner syndrome), in which case there is associated miosis. Ptosis may also occur with diseases of the neuromuscular junction, such as myasthenia gravis, Lambert–Eaton syndrome [139,699], and botulism, and with myopathic processes, such as myotonic muscular dystrophy, chronic progressive external ophthalmoplegia, and dermatomyositis. Intermittent ptosis with diplopia has been described with Charcot–Marie–Tooth disease [863], and slowly progressive ptosis may develop in diabetics, perhaps due to a local myopathy of the levator palpebrae or tarsalis muscles (or both) by chronic local ischemia or hypoxia [90]. In the Miller Fisher variant of Guillain–Barré syndrome, unilateral or bilateral ptosis may occur [99]. Isolated bilateral ptosis may be the only ophthalmologic sign in Fisher variant of Guillain–Barré syndrome [867].

Recurrent ptosis affecting both eyelids independently has been described with histology of the levator palpebrae superioris and Müller muscle consistent with a localized myopathic process [718]. A therapeutic response to acetazolamide suggests that ion-channel dysfunction may be the underlying cause for this new myopathy.

In myasthenia gravis, Cogan “eyelid twitch sign” may be observed. When the patient is asked to look up after having kept the eyes directed downward for 20 to 30 seconds, the affected upper eyelid may twitch before setting in a ptotic position. Ptosis, which may be temporarily abolished by sustained upgaze, may occur with the Lambert–Eaton myasthenic syndrome [139,699]. Ptosis may also occur as a remote effect of therapeutic botulinum toxin B injection for cervical dystonia [744].

Local mechanical factors may also cause ptosis, including levator tendon damage due to ocular surgery or thyroid eye disease. Mechanical causes of ptosis include tumors or cysts of the conjunctiva, infection (e.g., preseptal or orbital cellulitis), cicatricial scarring (e.g., posttraumatic, postsurgical, or postinflammatory), inflammation and edema (e.g., Graves’ disease), infiltration (e.g., amyloid, sarcoid, neoplastic, Waldenström macroglobulinemia), primary or metastatic tumors or orbital pseudotumor, contact lenses wear, contact lens migration, foreign body reaction, giant papillary conjunctivitis, and disinsertion of the levator from excessive eyelid manipulation [547]. Prolonged hard contact lens wear may induce a lower position of the upper eyelid and eventually lead to ptosis through levator disinsertion [946]. Unilateral isolated ptosis has been described with primary orbital sarcoidosis limited to the levator palpebrae superioris muscle [858]. Uddin and Rose described seven cases of downgaze “hangup” of the upper eyelid with biopsy-proved orbital malignant neoplasms [940]. All seven patients had ptosis and four had limited elevation of the affected eye. Keane described a patient with a fixed eyelid with failure of eyelid relaxation and elevation presumed to be due to metastasis from breast cancer [476].

Disinsertion of the levator tendon may occur with age, resulting in unilateral or bilateral involutinal ptosis in the elderly. Unlike congenital ptosis, in which the dystrophic levator precludes normal eyelid excursion, the lid continues to move normally in upgaze and downgaze in aponeurotic disinsertion (excursion of the eyelid from downgaze to upgaze is usually 9 mm or more). Ptosis must be differentiated from dermatochalasis, which refers to the stretched, redundant, baggy eyelid skin that occurs with age. The clinical features of aponeurotic ptosis are listed in Table 8.31. Congenital ptosis usually is the result of abnormal development of the levator and may often coexist with superior rectus muscle paresis (both muscles originate from a common embryologic tissue mass). With congenital ptosis the levator is fibrotic and dystrophic, so that lid elevation in upgaze is poor (lack of levator contraction), and the lid fails to follow the globe in downgaze (inability of the muscle to relax). Levator function (i.e., excursion of the eyelid from downgaze to upgaze) is thus poor (5 mm or less).

False ptosis (pseudoptosis) may occur due to mechanical impairment of upward eyelid movement (e.g., with orbital tumor), with orbital inflammation and eyelid swelling, with an anophthalmic socket, with microphthalmia or phthisis bulbi, with lid retraction in the opposite eye, and on the side opposite a hypertropic eye (when the hypertropic eye fixes, the opposite eye becomes hypotropic and demonstrates an apparent ptosis). Blows to the forehead, resulting in orbital roof fracture and subfrontal

### TABLE 8.31 Clinical Features of Aponeurotic Ptosis

- Acquired
- Good to excellent levator function (12 mm)
- Elevated or absent lid crease
- Thinning of the eyelid above the tarsus
- Bilateral but may be unilateral or asymmetric
- Elderly population
Etiologies of Upper Lid Retraction and Lid Lag

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Neurogenic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Benign transient lid retraction in preterm infants (“Eye popping reflex” in infants)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Dorsal midbrain syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Paroxysmal superior rectus and levator spasm in multiple sclerosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Seizures (Petit mal or myoclonic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Oculogyric crisis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Progressive supranuclear palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Autosomal dominant cerebellar ataxias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Parkinson’s disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Guillain-Barré syndrome (including Fisher syndrome)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyradiculoneuropathy (CIDP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• POEMS (Polyneuropathy, organomegaly, endocrinopathy, M-protein, skin changes) syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Lid nystagmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Cerebellar or medullary lesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Associated with vertical nystagmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Associated with palatal myoclonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Associated with convergence-retraction nystagmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Paradoxic levator excitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Marcus Gunn jaw-winking phenomenon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Abducens nerve palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Aberrant regeneration of the third nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Unilateral lid retraction with contralateral oculomotor paresis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Partial superior rectus paresis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Orbital floor fracture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Pseudoretrection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Sympathetic overactivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Claude-Bernard syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Sympathomimetic drops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Volitional lid retraction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mechanical</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Prominence of the globe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Myopia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Buphthalmos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Proptosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Enucleation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Thermal or chemical burns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Blowout fracture of the orbital floor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Contact lens wear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Contact lens embedded in upper lid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Euphthalmos and hypoglobus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Silent sinus syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Orbital malignancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Radiation therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Surgical procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Trabeculectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ocular cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Orbital myectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Cataract extraction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Neuronmuscular and myopathic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Congenital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Congenital maldevelopment or fibrosis of the levator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Maternal hyperthyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Congenital myotonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Myotonic dystrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Graves’ ophthalmopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hypokalemic or hyperkalemic periodic paralysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Myotonic muscular dystrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Sarcoidosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• After botulinum injection into lids</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Miscellaneous associations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Optic nerve hypoplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Microphthalmos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Down’s syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Meningitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Sphenoid wing meningioma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Superior cul-de-sac lymphoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hepatic cirrhosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
position of gaze or on looking upward (Collier sign, or “posterior fossa stare”). Unlike thyroid orbitopathy, with midbrain lesions there is no retraction in downgaze. Lesions of the medial or principal portion (or both) of the nuclear complex of the posterior commissure are required for the production of lid retraction, because these structures are assumed to be involved in lid-eye coordination by providing inhibitory modulation of levator motor neuronal activity [817]. Supranuclear periodic eyelid retraction may occur during seizures and may also signal impending tentorial herniation. Bilateral episodic retraction of the eyelids may occur as a manifestation of epileptic discharges associated with absence or myoclonic seizures or due to “levator spasms” during an oculogyric crisis [623]. Lid lag may occur on a supranuclear basis in PSP, likely due to defective inhibition of the levator nuclei during downward gaze [308]. Lid lag may occur in Guilain–Barré syndrome (only observed on downward gaze) [889], and lid retraction may also occur with parkinsonism [212], Miller Fisher syndrome [20], and POEMS (peripheral neuropathy, organomegaly, endocrinopathy, M-protein, and skin changes) syndrome [345].

Lesions of the medial and/or principal portion of the nuclear complex of the posterior commissure (NPC) are essential for the production of lid retraction because these structures are assumed to be involved in lid-eye coordination by providing inhibitory modulation of levator motor neuronal activity [817]. Normally, supranuclear inhibition of the central caudal nucleus of the levator releases the eyelids to descend with the eyes into downgaze [165]. Disrupted inhibition presumably causes eyelid retraction and eyelid lag. Clinical and experimental evidence suggests that there is an inhibitory premotor network in the periaqueductal gray (the supraoculomotor area or supra III), dorsal to the third cranial nerve nucleus, that projects from the NPC to the central caudal subnucleus [324, 325, 328, 817]. Lesions in the region of NPC may produce excessive innervation to the lids and consequently lid retraction in primary position; thus, bilateral eyelid retraction and eyelid lag with minimal impairment of vertical gaze has been described with a circumscribed unilateral lesion immediately rostral and dorsal to the red nucleus involving the lateral periaqueductal gray area in the region of the NPC [324, 325, 328]. Eyelid lag without retraction has also been described in pretectal disease, implying that these lid signs may have separate neural mechanisms [328]. Conversely, vertical gaze paralysis without eyelid retraction may occur; in these cases the fibers and nucleus of the posterior commissure are spared and the lesions are more rostral, involving the riMLF, the interstitial nucleus of Cajal, and the periaqueductal gray area [817]. Ipsilateral ptosis and contralateral superior eyelid retraction may be due to a nuclear oculomotor nerve syndrome (plus–minus lid syndrome) [325, 335, 964]. The plus–minus syndrome results from a unilateral lesion of the third nerve fascicle with extension rostrally and dorsally to involve the nucleus of the posterior commissure or its connections. The plus–minus syndrome has been described with glioma, third nerve palsy, orbital myositis, myasthenia gravis, congenital ptosis, and orbital trauma [70, 964]. Also, a patient has been described with a nuclear third nerve palsy, sparing the caudal central nucleus and its efferent fibers, who had no ipsilateral ptosis but had contralateral lid retraction [334]. The contralateral eyelid retraction was thought to be due to damage to fibers from the NPC, most probably in the region of the supraoculomotor area, and it is inferred from this case that inhibitory connections between the NPC and the central caudal nucleus are unilateral and crossed. A similar crossed pattern may also exist for excitatory afferents to the central caudal nucleus as hemispheric lesions result in contralateral ptosis.

Paroxysmal superior rectus and levator palpebrae spasm is a rare and unique disorder described in a single patient with multiple sclerosis [277]. Paroxysms of vertical diplopia and lid retraction in this patient lasted 3 to 4 seconds and examination revealed intermittent right hypertropia, lid retraction, and restriction of downgaze. MR imaging revealed multiple lesions consistent with multiple sclerosis, including a lesion in the midbrain in the region of the third nerve fascicle.

Paradoxic lid retraction may occur with jaw movement or swallowing (the Marcus-Gunn phenomenon). This trigemino-oculomotor synkinesis occurs on a congenital basis. Eyelid retraction may also occur with aberrant regeneration of the oculomotor nerve (when the eye adducts), with congenital or acquired abducens palsies (on abduction), with levator denervation supersensitivity after oculomotor palsies, and with irritative oculosympathetic lesions (Claude-Bernard syndrome). Intermittent oculosympathetic irritation may cause cyclic sympathetic spasm, in which the pupil dilates for 40 to 60 seconds, which may be associated with lid retraction, facial hyperhidrosis, and headache (Claude-Bernard syndrome) [158]. Eyelid retraction may also occur if there is ptosis of the opposite eyelid (especially when the ptosis is due to disease at or distal to the neuromuscular junction) when fixating with the eye with the unilateral ptosis (due to Hering’s law) [571]. Compensatory unilateral orbicularis oculi contraction may mask lid retraction; therefore, if the orbicularis oculi muscle is also weakened, as in myasthenia
Gravis, contralateral lid retraction becomes more evident. Other causes for lid retraction include prolonged steroid use, local application of phenylephrine, an enlarged globe, recession of the superior rectus, or nondysthyroid cicatricial retraction (e.g., due to scar after trauma, herpes zoster).

Eyelid retraction and lid lag may also occur with neuromuscular diseases, including myasthenia gravis, familial periodic paralysis, myotonic syndromes, and thyroid eye disease [571]. Myogenic eyelid retraction may also occur after botulinum toxin injections of the eyelids and after eye surgery, including superior rectus recession, ptosis repair, and enucleation [82]. Thyroid eye disease is one of the most common etiologies for acquired unilateral or bilateral sustained lid retraction; the retraction is due to pathologic shortening of the levator muscle. On looking down, the eyelid pauses and then follows the eye (Graefe sign) and, in the primary position, there is upper lid retraction with infrequent and incomplete blinking (Stellwag sign). Upper lid retraction in Graves’ disease is likely due to local adhesions of the levator muscle to fixed orbital tissues; retraction and lag do not correlate with limitation of vertical eye movements or inferior rectus muscle volume [287]. Bilateral upper and lower lid retraction may occur with severe liver disease (Summerskill sign), but the existence of this sign has been questioned [83]. Unilateral lid retraction may occur with sarcoidosis [93]. Volitional lid retraction may occur and is usually bilateral and associated with furrowing of the brows (frontalis contraction).

Myasthenia gravis may also be associated with three types of eyelid retraction [623]:

1. Patients with unilateral ptosis may develop contralateral eyelid retraction as they attempt to elevate the ptotic lid due to bilateral excessive innervation to the eyelids.
2. Patients with ptosis may develop brief eyelid retraction lasting only seconds following a cascade from downgaze to primary position (Cogan lid twitch sign).
3. Patients may develop transient eyelid retraction lasting seconds or minutes after staring straight ahead or looking upward for several seconds (possibly due to posttetanic facilitation of the levator muscle).

Retraction of the lower eyelid may be the earliest clinical lid sign of a lesion of the facial nerve, and facial nerve lesions are the most common cause of lower lid retraction [144,201]. Flaccidity of the lower lid may be an early manifestation of facial muscle paresis in myasthenia and myopathies, and lower lid retraction may occur with proptosis (e.g., secondary to thyroid orbitopathy), with senile entropion or ectropion, after eye muscle or orbital surgery, or with contraction of lid tissue (e.g., from burns, tumors, or dermatoises) [201]. With a hypertropia, the ipsilateral lid may appear to be retracted, whereas with a hypotropia, there may be an illusion of contralateral lid retraction. Lid retraction may occur when there is elevation of the contralateral lower eyelid with facial contracture following Bell’s palsy, spastic-paretic facial contracture with myokymia, hemifacial spasm, enophthalmos, or Horner syndrome ("upside-down" ptosis). Causes of lower lid retraction are noted in Table 8.33.

### References

The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System


85. Barton JJS, Cox TA. Acquired pendular nystagmus in multiple sclerosis: clinical observations and role of


The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System


The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System


Fukutake T, Horiyama K, Sakakibara R. Contralateral selective saccadic palsy after a small haematoma in the corona radiata adjacent to the genu of the internal capsule. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 1993;56:221.


The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System


Localization in Clinical Neurology


The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System


Localization in Clinical Neurology


The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System


Localization in Clinical Neurology


The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System

Localization in Clinical Neurology


867. Stearns MQ, Sinhoff SE, Rosenberg ML. Purely ton-}


870. Stolz SE, Chatrian GE, Spence AM. Epileptic nys-}


873. Straube A, Böttner U, Brandl Th. Recurrent attacks with skew deviation, torsional nystagmus, and contrac-


The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System


928. Trobu BT, Janton F, Weaver R.


930. Tusa RJ, Ungerleider LG.

931. Tusa RJ, Ungerleider LG.

932. Tusa RJ, Ungerleider LG.

933. Tusa RJ, Ungerleider LG.


Localization in Clinical Neurology


The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Ocular Motor System


Anatomy of Cranial Nerve V (Trigeminal Nerve)

The trigeminal nerve is a mixed nerve that provides sensory innervation to the face and mucous membranes of the oral and nasal cavities and motor innervation to the muscles of mastication [9].

Motor Portion

The motor nucleus of the trigeminal nerve is situated at a midpontine level (Fig. 9.1), medial to the main sensory nucleus of the trigeminal nerve, near the floor of the fourth ventricle. It receives its supranuclear control through corticobulbar fibers originating in the lower third of the precentral gyrus. These bilateral connections travel through the corona radiata, internal capsule, and cerebral peduncle and decussate in the pons before supplying the motor nuclei.

The motor root, or portio minor, exits from the motor nucleus, passes forward in the substance of the pons, and emerges from the anterolateral aspect of the pons before supplying the motor nuclei. The motor root then passes through the posterior fossa and pierces the dura mater beneath the attachment of the tentorium to the tip of the petrous portion of the temporal bone. It then enters a cavity in the dura mater overlying the apex of the petrous portion of the temporal bone. It enters then a cavity in the dura mater overlying the apex of the petrous bone (Meckel’s cave), travels beneath the trigeminal (gasserian) ganglion, and leaves the skull through the foramen ovale.

Sensory Portion

The pseudounipolar perikarya of the sensory portions of the trigeminal nerve are in the semilunar or gasserian ganglion, which is situated near the apex of the petrous bone in the middle cranial fossa. From this ganglion, the fibers of the sensory root (portio major) enter the substance of the pons, course dorsomedially, and terminate in three major nuclear complexes (Fig. 9.1) within the brainstem: the nucleus of the spinal tract of the trigeminal nerve, the main (or principal) sensory nucleus, and the mesencephalic nucleus.

On entering the pons, many of the sensory fibers descend as a bundle, the spinal tract of the trigeminal nucleus, to the caudal end of the medulla and into the spinal cord (as far as the third or fourth cervical level), where it becomes continuous with Lissauer’s tract. As the spinal tract descends, it gives off fibers to the medially located nucleus of the spinal tract of the trigeminal nerve, which also descends into the upper cervical cord. This nucleus is divided into a pars oralis (which extends from the midpons to the inferior olive), a pars interpolaris (which extends from the rostral third of the inferior olive to the obex of the fourth ventricle), and a pars caudalis (which extends to and is continuous with the dorsal horn gray matter of the cervical spinal cord). The fibers of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve travel in the most ventral part of the spinal tract and extend most caudally (i.e., terminate in the trigeminal nucleus in series with the second cervical sensory level). The fibers of the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve travel in the most dorsal part of the spinal tract and terminate in the most rostral level of the spinal nucleus of the trigeminal nerve. The rostral trigeminal nuclei are important in intraoral and dental sensation [39]. In another possible sensory somatotopic spinal nucleus representation, the midline facial areas (nose and mouth) are represented rostrally in the spinal nucleus, whereas the more lateral facial sensation fibers terminate in more caudal spinal nucleus regions. This pattern of termination may account for the onionskin pattern of facial sensory loss with intramedullary lesions and the perioral numbness that occurs with more rostral spinal nucleus and tract lesions.

The spinal nucleus of the trigeminal nerve receives fibers that convey the sensations of pain, temperature, and soft touch from the face and mucous membranes. From the spinal nucleus, ascending fibers travel mainly ipsilaterally in the trigeminonothalamic tract to terminate in the ventral posteromedial (VPM) and intralaminar nuclei of the thalamus.

Other fibers from the portio major enter the pons and ascend and enter the main sensory nucleus of the trigeminal nerve. This nucleus is located in the
these three nerves, the ophthalmic division enters the orbit through the superior orbital fissure. Before leaving the cavernous sinus, this division divides into tentorial, lacrimal, frontal, and nasociliary branches. The tentorial branch supplies the dura of the cavernous sinus, sphenoid wing, anterior fossa, petrous ridge, Meckel’s cave, tentorium cerebelli, posterior falx cerebri, and dural venous sinuses. The frontal branch divides into the supraorbital nerve—supplying the medial upper lid and conjunctiva, the frontal sinuses, the forehead, and the scalp—and the supratrochlear nerve, which supplies the conjunctiva, medial upper lid, forehead, and side of nose (Fig. 9.3). The lacrimal nerve, through its lateral palpebral branch, innervates the conjunctiva and skin in the area of the lacrimal gland. The lacrimal nerve also carries postganglionic parasympathetic fibers for reflex lacrimation. The nasociliary nerve divides into nasal nerves, which innervate the mucosa of the nasal septum, the lateral nasal wall, and the inferior and middle turbinates, and an external nasal branch, which innervates the skin of the top of the nose. The infratrochlear branch of the nasociliary nerve supplies the lacrimal sac, the caruncle, and the conjunctiva and skin of the medial canthus. Two long ciliary nerves carry sensation from the ciliary body, the iris, and the cornea and also carry sympathetic innervation to the dilator of the pupil. Multiple short ciliary nerves transmit sensory fibers from the globe, which

lateral pons, posterolateral to the motor nucleus of the trigeminal nerve. Fibers entering this nucleus are concerned with tactile and proprioceptive sensation. The main sensory nucleus gives off ascending fibers that terminate in the thalamus. These fibers travel in the ventral crossed trigeminothalamic (quintothalamic) tract or trigeminal lemniscus, which ascends with the medial lemniscus, and in the uncrossed dorsal trigeminothalamic tract. Both these fiber tracts terminate predominantly in the ventral posterior medial (VPM) nucleus of the thalamus.

The third sensory trigeminal nucleus, the mesencephalic nucleus, extends cephalad from the main sensory nucleus to the superior colliculus of the mesencephalon. This nucleus receives proprioceptive impulses from the masticatory muscles and from muscles supplied by other motor cranial nerves.

The sensory root (portio major) of the trigeminal nerve leaves the pons along with the motor root (portio minor) and expands in the Meckel’s cave to form the trigeminal (gasserian) ganglion. This ganglion lies near the cavernous sinus and internal carotid artery and gives rise to three nerve trunks: the ophthalmic, maxillary, and mandibular divisions of the trigeminal nerve.

This division (V1) (Fig. 9.2) lies in the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus in close association with the third, fourth, and sixth cranial nerves. Along with these three nerves, the ophthalmic division enters the orbit through the superior orbital fissure. Before leaving the cavernous sinus, this division divides into tentorial, lacrimal, frontal, and nasociliary branches. The tentorial branch supplies the dura of the cavernous sinus, sphenoid wing, anterior fossa, petrous ridge, Meckel’s cave, tentorium cerebelli, posterior falx cerebri, and dural venous sinuses. The frontal branch divides into the supraorbital nerve—supplying the medial upper lid and conjunctiva, the frontal sinuses, the forehead, and the scalp—and the supratrochlear nerve, which supplies the conjunctiva, medial upper lid, forehead, and side of nose (Fig. 9.3). The lacrimal nerve, through its lateral palpebral branch, innervates the conjunctiva and skin in the area of the lacrimal gland. The lacrimal nerve also carries postganglionic parasympathetic fibers for reflex lacrimation. The nasociliary nerve divides into nasal nerves, which innervate the mucosa of the nasal septum, the lateral nasal wall, and the inferior and middle turbinates, and an external nasal branch, which innervates the skin of the top of the nose. The infratrochlear branch of the nasociliary nerve supplies the lacrimal sac, the caruncle, and the conjunctiva and skin of the medial canthus. Two long ciliary nerves carry sensation from the ciliary body, the iris, and the cornea and also carry sympathetic innervation to the dilator of the pupil. Multiple short ciliary nerves transmit sensory fibers from the globe, which
pass through the ciliary ganglion to join the nasociliary nerve; these short ciliary nerves also carry postganglionic parasympathetic fibers from the ciliary ganglion to the constrictor of the pupil and the ciliary muscle. The parasympathetic fibers reach the ciliary ganglion through the inferior division of the oculomotor nerve destined to innervate the inferior oblique muscle.

The ophthalmic division therefore supplies the skin of the nose, the upper eyelid, the forehead, and...
MANDIBULAR DIVISION

The mandibular division (V3) (Fig. 9.5) joins the motor root of the trigeminal nerve to form the mandibular nerve. This nerve leaves the skull through the foramen ovale and travels in the infratemporal fossa, dividing finally into several terminal branches. The motor branches supply the eight muscles noted in the preceding text, whereas the lingual nerve conveys sensation from the lower gums and the papillae and mucous membrane of the anterior two-thirds of the tongue. Inferior dental branches supply the lower gums and teeth of the mandible; mental branches, after emerging from the bone at the mental foramen, supply the skin of the chin and the skin and mucous membrane of the lower lip.

In addition to the muscles listed previously (see Motor Portion), the mandibular nerve supplies the skin of the lower lip, lower jaw, chin, tympanic membrane, auditory meatus, and upper ear (Fig. 9.3); the mucous membranes of the floor of the mouth, the lower gums, and the anterior two-thirds of the tongue (not taste sensation, which is carried by the facial nerve); the teeth of the lower jaw; and the dura mater of the posterior cranial fossa.

MAXILLARY DIVISION

This division (V2) passes (Figs. 9.2 and 9.4) through the inferolateral portion of the cavernous sinus and then leaves the skull through the foramen rotundum to enter the sphenopalatine fossa. Next, it enters the orbit through the inferior orbital fissure (as the infraorbital nerve) and, after traveling through the infraorbital canal, reaches the face by way of the infraorbital foramen. Within the sphenopalatine fossa and infraorbital canal, palatine nerves and middle, posterior, and anterior superior alveolar nerves arise, which supply the upper teeth, maxillary sinus, nasopharynx, soft palate, roof of the mouth, and tonsils. After exiting from the infraorbital foramen, the nerve divides into an inferior palpebral branch to the lower lid, a nasal branch to the side of the nose, and a superior labial branch to the upper lip. A zygomaticofacial branch innervates the cheek.

The maxillary division therefore supplies the skin of the lower eyelid, the lateral nose, upper lip, and cheek (Fig. 9.3); the lower half of the cornea, conjunctiva, and iris; the mucous membranes of the maxillary sinus, lower nasal cavity, hard and soft palates, and upper gum; the teeth of the upper jaw; and the dura mater of the middle cranial fossa (through the middle or recurrent meningeal nerve).

Clinical Evaluation of Cranial Nerve V Function

Sensory Evaluation

Exteroceptive sensation (pain, light, touch, heat, and cold) is tested on the face and mucous membranes. Each of the three trigeminal divisions is tested individually and compared with the opposite side.
Lesions of individual divisions (distal to the gasserian ganglion) result in sensory loss confined to the cutaneous supply of that division (Fig. 9.3) with relatively little overlap into the cutaneous area of another division. Lesions at or proximal to the gasserian ganglion result in sensory loss that affects the whole ipsilateral face. Lesions within the brainstem or upper cervical cord may result in an onionskin distribution of sensory loss, whereas dissociation of sensation on the face (pain and temperature vs. touch sensation) differentiates lesions affecting the spinal tract and nucleus of the trigeminal nerve from lesions affecting the main sensory nucleus.

The cutaneous area over the angle of the mandible is supplied by the second and third cervical roots (by way of the great auricular nerve) and not by the trigeminal nerve. Therefore, a hemifacial sensory loss that spares the angle of the jaw is probably organic, whereas one that includes this area may be of functional origin or related to an intramedullary lesion.

### Motor Evaluation

The trigeminal nerve supplies the muscles of mastication. These are tested by having the patient clench the jaw (masseters and temporalis), move the jaw from side to side against resistance (lateral pterygoids), and protrude the jaw. With nuclear or infranuclear lesions of the motor division of the trigeminal nerve, the temporalis and masseter muscles on the side of the lesion do not contract when the jaw is clenched, the jaw deviates to the paralyzed side when the mouth is opened (due to contraction of the contralateral intact lateral pterygoid muscle), and the jaw cannot be deviated toward the nonparalyzed side (due to ipsilateral lateral pterygoid paresis). Atrophy and fasciculation of the masticatory muscles may also be evident. Trismus (inability to open the jaw) may be seen with acute dystonic reactions (e.g., due to neuroleptic medications), polymyositis, tetanus, trauma to the muscles of mastication, infection of the pterygomandibular space, neoplasm, radiation therapy, tryptophan-associated eosinophilic connective tissue disease, nemaline myopathy, and psychogenic factors [14,77,92]. Acute trismus has also been described due to Foix–Marie–Chavany syndrome, a clinical disorder characterized by facio-pharyngo-glosso-masticatory weakness and loss of voluntary control of facial movements with preserved automatic and emotional motility classically associated with bilateral anterior opercular lesions [32].
Other muscles supplied by the trigeminal nerve (mylohyoid, anterior belly of the digastric, tensor, tympani, tensor veli palatini) are difficult to evaluate clinically. However, flaccidity of the floor of the mouth due to mylohyoid and digastric paralysis may be evident on palpation, and paralysis of the tensor tympani may result in difficulty in hearing high notes.

**Reflex Evaluation**

The important reflexes conveyed by the trigeminal nerve include the corneal reflex and the jaw jerk (masseter reflex). The afferent arc of the corneal reflex travels through the ophthalmic (upper cornea) and maxillary (lower cornea) divisions of the trigeminal nerve. The efferent arc moves through the ipsilateral (direct reflex) and contralateral (consensual reflex) facial nerve to the orbicularis oculi muscles. Lesions of the trigeminal nerve result in loss of the ipsilateral and contralateral responses. These lesions may involve the peripheral or pontomedullary trigeminal pathways; however, a suprasegmental modulation of this reflex also exists, because a parietal lobe lesion (involving the perisylvian portion of the postcentral gyrus) may result in a contralateral loss of the corneal reflex. The jaw jerk or masseter reflex involves contraction of the masseter and temporalis muscles when the patient’s lower jaw is tapped. The afferent arc is through the 1a motor fibers in the mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve that run to the mesencephalic nucleus of the trigeminal nerve. The efferent arc also travels through mandibular fibers that originate in the motor nucleus of the trigeminal nerve. Lesions anywhere along this reflex arc result in depression of the ipsilateral jaw reflex, whereas bilateral supranuclear lesions result in an accentuated response.

Trigeminal sensory neuropathy may result in significant disability due to impaired intraoral sensation associated with a disturbance of mastication and swallowing [3]. Disturbed intraoral sensation, combined with impaired trigeminal reflexes (especially the masseter inhibitory reflex), interferes with the neural mechanisms that regulate chewing.

Another reflex mediated partly by trigeminal pathways is the blink reflex (glabellar reflex, orbicularis oculi reflex). Percussion over the supraorbital ridge results in bilateral contraction of the orbicularis oculi muscles. The afferent arc of this response is likely mediated by the ipsilateral main sensory nucleus of the trigeminal nerve and the ipsilateral and contralateral spinal nuclei of the trigeminal nerve. The spinal nuclei of the trigeminal nerve (bilateral) make motor connections through the corresponding facial nuclei, which innervate the orbicularis oculi muscles. By studying the blink reflex electrically, subtle peripheral and central lesions of the trigeminal and facial nerves may be uncovered.

The corneomandibular reflex consists of bilateral eye blink and a brisk anterolateral jaw movement induced by corneal stimulation [78]. A spontaneous palpebromandibular (eyelid jaw) synkinesia (SPMS), in which jaw movements similar to those in the corneomandibular reflex regularly accompany spontaneous eye blinks without an external corneal stimulation, has been described in patients with upper brainstem (bilateral lesions above the midpons) or bilateral cerebral lesions [78]. SPMS is pathophysiologically the same as the eyelid jaw synkinesia of the corneomandibular reflex, and both synkinesias originate centrally, probably in the pons. In the corneomandibular reflex, the jaw movement is primarily related to the blink rather than the corneal stimulus, but corneal stimulation may be necessary to overcome a higher threshold for expression of the synkinesia in patients with SPMS [78].

**Localization of Lesions Affecting Cranial Nerve V**

**Supranuclear Lesions**

Supranuclear control of trigeminal motor function is bilateral; however, the contralateral hemisphere exerts predominant control on the voluntary activity of the masseter [17]. Corticobulbar fibers originate in the lower frontal motor cortex, descend through the corona radiata, internal capsule, and cerebral peduncle, and then decussate in the pons to supply the motor nucleus of the trigeminal nerve. Lesions interrupting this pathway may result in contralateral trigeminal motor paresis (e.g., deviation of the jaw “away from” the lesion), but because of the bilateral innervation, paresis may be mild. Bilateral upper motor neuron lesions (pseudobulbar palsy) result in profound trigeminal motor paresis, often with an exaggerated jaw reflex. Mastication is then markedly impaired. Thalamic lesions may result in anesthesia of the contralateral face. Parietal lesions may be associated with depression of the contralateral corneal reflex, even when facial sensation is otherwise intact.

**Nuclear Lesions**

The motor and sensory nuclei of the trigeminal nerve may be involved by lesions (e.g., primary or metastatic tumors, arteriovenous malformation, demyelinating disease, infarction, hemorrhage, syringobulbia) that affect the pons, medulla, or upper cervical cord. These nuclear lesions involve other brainstem structures, and therefore brainstem lesions of the trigeminal nuclei are diagnosed by “the company
they keep” (e.g., long tract signs, and other cranial nerve involvement).

Lesions affecting the dorsal midpons may affect the motor nucleus of the trigeminal nerve. Congenital anomalies of the motor component of the trigeminal nerve are rare, and may be associated with the involvement of cranial nerve VII or XII. Ipsilateral paresis, atrophy, and fasciculations of the muscles of mastication therefore occur. A pontine localization of this masticatory paresis is suggested by associated findings that may include contralateral hemiplegia (due to affection of the basis pontis), contralateral hemisensory loss of the limbs and trunk (due to spinothalamic tract affection), and ipsilateral tremor (due to affection of the brachium conjunctivum). Interneuronal ophthalmoplegia (secondary to medial longitudinal fasciculus damage) and an ipsilateral Horner syndrome (due to involvement of descending sympathetic fibers) may also occur. Pontine syndromes are more thoroughly discussed in Chapter 15. Lateral pontine tegmental hemorrhage may rarely present as an isolated trigeminal sensory neuropathy, with numbness and paresthesias of half of the face, scalp, ear, and tongue [45], perhaps due to the involvement of the main sensory nucleus of the trigeminal nerve. A patient with small left dorsolateral pontine infarct presented with isolated orofacial sensory deficits (left upper face, tongue, and buccal mucosa numbness and paresthesias) without trunck or limb sensory findings indicating exclusive involvement of the pontine trigeminal sensory complex, including the principal sensory nucleus and the pars oralis of the spinal trigeminal nucleus and tract [48]. Unilateral trigeminal pain and numbness in a V1 through V3 distribution with decreased corneal reflex has also been described with a pontine abscess [5].

Patients with dorsal pontine lesions (usually tumors) may develop unilateral spasm and contraction of the masseter muscle, impairing the ability to open the jaw and forcing the patient to “speak through the teeth” [94]. Hemimasticatory spasm is a rare disorder of the trigeminal nerve that involves one or more of the jaw-closing muscles (masseter, temporalis, and medial pterygoid) on one side of the face and produces involuntary jaw closure due to paroxysmal unilateral muscle contraction [2,18,28,51,75,97]. The spasms may be sudden and brief or may last several minutes and cause intense pain. They are often triggered by voluntary jaw closure or other movements of the jaw and are sometimes relieved by voluntary jaw opening. Trigeminal function is otherwise normal. Electrophysiologic findings in hemimasticatory spasm suggest ectopic excitation of the trigeminal motor root or its nucleus, an abnormality that is analogous to ectopic excitation of the facial nerve in hemifacial spasm [2,18]. Some authors suggest that the nerve to the masseter and temporalis muscles may be entrapped at a point in its course between the lateral pterygoid muscle and the skull, causing focal demyelination and spontaneous discharges [18]. Hemimasticatory spasm may be associated with localized scleroderma [53] or may be seen with facial hemiatrophy [18,28,51,53,75,97].

The nucleus of the spinal tract of the trigeminal nerve extends from the caudal end of the pons to the third or fourth cervical spinal cord level. Therefore, lesions affecting the caudal pons, lateral medulla, or upper cervical cord result in ipsilateral facial analgesia, hypesthesia, and thermoanesthesia. Because the lateral spinothalamic tract lies in close proximity to the trigeminal spinal nucleus, the hemifacial sensory disturbance is often associated with contralateral trunk and extremity hypalgesia and thermoanesthesia. However, isolated orofacial pain and sensory deficit over the ipsilateral face, neck, tongue, and oral cavity may occur with small pontine or medullary lesions [45,72]. Caudal pontine lesions may damage the rostral spinal trigeminal nuclei and result in diminished intraoral sensation for all modalities but spared facial sensation [15,39]. Patients with isolated ventral pontine infarction may present with prominent ipsilateral midfacial sensory signs (hypesthesia and numbness of the midline facial areas) associated with dysarthria and contralateral hemiparesis [65]. The clinicoanatomic basis of the ipsilateral midfacial sensory loss is unknown but may be through the involvement of the dorsal trigeminothalamic tract or fibers related to the central regions of the face located medially. With upper (rostral) medullary spinal nuclear lesions, the entire trigeminal cutaneous distribution is affected. Lower medullary or upper cervical spinal nuclear lesions result in a sensory disturbance that affects the peripheral (lateral) forehead, cheek, and jaw (onionskin pattern of sensory loss). This onionskin segmental distribution reflects the rostral–caudal somatotopic arrangement of the cutaneous distribution of the spinal nucleus (e.g., perioral area—rostral; lateral face—caudal).

The spinal nucleus of the trigeminal nerve is characteristically affected in the lateral medullary (Wallenberg) syndrome, which is most often secondary to brainstem infarction due to intracranial vertebral artery occlusion [55,56]. This syndrome is described in Chapter 15. Currier et al. divided the trigeminal sensory loss in patients with Wallenberg syndrome into four clinical groups [20]:

1. In the typical syndrome, pain and temperature sensation are lost over the entire side of the face.
2. In the ventral syndrome, the first and second divisions of the trigeminal area are involved. This distribution follows damage to the ventral aspect of the descending tract and nucleus of V, where the ophthalmic and maxillary fibers travel.

3. In the dorsolateral syndrome, only the second and third divisions of the descending tract are affected.

4. In the superficial syndrome, all portions of the ipsilateral face are involved initially, but symptoms are mild and improve rapidly.

In a study of 50 patients with sensory dysfunction from lateral medullary infarction by Kim et al. [56], the findings were as follows:

1. Thirteen patients (26%) had a “classic” ipsilateral trigeminal–contralateral body and limb pattern of sensory loss with lesions affecting the most posterolateral part of the caudal-middle medulla.

2. Twelve patients had a bilateral trigeminal pattern associated with large ventrally extending lesions usually at the middle-rostral medulla.

3. Nine patients had a contralateral trigeminal pattern with lesions sparing the most posterolateral area of the medulla.

4. Ten patients had isolated body and limb sensory involvement.

5. Four patients had isolated trigeminal involvement.

6. Two patients had no sensory signs.

In these patients, trigeminal sensation was usually inhomogeneously involved among the three trigeminal divisions and was more often of an onion-skin pattern than a divisional pattern. Therefore, in this study, the so-called classic dissociated sensory pattern of lateral medullary infarction was actually uncommon, whereas sensory patterns previously thought of as atypical were relatively frequent [56]. Patients with contralateral face-arm-trunk-leg sensory loss with lateral medullary infarction often have retro-olivary lesions in the ventrolateral tegmentum with preservation of the lateral medulla [99]. The mediolateral lesion in these patients likely involves the crossed lateral spinothalamic tract and the ventral trigeminothalamic tract, corresponding to the contralateral arm, face, and leg sensory loss. The ventrolateral extension of the infarct damages the far lateral part of the spinothalamic tract, corresponding to sensory loss in the contralateral lower trunk and leg [99]. Patients with lateral medullary infarction may develop diminished facial pain and temperature sensation, sparing intraoral structures (because the rostral spinal trigeminal nuclei in the caudal half of the pons conveying intraoral sensation is spared) [39].

The sensory sequelae in patients with lateral medullary infarcts include facial numbness, burning, or coldness; these sensory symptoms are often of delayed onset (up to 6 months after the infarct) [52]. Also, rare patients with Wallenberg syndrome may develop neurotrophic ulcerations in the territory of the trigeminal nerve [27,44]. Such ulcerations have also been described following alcohol injection of the gasserian ganglion, postencephalitic parkinsonism, syringobulbia, and trigeminal rhizotomy [27,44].

Lesions affecting the mesencephalic nucleus of the trigeminal nerve cause no apparent neurologic signs and symptoms, except perhaps depression of the ipsilateral jaw jerk (masseter reflex).

**Lesions Affecting the Preganglionic Trigeminal Nerve Roots**

In its cisternal course, the preganglionic trigeminal nerve root may be damaged by tumor (meningioma, schwannoma, metastasis, nasopharyngeal carcinoma), infection (granulomatous, infectious, or carcinomatous meningitis), trauma, or aneurysm. Preganglionic trigeminal nerve involvement is suggested by the involvement of the neighboring cranial nerves (especially cranial nerves VI, VII, and VIII). Trigeminal damage is manifested by ipsilateral facial pain, paresthesias, numbness, and sensory loss. The corneal reflex is depressed and a trigeminal motor paresis may occur. An idiopathic, isolated, self-limited trigeminal sensory neuropathy with transient abnormalities on magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) has been described [82]. Some patients with “idiopathic” trigeminal neuralgia have enhancement of the cisternal segment of the trigeminal nerve on MRI studies [90]. This enhancement usually resolves if the pain resolves.

The trigeminal roots may be involved by extensive pathologic processes (usually acoustic neuroma or meningioma) located in the cerebellopontine angle. Ipsilateral facial pain, paresthesias, sensory loss, masticatory paresis, and a depressed corneal reflex are then associated with ipsilateral tinnitus, deafness, and vertigo (due to involvement of cranial nerve VIII). Facial nerve paralysis, ipsilateral ataxia, and nystagmus (due to involvement of the cerebellar peduncles and cerebellum), ipsilateral lateral rectus paralysis (due to abducens nerve involvement), and, rarely, affection of cranial nerves IX through XII may also occur.

**Trigeminal neuralgia (tic douloureux, Fothergill’s disease)** refers to a distinctive syndrome of sudden, excruciating, lancinating, paroxysmal, and usually unilateral pains in the distribution of one or more of the divisions (often the maxillary or mandibular) of the trigeminal nerve [35]. This syndrome is more common with advancing age, affects women more often than men, and affects the right side more than the left. It is exceedingly rare for a patient to have
bilateral trigeminal neuralgia during the same period of time, except in cases of multiple sclerosis. Typically, the paroxysms of pain are brief, usually lasting less than a minute. In severe cases, the pain may recur several times a day. The attacks are most frequent during the day, but they may awaken the patient at night. The painful paroxysms are often triggered by non-nociceptive facial stimulation and are often associated with facial contortions. Pain arising from the maxillary division (V2) is often referred to the upper lip, nose, and cheek. Pain originating in the mandibular division (V3) is often referred to the lower lip. Tic pain confined to the ophthalmic division (V1) is distinctly uncommon. Although often called idopathic, this painful facial syndrome may be seen with pathology affecting the brainstem, pre-ganglionic root, gasserian ganglion, and peripheral trigeminal nerve [24]. Many cases are probably due to compression or irritation of the entry zone of the trigeminal nerve root (e.g., by a multiple sclerosis plaque, brainstem infarction, cerebellopontine angle tumor, cavernous malformation, or an aberrant blood vessel, most frequently the superior cerebellar artery) [23,36,43,49,54,67,85]. Among 2,972 patients with trigeminal neuralgia in one series, 296 had tumors causing the facial pain [13]. The patients with tumors causing trigeminal neuralgia were younger than the patients with idiopathic pain, but gender and pain distributions were similar. Meningiomas and posterior fossa tumors were the most common tumors causing trigeminal pain [13]. Distortion of the trigeminal sensory root secondary to brainstem displacement may cause trigeminal neuralgia in patients with Chiari malformation or basilar invagination (e.g., due to osteogenesis imperfecta) [74, 79]. However, a patient with a Chiari’s type I malformation presented with trigeminal neuralgia thought to be because of compression of the trigeminal nucleus [83]. Trigeminal neuralgia owing to pontine infarction, with the lesion transecting the central trigeminal pathways, has also been described [76]. In another case, trigeminal neuralgia was due to pontine infarct affecting the intramedullary portion of the left trigeminal nerve [47].

In some patients with multiple sclerosis, trigeminal neuralgia paroxysms may be triggered by auditory stimuli [43]. Lesions in these patients were in the pons affecting the ipsilateral lateral lemniscus and trigeminal pathway. The lateral spread of the impulse within the demyelinating pontine lesion is the likely explanation for this phenomenon.

Occasionally, patients who are destined eventually to develop trigeminal neuralgia may have prodromal pain of toothache or sinusitis character lasting up to several hours (pretrigeminal neuralgia) [31]. This pain may be triggered by jaw movements or by drinking hot or cold liquids; typical trigeminal neuralgia then develops days (or even years) later in the same distribution.

Lesions Affecting the Gasserian Ganglion

Lesions of the middle cranial fossa (e.g., tumor, herpes zoster, sarcoidosis, syphilis, tuberculosis, arachnoiditis, trauma, abscess) may directly damage the gasserian ganglion in Meckel’s cave [19]. Pain, often severe and paroxysmal, is the most characteristic finding and may be hemifacial or involve only select divisions of the trigeminal nerve (especially the maxillary and mandibular divisions). Paresthesias and numbness may also occur, often starting close to the midline on the upper lip and chin and progressing laterally to involve the anterior ear. Sensory loss occurs in the division or divisions affected, and unilateral pterygoid and masseter paresis may occur. Other cranial nerves (especially the abducens nerve) may also be affected. Vascular compromise of the ganglion, causing isolated facial numbness, has been described with a spontaneous dural external carotid-cavernous sinus fistula [80]. Multiple cranial neuropathies, including variable affection of the trigeminal divisions, may occur with primary amyloidosis [98], and bilateral trigeminal neuropathies associated with bilateral abducens nerve palsies have been described with Tangier disease [91].

A unilateral or bilateral trigeminal sensory neuropathy may be seen with Sjögren’s syndrome, rheumatoid arthritis, systemic sclerosis, mixed connective tissue disease, systemic lupus erythematosus, Churg–Strauss syndrome, and dermatomyositis [29,42,60,89]. Facial numbness with or without paresthesias, often associated with facial pain, is most often seen in a maxillary distribution. Occasionally, symptoms are bilateral. The trigeminal symptoms develop before symptoms of the connective tissue disease in 7% and concurrent with the symptoms of connective tissue disease in 47% of the patients [42]. Numbness, often associated with facial pain, is most often noted in a maxillary distribution; oropharyngeal involvement may be prominent, and occasionally symptoms may be bilateral. Trigeminal sensory neuropathy may be distinguished from other conditions associated with facial numbness by its sparing of the muscles of mastication, frequent bilaterality, occasional disregard for trigeminal boundaries, and negative neuroimaging studies. Half of the patients complain of altered or absent taste, but when tested, primary gustatory sensibility is present. The lesion is suspected to involve the trigeminal ganglion or proximal part of the main trigeminal divisions and is perhaps related to the capillaries of the trigeminal...
ganglion being more permeable than the brain capillaries (blood–brain barrier) to abnormal proteins [60].

Trigeminal injury may occur with penetrating or blunt head trauma [50]. For example, a blow to the auriculotemporal area may rarely cause an isolated, complete sensory and motor trigeminal neuropathy [87].

Gradenigo’s Paratrigeminal Syndrome

This syndrome is composed of two essential components: unilateral oculosympathetic paresis and evidence of trigeminal involvement on the same side [69]. The former consists of miosis and ptosis but differs from the typical Horner syndrome in that facial anhidrosis is absent because the sudomotor fibers to the face that travel extracranially with the external carotid artery are spared. The unilateral head, facial, or retro-orbital pain related to trigeminal dysfunction may be associated with evidence of involvement of other cranial nerves (e.g., cranial nerves IV and VI). This syndrome is usually due to lesions in the middle cranial fossa, especially in the region between the trigeminal ganglion and the internal carotid artery, near the petrous apex. It may also be caused by lesions of the gasserian ganglion. The usual etiologies include tumor, aneurysm, trauma, and infection (e.g., Lyme disease) [71].

The Superior Orbital Fissure Syndrome

The abducens, trochlear, and oculomotor nerves as well as the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve pass through the superior orbital fissure. Therefore, lesions at the superior orbital fissure (e.g., tumor, trauma, aneurysm, infection) may cause complete (external and internal) ophthalmoplegia associated with pain, paresthesias, and sensory loss in the ophthalmic cutaneous distribution. Occasionally, oculosympathetic paresis (without anhidrosis) may occur because of the involvement of the sympathetic fibers. Exophthalmos, due to blockade of the ophthalmic veins, and blindness, due to extension of the pathologic process to involve the optic canal, may also occur.

Except for the occasional instance of involvement of the maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve in the cavernous sinus syndrome, the superior orbital fissure syndrome and the cavernous sinus syndrome usually cannot be differentiated clinically without the use of neuroradiologic procedures.

Lesions Affecting the Peripheral Branches of the Trigeminal Nerve

The ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve may be damaged in the middle cranial fossa, at the temporal bone apex, at the lateral wall of the cavernous sinus, in the superior orbital fissure, or distally in the face. Localization of ophthalmic branch lesions in the former regions is made by associated cranial nerve findings, whereas very distal (e.g., facial) lesions result in sensory disturbances that are confined to the cutaneous supply of the ophthalmic division or its branches (e.g., the nasociliary, frontal, and lacrimal nerves) [100]. Some degree of corneal hypesthesia may occur in 45% of patients with diabetes [7] and, indeed, bilateral corneal erosions and complete corneal anesthesia may be the presenting feature of diabetic neuropathy [21].

The maxillary division of the trigeminal nerve may be damaged at the lower lateral wall of the cavernous sinus, at the foramen rotundum, in the pterygopalatine fossa, in the floor of the orbit, at the infraorbital foramen, or in the face. Numbness or discomfort in a maxillary distribution may be the initial presentation of a nasopharyngeal tumor [93], as these tumors often arise in the lateral nasopharyngeal wall.
(fossa of Rosenmüller) and extend through the fora-
men lacerum to involve the region of the middle cra-
nial fossa and cavernous sinus. Lesions affecting this
nerve in the cavernous sinus usually affect other cra-
nial nerves as well. More distal lesions (e.g., infraor-
bital nerve damage secondary to maxillary fracture)
result in sensory disturbances that are confined to the
cutaneous supply of the maxillary nerve. Lesions in the
infraorbital foramen may cause the numb cheek
syndrome [11,100], in which numbness involves one
cheek and the upper lip in an infraorbital nerve distri-
bution. The hypesthesia in this syndrome may also
involve the medial and lateral upper incisors and
canine teeth and adjacent gingiva but spare more pos-
terior teeth and gums (e.g., the molar and premolar
teeth and gums that are innervated by the posterior
and middle superior alveolar nerves). In two-thirds of
patients, the numb cheek syndrome heralded recur-
Because of the proximity of distal branches of the
facial nerve to the infraorbital nerve, lesions of the
infraorbital foramen may cause the numb cheek
syndrome of isolated mental neuropathy (the numb
cheek–limp lower lid syndrome) [8]. Infraorbital nerve-distribution pain
may also be a complication of laser in situ ker-
atomileisis, probably because of manipulation of the
eyelid speculum causing nerve injury [66].

Musicians who play brass instruments (trumpet,
French horn, trombone, tuba) exert force on the lip
with the mouthpiece of the instrument. This pres-
sure may injure the anterior superior alveolar nerve
resulting in upper lip numbness and pain (trumpet
player’s neuropathy) [33,61].

The mandibular division of the trigeminal nerve
may be damaged in the foramen ovale, in the zygo-
matic fossa, or in the face. Lesions affecting these
regions result in sensory disturbances confined to the
cutaneous supply of the mandibular division associ-
ated with ipsilateral masticatory paralysis. A syn-
drome of isolated mental neuropathy (the syndrome
of the numb chin or Roger’s sign) [1,4,10,25,34,
46,63,100] consists of pain, swelling, and numbness
in the jaw (lower lip, chin, and mucous membrane
on the inside of the lip). This syndrome is usually
seen in patients with systemic cancer (especially lympho-
phoreticular neoplasms and carcinoma of the breast
and lung) and may be due to compression of the men-
tal or the inferior alveolar nerves by metastases
to the jaw [10,63,81], intracranial involvement of the
mandibular nerve by base-of-skull lesions [40,41],
leptomeningeal seeding [84], or neoplastic per-
ineural infiltration of the mental nerve [58]. A numb
chin, due to inferior alveolar nerve damage, may
herald a relapse of multiple myeloma [68] or be the
presenting sign of Burkitt’s lymphoma in human immuno-
deficiency virus infection [6]. Proximal ver-
sus distal origin of the syndrome depends on the
presence or absence of any other cranial nerve (e.g.,
cranial nerve VI or VII) involvement; with a prox-
imal lesion, involvement of other cranial nerves or
signs related to leptomeningeal seeding may be
expected rather than the isolated finding of hypo-
esthetic chin associated with a distal lesion [65]. The
pattern of oral numbness may also help differentiate
between distal and proximal involvement of the
trigeminal system [10]. The incisive nerve, which
continues in the inferior alveolar canal beyond the
mental foramen, innervates the incisor, canine, and
bicuspide teeth, and their numbness probably indi-
cates distal involvement of the mandibular nerve;
on the other hand, lesions within the central ner-
vous system may produce dissociation of sensory
modalities and may spare dental sensation [39]. The
estimated frequency of the numb chin syndrome in
breast cancer is approximately 4% and is usually
associated with a poor prognosis [46]. Therefore,
patients who develop a nontraumatic mental neu-
ropathy should undergo a careful search for malign-
nancy, and chin numbness that occurs in a patient
known to have cancer may indicate relapse and
metastasis. Another study found that the numb chin
syndrome was most often due to dental causes,
including following dental anesthesia or as a com-
plication of a dental procedure, pressure from ill-fit-
ting dentures in an edentulous atrophic mandible in
an elderly patient, infection of the root of a tooth,
acute or chronic osteomyelitis of the mandible, or
odontogenic or nonodontogenic tumors or cysts of
the mandible [4]. The numb chin syndrome has
also been described as the first sign of giant cell
arteritis [37].

In a retrospective evaluation of 42 patients with
cancer and numb chin syndrome, breast cancer
comprised 64% of the primary tumors, and lympho-
proliferative neoplasms comprised 14% [63]. Fifty
percent of the patients had mandibular metastases,
14% had base-of-skull bone lesions, and 22% had lep-
tomeningeal seeding. The numb chin syndrome was
a late manifestation of malignancy, associated with
disease progression in 67% of the patients or herald-
ning a relapse, which was often confined to the
leptomeninges, in 31%. Median survival after its
diagnosis was 5 months when due to bone metastases
and 12 months if associated with leptomeningeal
seeding [63]. Bilateral numb chin syndrome has
been described as the initial symptom of Burkitt’s
cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia; postmortem
examination revealed direct infiltration of the
mandibular nerves by leukemic cells [58]. A burning
sensation of the lower lip followed later by numbness
may also occur with sickle cell disease, probably because of infarction of the inferior alveolar nerve or the mental nerve in its canal [30].

The peripheral branches of the trigeminal nerve are most often damaged in isolation by tumors or by fractures of the facial bones or skull. Subacute facial numbness may be the heralding symptom of an expanding tumor that involves the trigeminal nerve fibers [57]. Three patients have been described who developed subacute facial numbness as the heralding symptom of malignancy: an isolated mental neuropathy as a result of metastatic bone destruction from a renal cell carcinoma, a sensorimotor trigeminal neuropathy caused by direct compression of the semilunar ganglion by a cavernous hemangioma of Meckel’s cave, and facial numbness as the presenting manifestation of a primary brainstem lymphoma. Cutaneous carcinomas of the face (e.g., squamous cell carcinoma, basal cell carcinoma) and some nasopharyngeal carcinomas may present with facial dysesthesias in the distribution of any branch of the trigeminal nerve [96]. These reports demonstrate that it is difficult, initially, to differentiate a “benign” trigeminal neuropathy from serious conditions associated with a poor prognosis.

Tongue numbness (unilateral or bilateral), often of sudden onset, may be seen in temporal arteritis [12]. It is likely that ischemia of the brainstem or lingual nerve is responsible. Also, tongue numbness may be part of the neck-tongue syndrome, in which sudden turning of the head results in pain in the upper neck and occiput accompanied by numbness of the ipsilateral half of the tongue [59,73]. This syndrome is thought to be because of irritation of the second cervical dorsal root, which carries proprioceptive fibers from the tongue through the hypoglossal nerve, and its communications with the second root. Lingual pseudoathetosis may occur with the neck-tongue syndrome, presumably because of lingual deafferentation [73].

Periodic hemilingual numbness may occur in attacks associated with simultaneous submandibular swelling and transient profuse salivation at the termination of the event [86]. This periodic numbness is presumably due to intermittent compression of the lingual nerve due to sialolithiasis.

Numbness of half of the tongue may also occur with lingual nerve trauma [70] and with trigeminal sensory neuropathy related to collagen vascular diseases [60] (see preceding text). Lingual neuropathy may result in hemilingual sensory loss, pain, dysesthesia, paresthesia, and dysgeusia [38]. Lingual neuropathy may follow lower wisdom teeth extraction and other dental procedures, surgery of the mandibular ramus, mandibular block anesthesia, endotracheal intubation, or temporomandibular joint disc displacement [38,62]. The lingual nerve may also be entrapped in the lateral pterygoid muscle [62]. Bilateral anterior lingual hypoglossia and hypesthesia has been described following a dental procedure [88]. In this case, branches of the lingual nerve were damaged, as were the chorda tympani branches of the facial nerves, which convey taste from the anterior two-thirds of the tongue. Ageusia accompanied by numbness of both sides of the anterior tongue and perioral region (the latter due to trigeminal dysfunction confined to the lingual branches) may be the initial manifestation of Guillain-Barré syndrome [16].

Patients may rarely develop neuromyotonia of the floor of the mouth after irradiation of the motor branch (V3) of the trigeminal nerve [26,64]. The neuromyotonia manifests as episodic or sustained muscle contraction due to peripheral nerve dysfunction. The episodic involuntary contraction may also affect the lower facial and masticatory (masseter) muscles [64].

Jaw Drop

Preferential weakness of the jaw-closure muscles (temporalis and masseter muscles) with preservation of jaw-opening muscles (pterygoid muscles), when severe, causes the jaw to hang open or be “dropped.” Patients have fatigue with chewing and the need to manually support the jaw. This neurologic sign has been most often described in myasthenia gravis but may also occur in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS) or myotonic dystrophy [95]. In ALS, jaw drop is rarely an early feature; rather, the tongue muscles are among the earliest and most severely involved, suggesting that the hypoglossal motor nerve cells are particularly susceptible in ALS. Some patients with Kennedy’s disease may present with jaw drop or isolated jaw-closure weakness [95]. Kennedy’s disease, or spinal and bulbar muscular atrophy, is an inherited X-linked degenerative disease of sensory and motor neurons caused by a trinucleotide (CAG) repeat expansion in the first exon of the androgen receptor gene. The distinguishing clinical features of the disease include slowly progressive proximal greater than distal limb weakness, bulbar weakness involving primarily facial and tongue muscles, perioral fasciculations, sensory involvement, elevated creatine kinase level, and signs of androgen insensitivity (gynecomastia and testicular atrophy) [95].

References


Localization in Clinical Neurology


Anatomy of Cranial Nerve VII (Facial Nerve)

Cranial nerve VII (the facial nerve) (Fig. 10.1) is a mixed nerve with both motor and sensory components. Fibers from the motor division supply the facial mimetic musculature, the stapedius, the stylohyoid, and the posterior belly of the digastric [4,33]. In addition, sensation of taste from the anterior two-thirds of the tongue and parasympathetic fibers is carried in a minor root called the nervus intermedius (of Wrisberg).

Motor Division

Fibers of the motor division arise from the motor facial nucleus, which lies in the reticular formation of the caudal pontine tegmentum, dorsal to the superior olive, medial to the nucleus of the spinal tract of cranial nerve V (trigeminal nerve), and anterolateral to the nucleus of cranial nerve VI (abducens nerve). The facial nucleus is made up of four separate longitudinally oriented cell groups (subnuclei) that supply specific muscle groups [39]: (a) the dorsomedial group to the auricular and occipital muscles, (b) the intermediate group to the frontalis and corrugator muscles, (c) the ventromedial group to the platysma, and (d) the lateral group to the buccinator and buccolabial muscles. The orbicularis oculi motor neurons are localized to a cap or cluster in the dorsolateral margin of the dorsal part of the facial nucleus. A different somatotopic organization, however, has been proposed, with facial motor neurons innervating the lower facial muscles primarily found in the lateral part of the nucleus, those supplying the upper facial muscles found in the dorsal part of the nucleus, and those innervating the platysma and posterior auricular muscles found in the medial part of the nucleus [107]. The intrapontine roots arise dorsally from the motor nucleus and run rostrally and dorsally (the ascending intrapontine root) to the level of the nucleus of cranial nerve VI. The root then sweeps over the dorsal surface of the abducens nucleus (as the genu of the facial nerve) and then passes ventrolaterally and caudally through the pons to emerge on the lateral aspect of the brainstem.

The supranuclear control of facial movements occurs through corticobulbar fibers originating from the lower third of the precentral gyrus. These fibers course through the corona radiata, the genu of the internal capsule, and the medial portion of the cerebral peduncle to reach the pons. In the pons most fibers decussate, ending in the facial motor nucleus of the contralateral side. The ventral part of the facial nucleus, which innervates the lower two-thirds of the face, has a predominantly crossed supranuclear control. With supranuclear lesions, the dorsal portion, which supplies the upper third of the face, has been thought to be spared because it has bilateral supranuclear control. Others have proposed that descending corticofacial fibers innervate the lower facial motor nuclear region bilaterally, although with contralateral predominance, and that the upper facial motor nuclear region receives scant direct cortical innervation from either side of the brain [107].

This schema of supranuclear facial muscle control holds true for voluntary facial movements. Emotional involuntary movements and voluntary facial movements may be clinically dissociated, and therefore, a separate supranuclear pathway probably exists for the control of involuntary movements. Spontaneous smiling, but not the voluntary drawing of the corners of the mouth to say “cheese,” is restricted in case of lesions of the contralateral striatum, globus pallidus, hypothalamus, and thalamus. Fibers mediating emotional facial movements do not descend in the internal capsule in their course to the facial motor nuclei. The right cerebral hemisphere is also involved in controlling the supranuclear emotional facial movement and is “dominant” for the expression of facial emotion [30].

Nervus Intermedius (of Wrisberg)

The nervus intermedius is the sensory and parasympathetic division of the facial nerve. It carries preganglionic parasympathetic fibers to the submaxillary ganglion (postganglionic fibers go to the submandibular and sublingual glands) and the pterygopalatine or sphenopalatine ganglion (postganglionic fibers go to the lacrimal, palatal, and nasal glands). The nervus intermedius also receives sensory fibers from the geniculate ganglion, which receives fibers that carry the sensation of taste from the anterior two-thirds of the tongue and also receives afferents from the mucosa of the pharynx, nose, and palate and from the
Tears are produced by the lacrimal glands (reflex tear secretion), the accessory lacrimal glands of Krause and Wolfring (basal tear secretion), and the goblet cells of the conjunctiva [126]. Preganglionic parasympathetic neurons responsible for lacrimal secretion arise from the lacrimal nucleus of the pons. Their axons travel in the nervus intermedius, which passes through the cistern of the cerebellopontine angle to join the facial nerve; this nerve enters the internal auditory meatus within the petrous pyramid of the temporal bone. Within the petrous bone, the axons destined for the lacrimal gland course through the geniculate ganglion without synapsing and then separate from the facial nerve to emerge from the temporal bone in the floor of the middle fossa as the greater superficial petrosal nerve. The greater superficial petrosal nerve passes under the gasserian ganglion and enters the vidian canal at the anterior end of the foramen lacerum, where it joins the deep petrosal nerve from the carotid sympathetic plexus to

![FIG. 10.1. Schematic diagram of cranial nerve VII (facial nerve).](image-url)
The motor function of the facial nerve is assessed by facial inspection and tests of facial mimetic muscles. The American Academy of Otolaryngology—Head and Neck Surgery adopted the House-Brackmann six-point subjective grading system (Table 10.1) as its standard [53,97,207].

**Cranial Nerve VII Function**

Facial paralysis can be partial or complete. Diagnosis requires identification of the involved side, underlying etiology, and clinical grading. Many systems for reporting grading of facial function have been proposed. The American Academy of Otolaryngology—Head and Neck Surgery adopted the House-Brackmann six-point subjective grading system (Table 10.1) as its standard [53,97,207].

**Motor Function**

The motor functions of the innervated facial muscles are assessed by facial inspection and tests of facial...
It must be kept in mind that the facial nerve plays a role in the oropharyngeal phase of deglutition through the buccinator, posterior belly of digastric, perioral, and stylohyoid muscles. Weakness of the stapedius muscle may be detected by the subjective complaint of hyperacusis, especially for low tones that sound louder on the affected side (because the stapedius muscle no longer contracts adequately to tighten the ossicular chain and protect the inner ear from loud noises).

**Sensory Function**

The sensory examination of cranial nerve VII essentially consists of evaluation of taste on the anterior two-thirds of the tongue. Each half of the protruded tongue is tested with the four fundamental tastes (sweet, sour, salty, and bitter) and asymmetries documented.

**Reflex Function**

The facial nerve provides the efferent supply to several reflexes. The most important of the facial reflexes are the corneal and palpebral reflexes, which are depressed on the side of a lower motor neuron–type facial nerve lesion. Consensual responses are spared. Orbicularis oculi (glabellar), orbicularis oris, and palpebral reflexes may also be depressed with infranuclear lesions.

**Parasympathetic Function**

Infranuclear facial nerve lesions may result in increased or impaired lacrimation that may be noted subjectively by the patient and can be tested by hanging litmus or filter paper on each lower lid (Schirmer’s test). Excessive salivation may also be noted with infranuclear lesions. Otherwise, facial parasympathetic function is difficult to test objectively at the bedside.

**Localization of Lesions Affecting Cranial Nerve VII**

**Supranuclear Lesions**

(Central Facial Palsy)

In supranuclear corticobulbar lesions, there is contralateral paresis of the lower portion of the face with relative sparing of upper facial function because the supranuclear control of the upper face has both ipsilateral and contralateral components, whereas the lower face has mainly contralateral supranuclear connections. The muscles around the mouth are especially affected, but there is unusual finding in Bell’s palsy [46]. It must be kept in mind that the facial nerve plays a role in the oropharyngeal phase of deglutition through the buccinator, posterior belly of digastric, perioral, and stylohyoid muscles. Weakness of the stapedius muscle may be detected by the subjective complaint of hyperacusis, especially for low tones that sound louder on the affected side (because the stapedius muscle no longer contracts adequately to tighten the ossicular chain and protect the inner ear from loud noises).
occasional paresis of the lower or even the upper orbicularis oculi. An alternate explanation for the predominance of lower facial weakness in upper motor neuron facial palsy is that descending corticofacial fibers innervate the lower facial motor nuclei bilaterally, although with contralateral predominance, whereas upper facial motor nuclear regions receive scant direct cortical innervation from either side of the brain. Therefore, upper facial movements are relatively preserved in upper motor neuron palsy because their motor neurons receive little direct cortical input, whereas lower facial muscles are more severely affected because their motor neurons normally depend on significant cortical innervation.

Occasionally, there may be a dissociation between voluntary facial movements (volitional facial palsy) and emotional facial movements (emotional or mimetic facial palsy). It is not known which pathways mediate mimetic innervation of facial muscles. Volitional facial paresis without emotional paresis (e.g., one side of the orbicularis oris may be paretic when the patient speaks, or he or she may be unable to retract the angle of the mouth on command but does so when spontaneously laughing or crying) is more common than emotional facial paresis and may occur with corticobulbar interruption from lesions of the lower precentral gyrus, internal capsule, cerebral peduncle, or upper pons (above the facial nucleus). The reverse dissociation, emotional or mimetic facial paresis without volitional facial paresis, occurs with frontal lobe lesions anterior to the precentral gyrus, especially if they affect the right cerebral hemisphere. Unilateral emotional facial paresis has also been described with lesions of the contralateral supplementary motor area, the frontal lobe white matter, the mesial temporal lobe and insula, the striatocapsular territory, the anterolateral thalamus and insula, the thalamus and subthalamus, the posterior thalamus, the posterior thalamus and operculum, and the dorsal midbrain, as well as in postencephalitic parkinsonism.

Isolated voluntary facial paresis due to a lacunar infarct affecting the contralateral mediodorsal midbrain base of the pons has been described. This case demonstrates that fibers conveying voluntary orofacial activation descend mediodorsally at the level of the middle pons and that fibers conveying emotional activation may be assumed to converge below this level. The lesion spares corticolingual and corticospinal connections but involves supranuclear corticofacial tract fibers.

Bilateral upper motor neuron lesions result in facial diplegia associated with other manifestations of pseudobulbar palsy (e.g., spastic tongue, dysphagia, uninhibited laughter, and crying).

**Nuclear and Fascicular Lesions (Pontine Lesions)**

Lesions within the pons may affect either the nucleus of the facial nerve or its intrapontine axons (fascicles). These lesions usually affect neighboring structures, such as the abducens fascicle or nucleus (lateral rectus paralysis), the paramedian pontine reticular formation (PPRF) (paralysis of conjugate gaze to the ipsilateral side), the corticospinal tract (contralateral hemiplegia), and occasionally the spinal tract and nucleus of the trigeminal nerve and the spinothalamic tract (ipsilateral facial and contralateral body sensory disturbances). The association of involvement of these intraparenchymal structures with a facial palsy indicates a pontine lesion.

Nuclear and fascicular lesions of the facial nerve result in a peripheral type of facial nerve palsy. With complete lesions, there is unilateral paralysis of all mimetic facial muscles, with loss of frontal wrinkling and facial asymmetry at rest and with motion. The patient cannot frown or raise the eyebrow, close the eye, retract the angle of the mouth or purse the lips, puff out the cheek, or tighten the chin on the affected side. With mild peripheral affection, only blink asymmetry (incomplete blink on the side of the paresis) may be evident. On attempting to close the eye on the affected side, the eyeball deviates up and slightly outward (Bell’s phenomenon) owing to relaxation of the inferior rectus and contraction of the superior rectus. Bell’s phenomenon is a normal response that becomes visible because of the paralysis of eye closure; this phenomenon may not be present in 8% to 10% of healthy individuals, who instead show no movement or downward eye movements with forced eye closure. The cheek puffs out during respiration, and food tends to accumulate between the teeth and the cheek on the affected side owing to buccinator paralysis. This peripheral type of facial paralysis also results in depressed corneal and palpebral reflexes on the affected side with intact consensual responses and ipsilateral hyperacusis.

**MILLARD-GUBLER SYNDROME**

Millard-Gubler syndrome is caused by a lesion located in the ventral pons that destroys the fascicles of the facial and abducens nerves and the corticospinal tract. It is characterized by the following signs:

1. Ipsilateral peripheral-type facial paralysis
2. Ipsilateral lateral rectus paralysis (diplopia with failure to abduct the ipsilateral eye)
3. Contralateral hemiplegia
Lesions Affecting the Meatal (Canal) Segment of the Facial Nerve in the Temporal Bone

In the temporal bone, the facial nerve is closely associated with the auditory nerve; therefore, lesions cause clinical findings similar to those seen with the cerebellopontine angle syndrome: unilateral facial motor paralysis, impairment of taste over the ipsilateral anterior two-thirds of the tongue, impaired lacrimation, and deafness (rather than hyperacusis). This syndrome is most often caused by temporal bone fracture and primary or secondary tumors.

Lesions Affecting the Facial Nerve Within the Facial Canal Distal to the Meatal Segment but Proximal to the Departure of the Nerve to the Stapedius Muscle

Lesions within the facial canal distal to the meatal segment but proximal to the departure of the nerve to the stapedius muscle involve the motor division of the facial nerve and the nervus intermedius. There is no deafness or involvement of other cranial nerves. The lesions result in ipsilateral facial motor paralysis, loss of taste over the anterior two-thirds of the tongue, and hyperacusis. If the lesion is proximal to the greater superficial petrosal nerve, lacrimation is impaired; if it is distal to this branch, lacrimation is normal. When the geniculate ganglion is injured, pain may occur in the region of the eardrum. Involvement of the geniculate ganglion by reactivation of latent varicella zoster virus (VZV) results in facial paralysis, hyperacusis, and loss of taste associated with geniculate neuralgia and herpetic vesicles on the eardrum, external auditory meatus, or palate (Ramsay Hunt syndrome). Hyperemia of the concha or helix occurs in some patients. A variable degree of vestibulocochlear dysfunction occurs in approximately 20% of patients. Sometimes, facial paralysis develops without herpetic eruption, a condition known as zoster sine herpete.

Lesions Affecting the Facial Nerve Within the Facial Canal Between the Departure of the Nerve to the Stapedius and the Departure of the Chorda Tympani

Lesions within the facial canal between the departure of the nerve to the stapedius and the departure of the chorda tympani cause facial motor paralysis with loss of taste on the anterior two-thirds of the tongue. Because the lesion is distal to the nerve to the stapedius, hearing is spared (no hyperacusis).

FOVILLE SYNDROME

Foville syndrome is caused by a lesion located in the pontine tegmentum that destroys the fascicle of the facial nerve, the PPRF, and the corticospinal tract. It is characterized by the following signs:
1. Ipsilateral peripheral-type facial paralysis
2. Paralysis of conjugate gaze to the side of the lesion
3. Contralateral hemiplegia

EIGHT-AND-A-HALF SYNDROME

Eight-and-a-half syndrome is caused by a lesion in the dorsal tegmentum of the caudal pons involving the PPRF or abducens nucleus and the medial longitudinal fasciculus (MLF), as well as the nucleus and fasciculus of the facial nerve [65]. It is characterized by the following signs:
1. Internuclear ophthalmoplegia (INO) in addition to horizontal gaze palsy (one-and-a-half syndrome)
2. Ipsilateral lower motor neuron-type facial palsy

ISOLATED PERIPHERAL FACIAL AND ABDUCENS NERVE PALSY

Isolated peripheral facial and abducens nerve palsy is a syndrome caused by a discrete lesion in the caudal tegmental pons involving the facial nerve fascicle (or nucleus) and the abducens nerve fascicle [170]. It is characterized by the following signs:
1. Peripheral-type facial palsy
2. Ipsilateral abduction weakness
3. No other neurologic abnormalities

Posterior Fossa Lesions
(Cerebellopontine Angle Lesions)

In the posterior fossa, the motor division of the facial nerve is in close proximity to the nervus intermedius of Wrisberg and the eighth cranial nerve. Lesions in this location (e.g., acoustic neuroma, meningioma) result in the following:
1. Ipsilateral peripheral-type facial nerve paralysis (including loss of taste over the ipsilateral anterior two-thirds of the tongue) without hyperacusis (caused by associated eighth cranial nerve affection)
2. Ipsilateral tinnitus, deafness, and vertigo

Cerebellopontine angle lesions frequently extend to involve other neighboring structures, including the pons (nystagmus or ipsilateral gaze palsy), the cerebellar peduncles and cerebellum (ipsilateral ataxia), the trigeminal nerve (ipsilateral facial pain and sensory changes), and the abducens nerve (ipsilateral lateral rectus paralysis). Affection of cranial nerves IX through XII may rarely occur.
Cranial Nerve VII (The Facial Nerve)

Lesions Affecting the Facial Nerve in the Facial Canal Distal to the Departure of the Chorda Tympani

Lesions in the facial canal distal to the departure of the chorda tympani (e.g., lesions at the stylomastoid foramen) cause facial motor paralysis without associated hyperacusis or loss of taste.

Lesions Distal to the Stylomastoid Foramen

Lesions distal to the stylomastoid foramen produce isolated facial motor paralysis. Individual motor branches of the facial nerve may be affected, thereby causing paralysis of individual facial muscles. In this location, the fibers of the facial nerve may be involved by inflammation of the retromandibular lymph nodes or by tumors or infections (e.g., sarcoidosis, infectious mononucleosis) of the parotid gland. The facial nerve or its branches are also susceptible to facial trauma (e.g., by obstetric forceps) and other surgical misadventures [129]. Other causes of peripheral facial nerve palsy are listed in Table 10.2 and include Lyme disease, leprosy, hepatitis E, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), and leukemia [23,27,49,91,92,208]. A peripheral facial nerve palsy has rarely been described in patients with inflammatory pseudotumor of the middle ear [121], or with acupuncture treatment for temporomandibular joint dysfunction [172]. A peripheral facial nerve palsy has also been reported with the lateral medullary syndrome of Wallenberg and attributed to the involvement of the facial nucleus or intraxial facial nerve fascicles resulting from the extension of the lesion in the lower pons.

A familial syndrome of hyperostosis cranialis interna may cause recurrent facial nerve palsies (cranial nerves I, II, and VIII may also be affected) [21]. This autosomal dominant disorder causes cranial neuropathies through hyperostosis and osteosclerosis of the calvaria and base of the skull. Other forms of facial paralysis that can be inherited in an autosomal dominant manner include idiopathic familial facial nerve paralysis, Melkerson-Rosenthal syndrome, Möbius syndrome, and hereditary neuropathies with liability to pressure palsies [50].

Idiopathic peripheral facial palsy (Bell’s palsy) is one of the most common conditions seen in neurologic practice, accounting for approximately 50% of the cases of peripheral facial paralysis [25,81]. Women are further at risk when pregnant [95]. The last trimester of pregnancy is considered to be a time for increased risk for the development of Bell’s palsy. Women who develop Bell’s palsy during pregnancy or puerperium should be closely monitored for preeclampsia or arterial hypertension [184]. Idiopathic bilateral facial paralysis, although unusual, is also more frequent during the last trimester of pregnancy or early puerperium [114]. The incidence of Bell’s palsy is also higher in patients with diabetes as compared with the general population. No relationship has been demonstrated between atmospheric fluctuations and Bell’s palsy [56].

Usually, unilateral, clinical, immunologic, serologic, and histopathologic findings implicate the reactivation of herpes simplex virus (HSV) within the geniculate ganglion as the major cause of Bell’s palsy [3]. Other viruses implicated in the etiology of idiopathic peripheral facial paralysis include VZV, cytomegalovirus (CMV), Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), mumps, and human herpes virus 6. Vesicles behind the ear, within the external meatus, or palate should raise a suspicion of Ramsay Hunt syndrome. An increased risk for Bell’s palsy was also reported with the administration of an intranasal inactivated influenza vaccine in Switzerland; as a result of these observations, the intranasal vaccine was withdrawn from the market [148]. Facial paralysis has been associated with influenza vaccination [47,190], hepatitis B vaccination [5], interferon α and ribavirin [19], and nasal vaccines against the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) and tuberculosis using a nontoxic mutant of Escherichia coli [124].

Weakness confined to one or two facial muscles on the same side of the face may be due to facial trauma, parotid gland neoplasm, or perineural spread of skin cancer [145].

Inflammation and edema of the facial nerve are implicated as the cause of Bell’s palsy. Histopathologic and clinical evidence suggest that the site of the lesion is within the confines of the fallopian canal, particularly at its medial end. Most patients become aware of their facial palsy after awakening. Patients often complain of acute onset of retroauricular pain, dysgeusia, hyperacusis, and decreased tearing [2,3]. Retroauricular pain usually occurs around the time of onset of facial paralysis but may precede its onset by at least 2 weeks [45]. The facial paralysis is often maximal at onset or may progress for over 24 to 48 hours. Careful otoneurologic examination is usually normal except for variable loss of function of the seventh cranial nerve. Transitory numbness of the face in one or more divisions of the trigeminal nerve is also often reported in approximately 25% of patients [2,3].

A small percentage of patients have associated dysfunction of other cranial nerves. According to Adour et al. [2,3], idiopathic facial paralysis is part of cranial polyneuritis, often involving the trigeminal, glossopharyngeal, cochleovestibular, and contralateral (clinically unaffected) facial nerves. Patients with facial paralysis may also suffer from problems with eating and drinking, and transient disturbance
TABLE 10.2  Etiologies of Peripheral Facial Nerve Palsies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metabolic</th>
<th>Trauma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes mellitus</td>
<td>Temporal bone fracture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothyroidism</td>
<td>Basal skull fractures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uremia</td>
<td>Birth trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porphyria</td>
<td>Extratemporal lacerations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Iatrogenic injury (surgery of the diseased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or congenitally malformed ear, temporomandibular joint operations)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Drug reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lidocaine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diatrizoate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Isoniazid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Interferon-α</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ribavirin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cyclosporine neurotoxicity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inactivated intranasal influenza vaccine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stevens-Johnson syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Congenital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maternal thalidomide use (Miehlke syndrome)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Möbius syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Poland’s anomaly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Miscellaneous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Guillain-Barré syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tick bite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diphtheritic neuropathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Paget’s disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Osteopetrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fibrous dysplasia of the temporal bone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Temporal bone dysplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypertension in children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypertensive hemorrhage in facial canal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Diphtheria–pertussis–tetanus vaccination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Idiopathic familial nerve palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Melkerson-Rosenthal syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hyperostosis cranialis interna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Postoperative delayed facial nerve following vestibular schwannoma surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Temporal bone arachnoid cyst</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Kawasaki syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dental block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acupuncture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inflammatory pseudotumor of the facial nerve or middle ear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hemophilus A (associated hemotympanum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lateral medullary infarction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Barotrauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>High altitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lighting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Influenza vaccination, Hepatitis B vaccination, intranasal delivery of detoxified mutants of E. coli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Idiopathic (Bell’s palsy)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

or oropharyngeal swallowing has been demonstrated electrophysiologically in approximately two-thirds of patients [181].

Patients with unilateral facial paralysis are at risk of developing corneal ulceration because of lagophthalmos. Lack of function leads to ectropion. Ensuring adequate corneal protection is the immediate ophthalmic priority. Some patients may complain of epiphora, or, conversely, of a dry eye. Bell’s palsy is a self-limiting condition. Most patients have a favorable
Facial paralysis occurs less frequently in children than in adults and presents special challenges. Most children with Bell’s palsy recover completely [194]. Partial unilateral lower lip palsy in the neonatal period may be caused by involvement of the depressor labii inferioris muscle, innervated by the marginal mandibular branch of the facial nerve. This partial paralysis may be associated with serious cardiac, skeletal, and genitourinary abnormalities [34]. A reversible form of facial paralysis has been associated with the administration of nasal continuous positive airway pressure [130]. Birth trauma resulting from sacral prominence pressure on the fetal face during labor accounts for most cases of facial nerve paresis in the newborn period [40]. Not every facial palsy is a Bell’s palsy. Misdiagnosis of the etiology of unilateral facial weakness is common. Although Bell’s palsy is still by far the most common cause encountered, secondary causes of facial nerve paralysis must be considered in the differential diagnosis of pediatric patients [186]. Facial palsy can result from congenital developmental anomalies, skull fractures, iatrogenic injuries during surgery of the diseased or congenitally malformed ear, hemotympanum associated with hemophilia A, hypertensive hemorrhage in the facial canal, osteopetrosis, and hypertension. Involvement of the facial nerve is common in the Guillain-Barré syndrome or the Fisher variant of the Guillain-Barré syndrome. Prompt diagnosis of recurrent central nervous system leukemia and lymphoma, cerebellopontine angle tumors, yolk sac tumors, and embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma of the middle ear is needed. Careful examination of the

*Prognosis.* However, some develop disabling sequelae. Patients with reactivation of VZV infection or loss of the stapedial reflex may have a poorer prognosis for full recovery. Rarely, recovery may be followed by transient or long-lasting motor dysfunction such as motor synkinesis, myokymia, blepharospasm-like activity, or hemifacial mass contractions associated with normal facial movements. In some cases, aberrant regeneration may cause involuntary tearing of the eye on the involved side (crocodile tears, Bogorad’s syndrome), or gustatory sweating (Frey’s syndrome) when parasympathetic fibers to the salivary glands reinnervate the sweat glands [197]. Recovery occurs in approximately 7% of patients with Bell’s palsy [103].

Occult parotid malignancies rarely present with acute-onset unilateral facial paralysis [162]. In highly endemic areas, Lyme disease, an arthropod-borne spirochete (*Borrelia burgdorferi*) infection known to cause erythema chronicum migrans, headaches, papilledema, cranial neuropathies, meningoencephalitis, lymhophyctic meningitis, heart block, and arthritis, may be responsible for one-fourth of cases of peripheral facial palsy. Bilateral facial involvement occurs in one-fourth to one-third of cases [24,41].

Recurrent orofacial swelling predominantly affecting the lips, face, and eyelids; unilateral or bilateral facial nerve palsy; chelitis; and fissured tongue (scrotal tongue or lingua plicata) define Melkersson-Rosenthal syndrome [64,88], which may be associated with a variety of disorders, including hyperhidrosis, acroparesthesia, migraine, retrobulbar optic neuritis, paresis of the medial rectus muscle, Crohn’s disease, and seronegative oligoarthritis [64]. The complete syndrome is present in only 25% of patients [88]. Lingua plicata and facial paralysis is seen in approximately half of the patients. Rarely, facial palsy and lingua plicata, two of the main features of the classic triad of Melkersson-Rosenthal syndrome, have been described in association with Waardenburg syndrome, a condition characterized by sensorineural hearing loss; pigmentary disturbances of the hair and iris; and other developmental defects [63]. Facial paralysis and concurrent facial swelling is also an uncommon but well-described complication of infantile cortical hyperostosis, an inflammatory condition of the skull and some of the contiguous fasciae and muscles [42]. Rarely, recurrent idiopathic facial nerve palsy is associated with episodes of opthalmoplegia and familial aggregation [120]. Bilateral facial paralysis (facial diplegia) is uncommon, occurring <1% as frequently as unilateral paralysis [109]. Bilateral involvement may be due to congenital developmental anomalies or associated with infectious, traumatic, postinfectious, granulomatous, or neoplastic processes (Table 10.3) [82, 109,187]. Developmental facial diplegia may be secondary to Möbius syndrome of bifacial paresis with abnormalities of horizontal eye movements, usually as a result of bilateral hypoplasia or aplasia of the sixth and seventh cranial nerve nuclei. Developmental facial diplegia may also be associated with Poland’s anomaly (unilateral pectoralis muscle hypoplasia with ipsilateral breast and upper limb abnormalities) [40]. Bilateral facial paralysis may also occur with collagen vascular diseases, hypovitaminosis A associated with cystic fibrosis [37], osteopetrosis, and may rarely be idiopathic (bilateral Bell’s palsies). Weakness of the inferior facial muscles should be differentiated from emotional facial paresis, characterized by weakness of the lower facial musculature evident during emotionally provoked movements but not during voluntary contractions [41]. Bilateral facial paralysis must be differentiated from other causes of facial weakness or loss of facial movements, as seen in myotonic dystrophy, myasthenia gravis, or Parkinson’s disease.

Cranial Nerve VII (The Facial Nerve)
Abnormalities of Tear Secretion

Supranuclear lesions causing pseudobulbar palsy are often associated with inappropriate spells of crying, often unaccompanied by sadness. Unilateral pontine lesions affecting the facial nucleus may affect the superior salivatory nucleus (causing decreased salivary flow) and the lacrimal nucleus (causing an associated dry eye). Lesions of the brainstem may however produce facial paresis with sparing of both taste and tearing because the motor fibers to the facial muscles are anatomically separate from the sensory-parasympathetic components [146]. The nervus intermedius is adjacent to the facial nerve and cranial nerve VIII in the cerebellopontine angle and internal auditory meatus; lesions in this area (e.g., tumors) may therefore produce a dry eye associated with ipsilateral facial paresis, loss of taste, hyperacusis, hearing loss, and vestibular symptoms. A peripheral middle ear is recommended in children with facial weakness. Middle ear tumors should be considered in the differential diagnosis of unresolved otitis media, particularly when associated with persistent ipsilateral facial paralysis. Cranial nerve palsies are common in tuberculous meningitis and in a variety of infectious and parainfectious disorders including Lyme disease, chicken pox, herpes zoster oticus (Ramsay Hunt syndrome), coxsackievirus, EBV, HIV, human herpes virus 6 infection [158], *Mycoplasma* pneumonia, Parvovirus B19 infection, cat scratch disease, acute disseminated encephalomyelitis, complications of acute and chronic otitis media or necrotizing otitis externa, and bacterial or mycobacterial mastoiditis. Facial paralysis has also been reported in children in association with Kawasaki disease and as a result of ischemic vasospasm associated with dental blocks [24,36,48,59,77,134,159,166,171,185].
facial palsy associated with ipsilateral reduction in reflex tearing usually suggests a lesion in the petrous bone, the cerebellopontine angle, or both [137]. Acoustic tumors in the internal auditory canal may cause asymptomatic deficiency of tearing on the side of the lesion, often before gross evidence of facial paresis or corneal hypesthesia [160]. Occasionally, acoustic tumors may cause excessive lacrimation (at times apparent only during meals) on the side affected by the deafness [20,160].

Lesions of the floor of the middle fossa near the gasserian ganglion (e.g., tumors, petroitis, herpes zoster of the gasserian ganglion, carotid artery aneurysm, trauma, and surgery) may injure the greater superficial petrosal nerve, impairing tear secretion [137]. Impaired tear secretion on the side of an acquired abducens nerve palsy indicates a lesion, usually extradural, in the middle cranial fossa (especially nasopharyngeal carcinoma) [137]. Lesions of the sphenopalatine ganglion (e.g., tumors of the pterygopalatine fossa) produce unilateral decreased tearing and dryness of the nasal mucosa, often associated with paresthesia or hypesthesia in the maxillary distribution of the trigeminal nerve. Unilateral reduced tear secretion in a patient with a known tumor or infection of the maxillary or sphenoid sinus indicates extension of the disease beyond the confines of the sinus [137]. Trauma or tumors, especially metastatic carcinoma, may damage the zygomatico-temporal nerve, resulting in reduced reflex tear secretion. Finally, reduced tear secretion may also occur with diffuse dystautonomias, such as the Riley-Day syndrome, acute pandysautonomia, or the Shy-Drager syndrome [137].

Abnormalities of Eyelid Closure

Volitional blinking is under precentral supranuclear cortical control (bilateral but mainly contralateral) and is mediated through the facial nerves’ control of orbicularis oculi functioning. Emotional blinking and periodic (spontaneous) blinking are probably controlled by extrapyramidal pathways originating from or conveyed through the putamen and globus pallidus, cingulate gyrus, amygdala, and thalamus. The typical spontaneous, voluntary, or reflex blink consists of a rapid down phase followed by a slower return to the open position, with down-phase velocities nearly twice as fast as up-phase velocities. The neural firing pattern underlying both the upward and downward phases of the blink are probably similar to that used in generating saccadic eye movements (see Chapter 8), with the down phase resulting from a pulse-type firing pattern and the up phase (which requires a change in final lid position) resulting from a pulse-step firing pattern. Open eyelid position is maintained by tonic activity of the levator; inhibition of the levator and simultaneous contraction of the orbicularis oculi results in a blink.

In a review of eyelid function, Schmidtke and Buttner-Ennever [179] noted that the role of the upper eyelid as the protector of the eye comprises a number of separable functions:

1. Tonic lid elevation when the eyes are open
2. Voluntary eye closure and eye opening
3. Involuntary adjustment of the eyelid to the vertical globe position, that is, lid–eye coordination
4. Periodic and reflex blinking
5. Firm eye closure in protective and expressive acts, for example, sneezing

In the first through third functions, only the levator palpebrae muscle is active, whereas in the last two functions, different parts of the orbicularis oculi muscle contract while the levator is synchronously inhibited. Therefore, in facial nerve palsy, the upper eyelid position, gentle eye closure, and lid–eye coordination are unaffected whereas blinking and firm eye closure are weak [116].

The blink rate is thought to reflect central dopaminergic activity. Therefore, decreased frequency of periodic blinking may occur with progressive supranuclear palsy and parkinsonism, but increased frequency of blinking may occur with drug-induced dyskinesias, Gilles de la Tourette syndrome, and schizophrenia [108]. In patients with parkinsonism, the timing and reciprocity of the levator and orbicularis oculi activity may be disturbed during blinking. Coactivation or tremor-like rhythmic reciprocal activity of the levator and orbicularis oculi may be present on light lid closure, whereas lid–eye coordination remains intact [126]. This suggests that, in addition to their influence on blink frequency, dopaminergic basal ganglia pathways play a role in the inhibition of the levator during blinks and eye closure [179]. Loss of spontaneous blinking has also been described in Balint’s syndrome (see Chapter 20) and is caused by bilateral parieto-occipital lesions [203].

Insufficiency of Eyelid Closure

Insufficiency of eyelid closure may be due to supranuclear lesions or lesions of the brainstem (cranial nerve VII nucleus), peripheral facial nerve, neuromuscular junction (e.g., myasthenia gravis), or muscles (e.g., myotonic dystrophy). Cortical or subcortical lesions of the precentral gyrus may cause paresis of volitional contralateral eye closure, relatively sparing the spontaneous and emotional eye closure. Acquired inability to wink (Revilliod’s sign) may be an early sign of corticobulbar disease. Nondominant frontal lobe...
lesions, or, more commonly, bilateral frontal lesions may result in compulsive eye opening [26,144]. These patients are unable to initiate bilateral voluntary eye closure despite retention of the ability to comprehend the task and the presence of intact reflex eye closure. Apraxia of lid closure has been described with Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, static encephalopathy, and progressive supranuclear palsy [76,83,104,122]. Occasionally, only one lid is affected [26,57]. Callosal damage has been postulated as a possible explanation for the observed unilateral impaired volitional eyelid closure contralateral to an anterior cerebral artery territory infarction [113]. Bilateral hemispheric or unilateral nondominant hemispheric lesions may result in motor impersistence —when the patient is requested to close the eyelids and keep them closed, he or she is unable to complete the task [74]. The eyelids close, often develop a fine tremor, and then almost immediately reopen. Failure to keep the eyelid closed may occasionally affect only the contralateral eyelid in case of unilateral hemispheric lesions and is more frequent after right-sided brain damage [57]. Motor impersistence may occur with parkinsonism [126]. Because an inability to close the eyes often turns into closing impersistence, both symptoms are likely to have a common basis [179]. Because gentle eyelid closure occurs as a result of the inhibition of the levator palpebrae muscles, disorders of voluntary lid closure are likely caused by a deficit in the cortical inhibition of levator function rather than of orbicularis oculi activation [179].

Excessive Eyelid Closure and Blepharospasm

Spasmodic contralateral eyelid closure may occur with focal seizures (frontal epileptiform focus). Excessive eyelid closure is however most often caused by blepharospasm, which consists of repeated, involuntary, bilateral contractures of the orbicularis oculi muscles that may render the patient functionally blind [86]. The clinical manifestations of blepharospasm have been associated with pathologic changes in the primary motor cortex, anterior cingulate, and secondary motor areas (premotor and supplementary motor cortices) [115]. The metabolic topography with positron emission tomography with (18) fluorodeoxyglucose [PET (18) FDG] demonstrates involvement of several cortical and subcortical areas that control blinking, including the inferior frontal lobe, caudate, thalamus, pons, and cerebellum [98,111]. Findings with functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) suggest activation of the striatum, frontal and parietal operculum, supplementary motor area, primary sensorimotor cortex, various visual areas, and cerebellum [180].

Blepharospasm is most often idiopathic (essential blepharospasm) and is considered a subtype of focal (cranial) dystonia [10,90,105]. It may occasionally be accompanied by spasmodic dysphonia or axial dystonia (e.g., torticollis) [105]. Blepharospasm may also occur with oromandibular dystonia, as in Meige syndrome (idiopathic blepharospasm–oromandibular dystonia), a condition probably related to dopaminergic preponderance in the striatum [105].

Blepharospasm has also been reported in patients with multiple sclerosis lesions of the rostral brainstem [106] and bilateral infarctions of the rostral brainstem, diencephalon, and striatum [55,110]. Asymmetric blepharospasm may also occur with left frontal cortical infarcts [201]. Bilateral transient blepharospasm can be a feature of nondominant striatal infarctions [87]. Blepharospasm may also occur with olivopontocerebellar atrophy and may be caused by a rostral brainstem lesion disrupting central dopaminergic and cholinergic pathways, resulting in the disinhibition of brainstem reflexes or denervation supersensitivity of the facial nuclear complex [102]. It may also occur as a consequence of irritable or painful ocular disease (e.g., conjunctivitis), with drug-induced tardive dyskinesia, as a postencephalitic process, or with degenerative diseases such as Parkinson's disease, Wilson's disease, Huntington's disease, progressive supranuclear palsy [101], and Hallervorden-Spatz syndrome (panthotenate kinase–associated neurodegeneration) [70,99]. Blepharospasm has also been described with retinal degeneration and familial apoceruloplasmin deficiency [142] and as a familial syndrome with dystonia and pigmentary retinopathy [52]. Rarely, blepharospasm may occur on a functional basis. Conversely, myasthenia gravis may mimic essential blepharospasm [169].

Reflex blepharospasm may occur after severe hemiplegia in patients with lesions, usually vascular, affecting predominantly the nondominant temporoparietal regions. This blepharospasm is usually limited to the nonparalyzed side and is evoked when the examiner tries to hold the eyelids open (thought to be caused by the release of inhibition of a “primitive” brainstem reflex). After right middle cerebral artery territory infarction, some patients close the ipsilateral right eye more tightly than the left eye [154]. Spontaneous eye closure remains gentle and symmetric.

Abnormal Facial Movements and Their Localization

Abnormal facial movements may be classified (Gupta S. personal communication, 1982) as follows:
blepharospasm can interfere with the ability to drive, walk, or work. Occasionally, the use of sensory tricks or **geste antagonistique** may transiently diminish the symptoms experienced by patients with blepharospasm [84].

Idiopathic blepharospasm may be associated with oromandibular dystonia, as in Meige syndrome [105]. This syndrome consists of a combination of blepharospasm and oromandibular dystonia, manifested by sustained grimacing around the mouth, jaw clenching, platysma contraction, and sustained neck flexion. This disorder may spread beyond the facial and nuchal musculature to involve one or both arms and the trunk. It is of unknown etiology, but basal ganglia dysfunction, perhaps with a dopaminergic predominance, may be involved. Brueghel syndrome is a rare dystonia of the motor component of the trigeminal nerve that typically involves involuntary opening of the mouth. Additional features include upbeat nystagmus and paroxysmal hyperpnea [80]. Orofacial dystonia has also followed therapy with bupropion and St. John’s Wort [139].

**Hemifacial Spasm**

Hemifacial spasm is a descriptive term for a unilateral, intermittent, involuntary, hyperactive dysfunction of the seventh cranial nerve most commonly due to a vascular loop compression at the root exit zone (REZ) of the facial nerve [1, 14, 71, 78, 94, 143, 204]. Hemifacial spasm is characterized by the insidious onset of painless, arrhythmic, tonic, or clonic intermittent spasms of the orbicularis oculi muscle during adulthood; these spasms gradually progress downward to involve all other muscles (especially the orbicularis oris muscle, buccinator muscle, and/or platysma) innervated by the facial nerve on the affected side [71]. Cases of atypical hemifacial spasm, characterized by spasms starting in the orbicularis oris and buccinator muscles and gradually spreading upward to involve the orbicularis oculi muscle, have been unusual [176]. The stapedius muscle may be affected (intermittent clicking is heard ipsilaterally). The contractions seen with hemifacial spasm are irregular, intermittent, usually unilateral, and exacerbated by emotional stress, anxiety, nervousness, and fatigue [202]. They are occasionally associated with pain and may persist during sleep, and ipsilateral facial weakness may develop in chronic cases, as well as in rare cases following microvascular decompression [71, 128]. When bilateral, these spasms are asynchronous and asymmetric on both sides of the face. Bilateral alternating hemifacial spasm has been described, possibly caused by multiple sclerosis [198].

Lesions causing hemifacial spasm reportedly occur anywhere, from the facial nucleus to the cranial nerve.
Facial myokymia may also occur in cases of brain lesions or abnormal activity of residual motor units. Rare instances of hemifacial spasm associated with neurogenic sinus bradycardia and syncope due to neurovascular compression by vertebral artery ectasia have been described.

**Postparalytic Spasm and Synkinesis Movements**

After recovery from peripheral facial nerve paralysis (e.g., Bell’s palsy), various phenomena may occur. These include postparalytic hemifacial spasm, the “crocodile tears” phenomenon (eating provokes lacrimation), facial contractures, and various synkinesias (abnormal synchronization of the movement of different muscles that normally do not contract together), such as contraction around the mouth with eye blinking and eyelid closure on full opening of the mouth or movement of the jaw laterally (Marin-Amat syndrome or “inverse Marcus Gunn phenomenon”). Synkinesis most often occurs as a result of aberrant regeneration of the facial nerve after injury, but it also rarely occurs in muscles innervated by two different cranial nerves, including a rare facial–trigeminal synkinesis. With postparalytic muscle contracture, the more relaxed, normal contralateral side may appear weak on casual inspection. However, when facial movements are performed, the actual state and side of the pathology are revealed. These various abnormalities are probably secondary to faulty fiber regeneration after peripheral facial lesions or abnormal activity of residual motor units.

**Miscellaneous Movements**

**FACIAL MYOKYMIA**

Facial myokymia is a rare facial dyskinesia characterized by fine, continuous, rippling, undulating movements of the facial muscles (“bag of worms”), occasionally associated with facial contracture or weakness. In many cases facial myokymia is due to intraparenchymal pontine tegmental lesions involving the postnuclear, postgenu portion of the facial nerve (especially multiple sclerosis and tumor). Atypical facial myokymia may follow Bell’s palsy or traumatic facial injury (postparalytic hemifacial spasm). Albeit unusual, hemifacial spasm can complicate diabetic ketoacidosis. Very rarely, hemifacial spasm is found in young children and adolescents; idiopathic thickening of the arachnoid membrane has been implicated as a potential putative mechanism in these cases. Hemifacial spasm has been found in a six-year-old child with otitis media with symptoms resolving following insertion of ventilation tubes. Rare familial cases suggesting a genetic predisposition have also been reported. An association between rostral left ventrolateral medullary compression and arterial hypertension in patients with hemifacial spasm has been hypothesized.
death [178]. Following timber rattlesnake envenomation, bilateral facial myokymia and myokymia of the bitten extremity invariably result [32]. In a patient with syringobulbia and facial myokymia, neither the facial motor nucleus nor the facial nerve was pathologically involved [168]. The myokymia in this case was hypothesized to be caused by the interruption of aberrant corticobulbar fibers in the medulla, which produced disinhibition of a “rhythmic neural generator” in the facial nucleus. Finally, facial myokymia was described as a false localizing sign in a patient with obstructive hydrocephalus and resolved with shunting [177]. Benign myokymia in healthy subjects is limited to the eyelids; in most instances the movements occur because of or are exacerbated by fatigue.

Myokymia may be associated with spastic paretic facial contracture [138]. In this disorder, myokymia begins in the orbicularis oculi muscle and gradually spreads to involve most of the musculature on one side of the face. At the same time, associated tonic contracture of the involved muscles develops, eventually resulting in decreased voluntary facial movements on the involved side. The nasolabial groove deepens, the corner of the mouth is drawn laterally, the palpebral fissure narrows, and all the facial muscles become weak. Myokymia with spastic paretic facial contracture is considered a sign of damage to the dorsal pons in the region of the facial nucleus and is especially seen with brainstem neoplasm [116,138,188]. Oculofacial or oculomasticatory myorhythmia is considered to be pathognomonic of Whipple’s disease, a multisystem disorder caused by Tropheryma whippelii [8]. Patients with oculomasticatory myorhythmia exhibit pendular vergence ocular oscillations and synchronous contractions of the masticatory but not the palatal muscles [167]. Facial “myorhythmia” has also been associated with the use of interferon-α2a [191].

FOCAL CORTICAL SEIZURES
Gross, clonic movements of the face, usually spreading to involve other muscles, may be associated with an epileptogenic focus affecting the frontal lobe (lower precentral gyrus). Postictal paralysis (supranuclear type) may occur transiently.

TICS AND HABIT SPASMS
Tics and habit spasms are abrupt, repetitive, stereotyped, simple or complex movements that often involve muscles outside the distribution of the facial nerve (e.g., neck) and can be reproduced or inhibited voluntarily. They are thought to be of psychogenic origin, but their association with Gilles de la Tourette syndrome (involuntary tic-like movements or vocalizations, sometimes with coprolalia) suggests the possibility of basal ganglia dysfunction.

FASCICULATIONS
Fasciculations of the facial muscles (spontaneous twitches of individual muscle fascicles) may occur with any process that affects the facial nucleus or nerve (e.g., amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, intraparenchymal tumor). Fasciculations of the facial muscles, tongue, and limbs are also seen in the Kennedy syndrome (X-linked bulbospinal neuronopathy), an X-linked recessive disorder resulting from a trinucleotide repeat expansion in the androgen receptor gene.

MYOCLONUS
Rhythmic facial movements may occur in association with palatal myoclonus or tremor, a rhythmic, continuous palatal contraction that persists in sleep and occurs with lesions that affect the red nucleus, inferior olive, or dentate nucleus, or their connecting pathways (Guillain-Mollaret triangle). Sternocleidomastoid and facial asynchronous myoclonus has also been reported in association with dolichoectasia of the vertebral artery displacing the medulla oblongata; a direct compression of the eleventh and seventh cranial nerves by the dolichoectatic vessel has been proposed as the potential mechanism [147]. Isolated unilateral right facial reflex myoclonus has also been reported to be triggered by speaking and writing but not by nonlinguistic tasks, suggesting a left Rolandic opercular cortical origin [18]. Facial myoclonus has also been described in cases of hypocalcemia [195], serotonin syndrome [206], sleep-related faciomandibular myoclonus [127], Rasmussen encephalitis [35], topiramate use for epilepsy [118] and in Kufor Rakeb disease, and autosomal recessive form of levodopa-responsive parkinsonism associated with facial-faucial-finger minmyoclonus [205].

References
336 Localization in Clinical Neurology


Cranial Nerve VII (The Facial Nerve)

Localization in Clinical Neurology


Anatomy of Cranial Nerve VIII

The eighth cranial nerve consists of two separate functional components: the auditory (cochlear) nerve concerned with hearing and the vestibular nerve concerned with equilibrium. Phylogenetically, the vestibular system antedates the cochlear system [40]. The auditory nerve receives information from the tonotopically organized cochlea, the organ of hearing. The vestibular nerve derives its input from the saccular and utricular macules (which sense linear acceleration) and the cristae of the semicircular canals (which sense angular acceleration of the head). Because of this functional dualism, the two vestibulocochlear nerve components are discussed separately.

The Auditory Pathways

The auditory pathways (Fig. 11.1) may be conceptualized as a four-tiered neuronal network, as follows: (a) auditory (cochlear) nerve extending from the organ of Corti to the cochlear nucleus, (b) fibers from the cochlear nucleus crossing to the contralateral inferior colliculus, (c) fibers from the inferior colliculus extending to the medial geniculate body, and (d) fibers from the medial geniculate body projecting to the auditory cortex in the superior temporal gyrus [25,73,130].

FIRST-ORDER NEURONS

The auditory receptors are the neuroepithelial hair cells of the organ of Corti. The structure of the cochlea is such that hair cells located at the cochlear apex are stimulated by low-frequency tones, whereas those located at the base are stimulated by high-frequency tones. First-order neurons of the auditory pathway have their cell bodies in the spiral ganglion of the cochlear nerve, which lies in Rosenthal’s canal at the base of the bony spiral lamina. Afferent components of these cells make contact with the hair cells of the cochlea, the majority converging on the inner hair cells and a smaller number diverging to make contact with the outer hair cells. When the hair cells are activated, impulse transmission is triggered in fibers having their perikarya in the spiral ganglion; these fibers then enter the brainstem, at the level of the ventral cochlear nuclei, as the cochlear nerve.

SECOND-ORDER NEURONS

On entry into the lower brainstem at the junction between the medulla and pons, the afferent cochlear nerve fibers divide, innervating the dorsal cochlear nucleus and the anteroventral and posteroverentral nuclei of the cochlear complex. This innervation follows a tonotopic pattern. The more dorsal aspects of these nuclei receive fibers that have innervated “high-frequency” (basal) hair cells, whereas the ventral aspects receive fibers from “low-frequency” (apical) hair cells. The dorsal and ventral cochlear nuclei contain the second-order neurons and give rise to several projections to the contralateral brainstem, which ascend as the lateral lemniscus, a fiber tract that projects to the central nucleus of the inferior colliculus. These projections include the dorsal acoustic striae (from the dorsal cochlear nucleus), the intermediate acoustic striae (from the dorsal part of the ventral cochlear nucleus), and the ventral acoustic striae (from the ventral cochlear nucleus), which is part of the trapezoid body. Decussating fibers of the trapezoid body ascend, with some fibers terminating in the lateral Lemniscal nuclei along the way, and terminate in the inferior colliculus. (The ventral acoustic striae also terminate in the ipsilateral and contralateral reticular formation, the superior olivary nuclei, and the nuclei of the trapezoid body.)

THIRD-ORDER NEURONS

The inferior colliculus, located in the midbrain tegmentum caudal to the superior colliculus, contains the third-order neurons and serves as the central relay nucleus in the auditory pathway, receiving ascending and descending input. Basically, all ascending auditory pathways end in the inferior colliculus. Fibers from the lateral lemniscus end in the prominent central nucleus of the inferior colliculus, which has a tonotopic organization. The projections from the inferior colliculus terminate in the medial geniculate body, with the low-frequency fibers ending in the apical-lateral areas and the high-frequency fibers ending in the medial portions of this nuclear mass.
FOURTH-ORDER NEURONS
The medial geniculate body is the thalamic auditory relay nucleus, and chiefly gives rise to the geniculotemporal fibers or auditory radiations. The auditory radiations course laterally in a dense tract that partly penetrates the ventral and lateral portions of the posterior half of the putamen and partly runs in the white matter below it [162]. Most fibers terminate in lamina IV of the primary auditory cortex (AI, Brodmann’s area 41), located in the transverse temporal gyri of Heschl, but some end in the association auditory cortex (AII, Brodmann’s area 42). The primary auditory cortex terminations conform to a tonotopic pattern, with high-frequency tones terminating medially and low-frequency tones terminating laterally. Brodmann’s area 41 is reciprocally connected with the ventral division and Brodmann’s area 42 with the dorsal division of the medial geniculate body. Through a large fiber tract of the corpus callosum, each auditory cortical area is likewise connected with the reciprocal areas in the other cerebral hemisphere.

There are many commissural connections along the auditory pathway; however, none exists at the level of the medial geniculate body. The bilateral representation of each hemisphere has obvious significance when unilateral brainstem lesions are considered. The neurons of the superior olivary complex receive input from both ears. There are connections between the two cochlear nuclei, connections between the two dorsal nuclei of the lateral lemniscus through the commissure of Probst, connections between the inferior colliculus on each side through the commissure of the inferior colliculus, and connections between the central nucleus of the inferior colliculus and the contralateral medial geniculate body through the brachium of the inferior colliculus [119]. Another important consideration is that from the inferior colliculus upward, there are two different projection systems. The first (including the central nucleus of the inferior colliculus, portions of the medial geniculate, and the primary auditory cortex) is referred to as a core system, which is a direct auditory pathway with a tonotopic organization. The other (including the pericentral region of the inferior colliculus, the nonlamimated portions of the medial geniculate body, and the secondary auditory cortex) is referred to as a belt projection, which has less tonotopic organization and serves as a polysominal system that receives both auditory and nonauditory information.

There are also several descending auditory pathways that run parallel to the ascending fibers and are integrated in the feedback control of auditory input. They include corticogeniculate fibers, corticocollicular fibers, geniculo-collicular fibers, collicular efferents, and an efferent cochlear bundle from the superior olivary complex to the hair cells of the spiral organ of Corti.

The blood supply to the cochlea and auditory brainstem nuclei arises from the internal auditory (labyrinthine) artery, usually a branch of the anterior inferior cerebellar artery. Within the internal auditory canal, the internal auditory artery supplies the ganglion cells, nerves, dura, and arachnoid membranes, and then divides into the common cochlear artery and the anterior vestibular artery. The superior olivary complex and lateral lemniscus are supplied by circumferential branches of the basilar artery, the inferior colliculus is vascularized by branches of the superior cerebellar and quadrigeminal arteries, and the medial geniculate bodies receive their blood supply from the thalamogeniculate arterioles. Branches of the middle cerebral artery supply the primary auditory and associated cortices.

The Vestibular System
The vestibular system monitors angular and linear accelerations of the head. This information is used to monitor the motion and position of the head in space and to maintain balance. These accelerations are transduced into neuronal signals within a specialized structure, the membranous labyrinth. The labyrinth consists of the otolith organ (utricle and saccule) and the three semicircular canals [3,26,41]. Linear acceleration is monitored by specialized receptors, the macules, of the utricle and saccule, whereas angular acceleration is monitored by the cristae in the ampullae of the semicircular canals. These receptors are composed of numerous hair cells that serve as transducers, converting mechanical movements of sensory hairs into changes of receptor potentials in the hair cells and in their afferent neurons.

The semicircular canals are three in number and are oriented at approximately right angles to each other to detect angular accelerating movements of the head. These canals include the lateral or horizontal canal (with an outward convexity), the anterior or superior canal (with an upward convexity), and the posterior or inferior canal (with a backward convexity). When the head is in the erect position, the horizontal canal is almost horizontal (there is a slight inclination down and back, forming a 30-degree angle with the horizontal), and the superior and posterior canals are arranged in two vertical planes that form a 45-degree angle with the frontal and sagittal planes. Therefore, the horizontal canals of both labyrinths are in the same plane, whereas the superior canal on one side is in the same plane as the posterior canal of the opposite side.

The utricle and saccule are arranged at right angles also, with the utricle parallel to the base of the
skull and the saccule parallel to the sagittal plane [63]. Therefore, horizontal head movements stimulate the utricle linearly, whereas tilting the head activates the saccule.

When the cristae or macules are stimulated, potentials are developed in their afferent nerve endings, the cell bodies of which lie in the vestibular ganglion of Scarpa housed in the internal acoustic meatus. These impulses are then transmitted through the nerve fibers that make up the vestibular nerve.

The information from the membranous labyrinth is transmitted in a different manner in the two different components of the vestibular nerve. The superior portion of the nerve carries input from the anterior and horizontal semicircular canals and from the utricle, whereas the inferior portion of the nerve transmits information from the posterior semicircular canal and the saccule. The vestibular nerve enters the brainstem at the pontomedullary level, bifurcates into ascending and descending fascicles, and terminates in the vestibular nuclei (the superior nucleus of Deiters, the medial nucleus of Schwalbe, and the inferior or descending nucleus of Roller), which lie in the rostral medulla and caudal pons. The vestibular nuclei initiate contralateral vestibulospinal reflexes to maintain a stable vision during head movements [81,144]. The latter usually arises from the anterior inferior cerebellar artery but occasionally branches directly from the basilar artery. After giving off a branch to the eighth nerve in the cerebellopontine angle, the internal auditory artery transverses the internal auditory meatus and, at the labyrinth, branches into (a) the anterior vestibular artery to the anterior and lateral semicircular canals and the utricular macula, (b) the posterior vestibular artery to the posterior semicircular canal, the saccular macula, and part of the cochlea, and (c) the cochlear artery. Therefore, the anterior and posterior vestibular arteries supply structures innervated by the superior and inferior branches of the vestibular nerve, respectively.

**CEREBELLUM**

The vestibulocerebellum receives afferent fibers from the vestibular ganglion and from the vestibular nuclei of the same side. The vestibular nuclei (primarily the inferior and medial nuclei) project to the ipsilateral flocculonodular lobe and uvula and to the fastigial nucleus. The cerebellum also has reciprocal connections with the vestibular nuclei including cerebellar corticovestibular fibers from the nodulus, uvula, flocculus, and other areas of the cerebellar vermis, and fastigiovestibular fibers projecting from the fastigial nucleus. All of these connections course through the juxta-restiform body.

**RETICULAR FORMATION**

Through its cerebellar projections, the vestibular nuclei influence the reticular formation (especially the lateral reticular nucleus and the nucleus reticularis pontis caudalis). The vestibular nuclei also project fibers back to the hair cells of the membranous labyrinth. These fibers probably serve a modulating function.

Neurons in the superior lateral and inferior vestibular nuclei project bilaterally to the ventral posterolateral and posterior nuclear group of the thalamus. The cortical representation of vestibular function is located in the postcentral gyrus near areas 2 and 5 of the cerebral cortex. Other receptive areas include the frontal lobe (area 6) and the superior temporal gyrus.

The blood supply to the membranous labyrinth is from the internal auditory or labyrinthine artery [114]. The latter usually arises from the anterior inferior cerebellar artery but occasionally branches directly from the basilar artery. After giving off a branch to the eighth nerve in the cerebellopontine angle, the internal auditory artery transverses the internal auditory meatus and, at the labyrinth, branches into (a) the anterior vestibular artery to the anterior and lateral semicircular canals and the utricular macula, (b) the posterior vestibular artery to the posterior semicircular canal, the saccular macula, and part of the cochlea, and (c) the cochlear artery. Therefore, the anterior and posterior vestibular arteries supply structures innervated by the superior and inferior branches of the vestibular nerve, respectively.
Clinical Evaluation of Cranial Nerve VIII Function

Early diagnosis of deafness is critical, as it may lead to learning disabilities and impaired language skills. According to severity, hearing loss is classified as mild (20–39 dB), moderate (40–69 dB), severe (70–89 dB), or profound (>90 dB). Based on age at onset, hearing loss is categorized as prelingual or postlingual [142,152].

Sensorineural Deafness

Sensorineural deafness refers to a deficit in perceiving either tones or speech, which is due to a lesion central to the oval window. It may therefore involve the cochlea (sensory), the cochlear nerve and nuclei (neural), or the central auditory pathways. Sensorineural deafness may be bilateral and progressive (e.g., presbyacousis, otoxic drugs), unilateral and progressive (e.g., Ménière’s disease, acoustic neuroma), or unilateral and sudden (e.g., impaired cochlear blood flow, viral infection, perilymphatic fistula, autoimmune inner ear disease or, rarely, acoustic neuroma) [105,130].

Individuals suffering from sensorineural hearing loss frequently have difficulty hearing high-pitched sounds and vowels (e and i to a greater extent than a, o, or u). Formal audiometric testing usually reveals a loss of speech discrimination that is out of proportion to associated pure tone deafness [46]. Patients with sensorineural pathology often complain of tinnitus, which varies in both pitch and intensity.

The evaluation of hearing loss begins with a thorough examination of the external auditory canal and an inspection of the tympanic membranes through otoscopy. Examination should include a detailed general physical and neurologic examination, including a thorough search for any craniofacial, musculoskeletal, ocular, hair, or skin pigmentary abnormalities. Next, it must be determined whether the hearing loss is sensorineural, conductive (i.e., lesion located between the environment and the organ of Corti), or mixed. Hearing loss may be due to a heterogeneous group of genetic (syndromic and nonsyndromic) disorders, environmental, infectious, inflammatory, autoimmune, vasculitic, metabolic, traumatic, and structural conditions, as well as selective cochlear neurotoxicity. Approximately 25% of childhood hearing impairment in the United States are attributable to factors such as prematurity, congenital hyperbilirubinemia, neonatal hypoxia, bacterial meningitis, viral infections (rubella, measles, herpes, cytomegalovirus, trauma, and otoxic medications) [152]. Genetic hearing loss can follow an autosomal dominant, autosomal recessive, X-linked, or mitochondrial inheritance pattern. Most cases are nonsyndromic and autosomal recessive [47]. Drug-induced cochlear toxicity is a well-known complication of aminoglycoside antibiotics, loop diuretics, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, quinine, and salicylates. At higher doses, aspirin can cause tinnitus, dizziness, and hearing loss. Hearing loss has also been reported in association with the use of high doses of propoxphene and hydrocortisone/acetaminophen (Vicodin) [53,66,74,136]. Reversible hearing loss related to gabapentin may occur in patients with preexisting renal dysfunction [145].

Progressive bilateral sensorineural hearing loss is a cardinal feature of superficial siderosis of the central nervous system [94]. Progressive sensorineural hearing loss may also be secondary to leptomeningeal carcinomatosis [127]. Hearing loss is also a common complication of cranial radiation. Hearing loss and tinnitus have also been reported with the use of Vinka alkaloids. Ototoxicity with high-frequency sensorineural hearing loss is seen with the use of cisplatinum; previous or concomitant canal radiation may lead to enhanced cisplatinum ototoxicity. Hearing loss has also been reported with the use of interferon alpha [85,109,123,151]. Progressive unilateral or bilateral hearing loss has also been described with Fabry’s disease, an inherited disorder of glycosphingolipid metabolism due to a deficiency of alpha-galactosidase activity [168]. A possible association between antiphospholipid antibodies and sensorineural hearing loss has also been proposed [125].

Common causes of conductive hearing loss are obstructions of the external auditory meatus by wax, otosclerosis, tympanosclerosis, and various external and middle ear diseases (otitis externa, serous otitis media, trauma to the ossicular chain or cholesteatoma).

In bedside qualitative assessment of hearing loss, a tuning fork (256 or preferably 512 Hz) is used to distinguish between these two types of hearing loss. Later, more formal quantitative audiologic tests are performed. Three major tuning fork tests are used for the evaluation of hearing loss: Weber’s, Rinne’s, and Schwabach’s tests.

THE WEBER’S TEST

The purpose of the Weber’s test is to help differentiate a conductive hearing loss from a sensorineural hearing loss in a unilateral hearing loss. This test is conducted by placing a vibrating tuning fork over the midline of the skull or forehead, over the nasal bone, or over the anterior upper incisors. Normally, the vibrations are perceived equally in both ears (no lateralization) because bone conduction is equal bilaterally. In conductive hearing loss, the vibrations are louder in the deaf ear (lateralized to the diseased ear).
In sensorineural hearing loss, the sound is louder in the normal ear (lateralized to the normal ear).

THE RINNE’S TEST
The Rinne's test compares the patient's air and bone conduction. The stem of the vibrating tuning fork is applied against the mastoid process. When the patient no longer hears the vibration, the fork is placed next to the ear (approximately 1 cm from the external auditory meatus) with the tines parallel to the sagittal plane of the skull, 1 to 2 inches from the external auditory meatus. In normal individuals, because air conduction is better than bone conduction, the vibrations are perceived in the ear after they are no longer perceived at the mastoid. The Rinne's test result is said to be normal, or positive, when the tuning fork is heard approximately twice as long by air conduction as by bone conduction. In cases of conduction deafness, bone conduction is better than air conduction, and therefore the tuning fork cannot be heard when it is placed next to the ear. With sensorineural hearing loss, both air and bone conduction are diminished to a similar extent, and air conduction remains greater than bone conduction.

THE SCHWABACH’S TEST
As in the Rinne’s test, the tuning fork is held against the mastoid process until the patient is unable to perceive any sound. The examiner then places the tuning fork over his or her mastoid bone and compares the bone conduction to that of the patient. If the examiner hears the tuning fork after the patient no longer hears it, a sensorineural hearing loss is suspected.

In summary, in sensorineural hearing loss:
1. The Weber’s test lateralizes to the normal ear.
2. The Rinne’s test result is positive (air conduction is better than bone conduction).
3. The Schwabach’s test demonstrates that the patient’s bone conduction is worse than the examiner’s.

In conductive hearing loss:
1. The Weber’s test lateralizes to the diseased ear.
2. The Rinne’s test result is negative (bone conduction is better than air conduction).
3. The Schwabach’s test is normal or prolonged (the patient may hear the tuning fork longer than the examiner does).

Vertigo and Vestibular Function
The clinical evaluation of a patient affected with dizziness or vertigo should focus on the following four areas [24,64,164].

DEFINITION OF CHARACTERISTICS OF SYMPTOMS
Dizziness is a nonspecific term often meaning different things to people (e.g., lightheadedness, head swimming, faintness or presyncope, disequilibrium, disturbance of consciousness, and true vertigo). Vertigo is an illusion of motion that some interpret as subjective (patient feels that he or she is spinning) or objective (the environment seems to be spinning). The most common illusion is a spinning or whirling sensation. Vegetative symptoms, such as nausea, vomiting, pallor, and sweating, are frequently present in patients with vertigo. Vertigo arises from an imbalance of the vestibular tone and is usually associated with disease of the labyrinth or its central connections. The history and physical examination should help distinguish peripheral from central causes of vertigo. Nausea and vomiting are much more common and severe when vertigo results from affection of the peripheral vestibular apparatus.

Vertigo must be differentiated from the following:
1. Lightheadedness or presyncope faintness, which is caused by decreased blood flow to the brain.
2. Disequilibrium, which is characterized by an imbalance or unsteadiness while standing or walking caused by loss of vestibulospinal, proprioceptive, visual, or motor integration.
3. Nonspecific, vague symptoms of floating, swimming, giddiness, rocking, falling, and spinning inside the head. This is often due to psychogenic or psychiatric disorders causing dizziness and may be seen among patients with anxiety disorder (panic attacks, agoraphobia, obsessive-compulsive disorder), somatoform disorders (including conversion disorder), and depression. Hyperventilation may also cause dizziness.

ASSOCIATED AUDITORY SYMPTOMS
If unilateral hearing loss accompanies vertigo, primary ear disease should be suspected. A feeling of “fullness” in the affected ear may occur with external, middle, or inner ear pathology. Autophony, or the perception of the reverberation of the patient's own voice in the affected ear, occurs only with external or middle ear disease.

Tinnitus is a sensation of noise in one or both ears in the absence of any significant stimulus (i.e., any perceived noise not produced by external auditory stimuli). Tinnitus is usually described as hissing, humming, whistling, or ringing. Tinnitus may be pulsatile (coinciding with the patient's heartbeat) or continuous (nonpulsatile). Tinnitus may be subjective and only perceived by the patient, or objective and thus perceived by another person [70,106,135]. Tinnitus may occur in the context of “normal” hearing, but may be associated with vestibular schwannomas.
presbyacusis, osteosclerosis, temporal bone trauma, temporal bone surgery, Ménière syndrome, chronic noise trauma, acute acoustic trauma, ototoxicity, vestibulotoxicity, and sudden hearing loss [39,106]. Tinnitus may be paroxysmal or continuous, pulsatile or nonpulsatile, and is more frequently noted with peripheral rather than with central lesions. Patients with unilateral tinnitus, pulsatile tinnitus, fluctuating tinnitus, or tinnitus associated with vertigo must be thoroughly assessed for potentially severe underlying pathologic processes [110]. Low roaring tinnitus suggests Ménière’s disease, whereas high-pitched tinnitus suggests presbyacusis or an acoustic tumor. Pulsatile tinnitus is usually a subjective appreciation of the patient’s normal heartbeat, but may also occur with various neoplastic and congenital or acquired arterial or venous disorders including glomus (paragangliomas), tumors, hemangiomas, meningiomas, arterial tortuosity, vascular loops, persistent stapedial artery, “aberrant” carotid artery (hypertrophic inferior tympanic artery), high-grade carotid artery stenosis, cervicocephalic arterial dissections, fibromuscular dysplasia of the internal carotid artery, intracranial aneurysms, intracranial arteriovenous malformations, intracranial or extracranial dural arteriovenous fistulae, high jugular bulb, jugular diverticulum, dehiscent jugular bulb, enlarged jugular vein, and venous stenosis. Paragangliomas most likely to present with pulsatile tinnitus are the glomus jugulare tumor, the glomus tympanicum tumor, and the glomus jugulotympanicum tumor [177]. Pulsatile tinnitus may also occur with intracranial hypertension associated with aqueductal stenosis [155] and idiopathic intracranial hypertension [80,117,141,178]. Tinnitus from idiopathic intracranial hypertension is thought to be due to turbulence of blood flow from the hypertensive intracranial circulation into the low-pressure jugular bulb [117]. Unilateral venous hum tinnitus may be secondary to turbulent flow in the internal jugular vein [134].

Gaze-evoked tinnitus may develop after removal of cerebellopontine angle tumors (e.g., acoustic neuroma) [176]. This type of tinnitus may be associated with saccades, pursuit, and vestibulo-ocular eye movements. It is postulated to be due to an abnormal interaction between the vestibular and cochlear nuclei, possibly due to neural sprouting after transection of the auditory nerve [176]. Other causes of tinnitus include temporomandibular joint disease, Paget’s disease of the bone, thyrotoxicosis, anemia, sickle cell disease, endolymphatic sac tumors, high cardiac output, loud cardiac murmurs, labyrinthitis, perilymphatic fistulas, hydrocephalus, congenital neurosyphilis, palatal myoclonus (palatal tremor), patulous eustachian tube, middle ear myoclonus, and tensor tympani muscle spasm [32,71,103,117]. Unusual stereotyped episodes of oscillopsia and bilateral “sparking” tinnitus occurring in a cyclic (every 100 ± 10 seconds) fashion have been described (periodic saccadic oscillations and tinnitus), during which cycles of disconjugate opsclosums, square-wave jerks, and saccadic dynamic overshoot disrupt stable fixation (see Chapter 8) [165]. It is postulated that the lesion responsible episodically disrupts saccade-related neurons and central auditory neurons in the pons.

ASSOCIATED SYMPTOMS SUGGESTING CENTRAL NEUROLOGIC DYSFUNCTION
Symptoms and signs suggesting brainstem, cerebellar, or cranial nerve dysfunction (e.g., diplopia, dysarthria, perioral numbness, drop attacks, and ataxia) localize the lesion to the central pathways. Associated auditory hallucinations suggest temporal lobe disease.

ETIOLOGIC SEARCH
An accurate history should reveal any associated viral infection, head or neck trauma, barotrauma, toxin or drug exposure, alcohol abuse, endocrine and metabolic diseases, cardiovascular disease, or previous luetic infection. All patients should have a complete otologic and audiologic evaluation and a detailed neurologic evaluation. This examination should stress the following:

1. Blood pressure evaluation in both arms (including tests for orthostatic changes) is done with a search for cervical bruits and cardiac arrhythmias.
2. A detailed cranial nerve examination is carried out, including repetition of whispering words and numbers, tuning fork evaluation of hearing, and examination of ocular movements, including smooth pursuit, saccades, and fixation suppression, with special investigation for spontaneous or gaze-evoked nystagmus and presence or absence of skew deviation [21,27,87,169].
3. Cerebellar testing, especially evaluation of gait and station abnormalities, is performed.
4. Evaluation of vestibular control of balance and movement is done. With the Romberg test (standing with eyes closed and feet together) the patient tends to fall to the side of vestibular hypofunction. Taking a few steps with the eyes closed, the patient tends to veer to the side of vestibular involvement. This phenomenon can be highlighted by asking the patient to take three steps forward and three steps backward several times with the eyes closed. This tendency to veer to one side results in a progressive deviation to the impaired side. Instead of walking in a line forward and backward, the trajectory of the patient’s steps...
Localizaton in Clinical Neurology

resembles a star ("star walking"). This abnormality may be present when all other clinical tests of vestibular function are negative. To examine the effect of vestibular function on distal movements, the patient may be asked to place the pointed index finger of the outstretched arm on top of the examiner's finger. The patient moves his or her arm in an ample arc from above her head to meet the examiner's finger placed in front. Consistent past-pointing is found with both hands to the side of a hypofunctional vestibular apparatus.

5. Provocative tests are designed to induce symptoms or positional nystagmus: postural changes, head-thrust test (head-impulse test), head turning, sudden turn while walking, hyperventilation, provocative positioning maneuvers (Nylén-Bárány or Dix-Hallpike test), Valsalva's maneuver, and caloric testing.

Localization of Lesions Causing Deafness and Vertigo

Localization of Lesions Causing Sensorineural Deafness

CEREBRAL LESIONS

The human auditory cortex located in the superior temporal gyrus along the Sylvian fissure (Brodmann's areas 41, 42, and 22) is subdivided into an auditosensory region (Brodmann's area 41) and an auditory-synthetic region (Brodmann's areas 42 and 22).

Lesions of the auditory cortex do not cause complete deafness, even when bilateral. A subtle hearing impairment may be seen with unilateral lesions, but this is more often characterized by difficulties in localizing sounds. Unilateral dominant posterior temporal lesions or bilateral temporal lesions affecting Heschl's gyri may cause pure word deafness. Pure word deafness, also known as auditory verbal agnosia, is characterized by the inability to understand the spoken language despite normal auditory acuity. In this condition, reading, writing, naming, and comprehension of nonlanguage sounds are also preserved [59,107]. Patients with bilateral lesions of the auditory cortical regions manifest a spectrum of disorders, ranging from cortical deafness to generalized auditory agnosia, selective auditory agnosia, pure word deafness, amusia, and milder disturbances in the temporal analysis of sounds [118]. The severity of the clinical picture depends on the extent of involvement of the primary temporal processing system.

A number of patients have been reported who had severe hearing loss after bilateral temporal or temporoparietal lesions [5,62,78,162,181] or bilateral subcortical lesions [162]. In most cases, however, the severe hearing loss is eventually resolved, with only minor residual audiometric deficit accompanied by varying degrees of impairment in their ability to interpret nonverbal as well as verbal sounds (word deafness or auditory agnosia) [162]. With dichotic listening tasks, there is poorer performance on stimuli presented to the ear contralateral to a lesioned Heschl's gyrus. Left hemispheric lesions predominantly impair speech discrimination, whereas right hemispheric lesions predominantly impair complex-pitch discrimination. Lesions in the prenatal period cause the same type of deficits but to a lesser degree than damage occurring in adulthood [132].

Irritative lesions of the temporal cortex may result in subjective auditory hallucinations. Auditory hallucinations may be simple (e.g., tinnitus) or complex (e.g., voices, music). These auditory sensations are most often referred to the contralateral ear and occur more frequently with irritative lesions of Brodmann's areas 42 and 22 than with lesions of Brodmann's area 41. Partial complex seizures of temporal lobe origin may start with auditory or vertiginous auras, suggesting an auditory cortical origin for the epileptiform phenomenon [72,108].

BRAINSTEM LESIONS

In general, because of the binaural representation of the ascending auditory tracts above the level of the cochlear nuclei, brainstem lesions involving the auditory pathways do not cause hearing impairment. Bilateral hearing loss may occur with severe bilateral brainstem lesions (e.g., hemorrhage or infarction) and has been described with lesions of the inferior colliculus, trapezoid bodies, pons, midbrain tegmentum, medial geniculate bodies, and cochlear nuclei.

Inferior collicular lesions are rare causes of central deafness [76,157,171]. Sudden auditory illusion of paracusis (hyperacusis) and palinacusis (perseveration of sounds) have been reported with small hemorrhagic lesions of the medial geniculate body [56]. Associated brainstem findings dominate the clinical picture. Neurologic localization may be assisted by brainstem auditory-evoked potentials and magnetic resonance imaging. Sudden bilateral hearing impairment, occasionally associated with tinnitus and vertigo, was described in 7 of 503 patients with vertebrobasilar occlusive disease; 4 of these patients were in a locked-in state [77].

Pineal and midbrain tumors may also cause sudden and complete bilateral deafness (central stem deafness of Brunner [158]) presumably because the auditory pathways in this region are closely packed together in the "isthmus acusticus" [156]. Brainstem lesions in the lower midbrain or rostral pontine tegmentum may also cause auditory hallucinations associated with hearing loss and a clear sensorium,
likely due to interruption of the central auditory pathways producing “release-type” hallucinations [31]. Brainstem auditory hallucinosis has also been described with lower pontine tegmentum hemorrhages [92,95].

PERIPHERAL NERVE LESIONS AND THE CEREBELLOPONTINE ANGLE SYNDROME

Peripheral cochlear nerve lesions account for partial or complete deafness, often associated with ipsilateral tinnitus. Deafness is most prominent for high-frequency tones and may be secondary to trauma (e.g., basal skull fracture), infections (e.g., syphilis, bacterial infections), drugs (e.g., streptomycin, neomycin), aneurysms of the anterior inferior cerebellar artery, or tumors of the cerebellopontine angle (e.g., vestibular schwannomas, epidermoids, meningiomas, arachnoid cysts). Nearby cranial nerves (e.g., V, VI, VII, IX, X, and XI) may be affected; their involvement assists in localizing the lesion.

The cerebellopontine angle syndrome is commonly caused by a vestibular schwannoma (acoustic neuroma) [67]. Other conditions accounting for this syndrome include meningiomas, congenital cholesteatomas, arachnoid cysts, epidermoids, lipomas, vascular loops (anterior inferior cerebellar artery, posterior inferior cerebellar artery), vertebrobasilar dolichoectasia, aneurysms, arteriovenous malformations, and vascular tumors. Commonly, but improperly called acoustic neuromas, these tumors originate from the vestibular Schwann cells of the eighth cranial nerve in the internal auditory canal at the glial-Schwann cell junction. Vestibular schwannomas account for approximately 2% to 8% of all intracranial tumors with an incidence of approximately 1:100,000. They usually present with insidious and progressive sensorineural hearing loss with early loss of speech discrimination and tinnitus. In a small percentage of cases (6%–10%) deafness may occur suddenly, most likely due to intratumoral hemorrhage or internal auditory artery occlusion. A sense of imbalance, unsteady gait, or disequilibrium is a more frequent complaint than vertigo, a disease that may be present in 20% of patients. Other common symptoms include tinnitus, headaches, and facial paresthesias [54]. As the tumor grows, the internal auditory meatus progressively widens, and complete ipsilateral nerve deafness ensues (the tinnitus subsiding as the deafness progresses). With medial tumor growth, neighboring cranial nerves are affected, and eventually brainstem and ipsilateral cerebellar compromise occur with very large tumors. Progressive tumoral enlargement may account for hydrocephalus or symptoms and signs of increased intracranial pressure.

Dysfunction of neighboring cranial nerves varies according to the direction of tumoral growth. With anterior extension, the trigeminal nerve (facial numbness, paroxysmal facial pain, depressed ipsilateral corneal reflex) and the abducens nerve (weakness of ocular abduction, horizontal diplopia) are compromised. With posteroinferior tumoral extension, cranial nerves IX and X (dysphagia, absent pharyngeal reflexes, vocal cord paralysis) and cranial nerve XI (ipsilateral sternocleidomastoid and trapezius paresis) may be involved. In either case, the facial nerve is usually involved, resulting in facial paresis, loss of taste on the ipsilateral anterior two-thirds of the tongue, decrease in ipsilateral tearing, and, rarely, hypesthesia of the posterior wall of the external auditory canal (Hitselberg sign), which is innervated by a sensory branch of the facial nerve, and hemifacial spasm [67,68,111,113,153]. In patients presenting with bilateral vestibular schwannomas, neurofibromatosis type 2 should be suspected [112,179].

Hearing loss (usually bilateral and associated with tinnitus) may occur in association with multiple branch retinal artery occlusions and encephalopathy (Susać’s syndrome) [161]. This triad of microangiopathy of the brain and retina with hearing loss occurs exclusively in young women. Sensorineural deafness and tinnitus have also been reported in cases of vertebrobasilar occlusive disease [90,100,183]. Sensorineural hearing loss may also occur in cases of bacterial meningitis, syphilis, and several viral infections including herpes zoster oticus, measles, mumps, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), autoimmune labyrinthitis [102,115,150], and Refsum’s disease, a rare autosomal recessive condition resulting in the accumulation of phytanic acid and characterized clinically by a demyelinating neuropathy, pes cavus, cerebellar ataxia, anosmia, and sensorineural deafness [180].

Localization of Lesions Causing Vertigo

Physiologic and clinical vertigo syndromes are commonly characterized by a combination of phenomena involving perceptive, ocular motor, postural, and vegetative manifestations: vertigo, nystagmus, ataxia, and nausea [22]. Vertigo is an illusion of movement resulting from misinformation of cortico-spinal orientation. Nystagmus arises from a direction-specific imbalance in the vestibulo-ocular reflex. Ataxia (or postural imbalance) results from inappropriate or abnormal activation of vestibulospinal pathways. Nausea and vomiting develop from chemical activation of the medullary vomiting centers [22].

Localizing lesions causing vertigo may be approached by considering three general categories: peripheral causes (vestibular labyrinthine disease), central causes (dysfunction of the vestibular connections),
and systemic causes (e.g., endocrine, hemopoietic, metabolic diseases) [44,50,63,164].

PERIPHERAL CAUSES OF VERTIGO
Lesions of the semicircular canals induce rotatory sensations, whereas disease of the otolith system (utricle and saccule) produces linear sensations of tilt or levitation. In acute vertigo due to labyrinthine disease, the diseased side may be the more active of the two (irritative phase) for some hours or even days, but it soon becomes less active (paretic phase). When the eyes are closed, patients feel a rotational sensation toward the side opposite to the paretic labyrinth. By contrast, in the paretic phase the eyes tend to deviate slowly toward the side of the lesion, and to that side, patients tend to past-point and fall when standing with eyes closed. Patients with severe vertigo feel most comfortable lying on one side, usually with the affected ear uppermost, perhaps to use otolith inputs in order to decrease the imbalance between the semicircular canals. In patients with labyrinthine disease, acoustic stimuli may induce paroxysms of vertigo, oscillopsia, postural imbalance, the ocular tilt reaction, and nystagmus (Tullio's phenomenon), perhaps through utricular stimulation [43].

Peripheral vestibular syndromes are usually of short duration and characterized by severe, often paroxysmal vertigo accompanied by auditory dysfunction (tinnitus and hearing loss). Nystagmus is often present and is characteristically unidirectional (fast phase “away from” the side of the lesion), horizontal rotatory (never vertical or exclusively rotatory), and inhibited by visual fixation. The subjective environmental swirl, past-pointing, deviation of the outstretched hands, and fall associated with the Romberg's maneuver are toward the slow phase of the nystagmus (toward the side of the lesion). The peripheral vestibular syndrome is therefore complete (has all of the clinical elements of vestibular dysfunction, e.g., vertigo, nystagmus, deviation of the outstretched hands, Romberg's sign, and so on) and congruent (all of the “slow deviations” are toward the same side, i.e., ipsilateral to the responsible lesion).

Unilateral total loss of horizontal semicircular canal function (i.e., canal paresis) may be detected by having the patient fixate on a stationary target while the examiner turns the head from side to side [65]. In normal individuals, no saccades (quick eye movements) are noted, indicating that the subject's gaze remained fixed on target. In patients with total unilateral canal paresis, one large or several small oppositely directed, compensatory, refixation saccades occur when the head is rotated toward the lesioned side [65].

Acquired vestibular areflexia, especially when bilateral, may also result in head movement-dependent oscillopsia, which is an illusory movement of the visual world that occurs only during head movement [167].

Benign Paroxysmal Positioning Vertigo
Positional vertigo of the benign paroxysmal type [8], also known as benign paroxysmal positional vertigo, or more appropriately benign paroxysmal positioning vertigo (BPPV), is a very common mechanical disorder of the inner ear in which brief attacks of acute and severe vertigo with concomitant nystagmus and autonomic symptoms is precipitated by certain head movements (often when patients turn in bed). Coclear or other neurologic symptoms are typically absent, and the symptoms usually abate after 3 to 6 months. Nearly all patients have at least one exacerbation after an initial remission [8]. Patients are otherwise asymptomatic between bouts [20]. BPPV can affect one or more semicircular canals, although involvement of the superior semicircular canal is extremely rare. Commonly, BPPV involves the posterior semicircular canal. BPPV may follow head trauma, viral labyrinthitis, Ménière's disease, migraines, or inner ear surgery, but most cases (50%–70%) are primary or idiopathic and best explained by the canalithiasis or cupulolithiasis theory [153]. Most cases of posterior canal BPPV are due to canalithiasis [4,139]. Stray otoconial (calcium carbonate crystals) particles detached from the otoconial layer (by degeneration or trauma) gravitate and settle on the cupula of the posterior semicircular canal (PC-BPPV), causing it to become heavier than the surrounding endolymph and thus sensitive to changes in the direction of gravity [20,153]. After rapid head tilt toward the affected ear or after head extension, when the posterior semicircular canal is moved in the specific plane of stimulation, an ampullofugal deflection of the cupula occurs, with the development of a rotational vertigo after a short latent interval and most commonly concomitant upbeat geotropic (“toward earth”) nystagmus with the fast phase beating toward the undermost ear. The nystagmus typically adapts and fatigues after repeated positional testing [20].

Other patients (10%–30%) display the lateral or horizontal semicircular canal BPPV variant (HG-BPPV) in which there is a strong linear horizontal nystagmus beating toward the lowermost ear induced by rapid turning of the head from side to side around the longitudinal axis. The nystagmus exhibits short latency without fatigability, and often reverses its direction on the pathologic side. The vertigo can be induced by turning the head to either side in the supine position, and is always more prominent on the pathologic side. The horizontal variant of BPPV
Nystagmus is usually torsional, with the upper pole of the eye beating toward the ground (geotropic). Fatigue with repeated positioning is seen. The nystagmus fatigues and abates within 10 seconds of appearance (fatigability due to dispersion of particles in the endolymph), and when the patient is rapidly brought back to a sitting position, the nystagmus beats maximally in the opposite direction (rebound). With repetition of the maneuver, the nystagmus becomes progressively less severe (habituation).

A central lesion should be suspected and further investigations initiated when (a) the positioning testing maneuver is positive with the head turned to either side, (b) an ageotropic positional nystagmus does not change to geotropic, (c) the nystagmus changes direction immediately after the shift in position and remains for as long as the head is down, (d) the nystagmus is unaccompanied by nausea or vomiting, and, if present, vertigo is mild and lasts 60 seconds, and (d) the nystagmus does not display features of adaptability or fatigability [16].

Matutinal vertigo (vertigo precipitated by the act of getting to one’s feet on awakening in the morning or sometimes on turning over preparatory to rising) may be central or peripheral and, therefore, of no localizing nature [14]. Matutinal vertigo is most frequently seen with disorders in which positional features are prominent, and it is often prevented by having patients sleep in a semi-upright position and patients being cautious about easing out of bed in the morning [14].

Peripheral Vestibulopathy

This term refers to conditions characterized by acute or recurrent attacks of episodic vertigo caused by
extramedullary disorders of the vestibular system [44]. Precise knowledge of the site or nature of the lesion is unknown. These conditions encompass acute vestibular neuritis, acute labyrinthitis, epideemic vertigo, and viral labyrinthitis.

**Acute vestibular neuritis**, also known as **acute vestibular neuritis**, neural labyrinthitis, or unilateral vestibulopathy of unknown cause, is characterized by sudden attacks of severe and prolonged vertigo, imbalance with falls toward the involved ear, spontaneous horizontal-rotatory nystagmus toward the unaffected ear, nausea, vomiting, and abnormal vestibular function on caloric testing in otherwise healthy patients. The vertigo is typically rotatory and develops over a few hours. It is unrelated to positional changes of the head and may be recurrent. Some patients exhibit residual dizziness and imbalance lasting for months [7]. There is no hearing loss. Vestibular neuritis has been attributed to viral upper respiratory infections, but the evidence to support that notion is slim. Therefore, some authors prefer the term “acute unilateral peripheral vestibulopathy” [19]. Vestibular neuritis affects only a part of the vestibular nerve trunk, usually the superior division (horizontal saccular canal paresis), which travels separately and has its own ganglion, whereas the inferior part (the posterior semicircular canal) is spared [20,30]. Vestibular neuritis except that there is associated tinnitus and hearing loss. This syndrome may follow systemic, acute, or chronic middle ear infections (i.e., viral or bacterial labyrinthitis) or occur in association with ototoxic drugs such as aminoglycosides and diuretics (i.e., toxic labyrinthitis). Viral labyrinthitis has been reported in association with measles, mumps, and rubella.

**Disabling positional vertigo** [82] is a rather poorly defined syndrome characterized by constant and disabling positional vertigo associated with severe nausea (occasionally with tinnitus) thought to be due to intracranial compression of the vestibular nerve by aberrant blood vessels.

Episodic vertigo followed by gait imbalance and oscillopsia may be familial (autosomal dominant) [9]. Patients with this familial vestibulopathy have profound bilateral vestibular loss despite normal hearing, sometimes in combination with a spinocerebellar ataxia [149]. Also, paroxysms of vertigo and visual blurring associated with complex combined torsional, horizontal, and vertical nystagmus have been described in association with an arteriovenous malformation in close proximity to the vestibular nuclei [96]. These episodes occurred regularly at 2-minute intervals, each attack lasting for 15 seconds. This repetitive paroxysmal nystagmus and vertigo was thought to be due to pathologic brief bursts of hyperactivity of the vestibular nuclei [96].

**Episodic vertigo secondary to an abnormal ocuловestibular response** may also develop in relationship to various optokinetic stimuli, such as walking down a grocery store aisle or driving a car [75]. Neurologic examination, including optokinetic responses, is normal. Patients are often helped by the administration of acetazolamide. A familial acetazolamide-responsive vestibulocerebellar syndrome has also been described in patients with long-standing histories of episodic vertigo, nausea, and vomiting followed by a slowly progressive truncal ataxia [12]. Ocular motor signs between attacks included rebound and downbeat type of nystagmus. The attacks decreased or abated following the administration of acetazolamide.

**Ménière’s Disease**

Ménière’s disease is a progressive disorder characterized by episodic acute and disabling attacks of vertigo, fluctuating sensorineural hearing loss, and tinnitus. Typically, the hearing loss in the early stages of Ménière’s disease affects only low frequencies, fluctuates, and increases during the acute attack. Hearing returns to normal after each attack in the beginning of the disease, but as the disease progresses, residual hearing loss after each attack accumulates and the hearing loss spreads to higher frequencies. A subjective distortion of sounds may also occur. There is also often a sensation of uncomfortable pressure or fullness in and around the affected ear.

Ménière’s disease is more often unilateral, although it may be bilateral in approximately 20% to 45% of cases. When bilateral, the disease is usually asynchronous and may resemble autoimmune inner ear disease [148]. Most cases of Ménière’s disease are sporadic, but in approximately 5% to 13% of cases there is a family history of the disease. Inheritance in familial cases suggests an autosomal dominant pattern [55,93].

The etiology of Ménière’s disease is unknown. Pathologically, there is an increased volume of endolymphatic fluid leading to distention of the semicircular canals: **endolymphatic hydrops**. Other conditions where similar manifestations may be present (Ménière’s syndrome) include congenital sphyllis, viral and bacterial labyrinthitis, Mondini’s dysplasia, fenestration of the otic capsule, Paget’s disease, hypothyroidism, hyperlipidemia, diabetes mellitus, labyrinthine otosclerosis, dysproteinemia, leukemic infiltrates, labyrinthine concussion, acoustic trauma, temporal bone trauma, Cogan’s syndrome, relapsing polychondritis, Eales disease, and vestibular schwannoma [128,145,146,175].
Patients with Ménière’s disease complain initially of distressing, fluctuating, and episodic vertigo of variable duration and intensity. Most patients have associated nausea and vomiting. Nonpulsatile, low-pitched, continuous tinnitus, usually described as “roaring,” and sensorineural hearing loss may precede the onset of vertigo by months or years. Individual attacks last several minutes to several hours. Between attacks, patients are initially symptom free but may complain of some degree of disequilibrium. Eventually, there is progressive deterioration of hearing, typically for low-frequency tones (below 3 kHz), which may culminate in complete hearing loss. Two main variants are recognized: cochlear Ménière’s, in which vertigo and imbalance are absent, and vestibular Ménière’s, in which vertigo is prominent, but hearing loss, tinnitus, and fullness, or ear pressure are absent in the early stages [1].

A less common condition, known as Tumarkin’s otolithic catastrophe or otolithic crisis, is characterized by acute episodes of vertigo during which muscle tone and power are lost without loss of consciousness [101,121]. On some occasions, patients with Ménière’s syndrome may also develop drop attacks, described as a sensation of being pushed, thrown, or knocked to the ground, or a sudden illusion of environmental movement that causes them to fall without loss of consciousness [11]. The attacks probably result from a sudden mechanical deformation of the otolithic membrane of the utricle or saccule due to pressure gradients within the inner ear [11].

Vertigo Secondary to Middle Ear Disease

Vertigo of the peripheral type may occur with acute or chronic ear infection, cholesteatoma, and congenital or acquired syphilis. Congenital syphilis should be suspected in patients presenting with symptoms of bilateral Ménière’s syndrome.

Vertigo Secondary to Viral Infections

Reactivation of latent varicella zoster virus (VZV) infection in the geniculate ganglion may cause a vesicular erythematous rash of the auricular canal, or occasionally in the throat, ear pain, and an acute peripheral facial nerve paralysis. Spreading infection to the vestibulocochlear nerve may result in tinnitus, vertigo, hyperacusis, and hearing loss (Ramsay Hunt syndrome). In addition to facial (CN VII) and vestibulocochlear (CN VIII) involvement, patients with Ramsay Hunt syndrome may also exhibit multiple, unilateral cranial nerve paralysis (CN V, CN VI, CN IX–X, CN XI, and CN XII) as well as involvement of the C2-C4 dermatomes [15,17,58,69, 124,160]. Ramsay Hunt syndrome can be further complicated by encephalitis, hemiparesis [48], and posterior circulation strokes [137].

Vertigo Secondary to Trauma

Closed head injuries or cervical trauma may result in vertigo due to inner ear concussion, fracture of the temporal bone (damaging the eighth nerve or labyrinth), or “whiplash” injury.

CENTRAL CAUSES OF VERTIGO

In contrast to the peripheral vestibular syndrome, the central vestibular syndrome is often prolonged (permanent or chronic) rather than of short duration.

Dysfunction of neighboring structures, including brainstem and cerebellar structures, is usually present, whereas auditory symptoms are less frequent. Vertigo is less severe than in the peripheral syndromes and tends to be ill-defined and continuous in nature. The associated nystagmus is bidirectional or unidirectional, may be exclusively horizontal, rotary, or vertical, and is not altered by visual fixation. The directions of subjective environmental rotation, past-pointing, deviation of the outstretched hands, and Rombergism are variable and barely altered by changes in head position. The central vestibular syndrome is therefore incomplete or partial (does not always consist of all elements of vestibular dysfunction), and incongruent (the nystagmus and tonic deviations are variable in direction).

Brandt [20] classified central vestibular syndromes of the brainstem tegmentum into the following three categories:

1. Disorders of the vestibulo-ocular reflex (VOR) in the horizontal (yaw) plane (e.g., horizontal nystagmus and pseudovestibular neuritis due to partial anterior inferior cerebellar artery or posterior inferior cerebellar artery infarction or a multiple sclerosis plaque)
2. Disorders of the VOR in the sagittal (pitch) plane (e.g., downbeat nystagmus and vertigo or upbeat nystagmus and vertigo)
3. Disorders of the VOR in the frontal (roll) plane (e.g., the ocular tilt reaction)

Vascular Causes of the Central Vestibular Syndrome

Because the arterial blood supply to the inner ear, the semicircular canals, the saccule, the utricle, and the cochlea originates from the vertebrobasilar circulation, vertebrobasilar ischemia can present with vertigo and hearing loss, thus mimicking an acute peripheral vestibulopathy [90]. Early observations indicate that a normal head impulse test can differentiate acute medial posterior-inferior cerebellar artery (PICA) infarction from acute peripheral vestibulopathy.
Wallenberg syndrome (lateral medullary infarction). These patients often experience vertigo and an illusionary tilting of the environment by 90 to 180 degrees. This syndrome consists of a constellation of signs and symptoms including ipsilateral limb ataxia, ipsilateral facial hypalgnesia and thermoanesthesia, ipsilateral paresis of the pharyngeal muscles, ipsilateral Horner syndrome, and contralateral trunk and extremity hypalgnesia and thermoanesthesia. Nystagmus, including head-shaking nystagmus, and a host of oculomotor symptoms may be caused by compromise of the ipsilateral vestibular nuclei [34].

Other vascular causes of vertigo include medial medullary infarcts [92], anterior-inferior cerebellar artery territory infarction [97], basilar migraine [18], subclavian steal syndrome, vertebral artery dissection, and cerebellar strokes. Main symptoms of cerebellar infarction include vertigo, dizziness, nausea, vomiting, gait unsteadiness, inability to stand without support even with eyes opened, limb clumsiness, headache, dysarthria, diplopia, and decreased level of alertness. Most prominent signs are limb and gait ataxia, dysarthria, nystagmus not suppressed by visual fixation, and altered mental status. Isolated vertigo is a rare manifestation of cerebellar nodular infarction and mimics vestibular neuritis [154,166]. Cerebellar nodular infarctions is associated with a normal head-impulse test and ageotropism (toward the sky) central positional nystagmus [131]. Other findings observed among these patients include periodic alternating nystagmus, perverted head shaking nystagmus, paroxysmal positional nystagmus, and impaired tilt suppression of the postrotatory nystagmus [84,120]. Very small (border zone) cerebellar infarcts can also resemble acute peripheral vestibular disorders, including canal paresis [89]. Isolated prolonged vertigo mimicking vestibular neuritis is rarely seen with infarcts in the territory of the superior cerebellar artery [99].

Migraine-associated vertigo or migrainous vertigo (vestibular migraine) probably is the most common cause of recurrent vertigo in children [147]. Recurrent monosymptomatic spontaneous vertigo, or head motion intolerance, occasionally mimicking BPPV may be due to migraine-associated vertigo [42,122,174]. Migraine-associated vertigo is genetically heterogeneous and complex, with variable expression of migraine headaches (with or without aura), episodic vertigo, and hearing loss [6,33,83]. Most patients do not fulfill International Headache Society (IHS) criteria for basilar migraine.

Multiple Sclerosis

Acute vertigo is a common complaint in the initial episode of multiple sclerosis, and may also occur
during relapses. Nystagmus is also seen and may be increased by head movements [28]. This etiology should be considered only after careful documentation of disseminated central nervous system (CNS) lesions and a history of remissions and exacerbations of neurologic signs and symptoms.

**Wernicke’s Encephalopathy**

Wernicke’s encephalopathy is a thiamine deficiency syndrome clinically characterized by a global confusional state, ataxia, and extracerebral muscle palsies with nystagmus. Despite the frequent involvement of the vestibular nuclei, vertigo is an uncommon complaint.

**Cerebellopontine Angle Tumors**

Vertigo is not a prominent symptom with cerebellopontine angle tumors but may be superimposed on the more common findings of slowly progressive hearing loss, tinnitus, imbalance, and other cranial nerve or cerebellar abnormalities.

**Vestibular Epilepsy**

Episodic vertigo may represent the aura or the sole manifestation of a seizure disorder, especially partial complex seizures of temporal lobe origin. Other temporal lobe phenomena (e.g., staring spells, automatisms, auditory hallucinations, episodes of déjà-vu or jamais-vu) should be sought to confirm this as an etiology for the vertiginous symptoms. Tornado epilepsy is often associated with a sense of spinning that mimics a peripheral vestibulopathy.

**Other Central Nervous System Disorders**

Many CNS disorders cause dizziness and disequilibrium. In the pediatric population, cerebellar abnormalities (i.e., congenital absence of the cerebellum, hypoplasia of the cerebellar vermis, Dandy-Walker syndrome), posterior fossa tumors, and Chiari malformations are among the most common implicated conditions.

**Familial periodic ataxia.** Individuals with these autosomal dominant syndromes have episodic dizziness, disequilibrium, and gait instability [32].

**Benign paroxysmal vertigo of childhood.** Children affected by this nonepileptic condition, likely to be a migrainous precursor or equivalent, may present with brief spells, sometimes in clusters, during which they often appear frightened, pale, and sweaty, without impairment of consciousness. Caloric testing is reported to be abnormal in most of these children [13, 45]. Elevation of serum creatinine kinase—MB values has recently been used as a marker for the diagnosis of benign paroxysmal vertigo of childhood [150].

**Systemic Causes of Dizziness and Vertigo**

Systemic conditions affecting peripheral or central vestibular structures capable of producing dizziness or vertigo [182], include the following:

**Cardiovascular disorders.** Cardiac arrhythmias, aortic stenosis or other valvular lesions, congestive heart failure, cardiomyopathies, and carotid sinus hypersensitivity may be associated with dizziness and syncope.

**Vasculitides.** Vertigo is a common manifestation of Cogan’s syndrome, an autoimmune disorder characterized by episodic vertigo, tinnitus, hearing loss, and nonsyphilitic interstitial keratitis [37].

**Hematologic disorders.** Anemia, polycythemia rubra vera, Waldenström’s macroglobulinemia, and other hyperviscosity syndromes may cause dizziness and hearing loss.

**Hypoglycemia.** Dizziness or faintness occurring a few minutes after a meal may be secondary to reactive hypoglycemia. Patients may also display adrenergic symptomatology.

**Hypothyroidism.** Symptoms of nervous system dysfunction are often prominent with hypothyroidism. Hypothyroidism may be associated with episodic vertigo, tinnitus, hearing loss, and signs of cerebellar dysfunction.

**Hyperventilation syndrome.** Hyperventilation may account for episodes of lightheadedness often associated with circumoral and digital paresthesias. Rapid lowering of PCO₂ reduces cerebral blood flow and may cause dizziness, confusion, and, rarely, seizures, even in the absence of hypoxemia.

**Multiple sensory deficits.** Dizziness in older patients may result from a combination of sensory deficits, including visual impairment, proprioceptive loss due to a polyneuropathy, vestibular dysfunction, and cervical spondylosis. Dizziness is especially prominent during ambulation, particularly when turning corners.

**Drugs.** Vestibular toxicity may be transient or permanent, and may be associated with symptoms of cochlear toxicity. Dizziness is a common side effect of many drugs, including analgesics, antiarrhythmics, cytotoxic drugs, anti-inflammatory drugs, aminoglycoside antibiotics (especially gentamicin), loop diuretics, aspirin, sedatives, and anticonvulsants. Overdoses of phenytoin may cause dizziness and nystagmus.

**Ocular disorders.** Vertigo and dizziness may occur in association with glaucoma, extraocular muscle
paresis, use of strong corrective lenses, and refractive abnormalities.

**Mal de debarquement (mal de mer).** This condition refers to sensations of motion, rocking, and swaying that are commonly experienced with sea travel and persist in some individuals on return to land for weeks, months, or even years [29,129]. *Mal de debarquement* may also occur after air and car travel. Patients with *mal de debarquement* syndrome lack vertigo, nausea, or vomiting.

**Psychiatric disorders (psychogenic dizziness).** Subjective dizziness or giddiness may occur with anxiety, panic attacks, mood, somatoform, and dissociative disorders, claustrophobia, agoraphobia, and other psychiatric disturbances, including schizophrenia. A special form of psychogenic vertigo, thought to be unrelated to panic attacks, is phobic postural vertigo primarily described among patients with obsessive-compulsive personality [23,24]. Phobic postural vertigo has six characteristic features [23].

1. Dizziness and a subjective disturbance of balance occur while standing or walking despite normal clinical balance tests (e.g., tandem walking, balancing on one foot).
2. Fluctuating unsteadiness in episodes lasting seconds to minutes or momentary perception of illusory body perturbations is noticed.
3. Although the attacks can occur spontaneously, there is usually a perceptual stimulus (e.g., bridge, staircase, empty room) or social situation (e.g., department store, restaurant, crowd) from which patients have difficulty withdrawing and which they recognize as a provoking factor.
4. Anxiety and distressing vegetative symptoms occur during or after the vertigo.
5. Obsessive-compulsive type personality, labile affect, and/or mild depression are noticed.
6. Onset of the condition frequently follows a period of particular emotional stress, after a serious illness, or following an organic vestibular disorder.

**References**

28. Bronstein AM, Rudge P. Vestibular disorders due to multiple sclerosis, Arnold-Chiari malformations and basal ganglia disorders. In: Baloh RW, Halmagyi GM,
Cranial Nerve VII (The Vestibulocochlear Nerve)


Localization in Clinical Neurology

75. Hester RB III, Farris BK. Acetazolamide in the treat-
ment of abnormal oculovestibular response. Am J
76. Hoistad DL, Hain TC. Central hearing loss with a bilat-
eral inferior colliculus lesion. Audiol Neurootol
77. Huang MH, Huang CC, Ryu SJ, et al. Sudden bilat-
eral hearing impairment in vertebrobasilar occlusive
78. Iizuka O, Suzuki K, Endo K, et al. Pure word deaf-
ness and pure anarthria in a patient with frontotempo-
79. Imai T, Ito M, Takeda N, et al. Natural course of the
remissions of vertigo in patients with benign paroxys-
80. Iso T, Ito T, Murai H, et al. Paroxysmal tinnitus and
nystagmus accompanied by facial spasm. Surg Neuro-
81. Jen JC, Baloh RW. Familial episodic ataxia: a model
for nystagmus vertigo. Ann NY Acad Sci 2009;1164:
252–256.
82. Jeong HS, Oh JY, Kim JS, et al. Periodic alternating
nystagmus in isolated nodular infarction. Neuro-
hearing loss associated with interferon. Neuro-
84. Kattah JC, Talkad AV, Wang DZ, et al. HINTS to
the diagnosis stroke in the acute vestibular syndrome:
three-step bedside oculomotor examination more sensi-
tive than early MRI diffusion-weighted imaging.
85. Keane JR. Ocular skew deviation. Analysis of 100
among patients with dizziness, vertigo, and imbalance
in the emergency department: a population-based study.
deviation ischemia of medial medullary oblongata—
283.
ease gene linked to chromosome 12p12.3. Am J Med
89. Koopman AH, Dickson AC, Chu RC, et al. The
pathogenesis of superficial siderosis of the central nerv-
90. Lamska DJ, Lamska MJ, Mendez MF. Brainstem audi-


Strupp M, Brandt T, Steddin S. Horizontal canal benign paroxysmal positioning vertigo. Reversible


175. Wagner W, Fehrmann A. Association of retinal vasculitis (Eales' disease) and Ménière-like vestibulocochlear symptoms. Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol 2006;263(2):100–104.


Anatomy of Cranial Nerve IX (Glossopharyngeal Nerve)

The glossopharyngeal nerve contains motor, sensory, and parasympathetic fibers. The nerve emerges from the posterior lateral sulcus of the medulla oblongata dorsal to the inferior olive in close relation with cranial nerve X (the vagus nerve) and the bulbar fibers of cranial nerve XI (the spinal accessory nerve) (Fig. 12.1) [6,31]. These three nerves then travel together through the jugular foramen. Within or distal to this foramen, the glossopharyngeal nerve widens at the superior and the petrous ganglia and then descends on the lateral side of the pharynx, passing between the internal carotid artery and the internal jugular vein. The nerve winds around the lower border of the stylopharyngeus muscle (which it supplies) and then penetrates the pharyngeal constrictor muscles to reach the base of the tongue.

The motor fibers originate from the rostral nucleus ambiguus and innervate the stylopharyngeus muscle (a pharyngeal elevator) and (with the vagus nerve) the constrictor muscles of the pharynx.

The sensory fibers carried in the glossopharyngeal nerve include taste afferents, supplying the posterior third of the tongue and the pharynx, and general visceral afferents from the posterior third of the tongue, tonsillary region, posterior palatal arch, soft palate, nasopharynx, and tragus of the ear. By way of the tympanic branch of the glossopharyngeal nerve (Jacobson’s nerve), sensation is supplied to the tympanic membrane, eustachian tube, and the mastoid region. Taste afferents and general visceral afferent fibers have their cell bodies in the petrous ganglion and terminate mainly in the nucleus of the solitary tract (the rostral terminating fibers convey taste, and the caudal terminating fibers convey general visceral sensation); exteroceptive afferents have their cell bodies in the superior and petrous ganglia and terminate in the spinal nucleus of the trigeminal nerve. The glossopharyngeal nerve also carries chemoreceptive and baroreceptive afferents from the carotid body (chemoreceptors) and carotid sinus (baroreceptors), respectively, by way of the carotid sinus nerve (nerve of Hering).

Clinical Evaluation of Cranial Nerve IX

Motor Function
Stylopharyngeal function is difficult to assess. Motor paresis may be negligible with glossopharyngeal nerve lesions, although mild dysphagia may occur and the palatal arch may be somewhat lower at rest on the side of glossopharyngeal injury. (However, the palate elevates symmetrically with vocalization.)

Sensory Function
The integrity of taste sensation may be tested over the posterior third of the tongue and is lost ipsilaterally with nerve lesions. Sensation (pain, soft touch) is tested on the soft palate, posterior third of the tongue, tonsillary regions, and pharyngeal wall. These areas may be ipsilaterally anesthetic with glossopharyngeal lesions.

Reflex Function
The pharyngeal or gag reflex is tested by stimulating the posterior pharyngeal wall, tonsillar area, or base of the tongue. The response is tongue retraction associated with elevation and constriction of the pharyngeal musculature. The palatal reflex consists of elevation of the soft palate and ipsilateral deviation of the uvula with stimulation of the soft palate. The
afferent arcs of these reflexes probably involve the glossopharyngeal nerve, whereas the efferent arcs involve both the glossopharyngeal and vagus nerves. Unilateral absence of these reflexes is seen with glossopharyngeal nerve lesions.

**Autonomic Function**

Salivary secretion (from the parotid gland) may be decreased, absent, or occasionally increased with glossopharyngeal lesions, but these changes are difficult to demonstrate without specialized quantitative studies.

**Localization of Lesions Affecting the Glossopharyngeal Nerve**

Lesions affecting the glossopharyngeal nerve also usually involve the vagus and therefore syndromes affecting both nerves are much more common than nerve lesions occurring in relative isolation.

**Supranuclear Lesions**

Supranuclear lesions, if unilateral, do not result in any neurologic deficit because of bilateral corticobulbar input to the nucleus ambiguus. However, bilateral corticobulbar lesions (pseudo-bulbar palsy) result in severe dysphagia [16] along with other pseudo-bulbar signs (e.g., pathologic laughter and crying, spastic tongue, explosive spastic dysarthria). With stimulation, the gag reflex may be depressed or markedly exaggerated, resulting in severe retching and even vomiting.

**Nuclear and Intramedullary Lesions**

These lesions include syringobulbia, demyelinating disease, vascular disease, motor neuron disease, and malignancy. Such lesions commonly involve other cranial nerves, especially the vagus, and other brainstem structures (e.g., Wallenberg syndrome) and are therefore localized by “the company they keep.”

**Extradural Lesions**

**CEREBELLOPONTINE ANGLE SYNDROME**

The glossopharyngeal nerve may be injured by lesions, especially acoustic tumors, occurring in the cerebellopontine angle. Here there may be glossopharyngeal involvement associated with tinnitus, deafness, and vertigo (cranial nerve VIII), facial sensory abnormalities (cranial nerve V), and occasionally other cranial nerve or cerebellar involvement.
JUGULAR FORAMEN SYNDROME
(VERNET’S SYNDROME)
Lesions at the jugular foramen, especially glomus jugulare tumors and basal skull fractures, injure cranial nerves IX, X, and XI, which travel through this foramen. Other etiologies include neoruma, metastasis to the skull base, cholesteatoma, meningioma, infection, and giant cell arteritis [12]. Vernet’s syndrome consists of the following:
1. Ipsilateral trapezius and sternocleidomastoid paresis (cranial nerve XI)
2. Dysphonia, dysphagia, depressed gag reflex, and palatal droop on the affected side associated with homolateral vocal cord paralysis, loss of taste on the posterior third of the tongue on the involved side, and anesthesia of the ipsilateral posterior third of the tongue, soft palate, uvula, pharynx, and larynx (cranial nerves IX and X)
3. Often dull, unilateral aching pain localized behind the ear
Occipital condylar fracture may cause paralysis of cranial nerves IX and X [36].

LESIONS WITHIN THE RETROPHARYNGEAL AND RETROPAROTID SPACE
The glossopharyngeal nerve may be injured in the retropharyngeal or retroparotid space by neoplasms (e.g., nasopharyngeal carcinoma), abscesses, adenopathy, aneurysms [35], trauma (e.g., birth injury [13]), or surgical procedures (e.g., carotid endarterectomy). Resulting syndromes include the Collet-Sicard syndrome (affecting cranial nerves IX, X, XI, and XII) and Villaret’s syndrome (affecting cranial nerves IX, X, XI, and XII, the sympathetic chain, and occasionally cranial nerve VII). The glossopharyngeal nerve may rarely be damaged in isolation by retropharyngeal or retroparotid space lesions resulting in a “pure” glossopharyngeal syndrome (mild dysphagia, depressed gag reflex, mild palatal droop, loss of taste on the posterior third of the tongue, glossopharyngeal distribution anesthesia). For example, traumatic internal maxillary artery dissection and pseudoaneurysm may present with isolated glossopharyngeal nerve palsy [1].

Glossopharyngeal (Vagoglossopharyngeal) Neuralgia
Glossopharyngeal neuralgia [5,8,32] refers to a unilateral pain (usually stabbing, sharp, and paroxysmal) located in the field of sensory distribution of the glossopharyngeal or vagus nerves. Patients usually describe an abrupt, severe pain in the throat or ear that lasts seconds to minutes and is often triggered by chewing, coughing, talking, yawning, swallowing, and eating certain foods (e.g., highly spiced foods).

The pain may occasionally be more persistent and have a dull aching or burning quality. Other areas (e.g., larynx, tongue, tonsils, face, jaw) may also be affected.

The attacks of glossopharyngeal pain may occasionally be associated with coughing paroxysms, excessive salivation, hoarseness, and, rarely, syncope [10,32,39]. Occasionally, loss of awareness associated with clonic jerks of the extremities may occur [21]. The syncopal episodes may possibly result from reflex bradycardia and asystole due to stimulation of the tractus solitarius and dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus by impulses originating in glossopharyngeal afferents.

Vagoglossopharyngeal neuralgia is often “idiopathic” and may be related to ephaptic excitation of the glossopharyngeal and vagus nerves; however, lesions in the posterior fossa or anywhere along the peripheral distribution of the glossopharyngeal nerve (e.g., tumor, infection, trauma) may also cause the syndrome. Glossopharyngeal neuralgia was caused in one patient by compression of the lower cranial nerves and brainstem by the displaced left cerebellar tonsil with Chiari I malformation [20]. Multiple sclerosis is an extremely rare etiology for this syndrome [27] (unlike its relatively common association with trigeminal neuralgia).

Anatomy of Cranial Nerve X (Vagus Nerve)
The vagus nerve or pneumogastric nerve contains motor, sensory, and parasympathetic nerve fibers [6,31]. The six to eight rootlets of the vagus nerve emerge from the posterior sulcus of the lateral medulla oblongata dorsal to the inferior olive in close association with the glossopharyngeal nerve (Fig. 12.1). These vagal rootlets form a single trunk that leaves the skull by way of the jugular foramen in a dural sheath that also contains the spinal accessory nerve. Within, or just inferior to, the jugular foramen are the two vagal ganglia: the jugular (general somatic afferent) and the nodose (special and general visceral afferent). Between the two ganglia, the auricular ramus (nerve of Arnold) of the vagus nerve is given off; this branch then traverses the mastoid process and innervates the skin of the concha of the external ear. At this point the vagus also gives off the meningeal ramus, which runs to the dura mater of the posterior fossa, and the pharyngeal ramus, which forms the pharyngeal plexus with the glossopharyngeal nerve and sends motor fibers to the muscles of the pharynx and the soft palate (except the stylopharyngeus and tensor veli palatini muscles). The superior laryngeal nerve arises from the vagus near the...
nodose ganglion and divides into a predominantly motor external ramus (to the cricothyroid muscle) and an internal ramus (which pierces the thyrohyoid membrane and sends sensory fibers to the larynx).

In the neck, the vagus nerve proper descends within a sheath common to the internal carotid artery and the internal jugular vein. Within the neck, the vagus gives off the cardiac rami, which follow the carotid arteries down to the aorta and contribute fibers to the cardiac plexus. At the root of the neck, the recurrent laryngeal nerves are given off and pursue different courses on the two sides. The right recurrent laryngeal nerve bends upward behind the subclavian artery to ascend in the tracheoesophageal sulcus, whereas the left recurrent laryngeal nerve passes beneath the aortic arch to attain this sulcus. The recurrent laryngeal nerves then divide into anterior and posterior rami, which supply all of the muscles of the larynx except the cricothyroid muscle (supplied by the external ramus of the superior laryngeal nerve).

The vagus nerve enters the thorax, crossing over the subclavian artery on the right side and traveling between the left common carotid and subclavian arteries on the left side. The right nerve then passes downward near the brachiocephalic trunk and trachea and behind the right brachiocephalic vein and superior vena cava to the posterior lung root. The left nerve travels between the left common carotid and subclavian artery, passes over the aortic arch, and reaches the left lung root. In the posterior mediastinum both nerves send fibers to the pulmonary and esophagealplexuses and then enter the abdomen by way of the esophageal opening of the diaphragm (the left nerve in front of the esophagus, the right nerve behind it). The vagi terminate by innervating the abdominal viscera.

The motor fibers carried in the vagus nerve arise from the dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus and the nucleus ambiguus. The dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus is situated on the floor of the fourth ventricle lateral to the hypoglossal nucleus. This nucleus gives rise to preganglionic parasympathetic fibers that innervate the pharynx, esophagus, trachea, bronchi, lungs, heart, stomach, small intestine, ascending and transverse colon, liver, and pancreas. The nucleus ambiguus is located in the reticular formation of the medulla medial to the spinal tract and nucleus of the trigeminal nerve. Fibers from this nucleus supply all of the striated musculature of the soft palate, pharynx, and larynx except the tensor veli palatini (crani al nerve V) and stylopharyngeus (crania l nerve IX) muscles. The cortical centers for control of vagal motor function are located in the lower precentral gyri, with supranuclear innervation predominantly crossed but bilateral.

The sensory fibers carried in the vagus nerve have their perikarya in the jugular and nodose ganglia. Within the nodose ganglion are cells whose fibers carry taste sensation from the epiglottis, hard and soft palates, and pharynx. The axons of these ganglion cells terminate in the nucleus solitarius of the medulla. General visceral sensations from the oropharynx, larynx, and linings of the thoracic and abdominal viscera have their cells of origin in the nodose ganglion, which also projects to the nucleus solitarius (nucleus parasolitarius). Exteroceptive sensation from the concha of the ear is carried by the vagus (jugular ganglion) to terminate in the descending (spinal) nucleus of the trigeminal nerve.

Clinical Evaluation of Cranial Nerve X

Motor Function

The striated muscles of the soft palate (except the tensor veli palatini), pharynx, and larynx are innervated by the vagus nerve. The soft palate and uvula are examined at rest and with phonation; with phonation, the palate should elevate symmetrically with no uvular deviation. Pharyngeal function is evaluated by observing pharyngeal contraction during phonation and swallowing and by noting the character of the voice, by noting the ease of respiration and cough, and by direct observation of laryngeal movements during laryngoscopy.

With unilateral vagal lesions, there is ipsilateral flattening of the palatal arch; with phonation, the ipsilateral palate fails to elevate, and the uvula is retracted toward the nonparalyzed side. Dysphagia and articulation disturbances (a “nasal twang” to the voice) may occur, and during phonation only the upper pharynx is elevated. The ipsilateral vocal cord assumes the cadaveric position (midway between adduction and abduction), and although voluntary coughing may be impaired, there is little dyspnea.

With bilateral vagal lesions, the palate droops bilaterally with no palatal movement, on phonation. On speaking, air escapes from the oral to the nasal cavity, giving the voice a “nasal” quality. Bilateral pharyngeal involvement results in profound dysphagia, more pronounced for liquids, which tend to be diverted into the nasal cavity. The voice is hoarse and weak, coughing is poor or not possible, and respiration is severely embarrassed.

Sensory Function

Sensory function of the vagus nerve cannot be tested adequately because the area of supply overlaps that of other cranial nerves (e.g., the pinna), some structures
are inaccessible (e.g., the meninges), and there is difficulty in testing the epiglottis for taste function.

**Reflex Function**
The afferent limb of the pharyngeal reflex (gag reflex) runs in the glossopharyngeal nerve, and the efferent limb runs in the glossopharyngeal and vagus nerves. Therefore, unilateral vagal lesions depress the ipsilateral gag reflex by interrupting the efferent arc.

### Localization of Lesions Affecting the Vagus Nerve

#### Supranuclear Lesions
Unilateral cerebral hemispheric lesions (lower precentral gyrus) rarely cause any vagal dysfunction because the supranuclear control is bilateral. Rarely, dysphagia may occur with a unilateral precentral lesion [26]. Unilateral palatal paralysis without notable weakness of the extremities has been described with a cerebral infarct affecting the superior segment of the corona radiata [18]. The site of the lesion corresponded to the corticofugal motor tract from the motor cortex to the genu of the internal capsule.

Bilateral upper motor neuron lesions result in *pseudo-bulbar palsy*, in which dysphagia and spastic dysarthria are prominent. Emotional incontinence with pathologic crying is common. The gag reflex may be depressed or exaggerated.

#### Nuclear Lesions and Lesions Within the Brainstem
Lesions of the nucleus ambiguus may occur with vascular insults (lateral medullary or Wallenberg syndrome), tumors, syringobulbia, motor neuron disease, and inflammatory disease. Nuclear lesions result in ipsilateral palatal, pharyngeal, and laryngeal paralysis that is usually associated with affection of other cranial nerve nuclei, roots, and long tracts. When only the more cephalad portion of the nucleus ambiguus is injured, laryngeal function is spared (palatopharyngeal paralysis of Avellis) owing to the somatotopic organization of this motor nucleus. Vocal cord dysfunction (hoarseness, hypophonia, and short phonation time, nocturnal nonproductive cough, and attacks of inspiratory stridor due to laryngeal spasm, choking, and paroxysmal dyspnea) occurs rarely with amyotrophic lateral sclerosis [38].

#### Lesions within the Posterior Fossa
The vagus nerve may also be damaged where it emerges from the medulla. Lesions at this location usually also involve the glossopharyngeal, spinal accessory, and hypoglossal nerves and include primary (e.g., glomus jugulare) and metastatic tumors, infections (e.g., meningitis, otitis), carcinomatous meningitis, sarcoidosis, Guillain-Barré syndrome, and trauma. The syndromes that occur most commonly include the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syndrome</th>
<th>Cranial Nerves Involved</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jugular foramen syndrome of Vernet</td>
<td>IX, X, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schmidt’s syndrome</td>
<td>X, XI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hughlings Jackson syndrome</td>
<td>X, XI, XII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collet-Sicard syndrome</td>
<td>IX, X, XI, XII</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In one case, a cerebellopontine angle arachnoid cyst presented with hoarseness (unilateral vocal cord paralysis) and dysphagia secondary to isolated compression of the vagus nerve [15].

#### Lesions Affecting the Vagus Nerve Proper
The trunk of the vagus nerve may be injured in the neck and thorax by tumors, aneurysms of the internal carotid artery, trauma, and enlarged lymph nodes. Isolated vagus nerve paralysis due to spontaneous internal carotid artery dissection has been described [28]. These injuries result in complete ipsilateral vocal cord paralysis associated with unilateral laryngeal anesthesia. Vocal cord paresis and diaphragmatic dysfunction are severe and frequent symptoms of Charcot-Marie-Tooth disease due to mutations in the ganglioside-induced differentiation-associated protein 1 gene (GDAP1) [33].

#### Lesions of the Superior Laryngeal Nerve
The superior laryngeal nerve may be damaged by trauma, surgery, or tumor. Lesions of this nerve result in few clinical findings because this branch is primarily sensory. The cricothyroid muscle is innervated by this branch, however, and its involvement may result in mild hoarseness with some decrease in voice strength.

#### Lesions of the Recurrent Laryngeal Nerve
The recurrent laryngeal nerve is susceptible to injury throughout its intrathoracic course by aneurysms of the aortic arch or subclavian artery, enlarged tracheobronchial lymph nodes, mediastinal tumors, and operative damage (e.g., thyroidectomy) [14]. The left recurrent laryngeal nerve is longer than the right and is therefore damaged more often. In up to one-fourth...
to one-third of cases of isolated recurrent laryngeal palsy, there is no discoverable cause [4,17]; however, with the advent of modern neuroimaging, the group of patients with idiopathic vocal cord paralysis should grow smaller [19]. Breast cancer extending behind the carotid sheath at the C6 level may produce a combination of recurrent laryngeal nerve paralysis, paralysis of the phrenic and vagal nerves, and a preganglionic Horner syndrome (Rowland Payne syndrome) [2,37].

Unilateral recurrent laryngeal nerve injury results in hoarseness that is often transient. A flaccid dysphonia [9] results, with voice quality defects of harshness and breathiness with short phrases, reduced loudness, and mild inhalatory stridor noted during contextual speech. Palatopharyngeal and articulatory functions are normal. Vocal prolongation ("ah...") may result in diplophonias, or two pitch levels heard simultaneously, thought to be due to unequal frequency of vibration between vocal cords [9]. With unilateral recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy, unilateral paralysis of all laryngeal muscles (except the cricothyroid, which is innervated by the superior laryngeal nerve) occurs. On laryngoscopy, the paralyzed vocal cord lies near the midline, whereas the normal cord comes across to meet the midline when phonation is attempted. The adductor muscles of the larynx tend to be affected first with peripheral recurrent laryngeal nerve injury (Semon's law).

Bilateral recurrent laryngeal palsies [7,11,25] are usually noted after thyroidectomy but may also be seen with polyneuropathy or carcinoma of the thyroid or esophagus and are always symptomatic. Bilateral abduction paralysis may produce severe approximation of the vocal cords associated with airway limitation, which often necessitates tracheostomy. Inspiratory stridor and dyspnea on exertion are common. The voice is weak but remains clear; when the two vocal cords cannot be brought into contact, aphony results. Patients with spinocerebellar ataxia type I often have vocal cord abductor paralysis associated with mild dysphagia and nocturnal stridor [34]. Two brothers with adult-onset familial laryngeal abductor paralysis, cerebellar ataxia, and pure motor neuropathy have been described [3]. They presented with late-onset cerebellar ataxia and severe dysphonia, the latter due to severe laryngeal abductor paralysis. Neurophysiologic studies showed a pure motor neuropathy.

Acute vocal cord paralysis may occur in patients with hereditary neuropathy with liability to pressure palsies [29]. A patient with this entity developed the acute onset of aphony due to recurrent laryngeal palsy triggered by sleeping in the prone position.

### Syncope from Glossopharyngeal or Vagal Metastasis

Syncope with or without pain may be the only symptom of metastatic involvement of the glossopharyngeal or vagus nerve [24,30]. The condition commonly accompanies head and neck tumors and is particularly likely when the tumor recurs after initial treatment, especially after radical neck dissection. The tumor affects the carotid sinus nerve fibers on the carotid artery or the more proximal nerve fibers at the skull base. Affected patients complain of severe paroxysms of pain lasting from a few minutes to 30 minutes. The pain may be in the neck, the ear, or the side of the head, and is accompanied by syncope, the result of sudden hypotension. The hypotension is sometimes, but not always, accompanied by bradycardia and occasionally by cardiac arrest. The disorder may occur once every few weeks to several times per day. This disorder is probably a result of aberrant discharge of the damaged nerve, which stimulates brain nuclei to inhibit sympathetic vasoconstrictor tone. Sometimes the condition resolves spontaneously as the tumor progresses to completely destroy the nerve [30]. An aneurysm of the extracranial internal carotid artery may rarely present with the syndrome of glossopharyngeal pain and syncope [23]. Another cause of syncope related to metastatic disease is swallow syncope [22]. This rare syndrome can result from the involvement of glossopharyngeal or vagal afferents or from metastases to the esophagus. The patient suddenly loses consciousness during a hard swallow, usually because of intense bradycardia caused by stimulation of baroreceptor nerves [22].

### References

Cranial Nerves IX and X (The Glossopharyngeal and Vagus Nerves)


Anatomy of Cranial Nerve XI (Spinal Accessory Nerve)

This purely motor nerve (Fig. 13.1) [8,51] originates partly from the medulla (cranial part or internal ramus) and partly from the spinal cord (spinal root or external ramus). The cranial root arises from cells situated in the caudal part of the nucleus ambiguous of the medulla. Its fibers emerge from the lateral medulla below the roots of the vagus. The spinal part arises from a column of cells (the accessory nucleus) that extends from the first to the sixth cervical cord segments in the dorsolateral part of the ventral horn of the spinal cord. The column of cells and lower motor neuron roots of the spinal accessory nerve are somatotopically arranged: cord levels C1 and C2 innervate predominantly the ipsilateral sternocleidomastoid muscle, and levels C3 and C4 innervate primarily the ipsilateral trapezius [42]. These spinal fibers pass through the lateral funiculus, leaving the cord between the dentate ligament and the dorsal spinal roots. They then unite to form the spinal part and ascend in the subarachnoid space entering the skull through the foramen magnum.

The cranial and spinal roots unite and exit from the skull through the jugular foramen. The cranial portion then branches off as the internal ramus and joins the vagus nerve to supply the pharynx and larynx. The external ramus enters the neck between the internal carotid artery and the internal jugular vein. It then penetrates and supplies the sternocleidomastoid muscle and emerges near the middle of the posterior border of the muscle. The nerve then crosses the posterior cervical triangle to supply the trapezius muscle. In its course the nerve receives branches from the second, third, and fourth cervical nerves. The innervation of the sternocleidomastoid muscle may be more complex than is usually quoted. For example, there was residual sternocleidomastoid movement in 9 out of 15 cases where a division of the spinal components of the accessory nerve and the upper cervical motor roots was made as treatment for spasmodic torticollis [23]. It is postulated that this residual innervation was likely of vagal origin.

The supramascular innervation of the trapezius and sternocleidomastoid muscles probably originates in the lower precentral gyrus. The corticobulbar fibers to the trapezius are crossed, and thus one cerebral hemisphere supplies the contralateral trapezius muscle. The course of the fibers controlling the sternocleidomastoid muscle is unknown, but the fibers are thought to terminate chiefly in the ipsilateral nuclei. Three alternative pathways for this ipsilateral innervation have been postulated, as follows [20]:

1. The innervation may be truly ipsilateral with fibers descending ipsilaterally from hemisphere to nuclei.
2. The pathway may start in one hemisphere and cross the corpus callosum to the opposite hemisphere, which, in turn, controls movement on the contralateral side.
3. A double decussation may exist. The pathway to the sternocleidomastoid muscle may cross from the hemisphere to the opposite pons and then return, below the first cervical level, to the side of the cord ipsilateral to the hemisphere of origin [5,27,44].

Others have suggested that the sternal head of the sternocleidomastoid (which turns the head to the contralateral side) receives bilateral cortical innervation, mainly from the ipsilateral cortex with a double decussation, whereas the clavicular head of the muscle (which tilts the head to the ipsilateral side) appears to have a distinct cortical representation [14]. These findings support the concept that each cerebral hemisphere controls muscles that result in movements toward the contralateral hemispace rather than simply controlling the contralateral muscle groups [14]. For example, only mild weakness of the right sternocleidomastoid muscle was noted with Wada testing of the right carotid artery; therefore, bilateral hemispheric innervation of the sternocleidomastoid must be present [13]. A weakness of only the sternocleidomastoid ipsilateral to the side of the carotid injection suggests that the ipsilateral hemisphere is more involved in the cortical innervation of the ipsilateral sternocleidomastoid muscle than the contralateral muscle [13].

DeToledo and David noted the following [12]:

1. The XI nucleus has a rostral and a caudal portion.
2. Analogous to the VII nerve nucleus, the rostral portion receives projections from both cerebral hemispheres, whereas the caudal portion is innervated preferentially by the contralateral hemisphere.
Sternocleidomastoid Muscle

The sternocleidomastoid muscle flexes the head and turns it from side to side. When one muscle contracts, the head is drawn toward the ipsilateral shoulder and rotated so that the occiput is pulled toward the side of the contracting muscle. The right sternocleidomastoid is thus tested by having the patient rotate his or her head to the left against resistance while the examiner notes the muscle’s contraction by inspection and palpation. Both sternocleidomastoid muscles contracting simultaneously flex the head (tested by exerting pressure on the patient’s forehead while the patient attempts anteroflexion of the neck).

Trapezius Muscle

The trapezius muscle retracts the head and also elevates, rotates, and retracts the scapula. It also assists in raising the abducted arm above the horizontal. This muscle is tested by having the patient shrug his or her shoulders against resistance, and comparing the two sides by observation and palpation.

Localization of Lesions Affecting Cranial Nerve XI

Lesions of the spinal accessory nerve result in paresis and atrophy of the sternocleidomastoid and the trapezius muscles. Unilateral paresis of the sternocleidomastoid does not affect the position of the head at rest. There is weakness in turning the head to the opposite side, and when the patient flexes the head, it rotates slightly toward the unaffected side because
the action of the opposite sternocleidomastoid muscle is unopposed. Bilateral sternocleidomastoid paresis causes weakness of neck flexion, with the head tending to fall backward when the patient attempts to stand erect.

Unilateral *trapezius* paresis due to spinal accessory nerve lesions affects predominantly the upper trapezius fibers (the part not supplied by the cervical plexus). The shoulder is lower on the affected side at rest, and the scapula is displaced downward and laterally with its vertebral border slightly winged. There is paresis of shoulder elevation and retraction, and the patient cannot raise the arm above the horizontal after it has been abducted by the supraspinatus and deltoid muscles. Trapezius atrophy often develops with chronic accessory nerve injury; rarely, neurogenic hypertrophy of the trapezius muscle may develop with accessory nerve injury, perhaps due to excessive spontaneous muscle activity [45]. Bilateral trapezius paresis results in weakness of neck extension, with the head tending to fall forward when the patient attempts to stand erect.

Because the spinal accessory nerve is a purely motor nerve (except for some proprioceptive afferent fibers), nerve lesions do not result in sensory disturbance.

**Supranuclear Lesions**

In hemispheric lesions resulting in contralateral hemiplegia, the trapezius muscle on the side of the hemiplegia is paretic. However, the head is turned *away from* the hemiplegic side indicating paresis of the sternocleidomastoid muscle on the side opposite the hemiplegia (i.e., ipsilateral to the cerebral lesion). Focal seizures, particularly those arising in areas 8 and 9 of the cerebral cortex, cause contraction of the ipsilateral sternocleidomastoid muscle as the head turns to the side contralateral to the epileptogenic lesion (adverse seizures). Head turning without head tilting, the most common pattern observed, has been explained as an isolated contraction of the sternomastoid portion of the muscle, with less contribution from the cleidomastoid portion, which tilts the axis of the head forward and toward the ipsilateral side while exerting less rotational force [28]. Because the sternocleidomastoid muscle receives a strong input from the ipsilateral cerebral hemisphere, cortical, capsular, and high brainstem lesions affecting corticobulbar fibers may result in decreased strength on the head turning away from the side of the lesion [44,66].

Bender et al. suggest that the pathway for sternocleidomastoid control crosses from the hemisphere to the opposite pons and then returns to the side of the cord ipsilateral to the hemisphere of origin [5].

Geschwind points out that this second decussation may well be located in the decussation of the pyramids and that the side of sternocleidomastoid paresis in relation to the side of the hemiplegia may be of localizing significance [20]. That is, when the hemiplegic side is contralateral to the paretic sternocleidomastoid muscle, a hemispheric lesion is likely, the descending pathway being affected above its double decussation. On the other hand, hemiplegia associated with ipsilateral (to the hemiplegia) sternocleidomastoid paresis implies a lesion at or below the pontine level (i.e., after the first decussation on the descending pathway). Thus, medullary lesions affecting corticobulbar fibers may result in decreased strength on the head turning toward the lesion [44].

Cases of dissociated weakness of the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles with neurologic lesions have been described, including several syndromes that are of localizing value [42]:

1. **Weakness of the trapezius on one side associated with weakness of the sternocleidomastoid on the other side (dissociated weakness)** indicates an upper motor neuron lesion ipsilateral to the weak sternocleidomastoid and above the oculomotor complex.

2. **Weakness of the trapezius on one side with sparing of the sternocleidomastoid muscles** indicates a ventral brainstem lesion (the supranuclear fibers to the trapezius are ventral to those to the sternocleidomastoid), a lower cervical cord lesion (due to the somatotopic arrangement of the lower motor neurons and nuclear cell column of the trapezius being below that of the sternocleidomastoid), or a lower spinal accessory root lesion (sparring upper roots to the sternocleidomastoid).

3. **Weakness of the sternocleidomastoid with trapezius sparing** indicates a lesion of the lower brainstem tegmentum (sparring ventral supranuclear fibers to the trapezius) or upper cervical accessory roots (sparring lower cervical roots to the trapezius).

4. **Weakness of the sternocleidomastoid and the trapezius muscles on the same side** indicates a contralateral brainstem lesion, an ipsilateral high cervical cord lesion, or an accessory nerve lesion before the nerve divides into its sternocleidomastoid and trapezius branches.

5. **Weakness in one muscle only** (sternocleidomastoid or trapezius) may occur with lesions of the accessory nerve distal to its bifurcation (e.g., lesion of the branch of the accessory nerve to the trapezius).

Head-turning movements have been analyzed in relation to the actions of the two divisions of the sternocleidomastoid muscle: the sternomastoid division and the cleidomastoid division [26]. The sternomastoid division runs obliquely and posteriorly from the sternum to an occipit; it acts...
372 Localization in Clinical Neurology

mainly on the atlantoaxial joint to rotate the head around a vertical axis so that the face points upward and outward over the contralateral shoulder. The cleidomastoid division originates from the clavicle and runs vertically to insert into the mastoid; it acts mainly on the middle cervical joints below C4 to tilt the axis of the head forward and toward the ipsilateral side, exerting little rotational force. Cleidomastoid contraction thus causes the face to point downward to the same side. When both divisions are activated simultaneously, there is an ipsiversive downward head tilt together with a contraversive rotation of the face. In 12 (75%) of 16 patients with surgically confirmed lateralized seizure foci, the face rotated upward and contraversive to the hemisphere of seizure origin, consistent with activation of the ipsilateral sternomastoid muscle. One patient showed a sustained, downward ipsiversive head tilt consistent with activation of the ipsilateral cleidomastoid muscle, and three patients had a combined ipsiversive head tilt and contraversive face rotation. No patient exhibited ipsiversive upward face rotation or contraversive head tilting, as would be expected if the contralateral sternocleidomastoid were activated. These findings indicate that hemispheric seizure foci activate one or both divisions of the ipsilateral sternocleidomastoid muscle and that accurate lateralization of the seizure focus is possible only when ictal head deviation is assessed in the context of the different actions of the two divisions [28].

Nuclear Lesions

These relatively rare lesions result in paresis with prominent atrophy and fasciculations that affect the trapezius and sternocleidomastoid muscles. The motor neurons may be preferentially attacked (e.g., motor neuron disease) or may be involved by intraparenchymal high cervical cord-low medulla lesions (e.g., intraparenchymal tumor, syringomyelia). A nuclear localization is suggested by associated medullary or upper cervical cord dysfunction (see Chapters 5 and 15).

Infra-nuclear Lesions

LESIONS WITHIN THE SKULL AND FORAMEN MAGNUM

Lesions of the spinal accessory nerve at the foramen magnum and within the skull also involve neighboring cranial nerves IX (glossopharyngeal) and ten (vagus) and XII (hypoglossal). Thus, the trapezius and sternocleidomastoid paresis is associated with dysphonia and dysphagia, loss of taste on the ipsilateral posterior third of the tongue, ipsilateral palatal paresis, an ipsilateral depressed gag reflex, ipsilateral vocal cord paralysis, and ipsilateral tongue paresis and atrophy (the protruded tongue deviates to the side of the lesion). A mass lesion in this location may also directly compress the upper cervical cord or lower medulla, resulting in “intramedullary” dysfunction. The most common etiologies for spinal accessory nerve involvement within the skull and foramen magnum include extramedullary neoplasms, meningitis, and trauma.

JUGULAR FORAMEN SYNDROME (VERNET’S SYNDROME) AND ASSOCIATED SYNDROMES

The spinal accessory nerve enters the jugular foramen accompanied by cranial nerve IX (glossopharyngeal nerve) and cranial nerve X (vagus nerve). Therefore, lesions at the jugular foramen (e.g., basal skull fracture, tumors, infections, sarcoidosis) [9,22,33,49,61] result in a syndrome (Vernet’s syndrome) characterized by the following:

1. Ipsilateral trapezius and sternocleidomastoid paresis and atrophy
2. Dysphonia and dysphagia with an absent or depressed gag reflex and a palatal droop on the affected side; paralysis of the homolateral vocal cord
3. Loss of taste on the posterior third of the tongue on the involved side
4. Depressed sensation (e.g., anesthesis) on the posterior third of the tongue, soft palate, uvula, pharynx, and larynx

Lesions affecting the spinal accessory nerve just after it leaves the skull (in the retro-parotid or retropharyngeal space) may also involve cranial nerves IX, X, and XII and the nearby sympathetic chain in variable combinations. The resulting syndromes vary and may also be seen with lesions of multiple cranial nerves within the skull and even with intramedullary lesions. Involvement of all four of the lower cranial nerves (IX through XII) results in the Collet-Sicard syndrome (all findings are ipsilateral to the site of injury), which consists of the following:

1. Paralysis of the trapezius and sternocleidomastoid (cranial nerve XI)
2. Paralysis of the vocal cord (cranial nerve X) and pharynx (cranial nerve IX)
3. Hemiparalysis of the tongue (cranial nerve XII)
4. Loss of taste on the posterior third of the tongue (cranial nerve IX)
5. Hemianesthesia of the palate, pharynx, and larynx (cranial nerves IX and X)

A case of Collet-Sicard syndrome has been described associated with traumatic atlas fractures and congenital basilar invagination [26].

The descriptions of other syndromes involving cranial nerves IX through XII and the sympathetic
Iatrogenic injury to the spinal accessory nerve is, thus, not uncommon during neck surgery involving the posterior cervical triangle, because its superficial course here makes it susceptible. In a retrospective review of 111 patients with spinal accessory nerve injury, the most frequent injury mechanism was iatrogenic (103 patients, 93%), and 82 (80%) of these injuries involved lymph node biopsies [35]. Eight injuries were caused by stretch (five patients) and laceration (three patients).

Patients may develop manifestations of neurovascular compression upon arm abduction, associated with unilateral droopy shoulder and trapezius muscle weakness caused by iatrogenic spinal accessory neuropathies following cervical lymph node biopsies [1]. One patient developed a cold, numb hand with complete axillary artery occlusion when his arm was abducted to 90 degrees. Another patient complained of paresthesias in digits 4 and 5 of the right hand, worsened by elevation of the arm, with nerve conduction findings of right lower trunk plexopathy. These two cases demonstrate that unilateral droopy shoulder secondary to trapezius muscle weakness may cause compression of the thoracic outlet structures [1].

Weakness of neck extension against gravity with or without involvement of neck flexion has been called the floppy head syndrome [38], the dropped head syndrome [24,59], or head ptosis [64]. The etiologies for this syndrome include myasthenia gravis (which often affects neck flexors more than extensors), Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome, motor neuron disease, chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy, syringomyelia, polymyositis, dermatomyositis, fascioscapulohumeral muscular dystrophy, carnitine deficiency, adult-onset nemaline

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syndrome (Eponym)</th>
<th>Nerves Affected</th>
<th>Location of Lesion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Collet-Sicard</td>
<td>Cranial nerves IX, X, XI, XII</td>
<td>Retroparotid space usually; lesion may be intracranial or extracranial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Villaret’s</td>
<td>Cranial nerves IX, X, XI, XII plus sympathetic chain; VII occasionally involved</td>
<td>Retroparotid or retropharyngeal space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schmidt’s</td>
<td>Cranial nerves X and XI</td>
<td>Usually intracranial before nerve fibers leave skull; occasionally inferior margin of jugular foramen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jackson’s</td>
<td>Cranial nerves X, XI, and XII</td>
<td>May be intraparenchymal (medulla); usually intracranial before nerve fibers leave skull</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tapia’s</td>
<td>Cranial nerves X and XII (cranial nerve XI and the sympathetic chain occasionally involved)</td>
<td>Usually high in neck</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garin’s (hemibase syndrome)</td>
<td>All cranial nerves on one side (often incomplete)</td>
<td>Often infiltrative; arising from base of skull (especially nasopharyngeal carcinoma)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cranial Nerve XI (The Spinal Accessory Nerve)
Etiologies of the Floppy Head or Dropped Head Syndrome

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 13.2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Central</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syringomyelia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parkinson disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neuropathic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motor neuron disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postpolio syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Neuromuscular junction</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myasthenia gravis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Myopathic</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polymyositis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dermatomyositis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inclusion body myositis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fascioscapulohumeral muscular dystrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carnitine deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adult-onset nemaline myopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mitochondrial myopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unspecified congenital myopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothyroid myopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperparathyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myotonic dystrophy with severe hypothyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypokalemic myopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cushing's syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isolated neck extensor myopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mechanical</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervical spondylitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ankylosing spondylitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cervical hyperflexion injury (probably due to bilateral traction neurapraxia of one or more cervical dorsal rami)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After radiotherapy for Hodgkin disease</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

myopathy, hypothyroidism, hyperparathyroidism, Parkinson disease, after radiotherapy for Hodgkin disease, and a restrictive noninflammatory myopathy predominantly affecting the cervical paraspinal muscles, resulting in relatively isolated neck extensor weakness (isolated neck extensor myopathy) [2, 15, 21, 24, 29–32, 38, 40, 47, 48, 53, 55–57, 59, 63, 65]. Etiologies of the floppy head syndrome are outlined in Table 13.2.

References

and congenital hasilar invagination. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 2004;75:782–784.


Anatomy of Cranial Nerve XII (The Hypoglossal Nerve)

The hypoglossal nerve is the motor nerve of the tongue [5]. Its fibers arise from the hypoglossal nucleus, a longitudinal cell column in the paramedian medulla that lies beneath the hypoglossal trigone of the floor of the fourth ventricle. The column of cells extends from the caudal-most medulla oblongata to the medullary-pontine junction. From the hypoglossal nucleus, the nerve fibers travel in a ventrolateral direction through the medullary reticular formation and medial portion of the inferior olive, coursing immediately lateral to the medial longitudinal fasciculus, medial lemniscus, and pyramid.

The fibers of the hypoglossal nerve emerge from the medulla in the preolivary sulcus between the inferior olivary complex and the pyramid as 10 to 12 rootlets that are located medial to cranial nerves IX (the glossopharyngeal), X (the vagus), and XI (the spinal accessory). These rootlets unite into two bundles that pass separately through the dura mater and the hypoglossal canal of the skull.

After leaving the skull in the hypoglossal canal (anterior condylar foramen), the two nerve bundles unite and descend vertically through the neck to the angle of the mandible. During this course, the hypoglossal nerve is quite near the internal carotid artery and the internal jugular vein. In the neck, the nerve passes toward the hyoid bone and then turns medially toward the tongue. It courses over the internal and external carotid arteries and eventually lies beneath the digastric, stylohyoid, and mylohyoid muscles. The nerve passes between the mylohyoid and hypoglossus muscles and then breaks up into a number of branches (the muscular or lingual branches), which supply the various tongue muscles.

The descending hypoglossal ramus, which courses downward to form the ansa hypoglossi, is given off from the hypoglossal nerve proper in the neck. The ansa hypoglossi is formed by the descending hypoglossal ramus (CN XII and C1 cervical root) and the descending cervical ramus (C2 and C3 cervical roots). (The ansa hypoglossi is discussed further in Chapter 3).

The hypoglossal muscular or lingual branches supply all the intrinsic muscles of the tongue (longitudinal, transverse, and vertical muscles) and also the hypoglossus, styloglossus, genioglossus, and geniohyoid muscles (extrinsic muscles of the tongue).

Supranuclear control of the tongue [5,20] is mediated by corticobulbar fibers that originate mainly within the lower portion of the precentral gyrus (perisylvian) area. The cortical area for controlling tongue movement may be the most lateral part of the precentral gyrus lateral to the precentral knob as a small ischemic lesion, causing supranuclear tongue deviation in one patient, was located lateral to the precentral knob of the precentral gyrus [49]. The corticobulbar fibers controlling the genioglossus muscles are crossed; the other tongue muscles appear to have bilateral supranuclear control. Cortico-hypoglossal fibers branch off the main ventral pyramidal tract [42]. Cortical projections to the hypoglossal nucleus cross the midline in the pontomedullary junction and enter the hypoglossal nucleus from its lateral aspect [42].

Clinical Evaluation of Cranial Nerve XII

The clinical evaluation of cranial nerve XII function consists of observation of the tongue at rest and with protrusion and assessment of the strength and rapidity of tongue movements. Although the hypoglossal nerve does contain some proprioceptive afferents, the nerve is otherwise a purely motor efferent nerve, and thereby nerve lesions do not result in sensory abnormalities.

Unilateral lesions of the hypoglossal nerve result in paresis, atrophy, furrowing, fibrillations, and fasciculations that affect the corresponding half of the tongue. This unilateral paresis is best demonstrated by voluntary tongue protrusion, during which the tongue deviates to the side of paresis, mainly because of the unopposed action of the normal contralateral genioglossus muscle (assisted by the geniohyoid). With unilateral lesions, dysarthria and dysphagia are minimal, but difficulty with manipulating food in the mouth is often evident.

In rare cases of hypoglossal nerve damage, motor denervation induce so-called denervation pseudohypertrophy of the tongue [13]. This features extensive fatty replacement in contrast to true hypertrophy.
where there is an increase in number or size of muscle fibers.

It may be possible to distinguish between extrinsic and intrinsic tongue muscle weakness in patients with unilateral hypoglossal palsy [32]. In a patient with multiple cranial nerve palsies, including a unilateral hypoglossal nerve palsy, tongue protrusion deviated to the right [32]. When the tongue was not protruded, however, the patient could readily turn the tip of the tongue to the left but not the right. The author noted that protrusion of the tongue requires the action of extrinsic tongue muscles, whereas lateral movements of the nonprotruded tongue are accomplished by intrinsic muscles. Protrusion in the patient was accomplished by the unopposed action of the normal contralateral genioglossus, whereas the tongue tip could not be turned to the side of the lesion due to impairment of contraction of the ipsilateral intrinsic muscles (especially the superior and inferior longitudinal muscles) [32].

Bilateral lower motor neuron lesions of the tongue result in bilateral atrophy, weakness, and fibrillations of the tongue. The tongue therefore cannot be protruded voluntarily. This bilateral affection results in a marked difficulty with articulation, especially with the pronunciation of d and t phonemes. Dysphagia is prominent, and breathing difficulties may occur when the flaccid tongue falls backward to obstruct the pharynx.

Localisation of Lesions Affecting Cranial Nerve XII

Supranuclear Lesions

Lesions of the corticobulbar tract anywhere in its course from the lower precentral gyrus to the hypoglossal nuclei may result in tongue paralysis [41]. In a large study of patients with cerebral infarction, the frequency of tongue deviation was 29%, and marked facial/brachial paresis or hemiparesis was usually associated [41]. The cortical area for controlling tongue movement may be the most lateral part of the precentral gyrus lateral to the precentral knob as a small ischemic lesion, causing supranuclear tongue deviation in one patient, was located lateral to the precentral knob of the precentral gyrus [49]. Because supranuclear control of the genioglossus muscle originates mainly from the contralateral cortex, a lesion of the corticobulbar fibers above their decussation may result in weakness of the contralateral half of the tongue. Therefore, with an internal capsular lesion, the tongue may deviate toward the side of the hemiplegia. A supranuclear lesion is not accompanied by atrophy or fibrillations of the tongue.

Interruption of the cortico-lingual pathway to the tongue is crucial in the pathogenesis of dysarthria following strokes affecting the internal capsule, basis pontis, or corona radiata [43]. Sudden isolated dysarthria may occur with lacunar infarcts affecting the contralateral corona radiata or internal capsule, which interrupts in isolation the cortico-lingual pathways to the tongue (central monoparesis of the tongue) [44].

Pontine lesions at the ventral paramedian base close to the midline affect the contralateral corticohypoglossal projections, whereas lateral lesions at the pontine base affect ipsilateral projections [42]. Lesions at the paramedian dorsal pontine base do not involve the cortico-hypoglossal projections. Lesions of the dorsolateral and mediodorsal medulla impair only ipsilateral cortico-hypoglossal projections [42]. This suggests that the main decussation of supranuclear projections to the hypoglossal nucleus in the brainstem is located close to the pontomedullary junction [42]. However, a patient has been described with contralateral glosoplegia due to a ventromedial lesion of the upper medulla [7]. In this patient with contralateral supranuclear glosoplegia, the lesion was located in the ventromedial part of the rostral medulla. This finding showed that the cortico-hypoglossal projections in this patient decussated at the upper medullary level, more caudally than the pontomedullary junction.

Bilateral upper motor neuron affection of the corticobulbar fibers to the hypoglossal nuclei results in a paretic tongue with no atrophy or signs of denervation. Lateral tongue movements are slow and irregular owing to poor supranuclear control ("spastic tongue"), and a spastic dysarthria is evident.

Nuclear Lesions and Intramedullary Cranial Nerve XII Lesions

Unilateral lesions of the hypoglossal nucleus or nerve result in paresis, atrophy, fibrillation, and fasciculations that affect the corresponding half of the tongue. Because of the close proximity of the two hypoglossal nuclei, dorsal medullary lesions (e.g., multiple sclerosis, syringobulbia) often result in bilateral lower motor neuron lesions of the tongue. The nuclei may also be affected in motor neuron disease (amyotrophic lateral sclerosis) and in polyneuropathy (bulbar type). Isolated hypoglossal nerve palsy has been reported in association with infectious mononucleosis, presumably due to viral infection of the hypoglossal nerve nucleus [10]. Isolated total tongue paralysis has been described as a manifestation of the bilateral medullary infarction affecting the two nuclei of cranial nerve XII [3].

The hypoglossal nerve may be injured, usually unilaterally, anywhere along its course in the medulla.
Intramedullary hypoglossal involvement is suggested by the associated affection of the medial lemniscus, pyramid, or other neighboring intramedullary structures. Processes affecting the hypoglossal nerve in its intramedullary course include tumor, demyelinating disease, syringobulbia, and vascular insult. A rare but characteristic syndrome that affects the hypoglossal nerve in its intramedullary course is the medial medullary syndrome (Dejerine’s anterior bulbar syndrome). This syndrome results from occlusion of the anterior spinal artery or its parent vertebral artery. The anterior spinal artery supplies the ipsilateral pyramid, medullary lemniscus, and hypoglossal nerve; its occlusion therefore results in three main signs:

1. Ipsilateral paresis, atrophy, and fibrillations of the tongue (due to affection of cranial nerve XII). The protruded tongue deviates toward the lesion (away from the hemiplegia).
2. Contralateral hemiplegia (due to involvement of the pyramid) with sparing of the face.
3. Contralateral loss of position and vibratory sensation (due to involvement of the medullary lemniscus). Because the more dorsolateral spinthalamic tract is unaffected, pain and temperature sensations are spared.

This medial medullary syndrome may occur bilaterally, resulting in quadriplegia (with facial sparing), bilateral lower motor neuron lesions of the tongue, and a complete loss of position and vibratory sensation affecting all four extremities [23].

Because the hypoglossal fibers run somewhat laterally to the medullary lemniscus and pyramid, they are occasionally spared in cases of anterior spinal artery occlusion.

**Peripheral Lesions of Cranial Nerve XII**

Cranial nerve XII has a close spatial relationship with cranial nerves IX (glossopharyngeal), X (vagus), and XI (spinal accessory) in the posterior cranial fossa and as it leaves the skull in the hypoglossal canal. A basilar skull lesion (e.g., tumor or trauma) [34,46] may involve the twelfth cranial nerve alone, producing an isolated cranial nerve XII lower motor neuron lesion; frequently, the other lower cranial nerves (IX, X, and XI) are variably involved as well. When all four of these nerves are damaged (e.g., by a skull fracture through the hypoglossal canal and jugular foramen), a Collet-Sicard syndrome results, consisting of the following signs:

1. Paralysis of the trapezius and sternocleidomastoid muscles (cranial nerve XI)
2. Paralysis of the vocal cord (cranial nerve X) and pharynx (cranial nerve IX)
3. Hemiparalysis of the tongue (cranial nerve XII)
4. Loss of taste on the posterior third of the tongue (cranial nerve IX)
5. Hemianesthesia of the palate, pharynx, and larynx (cranial nerves IX and X)

Other multiple lower cranial nerve palsy syndromes may occur with lesions in the posterior cranial fossa, in the skull, in the retropharyngeal or retrostyloid space, or in the neck (see Chapter 13). With neck lesions, the cervical sympathetic chain may be involved, resulting in an ipsilateral Horner syndrome (miosis, anhidrosis, and ptosis). Other syndromes include the Collet-Sicard, Villaret’s, Jackson’s, Tapia’s, and Garcin’s syndromes (see Table 13.1). Isolated hypoglossal nerve palsy due to compression by a kinked vertebral artery (hypoglossal-vertebral entrapment syndrome) has been described [1,33]. Skull metastases to the clivus may cause bilateral hypoglossal nerve palsies [30].

Combined abducens nerve and hypoglossal nerve palsies are rare. This is often an ominous combination as may be seen with nasopharyngeal carcinoma (Godtfredsen’s syndrome) and with other clival lesions, especially tumors (three-fourths of which are malignant) [18]. Although the combination of abducens nerve palsy with a hypoglossal nerve palsy usually localizes the pathologic process to the clivus, lower brainstem lesions and subarachnoid processes (e.g., cysticercal meningitis) may also cause this unusual dual cranial nerve impairment [18].

Lesions, usually tumors or chronic inflammatory lesions, of the occipital condyle may cause occipital pain associated with an ipsilateral hypoglossal nerve injury (occipital condyle syndrome) [6,11,25]. These patients complain of continuous, severe, localized, unilateral, occipital pain made worse by neck flexion and often associated with neck stiffness. Rotating the head toward the side of the pain often relieves the discomfort, whereas head rotation to the nonpainful side or suboccipital palpation is unbearable [25]. The pain occasionally radiates anteriorly to the ipsilateral temporal area or eye. About half of the patients complain of dysarthria, dysphagia, or both, specifically related to difficulty in moving the tongue. On examination, patients hold their neck stiffly and are often tender to palpation over the occipital area on the involved side. The ipsilateral tongue is weak and atrophic and occasionally fasciculations are evident on the involved side. The tongue, when protruded, will deviate to the involved side. Occipital condylar fracture may also cause unilateral or bilateral hypoglossal nerve palsies [21].

The hypoglossal nerve may be injured in isolation in the neck or in its more distal course near the tongue. This results in an ipsilateral lower motor neuron type of paresis of half of the tongue. The
causes of this peripheral involvement include carotid aneurysms, aneurysms of a persistent hypoglossal artery, vascular entrapment, spontaneous dissection of the extracranial internal carotid artery, local infections, tuberculosis of the atlantoaxial joint, rheumatoid arthritis, surgical (e.g., carotid endarterectomy) or accidental trauma, birth injuries, neck radiation, epidural abscess of the nasopharyngeal/oropharyngeal carotid space, and tumors of the retropharyngeal or retropharyngeal spaces, neck, salivary glands, and base of the tongue [2,4,12,15,22,24,27,28,31,35,36,38,39]. Deep cervical lymphadenitis or other infections, including osteomyelitis, meningitis, or viral diseases, may also cause hypoglossal palsies [37]. Unilateral or bilateral hypoglossal neuropathy may occur in patients with hereditary neuropathy with liability to pressure palsy [8,48]. Hemiatrophy of the tongue has been described with Lewis-Sumner syndrome, a peripheral neuropathy characterized by multifocal weakness and wasting and associated sensory impairment, considered to be a variant of chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyradiculoneuropathy (CIDP) [45].

In a study of 100 cases of hypoglossal palsy, one-third of the patients showed bilateral involvement [17]. Tumors, predominantly malignant tumors, produced nearly half of the cases, with metastases, chordoma, nasopharyngeal carcinoma and lymphoma the most common types. Trauma (e.g., gunshot wounds) was the second most common cause. Other etiologies included stroke, Guillain-Barré syndrome, infection, neck surgery, Chiari malformation, multiple sclerosis, and hysteria [17].

After hypoglossal nerve injury from carotid endarterectomy, patients may occasionally develop increasingly severe dysarthria and dysphagia beginning several months after the surgery [47]. Electrophysiologic studies have revealed abnormal coactivation of the genioglossus and styloglossus muscles on the affected side in these patients, suggesting aberrant reinnervation. When aberrant reinnervation occurs, the tongue no longer moves in a coordinated manner, and significant dysarthria ensues.

**ABNORMAL TONGUE MOVEMENTS**

Various movement disorders may affect the tongue, including drug-induced oral-buccal-lingual dyskinesia, athetosis, palatal myoclonus (rhythmic synchronous tongue movements) [26], and tremor. Choreiform movements of the tongue may result in bizarre lingual movements and an inability to keep the tongue protruded on command (trombone tongue). **Galloping tongue** refers to an episodic, rhythmic involuntary movement of the tongue that has been described after head and neck trauma, consisting of three waves per second that began as posterior midline focal tongue contractions [16]. These movements lasted approximately 10 seconds in each episode and were not accompanied by other body movements or electroencephalographic abnormalities. They were thought to be of brainstem, perhaps pontine, origin [16]. Episodic tongue movements similar to these have been described in patients with chronic epilepsy, who had isolated posterior wave-like tongue movements that occurred two to three times per second for up to 30 seconds and that coincided with desynchronization of the electroencephalogram (EEG) (thought to be “subcortical seizures”) [14]. Continuous undulating movements of the tongue have been described years after radiation therapy for nasopharyngeal carcinoma [35]. Continuous lingual myoclonus has been described after head injury (EEG normal) and is thought to be a form of branchial myoclonus without palatal myoclonus [40]. Abnormal posturing and movement of the tongue (lingual pseudoathetosis), presumably due to lingual deafferentation, may occur with neck-tongue syndrome (see Chapter 9) [29].

**Dysarthria**

*Dysarthria* refers to impaired speech due to abnormal neuromuscular control and is manifest by abnormalities of articulation, respiration, prosody, resonance of voice, and phonation. Motor speech disorders may result from dysfunction at the upper motor neuron, lower motor neuron, cerebellar, extrapyramidal, or muscular level, with various characteristics of the dysarthria being of localizing value [9]. The evaluation of motor speech requires the assessment of three speech activities [9]:

1. A sample of contextual speech, including oral reading of a standard paragraph and evaluation of spontaneous speech
2. Vowel prolongation (ah . . .)
3. Alternate motion rate of the lips, tongue, and mandible (diadochokinesia), which is tested by having the patient repeat *puh* (labial), *tuh* (lingual), and *kuh* (guttural or posterior aspect of the tongue) rapidly and evenly

For example, an organic voice tremor (laryngeal tremor) may or may not be noted with contextual speech but may be brought out by vowel prolongation, during which oscillations of the voice are evident, at times resulting in speech arrest. Spastic dysarthria (from bilateral upper motor neuron lesions) has a harsh, strained, or strangled quality and slow rate during contextual speech, with slow, regular rate during alternate motion testing and strained harshness with low pitch in attempting vowel prolongation. When
multiple levels of the neuraxis are affected, motor speech abnormalities are mixed (e.g., mixed flaccid and spastic dysarthria with amyotrophic lateral sclerosis; mixed spastic and ataxic dysarthria with multiple sclerosis; and mixed spastic, ataxic, and hypokinetic dysarthria with Wilson disease). Patients with progressive supranuclear palsy may have predominantly spastic, hypokinetic, and ataxic components, or a mixed dysarthria with a combination of spastic, hypokinetic, and ataxic components [19]. The various types of dysarthria and their characteristics are described in Table 14.1.

### TABLE 14.1 Motor Speech Disorders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Dysarthria</th>
<th>Contextual Speech</th>
<th>Vowel Prolongation</th>
<th>Alternate Motion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Flaccid dysphonia (unilateral vocal cord paralysis)</td>
<td>Diplophonia, harshness, breathiness, short phrases, red. loudness, raufl stridor</td>
<td>Diplophonia</td>
<td>Red. duration of repetition, breahness, rate of repetitions normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flaccid dysarthria (multiple cranial nerve palsies)</td>
<td>Breathiness, red. loudness, hypernasality, stridor, short phrases, vowel prolongation</td>
<td>Breathiness, red. loudness, red. duration</td>
<td>Slow, regular rate: reduced duration of syllable repetition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spastic dysarthria (bilateral upper motor neuron lesion)</td>
<td>Slow rate: harsh, strained, strangled, imprecise consonants; mono and low pitch; grunts at end of phrases; hypernasality</td>
<td>Strained harshness, red. duration, low pitch</td>
<td>Constantly changing intervals between syllables, variation in duration and loudness, rate normal to slow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ataxic dysarthria (cerebellar lesion)</td>
<td>Irregular, seemingly random breakdowns in articulatory precision: vowel distortions; excess and equal stress</td>
<td>Harshness, breathiness, low pitch</td>
<td>Rapid, imprecise repetition: occasionally so imprecise and quick that sounds like continuous blur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypokinetic dysarthria (parkinsonism)</td>
<td>Short rushes of speech: accelerated rate, monopitch, reduced and monoloudness, inappropriate silences</td>
<td>Inability to sustain phonation due to laryngeal and articulatory interruptions, voice strained and harsh</td>
<td>Irregularity and inability to sustain syllable repetitions, these being interrupted by arrests of speech and changes in manner of articulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperkinetic dysarthria (chorea)</td>
<td>Variable rate, inappropriate silences, imprecise consonants, prolonged phonemes, prolonged intervals between words, irregular articulatory breakdowns</td>
<td>Continuously changing intervals between syllables, variation in duration and loudness, rate normal to slow</td>
<td>Continuous change in consonant and vowel articulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperkinetic dysarthria (laryngeal dystonia)</td>
<td>Intermittent voice arrests, excess loudness variations, distorted vowels, imprecise consonants, reduced rates</td>
<td>Breathiness, harshness with strained, strangled component; inability to sustain phonation</td>
<td>Irregular articulation breakdowns, red. rate, inability to sustain syllable repetitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperkinetic dysarthria (articulatory dystonia)</td>
<td>Distortion of articulation</td>
<td>Continuous change in consonant and vowel articulation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperkinetic dysarthria (organic voice tremor)</td>
<td>Rhythmic alterations in pitch loudness</td>
<td>Brings out tremor, arrests voice indicating rhythm glottic closure (such closures accompanied by strained, harsh voice)</td>
<td>Normal or irregular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperkinetic dysarthria (palatopharyngolaryngeal myoclonus)</td>
<td>Almost impossible to detect</td>
<td>Momentary interruptions in phonation</td>
<td>Normal to irregular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperkinetic dysarthria (Gilles de la Tourette)</td>
<td>Paroxysmal automatic or uncontrolled grunting, barking, coughing, throat clearing, whistling, etc.; occasional coprolalia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Red. = reduced
Localization in Clinical Neurology

References


In rostrocaudal order, the brainstem consists of three subdivisions, the midbrain, pons, and medulla oblongata. Extending the entire length of the brainstem, any cross section demonstrates three laminae: the tectum, tegmentum, and basis [37].

Medulla Oblongata

Anatomy of the Medulla

The medulla oblongata or myelencephalon is the most caudal portion of the brainstem (Fig. 15.1) and extends from the caudal border of the pons to a point just rostral to the point of emergence of the first spinal nerve roots. The junction of the medulla oblongata and spinal cord is at the level of the foramen magnum. The cross-sectional anatomy at a midmedullary level is illustrated in Figure 15.2.

Within the substance of the medulla certain cranial nerve nuclei and roots are situated [22]. The hypoglossal nucleus (cranial nerve XII) is located near the ventrolateral portion of the central canal under an eminence called the hypoglossal trigone. The nerve roots of the hypoglossal nerve pass ventrally and emerge from the medulla in the anterior lateral sulcus between the pyramids and the olive (inferior olivary prominence). The nucleus ambiguus (cranial nerves IX, X, and bulbar XI) is located within the medullary reticular formation ventromedial to the nucleus and spinal tract of the trigeminal nerve (cranial nerves V, VII, IX, and X). The dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus (cranial nerve X) lies dorsolateral to the hypoglossal nucleus and sends fibers that join the motor roots of the vagus and spinal accessory nerves. The nucleus and tractus solitarius (cranial nerves VII, IX, and X) lie ventrolateral to the dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus, and the medial and spinal vestibular nuclei and the dorsal and ventral cochlear nuclei (cranial nerve VIII) are located at the dorsal and ventral borders of the inferior cerebellar peduncle (restiform body). The inferior olivary nucleus is located within the olive.

The nucleus gracilis and nucleus cuneatus are located in the posterior funiculi of the dorsal medulla and give rise to fibers (internal arcuate fibers) that cross in the decussation of the lemniscus (great sensory decussation). These fibers then travel in the medial lemniscus, which is dorsomedial to the pyramids. The nucleus of the spinal tract of the trigeminal nerve (pars caudalis) lies lateral to the internal arcuate fibers and descends caudally to the level of C3 in the cervical spinal cord, whereas the spinal tract of the trigeminal nerve lies lateral to the nucleus. The pyramids are located in the anterior (ventral) medulla and contain descending corticospinal tract fibers to the lateral and anterior corticospinal tracts of the spinal cord. The pyramid also contains descending corticobulbar fibers. In the caudal end of the medulla, nearly 75% to 90% of the corticospinal fibers in the pyramid cross the ventral midline (decussation of the pyramids or great motor decussation) to the opposite side to form the lateral corticospinal tract. The rest of the corticospinal tract descends homolaterally to form the anterior corticospinal tract. There is a somatotopic organization of the corticospinal fibers within the pyramids, with the fibers of the lower extremities placed more laterally than the fibers of the upper extremities [1]. The medial longitudinal fasciculus is located in the dorsomedial medulla. Other medullary tracts include the ventral and dorsal spinocerebellar tracts, the medial and lateral reticulospinal tracts, the medial and lateral vestibulospinal tracts, the rubrospinal tracts, the spinothalamc tracts, and descending sympathetic pathways.

Vascular Supply of the Medulla

The large regional arteries of the brainstem have the following three types of branches:

1. The paramedian arteries, which penetrate the ventral brainstem surface and supply the midline structures.
2. The short circumferential arteries, which traverse laterally on the brainstem and penetrate its ventrolateral and lateral surfaces.
3. The long circumferential arteries, which course around the brainstem and supply its posterior structures and cerebellum.

The medulla oblongata receives its blood supply from the anterior and posterior spinal arteries, the posterior inferior cerebellar artery, and branches of the vertebral arteries. The blood supply to the medulla may be subdivided into two groups: the paramedian bulbar branches and the lateral bulbar branches.
At lower medullary levels, the anterior spinal artery also contributes to the paramedian zone.

PARAMEDIAN BULBAR BRANCHES
The paramedian portion of the medulla (the hypoglossal nucleus and emergent nerve fibers, the medial longitudinal fasciculus, the medial lemniscus, the pyramids, and the medial part of the inferior olivary nucleus) are supplied by the vertebral artery.

LATERAL BULBAR BRANCHES
The lateral portion of the medulla is supplied by the intracranial vertebral artery (fourth segment) or the

FIG. 15.1. The brainstem (ventral view).

posterior inferior cerebellar artery. Occasionally, the basilar artery or the anterior inferior cerebellar artery also contributes.

Medullary Syndromes

MEDIAL MEDULLARY SYNDROME (DEJERINE’S ANTERIOR BULBAR SYNDROME)

This syndrome often results from atherosclerotic occlusion of the vertebral artery, anterior spinal artery, or the lower segment of the basilar artery. Verteobasilar dissection, dolichoectasia of the verteobasilar system, embolism, and meningovascular syphilis are less common causes of the medial medullary infarction [155]. The anterior spinal artery supplies the paramedian region of the medulla oblongata, which includes the ipsilateral pyramid, medial lemniscus, and hypoglossal nerve and nucleus (Fig. 15.3). Its occlusion therefore results in the following signs:

1. Ipsilateral paresis, atrophy, and fibrillation of the tongue (due to cranial nerve XII affection). The protruded tongue deviates toward the lesion (away from the hemiplegia). Cranial nerve XII function may be spared [127].

2. Contralateral hemiplegia (due to involvement of the pyramid) with sparing of the face.

3. Contralateral loss of position and vibratory sensation (due to involvement of the medial lemniscus). The more the dorsolateral spinocerebellar tract is unaffected, the more the pain and temperature sensation are spared.

4. Occasionally, upbeat nystagmus may occur because of dorsal extension of the infarct toward the medial longitudinal fasciculus [70]. Unilateral lesions of the nucleus intercalatus can account for primary position upbeat nystagmus due to a unilateral medial medullary infarction [69]. It has also been proposed that damage to the uncrossed climbing fibers from the inferior olivary nucleus to the contralateral cerebellar Purkinje cells results in ocular contrapulsion from rostral medullary medullary infarctions [81].

The medial medullary syndrome may occur bilaterally [57,99] resulting in flaccid quadriplegia (with facial sparing), bilateral lower motor neuron lesions of the tongue, complete loss of position and vibratory sensation affecting all four extremities and respiratory failure, or acute onset of triaparesis (with involvement of both lower limbs and contralateral upper extremity), suggestive of a possible fiber segregation of the descending tracts of different extremities [58]. Located in the caudal medullary tegmentum, both hypoglossal nuclei have been involved in isolation in a small medullary infarction [12].

**FIG. 15.3.** Cross section of medulla oblongata showing area involved in medial medullary infarction and lateral medullary infarction (Wallenberg syndrome). CN = cranial nerve.
Localization in Clinical Neurology

Because the hypoglossal fibers run somewhat laterally to the medial lemniscus and pyramid, they are occasionally spared in cases of anterior spinal artery occlusion. Occasionally, only the pyramid is damaged, resulting in a pure motor hemiplegia that spares the face [30,128,135]. Central facial paresis may also result from a unilateral contralateral medullary infarction, suggesting that some of the facial corticobulbar fibers descend ipsilaterally before making a loop as low as the medulla oblongata before decussating and ascending to the contralateral facial nucleus that innervates the perioral musculature [26,148]. A crossed motor hemiparesis (hemiplegia cruciata), with paralysis of the ipsilateral arm and the contralateral leg (resulting from a lower medullary lesion compromising the crossed fibers to the arm as well as the uncrossed fibers to the leg), is an extremely rare occurrence [14].

Apart from incomplete syndromes (e.g., medial medullary syndrome presenting as pure motor hemiparesis, or medial medullary syndrome without tongue paralysis), other unusual neurologic findings may be observed including contralateral paralysis of the pharyngeal constrictor muscle [111] and contralateral tongue paralysis [27].

LATERAL MEDULLARY (WALLENBERG) SYNDROME

This syndrome [33,34,54,80,107,114,132] is most often secondary to intracranial vertebral artery or posterior inferior cerebellar artery occlusion [78]. The presumed pathogenesis among 130 consecutive patients with pure lateral medullary infarctions included large vessel disease in 50%, arterial dissection in 15%, small vessel disease in 13%, and cardioembolism in 5% [78]. Spontaneous dissections of the vertebral arteries are a common cause [75,105]. Dissections were observed more often with caudal lesions [78]. The syndrome has also been described with cocaine abuse [104], medullary neoplasms (usually metastases), abscess, demyelinating disease [141], radionecrosis, hemanoma (secondary to rupture of a vascular malformation), neck manipulation [56], trauma, bullet injury to the vertebral artery [102], and posterior spinal fusion surgery with instrumentation in a patient with a previously undiagnosed Chiari 1 malformation [122]. The characteristic clinical picture results from damage to a wedge-shaped area of the lateral medulla (Fig. 15.3) and inferior cerebellum and consists of several signs:

1. Ipsilateral facial hypalgesia and thermoanesthesia (due to trigeminal spinal nucleus and tract involvement). Ipsilateral facial pain is common [34].
2. Contralateral trunk and extremity hypalgesia and thermoanesthesia (due to damage to the spinothalamic tract).
3. Ipsilateral palatal, pharyngeal, and vocal cord paralysis with dysphagia and dysarthria (due to involvement of the nucleus ambiguus).
4. Ipsilateral Horner syndrome (due to affection of the descending sympathetic fibers). Ipsilateral hypohidrosis of the body may occur, probably due to interruption of the mostly uncrossed excitatory sweating pathway, which descends from the hypothalamus through the tegmental area of the mesencephalon and pons and, more caudally, through the posteroateral area of the medulla to synapse with the sympathetic sudomotor neurons of the intermediolateral cell column of the spinal cord [84].
5. Vertigo, nausea, and vomiting (due to involvement of the vestibular nuclei).
6. Ipsilateral cerebellar signs and symptoms (due to involvement of the inferior cerebellar peduncle and cerebellum).
7. Occasionally, hiccups (singultus) attributed to lesions of the dorsolateral region of the middle medulla [117] and diplopia (perhaps secondary to involvement of the lower pons).

Lateral lesions located in the rostral medulla are associated with more severe dysphagia, hoarseness, and the presence of facial paresis, whereas more caudal lesions situated in the lateral surface of the medulla, correlate with more marked vertigo, nystagmus, and gait ataxia [80]. Nausea, vomiting, and Horner syndrome are common regardless of the location of the lesion in the lateral medulla; lesions that extend more ventromedially cause facial sensory changes on the contralateral side of the lesion [80]. The motor system (pyramids), tongue movements, and vibration and position sense are typically spared with lateral medullary lesions because the corresponding anatomic structures are located in the medulla. The triad of Horner syndrome, ipsilateral ataxia, and contralateral hypalgesia clinically identifies patients with lateral medullary infarction [132]. Cerebellar infarcts only infrequently accompany the lateral medullary syndrome, suggesting that most of the posterior inferior cerebellar artery territory is spared, despite the high frequency of vertebral artery occlusion as a cause of this syndrome [132].

Headache, especially unilateral headache localized to the upper posterior cervical region, is relatively common with the lateral medullary syndrome, particularly when the syndrome is due to cervical vertebral artery dissection [64,105]. This type of headache should be distinguished from the rare paroxysmal retro-orbital hemiconvulsive-like attacks reported after strokes involving the dorsal medulla and high cervical spinal cord at the C1 level [36].

The sensory deficit in the lateral medullary syndrome usually affects the ipsilateral face and the
contralateral leg, arm, and trunk. However, several patients with lateral brainstem lesions developed a sensory defect involving the ipsilateral face and the contralateral foot, with the latter defect extending upward to end in a sensory level [96]. These patients with a crossed pattern of sensory defect had far lateral lesions of the lateral medulla and pons, with the leg and lower torso involvement due to selective partial disruption of the somatotopically organized sacral and lumbar afferent fibers of the lateral spinothalamic tract (located far laterally in the brainstem), with sparing of the more medial thoracic and cervical fibers [96]. Several patients have also been described with a continuous hemisensory defect of the face, arm, and trunk (unilateral pattern), with the lower border demarcated at a sensory level [96]. These patients were thought to have mediolateral medullary and pontine lesions contralateral to the side of the sensory defect, which affected the medial cervical and thoracic afferents of the lateral spinothalamic tract (i.e., spared the lateral sacral and lumbar afferents) and the ventral trigeminothalamic tract (accounting for contralateral facial sensory loss), but spared the spinal nucleus and tract of the trigeminal nerve. In rare instances of infarcts involving the pontomedullary junction, sensory symptoms electively involve the contralateral upper limb and base of the neck resulting in loss of pain and temperature, and reinforcing the notion that a somatotopic arrangement of the spinothalamic tract in its medullary course [160].

Rare manifestations of the Wallenberg syndrome include the following:

1. Wild arm ataxia probably related to involvement of the lateral cuneate nucleus [32,33].
2. Clumsiness of the ipsilateral upper limb resulting from extension of the injury into the sublaryngeal area [22].
3. Central pain associated with allodynia [121].
4. Contralateral hyperhidrosis with ipsilateral anhidrosis due to interruption of the sympathetic pathways (noted a few months after infarction) [106].
5. An inability to sneeze due to compromise of the sneezing center located at the ventromedial margin of the descending tract and nucleus (spinal nucleus) of the trigeminal nerve [68].
6. Paroxysmal sneezing due to presumed involvement of the hypothetical human “sneezing center” in the rostral dorsolateral medulla [45, 113, 137].
7. Loss of taste that results from involvement of the rostral and the lateral zone of the nucleus tractus solitarius [59].
8. Autonomic dysfunction including tachycardia, blood pressure lability, and respiratory failure from the involvement of the caudal and medial zone of the nucleus tractus solitarius [25].
9. Failure of automatic breathing (Ondine’s curse) due to discrete lesions of the nucleus ambiguus and the adjacent reticular formation.
10. Transient urinary retention from interruption of descending fibers from facilitatory pontine micturition centers [89].
11. Body lateropulsion without limb ataxia from the involvement of the descending lateral vestibulospinal tract, or body lateropulsion with limb ataxia due to interruption of the ascending dorsal spinocerebellar tract [151].
12. Axial lateral pulsion that results from the involvement of the vestibulospinal and spinocerebellar tracts as well as central vestibular pathways [7].
13. Isolated ipsiversive lateropulsion [3].
14. Pure sensory stroke with loss of pain and temperature involving the face, arm, trunk, and leg as the only manifestations of the lateral medullary infarction [8,15].
15. Ipsilateral sensory symptoms predominantly involving the upper extremities, especially the fingers, with occasional impairment of vibration and position sense from caudal lesions involving the dorsal columns or decussating lemniscal fibers [79].
16. Ipsilateral hemiparesis from the involvement of the lower most caudal end of the medulla just below the pyramidal decussation [38]. An ipsilateral spastic hemiplegia associated with a lateral medullary syndrome is also known as the lateral medullary syndrome of Opalski (see subsequent text) [106].
17. Central hypoventilation is seen along with vasmotor instability [87].
18. Poststroke facial pain that results from the involvement of the primary afferent fibers in the descending spinal trigeminal tract [53].

Various abnormalities of eye movements and vision have been described with the lateral medullary syndrome (Table 15.1) [18,21,29,39,100]. These include the following:

1. Dysfunction of ocular alignment. Lateral medullary lesions damage the otolithic vestibular nuclei and, therefore, patients with Wallenberg syndrome often demonstrate skew deviation with hypotropia on the side of the lesion [77]. Brandt and Dieterich have called this type 2 skew deviation and stated that this skew results from elevation of the contralateral eye, without vertical displacement of the ipsilateral eye [19,20]. Some patients also show an ipsilateral head tilt and a disconjugate ocular torsion (the ocular tilt reaction, see Chapter 8) with exocyclo deviation of the ipsilateral
is a disjunctive, vertical-torsional nystagmus half cycle, which consists of elevation and intorsion of one eye with synchronous depression and extorsion of the other eye; the next half cycle consists of the reversal of these vertical and torsional movements. This type of nystagmus is usually pendular and noted especially with large, extensive suprasellar lesions that compress or infiltrate the mesodiencephalon bilaterally. With lateral medullary lesions, however, a jerk see-saw nystagmus may occur [63,107]. The torsional component of this nystagmus is conjugate with the fast component contraversive to the side of the lesion [63]. This contrasts with the jerk see-saw nystagmus described with unilateral, focal mesodiencephalic lesions, in which the quick phase of the torsional component is toward the side of the lesion [63].

2. **Nystagmus.** Nystagmus in the lateral medullary syndrome may be due to direct damage to the vestibular nuclei or their cerebellar, semicircular canal, or otolithic connections. Nystagmus in the lateral medullary syndrome is usually positional and can be horizontal [42], torsional [107], or mixed, with torsion, vertical, and horizontal components [10]. Typically, horizontal nystagmus beats away from the side of the lesion, with the horizontal drift velocity directed toward the side of the lesion being influenced by eye position and by fixation. Occasionally, the nystagmus may beat with the fast component ipsilaterally during gaze toward the side of the lesion or during eye closure [10]. A vertical nystagmus is usually upbeating [10]. The nystagmus is often evident only in the initial days after dorsolateral medullary infarction, and rapidly declines over the following days [125]. Torsional nystagmus is common with Wallenberg syndrome, with the upper pole of the iris beating away from the side of infarction [107]. Torsional nystagmus has been attributed to an imbalance of central projections from the anterior and posterior semicircular canals and the otolithic receptors that mediate ocular counter-roll [107].

As mentioned in the preceding text, see-saw nystagmus may also occur with lateral medullary lesions [105]. Gaze-evoked eyelid nystagmus associated with ocular nystagmus has been described, in which a clinically obvious upward jerking of the lids occurred synchronously with the fast phase of a gaze-evoked horizontal nystagmus [35]. This eyelid nystagmus was inhibited or totally arrested by the near reflex.

3. **Smooth pursuit and gaze-holding abnormalities.** Structures and pathways located in the lateral medulla are also concerned with smooth pursuit eye movements and gaze holding [162]. The lower eye but with little or no incyclodeviation of the contralateral higher eye [20,39,107]. Therefore, patients may complain of diplopia with images displaced vertically and tilted with respect to each other. Some patients with Wallenberg syndrome may also exhibit ocular ipsipulsion due to damage to the climbing fibers from the contralateral inferior olivary nucleus to the dorsal vermis [82] or complain of the unusual (and almost unbelievable) sensation of environmental tilt, in which the whole room is tilted on its side or even upside down (“floor-on-ceiling” phenomenon) [39,127]. This syndrome is also probably caused by a disturbance of vestibular-otolith central connections [127]. Environmental tilt or “upside down” reversal of vision may also occur with vertebrobasilar transient ischemic attacks [143], vertebrobasilar ischemia [144], encephalitis, head injury [100], demyelinating disease [138], or after third ventriculostomy for hydrocephalus [116].

Damage to otolithic central projections mediating ocular counter-roll may also contribute to the genesis of torsional nystagmus (see subsequent text) in the lateral medullary syndrome [107]. Central otolithic involvement may also be responsible for the see-saw nystagmus observed in occasional patients [63,103]. See-saw nystagmus

### Table 15.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dysfunction of ocular alignment</th>
<th>Ocular tilt reaction</th>
<th>Environmental tilt “floor-on-ceiling” phenomenon</th>
<th>See-saw nystagmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nystagmus (multiple pathways or pathways involved)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>Torsional</td>
<td>Mixed horizontal-torsional</td>
<td>See-saw nystagmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mixed horizontal-torsional-vertical</td>
<td>Eyelid nystagmus</td>
<td>Head shaking nystagmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Smooth pursuit and gaze-holding abnormalities</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ipsilateral eye deviation</td>
<td>Impaired contralateral smooth pursuit</td>
<td>Lateropulsion of pursuit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abnormalities of saccades</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ipsipulsion (lateropulsion)</td>
<td>Torsipulsion</td>
<td>Oblique saccade trajectories on vertical gaze attempts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**TABLE 15.1 Ocular Motor Abnormalities in Wallenberg Lateral Medullary Syndrome**

Dysfunction of ocular alignment
- Skew deviation
- Ocular tilt reaction
- Environmental tilt “floor-on-ceiling” phenomenon
- See-saw nystagmus

Nystagmus (multiple pathways or pathways involved)
- Horizontal
- Torsional
- Mixed horizontal-torsional
- Mixed horizontal-torsional-vertical
- See-saw nystagmus
- Eyelid nystagmus
- Head shaking nystagmus

Smooth pursuit and gaze-holding abnormalities
- Ipsilateral eye deviation
- Impaired contralateral smooth pursuit
- Lateropulsion of pursuit

Abnormalities of saccades
- Ipsipulsion (lateropulsion)
- Torsipulsion
- Oblique saccade trajectories on vertical gaze attempts
cerebellar flocculus, paraflocculus, and vermis climbing fibers pass through the inferior cerebellar peduncle and are concerned with these functions.

Patients with the lateral medullary syndrome may complain of a sensation of their bodies being pulled to one side and attempt to counteract this lateropulsion of the body by leaning toward the opposite side. Because of gaze-holding impairment, ocular movements may be similarly affected, with a tendency for the eyes to be “pulled” toward the involved medulla (lateropulsion or ipsipulsion of eye movements) [10,42,55,98,157,161]. If a patient is asked to fixate straight ahead and close the eyelids, the eyes will deviate toward the side of the medullary lesion (reflected by a series of small corrective hypometric saccadic [fast] eye movements in the opposite direction, which are directed to fixation when the eyes are again opened). Even blinking may induce this lateropulsion. These abnormalities of gaze holding may also be reflected in saccadic eye movement abnormalities. Smooth pursuit eye movements tracking targets moving away from the side of the lesion are also impaired with lateral medullary lesions, whereas pursuit toward the side of the lesion is normal, or nearly so [10,98,162].

4. Abnormalities of saccades. The cerebellum may be involved in modulating the amplitude but not the speed of saccadic (fast) eye movements. Interruption of cerebellar central connections that traverse the lateral medulla probably accounts for some of the observed ocular motor deficits [132]. Damage to the juxtaarestiform body, which carries signals from the fastigial nucleus to the brainstem reticular formation, may account for a saccadic abnormality referred to as lateropulsion of saccadic eye movements [90].

As noted in the preceding text, gaze-holding abnormalities in patients with Wallenberg syndrome may result in ipsipulsion of eye movements. This disorder of gaze holding may also induce saccadic abnormalities. Horizontal saccades away from the side of the lesion are hypometric (undershoot the target), whereas saccades directed toward the side of the lesion are hypermetric (overshoot the target) [161]. Quick phases of nystagmus are similarly affected. Ipsipulsion with lateral medullary lesions is therefore opposite to the contrapulsion of saccades that occurs with lesions of the superior cerebellar peduncle [126,157].

Patients with Wallenberg syndrome may have permanent saccadic dysmetria (hypermetria to the side of the lesion and hypometria to targets contralateral to the lesion) and a reduced capability to readjust saccadic amplitude [161]. This horizontal saccade bias with lateral medullary lesions is also reflected in vertical eye movements. On attempting to make a purely vertical saccade, an oblique or elliptical saccade directed toward the lesion (in the direction of lateropulsion) is made, requiring corrective saccades away from the side of the lesion to bring the eyes back toward the intended target. Later, attempted vertical saccades may take on S-shaped trajectories as an adaptive strategy to correct the saccadic dysmetria [90]. Even a torsional component of this bias may occur (torsiopulsion), with inappropriate torsional fast eye movements induced during saccades toward or away from the side of the medullary lesion [107].

The medial branch of the posterior inferior cerebellar artery supplies the dorsolateral medulla; infarcts of this branch may be clinically silent, cause isolated vertigo often misdiagnosed as labyrinthitis, cause vertigo associated with ipsilateral lateropulsion of the trunk and gaze and dysmetria or unsteadiness, or cause a full Wallenberg syndrome [5,6,62,73]. Bilateral cerebellar infarction in the territory of the medial branches of the posterior inferior cerebellar arteries may cause vertigo, dysarthria, dysequilibrium with retropulsion, bilateral gaze-evoked nystagmus, and marked gait ataxia without brainstem signs [145]. Vertigo and upside-down vision have been described because of an infarct in the cerebellar flocculus and nodulus due to affection of the medial branch of the posterior inferior cerebellar artery [28].

Atherosclerotic occlusion or dissection of the intracranial vertebral artery can lead to a total unilateral hemimedullary (Babinski-Nageotte) syndrome, a combination of the medial and lateral medullary syndromes [109]. This rare syndrome is characterized by contralateral hemiplegia and sensory loss of the limbs and trunk, ipsilateral hemiataxia, and facial sensory loss, along with dysphagia, dysphonia, and dysarthria. Ipsilateral hemiparesis is extremely rare [93]. Some authorities have suggested Reinhold’s syndrome as the proper eponym for the hemimedullary syndrome [85]. Because of the separate arterial topography supplying the medulla, the simultaneous occurrence of ischemic lesions involving the lateral and medial parts of the medulla is extremely rare [109]. Combinations of the two major syndromes may also occur as bilateral medial and bilateral lateral medullary syndromes [59].

Tegmental medullary lesions (e.g., glioma) may cause lack of appetite and early satiety (medullary satiety), implying that the medulla may play a role in the regulation of feeding behaviors.
The Pons

Anatomy of the Pons

The pons (Fig. 15.1) [23] is part of the metencephalon (pons and cerebellum), and extends from a caudal plane, which passes from the striae medullaris posteriorly through the pontomedullary sulcus anteriorly, to a cephalad plane, which passes immediately caudal to the inferior colliculi (dorsally) and to the cerebral peduncles (ventrally). The dorsal part of the pons is referred to as the tegmentum, and the ventral portion is referred to as the basis pontis, basilar pons, or pontocerebellar portion (Fig. 15.4). The pontine tegmentum is composed largely of the pontine reticular formation, which is a rostral continuation of the medullary reticular formation. This central core is generally divided into a medial region of primarily large neurons (magnocellular region) and a lateral region of mainly small neurons (parvocellular region). The basis pontis contains the pontine nuclei and multidirectional nerve fiber bundles.

Cranial nerve nuclei in the pons include the nucleus of the abducens nerve (cranial nerve VI), which is located in the dorsomedial pons just beneath the floor of the fourth ventricle. Fibers from this nucleus pass ventrally between bundles of corticospinal tract fibers to exit at the pontomedullary junction. Ventromedial to the abducens nucleus is the paramedian pontine reticular formation (PPRF), which plays an important role in the control of saccadic eye movements (see Chapter 8). The motor nucleus of the facial nerve (cranial nerve VII) is situated ventrolaterally. Fibers from this nucleus run dorsomedially toward the floor of the fourth ventricle, make an acute bend around the abducens nucleus, and then turn laterally through the pons to

Lesions affecting the obex of the medulla may result in neurogenic pulmonary edema [140]. This supports the hypothesis that lesions of caudal brainstem structures, especially the nucleus tractus solitarius, the dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus, and the medial reticular formation are responsible for the generation of neurogenic pulmonary edema. Lesions of the area postrema, an emetic center located in the caudal part of the fourth ventricle and lacking a blood—brain barrier, lesions of the dorsolateral pontine tegmentum, as well as other lesions of the lower brainstem, may account for vomiting, often out of proportion to dizziness [50].

OPALSKI (SUBMEDULLARY) SYNDROME

When ipsilateral hemiplegia is associated with symptoms of a lateral medullary syndrome, it corresponds to the submedullary syndrome of Opalski. Opalski syndrome results from an occlusion of the vertebral artery. The ipsilateral hemiplegia is due to a lesion of the lower medulla involving the corticospinal tract after the pyramidal decussation [71,115].

LATERAL PONTOMEDULLARY SYNDROME

This syndrome [48] may result from occlusion of an aberrant arterial branch arising from the upper vertebral artery and running superiorly and laterally to the region of exit of cranial nerves VII and VIII from the pons. It may also occur with pontine hemorrhage [4]. The clinical findings are those seen in the lateral medullary syndrome plus several pontine findings, which includes the following:

1. Ipsilateral facial weakness (due to involvement of cranial nerve VII)
2. Ipsilateral tinnitus and, occasionally, hearing disturbance (due to involvement of cranial nerve VIII)

FIG. 15.4. Cross section of the lower pons at the level of cranial nerves VI and VII. Myelin-stained section is shown on the right. (From Daube JR, Reagan TJ, Sandok BA, et al. Medical neurosciences: an approach to anatomy, pathology, and physiology by system and levels, 2nd ed. Boston, MA: Little, Brown and Company, 1986. By permission of Mayo Foundation.)
exit lateral to the abducens nerve fibers. The main motor and main sensory nuclei of the trigeminal nerve (cranial nerve V) are located dorsolaterally, as are the cochlear nuclei and the lateral and superior vestibular nuclei (cranial nerve VIII). The superior and inferior salivatory nuclei and the lacrimal nucleus (cranial nerves VII and IX) are also located in the pons.

Fiber tracts within the pons include the medial longitudinal fasciculus, which is situated dorsomedially, and the medial lemniscus, which lies dorsal to the corticospinal, corticobulbar, and corticopontine fiber bundles. Other tracts within the pons include the ventral spinocerebellar, spinothalamic, lateral tectospinal, rubrospinal, and corticopontocerebellar tracts. The pons also contains auditory connections, including the lateral lemniscus, the nucleus of the lateral lemniscus, the trapezoid body, and the superior olivary nuclear complex. The brachium pontis or middle cerebellar peduncle connects the ventral pons with the cerebellum.

Vascular Supply of the Pons

At the lower border of the pons, the paired vertebral arteries fuse in the midline to form the basilar artery. The first branch of the basilar artery is the anterior inferior cerebellar artery. Then comes a series of paramedian and short circumferential pontine branches, and penultimately, the superior cerebellar artery. Finally, the basilar artery divides into the two posterior cerebral arteries. The blood supply to the pons may be divided into three groups.

PARAMEDIAN VESSELS

The paramedian vessels (four to six in number) arise from the basilar artery and penetrate perpendicularly into the pontine parenchyma. They supply the medial basal pons, including the pontine nuclei, the corticospinal fibers, and the medial lemniscus.

SHORT CIRCUMFERENTIAL ARTERIES

The short circumferential arteries also arise from the basilar artery and enter the brachium pontis. These vessels supply the ventrolateral basis pontis.

LONG CIRCUMFERENTIAL ARTERIES

The long circumferential arteries supply most of the pontine tegmentum and part of the middle cerebellar peduncles and include the following:

1. The superior cerebellar artery, which arises from the basilar artery near its bifurcation, supplies the dorsolateral pons and brachium pontis, the dorsal reticular formation, and the periaqueductal region (occasionally, the ventrolateral pontine tegmentum is also supplied by this vessel).

2. The anterior inferior cerebellar artery, which most often arises from the basilar artery and supplies the lateral tegmentum of the lower two-thirds of the pons and the ventrolateral cerebellum.

3. The internal auditory artery, which arises from the anterior inferior cerebellar artery (occasionally from the basilar artery) and supplies the auditory, vestibular, and facial cranial nerves.

Pontine Syndromes

Numerous classical brainstem (eponymous) syndromes featuring cranial nerve palsies, cerebellar signs, long tract signs, and sensory disturbances were instrumental in establishing the seminal guidelines for brainstem localization [139].

VENTRAL PONTINE SYNDROMES

Millard-Gubler Syndrome. A unilateral lesion of the ventrocaudal pons may involve the basis pontis and the fascicles of cranial nerves VI and VII. This involvement results in the following:

1. Contralateral hemiplegia (sparing the face) is due to pyramidal tract involvement.

2. Ipsilateral lateral rectus paresis (cranial nerve VI) with diplopia that is accentuated when the patient “looks toward” the lesion.

3. Ipsilateral peripheral facial paresis (cranial nerve VII).

Raymond Syndrome. A unilateral lesion of the ventral medial pons, which affects the ipsilateral abducens nerve fascicles and the corticospinal tract but spares cranial nerve VII, may cause this rare syndrome (also called alternating abducens hemiplegia) [134], which consists of the following:

1. Ipsilateral lateral rectus paresis (cranial nerve VI)

2. Contralateral hemiplegia, sparing the face, due to pyramidal tract involvement

Pure Motor Hemiparesis. Lesions (especially lacunar infarction) involving the corticospinal tracts in the basis pontis may produce a pure motor hemiplegia with or without facial involvement [48,52,101,112]. Patients often have severe dysarthria and dysphagia. Bouts of uncontrollable laughter may also occur [136]). Other locations of lesions causing pure motor hemiparesis include the posterior limb of the internal capsule, the cerebral peduncle, and the medullary pyramid [30]. A combination of dysarthria and a history of previous transient gait abnormality or vertigo favor a pontine lesion as the cause of pure motor hemiparesis rather than a more common capsular lesion [112].

Dysarthria—Clumsy Hand Syndrome. Vascular lesions in the basis pontis (especially lacunar infarction) [46,48,55,60,101] at the junction of the upper one-third and lower two-thirds of the pons may result in dysarthria—clumsy hand syndrome. In this
syndrome facial weakness and severe dysarthria and dysphagia occur along with clumsiness, impaired finger dexterity, and paresis of the hand. Hyperreflexia and a Babinski’s sign may occur on the same side as the arm paresis, but sensation is spared. A similar clinical presentation may occur with lesions in the genu of the internal capsule or with small, deep cerebellar hemorrhages [131].

**Ataxic Hemiparesis.** A lesion (usually a lacunar infarction) [47,48,51,101] in the basis pontis at the junction of the upper one-third and the lower two-thirds of the pons may result in the ataxic hemiparesis (homolateral ataxia and crural paresis) syndrome. In this syndrome hemiparesis that is more severe in the lower extremity, is associated with ipsilateral hemiataxia and occasionally dysarthria, nystagmus, and paresthesias. The hemiparesis is also associated with hyperreflexia and a Babinski’s sign. The lesion is located in the contralateral pons. The ataxia is unilateral, probably because transverse fibers originating from the contralateral pontine nuclei (and projecting to the contralateral cerebellum) are spared [110]. This syndrome has also been described with contralateral thalamocapsular lesions, lesions of the contralateral posterior limb of the internal capsule, lesions of the contralateral red nucleus, and with superficial anterior cerebral artery territory infarcts in the paracentral area [17,67].

As a rare occurrence, focal infarcts in the basilar pons have been associated with dysarthria-dysmetria, dysarthria-facial paresis, or ipsilateral gaze paresis and internuclear ophthalmoplegia [136].

**Locked-in Syndrome.** Bilateral ventral pontine lesions (infarction, tumor, hemorrhage, trauma, cervical manipulation, tumor, pontine abscess, encephalitis, arteritis, neuro-Behçet’s, multiple sclerosis, air embolism, heroin abuse, diazepam toxicity, or central pontine myelinolysis) may result in the locked-in syndrome (de-efferented state) [66,118,123]. This syndrome consists of the following signs:

1. **Quadriplegia due to bilateral corticospinal tract involvement in the basis pontis**
2. **Aphonia due to involvement of the corticobulbar fibers innervating the lower cranial nerve nuclei**
3. **Occasional impairment of horizontal eye movements due to bilateral involvement of the fascicles of cranial nerve VI**

Because the reticular formation is not injured, the patient is fully awake. The supranuclear ocular motor pathways lie dorsally and are therefore spared; therefore, vertical eye movements and blinking are intact (the patient may actually convey his wishes in Morse code). In thrombosis of the basilar artery, not infrequently a hemiparesis is present at an early stage (“herald hemiparesis” of basilar artery occlusion), when brainstem signs may be absent or few [49]. Therefore, a cerebral hemisphere localization is suggested, but in a few hours bilateral hemiplegia appears, associated with a locked-in syndrome or coma [49]. De-efferentation may also occur with purely peripheral lesions (e.g., polio, polyneuritis, myasthenia gravis).

**Dorsal Pontine Syndromes**

**Foville Syndrome.** This syndrome is due to lesions involving the dorsal pontine tegmentum in the caudal third of the pons. It consists of the following:

1. **Contralateral hemiplegia (with facial sparing) which is due to interruption of the corticospinal tract.**
2. **Ipsilateral peripheral-type facial palsy which is due to involvement of the nucleus and fascicle (or both) of cranial nerve VII.**
3. **Inability to move the eyes conjugately to the ipsilateral side (gaze is “away from” the lesion) due to involvement of the PPRF or abducens nucleus, or both.**

**Raymond-Cestan Syndrome.** The Raymond-Cestan syndrome is seen with rostral lesions of the dorsal pons. It includes the following:

1. **Cerebellar signs (ataxia) with a coarse “rubral” tremor which is due to the involvement of the cerebellum.**
2. **Contralateral hypesthesia with reduction of all sensory modalities (face and extremities) which is due to the involvement of the medial lemniscus and the spinothalamic tract.**
3. **With ventral extension, there may be contralateral hemiparesis (due to corticospinal tract involvement) or paralysis of conjugate gaze toward the side of the lesion (due to involvement of the PPRF).**

**Paramedian Pontine Syndromes**

Several clinical syndromes of paramedian pontine infarction have been described [11].

1. **Unilateral mediodiscal infarcts.** These patients present with severe facio-brachio-crural hemiparesis, dysarthria, and homolateral or bilateral ataxia.
2. **Unilateral mediolateral basal infarcts.** Most patients show slight hemiparesis with ataxia and dysarthria, ataxic hemiparesis, or dysarthria—clumsy hand syndrome.
3. **Unilateral mediodiscal or mediotegmental infarcts.** Presentations include dysarthria—clumsy hand syndrome, ataxic hemiparesis with prominent sensory or eye movement disorders, and hemiparesis with contralateral facial or abducens palsy.
4. **Bilateral centrobasal infarcts.** These patients have pseudobulbar palsy and bilateral sensorimotor disturbances.
The most common etiology for paramedian pontine infarcts is small vessel disease; vertebrobasilar large vessel disease and cardiac embolism are less common causes [11].

An unusual finding observed in patients with unilateral paramedian pontine infarction consists of bilateral Wallerian degeneration of the middle cerebellar peduncles [136].

LATERAL PONTINE SYNDROMES

Marie-Foix Syndrome. This syndrome is seen with lateral pontine lesions, especially those affecting the brachium pontis. It consists of the following:

1. Ipsilateral cerebellar ataxia due to involvement of cerebellar connections
2. Contralateral hemiparesis due to involvement of the corticospinal tract
3. Variable contralateral hemihypesthesia for pain and temperature due to involvement of the spinthalamic tract

Rostral lateral pontine infarcts can present with contralateral crural predominant hemiparesis or crural monoparesis. Lesions associated with crural hemiparesis primarily involve the lateral and dorsal pontine base, while lesions responsible for crural monoparesis primarily involve the dorsolateral pontine base [76].

As a rare occurrence, pontine lesions have been associated with anosognosia for the hemiplegia [43], blepharospasm [9], brief clonic jerking and other convulsive-like movements [133], jaw-opening dystonia, [40] hemidystonia [146], a locally enhanced startled response [163], and symptoms of atactic tremor [13], dystonia-dysmetria or dystonia-facial paresis [36], body lateropulsion from paramedian pontine involvement ventral to the fourth ventricle [164], truncal ataxia without limb ataxia [102], isolated bilateral ataxia due to selective involvement of part of the decussation of the superior cerebellar peduncle [88], bilateral deafness [154], cheiro-pedal syndrome with numbness of hand and foot associated with hyposthesia and hypesthesia [74], painful Horner syndrome [31], contralateral hemihypesthesia [120], intracephalic sensory loss [44], trigeminal neuralgia [19], ipsilateral transient eye and nose pain [41], isolated cranial nerve palsies [149], transient hemihypesthesia [86], disturbances of cognition and affect, pathologic crying, proemone of inappropriate or pathological laughter (fou rire prodromique) resulting from rostral and medial pontine involvement [61,136,147], rapid eye movement sleep behavior disorder occurring either in isolation or in association with narcolepsy [83,95]. In other circumstances, they have mimicked an acute peripheral vestibulopathy [150]. While lesions in the dorsolateral pontine tegmentum may cause vomiting, medial segmental upper pontine lesions, probably affecting the PPRF bilaterally, may cause central reflex hyperpnea, formerly called central neurogenic hyperpneumeration. Voluntary central facial paresis results from lesions involving the contralateral corticobulbar fibers. Emotional innervation of the muscles of facial expression is involuntary and of uncertain origin. Volitional type of facial paresis with unimpaired emotional movements to emotional stimuli has also been described indicating that the pathways subserving volitional and emotional input to the facial nucleus are still anatomically separated in the upper pons [153,158]. Conversely, emotional (mimetic) facial paresis has been noted with dorsolateral pontine lesions involving structures distinct from the corticobulbar fibers that mediate volitional facial innervation [72].

The Syndrome of Universal Dissociative Anesthesia

Universal dissociative anesthesia is a rare syndrome that has been described in a patient affected by combined right superior cerebellar artery occlusion, resulting in lateral superior pontine infarction, and left posterior inferior cerebellar artery occlusion, resulting in a left Wallenberg lateral medullary syndrome [159]. The patient had loss of pain and temperature sensation over the face, neck, trunk, and all extremities, whereas light touch, vibration, position, and deep pain sensation were preserved (dissociated sensory loss). This interesting lesson in localization was due to bilateral discrete interruption of spinothalamic fibers and the spinal nucleus and tract of the trigeminal nerve.

The clinical findings with pontine hemorrhage are discussed in Chapter 21.

The Mesencephalon

Anatomy of the Mesencephalon

The rostral boundary of the mesencephalon is the superior colliculi—mammillary bodies’ plane; the caudal boundary is the plane just caudal to the inferior colliculi (Fig. 15.1). The midbrain (Fig. 15.5) may be divided into the dorsal tectum or quadrigeminal plate (containing the colliculi), the central tegmentum, and the ventrally located cerebral peduncles [1].

The dorsal tectum contains the corpora quadrigemina, made up of four rounded eminences arranged in pairs: the superior and inferior colliculi. The tegmentum contains ascending and descending tracts, reticular nuclei, and well-delineated nuclear masses. The cerebral peduncles are ventral and
contain corticopontine fibers (frontopontine projection) in their medial fifth, corticospinal tract fibers in their middle three-fifths, and temporopontine fibers in their lateral fifth. Fibers in the corticospinal tract are somatotopically arranged with the fibers destined to the arm medially placed and those to the leg laterally located, with the trunk fibers in between. The substantia nigra is a pigmented layer possessing melanin granules, dorsal to the peduncles and ventral to the red nucleus, composed of a dorsal zona compacta and a ventral zona reticulata.

The nucleus of the trochlear nerve (cranial nerve IV) is located in the ventral part of the central gray matter at the level of the inferior colliculus; the nucleus of the oculomotor nerve (cranial nerve III) lies rostral to the trochlear nucleus beneath the superior colliculus, just posterior to the medial longitudinal fasciculus. Mesencephalic tracts include the crus cerebri, the dentatothalamothalamic tract, the medial tegmental tract, the medial longitudinal fasciculus, the posterior commissure, the spinothalamic tract, and the medial lemniscus.

**Vascular Supply of the Mesencephalon**

The mesencephalon receives its blood supply from branches of the basilar, posterior cerebral, superior cerebellar, posterior communicating, anterior and posterior choroidal arteries.

The mesencephalon’s vascular supply includes the paramedian and the circumferential vessels.

**PARAMEDIAN VESSELS**

The paramedian vessels (the retromamillary trunk) arise from the origins of the posterior cerebral arteries and include the thalamoperforating arteries (supplying the thalamus) and the peduncular arteries (supplying the medial peduncles and the midbrain tegmentum, including the oculomotor nucleus, the red nucleus, and the substantia nigra).

**CIRCUMFERENTIAL ARTERIES**

The circumferential (peripeduncular) arteries include the following:

1. The quadrigeminal arteries (arising from the posterior cerebral arteries), which supply the superior and inferior colliculi.
2. The superior cerebellar arteries, which send branches to the cerebral peduncles and brachium conjunctivum before supplying the superior cerebellum.
3. The posterior choroidal arteries, which supply the cerebral peduncles, the lateral superior colliculi, the thalamus, and the choroid plexus of the third ventricle.
4. The anterior choroidal arteries (from the internal carotids or middle cerebral arteries), which in some cases help supply the cerebral peduncles as well as supramesencephalic structures.

5. The posterior cerebral arteries, which also give rise to some mesencephalic branches.

**Mesencephalic Syndromes**

**VENTRAL CRANIAL NERVE III FASCICULAR SYNDROME (WEBER’S SYNDROME)**

A lesion affecting the cerebral peduncle, especially the medial peduncle, may damage pyramidal fibers and the fascicle of cranial nerve III [16] (Fig. 15.6). This results in the Weber’s syndrome, which consists of the following:

1. Contralateral hemiplegia (including the lower face) due to corticospinal and corticobulbar tract involvement
2. Ipsilateral oculomotor paresis, including parasympathetic cranial nerve III paresis (i.e., dilated pupil)

This syndrome may be seen with intrinsic or extrinsic brainstem lesions and may even be the presenting sign of multiple sclerosis [92]. When supranuclear fibers for horizontal gaze are interrupted in the medial peduncle, a supranuclear-type conjugate gaze palsy to the opposite side may occur (the midbrain syndrome of Foville).

**DORSAL CRANIAL NERVE III FASCICULAR SYNDROMES (BENEDIKT’S SYNDROME)**

A lesion affecting the mesencephalic tegmentum may affect the red nucleus, the brachium conjunctivum, and the fascicle of cranial nerve III (Fig. 15.6). More ventral tegmental lesions result in Benedikt’s syndrome, [91] which consists of the following:

1. Contralateral hemiplegia (including the lower face) due to corticospinal and corticobulbar tract involvement
2. Ipsilateral oculomotor paresis, including parasympathetic cranial nerve III paresis (i.e., dilated pupil)

This syndrome may be seen with intrinsic or extrinsic brainstem lesions and may even be the presenting sign of multiple sclerosis [92]. When supranuclear fibers for horizontal gaze are interrupted in the medial peduncle, a supranuclear-type conjugate gaze palsy to the opposite side may occur (the midbrain syndrome of Foville).
1. Ipsilateral oculomotor paresis, usually with a dilated pupil
2. Contralateral involuntary movements, including intention tremor, hemichorea, or hemiathetosis, due to destruction of the red nucleus

Similar clinical manifestations are noted with more dorsal midbrain tegmental lesions (Fig. 15.6) that injure the dorsal red nucleus and brachium conjunctivum (Claude’s syndrome) but with prominent cerebellar signs (e.g., ataxia, dysmetria, dysdiadochokinesia) and no hemiballismus [16]. The Nothnagel’s syndrome is a variant of the dorsal midbrain syndrome (see subsequent text), and may not include a fascicular third nerve palsy.

**DORSAL MESENCEPHALIC SYNDROMES**

Dorsal rostral mesencephalic lesions produce mainly neuro-ophthalmologic abnormalities. The dorsal mesencephalic syndrome (also known as the Sylvian aqueduct syndrome, the Koehler-Salus-Elschnig syndrome, or Parinaud’s syndrome) [65] is most often seen with hydrocephalus or tumors of the pineal region. This syndrome includes all or some of the following signs:

1. Paralysis of conjugate upward gaze (occasionally down-gaze)
2. Pupillary abnormalities (pupils are usually large with light-near dissociation)
3. Convergence-retraction nystagmus on upward gaze (especially elicited by inducing upward saccades by a down-moving optokinetic target)
4. Pathologic lid retraction (Collier’s sign)
5. Lid lag
6. During horizontal refixations, the abducting eye may move more slowly than the adducting eye (“pseudoabducens palsy”), perhaps reflecting excess convergence tone

**TOP OF THE BASILAR SYNDROME**

Occlusive vascular disease of the rostral basilar artery, usually embolic, frequently results in the “top of the basilar” syndrome [24,97] due to infarction of the midbrain, thalamus, and portions of the temporal and occipital lobes. An uncommon variant of this syndrome may also result in bilateral paramedian midbrain ischemia [142]. This syndrome may also occur in patients with giant basilar artery tip aneurysms, in patients with vasculitis, and after cerebrovascular angioplasty [97]. This syndrome variably includes the following:

1. Disorders of eye movements. Unilateral or bilateral paralysis of upward or downward gaze, disordered convergence, pseudobulbucens palsies, convergence-retraction nystagmus, ocular abduction abnormalities, elevation and retraction of the upper eyelids (Collier’s sign), skew deviation, and lightning-like eye oscillations.
2. Pupillary abnormalities. Small and reactive, large or midposition and fixed, corectopia, occasionally oval pupil.
5. Motor and sensory defects. Lesions causing pseudobulbucens palsies with convergence-retraction nystagmus have been further mapped to the midbrain-diencephalic junction [124]. In addition, isolated unilateral superior oblique palsies have been described in patients with contralateral tegmental lesions of the trochlear nucleus and adjacent intraaxial trochlear nerve [152]. Likewise, isolated cranial nerve palsies and cheiro-orbital syndrome have been reported as the sole manifestation of small mesencephalic infarcts [2,149]. Furthermore, strategically placed unilateral caudal paramedian midbrain lesions may produce bilateral cerebellar dysfunction [108].

**References**

12. Benito-León J, Álvarez-Cermeño JC. Isolated tongue paralysis as a manifestation of bilateral medullary...
Localization in Clinical Neurology


The Cerebellum

Anatomy of the Cerebellum

The cerebellum (Fig. 16.1 A and B), derived from the somatic afferent portion of the alar plate (rhombic lip), acts as a monitor or modulator of motor activity “originating” in other brain centers. Remarkable morphological features are its foliation, laminar structure, unique afferent and efferent connectivity of the cerebellar lobules, and molecular organization [38,114,123]. The cerebellum regulates muscle tone, posture, and equilibrium. One of the major cerebellar functions is the automatic excitation of antagonist muscles at the end of a movement, with the simultaneous inhibition of agonist muscles that initiated the movement.

The cerebellum is located in the posterior fossa of the skull, dorsal to thepons and medulla oblongata and separated from the occipital lobes by the tentorium cerebelli. On axial and coronal planes, a midline portion, the vermis, and two lateral portions, the cerebellar hemispheres, can be recognized. The falx cerebelli, a dural partition, partially separates both cerebellar hemispheres. The vermis is developmentally older and receives mainly spinocerebellar afferents, whereas the hemispheres have more complex fiber connections. Sagittal and coronal planes display best the three major components of the cerebellum, separated by fissures that lie near the axial plane: the anterior and posterior lobes (divided by the primary fissure) and the flocculonodular lobe (separated from the posterior lobes by the posterolateral or postnodular fissures). The anterior lobe comprises lobules I to V, the posterior lobe, lobules VI to IX, while the flocculonodular lobe comprises lobule X. A cerebellar tonsil forms the medioventral border of the posterior lobe of each cerebellar hemisphere. The vermis is subdivided into three units, the archicerebellum, the paleocerebellum, and the neocerebellum [22]. The archicerebellum corresponds to the flocculonodular...
FIG. 16.1. (A and B) The cerebellum. Midsagittal and axial sections.

FIG. 16.2. Schematic diagram of the cerebellar cortex.
lobe and is also called the vestibulocerebellum because it has a number of connections with the vestibular system. It also receives input from areas of the brain concerned with eye movements [111,112]. As a result of these connections, the vestibulocerebellum plays a role in the control of body equilibrium and eye movements. The paleocerebellum consists of the vermis of the anterior lobe, the pyramid, the uvula, and the paraflocculus. Also known as the spinocerebellum because it receives input mainly from the spinal cord, it plays a role in the control of muscle tone and the axial and limb movements. The neocerebellum (corticocerebellum), or cerebrocerebellum, consists of the middle portion of the vermis and most of the cerebellar hemispheres. Because it receives projections from the pons (corticopontocerebellar pathway), it is also termed the pontocerebellum. The neocerebellum projects fibers to the cerebral cortex through the thalamus, and plays a role in the planning and initiation of movements, as well as the regulation of fine limb movements.

Three pairs of deep nuclei on each side of the midline within the white matter core of the cerebellum receive input from the cerebellar cortex and incoming afferents. These nuclei are also the main source of cerebellar efferents. All of the efferent projections of the deep cerebellar nuclei are excitatory, except for projections to the inferior olive, which are inhibitory. From medial to lateral, these nuclei include the fastigial nucleus (nucleus fastigii), the nucleus interpositus (composed of the emboliform and globose nuclei), and the dentate nucleus (nucleus dentatus). On the basis of the connections of these nuclei, the cerebellum can be longitudinally subdivided [21,50] as follows: (a) a midline (vermal) zone, containing cerebellar neurons projecting to the fastigial nucleus; (b) an intermediate (paravermal) zone, containing neurons projecting to the nucleus interpositus; and (c) a lateral (hemispheric) zone, containing neurons projecting to the dentate nucleus.

There is separate somatotopic representation within each cerebellar nucleus, with caudal parts anterior, rostral parts posterior, trunk lateral, and limbs medial [47,126]. Each nucleus controls a different type or mode of movement [47,126], as follows:

1. The fastigial nucleus assists stance and gait and controls muscles only in the modes of sitting, standing, and walking. Therefore, fastigial lesions may cause abasia.
2. The nucleus interpositus assists segmental reflexes (e.g., those concerned with stability) and speeds the initiation of movements triggered by somatosensory cues that guide the response, stops unwanted and promotes wanted oscillations, and stabilizes holds. Therefore, nucleus-interpositus lesions may result in delayed check (rebound) responses, truncal titubation, abnormal rapid alternating movements, action tremor, oscillation of the outstretched extremities, and ataxia on finger-nose-finger and heel-knee-shin maneuvers.
3. The dentate nucleus assists in tasks requiring fine dexterity. Lesions of this nucleus or its projections cause delays in initiating and terminating movements, terminal and intention tremor, temporal incoordination in movements that require multiple joints, and abnormalities in the spatial coordination of hand and finger movements.

The cerebellum is connected to the brainstem by three large cerebellar peduncles: the caudal inferior cerebellar peduncle (restiform body), the middle cerebellar peduncle (brachium pontis), and the rostral superior cerebellar peduncle (brachium conjunctivum). The caudal and rostral peduncles contain afferent and efferent tracts; the middle peduncle is afferent. Most afferent fibers that project to the cerebellum do so through the inferior and middle cerebellar peduncle, whereas efferent fibers from the cerebellum traverse the superior and the inferior cerebellar peduncles.

The inferior cerebellar peduncle (restiform body) connects the cerebellum to the medulla oblongata and carries afferent and efferent fibers. Some afferent fibers of clinical importance include the following:

1. The dorsal spinocerebellar tract, originating in the dorsal nucleus of Clarke (T1–L2), which carries proprioceptive and exteroceptive information mostly from the trunk and ipsilateral lower extremity.
2. The cuneocerebellar tract, originating in the external arcuate nucleus, which transmits proprioceptive information from the upper extremity and neck.
3. The Olivocerebellar tract, which carries somatosensory information from the contralateral inferior olivary nuclei.
4. The vestibulocerebellar tract, which transmits information from vestibular receptors on both sides of the body.
5. The reticulocerebellar tract, which arises in the lateral reticular and paramedian nuclei of the medulla.
6. The arcuatomocerebellar tract, which arises from the arcuate nuclei of the medulla oblongata.
7. The trigeminocerebellar tract, which arises from the spinal and main sensory nuclei of the trigeminal nerve.
Efferent fibers in the restiform body are mainly cerebellovestibular pathways and constitute the fastigiobulbar tract, which courses in a separate pathway known as the juxtarestiform body. Other efferent fibers in the inferior cerebellar peduncle are the cerebelloreticular pathways.

The middle cerebellar peduncle (brachium pontis), the largest of the three cerebellar peduncles, connects the cerebellum to the pons and carries mainly the afferent fibers of the pontocerebellar (corticopontocerebellar) tract, which arises in the contralateral pontine gray matter and transmits impulses from the cerebral cortex to the intermediate and lateral zones of the cerebellum.

The superior cerebellar peduncle (brachium conjunctivum) connects the cerebellum to the midbrain. It contains mainly cerebellar efferent fibers, although it also contains a few afferent fibers. Afferent fibers of the superior cerebellar peduncle include the following:

1. The ventral spinocerebellar tract, which transmits proprioceptive and exteroceptive information from levels below the midthoracic cord.
2. The tectocerebellar tract, arising in the superior and inferior colliculi, which carries auditory and visual information.
3. The trigeminocerebellar tract, which carries proprioceptive fibers from the mesencephalon and tactile information from the chief sensory nucleus of the trigeminal nerve.
4. The cerulocerebellar tract, which carries fibers from the nucleus ceruleus.

Efferent fibers of the superior peduncle include the following:

1. The dentatorubral tract, which carries output to the contralateral red nucleus. Many of the fibers ending in this nucleus are branches of the larger dentatothalamic tract.
2. The dentatothalamic tract, which transmits output to the contralateral ventrolateral nucleus of the thalamus.
3. The uncinate bundle of Russell, which carries output to the vestibular nuclei and reticular formation.

Vascular Supply of the Cerebellum

The blood supply to the cerebellum is derived from the posterior inferior cerebellar arteries, the anterior inferior cerebellar arteries, and the superior cerebellar arteries (Fig. 16.3) [4,105]. The branches of these
three vessels anastomose with branches from the corresponding vessels on the opposite side to provide a rich anastomotic network.

1. The posterior inferior cerebellar artery (PICA) arises from the intracranial vertebral artery and supplies the half of the cerebellum below the plane of the great horizontal fissure, encompassing the lateral medullary tegmentum, inferior cerebellar peduncle, the ipsilateral portion of the inferior vermis, and the inferior surface of the cerebellar hemisphere. The vermian or medial branch of the PICA supplies the medial cerebellum and the dorsolateral medulla oblongata, and the tonsillar-hemispheric or lateral branch supplies the inferoposterolateral aspect of the cerebellum, but not the medulla.

2. The anterior inferior cerebellar artery (AICA), which often arises about 1 cm above the origin of the basilar artery, most frequently as a single vessel, provides supply to the anterior petrosal surface of the cerebellar hemisphere, flocculus, lower portion of the middle cerebellar peduncle, and lateral pontomedullary tegmentum. Typically, the AICA gives origin to an internal auditory artery that enters the internal acoustic meatus. When the PICA is missing, the territory of the AICA includes the territory of the PICA.

3. The superior cerebellar artery arises near the distal segment of the basilar artery just below the terminal bifurcation into the paired posterior cerebral arteries, and supplies the upper surface of the cerebellar hemisphere, ipsilateral portion of the superior vermis, most of the dentate nucleus, upper portion of the middle cerebellar peduncle, superior cerebellar peduncle, and lateral pontine tegmentum. The oculomotor nerve (CN III) and the trochlear nerve (CN IV) run between the superior cerebellar artery and the posterior cerebral artery.

Clinical Manifestations of Cerebellar Dysfunction

The classic report of Gordon Holmes describes cerebellar dysfunction in patients with wound injuries to the cerebellum [58,59]. The cerebellum controls the rate, direction, range, and force of voluntary movements, and through its vestibular connections, corrects and adjusts the individual’s upright position in space. Thus, cardinal features of cerebellar dysfunction involve disturbances in motor control, muscle tone regulation, and coordination of skilled movements, and are briefly discussed here.

Hypotonia

Hypotonia accompanies acute hemispheric lesions and is seen less often with chronic lesions. The hypotonia is ipsilateral to the side of the cerebellar lesion and is often more noticeable in the upper limbs, particularly in the proximal musculature. Hypotonia extremities have decreased resistance to passive stretching of the muscles and often exhibit pendular muscle stretch reflexes, which may also be diminished. Occasionally, cerebellar lesions may be associated with increased tone of the extremity due in part to secondary brainstem (corticospinal tract) compression. Hypotonia occurs only with neocerebellar lesions and is probably the result of decreased fusimotor activity secondary to cerebellar injury, especially to the dentate nucleus, resulting in a decreased response to stretch in the muscle spindle afferents.

Ataxia or Dystaxia

Cerebellar disorders result principally from defective timing of sequential contractions of agonist and antagonist muscles [48]. Ataxia, regarded as the “cerebellar sign par excellence,” refers to a disturbance in the smooth performance of voluntary motor acts causing muscular incoordination or impaired balance [23]. The movements err in speed, range, force, and timing. In the absence of cerebellar inhibitory and modulating influences, skilled movements originating in the cerebral motor cortex become inaccurate and poorly controlled. Ataxia may affect the limbs, the trunk, or gait. Presentation may be acute (e.g., cerebellar hemorrhage, biotinidase deficiency, phenytoin intoxication, acute cerebellar ataxia following chickenpox); episodic (e.g., autosomal dominant channelopathies associated with mutations in the KCNA1 and CACNA1 A genes, basilar migraine, Hartnup’s disease); or chronic progressive or nonprogressive (e.g., cerebellar tumors, spinocerebellar ataxias [SCA], Friedreich’s ataxia, ataxia telangiectasia, hypothyroidism, gluten sensitivity, paraneoplastic cerebellar degeneration) (Tables 16.1, 16.2, and 16.3) [26,41,46,52,54,55,56,60,61,67,84,85,86,102,104,120,141]. Inherited ataxias comprise a heterogeneous group of disorders characterized by variable combinations of progressive degeneration of the cerebellum and spinocerebellar tracts associated with clinical manifestations of pyramidal, extrapyramidal and peripheral nervous system dysfunction, and cerebellar or olivopontocerebellar atrophy on neuroimaging studies. Hereditary ataxias are further classified into autosomal dominant, autosomal recessive, and X-linked forms. Autosomal dominant cerebellar ataxias typically present in adulthood, and are currently classified as SCA 1 to 30 according to the specific gene or chromosomal locus associated with these disorders [86,109]. Two of these SCAs are briefly described here. Clinical features suggestive of SCA 3 (Machado-Joseph disease) include progressive...
cerebellar ataxia, nystagmus, ophthalmoplegia, facial fasciculations, facial dystonias, eyelid retraction with bulging eyes, and parkinsonism [110]. Features suggestive of dentatorubropallidoluysian atrophy encompass cerebellar ataxia, myoclonus, choreoathetosis, dystonia, parkinsonism, psychiatric disturbances, epilepsy and dementia [88].

Autosomal recessive ataxias typically result in early onset cerebellar ataxia associated with various neurologic, ophthalmologic, and systemic manifestations [46]. Pathologically characterized by the degeneration of the spinocerebellar tracts, dorsal columns, and to a lesser extent, the corticospinal tracts, Friedreich’s ataxia is the most common of the autosomal recessive ataxias. Age at onset is typically 5 to 25 years. Friedreich’s ataxia is caused by a deficiency of the mitochondrial protein frataxin. It is characterized by slowly progressive limb and gait ataxia, dysarthria, rhythmic head tremor, abnormal eye movements (fixation instability, saccadic dysmetria, disruptive pursuit, and vestibular abnormalities), optic atrophy, areflexia of knee and ankle jerks, loss of vibration and position sense, axonal polyneuropathy, extensor plantar responses, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, diabetes, pes cavus, and kyphoscoliosis [33,39,40,45].

Ataxia secondary to cerebellar injury characteristically persists in spite of visual cues (unlike sensory ataxia which is more pronounced with eyes closed). The term ataxia includes other abnormalities of voluntary movement control, such as asynergia (lack of synergy of the various muscle components in performing more complex movements so that movements are disjointed and clumsy and broken up into isolated successive parts), dysmetria (abnormal range, force and excursions in movement), dysdiadochokinesia (impaired performance of rapidly alternating movements), and past-pointing. Dysmetria is best appreciated with the finger-nose test, or in the case of the lower extremities, heel-knee-shin or great toe-examiner’s finger test. The finger-nose test may show a tendency to fall short or overshoot the examiner’s finger (past-pointing). The heel-knee-shin test may reveal a wavering of the heel away from the line of the shin. When an opposed motion is suddenly released, an impaired checking response and an excessive rebound phenomenon are also involved.

Gait disturbance is one of the most disabling manifestations of cerebellar disease. Typically, patients with cerebellar disease have a wide-based stance and a gait [49] with increased trunk sway, irregular stepping with a tendency to stagger as if intoxicated, and impaired tandem walking and tandem gait paradigm with inappropriate timing of foot placement [118]. Truncal instability may be manifested by falls in any direction. Truncal ataxia and titubations suggest a midline cerebellar lesion.

**Cerebellar Dysarthria**

Dysarthria occurring with cerebellar disease is generally characterized by abnormalities in articulation and prosody [30,50]. These two abnormalities may occur together or independently. Speech production is often labored with occasional excessive facial grimacing. Comprehension remains intact. Cerebellar dysarthria has been described as scanning, slurred, staccato, explosive, hesitant, slow altered accent, and

---

**TABLE 16.1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causes of Acute Ataxia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Idiopathic (“acute cerebellar ataxia”)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metabolic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoglycemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypernatremia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperammonemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biotinidase deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wernicke’s encephalopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacterial meningitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viral meningitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aseptic meningitis associated with Kikuchi-Fujimoto disease (hystocytic necrotizing lymphadenitis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brainsstem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trauma (battered child)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrocephalus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causes of Episodic/Recurrent Ataxia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Channelopathies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Episodic ataxia Type 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Episodic ataxia Type 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paroxysmal choreoathetosis with episodic ataxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periodic vestibulocerebellar ataxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Familial hemiplegic migraine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basilar migraine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benign paroxysmal vertigo of childhood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epilepsy (post-ictal state)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GBS = Guillain-Barré syndrome.
Functional MRI studies among healthy volunteers have shown that the cerebellar representation of the tongue and oral facial muscles corresponds to the areas involved in patients with cerebellar dysarthria. In a series of 162 cases of focal cerebellar disease, 31 patients had dysarthria, of whom 22 had predominantly or exclusively left hemispheric lesions [71]. Cerebellar hemispheric lesions were associated with garbled speech [100]. The dysarthria may be a result of a generalized hypotonia, and may affect intonation rather than articulation [64]. The development ofagrammatic speech after right cerebellar infarction supports the hypothesis that the cerebellum provides temporal interplay among the neural structures underlying the processes responsible for the production of sentences [115].

### TABLE 16.3 Causes of Chronic Ataxia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fixed deficit</th>
<th>Autosomal recessive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cerebral palsy</td>
<td>Friedreich's ataxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malformations (i.e., Dandy-Walker, Chiari, rhombencephalo-dysplasia, cerebellar agenesis, hypoplasia of the cerebellar vermis, familial agenesis of the cerebellar vermis, pontocerebellar hypoplasias, Joubert's syndrome, cerebellar cortical malformations, macrocerebellum, etc.</td>
<td>Early onset cerebellar ataxia with retained muscle stretch reflexes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>γ-glutamyl-cysteine synthetase deficiency</td>
<td>Ataxia with vitamin E deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triosephosphate isomerase deficiency</td>
<td>Ataxia with oculomotor apraxia Type 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebellar ataxia</td>
<td>Ataxia with oculomotor apraxia Type 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chediak-Higashi disease</td>
<td>With hypogonadism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With mycosperum (Ramsay Hunt syndrome)</td>
<td>With mycosperum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infantile onset spinocerebellar ataxia</td>
<td>With pigmentation retinopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With optic atrophy ± mental retardation (including Behr syndrome)</td>
<td>With optic atrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With cataract and mental retardation (Marinesco-Sjögren syndrome)</td>
<td>With hypotonia and mental retardation (Cayman ataxia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With childhood deafness</td>
<td>With extrapyramidal features</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal recessive late onset cerebellar ataxia</td>
<td>Autosomal recessive ataxia of Charlevoix-Saguenay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal recessive stacatonic ataxia of</td>
<td>Ataxia telangiectasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wilson's disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Refsum's disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bassen-Kornzweig disease (abetalipoproteinemia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Spinocerebellar ataxia with axonal neuropathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inborn errors of metabolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cerebrotendinous xanthomatosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mitochondrial recessive ataxia syndrome</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Autosomal dominant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SCA1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA3 (MJD)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRPLA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA7 (Ataxia/retinal degeneration)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 9 (gene location vacant)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 24 (gene location vacant)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA (number not yet assigned)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA—mesencephal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA—optic atrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCA—paraplegia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hereditary spastic ataxia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Fixed deficit**
- Cerebral palsy
- Malformations (i.e., Dandy-Walker, Chiari, rhombencephalo-dysplasia, cerebellar agenesis, hypoplasia of the cerebellar vermis, familial agenesis of the cerebellar vermis, pontocerebellar hypoplasias, Joubert’s syndrome, cerebellar cortical malformations, macrocerebellum, etc.)

**Autosomal recessive**
- Friedreich’s ataxia
- Early onset cerebellar ataxia with retained muscle stretch reflexes
- Ataxia with vitamin E deficiency
- Ataxia with oculomotor apraxia Type 1
- Ataxia with oculomotor apraxia Type 2
- With hypogonadism
- With mycosperum (Ramsay Hunt syndrome)
- Infantile onset spinocerebellar ataxia
- With pigmentation retinopathy
- With optic atrophy ± mental retardation (including Behr syndrome)

**Autosomal dominant**
- SCA1
- SCA2
- SCA3 (MJD)
- SCA4
- SCA5
- SCA6
- DRPLA
- SCA7 (Ataxia/retinal degeneration)
- SCA8
- SCA 9 (gene location vacant)
- SCA 10
- SCA 11
- SCA 12
- SCA 13
- SCA 14
- SCA 15
- SCA 16
- SCA 17
- SCA 18
- SCA 19
- SCA 20
- SCA 21
- SCA 22
- SCA 23
- SCA 24 (gene location vacant)
- SCA 25
- SCA 26
- SCA 27
- SCA 28
- SCA 29
- SCA 30
- SCA (number not yet assigned)
- SCA—mesencephal
- SCA—optic atrophy
- SCA—paraplegia
- Hereditary spastic ataxia

**Other inherited disorders**
- Sphingolipidoses
- Ceroid-lipofuscinosis
- X-Linked spinocerebellar ataxia

**Acquired diseases**
- Hypothyroidism
- Drugs or toxins
- Multiple sclerosis
- Neoplasms
- Hamartomatic malformations (i.e., dysplastic gangliocytoma or Lhermitte-Duclos disease)
- Erdheim-Chester disease
- Paraneoplastic cerebellar degeneration* (anti-Yo, anti-Hu, anti-Ri, anti-Tr, anti-CV2, ZIC antibodies, antibody-negative)
- Gluten sensitivity ataxia
- Autoimmune cerebellar ataxia
- Cerebellar ataxia
- Hereditary ataxia

*Associated with different neoplasms including small cell lung cancer, adenocarcinoma of the breast and ovary, and Hodgkin’s lymphoma.

SCA = spinocerebellar ataxia; MJD = Machado-Joseph disease; DRPLA = dentatorubropallidoluysian atrophy.

---

Aptara
with speech disorders more often than vermian lesions. Dysarthria was especially evident after damage extending into the superior paravermal segment of the left cerebellar hemisphere. Because cerebrocerebellar connections are predominantly contralateral, and the nondominant cerebral hemisphere is concerned with prosody of speech [71,100], the authors concluded that the dominance of the left cerebellar hemisphere in the regulation of speech (melody and continuity) may be due to this hemisphere accessing the nondominant cerebral hemisphere. Confirming the importance of the superior cerebellum in voice control, other authors have found dysarthria, characterized by irregularly distributed articulatory deficits and slowed speech tempo, to be as common with right-sided as with left-sided lesions [2]. Silveri et al. reported a patient with agrammatic speech after a PICA territory infarction, suggesting a right cerebellar hemispheric dominance for mathematical speech after a PICA territory infarction, suggesting a right cerebellar hemispheric dominance for language function [115]. Isolated cerebellar dysarthria, without any other deficit, has also been reported with a small infarct in the left paravermal zone of the rostral cerebellum (lobulus simplex and semilunaris superior) in the territory of the medial branch of the superior cerebellar artery [5], with right paravermal segment infarcts, with lesions in the upper paravermal area of the right cerebellar hemisphere [132], as well as with an intact dentate nucleus [1].

Clinical and neuroimaging studies suggest that the cerebellum is involved in language tasks. Transient mutism after excision of cerebellar tumors (vermian neoplasms) has been increasingly recognized after posterior fossa surgery in children. In children, its incidence is estimated between 8% and 31% [37]. Whether this syndrome is tumor specific or not remains debatable. Symptoms usually develop one to three days after surgery. In many instances, these children also have oropharyngeal apraxia, with difficulty initiating the chewing and swallowing process, global impairment in the initiation of voluntary activity, impaired eye opening, and urinary retention [95]. It has been speculated that transient bilateral involvement of the dentato-rubro-thalamic tract may lead to this state of mutism and subsequent dysarthria [24,44,96,98,133,134]. Other neurologic lesions known to cause mutism include damage to Broca’s area, damage to the supplementary motor area, bilateral damage to the reticular formation of the mesencephalon (akineti c mutism), the locked-in syndrome and chronic vegetative state, Marchiafava-Bignami disease, severe pseudobulbar palsy due to diffuse bilateral cerebral hemispheric dysfunction, bilateral thalamic damage following thalamotomy for Parkinson’s disease, corpus callosotomy, surgical resection of the supplementary motor cortex of the dominant hemisphere, and bilateral pharyngeal or vocal cord paralysis (e.g., due to bulbar poliomyelitis or Guillain-Barré syndrome) [20,32].

Tremor

Lesions of the cerebellum, especially those affecting the dentate nucleus, induce a kinetic (intention) tremor occurring during activity. A static (postural) tremor may also occur. Lesions of the dentate nucleus may result in tremor because they interrupt a rubro-olivo-cerebellar circuit [69]. Patients with Wilson disease may have tremor or ataxic dysmetria. Cerebellar disease may also be associated with cerebellar fits; these are episodes of decerebrate rigidity usually seen with large midline cerebellar mass lesions [139].

Ocular Motor Dysfunction

Nystagmus is frequently observed in association with cerebellar disorders. Gaze-evoked, upbeat, rebound, and abnormal optokinetic nystagmus may be seen with midline cerebellar lesions [43,50]. Periodic alternating nystagmus is seen with lesions of the uvula and nodulus or with lesions involving their connections with the brainstem vestibular nuclei. Downbeat nystagmus may also occur with posterior midline cerebellar lesions involving the vestibulocerebellum [75]. Positional nystagmus, mimicking positional nystagmus of the benign paroxysmal type, may occur in patients with posterior fossa tumors. Ocular dysmetria [29]—a conjugate overshoot and undershoot of a target with voluntary saccades—may be seen with midline [111] or lateral [97] cerebellar lesions. Other ocular signs seen with cerebellar disorders include irregular tracking, saccadic breakdown of pursuit, ocular flutter, opsinclonus, ocular bobbing, paresis of conjugate gaze, square wave jerks at rest, skew deviation, ocular tilt reaction, and failure to suppress the vestibulo-ocular reflex [13,51,127]. Because most of the disorders that give rise to these abnormalities also affect other brainstem structures, the cerebellar role in their genesis has not been fully defined. In general, most “cerebellar” eye signs cannot be precisely localized to specific areas of the cerebellum. (See Chapter 8 for a discussion of cerebellar control of eye movements.)

Nonmotor Manifestations

The role of the cerebellum in the modulation of complex non-motor behaviors, including various aspects of cognition and linguistic functioning are becoming unraveled [34,36,53,68,76,77,80,81,105,113,131,137,138]. Accumulating evidence also supports the idea that the cerebellum may be altered in a wide range of psychiatric disorders including
schizophrenia and bipolar disease [14] as well as addictive behaviors [130]. Moreover, a growing body of data also gives credence to the contribution of the cerebellum to the modulation of a variety of behavioral processes in humans such as dyslexia [89], schizophrenia [11] and autism [3]. Subjects with dyslexia have been found to have magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) voxel differences on the right cerebellar declive and right lentiform nucleus [93]. In autism, postmortem histopathologic studies have shown marked hypoplasia within the cerebellar vermis and variable loss of Purkinje cells throughout the cerebellar hemispheres and archicerebellum. Abnormalities have also been found in the fastigial and interposed nuclei, whereas the anterior lobe of the cerebellum and vermis have not been involved [18,31,80]. Bipolar disorders were also noted in 3 of 15 subjects after focal cerebellar lesions; lesions included right cerebellar hypoplasia, bilateral cerebellar atrophy, and left midbrain pathology [70]. A cerebellar cognitive affective syndrome, characterized by impaired executive functioning, personality changes associated with blunted affect or disinhibited and inappropriate behavior, visuospatial disorganization, impaired visual-spatial memory, mild anoma, agrammatism, and dysprosody, has been reported [108]. The neurobehavioral presentation was more evident in those patients with pancerebellar disease and in those with acute onset cerebellar disease. Lesions of the posterior lobe were particularly responsible for the disturbed cognitive behaviors in the generation, whereas the cerebellar vermis was more consistently involved in patients with a more pronounced affective symptomatology. The anterior lobe of the cerebellum has not been implicated to the same extent in the generation of these cognitive/behavioral manifestations [107,108]. A disruption of the cerebellar modulation of neural circuits linking prefrontal, posterior parietal, superior temporal, and limbic cortices with the cerebellum has been proposed as the mechanism for this syndrome. On the basis of the several reciprocal anatomical connections between the cerebral cortex and cerebellum, this appears to be a plausible explanation. More recently, lesions in the cerebro-ponto-cerebellar pathways have been proposed as a plausible anatomical site for pathological laughter and crying [92]. Contralateral cerebellar hypometabolism has been noted among aphasic patients with left cerebral infarcts or hemorrhages [57]. Cerebellar disease may be associated with macrographia. In addition, typical features of spatial dysgraphia, with omission and repetition of strokes and letters, have been described in a patient with marked cerebellar atrophy (cerebellar hemispheres more involved than the vermis) associated with diffuse corticocortical atrophy [116]. A discoordination between planning of the movement and performance, due to a lack of the cerebellar modulation between premotor cortex and proprioceptive afference during the ongoing handwriting, has been postulated as an explanation for this observation [116].

Cerebellar Syndromes

The exquisiteness of high resolution structural MRI has fueled renewed interest in human cerebellar lesion studies [128]. In general, disorders predominantly involving the midline cerebellum affect primarily the truncal musculature and body equilibrium. In contrast, disorders affecting primarily the cerebellar hemispheres have an ipsilateral impairment of the voluntary movements of the fingers and legs as their most salient deficit. The cerebellar syndromes may be divided as follows:

1. The rostral vermis syndrome (anterior lobe)
2. The caudal vermis syndrome (floculonodular and posterior lobe)
3. The hemispheric syndrome (posterior lobe, variably anterior lobe)
4. The pancerebellar syndrome (all lobes)

Rostral Vermis Syndrome

The clinical characteristics of this syndrome include the following:

1. A wide-based stance and titubating gait
2. Ataxia of gait, with proportionally little ataxia on the heel-to-shin maneuver with the patient lying down
3. Normal or only slightly impaired arm coordination
4. Infrequent presence of hypotonia, nystagmus, and dysarthria

This syndrome is best exemplified by the restricted form of cerebellar cortical degeneration that occurs with unknown prevalence in the alcoholic population [135]. There is selective atrophy of the anterior and superior vermis, particularly the superficial folia, with lesser involvement of the caudal vermis, anterior parts of lateral lobes, floculus, and parafocculus. Morphometric methods have further demonstrated a remarkable Purkinje cell loss and densities especially in lobules I to IV, IX, and X of the vermis [25]. A Japanese autopsy study found the following sequence of involvement: anterior superior vermis; anterior superior hemisphere; anterior inferior hemisphere; and finally anterior inferior vermis [140]. Clinically, these patients present with incoordination of gait of the legs with little involvement of the arms, speech, or ocular motility.
Caudal Vermis Syndrome

The clinical characteristics of this syndrome include the following:
1. Axial disequilibrium and staggering gait
2. Little or no limb ataxia
3. Sometimes spontaneous nystagmus and rotated postures of the head

This syndrome is typically seen with disease processes that damage the flocculonodular lobe, especially medulloblastoma in children. Medulloblastomas account for approximately 20% of pediatric brain tumors. As these tumors grow, a hemispheric cerebellar syndrome may be superimposed due to neocerebellar involvement. Metastases may occur throughout the craniocerebral axis. Patients with tumors in either the vermis or the cerebellar hemispheres may present with symptoms and signs of increased intracranial pressure.

Surgical transection of the posterior inferior vermis may result in marked impairment of tandem gait with minimal impairment of regular gait, standing, and hopping on one foot. Visually guided limb movements and speech remain unaffected. Surgical disruption of the parallel fibers crossing the midline cerebellar cortex may be a critical variable accounting for these clinical features known as the posterior vermal split syndrome [17].

Cerebellar Hemispheric Syndrome

Patients with this syndrome typically show incoordination of ipsilateral appendicular movements, particularly when they require fine motor coordination. Thus, it affects mainly muscles closely controlled by the precentral cortex, such as those involved in speech and finger movements. The most likely etiologies of a cerebellar hemispheric syndrome include infarcts, neoplasms, and abscesses [50].

Pancerebellar Syndrome

This syndrome, a combination of all other cerebellar syndromes, is characterized by bilateral signs of cerebellar dysfunction affecting the trunk, limbs, and cranial musculature. It is seen with infectious and parainfectious processes, hypoglycemia, hyperthermia, paraneoplastic cerebellar degeneration associated with small cell lung cancer [anti-Hu antibodies, ZIC antibodies] breast and ovarian carcinomas [anti-Yo antibodies], or Hodgkin’s lymphoma (Tr antibodies) and other toxic-metabolic disorders [136].

Gilman has suggested that, for localization purposes, the cerebellum should be viewed as a sagittally oriented structure containing three zones: midline, intermediate, and lateral [49,50]. The midline zone encompasses the anterior and posterior parts of the vermal cortex, the fastigial nucleus, and the associated input and output projections. Many of these projections are concerned with posture, locomotion, the position of the head in relation to the trunk, and the control of extraocular movements. Thus, cerebellar signs resulting from midline cerebellar disease are characterized by disorders of stance and gait, truncal titubation, rotated postures of the head, and disturbances of eye movements. The intermediate zone consists of the paravermal region of the cerebellar cortex and the interposed nuclei on each side. Neuronal activity in this region appears to be involved in the control of movement velocity, force, and the pattern of muscle activity, but clinical disorders related to disease of this zone have not been clearly delineated. The lateral zone consists of the cerebellar hemisphere and the dentate nucleus of each side. Neuronal units in this zone are involved in the planning of movements in connection with neurons in the precentral region of the cerebral cortex; lesions result in abnormalities related to voluntary movements and include hypotonia, dystarthis, dysmetria, dysdiadochokinesia, excessive rebound, impaired check response, kinetic and static tremors, decomposition of movements, past-pointing, and eye movement abnormalities [49,50].

Syndromes of Cerebellar Infarction

Cerebellar infarcts result from thrombotic or embolic occlusion of a cerebellar vessel. The clinical manifestations and resulting deficits are related to the specific vessels involved and the extent of collateral circulation. Main symptoms include headache, vertigo, dizziness, nausea, vomiting, unsteady gait, limb clumsiness, dystarthis, diplopia, and decreased level of alertness. Diagnosis relies on detailed attention to eye movements, coordination, and gait [42]. Most prominent signs include limb and gait ataxia, dystarthis, nystagmus, ocular tilt reaction [15] and altered mental status. Motor symptoms may be minimal or lacking, particularly among patients with infarcts involving lobule VI of the cerebellum [106]. According to their topographical distribution, four types of cerebellar infarction are recognized corresponding to the arterial territories of (a) the PICA (40%), (b) the AICA (5%), (c) the superior cerebellar artery (35%), and (d) the cortical watershed and deep cerebellar white matter borderzone infarcts (20%) [16,65,129]. Two distinct clinical syndromes are recognized: space-occupying cerebellar infarcts with fourth ventricular and brainstem compression and cerebellar infarcts without fourth ventricular or brainstem compression.

Space-occupying cerebellar infarcts likely to cause brainstem compression may present with sudden
onset of occipital headache, vertigo, nausea, vomiting, gait unsteadiness, and dysarthria [4]. Patients often display gait and truncal ataxia, ipsilateral axial lateralpropulsion, or both, which usually prevent them from standing upright [4]. They may also exhibit nystagmus, ipsilateral limb dystemria, dysarthria, and impaired consciousness [125]. The edematous cerebellum may compress the aqueduct of Sylvius or the fourth ventricle causing acute obstructive hydrocephalus, or may compress the brainstem resulting in increasing headaches, decreased level of alertness, and occasionally a head tilt [4,74].

Two distinct syndromes of cerebellar tissue herniation are recognized: descending or tonsillar herniation syndrome, and upward or transtentorial herniation syndrome. With a cerebellar pressure core, there is downward displacement of the cerebellar tonsils through the foramen magnum causing compression of the medulla oblongata. Clinical manifestations of tonsillar herniation include neck stiffness, paresthesias in shoulders, opisthotonus, cardiac and respiratory rhythm disturbances, leading to apnea and possible death. With upward transtentorial herniation, there is upward displacement of the superior aspect of the cerebellar hemisphere through the free edge of the tentorial incisura, resulting in midbrain compression. Clinical manifestations of upward cerebellar herniation include lethargy, coma, paralysis or upward gaze, mid-position and unreactive pupils, and abnormal extensor posturing. Large cerebellar infarcts tend to involve the territory of the PICA, the territory of the superior cerebellar artery, or both [4,7]. Delayed alteration in the level of consciousness may occur hours to days after the onset of ischemic symptoms either in isolation or in association with the worsening of other neurologic signs [4,7]. Emergency surgery (e.g., ventriculostomy or posterior fossa decompression or both) is often required.

The other end of the clinical spectrum includes very small (border zone) cerebellar infarcts not easily localizable within well-defined arterial boundaries [8,65]. In a study of 47 patients, Amarenco et al. attributed the mechanisms of these small cerebellar infarctions to: global hypoperfusion secondary to cardiac arrest (4%), small or end (pial) artery disease due to intracranial atheroma or hypercoagulable states (20%), focal cerebellar hypoperfusion due to large artery vertebralbasilar occlusive disease (34%), or brain embolism (25%). In nine patients (19%), the mechanism of infarction was unknown. Physical findings were either absent or included a wide-based gait, lateropulsion, mild ipsilateral dysmetria, dysarthria, or dysdakokinesis [8]. Small (border zone) cerebellar infarcts can also mimic acute vestibular neuritis, including canal paresis [65]. Acute isolated hemiataxia is, in most cases, due to infratentorial (cerebellar) stroke. However, supratentorial stroke (e.g., thalamic infarction extending into the adjacent posterior limb of the internal capsule and infarction or hemorrhage restricted to the posterior limb of the internal capsule) may also cause isolated hemiataxia due to interruption of the cerebellar pathways at the level of the internal capsule [79].

Inferior Cerebellar Infarct (Posterior Inferior Cerebellar Artery)

Most symptomatic cerebellar infarctions occur in the territory supplied by the PICA. Infarcts stemming from occlusion in the territorial supply of the PICA are described in Chapter 22. Most often, infarcts in this arterial territory result from occlusion of the distal vertebral artery before the origin of the PICA. PICA or medial PICA territory infarcts cause acute vertigo and truncal ataxia; whereas lateral PICA territory infarcts cause unsteadiness, limb ataxia, and dysmetria without dysarthria. Unilateral limb ataxia without dysarthria or vestibular signs or symptoms suggests an infarct isolated to the territory of the lateral branch of the PICA [15]. Bilateral cerebellar infarctions in the territory of the medial branches of PICA may cause vertigo, dysarthria, disequilibrium, bilateral gaze evoked nystagmus, and gait ataxia without brainstem signs [122]. Vertigo and upside-down vision may also result from cerebellar flocculus and nodulus infarction due to involvement of the medial branch of PICA [27]. Rarely, patients may develop failure of automatic breathing when asleep (Ondine’s curse) [78]. Patients may also present with isolated vertigo resembling acute vestibular neuritis [72]. Cardiac embolism, atherothrombosis, and vertebral artery dissection are the main causes of large PICA territory infarcts [16].

Ventral Cerebellar Infarct (Anterior Inferior Cerebellar Artery)

Infarcts in the distribution of the AICA territory involve the lateral mid- and low-pontine region and the anterolateral part of the cerebellum, particularly the middle cerebellar peduncle, flocculus, and the anterior part of the cerebellar lobules, with the exception of the lobulus anterior [4]. Because of the variability of the AICA, not all syndromes caused by its occlusion are expected to be identical. The characteristic clinical picture of an AICA infarct consists of the following constellation of symptoms and signs [4,6,9,91,121,129]:

1. Prominent vertigo, nausea, vomiting, and nystagmus were noted (due to involvement of the vestibular nuclei).
2. Ipsilateral hypalgesia and thermoanesthesia, and corneal hypesthesia (due to involvement of the trigeminal spinal nucleus and tract). Facial sensation is spared at times because of the
occasional occurrence of an independent vessel arising from the basilar artery supplying the spinal tract and nucleus of the trigeminal nerve.

3. Ipsilateral Horner syndrome (due to interruption of the descending pupillodilator oculosympathetic fibers in the lateral portion of the pons and medulla). Occasionally, there may also be a skew deviation [5].

4. Contralateral trunk and extremity hypalgesia and thermoanesthesia were noted (due to involvement of the lateral spinothalamic tract).

5. Ipsilateral ataxia and asynergia were noted (due to involvement of the middle cerebellar peduncle and cerebellum).

6. Ipsilateral deafness and facial paralysis were noted (due to involvement of the lateral pontomedullary tegmentum).

The clinical manifestations of an AICA syndrome may at times be confused with those of the lateral medullary (Wallenberg) syndrome because of shared signs, such as dysmetria, vestibular signs, Horner syndrome, and facial sensory impairment with contralateral trunk and extremity pain, and temperature sensory loss [5]. However, facial palsy and deafness due to involvement of cranial nerves VII and VIII and their nuclei, lateral gaze palsy, and multimodal sensory impairment of the face should suggest an AICA syndrome [5].

Typically, infarctions in the AICA territory give rise to combined loss of both auditory and vestibular functions [73]. Moreover, labyrinthine infarction may be a precursor of impending pontocerebellar infarction in the AICA territory [66]. AICA territory infarcts may also present with isolated vestibular manifestations or isolated cerebellar signs [94,101]. Two patients have been described with clinical features of infarction in the distribution of the AICA who had isolated vertigo for several months before infarction [91]. Both patients had cerebrovascular risk factors and had experienced other episodes of transient neurologic symptoms not associated with vertigo. At the time of infarction, they developed vertigo, unilateral hearing loss, tinnitus, facial numbness, and hemiataxia. MRI revealed ischemic lesions in the lateral aspect of the pons and middle cerebellar peduncle. Because the blood supply to the inner ear and vestibulocochlear nerve arises from the AICA, the vertigo preceding the infarction may have resulted from transient ischemia to the inner ear structures or the vestibular nerve [91].

Dorsal Cerebellar Infarct
(Superior Cerebellar Artery)

When the superior cerebellar artery (SupCA) is occluded at its origin, patients may have ipsilateral cerebellar signs, brainstem disturbances, and a contralateral dissociated sensory syndrome. In contrast, when there is an occlusion of peripheral branches of the SupCA, patients often present only with dysarthria and unsteady gait but without vertigo, brainstem signs, or contralateral dissociated sensory disturbances [124]. The “classic” presentation of SupCA territory infarction, as described by Mills, remains a rare occurrence [4,7,28,63,82,83,117,119,129]. When the classic syndrome occurs, the following may be found on examination:

1. Vertigo and vomiting (due to involvement of the vestibular nuclei and connections)
2. Nystagmus (due to involvement of the medial longitudinal fasciculus and cerebellar pathways)
3. Ipsilateral Horner syndrome (due to compromise of the descending oculosympathetic fibers)
4. Ipsilateral ataxia and asynergia (due to involvement of the superior cerebellar peduncle and cerebellum)
5. Ipsilateral intention tremor (due to involvement of the dentate nucleus and superior cerebellar peduncle)
6. Contralateral trunk and extremity hypalgesia and thermoanesthesia (due to involvement of the lateral spinothalamic and quintothalamic tracts)
7. Contralateral hearing impairment (due to involvement of the crossed fibers of the lateral lemniscus)
8. Contralateral fourth nerve palsy (due to involvement of the pontine tectum)

A SupCA distribution infarction may also cause contrapulsion of saccadic eye movements associated with ipsilateral limb ataxia [97]. This saccadic disorder has three elements: (a) horizontal saccades away from the lesion during attempted vertical saccades, resulting in oblique trajectories, (b) hypermetria of contralateral saccades, and (c) hypometria of ipsilateral saccades. This contrapulsion of saccades (lateropulsion contralateral to a cerebellar lesion) differs from the lateropulsion of saccades seen in the lateral medullary syndrome, which is directed to the side of the lesion and associated with hypermetria of saccades toward the brainstem lesion and hypometria of saccades away from the lesion (see Chapter 15). Contrapulsion of saccades has also been described in association with primary-position upbeat nystagmus in cases of hemispheric cerebellar lesions [19].

A study of 33 patients with SupCA territory infarction [7] showed frequent association with infarcts in the distribution of the distal basilar artery (73%), including the rostral brainstem, thalamostriatal region, and occipitotemporal lobes. Patients presented with altered level of consciousness, ocular motor abnormalities, signs of thalamic dysfunction, visual field defects, cortical blindness,
and/or memory loss [4]. One-third also had infarcts in the distribution of the PICA, sometimes associated with infarcts in the distribution of the AICA. Clinical presentations included a rostral basilar artery syndrome; coma at onset, often with tetraplegia; or cerebellar-vestibular signs, often with delayed coma due to cerebellar swelling. However, a “classic” SupCA syndrome was unusual [5,7].

Infarction in the distribution of the lateral branch of the SupCA (anterior rostral cerebellar infarct) may present with ipsilateral dysmetria and axial lateropulsion, contrapulsion of saccades, dysarthria, unsteadiness, and vomiting [10,97]. A dysarthria–clumsy hand syndrome may also be the presenting feature [10]. Patients with anterior rostral cerebellar infarction usually improve without suffering major sequelae. Dysarthria is frequently seen with the involvement of the territory of the medial branch of the SupCA [5,7]. Selective involvement of the anterior cerebellar lobe in cases of medial SupCA territory infarction may cause mild appendicular dysmetria and spontaneous extensor posturing of the neck, trunk, and all four extremities [99].

Patients with infarcts in the territories of the PICA or the SupCA were studied to compare their clinical presentations, course, and prognosis [62]. In 36 patients with PICA territory infarcts, a triad of vertigo, headache, and gait imbalance predominated at stroke onset, and computed tomography showed signs of severe cerebellar mass effect (30%) with associated hydrocephalus and brainstem compression, resulting in four deaths. In 30 patients with SupCA infarcts, gait disturbances predominated at onset; vertigo and headache were significantly less common. Isolated vertigo resembling vestibular neuritis is seldom seen with infarcts in the SupCA territory [72]. The clinical course was usually benign, and computed tomography showed signs of cerebellar mass effect, hydrocephalus, and brainstem compression in only 7% of the cases. Presumed cardiac embolism or artery-to-artery embolism was the predominant stroke mechanism in patients with SupCA distribution infarcts, whereas in those with PICA distribution infarcts, the stroke mechanism was equally divided between those with cardiac sources of embolism and those with posterior circulation atherothrombotic occlusive disease. Thus, cerebellar infarcts in the PICA and SupCA distribution have distinct differences in clinical presentation, course, and prognosis [62].

References


113. Sens PM, de Almeida CI. The cerebellar complex of the cerebellum. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 1984;291–293.
The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Hypothalamus and Pituitary Gland

Anatomy of the Region

The hypothalamus constitutes the lateral wall of the third ventricle [26,46]. It is separated from the thalamus by the hypothalamic sulcus. The two walls of the third ventricle merge anteriorly to form the lamina terminalis, related superiorly to the anterior commissure and inferiorly to the optic chiasm [22]. Lateroposteriorly, the hypothalamus borders on the globus pallidus, basal forebrain nuclei, internal capsule, subthalamic region, and crus cerebri. An inferior prolongation of the floor of the third ventricle, the pituitary stalk or infundibulum, joins the hypothalamus with the pituitary gland or hypophysis. Each pillar of the fornix, descending rostrocaudally to end in the mammillary body, divides the hypothalamus into a medial and a lateral region.

Main Hypothalamic Nuclear Groups

The hypothalamic nuclei can be conceptualized by considering the hypothalamus as divided by (a) a coronal plane through the infundibular stalk and (b) an angled parasagittal plane containing the fornix. These planes separate four regions: anterior, posterior, medial, and lateral. The topography of the hypothalamic nuclei is illustrated in Figures 17.1 and 17.2.

Connections of the Hypothalamus

The origin, pathways, and termination of the main afferent and efferent hypothalamic connections are listed in Table 17.1. In summary, the hypothalamus has strong to-and-fro connections with (a) the midbrain and posterior tegmentum, which play an important role in alertness; (b) the limbic system, through the anterior and mesial temporal cortex, anteromedial thalamic region, and amygdala, which play an important role in emotion and memory [122]; and (c) the “autonomic” nuclei of the brainstem and spinal cord, such as the dorsal nucleus of the vagus and the nucleus tractus solitarius. Although direct connections have been traced to the ipsilateral intermediolateral cell column of the spinal cord, much of the influence of the hypothalamus on the autonomic centers of the cord is probably exerted through the brainstem reticular formation [26]. Pathways from the retina and olfactory system convey to the hypothalamus information needed for the circadian control of vegetative functions, and for feeding and reproductive behavior [116].

Much work remains to be done to define the localization and function of the many putative neurotransmitters identified in the hypothalamus [21]. Multiple neuropeptides have been identified in the hypothalamus of experimental animals and humans [49,59,87,100]. In addition to the hypophysiotropic hormones regulating anterior pituitary secretion, other neuropeptides play a role in the regulation of body temperature (bombesin, neuropeptide Y), alertness (orexin, somatostatin), cardiopulmonary function (thyrotropin-releasing hormone, calcitonin gene-related peptide), water balance (enkephalins), circadian rhythms (neuropeptide Y), feeding behavior (cholecystokinin, bombesin, galanin, leptin, neuropeptide Y), and reproductive function (oxytocin, vasoactive intestinal peptide). However, the complex hypothalamic actions of these peptides and others present in high concentration in the hypothalamus (e.g., substance P, motilin, secretin) need to be clarified further [87]. Hypothalamic steroids play an important role in the sexual differentiation of hypothalamic nuclei and in reproductive behavior [21]. Among the biogenic amineergic pathways, best known is the tuberoinfundibular dopamine system, arising in the arcuate nucleus and projecting to the median eminence. Dopamine in the portal system inhibits the release of prolactin [100]. Noradrenergic terminals, originating in the nucleus locus coeruleus and lateral reticular nucleus of the medulla, are found mainly in the paraventricular and retrochiasmatic areas, and in the ventromedial and dorsomedial nuclei. Serotonergic pathways from the raphe nuclei reach the suprachiasmatic nucleus, suggesting a role for serotonin in the regulation of circadian rhythms. Regarding other neurotransmitters, a cholinergic tuberoinfundibular pathway has been described [97,126].
Hypothalamic control of vegetative functions is exerted to a great extent through the pituitary gland. The hormonal secretions of the anterior pituitary are regulated by the hypothalamic-releasing factors or hypophysiotropic hormones, which are released into the infundibular portal system (Fig. 17.3). Through this system, the anterior pituitary receives the richest arteriolar blood flow of any organ in the body, 0.8 mL/g/minute \[102\]. The infundibulum also contains the important supraoptico-hypophysial tract, constituted by axons from neurons in the supraoptic and paraventricular nuclei. Those axons end in a rich capillary network in the posterior lobe of the pituitary (neurohypophysis), where they secrete

---

**FIG. 17.1.** Schematic diagram of the hypothalamic nuclei.

**FIG. 17.2.** Hypothalamic nuclei.
sific hypothalamic structures is often not known from human lesions and has to be extrapolated from experimental animal data [120].

2. Lesions that progress rapidly cause a more florid clinical symptomatology than those that proceed slowly. For instance, a surgical or vascular lesion in the posterior hypothalamus renders the patient comatose, whereas a slowly growing tumor affecting the same structures causes only apathy.

3. Unilateral lesions are seldom symptomatic.

4. The changes of hypothalamic function with age are reflected in the disparity of syndromes caused in different age groups by similarly located lesions [106]. For instance, a similar lesion may cause dwarfism during childhood and gigantism during adulthood [36].

Clinical Manifestations of Hypothalamic or Pituitary Dysfunction

Before discussing the most likely location of a lesion causing such symptoms or signs as are attributable to the hypothalamic-pituitary region (Table 17.2), several points should be noted:

1. Because these structures are small, several portions may be involved simultaneously. For this reason, the fine localization of functions to specific hypothalamic structures is often not known from human lesions and has to be extrapolated from experimental animal data [120].

2. Lesions that progress rapidly cause a more florid clinical symptomatology than those that proceed slowly. For instance, a surgical or vascular lesion in the posterior hypothalamus renders the patient comatose, whereas a slowly growing tumor affecting the same structures causes only apathy.

3. Unilateral lesions are seldom symptomatic.

4. The changes of hypothalamic function with age are reflected in the disparity of syndromes caused in different age groups by similarly located lesions [106]. For instance, a similar lesion may cause dwarfism during childhood and gigantism during adulthood [36].

TABLE 17.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Connections of the Human Hypothalamus&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Origin</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Afferent hypothalamic connections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medial temporal cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Midbrain tegmental nuclei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amygdala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periaqueductal gray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raphe nuclei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nucleus locus coeruleus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nucleus tractus solitarius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retina, pregeniculate nucleus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olfactory nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Septal nuclei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorsomedial thalamic nucleus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orbitofrontal cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Efferent hypothalamic connections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paraventricular nucleus, supraoptic nucleus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arcuate nucleus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mammillary body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mammillary body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medial nuclei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventromedial nucleus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Several nuclei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Anatomically larger connections are listed first.

<sup>b</sup>Neurotransmitters for many pathways remain unidentified.
Localization in Clinical Neurology

**FIG. 17.3.** Hypothalamic-pituitary connections.

**TABLE 17.2** Clinical Manifestations of Hypothalamic or Pituitary Dysfunction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disturbances of temperature regulation</th>
<th>Disturbances of caloric balance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hypothermia</td>
<td>Obesity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperthermia</td>
<td>Emaciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poikilothermia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disturbances of alertness and sleep</th>
<th>Disturbances of reproductive functions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hypersomnia</td>
<td>Hypogonadotropic hypogonadism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narcolepsy</td>
<td>Nonpuerperal galactorrhea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insomnia</td>
<td>Precocious puberty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Circadian abnormalities</td>
<td>Uncontrollable sexual behavior</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Autonomic disturbances</th>
<th>Other endocrine disturbances</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac</td>
<td>Disturbances of memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary</td>
<td>Disturbances of emotional behavior and affect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastrointestinal</td>
<td>Rage and fear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Diencephalic epilepsy”</td>
<td>Apathy and chronic fatigue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anhidrosis</td>
<td>Depression</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disturbances of water balance</th>
<th>Gelastic seizures</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes insipidus</td>
<td>Headache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essential hypernatremia</td>
<td>Episodic headaches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inappropriate secretion of antidiuretic hormone</td>
<td>Impaired visual acuity, field defects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reset osmostat hypernatremia</td>
<td>Diplopia, pupillary changes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary hyperdipsia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Disturbances of Temperature Regulation

The hypothalamic “thermostat” for normal temperature regulation is located in the anterior-preoptic hypothalamic area, whose neurons alter their firing rate in response to a warm or cold environment [14]. However, the physiological responses for heating (e.g., vasoconstriction, shivering, increased food intake) and cooling (e.g., increased sweating, peripheral vasodilation, panting, decreased motor behavior) are controlled by mechanisms located in or traversing the posterior hypothalamus. Because heat dissipation is normally needed in a warm ambient temperature, hyperthermia results from anterior hypothalamic lesions, whereas posterior lesions cause hypothermia or poikilothermia by interfering with heat-conservation responses [87,106]. Several neurotransmitters and neuropeptides delivered into the hypothalamus of experimental animals have been shown to induce temperature changes. For instance, serotonin and low doses of opioids induce hyperthermia, whereas high doses of opioids, angiotensin 11, dopamine, acetylcholine, somatostatin, and neurotensin cause hypothermia [87,98]. Their role in temperature regulation in humans needs to be clarified further.

PHYSIOLOGIC RHYTHMS

Diurnal Variation. Body temperature peaks in early evening and reaches the lowest point in early morning [87]. Lesions in the median eminence may flatten the diurnal temperature variation [118].

Menstrual Cycle. Body temperature increases at the time of ovulation; progesterone produces this effect by acting on hypothalamic neurons.

HYPERTHERMIA

Chronic. Most often the lesion involves the posterior or the entire hypothalamus. When discomfort is also present, the lesion may be in the anterior hypothalamus. The most common causes include Wernicke’s encephalopathy [134], head trauma, craniopharyngioma, glioblastoma multiforme, surgery, hydrocephalus, infarction, and sarcoidosis [87].

Paroxysmal. Spontaneous periodic hyperthermia, paroxysmal hyperthermia with hyperhidrosis; “diencephalic epilepsy.” Rare syndrome characterized by an episodic decrease of body temperature [75,82,96]. The onset is abrupt, with sweating and vasodilatation leading to hyperthermia (as low as 30°C rectally) accompanied by nausea, vomiting, hypotension, bradycardia, cardiac arrhythmias, salivation, lacrimation, ataxia, asterixis, and mental dullness. The episodes last from minutes to hours; they may recur only after decades or they may recur more often, even daily. Thermoregulation may be normal between attacks [82]. Responsible lesions have involved the arcuate nucleus and premamillary area. A similar syndrome appeared after surgery for a midbrain glioma [50]. This disturbance may be associated with agenesis of the corpus callosum (Shapiro syndrome) [101] but many patients do not have detectable underlying lesions [14]. One patient had altered norepinephrine metabolism and responded to clonidine therapy [114]. Others have responded to oxybutynin, glycopyrrolate, cyproheptadine, chlorpromazine, or phenytoin suggesting a multiplicity of mechanisms [14].

HYPERTERMIA

Pyrogen Induced. This is the most common cause of hyperthermia. Cases clinically labeled as “hypothalamic hyperthermia” after an unrevealing search for an infectious source often belong to this category. Bacterial or viral pyrogens can stimulate directly the hypothalamus and in addition induce the release of interleukin 1 (endogenous pyrogen) from leukocytes and macrophages [37]. Circulating interleukin 1 acts in the preoptic and paraventricular area of the anterior hypothalamus, inducing prostaglandin E2 synthesis, which can be blocked by aspirin [7,87,121]. Sepsis may disrupt hypothalamic function [89].

Acute Hyperthermia. Acute hyperthermia may occur as a consequence of an acute process (craniotomy, trauma, bleeding) and lasts for less than 2 weeks. The lesion affects the anterior hypothalamus. Cardiovascular changes, normally present with fever, are disproportionately small with hyperthermia due to hypothalamic lesions [106].

Paroxysmal Hyperthermia. Involvement of the ventromedial hypothalamus has been suspected in these rare cases, although the precise localization is not known [87,130]. One patient improved after phenytoin administration. Another patient responded to chlorpromazine. This boy had recurrent episodes of fever, hypertension, weight loss, and vomiting, lasting for about 3 days [106]. A patient with agenesis of the corpus callosum and periodic hyperthermia became hypothermic after dopamine administration [61].

Malignant Hyperthermia. Although not due to hypothalamic dysfunction, this syndrome is discussed here with other abnormalities of temperature control. When exposed to various anesthetic agents and other drugs, susceptible individuals may develop a potentially fatal state of severe generalized muscular rigidity, metabolic acidosis, myoglobinuria, and hyperthermia [55,99]. Hyperthermia is thought to be due to an intrinsic abnormality of the excitation-contraction coupling mechanism in skeletal muscle, induced by drug exposure, resulting in sustained myofibrillar contraction. Susceptibility to this syndrome is transmitted as an autosomal dominant trait and in some cases calcium channels are abnormal [54].
Neuroleptic Malignant Syndrome. This syndrome is a potentially life-threatening idiosyncratic reaction to neuroleptic drugs [34,60]. The clinical triad consists of: (a) hyperthermia, usually with other autonomic dysfunctions such as tachycardia, falls in blood pressure, and diaphoresis; (b) extrapyramidal signs, usually increased muscle tone (rigidity) with dystonia, often accompanied by elevated creatinine kinase; and (c) altered mental status, such as inattention, agitation, and confusion. Clinical manifestations usually occur abruptly at therapeutic levels of neuroleptics, with all of the symptoms fully manifest within 24 hours and reaching a maximum within 72 hours. This syndrome, which has also been described following the abrupt withdrawal of levodopa [45,73], can be fatal in up to 20% to 30% of cases. A syndrome with milder fever and a greater tendency to develop myoclonus has been described with the use of serotonin reuptake inhibitors [27].

POIKILOTHERMIA
Poikilothermia is the fluctuation of more than 2°C in body temperature following ambient temperature change [2]. It is the most common central neurogenic abnormality of heat regulation in humans. Such patients are unaware of their condition and show no sign of discomfort or behavioral regulation with thermal stress. Poikilothermia results from posterior hypothalamic lesions [106].

Disturbances of Alertness and Sleep
Larger lesions involve the rostroventral components of the ascending reticular activating system. Smaller lesions may cause more localized dysfunction of structures regulating sleep, particularly the suprachiasmatic nucleus, which plays a major role in the regulation of circadian cycles [13], or the hypocretin/orexin nucleus in the posterolateral hypothalamus [9]. The suprachiasmatic nucleus, located in the anterior hypothalamus, receives afferents from the retina and possibly from the lateral geniculate body and projects mainly to other hypothalamic nuclei, but also to the basal forebrain, thalamus, and periaqueductal gray [116]. Circadian rhythms are important for most hypothalamic functions. For instance, oxytocin, which plays a major role in sexual behavior, is secreted mainly in the early hours of the night [44].

COMA, HYPERSOMNIA, OR AKINETIC MUTISM
These are occasionally related to posterior hypothalamic or larger lesions [115]. The most common reported causes have been tumors and Wernicke’s encephalopathy [111,134]. A patient with extreme akinesia after removal of a hypothalamic epidermoid cyst improved with dopamine receptor agonists [112]. Hypersomnia and coma result from midbrain lesions more often than from hypothalamic lesions.

NARCOLEPSY
In the perifornical area of the posterolateral hypothalamus there is a cluster of cells that secrete hypocretin or orexin, a peptide that mediates wakefulness and facilitates feeding behavior [9]. A lack of this substance causes narcolepsy. Given the similar HLA type of the patients, it is speculated that the damage of these cells is of an autoimmune nature [43].

INSOMNIA
Fewer than 10 cases that implicate the anterior hypothalamus have been reported [106]. However, some insomniacs may have increased production of stress-related hormones [133].

CIRCADIAN ABNORMALITIES
Loss of neurons in the suprachiasmatic nucleus occurs in Alzheimer’s disease, attended by phase advance and reduced period and amplitude of the sleep cycles, as well as increased variability and decreased stability of the rhythm [95]. Loss of circadian rhythmicity has also been described with lesions in the region of the suprachiasmatic nucleus, including optic glioma [32,97].

Autonomic Disturbances
Sympathetic areas tend to be ventromedial and posterior. Stimulation of these areas causes hypertension, pupillary dilation, tachycardia, vasoconstriction of vascular beds, vasodilation of muscular beds, and increased cardiac contractility in association with the expression of rage or fear [115]. Hypotension in multiple system atrophy may be in part related to neuronal loss in several hypothalamic nuclei, mainly in the paraventricular nucleus [15].

Parasympathetic areas tend to be paraventricular or lateral, and anterior. Stimulation of these areas causes pupillary constriction. Stimulation of the anterior parasympathetic areas causes hypotension and bradycardia, whereas stimulation of the posterior parasympathetic areas causes only increased blood flow through the bowel and decreased blood flow in skeletal muscle [106]. Although the hypothalamus seems to contribute to the control of micturition in humans, urinary incontinence is not described as a symptom of isolated hypothalamic damage [20].

CARDIAC MANIFESTATIONS
Hypertension, cardiac arrhythmias, electrocardiogram abnormalities simulating myocardial infarction, or even myocardial infarction in a nonvascular pattern may follow subarachnoid or intraventricular
hemorrhages, particularly those due to ruptured anterior communicating artery aneurysm [127], but can be observed with other causes of hypothalamic dysfunction, including hydrocephalus [67]. The cardiac damage is mediated by an outpouring of catecholamines. Chronic heart failure with chronic stress may be mediated by the paraventricular nucleus [12].

**RESPRATORY ABNORMALITIES**

Pulmonary edema and hemorrhage can result from acute hypothalamic damage (hemorrhage, head trauma). Sudden dysfunction of the parasympathetic region in the anterior hypothalamus, with consequent hypertension, left heart strain, and loss of pulmonary surfactant, may explain the clinical picture [87,106].

**GASTROINTESTINAL ABNORMALITIES**

Acute hypothalamic lesions (trauma, encephalitis, acute multiple sclerosis, hemorrhage, infarction, abscess, meningitis) can cause gastrointestinal ulceration. Neurogenic ulcers are most often located in the lower esophagus, otherwise an uncommon site for ulceration. Neurogenic ulcers may be caused by acute lesions anywhere in the neuraxis, from the anterior hypothalamic region to the dorsal nucleus of the vagus or even in the spinal cord. Although the hypothalamus is activated during emesis, there is no evidence that hypothalamic damage alters the emetic reflex [64]. Emesis is a prominent feature of the epileptic syndrome in children called “Autonomic seizures and autonomic status epilepticus” or Panayiotopoulos syndrome [103]. In a typical presentation, the child, fully conscious, able to speak and understand, complains “I feel sick,” looks pale, and vomits. Other autonomic symptoms may follow, as well as a generalized seizure. Although the electroencephalogram often shows occipital spikes, Panayiotopoulos is of the opinion that the hypothalamus is involved in the genesis of this syndrome [103].

**DIENCEPHALIC EPILEPSY**

This term refers to episodes of hypertension, tachycardia, flushing, salivation, sweating, and oscillations in temperature with preserved alertness, but with the behavioral and affective responses appropriate to the altered autonomic response [106]. The electroencephalogram may be abnormal in half the cases, showing slowing but seldom the paroxysmal dysrhythmias characteristic of most forms of epilepsy. About half of the patients have responded to anticonvulsants. Although autonomic disturbances are common in many types of seizures, the clinical picture described above has been found with third ventricular tumors or third ventricular dilation caused by hydrocephalus [87,106].

**UNILATERAL ANHIDROSIS OR HYPERHIDROSIS**

Unilateral hypothalamic lesions may cause ipsilateral anhidrosis of the body, which is generally incomplete. An ipsilateral Horner syndrome is often present in these cases. Dysfunction of the sympathetic centers in the posterior hypothalamus may be responsible for these findings. Transient hyperhidrosis contralateral to large cerebral infarcts has also been described [79]. No associated autonomic dysfunction was present. In at least one of these cases, the ipsilateral pupil was smaller and the patient was febrile, raising the possibility that the finding may actually represent relative anhidrosis on the side ipsilateral to the infarct. Generalized or segmental hypohidrosis or anhidrosis may be seen with central nervous system conditions such as Shy-Drager syndrome (multisystem atrophy with autonomic failure), Parkinson’s disease, multiple sclerosis, spinal cord disease, stroke, or thalamotomy [29].

**Disturbances of Water Balance**

Hypothalamic osmoreceptors are in the supraoptic and paraventricular nuclei or their proximity. It has been postulated that intracellular dehydration, manifested by increased intracellular sodium concentration, or extracellular dehydration, manifested by increased angiotensin II concentration in the hypothalamic blood, stimulate these osmoreceptors, which in turn elicit the release of ADH by the large cells of the supraoptic and paraventricular nuclei. By contrast, when the intravascular volume increases, peripheral volume receptors in the large veins and left atrium mediate inhibition of ADH secretion [106].

The lateral hypothalamus, classically considered the drinking center, contains osmoreceptors but may also influence drinking behavior by causing general excitability of the region. In experimental animals, destructive lesions of the lateral hypothalamus cause adipsia (reduced water intake), but not enough to result in dehydration. By contrast, destructive lesions of the ventromedial nuclei may cause hyperdipsia.

**DIABETES INSIPIDUS (DECREASED ADH RELEASE BUT NORMAL THIRST)**

Although lack of ADH prevents water reabsorption in the distal tubule, with consequent excretion of a large volume of dilute urine, an intact thirst mechanism induces water intake, thereby preventing hyponatremia. Diabetes insipidus [87,106] results from destruction of at least 90% of the large neurons in the supraoptic and paraventricular nuclei. Except for the familial variety, the lesion often involves the supraoptic-hypophysial tract rather
than the neuronal bodies themselves. In such cases, the disorder is often transient.

Diabetes insipidus may be familial, linked in some families to a mutation in the vasopressin region of chromosome 20 [72,109], or caused by granulomas (sarcoidosis, meningovascular syphilis, histiocytosis), vascular lesions, trauma, meningoencephalitis, or autoimmune damage to vasopressin-producing cells [85,117]. Anxiety, alcohol, phenytoin, and anticholinergic agents reduce the secretion of ADH.

**ESSENTIAL HYPERNATREMIA**

(DECREASED ADH RELEASE WITH
ABSENCE OF THIRST)

Diagnosis of this rare syndrome requires (a) hypernatremia unaccompanied by a corresponding fluid deficiency, (b) preserved renal responsiveness to ADH, (c) impaired secretion of ADH with hypernatremia, and (d) absence of thirst despite preserved conscious behavior [3,56,87,106]. Some patients with the syndrome have a remarkable tolerance to hypernatremia, to the point of developing water intoxication when the condition is treated. Sodium levels reaching 170 mEq per liter, however, are accompanied by muscle cramping, tenderness and weakness, fever, anorexia, paranoia, and lethargy. Lesions causing this syndrome have affected the tuberal region or the entire hypothalamus [41]. The regulation of atrial natriuretic peptide may be abnormal in some patients with a similar metabolic derangement [68]. Other patients have excessive renal responsiveness to ADH [39].

**INAPPROPRIATE SECRETION OF ADH**

(SIADH) (ELEVATED ADH RELEASE
WITH NORMAL THIRST)

This syndrome [87,106] is characterized by (a) serum hyposmolality (<280 mOsm/kg) and hypernatremia (<130 mEq/L), (b) normal renal excretion of sodium, and (c) inappropriately high urine osmolality without body fluid depletion. Renal and adrenal functions are normal. Serum levels of ADH are elevated. The patient has anorexia, nausea, vomiting, and irritability that may progress to paranoid delusions and generalized seizures when the serum sodium falls below 110 mEq per liter. Although SIADH is more often due to extrahypothalamic causes, partial damage of the suprachiasmatic paraventricular nuclei or neighboring areas may cause the syndrome. Such damage may be due to trauma, subarachnoid hemorrhage, hydrocephalus, tumors, meningitis, encephalitis, or drugs, particularly vincristine, chloropropamide, cyclophosphamide, carbamazepine, and chlorpromazine. Production of ADH by a tumor (e.g., carcinoma of the lung) or inflammatory tissue outside the hypothalamus may also cause the syndrome, which has also been linked to myxedema, cardiac failure, nonneoplastic pulmonary disease, and porphyria and other peripheral neuropathies. Impairment of peripheral efferent inhibitory pathways carrying information from the volume receptors to the hypothalamic nuclei has been invoked to explain SIADH with polyneuropathies [106]. Often hyponatremia with hypothalamic-pituitary disease is due to polydipsia with normal ADH levels [124].

**RESET OSMOSTAT HYPONATREMIA**

Criteria for this diagnosis [6] include normovolemic hypotonic hyponatremia; normal renal, adrenal, and thyroid function; ability to concentrate the urine when serum tonicity is raised above the reset level of serum osmolality; ability to excrete a water load; and maintenance of normal sodium balance without correction of hyponatremia during salt loading.

**PRIMARY POLYDIPSIA OR HYPERDIPSIA**

(EXCESSIVE WATER DRINKING IN THE
ABSENCE OF HYPOVOLEMIA OR
HYPERNATREMIA)

Patients with this disturbance [106] may drink in response to (a) conditioned behavior (“beer drinker’s polydipsia,” “tea party epilepsy”) or other psychogenic factors, (b) hyperangiotensinemia, found in renal patients with thirst despite a normal electrolyte balance maintained with hemodialysis, or (c) rarely, hypothalamic disease. In the last case, drinking often compensates for mild diabetes insipidus.

Disturbances of Caloric Balance and Feeding Behavior

The hypothalamus participates in feeding behavior through carefully tuned mechanisms [137]. For instance, neurons in the arcuate and paraventricular nuclei are rich in AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK), a sensor of the cellular AMP:ATP ratio and therefore a gauge of cellular metabolism [69]. Food intake, hyperglycemia and the anorexigenic hormones insulin and leptin decrease AMPK activity in hypothalamic nuclei. Conversely, fasting, hypoglycemia and the stomach-derived orexigenic hormone, ghrelin, increase hypothalamic AMPK, thus stimulating feeding behavior.

Although disturbances of feeding behavior are not uncommon with hypothalamic lesions, they have been reported also with frontal or temporal lesions, particularly in the right hemisphere [129].

**OBESITY**

Lesions in the ventromedial portion of the hypothalamus may cause obesity [10]. Characteristically, such patients are hyperphagic (bulimic) until a higher body weight is reached, at which point they maintain a stable body weight unless the lesion progresses.
The feeding behavior of patients with hypothalamic lesions resembles that of obese individuals with no demonstrable lesions: Compared to normal individuals, patients with hypothalamic lesions (a) eat only a slight excess of food each day, (b) are less active, (c) eat few meals each day, (d) eat more at each meal, (e) eat more quickly, (f) eat more of a good-tasting food, (g) eat more when food is easily accessible, and (h) react more emotionally and are appeased by food intake [87]. Obesity after ventromedial lesions may result from affection of the catecholaminergic pathways coursing in this region, rather than from destruction of the nuclei themselves. Most frequent lesions include craniohypophysioma, pituitary adenoma, surgery for the removal of these tumors, other types of trauma, encephalitis, and vascular lesions of the base of the brain [23,94]. Compulsive eating may be caused by rather nonspecific brain lesions. Occasionally, it may respond to anticonvulsant therapy [53]. Impaired secretion of cholecystokinin has been described in bulimia nervosa [48]. Hypothalamic serotoninergic stimulation reduces food intake, particularly of carbohydrates, and increases energy expenditure, thus reducing weight [81]. The following obesity syndromes are thought to be due to hypothalamic dysfunction.

Kleine-Levin Syndrome. This is a rare variety of compulsive eating behavior in adolescent males, characterized by episodes of hyperphagia, with or without excess appetite, periodic hypersomnolence, hyperactivity when awake, and behavioral disturbances, particularly hypersexuality and exhibitionism. Although traditionally considered a hypothalamic derangement, medial thalamic pathology was reported in one case [28] and hypopigmentation of the substantia nigra and locus coeruleus in another [76]. A viral illness preceded the onset of the syndrome in some cases. The disorder usually disappears during the third decade. Endocrinological evaluation has failed to show abnormalities during the periods of abnormal behavior [90].

Prader-Willi Syndrome. This syndrome comprises obesity, hypogonadism, mental retardation, short stature, micromelia, and a tendency to develop diabetes mellitus [63]. Affected infants tend to be hypotonic (neonatal hypotonia), somnolent, and eat little, but between 6 months and 2 years of age, they begin to eat in excess and become obese. Abnormal luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone neurons are thought to be responsible for the decreased levels of sex hormones, resulting in undescended testes, but primary testicular dysfunction may account for undersized sex organs and insufficient growth during puberty [62]. A lack of growth hormone-releasing hormone may also contribute to the short stature of patients with Prader-Willi syndrome [35]. In addition, the aberrant control of body temperature and daytime hypersomnolence may result from hypothalamic disturbances. The number of oxytocin neurons—the putative satiety neurons—in the hypothalamic paraventricular nucleus is markedly decreased in Prader-Willi syndrome. This is presumed to be the basis of the insatiable hunger and obesity of patients with the syndrome [85]. It is caused by a lack of paternal genetic information at 15q11-q13, due to impaired paternal imprinting of several genes [51].

Laurence-Moon-Bardet-Biedl Syndrome. This syndrome comprises obesity, hypogonadism, mental deficiency, retinitis pigmentosa, and polydactyly [52,87]. Diabetes insipidus and renal failure are often present. The condition is transmitted as an autosomal recessive trait, genetically heterogenous, with at least four loci located to date. In most families the defect is linked to 11q13 [11]. Hypothalamic lesions have not been found [135].

EMACIATION

Diencephalic Syndrome of Infancy. This syndrome is a distinct clinical condition characterized by emaciation, with loss of subcutaneous fat, pallor, motor overactivity, and an inappropriately jovial behavior [87,106]. Progressive emaciation occurs despite normal food intake. Nystagmus, optic atrophy, and tremor are less frequently encountered manifestations. Growth hormone levels may be high. The syndrome usually appears in boys aged 3 to 12 months and is caused by a slow-growing astrocytoma of the anterior hypothalamus or optic nerve. Children that survive beyond their second year become obese and irritable.

Lateral Hypothalamic Syndrome. Few case reports deal with lateral hypothalamic lesions causing anorexia, cachexia, and death [106]. Multiple sclerosis [70], tumors [5], and trauma have been implicated. Weight loss in Huntington’s chorea has been ascribed to neuronal loss in the lateral tuberal nucleus [77]. An increased cortisol secretion has also been documented in this disorder [8].

Anorexia Nervosa. This is characterized by anorexia, weight loss, and amenorrhea in an otherwise endocrinologically normal young woman [30]. Although the syndrome suggests hypothalamic dysfunction, in most cases no morphologic changes have been found in the hypothalamus [92].

Disturbances of Reproductive Functions

Hypothalamic lesions frequently alter reproductive functions both by decreasing gonadotropin substances that exert a trophic effect on sexual organs and by altering the neural mechanisms of intercourse. For
instance, the paraventricular nucleus plays an important role in penile erection [4]. Several hypothalamic nuclei, particularly the GABA-containing sexually dimorphic or intermediate nucleus, have been found in young adults to be twice as large in men as in women, but the function of these nuclei is still unclear [47].

**HYPOGONADOTROPIC HYPOGONADISM**
This type of hypogonadism may follow any hypothalamic or pituitary lesion [87,136]. It is manifested by amenorrhea or male gonadal dysfunction. When no lesion is found, the condition in women is termed functional hypothalamic amenorrhea, which has an endocrinologic pattern closely resembling the findings in depression (decreased reproductive hormones, increased growth hormone and cortisol) [16,93]. Hypothalamic hypogonadism has been documented in individuals subjected to extreme exercise programs, such as marathon runners [84]. More frequent reproductive dysfunction in women with epilepsy may reflect hypothalamic-pituitary changes due to the disease and the effect of anticonvulsant medications [66].

**NONPUERPERAL GALACTORRHEA**

*Prolactin-Secreting Pituitary Tumors.* About one-third of chromophobe adenomas secrete prolactin.

*Structural Damage to the Infundibulum or Hypothalamus.* Such damage may interrupt the dopaminergic pathway that inhibits prolactin secretion by the pituitary. This pathway originates in the arcuate nucleus [87].

*Other Causes.* Other causes of nonpuerperal galactorrhea include irritative lesions of the anterior chest wall, thoracic spinal cord lesions, neuroleptic and contraceptive drugs, and hypothyroidism [87].

**PREOCIOUS PUBERTY**
Although generally idiopathic [40], precocious puberty may be due to hypothalamic disease or pineal tumors, some of the latter affecting also the floor of the third ventricle [24,110].

**EXCESSIVE OR UNCONTROLLABLE SEXUAL BEHAVIOR**
Occasionally, this behavior may be a consequence of lesions of the caudal hypothalamus [107].

**Other Endocrine Disturbances**
Disorders such as panhypopituitarism, hypothalamic hypothyroidism, acromegaly, and Cushing’s syndrome are reviewed in standard endocrinology textbooks. In neonates, it is important to recognize and treat the panhypopituitarism of congenital aplasia of the pituitary because treatment is lifesaving [119].

**Disturbances of Memory**
The mammillary bodies are frequently involved in Korsakoff’s amnestic syndrome and in experimental animals they seem to play an important role in memory mechanisms [131]. However, when alcoholics with and without amnesia are studied, amnesia correlates with neuronal loss in the anterior nucleus of the thalamus, not in the mammillary bodies [57]. Other dorsal hypothalamic lesions have been accompanied by amnesia [10,71]. Bilateral interruption of the mamillothalamic tract is considered by some to be critical for the production of memory loss by lesions in the ventromedial hypothalamus [74,86,108].

**Disturbances of Emotional Behavior and Affect**

**RAGE AND FEAR: INAPPROPRIATELY DISINHIBITED BEHAVIOR**
When caused by hypothalamic lesions, rage and fear occur in episodic outbursts, usually triggered by a threatening or frustrating event (such as restraint or a delay in feeding) and are part of a fully coordinated behavioral response with an intense autonomic component [78,104,106]. Between the outbursts, the behavior is normal and the patient may realize the inappropriateness of such behavior and apologize for it. Attacks of rage may also result from lesions of the orbitofrontal cortex, septal region, or temporal lobe [1].

When the hypothalamus is responsible, the ventromedial region is usually involved. By contrast, stimulation of the posterior “sympathetic” area elicits responses of fear and horror [115]. Some patients with hypothalamic lesions have the uninhibited behavior thought to be characteristic of orbitofrontal lesions [88]. Hypothalamic hormones play a role in modulating social interactions. Oxytocin secretion, for instance, seems to enhance trusting on other people [123].

**APATHY, CHRONIC FATIGUE**
Apathy may follow lesions of the posterior or lateral hypothalamus. Bilateral stereotactic lesions in this area have been used to treat unmanageable aggressive behavior due to brain pathology [115]. Although some cases of the chronic fatigue syndrome have been chalked to dysfunction of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis, including mild hypocortisolism, this axis is normal in patients studied early in the process [31].

**DEPRESSION**
Although there is no evidence that depression is caused by hypothalamic dysfunction, many depressed persons have an excessively active hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis [139]. Postmortem studies after suicides have shown increased numbers of corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH) neurons and increased vasopressin expression in the paraventricular nucleus,
increased CRH in the CSF and decreased CRH receptors in the frontal cortex. Challenge with dexamethasone and corticotropin-releasing hormone is the most sensitive test available to detect altered hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal system regulation in depression [105].

### Gelastic Seizures
Seizures accompanied by involuntary laughter (gelastic seizures) have been described in association with precocious puberty [24]. Hypothalamic hamartoma is most often the cause and origin of the seizures [78,128]. The patient may stare and giggle briefly, without any other motor manifestation. Crying or sobbing seizures may alternate with the gelastic spells in the same patient. Other patients only have an interior feeling of pressure to laugh, without overt manifestations [125]. Hypothalamic hamartomas often cause executive function disorders (“frontal lobe syndrome”) [78,104]. Gelastic seizures have also been described with cortical dysplasia in the cingulate gyrus [91].

### Headache
In one out of seven patients with a pituitary tumor, the presenting complaint is headache. This is usually bitemporal or bifrontal, behind the eyes, and is thought to be due to compression of the diaphragma sella [87]. Sudden worsening of headache, particularly of a retro-orbital nature, in a patient with a pituitary tumor should raise the diagnostic suspicion of pituitary apoplexy, discussed below. Headache is more frequent with pituitary abscesses, a rare condition, than with tumors [132].

#### EPISODIC HEADACHES
Increased perfusion in the posterior-medial hypothalamus, dorsal to the mammillary bodies, has been documented with PET during some episodes of cluster headache, paroxysmal hemihria or the type of headache known as “short-lasting unilateral neuralgiform headache attacks with conjunctival injection and tearing (SUNCT)” [113]. Deep-brain stimulation of this area has resulted in the improvement of patients with these disorders [42].

### Chronic Pain
The hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis seems to be dysfunctional in many patients with chronic pain syndromes, such as fibromyalgia [19].

### Impaired Visual Acuity; Visual Field Defects
Some patients with pituitary adenoma present with visual complaints, and about 15% or more have decreased visual acuity or field defects on formal testing (Table 17.3). Bitemporal defects, related to compression of the inferior aspect of the chiasm, are most common. However, asymmetric tumor growth may cause preferential involvement of one eye, with unilateral blindness, or of the optic tract, with consequent homonymous hemianopia. The position of the chiasm in relation to the sella also determines the pattern of the visual field defect. The chiasm lies over the sella in 80% of brains, over the tuberculum sellae in 9% of brains (prefixed chiasm), and over the dorsum sellae in 11% of brains (postfixed chiasm) [17]. About 6% of patients have central or temporal scotomas, which may pass unnoticed if only the periphery of the visual field is tested.

Optic glioma of childhood is accompanied by signs of hypothalamic dysfunction in about one-third of cases [65]. These patients present with impaired visual acuity, which may remain stable, and optic disc pallor. For more details on the localization of visual pathway disturbances, see Chapter 7.

### Diplopia, Pupillary Changes
Diplopia with hypothalamic-pituitary tumors is rare unless (a) the tumor is large, (b) it becomes suddenly enlarged by ischemia or hemorrhage into it (pituitary apoplexy) [18], or (c) it involves primarily the cavernous sinus (carotid aneurysm, metastatic tumors). Tumors extending laterally from the sella tend to cause dysfunction of the oculomotor nerve, expressed by ptosis and adduction weakness. Unilateral hypothalamic lesions may betray their presence by causing an ipsilateral Horner syndrome with miosis. Pituitary apoplexy causes headache or retro-orbital pain related to compression of the ophthalmic branch of the trigeminal nerve, vomiting, visual field defects or reduced acuity, and ocular

---

**TABLE 17.3 Presenting Complaints in 1,000 Cases of Pituitary Adenoma**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complaints</th>
<th>Number of Cases</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Visual disturbances</td>
<td>421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headache</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acromegaly</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Related to hypopituitarism</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amenorrhea</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diplopia</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

motor paresis, most often of the oculomotor nerve, located more medially in the cavernous sinus [18]. Some patients are confused, most often from the systemic metabolic derangement that often attends pituitary infarction of hemorrhage or from compression of the hypothalamic region. Seldom, other causes are at work, such as nonconvulsive status epilepticus [33]. Rarely, some of the symptoms may be related to carotid compression [138]. Often due to hemorrhage within a pituitary adenoma, infarction of the tumor with sudden expansion is also frequent [25,38,80,138]. It has been reported after hormonal stimulation, either physiological or in the course of endocrine testing [38,80]. When the cause is an ischemic prolactinoma, rapid improvement may result from bromocriptine administration. Most often, this condition requires swift surgery [18]. For more details on the localization of ocular motor disturbances, see Chapter 8.

Clinical Findings Resulting from Lesions in Various Areas of the Hypothalamus and in the Pituitary Gland

In the previous section, the presenting complaints were discussed as a means to arrive at the correct localization of the lesion. In Table 17.4, the reverse path is followed: given the site of the lesion, the most likely clinical findings are listed.

### TABLE 17.4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical Findings with Lesions in Various Regions of the Hypothalamus or in the Pituitary Gland</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anterior hypothalamus (“parasympathetic area”)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperthermia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insomnia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes insipidus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emaciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Posterior hypothalamus (“sympathetic area”)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothermia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poikilothermia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypersomnia, coma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ipsilateral Horner syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Medial hypothalamus</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperdipsia (excessive water intake)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes insipidus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obesity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amnesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dwarfism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Arcuate nucleus and infundibulum</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypopituitarism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lateral hypothalamus</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adipsia (reduced water intake)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emaciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pituitary gland</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visual field defects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decreased hormonal action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dwarfism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypogonadism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glucocorticoid deficiency (usually with panhypopituitarism)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excessive hormonal secretion (adenomas)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cushing’s syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giganstism (child), acromegaly (adult)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperprolactinemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Arcuate nucleus and infundibulum</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypopituitarism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lateral hypothalamus</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adipsia (reduced water intake)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emaciation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pituitary gland</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visual field defects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decreased hormonal action</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dwarfism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypogonadism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glucocorticoid deficiency (usually with panhypopituitarism)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excessive hormonal secretion (adenomas)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cushing’s syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giganstism (child), acromegaly (adult)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperprolactinemia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### References


Localization in Clinical Neurology

The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Hypothalamus and Pituitary Gland

The Anatomic Localization of Lesions in the Thalamus

Functional Anatomy of the Thalamus

The paired thalamic nuclei are egg-shaped structures of gray matter located on both sides of the third ventricle [92]. They represent the largest portion of the diencephalon; other diencephalic structures are the epithalamus (pineal and habenular complex), the subthalamic nucleus, and the hypothalamus. The thalamus plays a major role in cortical activation [105]. It projects to the cortex in a highly organized fashion. Characteristically, thalamic connections are reciprocal, that is, the target of the axonal projection of any given thalamic nucleus sends back fibers to that nucleus. Nevertheless, thalamocortical projections are often larger than their corticothalamic counterparts (e.g., the geniculocortical projection).

Anatomically and functionally, four regions can be distinguished in the thalamus: anterior, posterior, medial, and lateral, partially separated from each other by white matter laminae that are visible to the naked eye [74,132]. In the core of the thalamus, a fifth region is encased by these laminae, the intralaminar nuclei [194]. Finally, the lateral aspect of the thalamus is covered by a layer of myelinated axons, the external medullary lamina, housing in its core clusters of cells, the reticular nucleus of the thalamus [182]. A simplified account of the thalamic nuclei and their connections, pertinent to clinical localization, is given in Table 18.1. Figure 18.1 illustrates the position and main cortical projections of the thalamic nuclei.

From a diagnostic standpoint, the complex thalamic anatomy can be divided into four main regions:

1. The midline, intralaminar, reticular, and some areas of the ventral anterior nuclei mediate general cortical alerting responses and are termed nonspecific thalamic nuclei. However, the location and role of thalamic cells providing nonspecific cortical activation is still being worked out [37,79]. By contrast, specific thalamic nuclei receive sensory information from the body, process it, and project the pertinent output to specific areas of the cortex, such as the somatosensory area and visual cortex. The nonspecific thalamic nuclei receive strong projections from the midbrain reticular formation, hypothalamus and the spinothalamic tract as well as from other sensory pathways. Some stimuli (e.g., auditory, pain) excite this alerting system more easily than others (e.g., visual). These nuclei project back to the midbrain and to the specific thalamic nuclei. Lesions that involve these structures bilaterally cause impairment of alertness.

2. The medial (dorsomedial) and anterior thalamic nuclear groups play an important role in memory and emotions [97]. They are connected with the hypothalamus, the “limbic lobe” (cingulate gyrus, medial temporal region, insula), and the frontal lobe. The dorsomedial nucleus mediates olfaction, emotions, the secondary affect of pain, the sleep-wake cycle, and executive functions [7,156, 163,170,187,190]. Lesions of the anterior nucleus are more consistently associated with memory and executive function loss [55,63,69].

3. The ventral lateral and basal nuclear groups are concerned with the processing of sensory information and relaying it to the cortex, and with sensorimotor control [108].

A. Relaying sensory information to the cortex is effected mainly by three nuclear groups, as follows:

i. The ventral posterior nuclear group, where taste and somatosensory information is elaborated and projected to the somatosensory cortex of the parietal lobe. Within the thalamus, lateral inhibition increases sharpness in spatial localization. Information from receptors in the head reaches the ventral posterior medial nucleus through the trigeminotatalamic pathways. The ventral posterolateral nucleus processes somatosensory information conveyed by the spinoholostatic tract and medial lemniscus. A group of nuclei, dorsal to the medial geniculate body and called the ventral medial or caudal nucleus, participates in the perception of pain and temperature, particularly well-localized, sudden pain [12]. Discrete spinothalamic projections also reach other nuclei, including the ventrolateral nucleus [35].
### TABLE 18.1 Source and Destination of Thalamic Connections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thalamic Regions and Nuclei</th>
<th>Afferent Connections</th>
<th>Efferent Connections</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Anterior</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior nucleus</td>
<td>Mammillary bodies</td>
<td>Cingulate gyrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(mammillothalamic tract)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hippocampus (fornix)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Medial</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medial (or dorsal) nucleus</td>
<td>Frontal lobe</td>
<td>Frontal lobe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amygdala</td>
<td>Lateral hypothalamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inferior temporal cortex</td>
<td>Ventral anterior thalamic nucleus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Centromedian thalamic nucleus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zona incerta</td>
<td>Hypothalamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Midline nuclei</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypothalamus</td>
<td>Dorsal medial thalamic nucleus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lateral</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dorsal</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral dorsal nucleus</td>
<td>Posterior medial region (fornix)</td>
<td>Cingulate gyrus, posterior part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Mesial parietal cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ventral</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventral anterior nucleus</td>
<td>Pallidum</td>
<td>Premotor, orbitofrontal cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Substantia nigra</td>
<td>Intralaminar thalamic nuclei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dorsal medial thalamic nucleus</td>
<td>Dorsal medial thalamic nucleus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventral lateral nucleus</td>
<td>Pallidum (lenticular fasciculus; ansa lenticularis)</td>
<td>Paracentral cortex, areas 4 and 5 a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contralateral cerebellum (dentatorubrothalamic tract; thalamic fasciculus)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventral posterior lateral nucleus</td>
<td>Contralateral receptors for joint position, vibration, epicritic touch (medial lemniscus)</td>
<td>Postcentral gyrus, areas 3b, 1, and 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contralateral receptors for touch, heat and cold, painful stimuli (spinothalamic tract)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dorsal medial thalamic nucleus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Septal region</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Frontal lobe (medial forebrain bundle)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Somatosensory cortex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventral posterior medial nucleus</td>
<td>Contralateral spiral trigeminal nucleus (face, painful stimuli)</td>
<td>Postcentral gyrus; lower lateral, “face” region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Contralateral main trigeminal nucleus (touch proprioception)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mesencephalic trigeminal nucleus (bite mechanoreceptors)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Posterior</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dorsal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral posterior nucleus</td>
<td>Pulvinar</td>
<td>Superior and inferior parietal lobules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medial geniculate body</td>
<td>Superior and inferior parietal lobules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lateral geniculate body</td>
<td>Posterior temporal region</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ventral lateral thalamic nucleus</td>
<td>Peristriate occipital cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventral</td>
<td>Bilateral receptors of noxious stimuli</td>
<td>Other thalamic nuclei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior thalamic zone</td>
<td>Bilateral hearing (bechium of the inferior colliculus)</td>
<td>Transverse temporal gyrus of Heschl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical geniculate body</td>
<td>Contralateral visual field (optic tract)</td>
<td>Calcarine cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lateral geniculate body</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intralaminar</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centromedian and parafascicular nuclei</td>
<td>Pallidum</td>
<td>Striatum: Caudate, putamen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small intralaminar nuclei</td>
<td>Frontal lobe, areas 4 and 6</td>
<td>Ventral anterior thalamic nuclei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Brainstem reticular formation; spinothalamic tract</td>
<td>Ventral anterior thalamic nuclei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Orbital cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reticular nucleus</strong></td>
<td>Thalamocortical projection</td>
<td>Thalamic nuclei</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*In parentheses is the name of the white matter bundles that correspond to each connection.*
ii. The medial geniculate body, where auditory information from the inferior colliculus passes on to the transverse temporal gyri, buried in the depth of the Sylvian fissure. Lesions of this thalamic nucleus are discussed in Chapter 11.

iii. The lateral geniculate body, relay station for the visual pathway, which receives from the retinal ganglion cells the axons that form the optic tract and which originates the axons that project to the calcarine cortex through the optic radiations. Lesions of this thalamic nucleus are discussed in Chapter 7.

B. Sensorimotor control is carried out by the more anterior of the ventrolateral nuclei (ventral lateral and ventral anterior) and perhaps by the intralaminar nuclei [93,124].

iv. The ventrolateral nucleus has an oral, a medial and a smaller caudal portion. The medial portion receives input from the cerebellum and projects to the precentral cortex or primary motor cortex (area 4). The largest oral portion receives input from the globus pallidus and projects mostly to the premotor cortex. The ventrolateral nucleus also receives information from musculoskeletal system mechanoreceptors; it contributes to the coordination of finer, distal motor movements with the proximal axial movements that support them.

v. The ventral anterior nucleus may play a role in voluntary attention. It has strong connections with the pallidum, medial thalamic nuclei, and frontal cortex.

Anatomically, the thalamus constitutes the keystone for two large sensorimotor control loops: (a) the cerebello-rubrothalamo-cortico-pontocerebellar loop and (b) the cortico-striato-pallido-thalamo-cortical loop. Although the physiologic role of each loop is far from clear, it is known that lesions in each loop cause different syndromes. Obviously, the anatomy allows ample possibilities for lesions to affect both loops. Symptoms and signs derived from cerebellar lesions are discussed in Chapter 16. Those derived from basal ganglia lesions are discussed in Chapter 19. Motor findings that point to the thalamus as the site of the lesion are given preferential attention here.

FIG. 18.1. A: Thalamic nuclei. Top, Frontal section of the thalamus at the level of the dashed line on the figure at the bottom. Bottom, Laterodorsal view of the thalamus, showing the position of the thalamic nuclei. (continued)
4. The fourth main region of the thalamus comprises the dorsolateral and posterior nuclear groups, particularly the pulvinar, which seem to modulate occipito-temporo-parietal cortical attention, using an object-based frame of reference [204]. As such, it facilitates visual attention and the cortical attention needed for language-related sensory tasks in the left hemisphere and visuospatial tasks in the right [36,78]. This area is much better developed in humans than in lower
mammals. During ontogenesis, it is the last thalamic region to reach adult morphology.

Vascular Supply of the Thalamus

Cerebrovascular disease is the most common cause of discrete thalamic pathology resulting in signs and symptoms of localizing value [165]. Infarcts are more common than hemorrhages. Therefore, some knowledge of the vascular supply of the thalamic nuclei helps greatly to understand the so-called thalamic syndromes and the localization of thalamic lesions.

The thalamic arteries arise from the posterior communicating arteries and from the perimesencephalic segment of the posterior cerebral arteries [25,147–149]. The origin and territory of supply of the various thalamic vessels differ in each person. For instance, when the posterior communicating artery is small or absent, arterial twigs from the posterior cerebral artery supply the thalamic territory that is otherwise supplied by branches of the posterior communicating artery. Table 18.2 summarizes the more common vascular patterns (Fig. 18.2). For this account, the segment of the posterior cerebral artery proximal to the ostium of the posterior communicating artery has been termed the basilar communicating artery [25].

Localization of Ischemic Thalamic Lesions

In localizing ischemic lesions of the thalamus, several points should be kept in mind:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of Vessel</th>
<th>Origin</th>
<th>Distribution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Polar arteries</td>
<td>Posterior communicating artery</td>
<td>Thalamic nuclei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Reticular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ventral anterior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paramedian thalamomesencephalic arteries</td>
<td>Basilar communicating artery (portion of posterior cerebral artery proximal to ostium of posterior communicating artery)</td>
<td>Thalamic nuclei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Reticular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ventrolateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medial (anterior portion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Midline (paraventricular)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Centromedian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Other structures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Red nucleus (superior-medial portion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Interpeduncular nucleus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Decusation of the superior cerebellar peduncle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Third nerve nucleus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thalamogeniculate pedicle</td>
<td>Posterior cerebral artery, proximal to geniculate body level</td>
<td>Ventral caudal nuclei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posteromedial choroidal arteries</td>
<td>Posterior cerebral artery, just distal to ostium of posterior communicating artery</td>
<td>Thalamic nuclei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Centromedian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ventral posterior medial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medial geniculate body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pulvinar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Medial (posterior portion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anterior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Other structures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Crus cerebri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Subthalamic nucleus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Substantia nigra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Red nucleus (lateral)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterolateral choroidal arteries</td>
<td>Posterior cerebral artery (between lateral geniculate body and dorsal pulvinar level)</td>
<td>Thalamic nuclei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lateral geniculate body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pulvinar (inferolateral portion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Laterodorsal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Other structures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Hippocampus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Choroid plexus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. The individual pattern in vessel distribution and size will ultimately dictate the presence of one of the syndromes described below.

The arterial territory responsible for a thalamic ischemic infarct may be inferred from the clinical findings, as follows.

**Paramedian Territory**

Infarcts here tend to involve also the paramedian region of the midbrain. Most often, the syndrome is composed of the clinical triad of somnolent apathy, memory loss, and abnormalities of vertical gaze [73]. Bilateral medial thalamic infarcts account for the behavioral syndrome, and lesions in the area of the rostral interstitial nucleus of the medial longitudinal fasciculus account for the vertical gaze palsy [207]. The following findings may result, depending on the extent and location of the lesion [11,15,25,61,62,65,87,183,207]:

1. Transient loss of consciousness or somnolence; occasionally akinetic mutism

---

**FIG. 18.2.** Arterial supply of the thalamus. Inset: Variations in the origin of the paramedian arteries, which may arise from each basilar communicating artery (A), from a single pedicle originating in one basilar communicating artery (B), or from a vascular arcade connecting both basilar communicating arteries (C). DM = dorsomedial; LG = lateral geniculate; MG = medial geniculate. (Modified from Castaigne P, et al. Paramedian thalamic and midbrain infarcts: Clinical and neuropathological study. Ann Neurol 1981;10:127.)
2. Behavioral changes (confusion, agitation, aggression, lack of initiative, disorientation, apathy, manic delirium, a frontal lobe-like syndrome [13])
3. Recent memory loss (with anterograde and retrograde components). Persistent memory loss is observed only with damage of the dominant anterior nucleus or mammillothalamic tract [183]
4. Vertical gaze and convergence disorders (and occasionally blepharospasm)
5. Contralateral hemiataxia, asterixis, or motor weakness
6. Delayed action tremor (occasionally myoclonus or athetosis) in the contralateral limbs

This syndrome is often due to embolic occlusion of the top of the basilar artery or local atheroma at the origin of the posterior cerebral artery [15,20,121,183].

Thalamogeniculate (Lateral Thalamic or Inferolateral Thalamic) Territory

Ischemia in this territory (ventral posterior nucleus, ventral lateral nucleus, and subthalamic region) causes some of the components of the classic thalamic syndrome described by Dejerine and Roussy [15,21,61,62,115,116,122,177,209]:
1. Hemianesthesia (occasionally, proprioception is spared)
2. Transient slight hemiparesis
3. Hemiataxia
4. Hemiataxia–hypesthesia syndrome
5. Lack of nonvolitional utilization of the contralateral body (damaged “automatic pilot”)
6. Dysequilibrium (“thalamic astasia”)
7. Choreothetoid movements
8. Athetoid posture (“thalamic hand”)
9. Paroxysmal pain (thalamic pain)
10. Homonymous hemianopia (often due to simultaneous medial occipital infarction)

All these findings occur on the side of the body contralateral to the lesioned thalamus. The more severe forms of the syndrome (complete geniculothalamic infarct) accompany proximal occlusion of the posterior cerebral artery [61]. Partial forms (partial geniculothalamic infarct) result from lacunar infarction restricted to one of the penetrating thalamogeniculate vessels [21,61,129] and result in pure sensory or sensorimotor stroke. Disease of such small perforating arteries often accompanies diabetes and chronic hypertension.

Isolated hemiataxia and ipsilateral sensory loss (the hemiataxia–hypesthesia syndrome or thalamic ataxia syndrome) may occur with infarction in the thalamogeniculate territory that involves the lateral part of the thalamus (ventral posterior nucleus and ventral lateral nucleus) [122,177]. The sensory disturbance may be purely subjective, may affect light touch, pain, and temperature sense, or affect light touch, pain, temperature, position, and vibration sense. The contralateral “cerebellar” dysfunction and sensory loss is due to a lesion of the dentatorubrothalamic and ascending sensory pathways into the thalamus [177]. Also, recurrent pure sensory transient ischemic attacks (transient hemihypesthesia) may occur with ventroposterolateral nucleus ischemia [47].

Tuberothalamic (Anterolateral Thalamic) Territory

Infarcts in this territory are due to thalamopolar artery lesions and result primarily in neuropsychological dysfunction [55,61–63]. The following findings may result:
1. Apathy and verbal perseveration, as part of executive function impairment
2. Anterograde memory loss
3. Facial paresis for emotional movement
4. Occasionally, hemiparesis and visual field defects (sensation spared)
5. The superimposition of temporally unrelated information
6. Dysphasia with left-sided lesions
7. Hemineglect and impaired visuospatial processing with right-sided lesions

Bilateral polar artery thalamic infarcts result in apathy, abulia, “frontal lobe” deficits, lethargy, and impaired memory [82].

 Territory of the Posterior Choroidal Arteries

These vessels supply the lateral geniculate body, pulvinar, posterior thalamus, and a small posterior portion of the hippocampus and parahippocampal gyri [137]. In lateral posterior choroidal artery territory infarction, the most common clinical manifestations include:
1. Homonymous quadrantopia, superior or inferior, or, rarely but particularly suggestive of involvement of the lateral geniculate body in this territory, a homonymous horizontal sectoranopia, tubular or shaped like a wedge
2. Decreased optokinetic nystagmus when moving the drum to the side of the lesion
3. Hemisensory loss with mild hemiparesis
4. Mild hemiparesis, accompanied by sensory loss (although no involvement of the internal capsule is detected by MRI)
5. Transcortical aphasia

Isolated medial posterior choroidal artery territory infarction has not been reliably documented.
Miosis, occasionally ipsilateral, has been described with these lesions [137].

Thalamic hemorrhage is discussed in Chapter 21.

**Clinical Manifestations of Lesions in the Thalamus**

The following considerations facilitate the understanding of the clinical manifestations of thalamic lesions:

1. Because of the smallness of the thalamus, _several of the nuclei_ and even several of the functional regions outlined above are usually affected simultaneously, even by discrete lesions such as infarcts. Because arteriolar vascular territories cross the nuclear boundaries, as a rule ischemic disease affects several nuclei, often partially [25]. In addition, many lesions are not restricted to the thalamus, but involve _neighboring areas of the brain_ as well. Paramedian thalamic vascular lesions tend to affect also the midbrain, with a resultant decrease in the level of alertness to the point of coma [25]. Thus, other motor or sensory findings that would point to thalamic involvement cannot be elicited. Laterally located lesions may disrupt the internal capsule, thereby causing motor and sensory deficits [64] that mask the deficits characteristically present with thalamic involvement. For instance, the tendency to avoid using an otherwise strong limb contralateral to a lesioned ventral lateral thalamic area (“thalamic neglect”) is not manifest if capsular involvement has resulted in a hemiparesis. Lesions extending inferiorly may yield hemibalismus, for which the subthalamic lesion is probably primarily responsible. Lesions in the territory of the lateral posterior choroidal artery may cause memory loss through involvement of the parahippocampal gyrus [137].

2. Except for sensory deficits, unilateral thalamic lesions result in transient deficits. By contrast, bilateral lesions or unilateral lesions, such as hemorrhages or tumors, which press against the contralateral thalamus or impinge on the midbrain, may render the patient comatose or akinetic and mute.

3. Timing has a particular impact on the clinical expression of thalamic lesions. As the effects of an acute lesion recede, neglect may disappear, inability to walk may yield to mild ataxia, and hemisensory loss diminishes. Other findings, however, particularly the so-called positive symptoms (tremor, pain), usually become more pronounced within a few weeks after the injury.

Discrete lesions in various regions of the thalamus, and, more recently, deep brain stimulation through implanted electrodes, are increasingly used for the treatment of parkinsonian and essential tremor [144,199], dystonia [91], pain [34], epilepsy [188], and the manifestations of Gilles de la Tourette syndrome [154,186]. Tremor treatment is the most extensively used and best understood deep brain stimulation thalamic procedure. Essential tremor can be treated by deep brain stimulation with electrodes in the ventrolateral nucleus. The ventrolateral nucleus includes the nuclei ventralis intermedius and ventralis oralis posterior. The ideal location of the stimulating electrodes seems to lie in the ventralis oralis posterior nucleus immediately anterior to the cerebellar receiving area, ventralis intermedius [144]. In addition to the target effect, some of these procedures have produced other symptoms or signs, which will be mentioned under the appropriate heading.

**Disturbances of Alertness**

Sudden bilateral paramedian thalamic lesions, such as infarcts, may cause a decreased level of alertness ranging from somnolence to coma [25,61,106], generally transient. Prolonged coma may result if the lesion extends into the midbrain tegmentum. These patients often have oculomotor paresis [25]. By contrast, patients with pure thalamic involvement have very small reactive pupils (“diencephalic pupil”), and their extraocular movements, elicited by the doll’s head maneuver, are full [152]. Akinetic mutism, discussed in Chapter 23, may follow bilateral paramedian thalamic lesions [25,171], as in the noted Karen Quinlan case [90].

The intralaminar, reticular, and ventral anterior nuclei seem to play the greatest role in mediating normal alertness [67,182]. Electrical stimulation of this region induces arousal from sleep [208], while lesions here cause drowsiness [71]. Bilateral paramedian thalamic infarction may cause severe apathy and a bromocripine-responsive compulsive tendency to assume a sleeping posture (“presleep behavior”) [26]. In patients with paramedian thalamic lesions and daytime hypersomnia, REM sleep is normal, but wakefulness, sleep spindling and stages of deep sleep are all reduced, suggesting that the medial thalamus is the “final common pathway” for both maintenance of wakefulness and promotion of non-REM sleep [7,174]. Other reported disturbances include inversion of the nycthemeral rhythm and dissociation of sleep stages, detected by electroencephalography, between the two hemispheres: the hemisphere affected by a thalamic tumor showed earlier onset of deeper sleep stages [81]. Normally,
Apathy, disinterest, and a lack of drive have been reported with lesions of the paramedian region of the thalamus [13,25,61,87], which is involved in reward learning [160]. Less often, such lesions may cause amnesia for events taking place after the injury (anterograde verbal and visual learning and in retrograde amnesia, but motor learning is preserved [63]. Patients who are alert and active usually perform adequately in tests of immediate memory, such as digit span. Characteristically, the amnesia is most profound for events taking place after the injury (anterograde amnesia or recent memory loss), although sometimes it includes information acquired from days to years previously (retrograde amnesia) [55,83,120,211]. Dissociation to time is common. With thalamic lesions, the content of recall is not as accurate in tests of immediate memory, such as digit span. Characteristically, the amnesia is most profound for events taking place after the injury (anterograde amnesia or recent memory loss), although sometimes it includes information acquired from days to years previously (retrograde amnesia) [55,83,120,211]. Dissociation to time is common.

**Thalamic amnesia** is characterized by deficits in anterograde verbal and visual learning and in retrograde amnesia, but motor learning is preserved [63]. Patients who are alert and active usually perform adequately in tests of immediate memory, such as digit span. Characteristically, the amnesia is most profound for events taking place after the injury (anterograde amnesia or recent memory loss), although sometimes it includes information acquired from days to years previously (retrograde amnesia) [55,83,120,211]. Dissociation to time is common. With thalamic lesions, the content of recall is not as affected as the temporal order of the items stored in
memory, be they verbal or nonverbal items. Thus, the patients may retrieve facts, but in a disorganized fashion and out of context [55,175]. Some patients seem to be aware of their deficit [211], and others do not [198]. Whether this can be accounted for by differences in the site or extent of the lesion remains to be determined.

Some unusual patterns of memory loss and recovery have been described with thalamic lesions. A patient with bilateral medial thalamic lesions recognized by their voices relatives whom he had failed to identify visually (prosopagnosia) [120]. Another patient's retrograde amnesia improved suddenly one year after a left anterior thalamic infarction, when he was exposed to an event that triggered the recall of a flood of previously forgotten autobiographical detail [107]. The resemblance with Proust's recollection triggered by the taste of aunt Leonie's "petite madeleines" has led to the term "petite madeleines phenomenon" for this remarkable presentation [107].

Confabulation, or falsification of memory occurring in clear consciousness, is frequently present with thalamic amnesia [13,55,167,168]. Patients may confabulate spontaneously or when asked to recall some facts [167,168]. Particularly those that confabulate spontaneously seem to have an impaired ability to order in time facts retained in memory [55,168]. Part of the problem has to do with identifying the relevance of items stored in memory to the current context. Items of memory that are not appropriate for the here and now find their way into the patient's verbal output or are manifested by behavior that relates to past experiences, but not to what is now appropriate.

Sensory Disturbances

Thalamic lesions may cause sensory loss, often accompanied by paresthesias and pain.

PARESTHESIAS AND PAIN

Clinically, small lesions in the ventral posterior lateral nucleus of the thalamus may yield only contralateral paresthesias that lack "objective" sensory loss when tested at the bedside [49]. Such paresthesias tend to occur on one side of the face, particularly around the mouth, and in the distal portion of the limbs. Occasionally, this chiro-oral or distal distribution of the paresthesias may suggest a more distal lesion (e.g., radiculopathy) [98]. These areas of the body have the largest representation in the thalamic sensory nuclei. When the trunk is also numb, the subjective feeling of numbness may stop abruptly in the midline, although on objective testing the sensory loss often fades toward the midline [130]. Such a "thalamic midline split," which is absent with parietal lesions, has been thought to have some clinical value in identifying the site of the lesion [129]. The numb areas of the body may feel swollen, enlarged, shortened, twisted, or torn, or they may tingle. Objects held with the limb contralateral to the lesion may feel abnormally heavy. Finally, the patient may be unaware of a profound sensory loss.

Pain referred to as thalamic pain is perhaps the best known component of Dejerine and Roussy's thalamic syndrome, described above [119,209]. The unpleasant or excruciatingly painful sensation on the side of the body contralateral to a thalamic lesion (an infarct is most common) may appear at the time of the injury [49] or when the sensory loss begins to improve. The pain feels localized to the skin. Cutaneous stimuli trigger paroxysmal exacerbations of the pain, which persists after the stimulus has been removed. The latency between the stimulus and pain perception is prolonged, suggesting that the pathways conveying it are polysynaptic. Because the perception of epicritic pain, such as that induced with a pin-prick, is reduced on the painful areas, this symptom has been termed anesthesia dolorosa, or painful anesthesia. A similar symptom may follow damage of the posterior root ganglia (herpes zoster) or trigeminal nerve or nucleus (trigeminal neuralgia with anesthesia). Ventral-posterior thalamic nuclear lesions are more likely to produce half-body pain than lesions elsewhere in the sensory pathways [17]. The lesion may be restricted to the ventral-posterior nucleus (ventral caudal nucleus in Schaltenbrand's terminology [164]) and it is generally accompanied by hypothyseis to cold but not to heat [88]. Metabolic studies have shown enhanced activation of somatosensory cortex with stimulation [88] or pain relief correlating with increased metabolic rates in prefrontal and anterior insular cortices, hypothalamus and periaqueductal gray [95], all of them structures felt to play an important role in pain perception. Some patients with localized neuropathic pain can be relieved by stimulation of the basal ventroposteromedial region of the thalamus or by lesioning the somatomotor cortex [88].

Thalamic pain seldom occurs with tumors. It has been described most often with vascular lesions, some of which involve not only the thalamus but also the deep parietal white matter [2]. Besides, delayed pain may follow cortical parietal infarcts, particularly those in the bank of the Sylvian fissure, affecting the second somatosensory area (pseudothermalic syndrome) [10,166].

LOSS OF SENSORY MODALITIES

All somatosensory modalities are processed in the ventral posterior nucleus of the thalamus contralateral to the side of the body where they are perceived. Within the nucleus there is a definite topographic

444 Localization in Clinical Neurology
disturbances: the head is represented anteroinferomedially, whereas the leg is represented posterolaterally; the arm is represented in an intermediate position. A larger volume of the nucleus is dedicated to the mouth, tongue, and distal portion of the extremities; their thalamic representation is almost completely crossed. The large oral thalamic and cortical representation in humans may well be related to language functions [27]. The face, proximal portion of the limbs, and trunk are represented in a smaller volume of thalamic tissue, mainly contralateral but partially ipsilateral [18]. Thalamic sensory loss tends to occur maximally in the distal portion of the limbs and often spares the face [89]. Such sparing may be related to the different vascular supply of this portion of the ventroposterior region (paramedian territory) or to the bilateral thalamic representation of the face.

In regard to the thalamic topography of various sensory modalities, physiologic experimental studies have shown that cells concerned with deep pressure and movements of the limbs are preferentially located in the rostral and caudal ends of the ventral posterior lateral nucleus. The central part of the nucleus contains neurons that respond to cutaneous stimuli. In humans, however, lesions large enough to produce any sensory loss most often involve several modalities. No existent clinicopathologic studies allow precise identification of thalamic areas for touch versus joint position or vibration. Pain sensation has been obtained by stimulation of the basal part of the nucleus [18].

Because the perception of pin-prick, temperature, touch, or vibration is altered more often after thalamic than after cortical lesions, these sensory modalities have been termed primary or thalamic. By contrast, conscious joint position identification, two-point discrimination, stereognosis, and graphesthesia tend to be more impaired after cortical parietal lesions, and are thus termed secondary or cortical sensory modalities. Nevertheless, parietal lesions often cause some impairment of thalamic modalities and vice versa. Occasionally, a lesion in the thalamus may disturb mainly the so-called cortical sensory modalities [51,203].

Anesthesia and impaired temperature perception tend to occur with basal lesions near the medial geniculate body [17,18]. Because vibration sense remains unaltered after surgical removal of the parietal cortex, it has been assumed that hemispheric lesions causing loss of vibratory sense necessarily implicate the thalamus or the thalamocortical projections [161].

Decreased thalamic perfusion has been observed with hysterical hemisensory loss [201]. This abnormality reverted when the patients improved.

Disturbances of vision and hearing are discussed in Chapters 7 and 11. Visual field defects caused by thalamic lesions frequently involve the superior quadrant bilaterally. An intolerance to light (“central dazzle”) has been ascribed to a thalamic lesion [38,42]. Paramedian thalamic infarction may cause the sudden onset of vivid, formal visual hallucinations (suggesting peduncular hallucinosis) associated with agitation and sleep disturbance (MRI revealed no abnormality of the midbrain or cerebral peduncles) [46]. Vivid visual hallucinations, suggesting peduncular hallucinosis, with left hemiparesis and left paresthesias have been described with a right posterior thalamic infarct [175]. Auditory and visual experiential hallucinations may occur with unilateral thalamic lesions affecting the intralaminar and dorsomedial nuclei [112,139]. Auditory illusions of hyperacusis and palinacusis may occur with a lesion in the medial geniculate body [52]. Auditory-tactile synesthesia followed a lesion centered in the ventrolateral nucleus [9]. Unilateral visual sensory neglect may occur with lesions of the right pulvinar [85,193].

Normal detection, but altered identification, of smells has been associated with thalamic lesions; in several patients, odors and taste were perceived either in a neutral way, their pleasant character having disappeared, or as unpleasant [162,172]. Taste sensations have been elicited in humans by stimulation of a portion of the ventro-postero-medial nucleus [101].

Motor Disturbances

Just as the sensory disturbances described in the previous section can be related to lesions in the ventral posterior nucleus of the thalamus, motor disturbances can be related to lesions of the ventral lateral nucleus and the adjacent subthalamic region.

POSTURAL DISTURBANCES

Following an acute thalamic lesion, even a unilateral lesion, patients may be transiently unable to stand or even sit, despite normal strength of the limbs when tested against resistance (thalamic astasia) [115,116,196]. The lesions, including infarction, hemorrhage, or tumor, primarily involved the superoposterolateral thalamus and spared the rubral region. Although alert, with normal or near-normal strength and a variable degree of sensory loss, patients with thalamic astasia cannot stand, and often cannot even sit up unassisted. They fall backward or toward the side contralateral to the lesion and appear to have a deficit of overlearned motor activity of an axial and postural nature [116]. Sudden falling to one side while sitting, standing, or walking has also been described with basal ganglia lesions contralateral to the side of the fall [96]. Some patients with postero-lateral thalamic lesions push actively to the side contralateral to the lesion (pusher syndrome) [86]. The
postural disturbance of thalamic lesions may be accompanied by a disturbance in the patient’s perception of the vertical axis [39,40,84].

Postural abnormalities in patients with lesions in the ventrolateral nucleus or its connections with the medial frontal region, in the supratohalamic white matter, go beyond simple disequilibrium [115,116]. Volitional movements, like trying to overcome the strength of the examiner during isometric testing, are normal. Yet the patient does not use the same strong limbs, and particularly the axial muscles, in tasks that are normally performed automatically or without much thinking, such as shifting in bed. Proximal movements that normally support distal ones, such as abduction of the shoulder when trying to pick up a cup, are restricted, even though the patient is perfectly able to abduct his or her shoulder on command. This syndrome occurs with lesions of either thalamus and is different from the sensory hemineglect described predominantly with nondominant thalamic lesions [85,116]. It has been called motor neglect [111]. Neglect to use the limbs contralateral to the lesion may convey to the examiner the false impression that the patient is hemiplegic [6,13,15,146,205,206]. Certainly large infarcts, lacunes [129], hematomas [203], and tumors may involve the neighboring internal capsule, causing a more or less profound hemiplegia. However, purely thalamic involvement does not result in hemiparesis. Lesions in the ventral lateral nucleus of the thalamus cause contralateral hypotonia, reduction of emotional expression, and transient neglect [71,111]. This syndrome may occur even with lesions that are discrete enough to spare all sensory modalities and the early (thalamic) components of the somatosensory evoked response. Such lesions, which are circumscribed to the ventral lateral nucleus, spare the ventral posterior nucleus of the thalamus [122]. The cerebellar syndrome is not as severe as with involvement of the superior cerebellar peduncle or dentate nucleus.

Regarding hand movements, pinching may be involved in both cases, but reaching tends to be spared with thalamic lesions [8]. Some weeks after the injury (which is most often ischemic), tremor at a rate of between three and five cycles per second may appear in the affected extremities [128]. It is mainly distal and increases greatly during the performance of any movement. This tremor may be abolished by DBI or by a surgical lesion of the ventral lateral nucleus of the thalamus [169]. If the central tegmental tract is also involved, tremor with a similar rate may affect the eyelids, eyes, or palate (“palatal myoclonus or tremor”). Central tegmental tract lesions are in the territory of the thalamopeduncular paramedian vessels and are often related to occlusion of the top of the basilar artery [25]. Contralateral cerebellar ataxia and proprioceptive sensory loss may occur with lesions of the ventroposterior thalamus, likely due to interruption of cerebellar outflow pathways in the thalamus rather than to sensory deafferentation [66].

Lesions that are slightly more rostral, involving the subthalamic region and the pallidothalamic projections to the ventral lateral nucleus, may cause transient contralateral hemiataxia-hypesthesia [94]. After some days or weeks, the amplitude of the movement decreases and either disappears or adopts a choreic or athetotic pattern.

Dystonia may be secondary to a necrotizing lesion or to degeneration, as with the familial dystonias. Messenger RNA for torsinA, a protein encoded by the gene abnormal in early-onset torsion dystonia, is abundantly present in the thalamus [4]. Thalamic infarcts in the intermediate and caudal portions of the ventrolateral nucleus may cause myoclonic dystonia in the contralateral limbs [54,93,99,103]. The myoclonic nature of the deficit, often accompanied by action tremor or chorea, differs from the dystonia with tonic spasms more characteristic of striatopallidal lesions [93,99]. The onset of the dystonic movements often lags by
months or years after the acute insult [54,56]. Dy- 
tonic tremor with chronic MRI evidence of infarction in the anterior nucleus of the thalamus may have resulted from a more posteroverentral lesion causing atrophy but no cavitory lesions in the involved nucleus [50]. The sensory fields of thalamic neurons are enlarged in patients with dystonia [100,102]. Patients with secondary dystonia or hemiballismus of basal ganglionic origin tend to improve with lesions or stimulation of the ventrolateral nucleus of the thalamus [23].

Abnormal posturing of the hand, often termed thalamic hand, may appear two or more weeks after the occurrence of a vascular lesion of the same region. The hand assumes a posture with flexion at the wrist and metacarpophalangeal joints, whereas the interphalangeal joints are hyperextended. Flexion of the metacarpophalangeal joints increases from the second digit, which may actually be extended, to the fifth digit, which is markedly flexed. The fingers may be forcibly abducted. The thumb is either abducted or pushed against the palm [114].

Other abnormal movements described with thalamic lesions include action myoclonus [5], ideomotor apraxia [156], and asterixis [19,41,116,181]. Asterixis is more common with ventrolateral nucleus lesions [184]. Hyperkplexia, the sudden loss of postural tone caused by startling stimuli, may be exacerbated with thalamic lesions [45]. Imitation synkineses, also called mirror movements, are common after thalamic lesions [117]. In such cases the distal portion of the limb contralateral to the thalamic lesion tends to imitate the movement performed by the healthy side. When the patient forcibly makes a fist with the sound hand, the fingers of the other hand curl up into the palm, and the patient ends by making a fist with both hands. Loss of position sense or loss of cortical activation by the thalamus may underlie these abnormal movements, which can be decreased, like the choreic movements described above, when the patient concentrates his attention on avoiding them.

A decreased corneal reflex may be present in patients with hemiparesis and hemisensory loss due to a cerebral hemispheric lesion [48]. Loss of parietal excitatory influence on the lower brainstem seems to be responsible for this finding [141]. Pure thalamic lesions, even those that cause a marked hemisensory loss, do not depress the corneal reflex [142]. However, a patient with an acute thalamiccapsular lesion had bilaterally depressed late components of the blink reflex when the side contralateral to the lesion was stimulated [29]. It is possible that damage of corticopontine fibers traveling in the internal capsule may be responsible for the deficit.

Small surgical lesions or chronic stimulation of the ventrolateral nucleus of the thalamus may ameliorate drug-resistant tremor [169].

**Disturbances of Ocular Motility**

Lesions restricted to the thalamus cause only subtle changes in ocular motility [143]. Visual information from the superior colliculus, relayed by the pulvinar to the parietal lobe ("second visual system"), contributes to the detection and localization of visual events in space and to the production of saccadic eye movements that allow the "first" (geniculostriate) visual system to identify such events. Lesions in the pulvinar have been said to cause (a) a decrease in the critical ficher frequency and neglect of visual objects in the periphery of the contralateral visual field, (b) prolonged latency of visually evoked saccadic eye movements, and (c) a paucity of spontaneous eye movements directed toward the contralateral hemifield [212].

Much more striking, and more obvious at the bedside, are eye movement abnormalities that occur when a lesion involves the midbrain and thalamus; this often happens with paramedian thalamopeduncular infarcts [25]. In such cases, impairment of ocular motor function results in abnormal pupils, ptosis, and restriction of vertical eye movements and of adduction. Selective upgaze, downgaze, or combined dysfunction may occur [15], as may blepharospasm [155], bilateral internuclear ophthalmoplegia with ptosis [15], and pseudo-sixth nerve palsy [20] (see Chapter 8). Thalamic lesions may be associated with vertical gaze palsies not because of thalamic injury per se but because of extension of the lesions into the upper midbrain [176]. A "vertical one-and-a-half syndrome" (vertical palsy in one eye, upward palsy in the other eye) may occur [14,15,183]. Bilateral medial thalamic lesions may cause purely vertical saccadic apraxia, affecting volitional vertical saccades but not saccades elicited by external stimuli [127]. Acute thalamic esotropia, with impaired upward gaze, has been described with infarction of the contralateral posterior thalamus in the basilar-communicating artery territory [58]. Tonic activation of the medial rectus in this case could result from damage to direct inhibitory projections from the thalamus or impairment of inputs to midbrain neurons involved with vergence control [58].

Large thalamic hemorrhages may impinge on the midbrain or impair its function by causing raised intracranial pressure [57]. The eyes then become tonically deviated down and slightly adducted, as if peering at the tip of the nose [203]. In some instances, the eyes may be tonically deviated to the side of the hemiparesis, opposite a thalamic hemorrhage ("wrong-way
eyes”) [50,189]. This finding has also been reported in extrathalamic supratentorial lesions [151,189].

Deep brain stimulation for the treatment of epilepsy, with electrodes placed at the mesodiencephalic junction, just inferior to the centromedian nucleus of the thalamus, may cause nystagmus with constant velocity slow phases, beating to the right when the left thalamus is stimulated and vice versa [185].

Depression of the reticular activating system (most often metabolic in nature) or involvement of both thalami results in small pupils (1 mm in diameter) that react well to light (diencephalic pupils) [152]. Anisocoria is occasionally present, with the smaller pupil ipsilateral to the thalamic lesion.

Disturbances of Complex Sensorimotor Functions

The thalamus modulates the association cortex involved in the processing of language and other “higher” cortical functions. Although compared with large cortical lesions, unilateral thalamic lesions do not impair these functions as much; the pattern of impairment has some localizing value. Mention has already been made of the contralateral motor neglect caused by lesions in the ventral lateral nucleus of the thalamus and of the contralateral visual inattention that results from lesions in the pulvinar.

Patients with right thalamic lesions may have constructional apraxia and display marked neglect of the left hemifield [205,206]. This hemineglect may be associated with anosognosia and asomatognosia, thus mimicking a parietal lobe lesion [13,205], and is likely due to damage to the intralaminar and ventro-lateral or ventral anterior nuclei on the right [31,206]. Right thalamic lesions can also cause impairment in the identification of emotional facial expressions with preserved discrimination of facial identity (prosopoaffective agnosia) [202]. Alexia related to impaired visuospatial perception has been described after right thalamooccipital infarction [72]. Optic ataxia or visuomotor apraxia has been described in a patient with CT evidence of bilateral lesions in the pulvinar, the one on the left in the acute stage when the patient was studied [33].

Dominant-hemisphere thalamic lesions may cause a transient language disturbance (thalamic aphasia) [15,60,77,191] characterized by (a) reduced spontaneous speech with paraphasic errors and perseveration, (b) varying degrees of auditory comprehension impairment, (c) preserved repetition and reading, (d) defective spontaneous writing and writing to dictation but normal copying, (e) word-production anomia but spared word selection and word symbolism, and (f) distractibility. This deficit, which would be classified as a mixed transcortical aphasia, tends to improve in a few weeks [3,22,77]. The language deficit may have more semantic components when the lesion is posterior [158] and more motor components when the lesion affects the anterior nucleus [55]. Electrical stimulation of the ventrolateral thalamus produces an acceleration of speaking. The patient feels urged to speak faster [71]. Stimulation also enhances later recall of objects presented to the patient. The left thalamus is involved in attention mechanisms that gate storage and retrieval of both long-term and short-term verbal memory [78]. Derangement of a specific cortical attention mechanism because of the thalamic lesion results in a lack of drive to speak and perseveration of apparently unrelated verbal material [159]. Some patients have hypophonia and dysarthria [55]. Such language impairment resembles the language impairment that results from left medial frontal lesions [16,118]. Other dorsomedial thalamic lesions cause a bizarre language pattern, with some characteristics of dysfunction in the prefrontal cortex. It contains intrusions (segments of speech out of context) and other evidence of temporal gating impairment, such as giving biographical information while working on a calculation test [28,55]. Apraxic agraphia has been described with an MRI showing a dorsomedial thalamic lesion [140].

The language impairment noted with left thalamic lesions and the visual neglect noted with right thalamic lesions are associated with decreased activity of ipsilateral frontal or temporoparietal association cortex [6,126,140,146]. Deafferentation of an otherwise intact cortex (diaschisis) due to the thalamic lesion may explain these “cortical” syndromes with thalamic lesions. For example, thalamic aphasia may be due to decreased cortical activation secondary to the subcortical lesion [6,126,146]. Some authors ascribe to thalamic lesions or thalamocortical disconnection the cases of striatocapsular aphasia reported in the literature [135].

A stuttering-like repetitive speech disorder may occur with infarction in the paramedian thalami and midbrain [1]. Although the speech disorder seems like stuttering, the compulsive repetitions, constant rate, and monotonous tone seen with these infarctions are not associated with ordinary stuttering. The repetitive speech disorder in patients with infarcts in the supplementary motor area have similar clinical features [1].

Disturbances of Executive Function

Paramedian thalamic infarction may cause a lack of initiative and “frontal lobe” utilization behavior (see Chap. 20), suggesting a thalamofrontal component
to environmental interactions that requires inhibition, self-monitoring, and cognitive flexibility [43,55,70]. The patients’ language may appear bizarre because of the presence of intrusions (segments of speech out of context) and the superimposition of mental activities normally processed sequentially, for instance, giving biographical information while working on a calculation test [28,55]. Failure of goal-directed regulation of behavior has been observed with a lesion affecting the right anteroventral thalamic region [138]. A left-sided discrete infarction of the medial thalamus may cause severe impairment of complex executive behaviors, probably due to dysfunction of thalamofrontal linkages that help modulate complex human behavior [163]. Repetitive movements (“clonic perseveration”) may be a manifestation of executive function disorder with thalamic lesions [53].

Infarction of the dorsomedial nucleus, intralaminar nuclei, and medial part of the ventrolateral nuclei is often associated with marked hypoperfusion of the overlying frontal region cortex on PET or SPECT [28,70]. It is thought that the “frontal lobe-like” syndrome with thalamic lesions may be related to impaired activation of the frontal lobe by the damaged dorsomedial and anterior thalamic nuclei [13,195], or their projections, for instance with traumatic brain injury [104]. These nuclei provide an important pathway for information from vegetative centers to reach the frontal lobe.

Topographic Localization of Thalamic Lesions

Following the detailed and referenced account of the localization of thalamic symptoms and signs, a brief synopsis follows organized by the anatomical regions of the thalamus.

Anterior Thalamic Region

Discrete lesions may be silent or cause language disturbances when they affect the dominant hemisphere. They may also cause inattention, which results more often when the right hemisphere is involved. Bilateral lesions may cause akinesia, amnesia, and attentional disturbances. Lesions extending to the subthalamic area may cause athetosis, chorea, or postural abnormalities (thalamic hand).

Medial Thalamic Region

Lesions in this location may pass unnoticed when they are small and unilateral. Large or bilateral lesions cause impairment of recent memory, apathy or agitation, attention derangements, and somnolence or coma. Lesions that extend to the midbrain–diencephalic junction may cause contralateral tremor and vertical gaze palsy, affecting particularly downward gaze.

Ventrolateral Thalamic Region

Sensory loss, paroxysmal pains, and hemiataxia in the contralateral side of the body are the most striking sequelae of lesions in the posterior portion of this region. More anterior lesions cause postural abnormalities, such as disequilibrium and restriction of axial supportive movements or delayed tremor. Hemineglect and language disturbances may appear transiently.

Posterior Region

Basal lesions in this region may cause hemianesthesia, “thalamic pain,” and visual field defects. Dorsal lesions give rise to attentional disorders of the ipsilateral hemisphere, resulting in transient aphasia when the dominant hemisphere is involved. Some patients may have myoclonic dystonia.

References

Localization in Clinical Neurology


The Anatomic Localization of Lesions in the Thalamus


The Anatomic Localization of Lesions in the Thalamus


Localization in Clinical Neurology


Anatomy of the Basal Ganglia

Basal ganglia (Fig. 19.1) include the corpus striatum, the substantia nigra (pars compacta and a pars reticulareis), the subthalamic nucleus of Luys, and the ventral tegmental area. The corpus striatum comprises the striatum proper (or neostriatum), made up of the putamen, caudate nucleus, and nucleus accumbens, and the globus pallidus (or paleostriatum), with its medial or internal (Gpi) and lateral or external (Gpe) segments and the ventral pallidum, with its internal and external portions.

The basal ganglia play a major role in the control of posture and movement. Marsden [241,242] proposed that “the basal ganglia are responsible for the automatic execution of learned motor plans;” that is, the basal ganglia mediate movements that have been “laid down by practice” and that are subconscious. Examples of such movements include shifting in bed and walking, as well as the proximal movements that support distal ones. Someone typing a letter may be conscious of the movements of the fingers on the keyboard but is not generally conscious of the shoulder abduction and extension that allow the fingers to fly over the keyboard.

The major anatomic connections of the basal ganglia [6,48] are complex (Fig. 19.2) and include several “closed circuits” of connections [277,287,294]. In essence, the basal ganglia consist of an input zone, comprising the putamen, caudate nucleus, and ventral striatum, and an output zone, comprising the medial globus pallidus and the substantia nigra pars reticulareis. The main outputs from the medial globus pallidus and substantia nigra pars reticulareis are to the thalamus, and thence to the premotor (e.g., supplementary motor area, anterior cingulate motor area, and lateral premotor cortex) and frontal lobe structures. Some of the main connections are discussed in subsequent text.

Inputs into the Striatum
(Caudate and Putamen)

CORTICAL PROJECTIONS TO
THE NEOSTRIATUM

All parts of the cerebral cortex give rise to efferent fibers to the caudate and putamen. These corticostriate projections terminate mainly ipsilaterally in a topographic pattern (e.g., the frontal cortex projects fibers to the ventral head of the caudate and rostral putamen). The cortex also sends fibers to the substantia nigra, subthalamic nucleus, and claustrum.

THALAMOSTRIATAL PROJECTIONS

The intralaminar nuclei of the thalamus, especially the centrum medianum (CM) nucleus, send fibers to the striatum.

NIGROSTRIATAL PROJECTIONS

Fibers originating in the pars compacta of the substantia nigra project to the striatum (caudate nucleus, putamen, and globus pallidus).

RAPHE NUCLEI-STRIATAL PROJECTIONS

The brainstem raphe nuclei send ascending fibers to the striatum.

Striatal Efferents

Most striatal efferents project to the globus pallidus (to both the internal and external segments). Other striatal efferents go to the substantia nigra.

Pallidal Afferents and Efferents

The globus pallidus receives ascending afferent fibers from the substantia nigra and subthalamicus (mainly to the medial or internal pallidum). Both the external and internal globus pallidus also receive afferents from the striatum.

The major outflow from the globus pallidus arises from the internal portion and projects to the ventral anterior (VA) and ventral lateral (VL) nuclei of the thalamus. These thalamic nuclei also receive afferents from the pars reticulareis of the substantia nigra. Because the VL, thalamic nucleus projects to the motor cortex and the VA thalamic nucleus projects to the premotor cortex, the major basal ganglia efferents influence the motor system.

Efferents from the internal globus pallidus also project to the CM thalamic nuclei, which in turn project to the putamen. A closed circuit is thereby formed: putamen—internal pallidum—central mediarum nucleus—putamen. The internal globus pallidus also sends fibers to the lateral habenular nucleus.

The external portion of the pallidum sends fibers to the internal pallidum and to the subthal-
Both anatomically and physiologically, a direct and an indirect system have been described in the striato-pallido-thalamic projection. In the direct system, the putamen and the caudate receive excitatory input from the pars compacta of the substantia nigra and project inhibitory fibers (GABA, colocalized with substance P) to the medial globus pallidus and to the pars reticularis of the substantia nigra, which in turn, inhibit the ventrolateral nucleus of the thalamus. Stimulation of this system would disinhibit the ventrolateral nucleus of the thalamus, resulting in cortical excitation.

In the indirect system, the putamen and caudate receive inhibitory input from the pars compacta of the substantia nigra and project inhibitory fibers (GABA colocalized with enkephalin) to the lateral globus pallidus which, in turn, inhibit (through GABA) the subthalamic nucleus. The subthalamic nucleus stimulates (through glutamate) the medial globus pallidus, inhibitory over the ventrolateral nucleus of the thalamus. Stimulation of this system inhibits the ventrolateral nucleus of the thalamus and results in cortical inhibition.

In functional terms, the activities of the basal ganglia pathways within the striatopallidal motor loop can, therefore, be summarized as follows:

1. Corticostriatal input from the sensorimotor cortex (glutamate) or input from the substantia nigra pars compacta (dopamine) excite direct inhibitory pathways of the putamen and medial globus pallidus and substantia nigra pars reticulata resulting
Depletion in the striatum would be the inhibition of the cortically initiated movement, whereas overactivity of the dopamine in the striatum would stimulate the cortically initiated movement. Although helpful in conceptualizing most of the anatomo-physiologic data regarding the connectivity of the basal ganglia, this currently accepted schema does not explain some clinical findings in basal ganglia diseases [244].

Lesions of the Basal Ganglia

Pathologic processes affecting the basal ganglia are often diffuse. When discrete, they usually also affect neighboring structures, such as the internal capsule, the hypothalamus, and the white matter of the...
cerebral hemispheres. Therefore, except for hemiballismus often associated with damage to the contralateral subthalamic nucleus, correlation between basal ganglia lesions and clinical motor dysfunction tends to be obscure.

The literature concerning behavioral effects of lesions of the basal ganglia in experimental animals is often conflicting, and these lesions rarely produce models of human movement disorders. Therefore, these studies are not reviewed. In general, stimulation and destructive lesions of the caudate, putamen, and globus pallidus produce inhibition of movement or contralateral body turning [252].

Some disorders in humans associated with lesions of the basal ganglia are as follows:

1. Lesions of the subthalamic nucleus produce contralateral hemiballismus [59].
2. Small unilateral lesions of the anteroventral portion of the caudate cause contralateral choreoathetosis [217].
3. Unilateral lesions of the globus pallidus may cause contralateral hemidystonia, hemiparkinsonism, or tremor, whereas bilateral globus pallidus lesions may cause dystonia, parkinsonism, abulia, or akinesis [267].
4. Lesions of the substantia nigra result in parkinsonism.
5. Unilateral basal ganglia (pallidal-putaminal) hemorrhages or lacunar infarcts may present with sudden falling to the contralateral side while sitting, standing, or walking [203]. The falls are distinctly slow, tilting motions in a stereotyped lateral or diagonal trajectory (“like a falling log”) and occur with the eyes open but are exacerbated by eye closure.

In a study of behavioral and movement disorders with lesions affecting the basal ganglia, lesions of the caudate nucleus rarely caused motor disorders (e.g., chorea or dystonia) but were more likely to cause behavioral problems, especially abulia (apathy with loss of initiative and of spontaneous thought and emotional responses) or disinhibition [37]. Lesions of the putamen and globus pallidus rarely caused abulia and did not produce disinhibition but commonly caused dystonia, particularly when the putamen was involved. Bilateral lesions of either the putamen or the globus pallidus caused parkinsonism or dystonia-parkinsonism infrequently. The prominence of behavioral disturbances with caudate lesions emphasizes the more complex cognitive role of this structure, whereas the frequent occurrence of dystonia and less commonly parkinsonism with lesions of the putamen and globus pallidus emphasizes the motor roles of these structures [37].

Another study of patients with lenticular infarcts, two distinct clinical syndromes corresponding to the two anatomical areas of the lenticular nucleus were described [138]. Infarcts within the globus pallidus were associated with behavioral and cognitive disorders, whereas infarcts in the putamen caused motor disorders (dystonia) and cognitive impairment. Also, damage to a frontal-caudate functional system likely underlies the aphasias (language disturbances) resulting from subcortical lesions affecting the deep frontal and paraventricular white matter (subcortical aphasias) [258].

Movement disorders can be defined as neurologic dysfunctions in which there is either an excess of movement (abnormal involuntary movements, or AIMs; hyperkinetics; dyskinesias) or a paucity of voluntary and automatic movements (akinesia, bradykinesia, or hypokinesia) unassociated with weakness or spasticity. Paucity of movement characterizes the disorder known as parkinsonism. The dyskinesias are discussed first.

**Dyskinesias**

**Chorea**

Chorea [108,327] is characterized by sudden, brief, spontaneous, involuntary, purposeless, continuous, irregular, and unpredictable jerks that randomly involve the appendicular, facial, or truncal musculature. The muscles involved vary depending on the underlying disease process (e.g., truncal involvement predominates in Huntington chorea and distal appendicular involvement is predominant in Sydenham chorea). The hyperkinetic movements may be unilateral (hemichorea) or bilateral, occur at rest or during volitional acts, interfere with activities of daily living, cease during sleep, intensify during stress, and are often camouflaged by the patient through a superimposed purposeful act (parakinesia).

Chorea is often associated with changing muscle tone (e.g., hypotonia in Sydenham chorea, rigidity and hypokinesis in the Westphal variant of Huntington disease, and dystonia in the juvenile variant of Huntington disease). Patients with chorea tend to hyperpronate the upper extremity when attempting to maintain an extended posture, and they are often unable to sustain a tight handgrip (milkmaid’s grip). The tongue cannot be maintained in a protruded position and darts in and out irregularly (trombone or flycatcher tongue). Facial grimacing and abnormal respiratory sounds may be manifestations of chorea.

Huntington disease is an autosomal dominant disorder with the defect localized to the short arm of chromosome 4. The mutant gene contains an expansion of CAG trinucleotide repeats that code for a polyglutamine tract, which leads to an abnormal protein that accumulates in the nucleus of neurons in the basal ganglia and cerebral cortex. This accumulation disrupts cellular function, leading to neuronal death and subsequent clinical manifestations of the disease. The expansion of the CAG repeat causes the protein to be longer than normal, and this longer protein binds to other cellular components, forming aggregates that are toxic to neurons. The severity and age of onset of Huntington disease are influenced by the length of the CAG repeat. Longer repeats are associated with earlier onset and more severe symptoms. The disease typically presents in adulthood, with symptoms including chorea, cognitive impairment, and psychiatric problems. The Huntington disease is a progressive, fatal condition with no cure. Currently, there is no known effective treatment that can halt or reverse the disease process.
for a protein huntingtin. The longer the repeat length (normal is 10–29 copies), the earlier the onset of the disease. Symptoms often begin insidiously in the third through the fifth decades and are characterized by progressive chorea, dystonia, eye movement abnormalities, behavioral changes, and progressive dementia. The choreatic movements may antedate or follow the dementia. Saccadic eye movements become slow and uncoordinated, and smooth pursuit eye movements are frequently disrupted by saccadic intrusions. An increased rate of suicide has been reported in patients with Huntington’s disease. Huntington’s disease-like 2 (HDL2) is a progressive autosomal dominant disease with marked clinical and pathologic similarity to Huntington disease [237,355]. The gene defect is a CTG/GAG expansion in a variably spliced exon of the junctophilin-3 gene. HDL2 can present with acanthocytosis, weight loss, and incoordination usually in the fourth decade. Patients may develop dystonia, chorea, rigidity, dysarthria, hyperreflexia, bradykinesia, tremor, psychiatric symptoms, and dementia. Other examples of autosomal dominant disorders associated with chorea include benign hereditary chorea (BHC) (onset in childhood), spinocerebellar ataxia 3 (SCA 3 or Machado-Joseph disease), and dentatorubropallidolysian atrophy (DRPLA).

Benign hereditary chorea (BHC) is an autosomal dominant disorder often presenting with childhood-onset chorea, no dementia, and little or no progression [116,186]. In some patients with infancy-onset BHC, treatment with levodopa improves gait abnormalities and chorea [19]. Another hereditary (autosomal recessive) cause of chorea is familial degeneration of the basal ganglia with acanthocytosis [39]. Less common causes of hereditary chorea include Wilson disease, Lesch-Nyhan syndrome, dopa-responsive dystonia (Segawa syndrome), Niemann-Pick disease, Pelizaeus-Merzbacher disease (sudanophilic leukodystrophy), Hallervorden-Spatz disease (pantothenate kinase-associated neurodegeneration or PKAN), ataxia telangiectasia, Leigh syndrome (subacute necrotizing encephalomyelopathy), tuberous sclerosis, mitochondrial encephalopathies, glutaric academia type 1, GM1 and GM2 gangliosidoses, neuroacanthocytosis, neuroferritinopathy, and the hereditary forms of paroxysmal choreoathetosis.

Neuroacanthocytosis (chorea-acanthocytosis)(NA) is a familial or nonfamilial multisystem progressive disorder in which chorea occurs in almost all cases [39,150]. The mean age of onset is 32 years (range 8–62 years) and patients demonstrate acanthocytosis with normal lipoproteins. Initial lip and tongue biting are followed by orolinguinal “eating” dystonia, motor and phonic tics, generalized chorea, akinetic-rigid features, vertical ophthalmoparesis, and seizures [23]. The orofacial-lingual involuntary dystonic movements and pseudo-bulbar disturbance commonly cause dysphagia and dysarthria. Cognitive impairment, psychiatric features, and organic personality changes are common. Other signs and symptoms include amyotrophy, axonal neuropathy, decreased or absent muscle stretch reflexes, and increased serum creatine kinase (CK) without myopathy [150]. The abnormal gene found in neuroacanthocytosis, on chromosome 9, is an evolutionarily conserved protein called chorein that is probably involved in protein sorting. Chorea may also be associated with neurogenic atrophy in cases of Fotopoulos syndrome [285].

Walker et al. reviewed the clinical and laboratory features of NA [354]. NA may be divided into three groups: (a) the “core” NA syndromes with neurodegeneration of the basal ganglia, comprising autosomal recessive chorea-acanthocytosis (ChAc) due to mutation of VPS13 A and X-linked McLeod syndrome (MLS) due to mutation of the XK gene on the X chromosome; (b) conditions with decreased lipoproteins, namely, abetalipoproteinemia (Bassen–Kornzweig syndrome) and hypobetalipoproteinemia, in which the hallmarks are peripheral neuropathy and ataxia due to dorsal column degeneration, but movement disorders are not present; and (c) conditions in which acanthocytosis is occasionally seen, such as PKAN and HDL2. In addition, acanthocytosis has been reported in mitochondrial disease. Chorea is the clinical hallmark of ChAc, MLS, HDL2, and PKAN, but a variety of movement disorders may be seen, including dystonia, less frequently parkinsonism, and rarely tourettism. In “atypical” cases of PKAN, less likely to be due to mutations of PKAN2, rigidity is more prominent. Severe orofacial dystonias with tongue and lip biting are typical of ChAc and are less suggestive of MLS or the other disorders. The tongue thrusting can cause marked problems with eating. Speech difficulties, specifically palilalia or dysarthria, are prominent features of PKAN. Patients with ChAc, MLS, or HDL2 often present with neuropsychiatric symptoms, prior to development of the movement disorder. Psychiatric symptoms may include bipolar disorder, schizoaffective disorder, obsessive-compulsive disorder, depression, anxiety, and agitation. Cognitive problems may range from minor abnormalities to dementia, with deficits primarily in memory and executive skills. Children with PKAN, especially the atypical form, may develop cognitive decline and various psychiatric abnormalities, and occasionally present with these features. Seizures are seen in 40% of patients with ChAc and 50% of patients with MLS. In the French Canadian ChAc population, this number is much
higher, with temporal lobe seizures often being the presenting feature, several years before the appearance of the movement disorder. Seizures have not been reported in HDL2 or PKAN. Oculographic studies in ChAc have revealed slowed and hypomet- ric saccades and frequent square-wave jerks and oscillations, similar to those seen in Huntington disease. The majority of patients with typical PKAN develop retinopathy, and various eye movement abnormalities have been documented, including saccadic pursuit, impaired saccades, abnormal vestibulo-ocular reflex, and pupillary responses. Autonomic nervous system dysfunction in ChAc may result in abnormal respiratory rhythm, orthostatic hypotension, and impaired digestive motility. Autonomic dysfunction has been reported in MLS with hypersalivation and excessive sweating. Cardiomyopathy and arrhythmias are observed in approximately 60% of MLS patients but are not typical for ChAc. Childhood onset, at ages younger than 10 years, is seen in typical cases with the PANK2 mutation. Presentation with atypical features and a slower disease progression may be seen in young adults. ChAc usually manifests clinically between ages 20 and 40 and rarely below age 20 or after 50. The youngest reported age was 16 years. MLS typically develops in men aged 40 to 60. Exceptionally, female mutation carriers manifest the disease. The age at onset of HDL2 is variable. As in HD, longer trinucleotide repeat expansions correlate with a younger age at onset. The minimum repeat expansion size for disease expression is reported to be 40, although a subject with 43 repeats appeared to be asymptomatic at age 65. All patients reported to date have been of African ancestry.

Neuroferritinopathy is a dominantly inherited, progressive, potentially treatable movement disorder caused by mutation of the ferritin light chain gene (FTL1) [70,81,263]. Patients may have low serum ferritin levels and brain histochemistry shows abnormal aggregates of ferritin and iron. Patients with this disorder present with variable symptoms, beginning in the third to sixth decade, including chorea, dystonia, or an akinetic-rigid syndrome. Features overlap with common extrapyramidal disorders: idiopathic torsion dystonia, idiopathic Parkinson disease and Huntington disease. In a study of a genetically homogeneous group of 41 subjects with the 460InsA mutation in FTL1, the mean age of onset was 39.4 years, beginning with chorea in 50%, focal lower limb dystonia in 42.5% and parkinsonism in 7.5% of the patients [70]. The majority reported a family history of a movement disorder often misdiagnosed as Huntington disease. The disease progressed relentlessly, becoming generalized over a 5- to 10-year period, eventually leading to aphasias, dysphagia and severe motor disability with subcortical/frontal cognitive dysfunction as a late feature. A characteristic action-specific facial dystonia was common (65%), and in 63% of patients there was asymmetry throughout the disease course. Serum ferritin levels were low in the majority of males and postmenopausal females, but within normal limits for premenopausal females. Isolated parkinsonism is unusual in neuroferritinopathy, and unlike Huntington’s disease, cognitive changes are absent or subtle in the early stages. Depressed serum ferritin is common and provides a useful screening test in routine practice [70].

**Dentatorubropallidolysian atrophy** is an autosomal dominant disorder characterized by chorea (choreoathetosis), ataxia, dementia, seizures, myoclonus, and dystonia [53,191,357]. The disorder is particularly prevalent in Japan. A possibly similar disorder has been described in the southern United States as the “Haw River” syndrome [56]. The usual age of onset is the fourth decade (range, first to seventh decade). An early onset subtype presents with a variable combination of myoclonus, epilepsy, and mental retardation, whereas a late-onset subtype is characterized by choreoathetosis, cerebellar ataxia, dystonia, rest and postural tremor, parkinsonism, and dementia. Pathologically patients demonstrate degeneration affecting the dentatorubral system, globus pallidus, subthalamus, and, to a lesser extent, the striatum, substantia nigra, inferior olive, and the thalamus.

**Familial dyskinesia and facial myokymia (FDFM)** is a disorder that has an early childhood or adolescent onset and is characterized by adventitious movements that sometimes appear choreiform and that are associated with perioral and periorbital myokymia [117]. The involuntary movements are paroxysmal at early age, increase in frequency and severity, and may become constant by the third decade. Thereafter, there is no further deterioration and there may even be improvement in old age. Although this familial entity may be confused with Huntington’s disease, there is no intellectual impairment and the lifespan is normal.

**Sydenham chorea** (rheumatic chorea or St Vitus dance), related to group A beta-hemolytic streptococcal infection, occurs in childhood and adolescence. Sydenham chorea is predominantly or exclusively unilateral (hemichorea) in about half of the cases, and it may result in an apparent flaccid paralysis (chorea mollis). HIV encephalitis may be a cause of chorea [130,271] as may tuberculous meningitis and herpes simplex encephalitis [239]. Chorea may also be caused by medications (e.g., l-dopa, neuroleptics, metoclopramide, anticonvulsants, propofol, pemoline, corticosteroids, lithium, digoxin) and drugs of abuse (e.g., cocaine-induced choreoathetosis or “crack dancing” [86]; amphetamines). Chorea may be associated with a variety of systemic disorders (e.g., systemic lupus
An overview of the numerous causes of chorea is outlined in Table 19.1.

**Tardive Dyskinesia and Other Tardive Syndromes**

*Tardive dyskinesia* and other tardive syndromes result from treatment with neuroleptic drugs and other dopamine receptor blocking agents, including drugs used for gastrointestinal problems (metoclopramide), depression (amoxapine, perphenazine/ amitriptyline), and cough (promethazine). Onset after exposure of less than 3 months is possible but uncommon [83]. The abnormal involuntary movements can appear when the patient is taking the drug or after stopping the drug and may persist and can even remain permanently. Withdrawing the offending drug often exacerbates the severity of the movements, whereas increasing the dosage often ameliorates the movements.

A variety of movement abnormalities may occur as tardive syndromes. The most common *tardive dyskinesia* pattern is repetitive, almost rhythmic movements that can be labeled stereotypic and most often occur in the oral-lingual-buccal area. These oral-buccal-lingual dyskinesias usually present as complex chewing movements often associated with occasional popping out of the tongue and with writhing movements of the tongue at rest in the mouth [165]. Other parts of the body, such as the hands, feet, and trunk, may also develop rhythmic movements and the abdominal and pelvic muscles may be affected, resulting in truncal or pelvic rocking or thrusting movements. Respiratory dyskinesias can result in involuntary chest and diaphragmatic movements [112]. Tardive dyskinesia is often accompanied by a feeling of unpleasant inner restlessness (*akathisia*) that can be whole body restlessness or uncomfortable sensations in a specific part of the body [40,55]. The third most common movement pattern is *tardive dystonia*, which may be accompanied by tardive akathisia or tardive dyskinesia [54,55,183,345]. With tardive dystonia, the abnormal movements are more sustained and sometimes torsional in nature. Facial dystonia may occur in the form of blepharospasm or facial grimacing, whereas involvement of the mandible can result in tonic jaw deviation, jaw protrusion, sustained opening and closing of the jaw, or bruxism. Dystonic posturing of the neck is also common, particularly retrocollis [178]. Tardive dystonia can occur at all ages, whereas classic tardive dyskinesia is more common in the elderly. Other abnormal movements that may occur less commonly as tardive syndromes include myoclonus, tremor, oculogyric crisis, and tics.
### TABLE 19.1 Causes of Chorea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inherited disorders</th>
<th>Autosomal dominant</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Huntington disease</td>
<td>Acquired hepatocerebral degeneration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huntington disease-like 2</td>
<td>Nutritional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinocerebellar ataxias, including SCA 3, Machado-Joseph disease, and dentato-rubro-pallidoluysian atrophy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuroferritinopathy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benign hereditary chorea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal recessive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aminoacidopathies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ataxia telangiectasia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basal ganglia calcification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hallervorden-Spatz disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Pantothenate kinase-associated neurodegeneration)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lesch-Nyhan syndrome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lysosomal disorders</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuroacanthocytosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpura</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubrous sclerosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urea cycle disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wilson disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leigh syndrome (subacute necrotizing encephalomyelitis)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mitochondrial disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Familial dyskinesia and facial myokymia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug induced</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuroleptics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propofol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticonvulsants</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiparkinsonian medications</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral contraceptives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amphetamines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tricyclic antidepressants</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fenfluramine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lithium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digoxin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxic/metabolic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anaesthesia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon monoxide poisoning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cocaine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heavy metal poisoning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperthyroidism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoparathyroidism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Orofacial Dyskinesia**

Orofacial dyskinesias are abnormal involuntary movements of the facial musculature, lips, and tongue that may appear spontaneously, especially in elderly edentulous patients, or in Huntington disease, Sydenham chorea, or Wilson disease. Their occurrence after prolonged neuroleptic therapy (tardive dyskinesia) favors an etiology involving denervation supersensitivity of the striatum. A unilateral striatonigral lesion may produce bilateral orofacial-lingual dyskinesia plus contralateral hemidystonia, suggesting that the basal ganglia of one hemisphere may exert bilateral orofacial-lingual motor control. The differential diagnosis of orofacial dyskinesia is outlined in Table 19.2.
Abnormal movements of the basal ganglia may also result from lesions in the caudate, putamen, globus pallidus, precentral gyrus, or thalamic nuclei [201,260]. The simultaneous occurrence of hemiballismus with acute ipsilateral central pain has been described after anterior parietal artery stroke [304]. Hemiballismus/hemichorea has been described in patients with nonketotic hyperglycemia with magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) studies revealing high signal intensity in the contralateral striatum [209]. Hemiballismus is most commonly caused by a discrete ischemic or hemorrhagic vascular lesion of the subthalamus [351]. It is uncertain whether the occluded vessels arise from the posterior thalamoperforating, posterior communicating, or anterior choroidal arteries [120]. Hemiballismus has also been noted with tumors, arteriovenous malformations, encephalitis, abscess, systemic lupus erythematosus, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), cysticercosis, head trauma, subdural hematoma, tuberculous meningitis, demyelination, tuberous sclerosis, Sydenham chorea, nonketotic hyperglycemia, basal ganglia calcifications, multiple systems atrophy (MSA), as a side effect of levodopa therapy, oral contraceptives, or after surgery for advanced Parkinson disease (PD) [67,102,140,260,295,351]. Bilateral ballism has been described after bilateral basal ganglia hemorrhagic infarcts involving the caudate and putamen, with multiple sclerosis, with disseminated intravascular cancer, with systemic lupus erythematosus, after ventriculoperitoneal shunting, with nonketotic hyperglycemia, with phenytoin intoxication, and

### Abdominal Dyskinesias

*Abdominal dyskinesias* are continuous movements of the abdominal wall or sometimes the diaphragm [161,195]. Their sinuous, rhythmic nature has led to them being called *belly dancer's dyskinesia*. Abdominal dyskinesia may occur after abdominal trauma (e.g., laparotomy) in some cases and may be associated with abdominal myoclonus. These dyskinesias may also occur as a tardive syndrome.

### Ballismus

*Ballismus* [185,230,351] is an involuntary hyperkinesia often confined to one half of the body (hemiballismus), but it may involve a single extremity (monoballismus) or, exceptionally, both halves of the body (paraballismus or biballismus). Hemiballismus is characterized by the occurrence of sudden, paroxysmal, large-amplitude, flinging, throwing movements of the arm and leg contralateral to a lesion in or near the subthalamic nucleus. These abnormal movements are often continuous during wakefulness and cease with sleep. Hemiballismus is often associated with decreased muscle tone in the involved extremities.

Hemiballismus usually occurs with lesions that affect the contralateral subthalamic nucleus of Luys [230] or disrupt the afferent or efferent connections of this structure. Transient hemiballismus/hemichorea has been described with an ischemic lesion of the ipsilateral subthalamic nucleus [82]. Hemiballismus may also result from lesions in the caudate, putamen, globus pallidus, precentral gyrus, or thalamic nuclei [201,260]. The simultaneous occurrence of hemiballismus with acute ipsilateral central pain has been described after anterior parietal artery stroke [304]. Hemiballismus/hemichorea has been described in patients with nonketotic hyperglycemia with magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) studies revealing high signal intensity in the contralateral striatum [209]. Hemiballismus is most commonly caused by a discrete ischemic or hemorrhagic vascular lesion of the subthalamus [351]. It is uncertain whether the occluded vessels arise from the posterior thalamoperforating, posterior communicating, or anterior choroidal arteries [120]. Hemiballismus has also been noted with tumors, arteriovenous malformations, encephalitis, abscess, systemic lupus erythematosus, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), cysticercosis, head trauma, subdural hematoma, tuberculous meningitis, demyelination, tuberous sclerosis, Sydenham chorea, nonketotic hyperglycemia, basal ganglia calcifications, multiple systems atrophy (MSA), as a side effect of levodopa therapy, oral contraceptives, or after surgery for advanced Parkinson disease (PD) [67,102,140,260,295,351]. Bilateral ballism has been described after bilateral basal ganglia hemorrhagic infarcts involving the caudate and putamen, with multiple sclerosis, with disseminated intravascular cancer, with systemic lupus erythematosus, after ventriculoperitoneal shunting, with nonketotic hyperglycemia, with phenytoin intoxication, and

### Table 19.2: Differential Diagnosis of Orofacial Dyskinesia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Items</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chorea</td>
<td>1. Postencephalitic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a. Drug induced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>i. Dopamine receptor blockers (classic tardive dyskinesia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ii. Levodopa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iii. Anticholinergic drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iv. Phenytoin intoxication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>v. Antihistamines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vi. Tricyclic antidepressants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b. Other secondary dystonias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c. Huntington disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>d. Hepatocerebral degeneration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e. Cerebellar infarction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>f. Edentulous malocclusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>g. Idiopathic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dystonia</td>
<td>2. Idiopathic cranial dystonia (Meige syndrome)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a. Symptomatic dystonias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>i. Dopamine receptor antagonists (acute dystonia, tardive dystonia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ii. Other secondary dystonias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b. Drug induced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>i. Dopamine receptor blockers (classic tardive dyskinesia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ii. Levodopa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iii. Anticholinergic drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>iv. Phenytoin intoxication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>v. Antihistamines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vi. Tricyclic antidepressants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c. Huntington disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>d. Hepatocerebral degeneration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e. Cerebellar infarction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>f. Edentulous malocclusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>g. Idiopathic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

with dopaminergic drug-induced dyskinesia in PD [222,287].

**Athetosis**

*Athetosis* refers to a feeling of inner restlessness that is often relieved by movement [40,134]. The motor activity is, therefore, described by patients as a voluntary effort to relieve uncomfortable sensations, although in severe cases the need for motor activity is beyond control. Akathetic movements are typically complex and stereotyped with movements involving “squirming” in a chair, repetitive shifting of weight, crossing and uncrossing the legs, inability to remain seated, pacing, rocking the trunk, and even moaning, humming, or groaning. Other movement disorders associated with moaning sounds or humming include tics, oromandibular dystonia, Huntington's disease, and parkinsonism [134,262]. A specific body part may be affected, with relief of the perceived discomfort (burning or pain) attainable by movement. Common sites for the discomfort are the mouth and vagina [121].

Akathisia is most often due to medications, especially agents that block dopamine receptors (e.g., neuroleptics, antiepileptics, tetrabenazine, reserpine). It can occur with initiation of drug treatment (acute akathisia), subsequently with the emergence of drug-induced parkinsonism, or after chronic treatment (tardive akathisia), with the latter usually made worse by drug withdrawal. Akathisia may also be present in patients with parkinsonism.

A distinct clinical syndrome referred to as hypotensive akathisia has been described in patients with autonomic failure who manifest habitual, voluntary, transiently suppressible, yet irresistible leg movements occurring only in the sitting position [69]. Repetitive leg crossing, muscle tensing, foot twirling or wiggling, or heel or toe tapping while sitting may have compensated for orthostatic hypotension and raised systolic and diastolic blood pressure.

**Athetosis**

*Athetosis* is characterized by slow, uncoordinated, twisting, writhing, involuntary movements of wide amplitude. These movements predominantly involve the distal appendicular musculature, especially the upper extremities, although facial and axial muscles may also be involved.

Athetoid movements may be unilateral (*hemiathe*thosis) or bilateral (*double athetosis*) and may interfere considerably with activities of daily living. These movements are often associated with episodic muscular hypertonia affecting the axial and appendicular muscles. The differentiation of athetosis from chorea and dystonia may at times be difficult because it is not uncommon to see a patient with “mixed” dyskinesias (i.e., *choreoathetosis*).

Athetosis is usually noted with degenerative disorders (e.g., Wilson’s disease, kernicterus, status marmoratus, perinatal anoxia) involving widespread cerebral structures, including the globus pallidus, subthalamus, red nucleus, and midbrain tegmentum. A focal lesion (vascular or neoplasm) that damages the striatum but spares the motor cortex and its efferents may rarely cause athetosis.

Athetoid movements must be differentiated from “pseudoathetoid” movements, which are noted on attempts to maintain posture (e.g., extending the arms) and are due to faulty proprioception (as in lesions affecting the large peripheral nerve fibers, the dorsal root ganglia, the posterior columns and their connections, or the parietal lobe) [324].

**Dystonia**

*Dystonia* is characterized by slow, long-sustained, contorting, involuntary movements and postures involving proximal appendicular and axial muscles. The dystonic movements are typically slow and “wrapping” (*athetodic dystonia*), although patients may sporadically demonstrate superimposed, rapid, involuntary jerks termed *dystonic spasms* or *myoclonic dystonia*. The dystonic posturing results in disabling and abnormal attitudes (*dystonic postures*) of the affected body parts (e.g., torticollis, tortipelvis, lordotic or scoliotic postures, inversion of the hands and forearms, equinovalvar deformity) [196]. Therefore, the characteristic features of dystonia include: (a) excessive co-contraction of antagonist muscles during voluntary movement, (b) overflow of contraction to remote muscles not normally employed in voluntary movement, and (c) spontaneous spasms of co-contraction [241]. Dystonia can also be associated with fast, rhythmic, tremulous movements (dystonic tremor) [173,302]. Dystonic tremor of the hand has been described after contralateral anterior thalamic infarction [71]. Oculogyric crisis, thought to represent dystonia of the ocular muscles, has been described with the use of neuroleptics, neuroleptic malignant syndrome, Wilson disease, encephalitis lethargica, organophosphate poisoning, and with lesions of the lentiform nuclei [179].

Dystonia may be generalized and idiopathic (dystonia musculorum deformans) or symptomatic (drug-induced, Wilson disease, Menkes disease, metachromatic leukodystrophy, Lesch-Nyhan disease, homocystinuria, hexosaminidase A and B deficiencies, progressive supranuclear palsy (PSP), cortico-basal ganglionic degeneration (CBGD), G<sub>440</sub> and G<sub>542</sub> gangliosidosis), or it may be segmental, affecting only one body part, and idiopathic (spasmodic
occurred with contralateral midbrain lesions [322]. Paroxysmal hemidystonia may follow lesions of the contralateral caudal nuclei, whereas the ventral oral anterior and ventral nuclei (which receive pallidal efferents) were located in the ventral intermediate and ventral somatotopical distribution. Lesions of the thalamus projecting by way of the globus pallidus to the thalamus may follow lesions of the thalamus itself or of the striatum, or a combination of these structures [75, 128, 245, 269, 371]. It may be due to abnormal input from the thalamus to the premotor cortex due to a lesion of the thalamus itself or of the striatum projecting by way of the globus pallidus to the thalamus [245]. The most common etiologies of hemidystonia are caused by deficiency of the purine salvage enzyme hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (HPRT) [175]. Affected individuals exhibit overproduction of uric acid, along with a characteristic neurobehavioral syndrome that includes mental retardation, recurrent self-injurious behavior and motor disability. In one review of this syndrome, 44 patients ranging from 2 to 38 years presented a characteristic motor syndrome that involved severe action dystonia superimposed on baseline hypotonia [175]. Although some patients also displayed other extrapyramidal or pyramidal signs, these were always less prominent than dystonia.

Hemidystonia may follow lesions of the contralateral caudate, lentiform nucleus (especially the putamen), or thalamus, or a combination of these structures [75, 128, 245, 269, 371]. It may be due to abnormal input from the thalamus to the premotor cortex due to lesions either of the thalamus itself or of the striatum projecting by way of the globus pallidus to the thalamus [245]. The most common etiologies of hemidystonia include stroke, trauma, and perinatal injury [75]. In one study, lesions associated with dystonic spasms or myoclonic dystonia tended to be located in the striatopallidal complex or thalamus contralateral to the dystonia [213]. Lesions of the striatopallidal complex involved the putamen posterior to the anterior commissure and extended variably into the dorsolateral caudate nucleus, the posterior limb of the internal capsule, or the lateral segment of the globus pallidus. These lesions were centered in the “sensorimotor” part of the striatopallidal complex with a trend toward a somatotopical distribution. Lesions of the thalamus were located in the ventral intermediate and ventral caudal nuclei, whereas the ventral oral anterior and posterior nuclei (which receive pallidal efferents) are largely spared [213]. Paroxysmal hemidystonia may occur with contralateral midbrain lesions [322].

Beside focal lesions of the basal ganglia and thalamus, brainstem lesions may also be associated with dystonia [223]. Four patients were reported with acquired dystonia following brainstem lesions [223]. Three patients suffered segmental pontomesencephalic hemorrhage and one patient diffuse axonal injury secondary to severe craniocerebral trauma. Dystonia developed with a delay of 1 to 14 months, at a mean delay of 6 months. All patients presented with hemidystonia combined with cervical dystonia, and two patients had craniofacial dystonia in addition. Three patients had postural or kinetic tremors. Dystonia was persistent in three patients, and improved gradually in one. Overall, the phenomenology of secondary dystonia due to pontomesencephalic lesions is similar to that caused by basal ganglia or thalamic lesions. Structures involved include the pontomesencephalic tegmentum and the superior cerebellar peduncles [223].

Hemidystonia-hemiatrophy syndrome is a very disabling neurological condition similar to the hemiparkinsonism-hemiatrophy syndrome [365]. In a study of 26 patients (14 female) with a mean age at onset of hemidystonia at 14.9 years (1–46 years) the mean latency from the onset of hemiparesis to the onset of hemidystonia was 14.7 years (2 weeks–46 years) [365]. All patients with hemiparesis had marked improvement in their weakness prior to the onset of hemidystonia. Common causes leading to hemiparesis and subsequent hemidystonia were birth or perinatal complications (N = 13) and stroke (N = 10). Hemidystonia-hemiatrophy is usually associated with static encephalopathy originating at very young age, but the syndrome may also represent delayed sequelae of a stroke or brain injury [365].

Primary dystonias may be of genetic origin. Hereditary childhood-onset dystonia (idiopathic torsion dystonia, DYT1) most commonly starts between age 6 and 12 years with dystonia of the foot while walking. The illness is slowly progressive and the dystonia becomes generalized. The disorder is usually autosomal dominant with reduced penetrance. The abnormal gene, located on chromosome 9q, produces a protein called torsin A with unknown function [283]. Other autosomal dominant dystonias include DYT4, DYT6, DYT7, and DYT13 [90]. DOPA-responsive dystonia (Segawa variant or hereditary progressive dystonia) is an autosomal dominant disorder linked to chromosome 14q22.1-q22.2. This disorder typically presents in childhood (age 5–6 years) with dystonic movements and postures that are remarkably responsive to low doses of levodopa [152, 321]. These children may also have features of parkinsonism, lower extremity hyperreflexia, and bilateral extensor plantar responses often misdiagnosed as “cerebral palsy.” The dystonic movements and postures may show marked
diurnal variations, being more pronounced in the late afternoon, evening, and night. The etiology for the disorder is most commonly a mutation in the GTP cyclohydrolase I gene, which leads to a deficiency in the production of dopamine [160]. Since the gene has been identified, the clinical spectrum of the disorder has been expanded to include adult-onset parkinsonism, oromandibular dystonia, spontaneously remitting dystonia, spasticity with developmental delay mimicking cerebral palsy, and generalized hypotonia with proximal weakness [90]. Patients with autosomal dominant Segawa syndrome due to GTP cyclohydrolase deficiency also may manifest late-presenting mild dopa-responsive symptoms of rigidity, frequent falls, and tendonitis [346]. Major depressive disorders, often recurrent, obsessive-compulsive disorder, and sleep disorders, including difficulty in sleep onset and maintenance, excessive sleepiness, and frequent nightmares, may also occur in these patients [346]. Cerebellar signs and scoliosis has also been described in some patients with dopa-responsive dystonia [64].

DYT14 is a genetic defect that can also lead to dopa-responsive dystonia [146]. Myoclonic dystonia (DYT11) is an autosomal dominant syndrome where symptoms include dystonic myoclonus as well as more prolonged spasms [152,182]. The clinical manifestations generally occur in the first or second decade of life. In this setting, myoclonus is usually the main and most disabling feature; it predominates in the arms and axial muscles and is often alcohol-responsive. Dystonia is usually mild and often manifests as cervical dystonia or writer’s cramp. Tremor, similar to essential tremor or writer’s cramp, may also be present. There is often a marked response to ethanol. In many families, the genetic abnormality has been identified to be in the epsilon-sarcoglycan [20,299]. There is an X-genetic abnormality has been identified to be in the epsilon-sarcoglycan [20,299]. There is an X-genetic abnormality has been identified to be in the epsilon-sarcoglycan [20,299]. There is an X-genetic abnormality has been identified to be in the epsilon-sarcoglycan [20,299].

A classification of dystonias is outlined in Table 19.3.

**Torticollis**

Torticollis (idiopathic cervical dystonia, wryneck, nuchal dystonia) [11,45,87,170,204,229] is a hyperkinesia
TABLE 19.3  Classification of Dystonias

1. Primary dystonias

A. Sporadic—Usually adult-onset focal dystonia
   (e.g., torticollis)
B. Genetic dystonias (Locus—Designation—Mode of Inheritance)
   i. DYT1/TOR1—Early onset primary torsion dystonia, Oppenheim’s dystonia—AD
   ii. DYT2—Autosomal recessive primary torsion dystonia—AR
   iii. DYT3—X-linked dystonia parkinsonism, Luhtag—X-linked
   iv. DYT4—Non-DYT1 primary torsion dystonia, predominant whispering dysphonia—AD
   v. DYT5/GCH1—Dopa-responsive dystonia, Segawa syndrome—AD
   vi. DYT5—Dopa-responsive dystonia—AR
   vii. DYT6—Adolescent onset primary torsion dystonia of mixed type, German-Mennonite origin—AD
   viii. DYT7—Adult-onset focal primary torsion dystonia—AD
   ix. DYT8/PNKD—Paroxysmal dystonic choreoathetosis/nonkinesigenic dyskinesia—AD
   x. DYT9/CSE—Paroxysmal choreoathetosis with episodic ataxia and spasticity—AD
   xi. DYT11—Myoclonus dystonia—AD
   xii. DYT12—Rapid-onset dystonia-parkinsonism—AD
   xiii. DYT13—Early and late-onset focal or segmental dystonia—AD
   xiv. DYT14—Dopa-responsive dystonia—AD
   xv. DYT15—Myoclonus dystonia—AD

2. Heredo-degenerative diseases (some overlap with genetic dystonias)

A. X-linked dystonia
   i. Luhtag (X-linked dystonia-parkinsonism)
B. Autosomal dominant
   i. Huntington disease (especially childhood form)
   ii. Spinocerebellar degenerations
   iii. Dentato-rubral-pallidoluysian atrophy
   iv. Hereditary spastic paraplegia with dystonia
   v. Rapid-onset dystonia-parkinsonism
   vi. Neuroferritinopathy
   vii. Autosomal dominant dystonia-plus with cerebral calcifications
C. Autosomal recessive
   i. Wilson disease
   ii. Ataxia telangiectasia
   iii. Neurodegeneration with brain iron accumulation type 1
   iv. Hallervorden-Spatz disease (PANK 2-associated neurodegeneration)
   v. HARP syndrome (hypohematoproteinemia, acanthocytosis, retinitis pigmentosa, and pallidal degeneration)
   vi. Familial dystonia with cerebellar atrophy
   († sex-linked inheritance also possible)
   vii. Woodhouse Sakati syndrome

3. Neurometabolic disorders

A. Lipid disorders
   i. Metachromatic leukodystrophy
   ii. Niemann-Pick type C
   iii. Hexosaminidase A and B deficiency
   iv. GM1 Gangliosidosis
   v. GM2 Gangliosidosis
B. Amino acid disorders
   i. Glutaric acidemia
   ii. Methylmalonic acidemia
C. Other enzyme deficiencies and metabolic disorders
   i. Neuroacanthocytosis
   ii. Rett syndrome
   iii. Lesch-Nyhan syndrome
   iv. Acruloplasminemia
   v. Tyrosine hydroxylase deficiency
   vi. Aromatic amino acid decarboxylase deficiency
D. Mitochondrial disease
   i. Leigh syndrome

4. Acquired processes

A. Infection
   i. Viral encephalitis
   ii. Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease
   iii. Encephalitis lethargica
   iv. Reye syndrome
   v. Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis
   vi. Human immunodeficiency virus infection
B. Drugs and toxins
   i. Levodopa and dopamine agonists
   ii. Anticonvulsants
   iii. Flecainide
   iv. Ergotamines
   v. Carbon monoxide poisoning
   vi. Manganese toxicity
C. Endocrine
   i. Hypoparathyroidism
D. Pernatal
   i. Kernicterus
   ii. Athetoid cerebral palsy
   iii. Delayed-onset dystonia with cerebral palsy
E. Miscellaneous
   i. Cerebral infarction or hemorrhage, including posthemiplegic dystonia
   ii. Progressive supranuclear palsy
   iii. Cortical-basal ganglionic degeneration
   iv. Multiple sclerosis
   v. Paraneoplastic brainstem encephalitis
   vi. Head trauma
   vii. Peripheral limb trauma
   viii. Post surgery (e.g., thalamotomy)
ix. Electrical injury
F. Psychogenic dystonia

AD = autosomal dominant; AR = autosomal recessive.
slightly more frequent in women and characterized by tonic or clonic contraction of the neck musculature, especially the sternocleidomastoid and trapezius muscles. This type of cervical dystonia results in a more or less stereotyped fixed or spasmodic deviation of the head into an anomalous position with the chin twisted to one side or the head displaced backward (retrocollis) or forward (anterocollis) in about a quarter of the patients, laterally (laterocollis) in half of them, or, most often, in a combination of these abnormal postures. By convention, spasmodic torticollis is named by the sternocleidomastoid muscle that contracts. Spasmodic torticollis is usually unilateral, ceases during sleep, and increases with anxiety and stress. Often, the abnormal movement can be relieved by sensory tricks, such as a light touch on the face (the geste antagoniste). Other effective maneuvers include leaning against a high-backed chair, placing something into the mouth, or pulling the hair [87]. Local pain is reported by most patients. About a third of them have scoliosis or a secondary cervical radiculopathy. In addition to cervical dystonia, approximately 10% to 20% of these patients have oral, mandibular, or hand-arm dystonia or blepharospasm [87,170]. Tremor, particularly involving the head, is present in approximately 60% of the patients [170].

Torticollis may be congenital, tardive, secondary to acquired cervical spine abnormalities (e.g., cervical spondylodisc, subluxation of the cervical spine, inflammatory disorders of the cervical spine), or due to upper spinal cord tumor with syringomyelia [184]. Posttraumatic cervical dystonia may develop immediately after relatively mild trauma to the neck [142]. Cervical dystonia may also rarely occur as a sign of a posterior fossa tumor and retrocollis has been described with bilateral putaminal hemorrhages [326]. Focal dystonia may also occur with lesions of the lenticular and caudate nuclei, especially infarcts and tumors [199]. Familial dopa-responsive cervical dystonia has been described and a trial of levodopa should be considered in patients with young-onset cervical dystonia [316]. Transient cervical dystonia may rarely occur during pregnancy (dystonia gravidarum) [76,218]. Cervical dystonia occurs, however, most often as an extrapyramidal disorder of unknown etiology and pathologic substrate (spasmodic torticollis or idiopathic cervical dystonia) and is the most common form of adult-onset focal dystonia [87].

**WRITER’S CRAMP, MUSICIAN’S DYSTONIA, THE YIPS, AND OTHER FOCAL DYSTONIAS**

Writer’s cramp (graphospasm) [174,177,325] is a segmental dystonia characterized by spasms, cramps, aches, and occasional tremors of the hand muscles induced by writing. Examination reveals no evidence of oromandibular, axial, or appendicular dystonia, blepharospasm, or torticollis. Musician’s dystonia is a focal task-specific dystonia induced only by playing certain musical instruments [166,303,319]. Focal hand dystonia has been suggested to be a maladaptive response of the brain to repetitive performance of stereotyped and attention-demanding hand movements [303]. However, not all patients with focal hand dystonia have a strict history of excessive hand use; for example, patients with musician’s dystonia spend many hours per day with their attention focused on instrumental practice, whereas many patients with writer’s cramp have a history of average hand use. Mirror dystonia (dystonia occurring in the dominant hand when writing with the other hand) was noted in 29 of 65 patients with writer’s cramp in one study [174]. The etiology and pathologic substrate are unknown. Some authors have suggested that this dystonia may be due to an abnormality of the contralateral primary and secondary supplementary motor areas resulting in dysfunction in motor programming [100]. Structural abnormalities in brain structures interconnected within the sensorimotor network, including the cerebellum and the cortical representation of the affected hand, have been demonstrated in patients with writer’s cramp [94]. These abnormalities may be related to the pathophysiology of writer’s cramp, questioning the role of the cerebellum, or maladaptive plasticity in a task-related dystonia [94].

In a case-control study of risk factors for writer’s cramp in 104 consecutive patients, cases had a college or university degree more frequently than controls [307]. The risk of writer’s cramp increased with the time spent writing each day and was also associated with an abrupt increase in the writing time during the year before onset. Head trauma with loss of consciousness and myopia were both associated with the condition but it was not significantly associated with peripheral trauma, left-handedness, constrained writing, writing in stressful situations or the choice of writing tool. The dose–effect relationship between writer’s cramp and the time spent handwriting each day, and the additional burden of acute triggers such as an abrupt increase in the writing time in the year before onset, suggest that writer’s cramp in a disruptive phenomenon in predisposed subjects [307].

Up to 30% of golfers develop the yips, an inability to complete a golf stroke, most often affecting short putts, which worsens with anxiety [2,251]. Yips may be organic (a task-specific dystonia) or psychological (anxiety or “choking”). The finding that yips-affected golfers often have co-contraction of wrist flexors and extensors suggests that in many individuals this disorder is a task-specific dystonia [2].
tennis dystonia is another form of task-specific dystonia [212].

Patients have been described who presented with the acute onset of a movement disorder characterized by a tonic, sustained, lateral and outward protrusion of one half of the lower lip [188]. The movement disorder was present at rest, whereas in some patients, it was also present during speech. In all cases, the abnormal lip posture could be suppressed voluntarily and spontaneous remissions were frequent. This may well represent a focal lip dystonia.

Intermittent or sustained severe involuntary tongue protrusion dystonia may cause speech, swallowing, and breathing difficulties that can be severe enough to be life threatening [313]. Causes include neuroacanthocytosis, pantothenate kinase-associated neurodegeneration, Lesch-Nyhan syndrome, and postanoxic and tardive dystonia. Oromandibular dystonia may involve the lateral pterygoid muscles causing incapacitating protrusive and lateral jaw movements and displacements [265].

Frucht reported 89 musicians with focal task-specific dystonia of the embouchure (ED), the muscles of the lower face, jaw, and tongue used to control the flow of air into the mouthpiece of a woodwind or brass instrument [129]. Symptoms of ED began at an average age of 36, were typically painless, and only rarely were preceded by trauma. Specific musical techniques commonly triggered dystonia, often in one instrumental register. Task-specific embouchure tremor and lip-pulling ED phenotypes were common among high-register brass players (trumpet and French horn), whereas lip-locking occurred exclusively in low-register brass players (trombone and tuba). Jaw and tongue ED phenotypes occurred predominantly in woodwind players, and once present, frequently spread to speaking or eating. Six percent of all ED patients had coincident writer’s cramp, suggesting a possible genetic predisposition to develop dystonia. Once present, symptoms of ED did not remit and often disrupted careers and livelihoods [129].

A middle cerebral artery distribution stroke may cause contralateral hand weakness and gradually severe dystonia emerging in the hand with spreading of fingers in a “starfish” pattern (“starfish hand”), likely due to caudate head involvement by the stroke [157].

The lower extremity is affected infrequently in adult-onset primary dystonia in contrast to childhood-onset dystonia, which typically begins in the foot. When dystonia affects the foot in an adult, it is usually on a secondary basis. Schneider et al. reviewed the findings on 17 patients (11 women, 6 men; average age of onset 48.4 years; average time to diagnosis 2.7 years) with adult-onset primary foot dystonia [315]. The most common patterns were plantar flexion of all toes and inversion of the foot, typically activated with standing or walking.

Another form of adult-onset focal dystonia occurs in athletes (runner’s dystonia) and is often wrongly attributed to an orthopedic disorder [369]. These patients develop proximal dystonia of one leg during long-distance running. The clinical features of dystonia in these long-distance runners overlap with those of more recognizable forms of focal dystonia including relief with sensory or motor “tricks”. These patients differed from the typical childhood-onset leg dystonia, such as the DYT1 dystonia, in that there is no family history of dystonia and the leg dystonia remains focal without spreading to other body parts [369].

BLEPHAROSPASM

Blepharospasm is characterized by intermittent or sustained spontaneous forceful eye closure that may render the patient functionally blind [60,168]. These movements may occur in patients with parkinsonism or torsion dystonia or as a side effect of neuroleptic drugs. Blepharospasm has been described with dorsomedial pontine tegmental or upper brainstem lesions [12,199]. Blepharospasm is also seen with oromandibular dystonia, as in Meige syndrome (idiopathic blepharospasm-oromandibular dystonia) [17,168,240,344], a condition probably related to dopaminergic predominance in the striatum.

SPASMODIC DYSPHONIA

Spasmodic dysphonia (SD) [10,119,250,289] or laryngeal dystonia is a disorder of unknown etiology characterized by a tremulous, forced voice with a low tone and volume and often associated with facial grimacing. Three subtypes of SD are described by perceptual and acoustic vocal characteristics: adductor, abductor, and mixed [13–16,58]. Adductor SD is associated with involuntary hyperadduction of the vocal folds, resulting in a strained or strangled voice quality. Abductor SD is characterized by involuntary abductions of the vocal folds, resulting in intermittent bursts of breathy phonation. Mixed SD is applied to patients who exhibit a full range of these vocal characteristics. Pitch breaks, hoarseness, limited intensity range, and poor intensity control are present in all three types [289]. It has been proposed that SD is a continuum disorder in which both types of spasms occur with differing frequencies [58].

Patients with SD often have abnormal neurologic examinations, including abnormal rapid alternating movements and tremor, including voice tremor [14–16,289]. Some authors view SD as an incomplete expression of Meige syndrome [168], as an adult-onset focal dystonia [232], or as an abnormality of the motor control system that includes the globus pallidus, putamen, thalamus, and supplementary motor area [119,210,250,289].
Primary craniocervical dystonia may present as a respiratory emergency [286]. A similar phenomenon has been reported in a subtype of isolated laryngeal dystonia named spasmodic laryngeal dyspnea [373]. This disorder differs from spasmodic dysphonia in that symptoms are dependent on respiration rather than phonation. In these cases, dyspnea is caused by an intermittent glottic and supraglottic airway obstruction from both laryngeal and supralaryngeal/pharyngeal muscle spasms. Acute laryngeal dystonia has been identified as a life-threatening side effect of classic antipsychotics [74].

Paroxysmal Dyskinesias

Paroxysmal dyskinesias are a heterogeneous group of disorders that have in common sudden abnormal involuntary movements out of a background of normal motor behavior. The abnormal movements may be choreic, ballistic, dystonic, or a combination of these. They consist of episodic attacks of involuntary movements, may be classified according to phenomenology, duration of attacks, and etiology [34,51,95,113,176,205], and include the following:

1. Paroxysmal kinesigenic dyskinesia (PKD) (paroxysmal kinesigenic choreoathetosis). In these patients, attacks of abnormal involuntary movements (typically lasting seconds to minutes) occur abruptly after a sudden voluntary movement or startled. Hyperventilation may also induce an episode. Ballism, dystonic postures, chorea, athetosis, or any combination of these make up the movements, which are occasionally preceded by paresthesias, tenseness, or crawling sensations. The attacks may cause falls and may affect speech. The abnormal movements are easily habituated and therefore fail to recur if the sudden movement is immediately repeated. Although this abnormality is usually idiopathic [51], it may occur on a hereditary basis and has also been described with multiple sclerosis, head trauma, PSP, putaminal/thalamic infarction, hypoparathyroidism with basal ganglia calcifications, HIV infection, and hyperglycemia with lenticular vascular malformation [41,264,300]. Families with members that have PKD may have other members with infantile convulsions, suggesting a shared PKD/infantile convulsions gene [337]. Approximately 90% of patients improve with medications, especially anticonvulsants.

Bruno et al. reviewed the clinical features of 121 affected individuals with a presumptive diagnosis of idiopathic PKD [51]. The majority (79%) of affected subjects had a distinctive homogeneous phenotype. The authors propose the following diagnostic criteria for idiopathic PKD based on this phenotype: identified trigger for the attacks (sudden movements), short duration of attacks (<1 minute), lack of loss of consciousness or pain during attacks, antiepileptic drug responsiveness, exclusion of other organic diseases, and age at onset between 1 and 20 years if there is no family history (age at onset may be applied less stringently in those with family history). In comparing familial and sporadic cases, sporadic cases were more frequently male, and infantile convulsions were more common in the familial kindreds. Females had a higher remission rate than males. An infantile-onset group with a different set of characteristics was identified. A clear kinesigenic trigger was not elicited in all cases, antiepileptic response was not universal, and some infants had attacks while asleep.

2. Paroxysmal nonkinesigenic dyskinesia (paroxysmal dystonic choreoathetosis). With this entity, attacks of involuntary movements (usually lasting minutes to hours) occur spontaneously and consist of combinations of dystonic posturing, chorea, athetosis, and ballism [172]. Speech is often affected and attacks may be preceded by paresthesias, stiffness, or crawling sensations. These attacks may occasionally be triggered by stress, fatigue, excitement, caffeine, or alcohol. Although usually idiopathic, this entity often occurs on a hereditary basis and has also been described with multiple sclerosis, perinatal encephalopathy, hypoparathyroidism with basal ganglia calcification, encephalitis, thyrotoxicosis, stroke, infantile hemiplegia, head trauma, hypoglycemia, AIDS, diabetes mellitus, anoxia, and brain tumor [41,264]. For example, paroxysmal nonkinesigenic dyskinesias have been described because of recurrent hypoglycemia caused by an insulinoma [89]. This abnormality may also occur on a functional basis. Not sensitive to anticonvulsants, only a third of the patients improve with medications.

3. Paroxysmal exertion-induced dyskinesia. With this form, attacks are precipitated by prolonged physical exertion. The abnormal movements especially affect the legs. All three types may be further subdivided into short-lasting (≤5 minutes) and long-lasting (>5 minutes) attacks.

4. Paroxysmal hypnogenic dyskinesia. In this form, episodes of involuntary movements occur only during sleep.

5. Infantile convulsions and choreoathetosis syndrome (ICCA syndrome). Families with this syndrome have members that suffer infantile convulsions and later develop episodes of paroxysmal choreoathetosis [34]. Attacks of choreoathetosis resemble PKD in being very brief and frequent and induced by sudden exertion.
Many of the hereditary forms of paroxysmal dyskinesia may be due to channelopathies [34,35]. Other paroxysmal movement disorders that have been described include benign paroxysmal dystonia/torticollis in infancy (Sandifer’s syndrome) and paroxysmal ataxia and tremor. Sandifer’s syndrome is characterized by spasmodic posturing of the head and neck as a result of gastroesophageal reflux [235]. Paroxysmal ataxia and tremor may be associated with persistent limb myokymia or neuromyotonia, nystagmus, or ocular motility dysfunction.

**Myoclonus**

Myoclonus [3,32,61,85,171,243,280,335] is a movement disorder characterized by unexpected, brief, brisk, shock-like, involuntary, repetitive, synchronous or asynchronous contractions of a muscle or group of axial or appendicular muscles. These involuntary movements may be sufficiently forceful to displace the affected part of the entire body. Myoclonus may occur in combination with dystonia (myoclonic dystonia) [279].

Myoclonus may be focal, multifocal, or generalized. For example, diaphragmatic myoclonus (diaphragmatic flutter) is a rare focal myoclonus causing repetitive, involuntary contraction of the diaphragm and other inspiratory muscles [68]. Myoclonus may occur spontaneously or on attempted movement (action myoclonus) [206] and may be precipitated by cutaneous, auditory, visual, or muscular (e.g., sudden muscle stretch) stimuli. Action or intention myoclonus is most often encountered after cerebral hypoxia (Lance-Adams syndrome) and with certain degenerative disorders, such as Ramsay Hunt syndrome. Myoclonus is seen with structural or metabolic lesions of the spinal cord, brainstem, cerebellum, and cerebral cortex or in normal individuals (e.g., “sleep starts”). Rhythmic myoclonus is typically due to structural lesions of the brainstem or spinal cord. Myoclonus has a relationship to seizures in that both appear to be the result of hyperexcitable neurons. Marsden et al. [243] divide myoclonus into four major etiologies: (a) physiologic, (b) essential, (c) epileptic, and (d) symptomatic. Caviness classified myoclonus as outlined in Table 19.4 [61].

**Physiologic myoclonus** occurs in neurologically normal individuals. Sleep is the most common circumstance of physiologic myoclonus. The two physiologic forms of myoclonus during sleep or sleep transitions include partial myoclonic jerks (“physiologic fragmentary myoclonus”), consisting of small, multifocal jerks maximal in the hands and face but present diffusely, and massive myoclonic jerks (hypnic jerks). Partial myoclonic jerks are usually multifocal and occur in distal limb muscles, whereas hypnic jerks are generalized and affect the trunk and proximal limbs. *Pathologic* types of myoclonus that may occur during sleep include isolated periodic movements in sleep, restless legs syndrome with periodic movements in sleep, and excessive fragmentary myoclonus in non–rapid eye movement (REM) sleep. Myoclonus with epilepsy, intention, myoclonus associated with semi-volitional movements, and segmental myoclonus also occur in sleep, but are not primarily nocturnal. Periodic movements of sleep (PMS) or periodic limb movement disorder (PLMD) occurred virtually in all groups of patients referred to a sleep disorder laboratory and consist of repetitive, stereotyped dorsiflexion of the toes and foot, and, occasionally, flexion of the knee and hip. Nocturnal myoclonus often occurs in association with restless legs syndrome. PMS can be asymptomatic for the patient, although, as with all types of nocturnal myoclonus, the disorder may cause distress to the patient’s spouse. On some occasions, however, PMS can induce sleep fragmentation and excessive daytime sleepiness.

**Essential myoclonus** occurs without any apparent etiology or associated gross neurologic deficit and is characterized by onset before the age of 20 years, sporadic occurrence or dominant inheritance with variable severity, a benign course compatible with an active life and normal life span, absence of other neurologic deficits, and normal EEG [61]. Essential myoclonus is usually distributed throughout the upper body, is exacerbated by muscle activation, and is often responsive to small amounts of alcohol [202]. Some of these patients may exhibit elements of dystonia. Mutations in the gene encoding epsilon-sarcoglycan may cause the myoclonus-dystonia syndrome [372].

Alvarez and Caviness recently described a syndrome of primary progressive myoclonus of aging (PPMA) with the following criteria: (a) asymmetric symptomatlc action myoclonus, (b) 65 years of age or older (c) cortical myoclonus physiology, (d) no dementia, (e) no associated features of defined neurodegenerative disorders, and (f) no secondary cause found [8]. In a review of seven patients with this entity, age at presentation ranged from 70 to 87 years with the mean duration from myoclonus onset to last follow-up was 2.9 years. PPMA is a unique syndrome with characteristic findings that differentiate it from dementias and defined neurodegenerative syndromes [8].

**Epileptic myoclonus** refers to the presence of myoclonus in patients with epilepsy. The myoclonus can occur as only one component of the seizure, the only seizure manifestation, or one of multiple seizure types within the epileptic syndrome. The myoclonus is here presumed to be of cortical origin.
### TABLE 19.4 Classification of Myoclonus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Physiologic myoclonus (in healthy subjects)</th>
<th>Basal ganglia degenerations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jerks during sleep (hypnic jerks)</td>
<td>Wilson disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anxiety-induced myoclonus</td>
<td>Torsion dystonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exercise-induced myoclonus</td>
<td>Hallervorden-Spatz disease (pantothenate kinase–associated neurodegeneration)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiccup (singultus)</td>
<td>Progressive supranuclear palsy (Steele-Richardson-Olszewski syndrome)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benign infantile myoclonus during feeding</td>
<td>Huntington disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essential myoclonus</td>
<td>Parkinson disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hereditary (autosomal dominant)</td>
<td>Multisystem atrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myoclonus-dystonia syndrome</td>
<td>Corticobasal degeneration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sporadic</td>
<td>Dentatorubropallidolysian atrophy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary progressive myoclonus of aging</td>
<td>Dementia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epileptic myoclonus (seizures dominate and no encephalopathy, at least initially)</td>
<td>Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fragments of epilepsy</td>
<td>Alzheimer disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isolated epileptic myoclonic jerks</td>
<td>Diffuse Lewy body disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Epileptiform partialis continua</td>
<td>Viral encephalitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idiopathic stimulus-sensitive myoclonus</td>
<td>Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photosensitive myoclonus</td>
<td>Lethargic encephalitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myoclonic absences in petit mal epilepsy</td>
<td>Arborvirus encephalitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Childhood myoclonic epilepsies</td>
<td>Herpes simplex encephalitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infantile spasms</td>
<td>HIV-related disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myoclonic astatic epilepsy (Lennox-Gastaut syndrome)</td>
<td>Postinfectious encephalitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cryptogenic myoclonic epilepsy (Aicardi)</td>
<td>Metabolic entities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Awakening myoclonic epilepsy of Janz</td>
<td>Hepatic failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benign familial myoclonic epilepsy (Rabot)</td>
<td>Renal failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Progressive myoclonic epilepsy—Baltic myoclonus (Unverricht-Lundborg disease)</td>
<td>Dialysis dysequilibrium syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hyponatremia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypoglycemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Myoclonic encephalopathy of childhood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nonketotic hyperglycemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Multiple carboxylase deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Biotin deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symptomatic (secondary) myoclonus (progressive or static encephalopathy dominates)</td>
<td>Mitochondrial dysfunction (e.g., myoclonus epilepsy and ragged red fiber syndrome [MERRF])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage diseases</td>
<td>Toxic and drug-induced syndromes (e.g., bismuth, heavy metals, methyl bromide, tricyclic antidepressants, opioids, lithium, selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors [SSRIs], dopaminergic agents)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lafora body disease</td>
<td>Physical encephalopathies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lipidoses — e.g., GAA gangliosidosis, Tay-Sachs disease, Krabbe disease</td>
<td>Posthypoxic (Lance-Adams syndrome)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuronal ceroid lipofuscinosis (Batten disease)</td>
<td>Posttraumatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sialidosis (&quot;cherry-red spot&quot; syndromes)</td>
<td>Heat stroke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-infantile neuronopathic Gaucher disease</td>
<td>Electric shock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action myoclonus-renal failure syndrome</td>
<td>Decompression injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ataxic syndromes</td>
<td>Other spinocerebellar degenerations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dysautonomia cerebellar isoclonica (Ramsay Hunt syndrome)</td>
<td>Focal nervous system damage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friedreich's ataxia</td>
<td>Poststroke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ataxia telangiectasia</td>
<td>Post-thalamotomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autosomal dominant cerebellar degenerations (e.g., SCA 2)</td>
<td>Tumor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other spinocerebellar degenerations</td>
<td>Herpes zoster virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focal nervous system damage</td>
<td>Trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-poststroke</td>
<td>Olivodentate lesions (palatal myoclonus or palatal tremor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post-thalamotomy</td>
<td>Peripheral nerve lesions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Action myoclonus–renal failure syndrome (AMRF) is a distinctive form of progressive myoclonus epilepsy associated with renal dysfunction [24]. The syndrome was not recognized before the advent of dialysis and renal transplantation because of its rapidly fatal course if renal failure is untreated. Badhwar et al. described 15 individuals with AMRF from five countries, including a follow-up of four French–Canadian patients [24]. Segregation analyses were compatible with autosomal recessive inheritance. AMRF can present with either renal or neurologic features. Tremor (onset 17–26 years) and progressively disabling action myoclonus (onset 14–29 years), with infrequent generalized seizures (onset 20–28 years) and cerebellar features are characteristic. Proteinuria, detected between ages 9 and 30 years in all cases, progressed to renal failure in 12 out of 15 patients within 0 to 8 years after proteinuria detection. Brain autopsy in two patients revealed extraneural pigmented accumulation. Renal biopsies showed collapsing glomerulopathy, a severe variant of focal glomerulosclerosis. Dialysis and renal transplantation are effective for the renal but not the neurologic features, which continue to progress even in the presence of normalized renal function; the latter can be managed with antmyoclonic and antiepileptic drugs.

Symptomatic or secondary myoclonus occurs in the setting of an identifiable underlying disease process as outlined in Table 19.4. Lesions responsible for focal or segmental causes of myoclonus may be localized to the cortex, thalamus, brainstem, or spinal cord. Familial nocturnal faciomandibular myoclonus mimicking sleep bruxism may present with nocturnal tongue biting and bleeding [350].

The opsoclonus-myoclonus syndrome may arise in a variety of settings including infections, toxins, and a paraneoplastic syndrome. In these patients myoclonus is associated with conjugate, involuntary, large-amplitude saccades in all directions (saccodomania). In childhood, the syndrome is often associated with neuroblastoma.

Spinal myoclonus involves repetitive myoclonic jerking of an arm or leg, with activity in the flexors usually predominant, and may be due to spinal cord trauma, tumor, or inflammatory lesions [124]. Spinal myoclonus may be of two types: simple segmental and propriospinal [45]. Simple spinal segmental myoclonus consists of focal, repetitive, rhythmic jerks confined to one or more adjacent spinal segments. Propriospinal myoclonus (PSM) consists of predominantly axial and often arrhythmic flexor or extensor jerks involving many spinal segments linked by long propriospinal pathways (nonrhythmic, repetitive axial myoclonic jerks causing symmetric flexion of the neck, trunk, hips, and knees). Propriospinal myoclonus may occur spontaneously and has also been described with cervical hemangioblastoma, in tetraplegic patients, with spinal cord inflammation, and with Lyme disease [50,93]. In a review of patients with PSM, this entity occurred predominantly in male and middle-aged patients [306]. The typical clinical picture consisted of myoclonic jerks consistently involving abdominal wall muscles, which worsened in the lying position. A premonitory sensation preceding the jerks and wake–sleep transition phase worsening were frequent. Most patients had a myoclonic generator at the thoracic level. Diffusion tensor imaging with fiber tracking appears more sensitive than conventional MRI for detecting associated microstructural abnormalities of the spinal cord [306].

An 18-year-old man with paroxysmal jerking movements of the left arm, invariably precipitated by startle or sudden movements, since age 7 years was subsequently diagnosed with a cervical cord anaplastic astrocytoma [238]. This movement disorder was called paroxysmal kinesigenic segmental myoclonus by the authors [238].

Respiratory myoclonus, also termed diaphragmatic flutter, diaphragmatic myoclonus, or Leeuwenhoek disease, refers to repetitive, brief, involuntary contractions of the diaphragm [111]. These patients with diaphragmatic disorders present with shortness of breath, inspiratory stridor, epigastric pulsations, or abdominal wall pain. Physiologic studies in two cases of rhythmic abdominal movements due to diaphragmatic contractions suggested that in some patients these movements are under some degree of volitional control with no respiratory or functional disability [111]. It has been proposed that distinct forms of rhythmic diaphragmatic contractions may exist and that some patients could be descriptively termed to have “isolated diaphragmatic tremor.”

Orthostatic myoclonus may cause a slowly progressive and eventually disabling gait disorder in the elderly. In a review of 15 patients with orthostatic myoclonus, all were seniors (64–81 years of age) [139]. Seven of the patients had a CNS degenerative disorder and two had a systemic illness known to be associated with myoclonus. In the remaining six patients, no known CNS disorder contributed to the phenomenon. The onset of orthostatic myoclonus was accompanied by complaints of leg jerking or observed leg jerking in 13 of 15 patients during upright posture. An insidious deterioration of gait that was often described as “apraxia” or “gait initiation difficulty” accompanied the myoclonus in 13 of 15 patients. Clinicians frequently suspected normal pressure hydrocephalus or orthostatic tremor syndrome (see below).

Palatal myoclonus (palatal tremor) [98,247] is a rhythmic contraction (60–180/minute) affecting the
Localization in Clinical Neurology

Palatal and pharyngeal structures often associated with synchronous movements of the ocular muscles, diaphragm, head, and neck. Palatal myoclonus ("palatal tremor" is a better term) persists in sleep and is associated with lesions (usually vascular, traumatic, neoplastic, or demyelinating) that interrupt the pathway between the red nucleus, the inferior olivary nucleus, and the dentate nucleus (Guillain-Mollaret triangle). The inferior olivary nuclei, or a region of the brainstem encompassing the inferior olivary nuclei, are hypermetabolic in palatal myoclonus and may be the generator of the involuntary movements [106]. Palatal myoclonus may rarely be of cortical origin and secondary to epilepsy partialis continua (epileptic palatal myoclonus) [341]. Palatal myoclonus has been described in a patient with a lateral thalamic infarction [62]. Psychogenic palatal tremor may also occur [366].

Rhythmic palatal myoclonus (palatal tremor) may be separated into symptomatic and essential types [98,99,101]. Symptomatic rhythmic myoclonus is most often due to cerebrovascular and degenerative diseases, encephalitis, multiple sclerosis, and trauma; is associated with other brainstem or cerebellar (or both) symptomatology; begins generally in the fourth to sixth decades; is more common in males; has presenting complaints usually not related to the palatal myoclonus; has frequent extrapalatal involvement, rarely with ear-click; has a more homogeneous frequency (107–164 cycles/minute) than the essential type (26–420 cycles/minute); has a lifelong duration; and usually does not cease during sleep. This type is thought to be secondary to cerebellar or brainstem disease with a hypertrophied inferior olive believed to represent the generating oscillator. In essential rhythmic palatal myoclonus, there is no evidence of a structural lesion; the essential form may therefore be a functional analog of the symptomatic form based on neurotransmitter changes only. Essential rhythmic palatal myoclonus is not associated with other cerebellar or brainstem symptomatology; has an age of onset about two decades earlier than the symptomatic form; is equally common in males and females; presents usually with ear click; is never associated with nystagmus or extremity tremor; has a mean frequency of 107 Hz; has a mostly persistent duration, but remissions may occur; and may or may not cease during sleep [98,99,101]. The ear-click in palatal myoclonus may be due to the walls of the eustachian tubes snapping together or, more likely, may occur during opening of the walls due to the sudden breaking of the surface tension holding the walls of the tube together [98]. Symptomatic palatal tremor is likely due to rhythmic contraction of the levator veli palatini muscle, and essential palatal tremor is likely due to tensor veli palatini contraction [99,352].

A subgroup of the symptomatic form of palatal tremor has a syndrome of progressive ataxia and palatal tremor (PAPT) [310]. Sporadic PAPT is a subtype of symptomatic palatal tremor in which progressive cerebellar degeneration is the most symptomatic feature. Internuclear ophthalmoplegia may be present. The cause of sporadic PAPT remains uncertain. In some previous reports of sporadic PAPT, the combination of brainstem or pontine atrophy, parkinsonism, autonomic dysfunction, or corticospinal tract abnormalities suggests a diagnosis of MSA, although pathologic verification is lacking. Familial PAPT is associated with marked brainstem and cervical cord atrophy with corticospinal tract findings. Eye movement abnormalities suggest a disorder of both the cerebellum and the brainstem. Familial PAPT differs from sporadic PAPT in having marked atrophy of cervical cord and brainstem with corticospinal signs but without hypertrophic olivary appearance on MRI.

Oculopalatal myoclonus may be of two types [268]:

1. Lateral form, which is characterized by nystagmoid eye movements with simultaneous oblique and rotatory components associated with lateralized palatal myoclonus.
2. Midline form, which is characterized by vertical and-and-fro pendular eye movements with symmetric bilateral palatal myoclonus.

Patients who develop the one-and-a-half syndrome (see Chapter 8) from pontine lesions associated with facial nerve paresis ("eight-and-a-half syndrome") often subsequently develop oculopalatal myoclonus months to years after onset of ocular dysmotility [367].

Painful Legs and Moving Toes

Although there is no proof that the syndromes discussed here or in the next section are related to basal ganglia disorders, they are discussed in this chapter to facilitate comparison with other dyskinesias. The painful legs and moving toes syndrome is a disorder in which the toes of one foot are in continual flexion-extension with some lateral motion, associated with a deep pain in the ipsilateral leg [105,329]. The constant movement has a sinusoidal quality and may even occur during sleep [266]. The pain ranges in severity from mild to excruciating, often has a deep, boring quality, and is not distributed in any specific dermatomal, myotomal, or peripheral nerve distribution. The movements give no relief from the pain and the neurologic examination is normal, except in cases associated with peripheral neuropathy including HIV-related neuropathy, or radiculopathy. Sleep patterns are altered, and patients complain that the
pain persists during sleep. Although usually “idiopathic,” in some patients with this disorder there is evidence of a lesion of the spinal cord, lumbar roots, or in the peripheral nerves [105,266,272]. An analogous disorder affects the upper extremities (painful arms or hands and moving fingers) instead of the legs and toes [162,334,347]. A mother and daughter have been described who both presented with involuntary movements of the toes similar to those seen in painful legs and moving toes but without any associated pain (“painless legs and moving toes”) [109].

The clinical features of 14 cases of painful legs and moving toes and variant syndromes were reviewed by Alvarez et al. [9]. Ages ranged from 25 to 84 years (mean, 69 years). Movements were bilateral in 12 and unilateral in 2 patients. Pain preceding the movements was most commonly burning; movements consisted of flexion/extension, abduction/adduction, fanning, or clawing of toes, fingers, and sometimes the foot or hand. The most common predisposing factors were neuropathy and radiculopathy. Movements were partially suppressible and were diminished but still apparent during light sleep [9].

**Restless Legs Syndrome and Periodic Limb Movements of Sleep**

*Restless legs syndrome* (Ekbom syndrome, also known as “anxietas tibiarum”) refers to a condition in which the patient notes unpleasant crawling sensations of the legs, particularly when sitting and relaxing in the evening, which disappear on walking [65,72,110,158,281,356]. Criteria for diagnosis include: (a) an intense, irresistible urge to move the legs, usually associated with sensory complaints, including paresthesias and dysesthesias, (b) motor restlessness, (c) worsening of the symptoms with rest and relief with motor activity, and (d) increased severity of symptoms in the evening or at night [72]. Arm restlessness is reported by approximately half of the patients [261] and may be the initial symptom [123]. The neurologic examination is normal in these patients. The pain is usually diffuse, not limited to a peripheral nerve or dermatomal distribution, and described as a deep, aching, burning, throbbing, crawling, crushing, tearing pain. Myoclonic jerks or more sustained dystonic movements may occur in the late evening. Most commonly in the aged population, the disorder is often (at least 80% of patients) associated with a hypnogenic dyskinesia known as periodic leg movements of sleep [72,78,155,233]. These abnormal periodic movements appear as flexor contractions of one or both legs with dorsiflexion of the foot and flexion of the knee and hip. They occur at intervals of approximately every 20 seconds and usually occur in light stages I or II of non-REM sleep. Periodic limb movements of sleep have also been described with various disorders involving the spinal cord, including multiple sclerosis, Isaac's syndrome (neuromyotonia), motor neuron disease, cervical spondylosis, spinal cord injuries, tumors, spinal anesthesia, and syringomyelia [276]. Periodic limb movement during sleep may develop after pontine infarction [180]. Periodic limb movements of sleep seldom involve the upper limbs.

Most cases of restless legs syndrome are idiopathic and often patients have a family history of the disorder [281]. An association has been noted of restless legs syndrome with various medical conditions, including diabetes mellitus, vitamin deficiencies, iron deficiency anemia, pregnancy, uremia, malabsorption, carcinoma, amyloidosis, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and this condition may, therefore, represent a form of sensory neuropathy. Spinal cord lesions (e.g., multiple sclerosis, atlantoaxial dislocation, cervical spondylosis) may occasionally be associated with this syndrome [151].

**Tics**

Tics are sudden, rapid, usually stereotyped, and predominantly clonic hyperkinesias. They may be willfully suppressed for short periods of time and disappear during sleep. Tics usually start around the eyes or mouth but may spread to the neck or shoulders or become generalized. Tics may consist of simple motor movements (e.g., eye blinking, nose twitch, shoulder shrug, head jerking), complex motor movements (e.g., head shaking, skipping), simple phonic sounds (e.g., throat clearing, grunting, barking), or complex vocalizations (e.g., coprolalia, hiccup, echolalia). Tics are common in childhood and most commonly do not persist for longer than a year (transient tic of childhood). Tics can persist into adult life, although they generally diminish in intensity and frequency (chronic motor tic). Most patients describe a “psychic tension” that builds up inside them that can be relieved by the tic movement. In many patients, tics are preceded by a sensory symptom (“sensory tics”) that seems to drive the motor act, which is typically directed to the region of the sensation. The motor act stops the sensory symptom, which may then quickly recur. Some patients state that their abnormal movements are entirely “voluntary” and directed to deal with the sensory symptoms.

Tics may occur secondary to drugs (L-dopa, neuroleptics, methylphenidate, carbamazepine, phenytoin, phenobarbital, lamotrigine [224]), or striatal disorders (e.g., neuroacanthocytosis, encephalitis lethargica, posttraumatic, poststroke, after carbon monoxide poisoning), and may also occur in the syndrome of Gilles de la Tourette [52,274]. This
syndrome begins in childhood and is characterized by multiple or single motor tics, often associated with vocalization (grunting, sniffing, snorting, harking, throat clearing, spitting, coughing) or occasionally with more complicated motor activity, such as copropraxia (obscene gesturing), echopraxia (imitations of acts), jumping, or kicking. Coprolalia (obscene language), copropraxia (obscene gesturing), and echolalia (tendency to repeat words or sentences recently spoken to the patient) occur in less than half of affected individuals. The tics of Tourette syndrome are often accompanied by behavioral problems, such as obsessive-compulsive disorder, lack of impulse control, and attention deficit disorder. Coprolalia may also occur with Lesch-Nyhan syndrome, postencephalitic parkinsonism, choreoacanthocytosis, and other basal ganglia disorders. Adult-onset tic disorders may be caused by infarction, trauma, cocaine use, or neuroleptic exposure, or may be idiopathic [73].

Recently, there has been controversy concerning the potential role of antineuronal antibodies in Tourette syndrome. There appears to be antibodies in the serum of patients directed against the striatum [148]. Swedo et al. described a disorder called PANDAS (pediatric autoimmune neuropsychiatric disorders associated with strep infections) [336]. There are five diagnostic criteria: (a) presence of obsessive-compulsive disorder and/or a tic disorder, (b) prepubertal symptom onset, (c) episodic course of symptom severity, (d) association with streptococcal infections, and (e) association with neurologic abnormalities. In some studies, there are increased antibodies in the serum of patients with Tourette syndrome directed against streptococcal antigens [77].

### Tremor

Tremor [26,118,147,156,167,323,370], the most common of the dyskinasias, is characterized by involuntary, rhythmic, oscillatory movements about a fixed point resulting from either alternating or synchronous contractions of reciprocally innervated antagonist muscles. Tremor usually involves the distal extremities and, less often, the head and neck.

Tremor is classified as physiologic (7–11 Hz) or pathologic. Physiologic tremor is often barely seen with the unaided eye but may be enhanced (enhanced or exaggerated physiologic tremor) by fatigue, anxiety, withdrawal of opioids or alcohol, thyrotoxicosis, hypoglycemia, pheochromocytoma, or medications (e.g., catecholamines, steroids, amphetamines, caffeine, or theophylline) [323]. Enhanced physiologic tremor is absent at rest and present with maintained posture. Severe muscle fatigue may also activate physiologic tremor (“rock-climbers tremor”). Pathologic tremors are classified as follows:

1. **Resting tremor** (3.5–7.0 Hz) is seen in the relaxed extremities and disappears or markedly attenuates with action. This type of tremor is usually noted with diseases affecting the basal ganglia and its connections (e.g., PD). In PD, typical movements include pronation–supination of the forearm and rhythmic movements of the thumb across the fingers (“pill rolling”). The tremor is often markedly asymmetric or purely unilateral at onset. Occasionally, the tremor reappears when the hands are held in an outstretched posture (i.e., there is a latency in the onset of the tremor versus no latency in the onset of essential tremor with maintained posture). The tremor occasionally also affects the chin, jaw, or tongue.

2. **Postural tremor** (6–11 Hz) is most noticeable in extremities that maintain an antigravity posture (e.g., benign essential tremor). There may also be titubation of the head, tremor of the jaw, and tremulous speech.

3. **Intention (kinetic or action) tremor** (3–7 Hz) is most prominent in goal-directed movement (e.g., finger-to-nose testing) and often increases in amplitude as the target is reached. Intention tremor is usually associated with lesions of the cerebellar pathways. Although severe intention tremor is often called rubral tremor, this implied clinicanoatatomical correlation does not exist because the tremor may be seen with any cerebellar outflow lesion, especially lesions of the superior cerebellar peduncle (not the red nucleus) [323]. A kinetic tremor may also occur as a variant of essential tremor [38].

The most frequent type of abnormal postural tremor is essential tremor [333]. This disorder affects men and women equally, but head tremor may be more severe in women, whereas postural extremity tremor may be more severe in men [333]. Age of onset of the tremor has been reported to be bimodal, with peaks in the second and sixth decades [225], or unimodal, peaking in the fifth decade [193]. The tremor often runs as an autosomal dominant trait in families, but no responsible gene abnormality has been identified. Most frequently the tremor affects the hands, followed by the head, voice, tongue, legs, and trunk. The tremor is characteristically absent at rest, present with maintained posture, and most evident at the end of a goal-directed movement. Essential tremor rarely affects the jaw and tongue (vs. Parkinson’s tremor). An associated dystonia was found frequently in some series [225] but not in others [193]. Likewise, an increased incidence of PD in this population has been reported by some [193,225] but not others [26]. Some patients have an intentional tremor rather than a postural tremor and in
these patients gait ataxia may be present, suggesting cerebellar involvement [332]. Rarely the tremor persists at rest.

In an autopsy study of patients with essential tremor (ET), 8 (24.2%) of the 33 ET brains had Lewy bodies in the brainstem, mainly in the locus ceruleus [226]. However, the majority of ET brains (25/33, 75.8%) had no Lewy bodies, but had pathological changes in the cerebellum. The mean number of Purkinje cells was reduced in ET cases without Lewy bodies and there were seven times more Purkinje cell torpedoes per section compared to controls. ET cases without Lewy bodies also had degeneration of the dentate nucleus (two cases). Other findings in ET cases were Purkinje cell heterotopias and dendrite swellings. Lewy body ET cases were older than ET cases without Lewy bodies. Several trends were observed in ET cases without Lewy bodies, including a younger age of onset of tremor and higher proportions with gait difficulty and family history of ET. Thus, the pathological changes of ET seem to be heterogeneous and degenerative. The majority have cerebellar changes without Lewy bodies; a smaller proportion has brainstem Lewy bodies [226].

Jaw tremor may occur with essential tremor and is associated with older age, more severe action tremor of the arms, and the presence of head and voice tremor [228]. In one study, jaw tremor was present in 28.6% of patients with essential tremor cases with consistent rest tremor versus 7.8% cases without rest tremor [228]. Essential tremor cases with jaw tremor had a more clinically severe and more topographically widespread disorder. The association in this study between jaw tremor and rest tremor, along with the published observation that jaw tremor can occur in PD, raises the question whether jaw tremor in ET is a marker for subsequent conversion to PD [228].

Patients with essential tremor have kinetic arm tremor; this tremor can also have an intentional component. In one study, 10 of 111 patients with essential tremor had intention tremor of the head; in 7 it involved the neck and in 3 the chin [211]. These patients trended toward having more severe kinetic arm tremor and they had more severe intention tremor of the arms. These observations provide support for the evolving view that the cerebellum may be involved in ET [211].

Caution must be exercised when making a diagnosis of essential tremor in patients presenting with late-onset asymmetrical postural tremor even if there is no rest tremor. Alcohol sensitivity of tremor, family history of tremor, or responsiveness to beta-blockers may not be helpful in diagnosing essential tremor in these cases and some may develop PD in the long term [66]. In a study of 13 patients presenting with asymmetrical postural tremor, thought to be essential tremor by tremor characteristics, alcohol responsiveness, and family history, all patients developed additional signs suggesting PD on long-term follow-up [66].

Orolingual tremor as a rhythmic, involuntary oscillatory movement of the jaw, tongue, pharynx, and/or lower face [328]. The term “rest” orolingual tremor is used to define the state whereby the jaw is closed or the tongue is at rest in the floor of the mouth. Orolingual tremors can then be classified as being predominantly “rest”-tremors or predominantly activation-induced tremors. The concepts of postural tremor and intention tremor cannot easily be applied to any of the orolingual structures. The clinical assessment of orolingual tremor should include inspection of the tremor, further examination of the patient and specific data from the medical history. Inspection of the tremor should detail topography, activation conditions, and frequency. The parts of the orolingual region potentially affected by tremor in isolation, or in various combinations include the jaw, tongue, face, and pharynx. The tremor may occur either at “rest” or with activation of the orolingual structures. Activation-induced tremors include positional tremors and task specific tremors. Positional tremor of the jaw is tested by examining the jaw in several positions between open and closed. Positional and activation tremors of the tongue are assessed with the tongue protruded and performing activities such as repetitive side-to-side and in-and-out movements, licking the lips and any other activities that the patient has noted activates or aggravates the tremor (e.g. push against the teeth or a mouth-piece of a wind instrument). Task-induced tremor is tested using various activities, including speaking, smiling, swallowing, whistling, and playing wind instruments [328].

Wilson disease is an autosomal recessive disease characterized by liver dysfunction, behavioral abnormalities, and abnormal movements [253]. The gene responsible lies on chromosome 13q14.3 and encodes for a copper-transporting P-type ATPase (ATP7B). The enzyme binds copper in its large N-terminal domain and aids in transport across the membrane. Mutations of the gene lead to failure to excrete copper in bile and cause systemic copper poisoning. Patients with neurologic abnormalities usually present in the second or third decade as an akinetic-rigid syndrome resembling parkinsonism; a generalized dystonic syndrome (pure chorea is uncommon); postural and intention tremor with ataxia, gait disturbance, clumsiness, titubation, and dystarthis (“pseudosclerosis”); or a psychiatric illness. Neurologic involvement may include a characteristic large-amplitude “wing-beating” tremor demonstrated with
the shoulders abducted to 90 degrees. Some patients have autonomic nervous system abnormalities [257]. Psychiatric manifestations include conduct disorders, cognitive impairment, changes in personality or mood, dementia, and, rarely, psychosis. Ophthalmologic abnormalities consist of Kayser-Fleischer rings (caused by deposition of copper in Descemet's membrane), “sunflower” cataracts, slow saccadic eye movements, and, rarely, ophthalmoplegia. Typical facial manifestations of Wilson disease, although not pathognomonic, include excessive grinning, in which the patient grins to trivial stimuli; sustained open-mouth smile, when a parkinsonian face is associated with a dystonic dropped jaw (sometimes referred to as “vacuous smile”); and fixed forced smile, when facial dystonia produces a sustained spasm of risorius and zygomaticus muscles (also referred to as “risus sardonicus”) [63].

Rapid, irregular, and asynchronous movements of the legs and trunk occurring while standing is called orthostatic tremor or "shaky legs syndrome" [47,154,255,342]. Orthostatic tremor is a condition described as high-frequency tremors predominantly in the legs and trunk, which are present not only in the standing position but also during isometric contraction of the limb muscles. In a study of 26 subjects with orthostatic tremor, the main findings included 13.0 to 18.6 Hz leg tremors while standing with varied patterns of phase relationships between the antagonists of the ipsilateral leg and between the homologous muscles of the contralateral leg, short latency tremor onset upon standing with abrupt cessation after sitting, coexistence of tremors in the cranial structures and the arms, and sense of unsteadiness without actual falls [288]. This tremor may be associated with loss of extensor tone in the legs (negative myoclonus). Orthostatic tremor is a disorder of middle-aged or elderly people and is characterized by feelings of unsteadiness in the legs and a fear of falling when standing [255]. Other associated symptoms include difficulty in writing when standing, difficulty in initiating walking (particularly after standing long enough to induce troublesome lower limb shaking), and discomfort in the lower limbs when standing [255]. Patients stand on a wide base but walk normally. The symptoms are attenuated by walking, abolished immediately by sitting, and are due to high-frequency (13–18 Hz) burst firing in weight-bearing muscles [255]. The tremor may also be evident in the trunk and cranial muscles [198]. Isometric co-contraction of the arm and leg muscles also may induce a 14 to 18 Hz tremor in some patients when they are supine or suspended upright, suggesting that muscle contraction seems to be the critical factor in generating the tremor rather than orthostasis per se [46]. Patients with orthostatic tremor may have asymmetric hypertrophy affecting the thigh and calf muscles [149]. Although usually idiopathic, orthostatic tremor has been described with pontine lesions suggesting that dysfunction of the cerebellar connections or related pontine structures may be involved in its genesis [30]. Other rare structural causes of orthostatic tremor include cerebellar degeneration, nonstructural aqueductal stenosis, head trauma, and cavernoma of the left midbrain extending from the cerebral peduncle to the left dorsolateral region and encompassing the substantia nigra, the red nucleus, and the left superior cerebellar peduncle and its decussation [349]. Orthostatic myoclonus has also been described earlier in this chapter. Orthostatic tremor is an example of a task-specific tremor. Another task-specific tremor is primary writing tremor, which affects the writing act in isolation, with little or no associated postural or kinetic tremor interfering with other acts [25]. Primary writing tremor may be subclassified as being either a task-induced tremor (the tremor appears during writing) or a positionally sensitive tremor (the tremor appears while writing or when adopting hand position used in writing) [25]. Approximately, one-third of patients with primary writing tremor have a family history of the disorder [25]. Vocal tremor often occurs in isolation or may be associated with SD. Another type of rhythmic movement is the painful “jumping” of the stump after amputation (4–6 Hz) affecting the perioral (orbicularis oris) and perinasal muscles, often associated with a popping-like sound caused as the lips rapidly separate. This syndrome has been associated with the administration of neuroleptics and with PD [96].

Tremor can occur as a psychogenic symptom (psychogenic tremor) [181]. Such tremors can take many forms but the most common are action tremors with alternating activity in antagonist muscles. Psychogenic tremors vary in amplitude more than expected and may change frequency. Patients can be assessed while asking them to tap with one limb at specific frequencies [97]. Tremor amplitude may increase with weighting, something that should not happen with organic tremors [97]. Typically, psychogenic tremor is of sudden onset with involvement of more than one limb. The tremor is usually obvious in more than one limb position and there is a relative lack of progression.

**Hypokinetic and Bradykinetic Disorders**

**Parkinsonism**

Bradykinesia, rigidity, resting tremor, freezing, flexed posture (of the neck, trunk, and limbs), and disorders of postural reflexes are the cardinal features of *parkinsonism* [57,133].
Bradykinesia is the most disabling manifestation of parkinsonism and is characterized by delay in the initiation and execution of willed movements and a general reduction of associated automatic movements. Bradykinesia explains (at least partially) the facial hypomimia, reduced blinking, impaired ocular convergence, monotonous and low-volume speech (bradylalia, eventually leading to anarthria) [80], drooling of saliva, micrographia, and slow shuffling gait with reduced associated movements that occur in Parkinsonism.

Rigidity is characterized by a plastic resistance to passive movements that affects both agonist and antagonist muscles (e.g., flexors and extensors, pronators, and supinators) to a similar extent and that is constant throughout the entire range of movement. Rigidity affects more axial and proximal limb muscles and can be detected early in the disease process. The phenomenon of cogwheel rigidity is characterized by periodic modifications of muscle tone due to the superimposed tremor that can be seen and felt when passively moving the extremity. The akinetic-rigid syndrome is characteristic of PD and due to abnormal dopaminergic input to the striatum. An akinetic-rigid syndrome may also occur with extensive damage to the striatum, as in the Westphal variant of Huntington disease, Wilson disease, or striatonigral degeneration (SND); damage to the output zone of the basal ganglia (i.e., the medial globus pallidus and the substantia nigra pars reticulata), as in PSP, the progressive pallidal degenerations, and Hallervorden-Spatz disease (pantothenate kinase–associated neurodegeneration); and diffuse cerebral conditions, such as Pick disease, corticobasal degeneration, hydrocephalus, and diffuse cerebrovascular disease (e.g., multiple cerebral infarcts or subcortical vascular encephalopathy). Therefore, any pathologic change (or drug) that causes extensive bilateral disruption of the striatopallidal complex or its outputs can cause an akinetic-rigid syndrome [241].

Parkinsonian tremor is characteristically slow, of medium to coarse amplitude (3.5–7.0 Hz); present at rest; increased by emotion, fatigue, stress, and anxiety; absent in sleep; and decreased by volitional activity. It typically affects the distal appendicular muscles, leading to flexion-extension movements of the metacarpophalangeal and interphalangeal joints of the fingers and thumb, adduction–abduction movements of the thumbs (“pill rolling”), and pronation–supination movements of the wrists. It often begins unilaterally in the hand and may be present initially only in the thumb or a single finger. The tremor then typically spreads to the ipsilateral lower extremity (“hemiparkinsonism”) before involving the opposite half of the body. In addition to resting tremor, an action tremor (7–12 Hz) may be seen.

Tremor of the protruded tongue is not uncommon, whereas tremors of the head, lips, and jaw are less frequent.

Disorders of postural fixation may affect the head, trunk, limbs, or the entire body, resulting in forward displacement of the head, forward or backward instability of the trunk, difficulty in maintaining an erect posture when being slightly pushed, and easy falling.

Freezing phenomena are also common in PD and consist of transient periods, usually lasting seconds, in which the motor act is halted, being stuck in place [136]. In freezing, the voluntary motor act being attempted is halted because agonists and antagonist muscles are spontaneously and isometrically contracting. Freezing phenomena include start-hesitation (freezing when gait is initiated), turn-hesitation (freezing when turning), destination-hesitation (freezing when approaching a target), freezing when an “obstacle” is encountered, spontaneous sudden transient freezing, palilalia or freezing of speech (i.e., repetition of the first syllable of the word trying to be verbally expressed), apraxia of eye opening (levator inhibition), and freezing of limbs (e.g., during writing or teeth-brushing) [114]. With start-hesitation, the feet take short sticking, shuffling steps before the patient can begin walking; with progression the feet become “glued to ground.” Freezing occurs in idiopathic parkinsonism, symptomatic parkinsonism, PSP, multisystem atrophy, and may be idiopathic without other features except loss of postural reflexes and mild bradykinesia [1,21,296].

Patients with parkinsonism may demonstrate a “simian posture” (forward flexion of the trunk, flexion of the elbows, and partial flexion of the knees), the “parkinsonian hand” (mild dorsiflexion of the wrist, flexion of the metacarpophalangeal joints, extension and adduction of the fingers, and slight ulnar deviation), and the dystonic foot posture [273] (extension of the great toe, flexion of the toes, arching of the sole, and inversion of the foot). Other features include sleep abnormalities, pain and variety of sensory complaints, constipation, hesitancy and frequency of micturition, seborrhea, hyperhidrosis, exaggerated nasopalpebral reflex (glabellar tap or Myerson sign), limb-kinetic apraxia [290], blepharospasm, blepharoconus, and oculogyric crisis. Abnormalities of speech are common and include hypokinetic dysarthria, hypophonia, bradyphrenia (slow to think or respond to questions), tachyphemia (repetition of a word or phrase with increasing rapidity and decreasing volume), palilalia, inappropriate silent periods, involuntary humming [125], and “tip-of-the-tongue” phenomenon (a type of anoma in parkinsonism that is a semantic rather than a phonetic retrieval deficit) [248]. In addition to motor signs,
patients with PD may have behavioral signs and are often dependent, fearful, indecisive, and passive. Depression occurs in 30% of patients, whereas dementia occurs in 40% and increases with age (below age 60, 8%; older than age 80, 69%) [249].

Sudden onset of sleep (SOS), with no prior warning symptoms of drowsiness, can occur in people with PD [197]. The strongest predictors of SOS are increasing age, male sex, longer disease duration, and the presence of various sleep disturbances. Taking nonergoline dopamine antagonists is more strongly associated with SOS in patients below 70 years of age and in those with disease duration less than 7 years.

Camptocormia (bent spine syndrome) is characterized by an abnormal posture of the trunk with marked flexion of the thoracolumbar spine, which increases during walking and abates in the recumbent position [22]. Originally thought to be a psychogenic disorder, camptocormia is recognized as a feature of parkinsonian and dystonic disorders [22,42,214]. Etiologies include parkinsonism (idiopathic PD, MSA, autosomal recessive juvenile parkinsonism, postencephalitic parkinsonism), dystonia, spine deformities, stroke, neuromuscular disease (amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, polynyositis, inclusion body myositis, nemaline myopathy), sodium valproate use, Graves disease, paraneoplastic, psychogenic, and idiopathic [22,200].

Parkinsonism is a clinical syndrome that can be classified as idiopathic (e.g., PD) or as secondary (e.g., symptomatic parkinsonism). PD, the most common form of parkinsonism, is a chronic, progressive disease of unknown etiology, characterized by a striatal dopamine deficiency as a result of loss of the pigmented neurons of the substantia nigra. Known causes of parkinsonism include drugs (e.g., neuroleptics, reserpine, tetrabenazine, lithium, fluoxetine, amiodarone, phenelzine, alpha-methyl-para-tyrosine, alpha-methyldopa, meperidine, amphotericin B, flunarizine, cinnarizine, diltiazem, cytosine arabinoside, ethanol, procaine, chronic usage of intravenous potassium permanganate), toxins (e.g., 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine, manganese, carbon monoxide, carbon disulfide, cyanide, disulfiram, methanol, toluene, n-hexane, and other solvents), infections (e.g., postencephalitic, von Economo disease, HIV, subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (SSPE), Mycoplasma pneumoniae, Japanese B encephalitis, Western equine encephalitis, Coxsackie virus, neurosyphilis, etc.), vascular parkinsonism also known as arteriosclerotic parkinsonism or lower body parkinsonism (e.g., multiple lacunar infarctation, cerebral amyloid angiopathy, Binswanger disease), metabolic processes (e.g., Wilson disease, chronic hepatocerebral degeneration, disorders of calcium metabolism with or without basal ganglia calcifications, post hypoxic-ischemic injury), structural processes (e.g., tumors, arteriovenous malformations, traumatic encephalopathy, subdural hematoma, hydrocephalus), or multisystem degenerative processes (e.g., Shy-Drager syndrome [SDS], PSP, olivopontocerebellar atrophy [OPCA], SND, corticobasal ganglionic degeneration, primary pallidal atrophy of Hunt, rigid variant of Huntington disease, Machado-Joseph disease, Hallervorden-Spatz disease [pantothenate kinase–associated neurodegeneration], spinocerebellar atrophy, parkinsonism with depression and alveolar hypoventilation, idiopathic dystonia-parkinsonism, X-linked Lubag syndrome of parkinsonism with dystonia [among Filipino men], hemiparkinsonism-hemiatrophy, Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, Gerstmann-Straussler-Scheinker disease, Rett disorder, neuroacanthocytosis, mitochondrial disorders, Alzheimer disease, Pick disease, parkinsonism-ALS-dementia complex of the Western Pacific) [192,259]. Welding-related parkinsonism, clinically indistinguishable from idiopathic parkinsonism, has also been described [293].

Stiff-Man (Stiff-Person) Syndrome

The stiff-man (stiff-person) syndrome is characterized by progressive fluctuating muscular rigidity [49, 216]. This disorder is not thought to be a disorder of the basal ganglia but causes severe rigidity. Typically, the rigidity affects the axial muscles of the back, abdomen, hips, and shoulders, causing excessive lordosis with prominent contraction of the paraspinal muscles, a “board-like” abdomen, and stiffness of the legs. Supersensitive to this continuous stiffness are spasms provoked by excitement, anxiety, voluntary movement, sudden noise, or peripheral stimuli. These spasms are often intensely painful and may be forceful enough to fracture bones or dislocate joints. Sometimes voluntary movements can provoke severe spasms causing the patient to fall “like a wooden man.” The syndrome usually begins in the fourth or fifth decade and affects men and women equally. The onset of the syndrome is usually gradual with increasing painful tightness, stiffness, and clumsiness of the trunk and legs. On examination there is continuous muscular contraction of the paraspinal and abdominal muscles with no other neurologic signs except brisk reflexes. The illness is slowly progressive with stiffness spreading from the trunk to the hip and then the shoulder muscles, but the face and distal limbs are spared. Some patients may only have stiffness of the limbs called “stiff limb syndrome” [28,49]. Other cases may progress to the syndrome of progressive encephalomyelitis with rigidity [145].
A central, perhaps spinal cord origin for the spasms, rigidity, and continuous motor activity has been suggested, perhaps a defective input of inhibitory pathways onto motor neurons. Stiff-person syndrome may be triggered by West Nile Fever [153]. The significance of the association of insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus with stiff-person syndrome has been emphasized by the discovery of antibodies directed against glutamic acid decarboxylase (GAD), the enzyme responsible for the synthesis of GABA, in both blood and cerebrospinal fluid in 60% or more of patients [355]. Most of these patients also have antibodies directed against pancreatic islet cells as well as gastric parietal cells and the thyroid. Anti-GAD antibodies may damage GABAergic inhibitory mechanisms in the spinal cord.

Stiff-person syndrome has been associated with antiaimphiphysin I antibodies in patients with breast cancer [308] and may occur with other paraneoplastic neurologic disorders, including sensory neuropathy, cerebellar ataxia, and opsoclonus.

**Cortical-Basal Ganglionic (Corticobasal) Degeneration**

Cortical-basal ganglionic degeneration (CBGD) or cortico-dentato-nigral degeneration with neuronal achromatization is a distinct disease with clinical features referable to both cortical and basal ganglionic dysfunction [29,135,194,220,297,298,362]. The illness begins in the sixth or seventh decade with focal dystonia and myoclonus of an arm, sensory or visual neglect, the alien hand sign (see Chapter 20), or an akinetic-rigid syndrome. The most common initial complaint is unilateral clumsiness, stiffness, or jerking of the arm [298,362]. The clinical hallmark of CBGD is a unilateral parkinsonism unresponsive to levodopa therapy associated with limb ideomotor apraxia [362]. Patients develop a supranuclear gait palsy in both vertical and horizontal directions, parkinsonian features, and cerebellar signs. Other findings include constrictional dyspraxia when using the arms, cortical sensory loss, apraxia, postural-action tremor, action-induced or stimulus-sensitive myoclonus, hyperreflexia, gait disorders, postural instability, mild dysarthria, and dementia [284]. Aphasia may be significant [122] and the disorder may even present as a primary progressive aphasic syndrome [33,309]. Language dysfunction is common, even in patients without aphasia, with prevalent phonologic and spelling impairments [144]. Other atypical presentations include memory loss, dementia, behavioral changes, and difficulties with speech and gait [33,317,362]. Other ocular motor findings include saccadic pursuit, hypokinetically vertical saccades, difficulty initiating voluntary saccades and pursuit, and oculogyric crisis [305]. The symptoms and signs are often strikingly asymmetric, and the duration of the disease is usually 4 to 6 years [135,297,298].

It should be noted that there is pathologic heterogeneity of the clinical diagnosis of CBGD. In a pathologic study of 13 cases with this clinical diagnosis, 7 patients had CBGD, 2 had Alzheimer disease, 1 had PSP, 1 had Pick's disease, 1 had Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, and 1 patient had nonspecific findings [44]. There are often blurred clinical boundaries between CBGD and PSP. Limb dystonia and apraxia may occur in patients with otherwise classic supranuclear vertical gaze defect and postural impairment of PSP. Patients with CBGD may have a supranuclear vertical gaze defect late in the course of their illness and sometimes the characteristic asymmetric dystonic limb is absent. Cases of CBGD have also been reported where the clinical profile fits a pattern of frontal dementia similar to that seen with the pathologic entity frontotemporal dementia (FTD). In fact, CBGD shares a common genetic basis with PSP and FTD [103]. These three conditions are therefore best viewed as part of a spectrum of disorders of the tau gene (tauopathies), with clinical symptoms reflecting the cortical or subcortical location of pathology [103,159].

**Progressive Supranuclear Palsy (Steele-Richardson-Olszewski Syndrome)**

PSP is a distinct clinicopathologic entity, the hallmark of which is supranuclear ophthalmoplegia involving vertical gaze [79,126,127,163,219–221, 231,270,330], which may be overcome by the oculocerebral maneuver. Other clinical features include pseudo-bulbar palsy (dysphagia and speech difficulty), axial dystonia in extension (retrocollis), rigidity affecting the neck more than the limbs, bradykinesia, postural instability with backward falls, a wide-based shuffling gait, personality changes, a staring unblinking facies, sitting “en bloc,” mild dementia, and cerebellar and corticospinal tract signs [79,126,190]. Mild changes in truncal muscle tone with prominent neck dystonia and rigidity are characteristic [340]. Tremor is usually absent. In contrast to the short and shuffling steps, stooped posture, narrow base, and flexed knees typically seen in PD, patients with PSP have a stiff and broad-based gait, with a tendency to have their knees (and trunk) extended and their arms slightly adducted. Instead of turning “en bloc,” they tend to pivot, which further compromises balance. Patients may present with “pure akinesia,” also referred to as motor blocks or gait ignition failure, and freezing may be an early sign of impending PSP [296].
Localization in Clinical Neurology

Often patients with PSP have deep facial folds and a typical “worried” or “astonished” facial expression. This facial expression is characteristic of PSP and differs from the lack of facial expression (hypomimia) seen with PD. The facial expression may be due to a focal dystonia of the procerus muscle as well as to a combination of reduced blinking, lid retraction, and gaze palsy. Procerus is a facial muscle that originates in the nasal bone and inserts in the skin in the center of the forehead between the eyebrows; it acts forming vertical wrinkles in the glabella region and bridge of the nose. The wrinkling of this region is present with open or closed eyes and is called the procerus sign [301].

The dysarthria with PSP usually has a combination of spastic, hypernasal, hypokinetic, and ataxic components, but one of these elements may predominate; stuttering, dysphasia, apraxia of phonation, and palilalia may also occur [169,189,220]. While most patients demonstrate a low-pitched, monotonous dysarthria, some patients have almost continuous involuntary vocalizations including loud groaning, moaning, humming, and grunting sounds. As a result of chewing difficulties, inability to look down, and poor hand coordination, patients with PSP are often described as “sloppy eaters” [221]. Less common findings that do not exclude the diagnosis include limb rigidity greater than axial rigidity, a narrow-based gait, mild rest tremor, upper limb apraxia, upper limb ataxia, myoclonus, chorea, and respiratory disturbances [79]. Spontaneous arm levitation, although usually characteristic of CBGD, may sometimes occur [27].

The initial ocular motor deficit consists of impairment of vertical saccades, with downward saccades usually affected first. Other ocular abnormalities include a disproportionate hypometria of vertical compared to horizontal saccades producing a curved course of oblique saccades, abnormal smooth pursuit, blepharospasm, apraxia of eyelid opening and closure, ptosis, bilateral lid retraction, decreased blinking, loss of Bell’s phenomenon, internuclear ophthalmoplegia (the addiction limitation may, however, at times be overcome by vestibular stimulation), nystagmus, square-wave jerks, ocular flutter, impaired convergence, lateral gaze palsies, and impaired performance of antisaccade tasks (see Chapter 8) [92,126,127,141,163,234,305]. All patients with PSP showed slow voluntary vertical saccades and nystagmus quick phases compared with PD or controls [131]. Small, paired, horizontal saccadic intrusions (square wave jerks) are more frequent and larger in PSP during fixation. Patients often lose the ability to read and make eye contact and often complain of diplopia and photophobia [270]. At a stage when full vertical excursions are still present, some patients display an inability to produce pure vertical saccades along a straight line in the midline. Instead, they can only accomplish vertical saccades by moving their eyes in a lateral arc (the “round the houses” sign) [292]. Late in the development of the disease, the ocular motor deficit may progress to a complete ophthalmoplegia. The age of onset of this disease process is usually in the sixth and seventh decade (average age 63 years), with death occurring in 2 to 12 years [330].

In a study of the clinical features of patients with pathologically proven PSP, CBGD, PD, diffuse Lewy body disease, Pick disease, and MSA, the following were noted [220]:

1. Supranuclear vertical gaze palsy, moderate or severe postural instability, and falls during the first year after onset of symptoms were most consistent with PSP.
2. Unstable gait, absence of tremor-dominant disease and absence of response to levodopa differentiated PSP from PD.
3. Supranuclear vertical gaze palsy, gait instability, and the absence of delusions distinguished PSP from diffuse Lewy body disease.
4. Supranuclear vertical gaze palsy and increased age at symptom onset distinguished PSP from MSA.
5. Gait abnormality, severe upward gaze palsy, bilateral bradykinesia, and absence of alien limb syndrome separated PSP from CBGD.
6. Postural instability classified PSP from Pick’s disease.

The “applause sign” (a tendency to initiate an automatic program of applause when one is asked to initiate a voluntary program of three claps) is a simple test of motor control that helps to differentiate PSP from frontal or striatofrontal degenerative diseases. It was found in 0/59 controls, 0 of 24 patients with FTD, 0 of 17 patients with PD, and 30 of 42 patients with PSP [107].

The area of the midbrain on midsagittal MRI can differentiate PSP from PD, multiple system atrophy with parkinsonism (MSA-P), and normal aging [278]. The average midbrain area of the patients with...
PSP was significantly smaller than that of the patients with PD and MSA-P and that of the age-matched control group. The values of the area of the midbrain showed no overlap between patients with PSP and patients with PD or normal control subjects.

Lewy Body Dementia

Lewy body dementia (dementia with Lewy bodies), a common cause of dementia, is a pathologically defined disease process with the following characteristic clinical features [4,227,254]:

1. Progressive disabling mental impairment, attentional impairments, and disproportionate problem solving and visuospatial difficulties are often early and prominent.
2. Fluctuations in cognitive impairment with pronounced variation in attention and alertness, persistent well-formed and detailed visual hallucinations (e.g., colorful images of animals or people), and spontaneous motor features of parkinsonism are core features.
3. Features that support the diagnosis include repeated falls, syncope, transient loss of consciousness, neuroleptic sensitivity, systemized delusions, and hallucinations of other modalities.

The average age of onset of this disorder is 68 years. Parkinsonian features are bilateral and symmetric. Patients may have rest tremor, bradykinesia, and rigidity similar to PD, but the occurrence of myoclonus, absence of rest tremor, no response to levodopa, or no perceived need to treat with levodopa are much more likely in Lewy body disease than PD [227]. REM-sleep behavior disorder has been associated with Lewy body dementia. The best model for differentiating diffuse Lewy body disease from Alzheimer disease is the earliest stages of disease includes visual hallucinations and visuospatial/constructional dysfunction, but not spontaneous extrapyramidal signs, as predictors [343].

Multiple Systems Atrophy (MSA)

MSA encompasses a group of sporadic progressive adult-onset disorders characterized clinically by autonomic dysfunction, parkinsonism, and ataxia in any combination [291,360,361,363]. MSA affects both men and women and usually starts in the sixth decade of life, progressing to death over an average of 9 years. The three major categories of MSA include the Shy-Drager syndrome (SDS), striatonigral degeneration (SND), and sporadic olivo-ponto-cerebellar degeneration (OPCA). Features include the following:

1. Parkinsonism, usually with a poor or unsustained response to chronic levodopa therapy
2. Cerebellar or corticospinal tract signs
3. Orthostatic hypotension, impotence, urinary retention, or incontinence, usually preceding or within 2 years after onset of the motor system

One-third of patients with isolated late-onset cerebellar ataxia and less than one-tenth of patients presenting with parkinsonism will eventually develop MSA. Parkinsonian features predominate in 80% of patients (MSA-P subtype) and cerebellar features are the major motor disturbance in 20% of patients (MSA-C subtype) [31,364]. MSA-P associated parkinsonism is characterized by progressive akinesia and rigidity. Jerky postural tremor and, less commonly, tremor at rest may be superimposed. Patients frequently exhibit orofacial or craniofacial dystonia associated with a characteristic quivering high-pitched dysarthria and levodopa-induced dyskinesia affecting orofacial and neck muscles is common, sometimes in the absence of motor benefit. Postural stability is compromised early but recurrent falls at symptom onset is unusual. The cerebellar features of MSA-C are characterized by gait ataxia, limb kinetic ataxia, scanning dysarthria, and cerebellar ocular motor disturbances. MSA-P and MSA-C are associated with similar survival times but patients with MSA-P have a more rapid functional deterioration than those with MSA-C [358].

Parkinsonism and upper motor neuron signs are the predominant motor disorders in SND, whereas gait ataxia, dysarthria, and disturbances in executive cognition are the usual presentation of the OPCA type of MSA. SND is also associated with laryngeal stridor and sleep apnea. SDS is dominated by autonomic dysfunction. Onset of the disorder is between 40 and 69 years of age [360]. In a review of 188 pathologically proved cases of MSA, 28% had all four systems involved; 18% had a combination of parkinsonism, pyramidal, and autonomic; 11% had parkinsonism, cerebellar, and autonomic; 11% had parkinsonism and autonomic findings; 10% had only parkinsonism; and parkinsonism was absent in 11% of cases [291]. In another series, autonomic symptoms were present at onset in 41% of patients and 97% developed autonomic symptoms during the course of the disease [360]. Impotence is the most frequent autonomic symptom in males, whereas urinary incontinence predominated in women. Orthostatic hypotension is often the most disabling autonomic manifestation. Other autonomic manifestations in SDS include anhidrosis, decreased tearing, and iris atrophy. Nearly half of all patients are markedly disabled or wheelchair bound within 4 years of the onset and the median survival is 9.5 years. Parkinsonism associated with neck extensor myopathy (head drop) may occur with MSA [18].
Paraneoplastic Movement Disorders

Paraneoplastic movement disorders are rare autoimmune nonmetastatic complications of cancer [145]. Common paraneoplastic movement disorders include cerebellar syndrome, oposoclonus myoclonus, basal ganglia disorders, stiff person syndrome, and neuromyotonia. Syndromes usually present before cancer diagnosis and are commonly associated with one or more serum antibodies. Increasing numbers of antibodies have been identified (Hu, Yo, Ri, CV2, amphiphysin, Ma, Ta, Tr, NMDA, nGlur1, PCA, ANNA-3, VGCCCA). Clinical clues to paraneoplastic etiology include speed of onset, severity, speed of progression, resistance to treatment, and more widespread neurological signs than one would expect from nonparaneoplastic etiologies. The most common associated cancers found are small cell lung cancer, breast, gynecological, testicular, lymphoma, and melanoma. Syndromes usually present before cancer, breast, gynecological, testicular, lymphoma, and thymoma. Early identification and treatment sometimes lead to neurological improvement and may improve cancer prognosis. Prognosis is dependent on the tumor type and its likely response to treatment [145].

References

89. De Carvalho Aguiar PM, Ozelius LJ.


93. Cummings JL, Wirshing WC.


95. Cummings JL, Wirshing WC.


97. Demirkan M, Jankovic J.


99. Cummings JL, Wirshing WC.


103. Cummings JL, Wirshing WC.

104. Deuschl G, Toro C, Hallett M.


Grant R, Graus F.


222. Lodder J, Baard WC.

224. Lombroso CT.

221. Litvan I, Campbell G, Mangone CA, et al.

220. Liles SL, Davis GD.

219. Lubarsky M, Juncos JL.


213. Liles SL, Davis GD.


Localisation in Clinical Neurology


Lesion localization in the cerebral hemispheres relies on the understanding of the function of different portions of the cerebral cortex. Initially, hemispheric localization was learned from the clinical effects of vascular or other lesions, true “experiments of Nature.” Limited cortical activation procedures were performed intraoperatively since the 1920s, but in the last few years, cortical mapping has expanded prodigiously with the advent of functional neuroimaging. The two techniques most extensively used are positron emission tomography (PET), beginning in the mid 80s [324], and functional magnetic resonance imaging, beginning in the early 90’s [364,421]. Another technique, focused magnetic stimulation, by temporarily modifying the function of a restricted area of the brain, became another powerful instrument to clarify regional brain function [368,408]. More recently, white matter fiber tracking with diffusion tensor imaging—magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) tractography—was added to our localization toolbox [75]. Still in its infancy, but already promising great advances in our understanding of localization in individuals, the field of imaging genetics studies the effect of genetic variants on brain structure and function [56]. Whereas, anatomical measurements used to be made with rather simple techniques in relatively few individuals [175], much more sophisticated measurements can now be performed in large populations using voxel-based morphometry and other computer-aided techniques [513]. This edition of Localization in Clinical Neurology reflects the new insights into cortical localization gained from the use of these techniques.

Anatomy of the Cerebral Hemispheres

The paired cerebral hemispheres derive from the telencephalon [61]. They are in continuity with the diencephalon and are interconnected by white matter commissures, including the corpus callosum, the anterior and posterior commissures, and the commissure of the fornix. In the adult, the cerebral hemispheres, shaped like a cap, cover the midbrain-diencephalic structures. A midline sagittal slit, the longitudinal fissure, separates the two hemispheres. Thus, each hemisphere has a larger lateral aspect and smaller medial and inferior aspects. Folds (gyri) and furrows (sulci) pattern the surface of the cerebral hemispheres. The larger sulci (fissures) serve as anatomic landmarks separating the main regions of the cerebral hemispheres.

On the lateral aspect of each hemisphere, two large sulci separate three regions: the temporal lobe, inferior to the Sylvian fissure; the frontal lobe, anterior to the Rolandic or central sulcus; and the parietal lobe, posterior to the Rolandic sulcus (Fig. 20.1A). The insula lies buried in the depth of the Sylvian fissure. The most posterior portion of the lateral aspect corresponds to the occipital lobe. An imaginary line, drawn from the superior extent of the parietooccipital sulcus in the medial aspect of the hemisphere to a notch in the inferior aspect (preoccipital notch), constitutes the lateral boundary between the occipital lobe and the parietal and temporal lobes.

Two sulci running anteroposteriorly divide the frontal lobe into superior, middle, and inferior frontal gyri. Perpendicular to these, and separated from them by the precentral sulcus, lies the precentral gyrus, which is just anterior to the central sulcus. In the average normal person, but not in those with autism or other developmental language disorder, the posterior part of the third frontal gyrus (triangular and opercular portions) is larger in the left hemisphere [109,133]. This difference is more pronounced in men [47]. Also, the left precentral gyrus is thicker than the right in right-handed men [10]. The precentral gyrus contains the primary motor area. Primary cortical areas constitute the first areas of cortex to receive information from the sense organs, in the case of the primary sensory areas, or, in the case of the primary motor area, projects to the motor nuclei of the brain stem and spinal cord lodging the lower motor neurons. The inward or outward projections of the primary cortical areas contrast with the rest of the cortex, named association cortex, giving rise preferentially to cortico-cortical connections.

Two transverse sulci divide the temporal lobe into superior, middle, and inferior temporal gyri. On the inferior bank of the Sylvian sulcus, the transverse gyrus (Heschl) runs anterolaterally over the superior aspect of the first temporal gyrus. It constitutes the primary auditory area and the anterior limit of the
planum temporale or supratemporal plane, which, in the average right-handed person, is one-third larger in the left hemisphere [175] (Fig. 20.2). Heschl gyrus is also larger on the left, particularly in men [187,271]. Functional specialization may explain this finding because in the average person there is an auditory bias toward the left hemisphere, such that, not only speech but even pure tones activate more Heschl gyrus on the left than on the right hemisphere [125]. Lateralization could begin in the cochlea [445]. Additionally, individual anatomy may determine or be determined by function. Normal individuals who analyze musical
Exposed upper surfaces of the temporal lobes, shown in a horizontal section of the brain. The area (planum temporale, PT) limited anteriorly by the transverse temporal gyrus of Heschl (TG) and posteriorly by the posterior extent of the horizontal portion of the temporal operculum (PM) tends to be larger on the left side. Other abbreviations: TP = temporal pole; OP = occipital pole; SI; SH. (Reproduced with permission from Geschwind N, Levitsky W [175]. Copyright 1969 by the American Association for the Advancement of Science.)

The localization of lesions affecting the cerebral hemispheres is well demarcated from the rest of the mesial parietal lobe (precuneus) by one of the three radial sulci, namely, the marginal sulcus, which arises in the cingulate sulcus. The other two radial sulci are more posterior. The large parietooccipital sulcus separates the parietal precuneus from a mesial wedge of occipital lobe (cuneus), limited inferiorly by the calcarine sulcus. These two sulci meet anteriorly to join the posterior extent of the cingulate sulcus, which limits dorsally the isthmus of the cingulate gyrus as it sweeps around the posterior end (splenium) of the corpus callosum. As the cingulate gyrus courses infero-anteriorly around the splenium, it blends with the parahippocampal gyrus, in the most medial aspect of the temporal lobe. Hidden in the recess between the temporal horn of the lateral ventricle and the lateral aspect of the midbrain, the hippocampal gyrus courses anteriorly latero-superior to the parahippocampal gyrus, separated from it by the hippocampal sulcus. Anteriorly, they converge into a small nub (the uncus) that contains the amygdalar nuclear complex.

The inferior aspect of the hemisphere comprises the orbital surface of the frontal lobe and the inferomedial aspects of the occipital and temporal lobes (see Fig. 20.1B). A few irregular orbital gyri and a medially located straight gyrus (gyrus rectus), which lies medial to the olfactory bulb and tract, make up the orbitofrontal surface. The demarcation between the temporal and the occipital lobes is indistinct on their inferior aspect. A fusiform or occipitotemporal gyrus, anterolaterally, and a lingual gyrus, posteromedially, can be distinguished on the swath that lies between the collateral sulcus (lateral to the parahippocampal gyrus) and the inferior temporal gyrus.

In addition to the frontal and temporal lobe asymmetries mentioned above, the right frontal lobe is often larger than the left, and the left occipital lobe is larger than the right [187,271]. Such anatomic asymmetries may reflect the localization of language and other functional specialization of each cerebral hemisphere. In general, the right hemisphere is dominant for tasks requiring spatial and constructional skills, as well as for directed attention and body image, while the left hemisphere is dominant for language and motor functions, as well as linguistic thought and reasoning, analytic and mathematical skills, and the temporal sequencing of stimuli. The right hemisphere is also dominant for non-visuospatial perception, including somesthetic, auditory (melody and tone discrimination), and emotional functions (e.g., the comprehension of emotional tone in voice and body gestures).

The convoluted pattern on the surface of the cerebral hemispheres emerges during ontogenesis to accommodate into the smallest volume the large expansion of cortical gray matter (cortex) that characterizes...
the human brain. Six layers of cells (neurons) can be distinguished in most of the cortex (neocortex) (Fig. 20.3). From surface to depth, they have been termed (a) the molecular layer, rich in fibers; (b) the external granular layer, composed of small round or star-shaped neurons; (c) the external pyramidal layer, containing medium-sized pyramidal neurons, their larger apical dendrites oriented toward the surface; (d) the internal granular layer, which, in addition to small, round neurons contains a thick plexus of horizontally directed fibers; (e) the internal pyramidal or ganglionic layer, constituted by the larger pyramidal neurons; and (f) the multiform layer, made up of spindle-shaped neurons. Two small areas in the inferomedial aspect of the hemispheres have a simpler cortex: the olfactory area (paleocortex) and the hippocampal formation (archicortex). Except for the primary visual cortex in binocular primates, in which this number is doubled, the number of neurons in a column (see Fig. 20.3) through the depth of the neocortex is the same in different cortical areas and mammalian species [401]. In humans, the cortex is thicker to accommodate the same number of neurons that are further spread apart by the richer network of connections.

Although it is six-layered throughout, the neocortex is not homogeneous. In areas that receive a heavy sensory projection, the granular layers are more bulky than the pyramidal layers (granular cortex or koniocortex, see Fig. 20.3). The opposite holds true for the areas in which the larger motor projections to the brainstem and spinal cord originate (agranular or pyramidal cortex). Actually, the cortex may be parceled according to the cellular composition (cytoarchitecture) of the various cortical areas. Brodmann cytoarchitectural map (Fig. 20.4) depicts 50 areas [62]. Better image processing techniques combining histological and “in vivo” imaging data and the use of other cortical markers, such as neurotransmitter receptor density, herald the arrival of more accurate, computer-guided, probabilistic maps of the human cortex [513].

The cerebral hemispheres process intraindividual and extraindividual information. Most of the latter input reaches the primary cortical areas through the thalamus. Information concerning the interior homeostasis travels from the brainstem and hypothalamus through the medial thalamus, reaching mainly the pericallosal, mesial temporal, insular, and orbital cortex (limbic lobe). In order to act, both of these systems need to be “activated” by the brainstem reticular formation.

The main anatomic connections of the cortex are listed in Table 20.1. As a summary, the retro-Rolandic...
FIG. 20.4. Brodmann parcellation of the lateral (A) and medial (B) aspects of the cerebral hemispheres according to the specific cytoarchitecture of each area [62]. Primary sensory areas are in darker blue, primary motor in darker red, and limbic structures in yellow hues.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function Type</th>
<th>Origin</th>
<th>Cortical Area</th>
<th>Destination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Viscerosensory</td>
<td>Heart, gastrointestinal and genitourinary</td>
<td>Posterior insula</td>
<td>Anterior insula</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tracts</td>
<td>Somatosensory cortex</td>
<td>Anterior cingulate cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Olfactory bulb</td>
<td>Piriform (temporal uncus and surrounding cortex, area 23)</td>
<td>Hippocampus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Taste</td>
<td>Ventroposteromedial thalamic nucleus</td>
<td>Paramesencephalic portion of parietal operculum</td>
<td>Amygdala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vision</td>
<td>Primary visual area</td>
<td>Lateral geniculate body</td>
<td>Parastriate cortex (area 18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Peristriate cortex (area 19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pulvinar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Superior colliculus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Middle frontal gyrus (area 8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Inferior parietal lobule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Temporal lobe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auditory</td>
<td>Primary auditory area</td>
<td>Striate area</td>
<td>Parastriate cortex (area 18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lateral geniculate body</td>
<td>Peristriate cortex (area 19)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pulvinar</td>
<td>Planum temporale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Foot of middle frontal gyrus (area 5a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motor areas</td>
<td>Thalamus (ventrobasal nuclear complex)</td>
<td>Second somatosensory area</td>
<td>Postcentral gyrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(upper back of Sylvian fissure, adjacent to the insula)</td>
<td>Supplementary motor area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Somatosensory areas</td>
<td>Superior parietal lobule</td>
<td>Precentral gyrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(receptors on contralateral side of the body or bilateral)</td>
<td>Supramarginal gyrus</td>
<td>Mesial parietal cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Angular gyrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Muscle spindles</td>
<td>Precuneus</td>
<td>Mesial temporal cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cutaneous receptors for “texture”</td>
<td>Angular gyrus</td>
<td>Orbitofrontal cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Deep tissue (joints, aponeuroses), “shape”</td>
<td>Precuneus</td>
<td>Frontal association cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Painful stimuli</td>
<td>Thalamus (ventrobasal nuclear complex)</td>
<td>Granular part of parietal operculum</td>
<td>Supplementary motor area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second somatosensory areas</td>
<td>Areas 2 and 5</td>
<td>Superior parietal lobule</td>
<td>Precentral gyrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Superior portion (leg, trunk, arm)</td>
<td>Supramarginal gyrus</td>
<td>Mesial parietal cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Inferior portion (neck, head)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Angular gyrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tertiary somatosensory areas (cortical sensory convergence zones)</td>
<td>Precuneus</td>
<td>Angular gyrus</td>
<td>Mesial temporal cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Posterior cingulate gyrus (area 23)</td>
<td>Orbifrontal cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Peristriate belt (area 19)</td>
<td>Frontal association cortex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Precuneus</td>
<td>Supplementary motor area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Posterior portion of superior and middle temporal gyr</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Inferomedial temporal cortex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motor areas</td>
<td>Thalamus (VL) (from cerebellum and basal ganglia)</td>
<td>Precentral gyrus (area 4), somatotopically organized (see Fig 20.6)</td>
<td>Striatum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Somatosensory areas</td>
<td>Supplementary motor area</td>
<td>Brainstem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Supplementary motor area (mesial frontal)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Spenal cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Premotor” cortex</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Cerebral Hemispheres

TABLE 20.1
Cerebral Hemispheric Connections (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function Type</th>
<th>Origin</th>
<th>Cortical Area</th>
<th>Destination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Supplementary motor area</td>
<td>Precentral gyrus (area 4)</td>
<td>Supplementary motor areas</td>
<td>Precentral gyrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>First and second primary somatosensory areas</td>
<td></td>
<td>Striatum (caudate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cingulate gyrus</td>
<td></td>
<td>Pontine nuclei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frontal eye fields</td>
<td>Peristriate cortex (area 19)</td>
<td>Foot of the middle frontal gyrus (area 8)</td>
<td>Midbrain and pontine reticular formation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cervical cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary association motor areas</td>
<td>Multimodal parieto-occipito-temporal areas (angular gyrus, precuneus)</td>
<td>“Premotor” frontal cortex (areas 6, 8, 9, 44, 45)</td>
<td>Primary motor areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Prefrontal” areas, orbitofrontal cortex</td>
<td></td>
<td>Secondary sensory areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anterior cingulate gyrus (area 24)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Striatum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Thalamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Brainstem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tertiary association motor areas</td>
<td>Anteromedial thalamus</td>
<td>“Prefrontal cortex” (areas 9, 10, 11)</td>
<td>Same as origin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Temporal pole</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anterior portion of cingulate gyrus (area 24)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Angular gyrus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Precuneus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Areas involved in mnestic processes</td>
<td>Association motor and sensory areas</td>
<td>Temporal lobe</td>
<td>Same as origin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medial thalamus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medial hypothalamus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

portion of the cerebral hemispheres is chiefly involved in the processing of sensory information about the outside world and about the motor acts being performed by the individual. Both of these, but particularly the latter, require the integration of sensory information of different modalities (visual, somatosensory, and so on). Lesions in the “primary” sensory areas cause loss of a specific sensory modality. These primary areas are listed in Table 20.1 (Fig. 20.5). The cortex surrounding the primary sensory areas processes the modality-specific information and integrates it with information from other sense organs and information about the physiologic milieu of the individual.

Simply stated, the cortex adjacent to the primary sensory areas (secondary sensory areas) processes unimodal sensory information, often keeping a somatotopic organization, whereas the cortex lying between the different secondary sensory areas (tertiary sensory cortex) integrates multimodal sensory information. For instance, somatosensory information from spinothalamic pathways reaches somatotopically the postcentral gyrus (Fig. 20.6), which projects somatotopically to the superior (arm and leg) and inferior (head) parietal lobules. Somatotopic information is integrated with auditory and visual information in the interoposterior portions of the inferior parietal lobule (angular gyrus) [314] and with visual and vegetative information in the posteromedial portions of the parietal lobe (precuneus). Lesions of the primary somatosensory area result in sensory loss, whereas lesions in the multimodal association areas result in motor performances that show the lack of multimodal integration. For instance, bilateral lesions of the posterior portion of the superior parietal lobule give rise to impairment of hand movements under visual guidance [98].

The activation of primary, secondary, and multimodal sensory areas is highly stimulus-specific and task-specific. As an example, the left posterior superior temporal gyrus is activated by acoustic changes in speech as well as nonspeech sounds, whereas the left supramarginal gyrus, a multimodal association area, is more specifically engaged in the detection of changes in phonological units, a task that is multimodal [80]. Attention to complex or nuanced sensory tasks, like detecting a specific target syllable, enhances sensory performance and requires more cortical activation [247,494]. It is likely that this activation is accomplished through an attentional network described below in more detail under Disturbances of Attention [339]. Cortical areas of the retroRolandic brain that “gate” the activation of primary and secondary sensory areas are located around the intraparietal sulcus and in the tempo-occipital...
region (130,163,231). Prefrontal, insular and cingulate cortex also modulate the activation of sensory areas (88,130,402).

The pre-Rolandic portion of the hemispheres contains programs concerned with planning, initiation, and execution of movements. The mesial frontal cortex (cingulate gyrus, supplementary motor area) is closely linked with the reticular activating system and the limbic lobe. It appears to mediate the drive to move in a meaningful direction (cortical attention). Although seemingly alert, patients with large bilateral lesions in this region remain motionless and mute (akinetic mutism) (275). From the limbic system, information about past events and their bearing on the well-being of the individual reaches the anterior portions of the frontal lobe, where it is integrated with sensory information from the thalamus and from the multimodal association areas of the hemisphere. Thus, the best course of action within a temporal framework is delineated. The frontal cortex rostral to the precentral gyrus mediates complex motor programs, which are elicited under the “command” of the mesial frontal region and executed by way of the subcortical nuclei (basal ganglia, brainstem nuclei) and primary motor cortex. The primary motor cortex plays a greater role in the execution of fine, distal movements, whereas axial movements, such as walking, are mediated, to a greater extent, by subcortical structures. The cerebellum and the sensory nuclei of the brainstem, including the vestibular complex, provide the motor system with essential feedback information.

This brief introduction has attempted to highlight the main framework of the incredibly complex structure of the cerebral hemispheres, which is still far from clear. Some understanding of the anatomic structure facilitates the identification of the most likely location of a cerebral hemispheric lesion based on its clinical consequences.

**Symptoms and Signs Caused by Cerebral Hemispheric Lesions**

Lesions of the phylogenetically most recent part of the central nervous system differ in their manifestations.
The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Cerebral Hemispheres

minimize this problem and allow the examiner to arrive at a much more accurate picture of the nature, and therefore the localization, of the patient’s disturbance. Of course, the luxury of repeated examinations is unaffordable when a quick decision has to be reached in an emergency management situation, but it should be available when planning the long-term management and rehabilitation of these patients.

When obtaining the history pertinent to a cerebral hemispheric lesion, the examiner must realize that the patient is often unaware of the extent of the deficit, particularly when it involves complex (multimodal) behavior (aphasia, apraxia). Patients with right-hemisphere lesions tend to be impervious to their deficit more often than patients with left-hemisphere lesions. Anton syndrome, in which the patient denies an otherwise obvious blindness that is related to a cortical parietooccipital lesion, is only one instance of such lack of insight. Something similar occurs with other hemisphere-related sensory deficits. Their extent and quality are less precise than when the sensory loss is caused by lesions in more elementary structures of the nervous system, such as the brainstem or a sensory peripheral nerve. Most patients with an ulnar neuropathy can outline a precise area of numbness in the medial aspect of their hands. By contrast, a patient with a hemispheric lesion, even affecting the primary somatosensory cortex of the postcentral gyrus, may have a difficult time localizing the area of sensory loss. This characteristic of hemispheric lesions, combined with the difficulty of eliciting all the deficits in a short interview, make it often necessary to obtain information from people who know the patient well in order to localize a cortical lesion correctly.

For adequate localization, multimodal deficits, such as alexia, must be analyzed. The patient may be unable to understand written material because his saccades to the left side are incomplete, leading him to miss the beginning of words and sentences (right frontoparietal lesion), or because he cannot grasp the meaning of an array of strokes that make up a written word (left occipital lesion). It behooves the examiner to go beyond the obvious disturbance and try to understand its structure and the primary defect responsible for it.

The neurologic deficit caused by cerebral hemispheric lesions tends to be more inconsistent than deficits related to lesions in the lower echelons of the nervous system. Reduced attention, which may be related to the time of the day, a noisy environment, or lack of adequate stimuli, is only one of the many factors that can influence the outcome of a given neurologic examination. Typical of partial multimodal deficits, such as aphasia, is that the patient comes up periodically with the correct performance, leaving the junior clinician wondering about the extent of the patient’s deficit. Repeated interviews from those that affect more primitive levels. Thus, the greater plasticity of the hemispheres, mediated by the large number of cortical neurons, and the existence of redundant pathways result in less pronounced deficits with lesions that, had they affected a similar volume of the brainstem or spinal cord, would have caused a major motor or sensory disturbance [89,144]. Plasticity and redundancy also explain that destruction of cortical areas that are activated by a specific task on functional neuroimaging may not cause lasting clinical findings related to that task unless the lesion is relatively large [145,492].

The neurologic deficit caused by cerebral hemispheric lesions tends to be more inconsistent than deficits related to lesions in the lower echelons of the nervous system. Reduced attention, which may be related to the time of the day, a noisy environment, or lack of adequate stimuli, is only one of the many factors that can influence the outcome of a given neurologic examination. Typical of partial multimodal deficits, such as aphasia, is that the patient comes up periodically with the correct performance, leaving the junior clinician wondering about the extent of the patient’s deficit. Repeated interviews

![Cortical representation](image-url)

**FIG. 20.6.** Cortical representation (according to Penfield and Jasper [375]) of the different parts of the body in the perirolandic motor and sensory areas. The frontal pole of the brain is represented in the left portion of the figure.
identification of the area of the cerebral hemispheres most likely to be injured in the context of a set of symptoms and signs does not mean that the function lost is "localized" in that area of the brain. Most cortical functions are subserved by extensive networks. Functional neuroimaging may be used to help define some of the functions likely to be impaired in an individual if a part of the cortex is lesioned, for instance, in the course of surgery to remove a tumor or an epileptogenic area [288,396].

Because most hemispheric functions are subserved by extensive networks, often complementary and redundant, single lesions may be clinically silent and become symptomatic when additional lesions impair the function of the network [483]. Multiple lesions may occur simultaneously or separated by any length of time.

For the sake of rationalization, the complex and fluid clinical picture displayed by patients with cerebral lesions has been compartmentalized into syndromes. It should be realized, however, that often the difference between syndromes is merely one of degree. A similar amount of tissue loss underlies the global aphasia that a patient has a few days after infarction and the Broca (motor) aphasia that eventually develops some months later. Also, initially the localization of the deficit is compounded not only by edema and metabolic abnormalities at the site of the lesion but also by dysfunction (diaschisis) of areas of the brain away from the primarily damaged region, particularly those heavily interconnected with it, such as the homologous area of the contralateral hemisphere [224,285].

Lesions that affect the same portion of the cerebral hemispheres may present very different clinical pictures depending on the tempo and nature of the damage. Sudden, "through" lesions, such as infarcts that destroy all the neurons in a portion of the cortex, tend to cause a more severe deficit than tumors that slowly infiltrate the same area of the brain. For instance, small infarcts often cause aphasia, but tumors have to be quite large before they cause an aphasic syndrome. Weakness may be rather profound after a small infarct, but a tumor seldom causes severe weakness until it extensively involves a cerebral hemisphere. Thus, localization for diffuse lesions is less accurate. Because of the plasticity of the hemispheres, however, as time elapses after an acute, "through" lesion, its clinical manifestations may resemble those of an infiltrative lesion of the same area. Rather than being restricted to a lobe or gyrus, many pathologic processes (e.g., Alzheimer disease, encephalitis) affect the hemispheres in a diffuse or disseminated fashion. A combination of deficits, which are predominantly manifestations of bilateral damage to the multimodal association cortex, then constitutes the clinical presentation. In these instances, neuroimaging findings are particularly helpful to try to correlate functional deficits with regional brain anatomy or function. For instance, the clinical varieties of primary progressive aphasia correspond to atrophy of relatively specific areas of the left perisylvian cortex [189].

Cortical plasticity results in a more complete recovery from elementary neurologic deficits, such as weakness or numbness, although more complex motor or sensory deficits may remain. At the bedside or in a quick office visit, these are more difficult to detect than elementary deficits, even though they may be very disruptive to the patient's professional and family life [184]. Functional recovery following cortical lesions or developmental disorders is mediated by functional reorganization of the cortex, where a sound cortical area, either in the same or opposite hemisphere assumes the functions formerly subserved by the lesioned area [67,134,161,272,504]. Particularly with subcortical lesions, the newly responsible cortical area is generally larger than the original one, at least shortly after the insult, possibly reflecting a less efficient neuronal network [306]. The area of activation shrinks as training progresses and the deficit improves [493]. However in some instances activity in the contralateral hemisphere may seem to interfere with the functional recovery, suggesting the need of new rehabilitation paradigms [352].

Because cortical plasticity is mediated by extensive multisynaptic arrays, which are susceptible to metabolic disturbances that interfere with the elaboration and processing of neurotransmitters, toxic metabolic insults affecting the whole brain impair particularly the functions newly acquired in the process of "repair" of a focal lesion [149]. Thus, they may bring about again a clinical deficit that had been well compensated. For instance, a patient with a mild residual difficulty in naming objects following a large lesion of the dominant temporal lobe, which initially caused a severe sensory aphasia, may again become unable to understand conversational speech when she suffers a bout of pneumonia.

Lesions that affect the cortex selectively (e.g., hypoxic laminar necrosis) give rise to a clinical picture that differs from lesions circumscribed to the white matter (e.g., multiple sclerosis).

Characteristic of cortical lesions are (a) seizures and (b) multimodal motor and sensory deficits, such as aphasia and apraxia. Although subcortical lesions may cause aphasic symptoms, these are seldom as pronounced or long lasting as they are with cortical lesions.

Characteristics of white matter lesions are (a) weakness, (b) spasticity, (c) visual field deficits, (d)
“pure” motor syndromes, and (c) urinary incontinence. Lesions that involve the white matter of the hemispheres cause symptoms that are referable to the cortical region giving rise to the white matter tract involved.

More than any other part of the nervous system, the cerebral hemispheres are amenable to lesion localization provided by neuroimaging, including computed tomography (CT) and MRI [325]. PET and single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT) depict not only the primary anatomic lesion but also the metabolic or perfusion change in areas functionally related to it (diaschisis). The extent of changes on PET or SPECT often correlate better with the severity of clinical symptoms and signs than the CT or MRI abnormalities [282,340]. The clinical evaluation of a patient with a cerebral hemispheric lesion is still paramount for a lucid management plan. Lesions as common as brain infarcts may remain invisible on CT scan for some time after the ictus or may pass unnoticed altogether if they are restricted to the cortex or cause coagulative necrosis. Diffusion-weighted MRI depicts them earlier and provides information on the timing of the lesion [226]. Tumors are easily detected on CT scan or MRI, but disorders such as Alzheimer disease cause more subtle findings on these neuroimaging modalities. Although there are quite specific structural and metabolic changes in samples of Alzheimer patients, a single neuroimaging study still does not provide the diagnosis in the individual patient [321]. Cortical lesions giving rise to focal epilepsy, or white matter lesions in multiple sclerosis, are more often evidenced by MRI than CT, but they occasionally remain undiscovered [317,409]. Finally, a good understanding of the anatomic correlation of behavioral symptoms allows the clinician to correlate the neuroimaging findings with the presenting complaints, thus avoiding the mistake of managing as an active lesion one that bears no relation to the present illness (such as hydrocephalus in a patient with Alzheimer disease), or of having a false sense of security when a negative scan fails to disclose an active lesion (such as in multiple sclerosis).

Because the output of the brain is ultimately a motor output, no matter where in the cerebral hemispheres a lesion has occurred, the physician becomes aware of it by observing the patient’s motor performance. Such a motor performance depends on (a) the patient’s level of alertness, mediated by the ascending reticular activating system; (b) the ability to concentrate on a task (cortical attention); (c) the perception of sensory stimuli and of their relation to past experiences; and (d) the ability to carry out the sequence of movements that makes up the motor act itself, whether it be a handshake or an oral account of the current illness. Hemispheric lesions can disturb any or several of the last three steps. The resulting disorders are considered successively (Table 20.2).

Vegetative Disturbances

Hemispheric strokes, and particularly subarachnoid hemorrhage, may be attended by cardiac disorders, including Takotsubo cardiomyopathy, which is characterized by transient left ventricular apical ballooning [507]. These disorders have been associated primarily with insular cortex damage or damage of posterior circulation structures [507]. The correlation of autonomic disturbances, including for instance a tendency for gastrointestinal bleeding, with acute stroke is complex, as the large hemispheric strokes associated with these disturbances typically compress the hypothalamus and other subcortical areas, or, as in the case of subarachnoid hemorrhage, impair their metabolism [274]. Epilepsy is also associated with autonomic disorders. Asystole may rarely occur during temporal lobe seizures, which are more often accompanied by ictal bradycardia [424,472]. Pallor and ictal vomiting are characteristic of a type of childhood seizures with occipital or extra-occipital spikes (Panayiotopoulos syndrome) [70]. Ictal mydriasis has been described ipsilateral to a chronic hematoma spanning the subcortical insula, temporal lobe and hypothalamus [171].

Disturbances of Attention

Attention may be defined as the waking state in which sensory or mnestic information is selectively perceived, allowing the coherent performance of planned motor behavior. This selectivity is associated with unawareness of a great deal of irrelevant stimuli and memories. It results from active neural facilitatory and inhibitory processes taking place at various levels of the nervous system, from the peripheral sense organs to the cortex. Although attention requires a certain level of alertness, alertness is not always associated with attention. Such is the case of the akinetic mute state, in which the patient appears alert, yet lies immobile and mute, while his eyes dart in the direction of any novel stimulus. Alertness, which precedes attention, can be nonspecific (such as in the alerting reaction that occurs when a person adopts an exploratory, attitude to the immediate environment, becoming receptive to a great deal of stimuli) or specific (when the meaning of the most significant stimulus is recognized and alertness is specifically and steadily directed toward it). The latter is more properly called attention. Concerning its origin, attention may be “passive” (involuntarily
### TABLE 20.2  Clinical Manifestations of Cerebral Hemispheric Lesions

| I. Vegetative disturbances | 3. Alexia  
| II. Attentional disturbances | a. Pseudoalexia  
| A. Unilateral inattention | b. Lateral alexia  
| 1. Sensory (attentional deficit) | c. Alexia without agraphia  
| a. Unimodal (double simultaneous stimulation) | d. Alexia with agraphia  
| b. Multimodal | 4. Visual anosognosia  
| 2. Motor (intentional disorder or hemiakinesia) | a. Unilateral—hemianopic anosognosia  
| B. Nonspatial inattention | b. Bilateral—denial of blindness (Anton syndrome)  
| 1. Motor or verbal impersistence |  
| 2. Motor or verbal perseveration |  
| 3. Echolalia, echopraxia |  
| 4. Akinetic mutism |  
| 5. Intrusions |  
| a. Verbal |  
| b. Motor |  
| III. Emotional disturbances |  
| A. Because of diencephalic or brainstem lesions (accompanying somnolence, rage or fear of hypothalamic origin, or amnesia) |  
| B. Distorted perception of noxious stimuli |  
| 1. Blunted (cingulated gyrus, temporal tip) |  
| 2. Heightened (septal region) |  
| C. Distorted perception of other sensory stimuli |  
| 1. Blunted |  
| a. Wernicke aphasia |  
| b. Sensory aprosodia |  
| 2. Heightened |  
| a. Delusions |  
| b. Perception without object (hallucinations) |  
| D. Distorted perception of social nuances |  
| 1. Blunted (frontal) |  
| 2. Heightened (temporal) |  
| E. Distorted motor expression of emotions |  
| 1. Hypokinesia; motor aprosodias (frontal, right hemisphere) |  
| 2. Hyperkinesia, including agitated delirium (mesial temporoparietal) |  
| 3. Uninhibited emotional expression. Pathologic laughter and crying (bilateral corticobulbar tract) |  
| IV. Memory disturbances |  
| V. Sensory disturbances |  
| A. Smell |  
| B. Taste |  
| C. Vision (calcarine cortex, visual association cortex, multimodal cortex) |  
| 1. Hallucinations |  
| a. Simple |  
| b. Complex |  
| 2. Visual agnosia |  
| a. Apperceptive |  
| b. Associative |  
| c. Color blindness (achromatopsia)—color agnosia |  
| d. Prosopagnosia |  
| e. Landmark agnosia |  
| f. Visual simultanagnosia (Balint syndrome) |  
| g. Motion perception impairment |  
| VI. Disturbances of sensorimotor integration and movement execution (parietal, frontal) |  
| A. Apraxia |  
| 1. Parietal apraxia |  
| 2. Callosal apraxia |  
| 3. Frontal apraxia |  
| 4. Apraxia of gait |  
| 5. Limb-kinetic apraxia |  
| B. Other disturbances of limb or face movements |  
| 1. “Pyramidal” weakness |  
| 2. Paratonia ("Gagenhalten") |  
| 3. Primitive reflexes |  
| a. Grasp |  
| b. Palmomental |  
| c. Snucking, snout, rooting |  
| d. Corneomandibular |  
| 4. Opercular syndrome, pseudobulbar palsy |  
| | |
TABLE 20.2

Clinical Manifestations of Cerebral Hemispheric Lesions (Continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VI. Disturbances of movement execution (Continued)</th>
<th>VII. Disturbances related to interhemispheric disconnection (callosal syndrome)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C. Ocular motor disturbances</td>
<td>A. Lack of kinesthetic transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Supranuclear gaze palsy</td>
<td>1. Inability to mimic position of the contralateral hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Lateral eye deviation on forcible lid closure</td>
<td>2. Left-hand apraxia; left-hand apraxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Gaze apraxia (Balint syndrome)</td>
<td>3. Right-hand constructional apraxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Motor disturbances of goal-oriented behavior</td>
<td>4. Intermuscular conflict (alien left hand)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Motor (anterior) aphasias</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Pure word anarthria (phonetic disintegration syndrome)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Broca aphasia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Transcortical motor aphasia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Pure agraphia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. Disturbances of goal-oriented behavior</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| VIII. Dementia                                    |

triggered by external stimuli and basic drives) or “active” (voluntarily generated and directed). Active attention is mediated by a dorsal system including the superior parietal lobule and the superior portion of the dorsal prefrontal cortex [89]. Both hemispheres participate in active or goal-directed attention. By contrast, the system activated by external stimuli is lateralized to the right hemisphere, particularly in right-handed individuals [155]. Instead of being dorsal, as the active one, it involves cortex of the inferior parietal lobule, posterior portion of the superior temporal gyrus and inferior portion of the prefrontal cortex [89]. This alerting network seems to interrupt ongoing cognitive activity when a stimulus that might be important is detected. As the right hemisphere provides alerting mechanisms for both sides of the body, attentional impairment occurs more often and is more pervasive with right-sided hemispheric lesions. Finally, attention to and processing of information stored previously is carried out by a network that includes the precuneus, medial prefrontal cortex and medial temporal regions (Fig. 20.7) [65]. This network is currently called the default or resting network because it becomes deactivated by tasks that require attention to external stimuli. It has at least two components: the medial parieto-frontal cortex is more involved in processing self-relevant, affective decisions, while the medial temporal lobe subsystem becomes engaged when decisions involve constructing a mental scene on the basis of memory [12].

Cortical alerting mechanisms are activated by brainstem structures. The mesencephalic reticular formation projects to the cortex in a diffuse polysynaptic fashion, with this projection likely traveling via the thalamus or basal forebrain [215,458]. Stimulation of the mesencephalic reticular formation is associated with arousal, bilateral destruction of the mesencephalic reticular formation results in coma, and unilateral lesions of the mesencephalic reticular formation result in contralateral inattention.
Localization in Clinical Neurology

Brain regions that participate in attentional mechanisms can be separated into two broad categories: activated sensory areas and the brain structures that activate them. Areas of sensory cortex are activated that are relevant in a given moment. For instance, when attending to the color of an object, the lingual gyrus, containing secondary visual association cortex is activated [58]. The activating structures form a network of distributed processing, with nodes that play a larger role in one or another area of attentional mechanisms. As Mesulam said in his earlier reviews and implies in his most recent, the inferior parietal lobule sculpts the subjective attentional landscape, whereas premotor areas of the frontal lobe plan the strategy for navigating it [339]. The cingulate gyrus detects conflicting processes during task performance that might be associated with errors [71,74]. It may inject into the attentional network the relevance for survival of a particular situation. A posterior tempo-occipital area seems to mediate the shift of the attentional focus across the visual scene [178]. Activation of these cortical areas requires input from the basal ganglia through the thalamus. In addition to relaying to the cortex sensory and basal ganglionic information, the thalamus plays a key role in attentional mechanisms, not only through the reticular nucleus but also through the pulvinar, heavily connected to the parietal and frontal attentional areas. All these anatomic structures, interconnected to each other, work in unison to provide the complex mechanisms involved in maintaining attention (Fig. 20.8). Lesions of any of the components of the resultant network or their interconnections, including the fiber bundles in the hemispheric white matter, can result in neglect [339]. For instance, disruption of the superior occipitofrontal fasciculus, a poorly known parietal-frontal pathway, causes neglect in humans [469]. Neglect resulting from unilateral posterior parietal lesions is characterized mostly by sensory extinction, whereas neglect associated with frontal or basal ganglionic lesions includes a disruption of exploratory and orienting movements toward the neglected hemispace [96,448].

Stimulus significance is determined by the needs of the organism. The limbic system, closely related to the hypothalamus and other areas important for the maintenance of homeostasis, and the frontal lobes, critical for the evaluation and planning of a future course of action, are important in stimulus processing. Not surprisingly, the inferior parietal lobe has prominent connections with the frontal lobe and cingulate gyrus [215,216,499].

Disorders of attention due to hemispheric lesions may affect the patient’s behavior toward events in one side of personal and extrapersonal space (hemi-inattention, or spatial inattention) or nonspatial cognitive functions.

UNILATERAL INATTENTION

Unilateral inattention or neglect is characterized by one or more of the following findings: (a) Hemi-inattention, which is the patient’s lack of orienting responses to unilateral novel stimuli (auditory, visual or tactile) in the absence of a primary sensory or motor deficit that could explain such behavior [215].

(b) Extinction on double simultaneous stimulation, tested most often with tactile or visual stimuli that the patient perceives on the affected side on single, but not on simultaneous stimulation of both sides.
(c) Hemiakinesia or motor neglect, when the patient tends to direct all his or her activity to one hemispace. (d) Allosthesia, when contralesional stimuli are attributed to the ipsilateral side. Although frequently associated, these deficits result from damage to different portions of the attentional network, and therefore some but not others may be seen in a given patient [460]. Anosognosia, etymologically, lack of awareness of disease and, in this case, of neurological impairment is often seen with right hemispheric lesions [135]. However, it need not be associated with a neglect syndrome and often it is not [460]. Neglect may be primarily sensory (attentional defect) or primarily motor (intentional disorder or hemiakinesia) [215].

**Sensory Inattention.** Sensory inattention may be unimodal (e.g., visual inattention), in which case stimuli of a specific sensory modality are less well perceived on one side. Most commonly, these patients have extinction to double simultaneous stimulation, failing to report stimuli delivered to the side contralesional to the lesion. This clinical finding may be explained because stimuli from one side of the body compete with stimuli from the contralateral side for cortical activation [150]. However, cortical activation of the affected hemisphere may be present even when the patient does not see a visual stimulus in the affected hemispace [395]. In a given patient, it may be difficult to distinguish between hemianesthesia or hemianopia and severe somesthetic or visual hemi-attention. Occasionally, visual inattention may be distinguished from hemianopia by changing the hemispace of presentation [270]. Thus, a patient who could not detect single stimuli presented in the left visual field when the eyes were directed straight ahead (midsagittal plane) or toward the left hemispace could detect stimuli in the same retinotopic position when the eyes were directed toward the right hemispace, so that the left visual half-field was in the right hemispace [270]. This patient had hemispatial visual inattention masquerading as hemianopia.

Unilateral lesions of primary cortex cause contralateral unimodal sensory loss, whereas lesions of unimodal association cortex impair the perception of contralateral versus ipsilateral stimuli of that modality. For example, lesions affecting areas 18 and 19 (the association areas of vision) in the parietooccipital region cause extinction of a contralateral visual stimulus on bilateral visual stimulation. Lesions in the anterior association areas of the parietal lobe (the association area for soft touch) cause contralateral extinction of double simultaneous tactile stimuli [215].

The other and more common variety of unilateral sensory inattention is multimodal. These patients neglect the hemispace contralateral to the lesion when performing complex tasks such as dressing, in which they may fail to cover the neglected side (dressing apraxia), or drawing, in which elements of a picture may be placed in an abnormal spatial relationship to one another (constructional apraxia). Patients with personal inattention may deny that their own limbs belong to them or may identify the examiner's limb as their own.

Patients with spatial neglect may be able to detect contralesional visual stimuli and may not even have extinction but may fail to act on contralesional stimuli.
stimuli presented in space. They may fail to act in left hemispace (egocentric hemispatial neglect) or may fail to act on the left side of the stimulus (allocentric spatial neglect) [215]. Spatial neglect is tested by the line bisection test, by cancellation tasks (the patient is asked to cross out all lines presented randomly on a sheet of paper), or by having the patient copy drawings. Although spatial neglect is most often described in the horizontal plane (left spatial neglect), vertical (altitudinal) neglect (due to bilateral parietooccipital lesions with Balint syndrome) and radial neglect have been described [394,442].

Perhaps akin to allesthesias, involving in this case auditory stimuli is the “response-to-next-patient-stimulation syndrome” seen with right hemispheric stroke, in which patients responded to stimuli directed at other patients as if the stimuli were directed at them [52].

Contralateral inattention occurs most commonly with lesions of the inferior parietal lobule but may also occur with lesions of the temporoparietal-occipital junction, dorsolateral frontal lobe, cingulate gyrus, insular cortex, thalamus, and mesencephalic reticular formation [98,215,308,309,495–497]. These areas have shown activation in attentional tasks [74,130,178,231,446].

Lesions causing hemispatial neglect are similar to those causing inattention and extinction. Lesions of the right inferior parietal lobule are especially apt to cause this syndrome. The severity of neglect is increased with both the size of the lesion and the degree of prior diffuse cortical damage [298]. Sensory extinction and hemispatial neglect may also occur with lesions of the insula [309], striatum and internal capsule [211], or with lesions affecting the caudate nucleus, lenticular nuclei, and surrounding white matter tracts (i.e., lesions that disrupt the cortico-striato-nigral-collicular pathway) [298,412,480].

These disorders appear more readily and profoundly with lesions of the right hemisphere, which is nondominant for language. Electrophysiologic studies have indicated that the nondominant hemisphere mediates attentional mechanisms directed to both hemispheres, whereas the left hemisphere is mainly concerned with the right hemispace [264]. This hypothesis has been further supported by clinical studies that have demonstrated that patients with right brain pathology are more likely to make ipsilateral attentional errors than patients with left brain lesions [502], although left-sided extinction has rarely been reported after left hemisphere lesions [426]. Bilateral dichotic auditory stimulation in commissurotomized patients evidences extinction of stimuli in the left ear only [345]. Patients with neglect from right hemisphere lesions are not only inattentive to their bodies but are also distracted by extracorporeal stimuli, especially on the right [315]. Thus, the right side of the brain is dominant for distributing attention across the extrapersonal world [215,339,502].

**Hemiakinesia.** Hemiakinesia (intentional neglect) is the expression of unilateral motor neglect, characterized by a disinclination to direct orienting and exploratory behaviors with the head, eyes, and limbs into the neglected hemispace [35,339]. The patient may not look toward one side of the space, even though he or she readily reacts to sensory stimuli coming from that space, or may not move the limbs contralateral to the lesion unless specifically asked to do so, then showing good strength. Sensory neglect results from right hemispheric lesions and generally involves predominantly the left hemispace, whereas hemiakinesia may result from lesions of either hemisphere, particularly those affecting the dorsal, goal-directed, attentional network [89]. Aki-nesia affects movements toward the contralateral hemispace. Rare cases of attentional errors to the ipsilesional space are more likely with basal ganglia or frontal lesions than with retro-Rolandic lesions [261]. However, as attention and intention are closely linked, lesions in many of the areas that induce inattention and extinction may also cause akinesia. For example, lesions in areas 6 and 8 of the medial and lateral “premotor area” of the frontal lobe may cause this syndrome, which is more common and pronounced with lesions of the right hemisphere [100,159]. The dorsolateral frontal lobe has reciprocal connections with unimodal and polymodal sensory association cortices and is an area of sensory convergence. Lack of multimodal sensory feedback may explain rare cases of hemiakinesia without sensory neglect from parietal lesions [474]. As discussed in Chapter 18, thalamic lesions affecting the nonspecific intralaminar nuclei (which project to the frontal lobe) may also cause motor neglect or akinesia [498]. Akinetasia may result from lesions of the basal ganglia and ventral thalamic lesions. The basal ganglia project to the ventral thalamus, and this “motor” portion of the thalamus also receives connections from the nucleus reticularis thalami [215]. Thus, degenerative or other diseases of the basal ganglia, thalamus, limbic system, and frontal lobes may cause akinetiasia [215].

**NONSPATIAL INATTENTION**

Inattention may affect nonspatial behavior, such as the inability to concentrate on a task, with consequent motor and verbal impersistence. For instance, on instruction the patient cannot keep her arms up and eyes closed for more than a few seconds. Failure to keep the eyelids closed is a common manifestation
of motor impersistence [114]. Patients with right-sided hemispheric lesions are more likely to have motor impersistence than those with left-sided lesions, and right frontal lesions are more commonly responsible than more posterior lesions [257]. Although patients are distractible, attending to all kinds of irrelevant stimuli, they also often return inappropriately to a previous motor or verbal performance (perseveration). Whereas distractibility to external stimuli is more often seen with right-sided lesions, left frontal or caudate lesions impair predominantly the ability to divide attention between two sources (detection tasks) and to focus attention on one source (Go/No-Go tasks) [180]. In the verbal sphere, these patients are laconic or even mute and may tend to repeat sentences spoken to them or near them (echolalia) and even to imitate gestures (echopraxia). Such disturbances are most often seen in patients with advanced Alzheimer disease, who have diffuse cortical damage, or with metabolic encephalopathies, which in addition impair the subcortical alerting mechanisms. When a focal cortical lesion is responsible, it usually affects the mesial aspect of both frontal lobes. Large lesions in this location cause akinetic mutism: a state of motionlessness and speechlessness with regular sleep-wake cycles. Medial dienecphalo-mesencephalic lesions can also cause this syndrome. Behavioral changes, including short attention span, apathy, disinhibition, and affective disturbances, may occur with unilateral or bilateral caudate lesions, implying caudate modulation of prefrontal behaviors [42,335]. Inertia and loss of drive, with preservation of intellectual function, often associated with stereotyped activities with compulsive and obsessive behavior, have been described with bilateral basal ganglia lesions confined to the lentiform nuclei, particularly affecting the pallidum [42,282,461].

Perseverative behavior has been divided into three categories, each with its own anatomic correlate [416]:

1. Recurrent perseveration is a repetition of a previous response to a subsequent stimulus and is seen with left hemisphere, especially temporoparietal, lesions.
2. Stuck-in-set perseveration is an inappropriate maintenance of a category of activity and is seen with fronto-subcortical and mesolimbic lesions.
3. Continuous perseveration is an abnormal prolongation of a current activity and is seen with right hemisphere damage.

Inattention in dementing processes is also manifested in the form of abnormal verbal utterances known as intrusions [167]. An intrusion is the inappropriate recurrence of a response (or type of response) from a preceding test item, test, or procedure. Cholinergic deficiency plays a role in the genesis of intrusions in Alzheimer disease [167]. In this disorder, intrusions during free recall correlate with impaired activation of the right superior prefrontal cortex, whereas intrusions during cued recall seem to relate to impaired left anterior medial temporal activation [121]. Verbal intrusions have also been described with delirium [492]. Motor intrusions have been described in Parkinson disease [132].

Emotional Disturbances

The hypothalamus, periaqueductal gray, and several pontine and midbrain nuclei mediate some of the most primitive emotional responses, matching the ongoing metabolic variables with the parameters set for the individual species [103]. When a deviation occurs, or when the circumstances are ripe for an action that would favor the survival of the individual or the species, a preset behavioral response occurs in lower animals. Such relatively simple behavioral responses are modified in humans by phylogenetically newer structures, such as the neocortex [27]. Some cortical regions are involved in the recording and retrieval of stimuli that proved to be noxious to the individual (limbic cortex). Others allow the individual to communicate with other human beings semantically (language areas of the dominant hemisphere) or through facial expressions and other forms of “body language” (nondominant hemisphere). Still others mediate the complex balance of emotional responses needed for the survival and development of a social community (frontal lobes, temporal lobes?). Finally, the outward expression of emotion uses the motor system.

Therefore, emotions and their expression depend on the following factors:

1. The state of arousal of the individual (alertness) mediated by the reticular activating system, including some thalamic structures, and the medial frontal cortex.
2. Vegetative functions, mediated in part by periaqueductal gray and other brain stem regions, by the hypothalamus, and by limbic structures [103], as well as reward mechanisms mediated by a complex network, including dopaminergic systems and the striatum [112].
3. A previous-experience retrieval system (memory) mediated by the hippocampus and other portions of the limbic system.
4. The ability to perceive the affective component of various stimuli, such as a friendly face or a threatening utterance. Brain structures mediating this function are related to the sensory modality involved
Different types of emotional states map to quite specific subregions of the cingulate gyrus, as shown in Fig. 20.9. Patients with bilateral anterior temporal lesions have a bland affect. Lesions of the septal region cause enhanced irritability and rage reactions. Right orbitofrontal penetrating wounds may cause “edginess,” anxiety, and depression, whereas left dorsofrontal penetrating wounds cause anger and hostility [196]. Patients with epileptogenic foci in the left temporal lobe tend to be paranoid and have antisocial behavior, whereas those with right temporal foci show emotional extremes (elation, sadness) and denial [443]. Some patients with acute medial temporooccipital (i.e., the parahippocampal, lingual, and fusiform gyri) lesions become not only disoriented but also agitated and abusive (syndrome of agitated delirium) [333]. An acute confusional state and agitated delirium may also occur with lesions of the brainstem or thalamic reticular activating system, with lesions of the medial frontal lobe, and with right middle cerebral artery infarction [349].

6. The ability to express emotion, which requires more than a grossly intact motor system. Right frontal hemispheric lesions may cause impairment of the voluntary emotional intonation of speech (motor aprosodia) [405]. Lack of voluntary control of the emotional expression may adopt another form, namely, accentuated emotional expression, to the point of irrepressible laughing or crying unaccompanied by the corresponding inner feeling. Pathologic laughing or crying results from bilateral internal capsular lesions that also involve the basal ganglia; from lesions in the substantia nigra, cerebral peduncles, and hypothalamus; and from pronounced involvement of the corticobulbar fibers, such as occurs in severe suprabulbar amyotrophic lateral sclerosis [386]. Pathologic laughing requires a higher level of

![FIG. 20.9. Cingulate emotion processing.
Depicted on the medial aspect of the brain is a summary of studies showing peak activation sites during three simple emotions. Note that they occur in the cingulate gyrus with rather specific topography [486].](image)
The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Cerebral Hemispheres

Aptara

stimulus), a tendency to explore objects orally, tendency to take notice and attend to every visual below) associated with hypermetamorphosis (marked encephalitis often have memory disturbances (see behavior. Patients who survive herpes simplex that are involved in the modulation of emotional dromes has not been fully elucidated, but a few anatomical sites seem to participate in mood contr. Stimulation or disruption of circuitry near anatomical sites seem to participate in mood con- dences. Procedural memory or skill-based learning (e.g., how to use a tool) is mediated by prefrontal cortex and the basal ganglia [185,387]. Extensive lesions of the brain may impair both kinds of memory and result in the clinical syndrome of dementia, described later in this chapter. Here we will describe the localization of the more restricted amnestic syndrome for episodic memories. The cortical amnestic syndrome or state is characterized by several features [452]:

1. A multimodal impairment. Memory is affected regardless of the sensory modality in which information is presented.
2. Relative preservation of attention, concentration, visuospatial skills, language, motivation, complex perceptual abilities, and general intellectual abilities.
3. Preserved ability to retain information for short periods (immediate memory). Immediate memory is disrupted, not with medial temporal lesions that cause the typical amnestic syndrome, but by focal cortical lesions in the same areas that process a particular type of information [369]. For instance, dominant perisylvian cortex lesions impair immediate memory for verbal material, lesions in both lingual gyri impair immediate memory for faces (prosopagnosia), and lesions of the somatosensory area impair immediate tactile memory [209].

The temporal lobe contains limbic structures that are involved in the modulation of emotional behavior. Patients who survive herpes simplex encephalitis often have memory disturbances (see below) associated with hypermetamorphosis (marked tendency to take notice and attend to every visual stimulus), a tendency to explore objects orally, agnosias, eating and drinking problems, inappropriate sexual displays, irritability, easy distractibility, aggressive outbursts, emotional blunting, periods of apathy and depression, and episodes of restlessness and overactivity [122]. Patients with complex partial seizures of temporal lobe origin may demonstrate an interictal behavioral syndrome characterized by altered sexual behavior (usually hyposexuality), hypergraphia, and hyperreligiosity (e.g., sudden religious conversions, attachment to unorthodox religious groups, compulsive Bible reading) [500]. These patients may also demonstrate aggressive behavior, meticulous attention to detail, and circumstantiality of speech with prolonged and detailed explanations of even the most trivial events [500].

Memory Disturbances

Memory mechanisms differ depending on the type of information being stored in the brain. To summarize, amygdalo-hippocampal areas of the medial temporal region and other portions of Papez circuit are important for retaining events in the life of the individual or database type of information, such as the name of famous people. This kind of memory, called episodic memory is what the clinician usually calls “memory.” This section deals mostly with episodic memory and the localization of its disturbances. Procedural memory or skill-based learning (e.g., how to use a tool) is mediated by prefrontal cortex and the basal ganglia [185,387]. Extensive lesions of the brain may impair both kinds of memory and result in the clinical syndrome of dementia, described later in this chapter. Here we will describe the localization of the more restricted amnestic syndrome for episodic memories.

The cortical amnestic syndrome or state is characterized by several features [452]:

1. A multimodal impairment. Memory is affected regardless of the sensory modality in which information is presented.
2. Relative preservation of attention, concentration, visuospatial skills, language, motivation, complex perceptual abilities, and general intellectual abilities.
3. Preserved ability to retain information for short periods (immediate memory). Immediate memory is disrupted, not with medial temporal lesions that cause the typical amnestic syndrome, but by focal cortical lesions in the same areas that process a particular type of information [369]. For instance, dominant perisylvian cortex lesions impair immediate memory for verbal material, lesions in both lingual gyri impair immediate memory for faces (prosopagnosia), and lesions of the somatosensory area impair immediate tactile memory [209].

The localization of lesions affecting the cerebral hemispheres is presented.
Localization in Clinical Neurology

4. Impaired registration of new information, known as anterograde amnesia. Episodic memory is impaired but skill-based or procedural learning is generally unaffected [25,78].

5. Variable deficits in the recall of memories acquired within a certain interval before the onset of the amnestic state (retrograde amnesia). With large bilateral lesions, there is a severe memory loss for what happened several years before the event. As the memories relate to older material, they are gradually better, so that the patient remembers as any normal individual events that occurred more than 11 to 30 years before the event. How far back memories are lost depends on the degree of mesial temporal damage, on whether there is additional frontal or temporal damage, and on the type of memories. Single events are not remembered as well as autobiographically repeated events and these may not be remembered as well as semantic information. Spatial information tends to be remembered particularly well. Additional lesions of the frontal or temporal lobes may render the patient unable to access even remote memories [26].

Amnestic syndromes represent a deficit in consolidation, the set of processes whereby information held in transient, temporary form is converted to more permanent storage. Amnestic patients maintain the ability to place information in temporary stores. The consolidation deficit accounts for retrograde amnesia that extends back no more than 1 to 2 years. It is assumed that consolidative processes normally continue to fix memories into permanent form over this period. More extensive retrograde amnesia probably represents a block in the retrieval of existing memories.

The amnestic syndrome is usually due to processes that damage the medial temporal lobes, especially the amygdala and hippocampus; the anterior and dorsomedial nuclei of the thalamus; or the connections of these structures [156,193, 207]. They are part of the circuits that determine which memories warrant saving and which do not and are therefore involved in the regulation of the consolidative process [156]. According to the currently most widely accepted view, the hippocampus initially works together with the neocortex to allow memory to be encoded and then to be accessible. Subsequent reactivation of the hippocampal network reinstates activity in different neocortical networks. This coordinated replay across hippocampal—neocortical networks leads to a gradual strengthening of neocortico-neocortical connections, until the neocortical memory can be accessed independently of the hippocampus and may be integrated with pre-existing neocortical memories [156,452]. Thus, remote memories seem to be “stored” in distributed cortical networks, particularly having to do with the modalities—visual, auditory, tactile—involvement in the memory trace.

Orbitofrontal, medial prefrontal cortex, including the anterior cingulate, and the lateral prefrontal cortex play a major role both in assigning relevance for storage and in retrieving remote memories [126,156,160]. Many patients with memory loss do not have the typical amnesic syndrome, but attentional difficulties characteristic of frontal dysfunction. The human frontal cortex helps mediate working memory, a system that is used for temporary storage and manipulation of information and that is involved in many higher cognitive functions [369]. Working memory includes two components: short-term storage (on the order of seconds) and executive processes that operate on the contents of storage. Studies of storage indicate that different frontal regions are activated for different kinds of information: storage for verbal materials activates Broca area and left-hemisphere supplementary and premotor areas; storage of spatial information activates the right-hemisphere premotor cortex; and storage of object information activates other areas of the prefrontal cortex. Two of the fundamental executive processes are selective attention and task management. Both processes activate the anterior cingulate and dorsolateral prefrontal cortex [446].

The amygdala plays a role in the facilitation of remembering emotionally charged episodes, or at least remembering them as emotionally charged [127,438]. It seems particularly important for the retention of events with a fearful emotional connotation [136,313].

Medial temporal cortex is heavily connected with other cortical areas. Perirhinal cortex receives strong projections from unimodal visual areas. Parahippocampal cortex receives prominent projections from dorsal stream areas, including retrosplenial cortex, area 7a of posterior parietal cortex, and area 46 of the prefrontal middle temporal gyrus. Correspondingly, visual memory is more dependent on perirhinal cortex than on parahippocampal cortex whereas spatial memory is more dependent on parahippocampal cortex, particularly on the right side. Parahippocampal cortex projects to the hippocampus [8,339].

Although there is much to be learned about how the function of these structures translates into memory storage, it is clear that medial temporal structures can signal the degree of novelty or familiarity of an event [186]. A remarkable subset of medial temporal neurons are selectively activated by strikingly different pictures of given individuals, landmarks or objects and in some cases even by letter strings with their names [392]. Consistent “recognition” occurs even though the individuals, landmarks...
or objects are presented in various sizes, positions and viewing angles.

Recognition memory is widely viewed as consisting of two components, a recollective (episodic) component and a familiarity component. Recollection provides information about the episode in which an item was encountered, and familiarity provides information that an item was encountered but does not provide any knowledge about the learning context. It has been proposed that recollection depends especially on the hippocampus and that familiarity depends more on the adjacent cortex, although available data in humans still do not completely validate this notion [452].

As both medial temporal and thalamic lesions may cause amnesia, it would be helpful for clinical localization to know whether there are any features that differentiate the two sites. This may be a futile endeavor, because thalamic lesions seem to cause amnesia, at least in part, by causing a failure of activation of medial temporal structures [77]. However, some of the symptomatology of lesions in either site may differ, in part due to damage of neighboring structures or to fibers of passage. One of the differential features may be the tendency to confabulate, that is, for the patient to create fictitious responses to “fill-in” memory gaps. Patients with cortical amnesia, from bilateral medial temporal lesions, tend to confabulate less and to be more aware of their deficit than patients with Korsakoff psychosis, from anteromedial thalamic damage. Confabulation with thalamic lesions may result from impaired activation of orbitofrontal and medial prefrontal structures, often hypoactive after acute anteromedial thalamic damage [35, 423]. Another difference is that, whereas diencephalic damage causes abnormal storage and retrieval but does not increase the rate of forgetting, cortical lesions do [451].

Lesions of the left temporal lobe impair mainly the storage of language-related information, whereas those on the right side affect the storage of nonverbal patterned materials, such as a geometric or tonal pattern [66]. The clinical presentation of the effect of lesions in these regions varies according to which modality is affected and how severely. Acutely, both verbal and nonverbal memories seem equally affected, even with unilateral lesions, but, with time, lesions of the left hemisphere tend to affect verbal learning more than visual learning (the opposite occurs with right hemispheric lesions). Because verbal tasks are most often used to test memory, such hemispheric “specialization” may explain why memory deficits have been reported after unilateral lesions of the left temporal lobe but not after lesions of the right temporal lobe.

Bilateral cingulate gyrus lesions and unilateral forebrain lesions [415] may also impair memory, as may bilateral fornix damage [168]. Memory loss caused by hypothalamic or thalamic lesions was discussed in chapters 17 and 18 respectively. Thus, lesions, usually bilateral, of any of the structures of Papez circuit (hippocampus, fornix, mammillary body, mammillothalamic tract, anterior and dorsomedial thalamic nuclei, cingulate gyrus, and cingulum) (Fig. 20.10) have been reported to cause amnesia.

FIG. 20.10. The limbic structures and some of their connections (according to Penfield and Jasper [375]) are highlighted in the medial view of the right hemisphere. A = anterior thalamic nucleus; G = gyrus; MD = mediodorsal thalamic nucleus; MM = mammillary body; Parolf. area = paraolfactory area.
The basal forebrain, including the septal nuclei and nucleus basalis of Meynert is also an important component of the limbic network for memory [339]. The retrosplenial cortex connects the anterior thalamus with medial temporal structures and may share functions with the structures of the Papez circuit by providing an alternative route between the hippocampus and thalamus [202,479].

Any disease affecting the structures critical for regulating memory storage can cause the amnestic syndrome. Etiologies for medial temporal lobe damage include surgical resection, herpes encephalitis, paraneoplastic encephalitis, posterior cerebral artery distribution ischemia, anoxia, and seizures [81,229,253,514]. The mediodorsal thalamic nucleus and adjacent regions may be injured by infarction, tumors, and penetrating injuries [191,316]; whereas damage to the fornix may occur with tumors, trauma, infarcts, and surgery (e.g., removal of a colloid cyst or bilateral fornix transection in patients with temporal lobe epilepsy) [168,195,269]. The basal forebrain (e.g., septal nuclei) may be damaged by ruptured anterior communicating artery aneurysms [119]. The memory defects in Alzheimer disease are likely related to pathology in multiple areas, including the entorhinal cortex, parietooccipital regions, and the frontal lobes [240]; these patients are much more impaired by their memory problems because of associated cognitive deficits, such as impaired strategy and planning. Unilateral amnesic stroke may involve the territories of the posterior cerebral, anterior choroidal, or thalamic penetrating arteries [365]. In 85% of patients with unilateral stroke-associated amnesia, the left hemisphere has found to be affected, probably because memory was tested through verbal retrieval [365].

**Sensory Disturbances**

**SMELL AND TASTE**

Olfactory nerve disturbances are discussed in Chapter 6. Epileptogenic lesions in the region of the temporal neocortex may give rise to hallucinations of smell or taste often accompanied by mouthing or chewing movements. Gustatory hallucinations may occur as manifestations of parietal, temporal, or temporoparietal seizures and are thought to be related to abnormalities of the parietal or Rolandic operculum, or both [210]. In a series of patients with olfactory hallucinations, 8% were found to have epilepsy [389]. Ageusia (lack of taste) may occur after bilateral lesions of the insula, area involved in the processing of gustatory stimuli [236].

**VISION**

Calcarine cortex (primary visual area) lesions causing impaired visual acuity are discussed in Chapter 7. Here, we describe more complex disturbances that reflect damage to the visual association cortex or to other regions of the cerebral hemispheres involved in the acquisition and processing of visual information.

**Visual Hallucinations and Delusions.** Visual hallucinations may occur in a number of psychiatric, medical, neurologic, and ocular disorders, as well as in drug-induced states. In patients with ocular disease, the hallucinations are formed, bright, and sometimes complex [230,444]. Vitreous detachment may cause brief, vertical flashes of light (Moore lightning streaks) in the temporal visual fields seen predominantly with eye movements [510]. The flashes of light indicate mechanical stimulation of the retina and are best seen in the dark or with the eyes closed, when the flashes do not compete with ambient light. Optic neuritis may be associated with bright flashes of light induced by eye movement (movement phosphes) [108] or in response to sudden loud sounds [293]. Patients with amaurosis fugax may experience colored bright light flashes or scintillations.

Simple visual hallucinations, consisting of flashes of light (photopsias) or lines of different colors that adopt simple patterns (zigzag, circle, fortification pattern) often accompany a defective field of vision and indicate inferomedial occipital disease, usually migraine or an epileptogenic lesion [293]. The elementary visual hallucinations with occipital epileptic seizures are predominantly multicolored, with circular or spherical patterns as opposed to the predominantly black-and-white zigzag linear patterns of migraine [366]. Unformed visual hallucinations in one hemifield (probably ictal in nature) seen only with vigorous exercise have been described in patients with occipital brain tumors and may be a specific symptom of occipital tumor [294].

Complex visual hallucinations, such as landscapes or animals, are generally related to temporal lobe dysfunction [208]. Autoscopic phenomena (hallucinations of the self) and illusory phenomena, such as micropsia and metamorphopsia, may be seizure manifestations. Hippocampal stimulation may evoke visual hallucinations. Among structural lesions, diffuse Lewy body disease [208,350] and tumors have the greatest tendency to induce hallucinations.

Lesions in the upper midbrain [173] that also involve the thalamus, often bilaterally, may cause complex visual hallucinations that have an oniroïd (dreamlike) quality (peduncular hallucinosis) [143]. Peduncular hallucinations are often hypnagogic, are usually known to be unreal, may be of normal or illusory proportions, and may be pleasant to the patient. Isolated bilateral infarcts confined to the medial substantia nigra pars reticulata may cause complex visual hallucinations, suggesting that destruction
of the pars reticulata may be critical for the development of peduncular hallucinosis [328]. However, peduncular hallucinosis has also occurred following left cerebral peduncle infarction [111] and right paramedian thalamic infarction without apparent midbrain involvement [143]. Vivid hallucinations of this type preceded a complete loss of the ability to dream (Charcot-Wilbrand syndrome) in a patient with bilateral lesions in the medial occipital regions and right lateral thalamus [45]. Peduncular hallucinosis has been postulated to be a release phenomenon related to damage to the ascending reticular activating system (ARAS), the rostral projection of the thalamic nuclei [143].

An etiologically nonspecific type of complex visual hallucinations may occur in the elderly with impaired vision (Charles Bonnet syndrome). These recurrent vivid hallucinations occur in the presence of normal cognition and insight and are usually associated with severe visual deprivation [444]. The hallucinations usually occur in the evening and are often made up of small, brightly colored people or objects with a cartoonlike appearance. The patient is usually aware of the unreality of these hallucinations and may note that the hallucinations change size or character when the subject reaches out to touch them. These hallucinations are thought to be the result of a release phenomenon in ventral temporoparietal cortex, an area that is poorly activated by visual stimulation in these patients [147]. Hallucinations of color, faces, textures and objects correlate with anticipatory cerebral activity in the ventral extrastriate visual cortex, and the content of the hallucinations reflects the functional specializations of the region. In a study, patients who hallucinated in color had activation of the fusiform gyrus in an area corresponding to the color center, area V4, whereas the patient who hallucinated in black and white, had activation outside this region [147]. A patient, who hallucinated an unfamiliar face, had additional activation of the left middle fusiform gyrus, an area that responds to unfamiliar face stimuli. Patients, who hallucinated brickwork, fences or a map, had activation of the collateral sulcus, an area that responds to visual textures. A patient who hallucinated objects had activation of the middle fusiform gyrus, an area that responds to visually presented objects [147].

Other positive visual phenomena experienced by patients with partial visual loss include tessellopsia (regular, repeating patterns), dendropsia (branching patterns) and hiperchromatopsia (hyperintense, brilliant colors) [146].

Simple and complex hallucinations may be classified pathogenetically into three groups: (a) those due to increased irritability of the cerebral cortex ("ictal"), which are typically stereotyped and more likely to be associated with other seizure manifestations; (b) those due to nonepileptogenic cortical lesions, such as diffuse Lewy body disease [208]; and (c) those due to impaired vision, typically with visual acuity of 20/50 or less ("release hallucinations"), which are less stereotyped, longer in duration or continuous, likely to occur in the blind portion of the visual field, and perceived as unreal by the patient [292]. They may range in complexity from simple phosphenes to well-formed visions, such as people, vehicles, or furniture. Release hallucinations are thought to represent the liberation of endogenous cerebral visual activity from "control" by higher visual inhibitory centers and may result from lesions anywhere in the visual pathways (retina to occipital cortex), regardless of the complexity of the hallucination [154,292]. For instance, a patient with bilateral occipital infarcts and pure alexia had nonetheless visual hallucinations in the form of grammatically correct, meaningful written sentences or phrases, often in the second person and with a threatening and command-like nature [148].

Irritative lesions are, on the other hand, more numerous with disease of the nondominant hemisphere and more complex with temporal lobe lesions [292]. Other common causes of visual hallucinations include narcolepsy (hypnagogic or hypnopompic hallucinations), drugs, and psychiatric disorders [326].

Other visual illusory phenomena include polyopia (seeing a single target as multiple), cerebral macropsia, micropsia, or metamorphopsia, palinopsia (persistence or recurrence of the visual image once the object has been removed), and visual allesthesia (transposition of an object seen in a visual field to the contralateral visual field). Unlike binocular diplopia, cerebral polyopia occurs with monocular viewing, both images are perceived with equal clarity, does not resolve with a pinhole, and is unchanged with viewing monocularly with either eye or binocularly. Most instances of cerebral polyopia involve only double vision and are due to occipital or parieto-occipital lesions. However, the subjective experience of multiple copies of the same image in a gridlike pattern (entomorpia or "insect eye") has been described with migraine [303].

With palinopsia, the image recurs immediately after diverting the gaze or when the stimulus object is withdrawn. The image is frequently achromatic, may be revived by blinking, is not affected by eye closure, and moves in the direction of the eye movements (rarely, opposite to eye movements). These illusory phenomena occur on the same side as an impaired but not blind visual field and are associated with occipitotemporal disease, often epileptogenic [244,509]. Also, palinopsia may occur during recovery from cortical blindness in the recovering portion of the visual
field. Most cases of palinopsia occur with focal, nondominant parietooccipital [31] or occipitotemporal [332] lesions, although rarely posterior left hemisphere [31,342] or more anteriorly placed pathology [31,246] may cause this defect. Specific causes of palinopsia include tumor [31], ischemia [332], trauma, arteriovenous malformation, abscess [14,371], migraine, carbon monoxide poisoning, drugs (e.g., mescaline, LSD, trazodone, Ecstasy, interleukin 2) [235,255,342], multiple sclerosis [246], and cerebral vasculitis [50]. Palinopsia may also be the presenting manifestation of Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease [391] or follow enucleation [177]. Besides possibly being due to seizures [31,244], palinopsia may also be due to prolongation or pathologic exaggeration of a normal after-image [50], unconscious visual memory [391], or release hallucinations [94].

Focal seizures arising in the neocortex of the temporal lobe give rise to visual illusions ("déjà vu," already seen; "jamais vu," never seen before) or to experiential illusions ("déjà veçu," already lived; "jamais veçu," never experienced before). The patient feels a strong sense of familiarity with scenes or experiential situations that in reality he or she has never seen or experienced before or, on the contrary, a sense of strangeness about visual stimuli such as the face of a close relative or experiential situations that should be familiar.

Visual Agnosia. Visual agnosia is an impairment of the ability to recognize objects visually in the absence of a loss in visual acuity or general intellectual functions that would account for it [69]. Patients cannot name the picture of an object or indicate its use but can recognize it by palpation. Two factors are at work in visual recognition: (a) the act of conscious perception of a sensory impression (perception) and (b) the act of linking the content of the perception with previously encoded percepts, thus acquiring meaning (association) [397]. Thus, there may be two types of visual agnosia:

APERCEPTIVE VISUAL AGNOSIA. Although these patients avoid obstacles when walking, in many other aspects they behave as if they were blind. They cannot name items presented to them, draw them, or match them to samples. They cannot point to objects named by the examiner. Yet they can distinguish small changes in the intensity or hue of a minute source of light, and visual acuity and visual fields are normal. Their defect lies in an impairment of visual pattern recognition. Some of them indicate that still objects are invisible but that they stand out from the background as soon as they move. Bilateral lesions, often ischemic, of the calcarine cortex or occipitotemporal regions cause this disturbance, which tends to appear in the process of recovery from cortical blindness [69,447]. The extrastratal visual path-

ASSOCIATIVE VISUAL AGNOSIA. This term refers to the deficit of patients who cannot recognize objects visually but can draw them or point to them when they are presented in an array of objects (i.e., perception is clearly intact) [11]. Thus, a visual identification disorder is isolated from a discrimination disorder [382]. Picture identification is usually more difficult than the identification of real objects. In the process of recovery, this deficit tends to progress into a milder deficit, optic aphasia, which is characterized by inability to name objects that are recognized, as evidenced by the fact that their use can be explained. Visual agnosia may underlie cases of semantic impairment in the denomination of visually identified items. However, semantic aphasia will be described in the section on integration of auditory processes, because it is mediated by visuospatial multimodal cortex.

These two disturbances are often associated with right homonymous hemianopia, pure alexia, and color-naming deficits.

CEREBRAL ACHROMATOPSIS AND COLOR AGNOSIA. Patients with cortical color blindness (achromatopsia) cannot read Ishihara plates or sort colors according to hue. Acquired achromatopsia appears with bilateral or nondominant inferior occipitotemporal lesions that damage the lingual and fusiform gyri (the calcarine cortex is spared); this abnormality is usually associated with infracalcarine lesions that damage the middle third of the lingual gyrus and also with infracalcarine lesions that damage the white matter immediately behind the posterior tip of the lateral ventricle [54,57]. Cerebral achromatopsia is most commonly caused by vertebrobasilar vascular disease, but may also be noted with herpes simplex encephalitis, metastatic disease, following recurrent focal seizures, with dementing illnesses, or as a transient phenomenon with migraine. Vascular lesions causing achromatopsia involve the inferior occipital branch of the posterior cerebral artery while sparing its calcarine branch, which supplies primary visual cortex. Color is processed and “extracted” by cerebral structures different from the ones that handle the sense of depth or of spatial integration. In the human being, the color perception area, corresponding to area V4 in the monkey, varies between individuals in absolute terms but is invariably found on the lateral aspect of the collateral sulcus on the fusiform gyrus [329]. It mediates color perception for both the lower and upper quadrants of the respective hemispheres, the superior visual field being represented more medially on the fusiform gyrus and the inferior field more laterally [234,329].
Patients with achromatopsia often have associated superior quadrantanopsia (bilateral superior altitudinal defects) because the inferior striate cortex or optic radiations are affected. Patients with unilateral occipitotemporal infarcts may have inferior hemiachromatopsia with an accompanying superior quadrantanopsia [372].

Patients with color agnosia can read Ishihara plates or sort colors according to hue but cannot name colors or point to a color named by the examiner; however, they perform well in verbal-verbal tasks (e.g., “tell me the color of the sky”). Dominant hemispheric lesions that involve the inferomedial aspect of the occipital and temporal lobes are most probably responsible for color agnosia. Patients with color agnosia usually have an associated right homonymous hemianopia and pure alexia (see below), with the responsible lesion affecting the left mesial subpial area, which is transitional between the occipital and temporal lobes. The hemianopia is due to additional involvement of the lateral geniculate body, optic radiations, or calcarine cortex.

PROSOPAGNOSIA. Bilateral inferooccipitotemporal lesions or lesions in the anterior portion of the right temporal lobe also cause inability to identify faces visually (prosopagnosia) or objects that are visually similar, such as a specific car in a parking lot (Fig. 20.11) [86,102,104,379,433]. Prosopagnosic patients may be unable to recognize even members of their families unless they speak, at which time their voices are recognized. However, these patients are still able to perceive faces and identify separate facial features [110]. Prosopagnosic patients may also have difficulty in recognizing photographs or pictures of well-known personalities or even fail to recognize pictures of themselves [95]. An extreme example is “the phenomenon of the mirror” in which the patient looks at himself or herself in the mirror and sees “nothing at all” [93]. In most postmortem examinations of patients with prosopagnosia, both fusiform gyri have been destroyed or disconnected, suggesting that this structure functions as a visual association area for the recognition of specific faces and that this deficit is likely a partial visual memory deficit [86,102].

Some patients with prosopagnosia recognize faces better than objects, and vice versa [16,64]. The dissociation between face and object processing has been suggested by functional neuroimaging studies of normal individuals [449]. Cerebral activation during an object-recognition task occurred essentially in the left occipitotemporal cortex and did not involve the right hemisphere regions that were specifically activated during face identification [360]. An area specifically attuned to the recognition of faces is located in the fusiform or occipitotemporal gyrus, midway between its anterior and posterior extent. Bilateral in many individuals, it is only right-sided in some [449]. Just lateral to it there is an area that becomes activated during the perception of body parts [428]. Although postmortem studies have revealed
bilateral lesions of the fusiform gyri in prosopagnosic patients, unilateral right occipitotemporal lesions may also cause prosopagnosia [139,279,280,434]. Prosopagnosia may be associated with agnosia for noncanonical views (e.g., the patient is unable to identify a folded pair of eyeglasses but is able to correctly identify the glasses when they are unfolded and presented in a more conventional perspective) and a strange “paradoxical knowledge” (e.g., when confronted with a picture of the Mona Lisa, the patient said, “This cannot possibly be Mona Lisa!”) [280]. Progressive prosopagnosia may occur in relative isolation associated with selective right temporal lobe atrophy as a degenerative process, in which case it may begin as a modality-specific disorder (i.e., an inability to recognize faces) and progress to a cross-modality loss of person-based semantic knowledge [250]. As in many of these cases atrophy begins at the right temporal pole, it is possible that prosopagnosia here may be due to a loss of the spatial information corresponding to a unique face [406], rather than to impaired perception of facial features, as may happen with more posteriorly located lesions [393]. Prosopagnosia usually occurs after bilateral posterior cerebral artery occlusions or in fronto-temporal dementia, but also has been described with head trauma, encephalitis, hypoxia, tumors, abscess, hematoma, Alzheimer disease, Parkinson disease, and as a developmental defect [28,470].

LANDMARK AGNOSIA Some patients have difficulty finding their way around because their ability to recognize familiar landmarks is impaired [278]. Most of these patients had right temporo-occipital lesions. A discrete region in the depth of the right lingual sulcus, straddling the lingual and parabippocampal gyri is specifically activated when viewing buildings and other landmarks [2,449].

VISUAL SIMULTANAGNOSIA This phenomenon may underlie some of the agnostic deficits described above. The term refers to an inability to appreciate the meaning of the whole, though the elemental parts are well recognized. If the patient is presented with several small figures, he or she sees only one of the figures yet is able to identify all of the figures individually if they are presented separately. If presented with a complex figure composed of multiple subunits (e.g., the “Cookie Theft Picture” from the Boston Diagnostic Aphasia Examination), the patient is unable to recognize the whole figure. Patients with simultanagnosia may have visual field defects (e.g., unilateral or bilateral inferior quadrant defects), but formal testing is difficult because the patients fail to keep their eyes focused on a target. Failure of analysis of the different visual items and integration into a whole is partially mediated by a disruption of the normal exploratory eye movements that allow the identification of an assembly of objects in space. In addition, parietal cortex mediates visuospatial attention across a visual array, in a retinotopic fashion [427]. Parietal lesions may cause a failure of spatiotemporal integration among converging inputs from early vision. Some patients with simultanagnosia may “look but not see,” with apparent “disappearance” of stationary objects from direct view [398]. This phenomenon results from bilateral lesions in the superior portion of the occipital lobe and indicates that attention mechanisms that permit sustained awareness of visual targets depend on the superior visual association cortices and are relatively separate from mechanisms that shift gaze and drive visual search [398].

Patients with visual simultanagnosia often have other components of the Balint syndrome, which follows bilateral parietooccipital lesions in the convexity of the hemispheres and is characterized by (a) failure to shift gaze on command and difficulty redirecting attention voluntarily (apraxia of gaze or spasm of fixation); (b) optic ataxia, a disturbance of reaching a target under visual control, manifested by clumsiness of object bound movements of the hand performed under visual guidance [398]; and (c) decreased visual attention, affecting mainly the peripheral visual fields and resulting in constriction of the fields to “tunnel vision” [343]. Some patients with Balint syndrome may demonstrate altitudinal neglect (i.e., extinguish the stimulus presented in the lower quadrants during double simultaneous stimulation across the vertical meridian), suggesting that bilateral parietal damage can lead to multimodal attentional and exploratory deficits along the vertical dimensions of extrapersonal space [394]. It should also be noted that optic ataxia may occur in a “pure” form with unilateral posterior parietal cortical lesions [377].

When all the elements of the syndrome are present, the patient has bilateral posterior watershed lesions in the convexity of the hemispheres or diffuse cortical processes with a posterior parietal preponderance [398]. The most frequent is Alzheimer disease, but can occur also with other disorders, including HIV encephalitis, Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, spongiform degeneration, adrenoleukodystrophy and progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy [19,422,467,475,478,484]. Simultanagnosia may be the presenting feature or a prominent impairment in patients with Alzheimer disease (visual variant of Alzheimer disease) [467]. They differ from other patients with Alzheimer disease in that they usually present to an ophthalmologist rather than a neurologist, have relatively preserved visual acuity, do not have color anomia to confrontation, are relatively young at onset and retain insight. These patients have language deficits, cannot read, have visuospatial
Motion Perception Impairment. Some of the previously described disorders in visual processing may be related to impaired movement perception, which is seldom a complaint by patients or their relatives. However, formal testing reveals it with a variety of lesions at the junction of the parietal or temporal lobes with the occipital lobe [45]. Activation studies have defined two cortical areas involved in motion perception. One, at the junction of the middle temporal gyrus or inferior temporal sulcus with the occipital lobe (area V5, corresponding to area MT in monkey), is involved in the analysis of motion signals (direction and speed of movement) particularly in the central part of the visual field [268]. The other, in the dorsal bank of the parietooccipital sulcus (area V6) processes peripheral visual stimuli and could be involved in “subtracting out” self-motion across the whole visual field [384].

Alexia. The ability to read can be impaired by lesions in very different areas of the cerebral hemispheres. Those that cause aphasia, discussed below, often affect to some extent the ability to understand written language (anterior alexia). Anterior perisylvian lesions that cause Broca aphasia may particularly affect the patient’s ability to read letters (literal anamia, literal alexia, or letter blindness) despite the preserved ability to read and comprehend whole familiar words [33,263]. These patients also have difficulty understanding sentences when the meaning depends on syntax (e.g., “He showed her the girls’ hats”). Left supramarginal gyrus damage may be critical for such impairment of syntactic comprehension [407]. Most patients with Wernicke aphasia fail to understand both spoken and written language, although they may read aloud quite fluently. Patients with lesions restricted to the superior temporal gyrus can comprehend written language much better than spoken language [212].

Patients with impaired saccadic eye movements and an attentional disorder may complete the beginning or end of a word or sentence they have scanned imperfectly by adding a high-frequency beginning or ending. Thus, “Thursday” becomes “today” for a right-hemisphere-damaged patient, and “latent” becomes “later” for a left-hemisphere-damaged patient. The patient with a right hemispheric lesion may make omissions (“flame” becomes “lame”) or additions (“act” becomes “taet”) as well as substitutions (“tone” becomes “bone”). This disorder is called neglect dyslexia, or attentional dyslexia. More often, these patients read only the words to the right or to the left of a printed paragraph. Such paralexias (substitutions in reading) may occur with cortical or diencephalic disease. Paralexia errors restricted to the left end of words (left hemiparexia) have been described with lesions of the left side of the splenium of the corpus callosum; some of these patients had complete right hemianopias, and their left-sided reading errors were attributed to a retinotopically restricted disconnection pattern that selectively disrupted the transfer of information originating from the peripheral left visual field [44].

Attentional dyslexia may also occur as a form of simultanagnosia, when single words are read normally but several words together are incorrectly read. These patients may also identify single letters but not letters in words. Reading may show literal migration errors in which a letter from one word is substituted at the same place in an adjacent word (‘long turn’ becomes ‘long turn’ or ‘long turn’). This impairment occurs with left temporo-occipital junction or left parietal lesions [435].

Alexia without agraphia is usually associated with impaired writing ability (agraphia).

Alexia without agraphia (pure alexia or pure word blindness). Alexia without agraphia, or “pure word blindness,” as Dejerine called this syndrome when he described it in 1892, is caused by damage of the corpus callosum fibers connecting the parieto-occipital regions of the two hemispheres [117]. It represents the first described interhemispheric disconnection syndrome. Patients cannot read but are able to write on dictation. Visual identification of individual letters may be possible in some cases. In contrast to their marked difficulty in identifying visual patterns, these patients may identify the word by tracing the letters (kinesthetic “reading”). They can also read digits and multidigit numbers but often have color agnosia. Alexia without agraphia results from damage to the pathways conveying visual input from both hemispheres to the dominant angular gyrus, which itself remains intact but disconnected from visual regions; it usually occurs with combined lesions of the dominant medial occipital region (particularly lesions involving the cortex around and below the calcarine fissure) and the inferior fibers of the splenium of the corpus callosum (splenial-occipital syndrome) (Fig. 20.12) [3,36,99,117,199]. It may also rarely occur with infarction of the left lateral geniculate body and the splenium of the corpus callosum (splenial-geniculate variation) [459] with a single lesion of the dominant occipitotemporal paraventricular white matter behind, beneath, and beside the occipital horn of the lateral ventricle [99,199], or with a more superior and rostral lesion in the dominant hemisphere parietooccipital or parietal white matter (subangular or paraventricular alexia) [198,243,383].

Alexia without agraphia is usually associated with a right homonymous hemianopia or right
ALEXIA FOR JAPANESE KANJI. Japanese writing can use morphograms (Kanji), imitating the shape of the object being mentioned, or phonograms (Kana) similar to the ones used for alphabetic languages like English. Alexia for Kana has similar localization as alexia for English. In contrast, cerebral activation with Kanji is more pronounced in the lateral fusiform gyrus (Brodmann area 37) and lesions in this area or bilateral inferior temporo-occipital regions are more likely to cause alexia for Kanji [359,414].

ANTON SYNDROME (DENIAL OF BLINDNESS). Patients with acute, bilateral, and extensive medial occipital lesions that render them blind may deny having any difficulty with seeing (visual anosognosia) and confabulate about what they “see.” Such a phenomenon often appears in the setting of a generalized metabolic encephalopathy. When related to discrete lesions, these are likely to extend beyond the calcarine cortex to include visual association cortices (areas 18 and 19) [95]. It is unclear whether thalamic involvement in the case of posterior circulation infarcts may be critical for the genesis of Anton syndrome in some patients. The anosognosic component

hemiachromatopsia but may occur without visual field defects with dominant parieto-occipital [198,243] or temporo-occipital lesions [286]. It has also been described in a left-handed patient with a right occipital lesion [381].

ALEXIA WITH AGRAPIHA (CENTRAL ALEXIA). In addition to the reading and writing disturbance, these patients usually have acaulhia, finger agnosia, right-left disorientation, and difficulty with spelling words and understanding spelled-out words. A pure angular gyrus lesion is most likely if the patient does not have a Wernicke aphasia. Patients with sensory aphasia often have alexia with agraphia, and their lesion extends to the superior temporal gyrus. Many patients having alexia with agraphia have a partial or complete Gerstmann syndrome.

ALEXIA FOR BRAILLE IN PATIENTS WITH EARLY BLINDNESS. Supporting the role for the striate region to support Braille reading in congenitally and early blind subjects, a woman with early blindness was reported to loose the ability to read Braille after a bilateral occipital stroke [205].

FIG. 20.12. Alexia with and without agraphia. The visual pathways are represented in a low horizontal section of the brain. Alexia with agraphia results from lesions that involve the left angular gyrus. Alexia without agraphia occurs with lesions (usually infarction) affecting the left medial occipitotemporal cortex and the fibers that reach the angular gyrus from the right occipitotemporal cortex (arrows). These fibers are most often damaged in the splenium of the corpus callosum but may also be destroyed as they sweep lateral to the parieto-occipital fissure (X). (Modified from J. Dejerine [117].)
of cortical blindness may be secondary to right hemispheric dysfunction or to disruption of thalamic connections to the right parietal association cortex, although denial of a hemianopic field defect (hemianopic anosognosia) may happen as often with left-sided as with right-sided lesions [79]. Patients with Anton syndrome often confabulate about their visual defect as well as events subserved by recent memory, thus suggesting that these patients may also have anosognosia for their memory deficit similar to Korsakoff syndrome [152].

Anton syndrome has also been described with lesions of the anterior afferent visual system (e.g., ocular, optic nerve, and chiasmal lesions); in most of these cases there was associated evidence for superimposed diffuse cognitive dysfunction [327]. A patient who denied monocular complete visual loss after traumatic damage to the optic nerve had bilateral frontal confusions, which were felt to be responsible for the anosognosia [327].

**DISTURBANCES IN THE PROCESSING OF AUDITORY INFORMATION**

**Auditory Hallucinations.** This “positive” symptom has little localizing value because it can occur with lesions anywhere between the ear and the temporal cortex. Auditory hallucinations occasionally follow impaired hearing, particularly when there is an attentional defect due to a metabolic brain disease [200,298,344]. About 20% of temporal lobe tumors may be accompanied by auditory hallucinations, which are most common as a symptom of schizophrenia and accompany infrequently the alcohol withdrawal syndrome. In patients with organic cerebral disease, unilateral auditory hallucinations usually indicate a lesion in the contralateral hemisphere [367,464]. Although some studies have emphasized an important role of the nondominant hemisphere in the development of auditory hallucinations of the musical type [40], other reports have suggested that the type of auditory hallucination (verbal vs. musical) is not consistently associated with a lesion on either side [367]. Auditory hallucinations (including musical hallucinations) may also occur with vascular lesions of the rostral pontine tegmentum and with lower midbrain tumors (these patients had hearing loss and a clear sensorium) [72,353] and have also been described with caudal pontine hemorrhage [281] and brain stem encephalitis [129]. Verbal hallucinations are common in the acute stage of word deafness (see below).

**Hearing Loss.** Lesions in the subcortical auditory pathways are discussed in Chapter 11. Unilateral lesions restricted to the primary auditory cortex (the posteromedial part of the transverse temporal gyrus of Heschl [301]) remain asymptomatic, but they can be detected with dichotic stimulation and other methods. Patients with bilateral lesions of the auditory cortex manifest a spectrum of disorders ranging from cortical deafness to auditory agnosia, pure word deafness or amusia (or both), and milder disturbances in the temporal analysis of sounds. The clinical presentation depends on the degree of involvement of the primary auditory cortex [337]. A number of patients have been reported who had severe hearing loss after bilateral temporal or temporoparietal lesions [21,199,289,465] or bilateral subcortical lesions [465]. In most cases, however, the severe hearing loss eventually resolved with only minor residual audiometric deficit accompanied by varying degrees of impairment in the ability to interpret nonverbal as well as verbal sounds (word deafness or auditory agnosia) [465].

**Auditory Agnosia.** Auditory agnosia is an impaired capacity to recognize sounds despite adequate hearing as measured by standard audiometry [18] and may be verbal, nonverbal, or generalized. Auditory agnosia has been described with right-sided [450] or bilateral [203] temporal lobe damage and may also occur with bilateral subcortical lesions sparing the cortex [351]. Different sounds, such as the ringing of the phone or clapping of hands, cannot be distinguished or localized. Some sounds of a normal intensity may be perceived as having an annoying quality (dysacusis). The spoken word cannot be identified either (pure word deafness), although these patients may read and speak quite normally, if loudly on occasion. Pure word deafness results from bilateral temporal cortical lesions [91] or from bilateral subcortical lesions that isolate the primary auditory cortex from auditory input by interrupting geniculo-cortical fibers or commissural fibers connecting homotopic (corresponding) primary auditory cortices [59,466]. When the defect is severe, patients may complain that people sound as if they are speaking a foreign language. By using lip reading, these patients can improve their performance, but not by increasing the sound volume. One such patient, unable to understand his wife’s normal speech, disliked the sound of the television set and compelled her to turn the volume so low that she herself could not understand what was being said. Rarely, when temporal lobe lesions are asymmetric, greater impairment of sound and word recognition may be detected in the ear contralateral to the larger lesion [7]. Patients with larger lesions of the left hemisphere may have greater difficulty in distinguishing words, whereas predominantly right-hemisphere lesions may cause greater impairment in the discrimination of nonverbal sounds, including music. Poor recognition of words accompanied by almost normal reading and speech may occasionally appear in the process of recovery from a sizable unilateral lesion in the
dominant superior temporal gyrus involving the auditory association cortex (Wernicke area). In such cases the reeding Wernicke aphasia gives way to almost normal language ability, tainted by an occasional paraphasic error, but understanding of the spoken word remains markedly impaired, particularly when short sentences of a somewhat complex syntactic structure are given to the patient in a test situation.

**Sensory Amusia.** This term refers to the inability to appreciate various characteristics of heard music [18]. Right-hemispheric lesions result in impairment of the appreciation of pitch, timbre, and rhythm, whereas left hemispheric lesions affect mainly the appreciation of lyrics. The right cerebral hemisphere is primary in representing melody in terms of its global contour, whereas the left hemisphere is primary in filling in the interacal structure [378]. The degree of musical sophistication of the patient may be reflected in the lateralization of the cortex used to process music. The left hemisphere seems to play a greater role in the appreciation of music by musically trained individuals, who may use a more analytic strategy to identify a musical composition. The superior temporal gyrus is especially important in melody processing.

**Posterior Aphasias.** Most cortical left-hemispheric lesions leading to impaired processing of auditory information cause a language disturbance, that is, an aphasia. Aphasia is a disorder of linguistic processing characterized by a disturbance in the comprehension and formulation of language caused by dysfunction in specific brain regions [222]. Aphasia can compromise multiple aspects of language, including syntax (the grammatic structure of sentences), the lexicon (the collection of words that denote meanings), and the morphology of words (the combination of individual speech sounds, known as phonemes, into the smallest meaningful units of a word, known as morphemes) [97]. The type of aphasic disturbance depends on the following:

1. The specific cortical region (cortical representation) involved in the analysis of language-related auditory stimuli in a particular patient. In most right-handed persons and in more than two-thirds of left-handers, the left superior temporal gyrus and the neighboring inferior parietal lobule play the greatest role in this analysis. In some right-handed persons the right hemisphere is dominant for language [237]. In some left-handed individuals the left hemisphere may be dominant for comprehension and the right hemisphere dominant for speech output [356]. Even in right-handers Wernicke and Broca areas may be in opposite hemispheres [39].

2. The location of the lesion. Lesions centered in the posterior two-thirds of the superior temporal gyrus affecting the auditory association cortex (area 22 of Brodmann, or Wernicke area) tend to cause the greatest impairment of auditory comprehension of language, even when reading may be only mildly affected. The neighboring area of the middle temporal gyrus also participates in language processing. Thus, Wernicke aphasia is most often due to damage to the posterior sector of Wernicke area and, in many instances, area 37, areas 39 and 40, or all three are also involved [265,347,431]. Patients with Wernicke aphasia are unable to repeat sentences correctly, to assemble phonemes correctly, and to name things properly, but their speech is fluent (effortless, melodic, well woven, and produced at a normal or even faster rate) [262,347]. The content of speech is often unintelligible because of frequent errors in phoneme and word choice. These patients make frequent literal and phonemic paraphasic errors (word substitutions). Depending on their temperament, they are often anxious, agitated, and even paranoid, perhaps because of their inability to understand what others are saying. Patients with Wernicke aphasia are often misdiagnosed as having a psychiatric disorder, especially as associated hemiparesis and sensory loss may be absent or mild.

Wernicke aphasia most commonly occurs because of infarction in the distribution of the inferior division of the middle cerebral artery but may also occur with tumor, abscess, or hemorrhage, especially when posterior putaminal bleeds extend into the isthmus of the temporal lobe. Seizures can produce not only brief episodes of aphasia, but aphasia lasting days or even long periods of time, for instance in cases of the Landau-Kleffner syndrome [225,463].

Although damage to Wernicke area disrupts auditory comprehension, this area is not the “center” in which auditory comprehension takes place but is rather a processor of speech sounds that allows sounds to be mapped as words and to be used subsequently to evoke conceptual meaning [222]. Functional brain studies have documented that the posterior portion of the left superior temporal gyrus is implicated in the precortical detection of acoustic changes in speech as well as nonspeech stimuli, whereas cortical areas around it, such as the left supramarginal and middle temporal gyri, are more specifically engaged in the detection of changes in phonological units [32,339]. Novel words activate the anterior hippocampal region [418]. The inferior temporal and fusiform gyri, particularly on the left, participate
sequences into neural word representations. Furthermore, because of its close proximity to regions of the brain storing information on object characteristics, including the sound and shape of words, Wernicke area serves as a neural gateway that coordinates reciprocal interactions between the sensory representations of word-forms and the arbitrary (second-order or symbolic) associations that give them meaning (Fig. 20.13) [222,339]. Thus, Wernicke area lies at the semantic–lexical pole of the language network. By contrast, Broca area in the frontal operculum (see below) lies at the syntactic-articulatory pole of the language network, which provides a system for the transformation of neural word representations (originating from Wernicke area but also from other brain areas) into corresponding articulatory sequences (see Fig. 20.13) [140,201,339]. If Wernicke area leads to meaning-appropriate content words, Broca area influences how to order and utter them in the most meaning-appropriate form.

Neuroimaging studies have suggested that the localization of a lexicon (i.e., a cortical area of actively in semantic tasks, perhaps providing lexical information [439]. Lesions circumscribed to the inferior temporal gyrus give rise to word-selection anomia. Patients cannot remember the name of an object presented to them, and cueing does not help, but they can consistently choose the appropriate object from an array when they hear its name. Both name retrieval and name recognition are impaired with lesions of Wernicke area (semantic anomia). Auditory comprehension, thus, involves numerous diffuse cortical areas that are “downstream” from Wernicke area. The retrieval of the various qualities of an object, that is, the full semantic information concerning a word, depends on the combined function of cortical regions storing information on the qualities of the object. Thus, occipitotemporal association cortex provides information on visual characteristics, parietal association cortex on touch-related characteristics, such as consistency, etc. Clinical observations suggest that Wernicke area appears to provide, at the input stage of the language network, an entry point for the conversion of auditory

The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Cerebral Hemispheres

FIG. 20.13. Language areas. Areas of the brain most involved in the language network. The top diagram corresponds to the areas highlighted on the lateral surface of the left hemisphere in the inferior illustration. The supplementary motor area (SMA) is in the medial frontal region. Some areas have a bilateral representation, most are strongly lateralized. The stippled area (superior temporal sulcus) appears to support phoneme-level representations. (Modified from Hickok & Poeppel [221], with permission from Elsevier.)
specialization) for spoken word recognition exists in the middle part of the left superior and middle temporal gyri and that a lexicon for written word recognition exists in the posterior part of the left middle temporal gyrus [32].

An aphasic syndrome similar to Wernicke aphasia but with associated hemiparesis was described with infarcts involving the head of the left caudate nucleus and nearby white matter in the anterior limb of the internal capsule [101, 164, 355]. This region interconnects with the auditory cortex and may be related to the automatic processing of frequently used sentence structures. It is controversial whether pure subcortical lesions can cause true aphasia [162, 354].

Strokes here occur by occlusion of the stem of the middle cerebral artery, which blocks flow to smaller lenticular branches; ischemia in the distal territory of the middle cerebral artery, including the posterior perisylvian speech region is to be expected. In cases of ischemia with diminished perfusion of both the basal ganglia and the temporal cortex, improvement of cortical perfusion has been followed by recovery from the aphasia [223]. However, at least acutely, anterior putaminal hemorrhages can give rise to a true global aphasia, with impaired repetition. As discussed in Chapter 18, infarctions involving some left thalamic nuclei, especially the anterolateral nuclei, may also cause aphasia characterized by fluent speech with preserved repetition, thus confirming that the left thalamus is involved in speech and language functions [192].

Damage to the left anterior temporal cortices in areas 21, 20, and 38 impairs the ability to retrieve words but does not cause any grammatic, phonemic, or phonetic difficulty (i.e., such lesions cause pure naming defects) [97]. When the damage is confined to the left temporal pole (area 38), patients may have a defect in the ability to retrieve proper nouns (the unique names of unique places and persons) but not common nouns (the names for nonunique objects) [97, 166]. When the lesions involve the cortices of areas 20 and 21 in the left hemisphere, the defect encompasses the ability to retrieve both proper and common nouns. With these lesions, the ability to retrieve other categories of words (verbs, adjectives, and grammatic words) is not compromised [97]. Thus, the left anterior temporal cortices contain neural systems that hold the key to gaining access to words that go with objects, places, or persons but not to words that convey the qualities of those entities or their actions or relationships [97]. The importance of the anterior portion of the left superior temporal gyrus in the ability to name objects is also supported by studies showing that object naming and word comprehension difficulties occur with interference of this region by transcranial magnetic stimulation [385]. Patients with lesions here may be unable to name a tool or describe how to use it; yet, they use it correctly [228]. Also, they are influenced by superficial rather than conceptual similarities, suggesting a major role of the temporal pole in concept formation [276]. Conditions that damage this region include stroke, trauma, herpes encephalitis, Alzheimer disease, and fronto-temporal dementia [97, 189]. Semantic dementia is a well-known type of fronto-temporal dementia [227].

3. The size of the lesion. A large cortex-destroying lesion, such an infarct, involving the superior and middle temporal gyri and the inferior parietal lobule is most likely to cause a severe deficit in the comprehension of spoken and written language. In such cases, the words the patient hears are devoid of semantic meaning (semantic aphasia); he or she gathers no information from them. Similarly, the patient’s utterances consist of semantically meaningless nonwords (neologisms) or have a thin connection to the object they are meant to signify (paraphasias). This connection is generally categoric (verbal or semantic) (e.g., “table” for “chair”) with posterior perisylvian lesions and phonologic (literal) (e.g., “letter” for “ladder”) with lesions in Broca area. Patients with large posterior perisylvian lesions write nonsensical words or sentences and cannot name objects appropriately (Fig. 20.14).

Smaller lesions that destroy only a discrete portion of the cortex, such as infarcts, circumscribed to the supramarginal gyrus (area 40) or auditory cortex (areas 41 and 42 or a portion of 22), or large posterior perisylvian lesions, such as tumors that leave some neuronal elements functionally active, cause conduction aphasia. Patients with conduction aphasia speak intelligibly and comprehend well enough to maintain a normal conversation, but their ability to repeat is impaired, and they often make paraphasic errors [97, 262]. There are two types of conduction aphasia: the efferent-reproduction type involves the phonemic organization and representation of words and is correlated with parietal and insular damage, whereas the afferent-repetition conduction aphasia affects the repetition of large strings of material and has been described more frequently with lesions of the temporal lobe [39]. Conduction aphasia has traditionally been related to lesions of the arcuate fasciculus, purportedly connecting Wernicke with Broca area. However,
this view is not supported by some careful analysis of clinical and anatomical data [39]. Dejerine already described how the more superficial fibers of the arcuate fasciculus were short association fibers, joining adjacent gyri [116]. Only the deeper ones spanned several gyri. It is true, however, that conduction aphasia and other semantic impairments may result not only from cortical lesions, but also from lesions in an immediately subcortical white matter tract that has two segments: a posterior one joining the superior temporal gyrus with the supramarginal gyrus, and an anterior one, from the supramarginal gyrus to Broca area in the inferior frontal gyrus [76, 131].

The combination of conduction aphasia and contralateral hemianesthesia indicates a white matter lesion subjacent to inferior parietal and posterior temporal cortices that likely interrupts thalamocortical connections [239]. Conduction aphasia has also been described in left-handed individuals with left temporoparietal lesions affecting Wernicke area and in a right-handed man with a right temporoparietal infarct [336].

4. The time allowed for recovery after an acute lesion. The severe impairment of language comprehension (semantic or Wernicke aphasia) that follows a large vascular lesion tends to improve in subsequent weeks and months (Fig. 20.15). More and more words and sentences regain their informative value, and the deficit may finally resemble conduction aphasia. Persistent deficits in sentence repetition (i.e., those lasting 6 months or longer) occur most consistently with lesions destroying part or all of Wernicke area [431]. The mechanisms of language recovery are being clarified with the help of neuroimaging. Both the activation of regions near the damaged cortex and the homotopic areas of the contralateral hemisphere contribute to language recovery [46, 48].

**FIG. 20.14.** Jargon writing by a 59-year-old, left-handed man with a large left-hemispheric perisylvian infarct. The dictated text is printed beside the patient’s writing. He could copy (“this is a hospital”) but not read printed words. His oral language was practically normal.
temporal lobes may cause a similar syndrome [320,404]. It has little localizing value and is most often caused by ischemic lesions in the distribution of the middle cerebral or posterior cerebral arteries, or in the watershed between the two vascular territories. The language profile in moderate Alzheimer disease may resemble a transcortical sensory aphasia [120].

The language profile in moderate Alzheimer disease may resemble a transcortical sensory aphasia [120]. The Boston anatomo-clinical classification of aphasias based on the patient's spontaneous speech, comprehension, naming, and repetition continues to be used extensively in the clinical setting [188] (Table 20.3).

**TABLE 20.3** Classification of the Aphasias

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Aphasia</th>
<th>Fluency</th>
<th>Comprehension</th>
<th>Repetition</th>
<th>Naming</th>
<th>Lesion Location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Broca</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>Frontoparietal operculum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wernicke</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>Inferoposterior perisylvian (temporal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conduction</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>Posterior perisylvian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transcortical motor</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>May be normal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transcortical sensory</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Usually normal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anomic</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>Parietal, temporal, thalamus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Global</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>↓</td>
<td>Depends on type of anomia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

word. They may repeat a command from the examiner (echolalia) and yet fail to follow it. Other auditory information is also missed, despite the ability to repeat the very sentence of which the meaning is not quite grasped. This syndrome, termed transcortical sensory aphasia, is most often due to lesions in the posterior portion of the left middle temporal gyrus (area 37), angular gyrus (area 39), white matter of the temporal isthmus, and posterior periventricular area [97,258] and, except for spared repetition, is an analogue of Wernicke aphasia. Lesions in the thalamus, left mesial frontoparietal region, or inferolateral aspect of both temporal lobes may cause a similar syndrome [320,404]. It has little localizing value and is most often caused by ischemic lesions in the distribution of the middle cerebral or posterior cerebral arteries, or in the watershed between the two vascular territories. The language profile in moderate Alzheimer disease may resemble a transcortical sensory aphasia [120].

The Boston anatomo-clinical classification of aphasias based on the patient's spontaneous speech, comprehension, naming, and repetition continues to be used extensively in the clinical setting [188] (Table 20.3).
The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Cerebral Hemispheres

POSTERIOR APROSODIA It has been proposed that just as the left (dominant) hemisphere plays the greater role in the analysis of the syntactic components of language, corresponding areas of the right hemisphere are concerned with the emotional aspects of language (prosody, or affective intonation of spoken language, and emotional gesturing) [405]. Lesions in the right posterior temporoparietal region may result in poor perception of the emotional overtones of spoken language (sensory aprosodia). These patients have impaired prosodo-affective comprehension and repetition (but relatively spared expression and spontaneous affective prosodic variation and gesture) and impaired identification of emotional gesturing [106]. Sensory aprosodia may be an acute marker of isolated infarction of the inferior division of the right middle cerebral artery [106] and has also been described associated with left hemiparesis with ischemic infarction of the right thalamus and posterior limb of the internal capsule (analogous to Wernicke aphasia with right hemiparesis described with left subcortical injury) [505]. Patients with acute stroke causing comprehension emotional aprosody show a higher frequency of extinction on double simultaneous stimulation, anosognosia, and deficits in facial emotion comprehension [455]. These stroke patients also show a higher frequency of right hemisphere lesions involving the basal ganglia and the temporoparietal cortex and more severe frontal and diencephalic atrophy. Patients with right-hemisphere damage are often impaired in their capacity to judge the emotional content of sentences depicting facial, prosodic, and gestural expression even when they can perform normally in their ability to infer the emotion conveyed by sentences describing situations, suggesting a disruption of nonverbal communicative representations [49]. Lesions of the right hemisphere may impair a language ability known as discourse, the skill with which one can organize a narrative (e.g., tell a story, make a joke, or write a letter) [97,433]. Right hemisphere damage also may impair the patient’s ability to appreciate a story or get the point of a joke [97].

DISTURBANCES OF SOMATOSENSORY PERCEPTION

Elemental Somatosensory Disturbances. Lesions of the postcentral gyrus cause contralateral impairment in the perception of size and shape by palpation. As a result, the identity of the palpated object remains unknown (astereognosis). Such impairment, which is greatest in the limb represented in the lesioned area (see Fig. 20.16), also affects two-point discrimination and graphesthesia (the ability to recognize a letter or digit traced on the patient’s skin). Pin-prick is also perceived as less sharp on the side contralateral to an acute parietal lobe lesion. Sensory loss with parietal lesions tends to be localized to the distal portions of the limbs, which have the largest cortical representation and are almost exclusively innervated by the contralateral hemisphere. Paresthesias, usually of a tingling quality, may occur in the limb represented in an area of the postcentral gyrus affected by ischemia or epileptic activity (sensory seizure). It has been postulated that lesions of the parietal operculum (superior lip of the Sylvian fissure corresponding to the secondary

FIG. 20.16. Examples of drawings made by patients with left-sided and right-sided cerebral lesions and a patient with diffuse cortical dysfunction from Alzheimer disease. The left-sided cases produce oversimplified copies with great difficulty, whereas the right-sides cases neglect the left half of the space and fail to reproduce the proper spatial relations among the parts of the model drawing. “Closing-in” phenomenon is illustrated, in which the patient places the drawing close to the model and superimposes the copy on the model.
Both parietal lobes mediate more readily than left-sided lesions. Perhaps on the hemisphere lesions tend to cause hemineglect much [214,215,264,339,502]. As a consequence, right-handed patients with acute parietal stroke involving the parietal operculum, posterior insula, and, in most patients, underlying white matter.

Parietal stroke can cause different sensory syndromes depending on the topography of the underlying lesion [24]. Although sensory loss may be the only finding, they never present as a “pure sensory stroke” involving face, arm, leg, and trunk together. In a study of patients with acute parietal stroke with hemisensory disturbances (but no visual field deficit and no or only slight motor weakness), without thalamic involvement on CT or MRI, three main sensory syndromes were found [24]:

1. The pseudothalamic sensory syndrome consists of a faciobrachiofugal impairment of elementary sensation (touch, pain, temperature, and vibration). All patients have an inferior-anterior parietal stroke involving the parietal operculum, posterior insula, and, in most patients, underlying white matter.

2. The cortical sensory syndrome consists of an isolated loss of discriminative sensation (stereognosis, graphesthesia, position sense) involving one or two parts of the body. These patients show a superior-posterior parietal stroke.

3. The atypical sensory syndrome consists of a sensory loss involving all modalities of sensation in a partial distribution. Parietal lesions of varied topography are responsible for this clinical picture, which probably represents a minor variant of the two previous sensory syndromes.

Disturbances of “Body Schema” and Spatial Relationships. Both parietal lobes mediate the orienting response to a sensory stimulus in space. Each hemisphere mediates activity in the contralateral hemispace independent of the sensory half-field of the extremity used. The right hemisphere, however, seems to play a greater role in this attentional task, mediating attention to stimuli from both hemispheres, whereas the left parietal lobe is mainly concerned with stimuli delivered to the right hemispace [214,215,264,339,502]. As a consequence, right-hemisphere lesions tend to cause hemineglect much more readily than left-sided lesions. Perhaps on the same basis, large right parietal or frontoparietal lesions are often accompanied by anosognosia in which the patient denies an obvious left hemiparesis or even being sick at all [135]. Denial of hemiplegia is often associated with neglect, and perhaps patients do not recognize that they are hemiplegic because they have personal neglect [215]. Still other patients fail to recognize the hemiplegic limbs as belonging to them (autotopagnosia) and confabulate when asked whom they belong to (they often ascribe them to the examiner: somatoparaphrenia). Verbally acknowledging a problem but failing to be concerned is called anosodiaphoria [215]. Rarely, patients may report a supernumerary phantom limb (phantom third limb or “three arms”) after right hemisphere stroke; the subjective reality of this “third arm” may cause the patient considerable distress [204]. A patient with a medial parietal injury reported the transient feeling of having four legs [489]. Another abnormality of body image is heautoscopy, the multimodal illusory reduplication of one’s own body and self. In its polyopic form, more than one double is experienced [63]. When associated with a lesion, its location and nature has varied; epileptogenic lesions are often involved [63]. Cotard syndrome or Cotard delusion comprises any one of a series of delusions ranging from the unshakable belief that one has lost organs, blood, or body parts to believing that one has lost one’s soul, is dead, or does not exist. Encountered primarily in psychoses such as schizophrenia and bipolar disorder, Cotard syndrome has also been described with lesions of the nondominant temporoparietal cortex as well as in migraine [373].

Patients with persistent anosognosia for hemiplegia after right-hemisphere stroke invariably have severe left hemisensory loss and usually have severe left spatial neglect [296]. These patients are almost always apathetic; their thought lacks direction, clarity, and flexibility, and they have at least moderate impairment of intellect and memory. Their right hemisphere strokes are usually large and always affect the central gyri or their thalamic connections and capsular pathways. In addition, there is evidence of at least mild left-hemisphere damage, most commonly caused by age-related atrophy. The pathogenesis of anosognosia for hemiplegia may involve failure to discover paralysis because proprioceptive mechanisms that ordinarily inform an individual about the position and movement of limbs are damaged, and the patient, because of additional cognitive defects, lacks the capacity to make the necessary observations and inferences to diagnose the paralysis [296]. Anosognosia may be associated with a neglect syndrome and major depression; therefore, the presence of anosognosia does not preclude the recognition of emotional impairment [454].
Patients with dominant parietal (especially supramarginal gyrus) or bilateral parietal lesions may demonstrate asymbolia for pain in which the patient does not react appropriately to pain and may indeed smile during painful stimuli [158]. Sudden onset of confusion without agitation and a pronounced disorientation for place disproportionate to the rest of the patient’s behavior have been described as signs of right parietal (or right prefrontal) infarction [151,338]. Right parietal lesions cause impairment of tasks requiring apprehension of spatial relations, independently of sensory modality. Visual or tactile localization of points in space and judgment of direction and distance are defective. Patients with right parietal lobe lesions tend to misplace the cities on a map and to get lost in familiar surroundings (loss of toposgraphic memory); this last type of toposgraphic disorientation is more common with bilateral parietal lesions.

When stimulated on the side contralateral to a hemispheric (especially parietal) lesion, patients may demonstrate allesthesias, in which they misplace the location of the stimulus to the normal side [215]. Most commonly patients with allesthesia incorrectly identify left-sided stimuli as coming from the right side. Patients with allokinesia respond with the wrong limb or move in the wrong direction.

Patients with parietal lesions may demonstrate hemisomatognosia [158], which is a unilateral misperception of one’s own body. This may be conscious (the patient feels like a hemiarmputee) or unconscious (the patient behaves as a hemiarmputee). The conscious form is usually transient, of subcortical origin, unimodal, nonlateralizing, and seen with paroxysmal disease, such as migraine or seizure disorder. The unconscious form is usually permanent, of nondominant parietal origin, multimodal (i.e., associated with neglect, anosognosia, asترةهognosia, and constructional apraxia), and due to a structural lesion (e.g., stroke). In this form, patients have no concern about one-half of the body and tend to leave the arm dangling, to not cover half the body, and to not shave half the face. Occasionally, paroxysmal disorders (e.g., epilepsy, migraine, drug abuse) may result in macro- or microsomatognosia in which the patient perceives part of the body or the whole body as being abnormally large or small [157]. This is thought due to irritation of the left or right parieto-temporal-occipital regions.

Verbal asomatognosia is a form of neglect in which the patient denies ownership of a limb contralateral to a brain lesion (vs. nonverbal asomatognosia, which is a simple failure to dress an arm or shave half of the face) [141]. Verbal asomatognosia is caused by lesions of the right supramarginal gyrus and its subcortical associations within the posterior corona radiata [141].

Some of these perceptual difficulties probably underlie the impaired motor performance (apraxia), which is out of proportion to the primary motor or sensory deficit, of right parietal patients. Constructional apraxia, the inability to put together the different parts of a spatial array is a characteristic disorder. Constructional apraxia due to right-sided lesions results in drawings that maintain the structural complexity of the model but which have impaired spatial relationships among parts of the model, tend to neglect the left half of the model, and tend to be oriented diagonally on the paper [169]. Depending on the degree of their impairment, these patients cannot build a block design that matches a given sample, copy two- or three-dimensional figures, or draw two- or three-dimensional objects (Fig. 20.16). Hemispatial neglect is often conspicuous, for instance, when the patient leaves out all the left-sided numbers on the face of a clock or the petals on the left side of the daisy she has been asked to draw. Patients with hemispatial neglect may have difficulty with bisecting a line and may read part of a word or part of a sentence (paralexia) (e.g., “cowboy” is read as “boy”). Patients with left-sided lesions may also have difficulty with drawings in that they draw slowly and with difficulty, oversimplify the design, and tend to trace lines perpendicular to those already drawn, resulting in an increased number of right angles (see Fig. 20.16). Patients with more diffuse (nonfocal) cortical damage (e.g., Alzheimer disease) may place their drawings close to the model or superimpose the copy on the model (Mayer-Gross closing-in phenomenon) (see Fig. 20.16).

DRESSING APRAXIA. Impaired tactile and visuospatial coordination plus a degree of hemineglect may explain why some patients with right parietal lesions have a striking difficulty donning their clothes. Hemineglect is obvious when the patient leaves the left side of the body uncovered and disheveled.

FINGER AGNOSIA, RIGHT/LEFT DISORIENTATION, AGRAPIA, AND ACALCULIA. Gerstmann described the association of these four signs (Gerstmann syndrome) as characteristic of lesions in the angular and supramarginal gyri of the dominant hemisphere [38]. The lesion can involve the subangular white matter, affecting the forceps of the splenium of the corpus callosum [323]. A patient with the complete tetrad had a deficit in the translation, rotation or other transformations of visual mental images [323]. However, cases have been reported in which patients with all four components of the syndrome proved on necropsy examination to have an intact angular gyrus [217]. Other studies have shown a strong correlation of finger agnosia and right-left disorientation with impairment of language comprehension in
unilateral lesions. This holds not only for performances in which understanding of the labels right and left is required but also for nonverbal performances, such as imitation [37]. Nondominant parietal lesions may give rise to some forms of right-left disorientation, specifically misidentification of body parts of a confronting person and failure to imitate crossed movements of the examiner (e.g., left hand on right ear). Impairment in these tasks may be based on visuospatial disability [37].

**Agraphia.** Inability to write properly (agraphia) accompanies all other language disturbances. The characteristics of these forms of agraphia are described in the paragraphs dealing with aphasia. The association of agraphia with alexia in angular gyrus lesions affecting the dominant hemisphere was discussed in the section on alexia. This writing disturbance has been called parietal agraphia because it results from lesions of the inferior parietal lobe. Marked difficulty with spelling out and putting together spelled-out words accompanies this type of agraphia. Apraxia is almost always present; anomia is common. Parietal agraphia is characterized by impairment in the drawing of letters, relative preservation of the syntactic structure of sentences, and parallel impairment of all writing modalities (spontaneous writing, writing to dictation, copying). By contrast, in aphasic agraphia, copying ability is usually preserved. Parietal agraphia is not merely a direct expression of hand apraxia because spelling using block letters is also impaired. The relative severity of agraphia and alexia varies with the location of the lesion; alexia predominates with temporoparietal lesions, and agraphia is more prominent with parietooccipital lesions [312].

Apractic agraphia is an impairment in writing in which the actual orthographic production of letters and words is abnormal despite normal sensorimotor function, visual feedback, and word and letter knowledge [4]. Apractic agraphia is probably one of several related clinical disorders that are due to the loss of spatially and kinesthetically modulated movements. It is produced by lesions in the superior parietal lobe, usually in the hemisphere dominant for language [4].

Writing impairment may occur with other central nervous system lesions [34]. For example, visuospaital agraphia may occur with lesions of the nondominant temporoparietal junction. These patients neglect the left side of the paper when writing and tend to confine their writing to progressively smaller portions of the right side of the page. They have abnormal spacing between words and tend to slant the lines toward the top or bottom of the page. Writing disturbances may also occur from motor paraparesis (paretic agraphia), from Parkinson disease (micrographia with the letters becoming progressively smaller and more crowded as the writing proceeds), and from hyperkinetic movement disorders (hyperkinetic agraphia). Micrographia may also occur with dominant parietal lobe white matter lesions [429]. Echographia (compulsive copying of words and phrases) may occur with dominant frontotemporal lesions and with psychiatric disturbances, whereas paligraphia (written repetition of words and phrases) is seen with diffuse or bilateral cortical disease [34]. Perseverative agraphia (continuation or recurrence of writing without appropriate stimulus) may occur with lesions of the frontal lobe, with diffuse cortical disease (e.g., Alzheimer disease), and in aphasic patients [312]. Coprographia (compulsive writing of profanities) has been described with Tourette syndrome. Hypergraphia (excessive writing in general) may occur with schizophrenia and has also been described with epileptogenic lesions or destructive lesions involving the right hemisphere [501,123,242].

**Acalculia.** Left parietooccipital lesions that cause aphasia often cause difficulty in performing simple arithmetic calculations. Anterior frontal lesions impair the ability to solve problems in which more than one step is involved (e.g., distribute six books between two shelves in such a way that one shelf contains twice as many books as the other) or calculations in an open-ended series, in which the patient utters perseverations after an accurate answer (e.g., 100 − 7 = 93, −7 = 83, −7 = 73).

Simple calculations may be impaired because of:

1. Alexia or agraphia for numbers. Patients with left temporal lesions may be able to calculate as long as they can use a paper to write down the calculations, but they cannot handle calculations given orally or those that require verbal carryover, even silent, of numbers.

2. Impaired spatial organization of numbers (spatial acalculia), reflected by misalignment of digits, visual neglect (e.g., 252 read as 52), inversion of digits (e.g., 9 interpreted as 6), reversal errors (e.g., 12 interpreted as 21), and inability to maintain the decimal place. In a patient without generalized mental deterioration or aphasia, this type of spatial acalculia suggests a post-Rolandic lesion in the right hemisphere [295]. Patients with parietooccipital lesions of either hemisphere may understand the value of single digits yet be unable to read and write compound numbers. They read 19 as 1 and 9. They may estimate the size of a figure from the value of the individual numbers; thus they consider 2,989 larger than 5,010.

3. Pure anarithmetria, the inability to calculate despite intact number reading and in the absence
of spatial deficits, appears most often with bilateral hemispheric or dominant retro-Rolandic or basal ganglia lesions [87]. Isolated acalculia is most often associated with lesions of the parieto—temporal region in the dominant hemisphere but may also occur with medial frontal cortical lesions and in subcortical lesions involving the caudate nucleus, putamen, and internal capsule [277]. Impairment of analytic memory and attention plays a role in many of these cases. Multiplication and division are usually most impaired. Different processing systems are responsible for each of the basic arithmetic operations [277]. For example, a patient with a left parietotemporal hemorrhage had selective acalculia for addition, multiplication, and division but intact ability to subtract [277].

Primary dyscalculia has been described with infarction in the territory of the left anterior cerebral artery that destroyed the medial cortex of the frontal lobe [304]. Lexical and syntactic processing of verbal and Arabic numbers and comprehension of operation symbols were intact, but retrieval of basic, overlearned facts was mildly impaired, and execution of calculation procedures was more severely impaired. The location of the lesion suggested participation of medial frontal areas in calculation processes [304]. Acalculia from defects of numeric syntax, loss of ability to manipulate mathematic concepts, and impaired working memory may also occur with subcortical lesions of the dominant hemisphere (e.g., an infarct involving the left caudate, anterior—superior putamen, and anterior limb of the internal capsule (extending superiorly into the periventricular white matter) [87].

Disturbances of Sensorimotor Integration and of Movement Execution (Parietal, Frontal)

APRAXIAS

Parietal Apraxia. Apraxia has been defined as a disorder of skilled movement that is not caused by weakness, sensory loss, abnormality of tone or posture, abnormal movements, intellectual deterioration, or poor comprehension [182,291]. This deficit may interfere with the patient’s ability to use tools such as dinnerware. In addition, patients have difficulty performing a pantomime, such as to make believe they are lighting a cigarette or combing their hair. Patients become befuddled or perform the wrong sequence of movements on command. For movements such as the ones mentioned above, which require the use of the hand, they often use the hand as an object (e.g., as a comb). This type of apraxia, which has been termed ideomotor apraxia [216], appears with dominant parietal lesions or lesions of the premotor area of the frontal lobe (areas 6 and 8 of Brodmann) [307]. Clinically, these two locations of apraxia can be distinguished because parietal apraxia is accompanied by a greater degree of difficulty in recognizing that a motor performance (by the patient or others) was poor [213]. Traditionally, it has been thought that, just as one hemisphere is dominant for language, one is dominant for the performance of movement formulas and “object-free” motor acts. In right-handed persons, the left hemisphere would be dominant for praxis and speech [183]. In left-handers these functions may be represented in opposite hemispheres. Thus, after a high parietal lesion on the right hemisphere, a left-handed man developed apraxia without aphasia, but this was accompanied by an inability to discriminate well-performed from poorly performed acts [213].

Studies of the neural network subserving praxis have encountered two methodological problems. The first affected classical localization studies, based on lesions produced by stroke. While strokes tend to affect the perisylvian region discretely, yielding a plethora of distinct language-related findings, they seldom affect only the superior portion of the parietal or frontal lobes. Secondly, in the era of functional neuroimaging, while verbal-related skills can be easily tested in the scanner, real tool manipulation, as different from visuospatial assessment is difficult to test. Disorders much less usual than stroke have provided a greater insight into the neurobiology of apraxia. Apraxia is a prominent and early finding in corticobasal degeneration, which tends to affect the superior portion of the parietal and frontal association cortex [374,430]. Paradigms testing complex upper extremity, real-life motion have disclosed activation involving primarily the same regions (Fig. 20.17). Thus, it is becoming increasingly clear that upper extremity and hand apraxias occur with lesions of the dominant parietal association cortex corresponding to the hand area in the paracentral cortex. Similarly, when the association cortex near the mouth region is affected, namely perisylvian association cortex, the patient has an aphasic syndrome. But patients with corticobasal degeneration may have an isolated apraxia, accompanied by an apractic agraphia, but no aphasia or alexia. Patients with bilateral lesions in the neighborhood of the intraparietal sulcus have the greatest difficulty in performing object-free movements and often exhibit impairment of more elementary movements as well. They may miscalculate reaching for a fork under visual guidance or using it to bring food to the mouth. Proximal, less elaborate movements, like ambulation, are unimpaired. This portion of the parietal lobe is important for the learning of motor patterns, to a great extent by imitation [399]. Corresponding areas in monkeys have been...
Anterior (Frontal) Apraxias. We have considered the impairment of motor performance derived from parietal or premotor lesions (ideomotor apraxia). Unilateral lesions of the supplementary motor area, which plays an important role in bimanual coordination [468], impair the performance of tasks in which bimanual coordination is required [60]. Patients with left supplementary motor area lesions may have bilateral failure of sequence of movements (ideomotor apraxia or apraxia for sequential acts) [374]. Unlike many patients with parietal lesions, these patients may both comprehend and discriminate pantomimes. Also, tasks of reciprocal coordination are impaired, such as repetitively making a fist with one hand while opening the other. This is also reflected by an inability to draw alternating patterns and by constructional perseveration (Fig. 20.18). Writing is often impaired, more so with lesions of the left hemisphere [6,319]. The hand contralateral to the lesion has a tendency to grasp when the palm is stimulated (grasp reflex) and shown to contain populations of “mirror-neurons,” which discharge specifically when the animal observes the performance of a given motor pattern [399].

Callosal apraxia. In patients with therapeutic callosotomies (section of the corpus callosum), the right hemisphere can organize relatively simple sequences of left-handed movements without the participation of the left hemisphere [487]. It can probably also organize object-free movements, because callosal section does not induce apraxia. Apraxia of the left hand has been reported in clinical cases in which the corpus callosum had been involved by ischemia or tumors (callosal apraxia). These cases, however, are compounded by damage to the mesial aspect of the frontal lobe that by itself may interfere with the performance of bimanual coordination tasks [60,181].

Dressing and constructional apraxia are discussed earlier in this chapter, among the disorders of spatial relationships.

Anterior (Frontal) Apraxias. We have considered the impairment of motor performance derived from parietal or premotor lesions (ideomotor apraxia). Unilateral lesions of the supplementary motor area, which plays an important role in bimanual coordination [468], impair the performance of tasks in which bimanual coordination is required [60]. Patients with left supplementary motor area lesions may have bilateral failure of sequence of movements (ideomotor apraxia or apraxia for sequential acts) [374]. Unlike many patients with parietal lesions, these patients may both comprehend and discriminate pantomimes. Also, tasks of reciprocal coordination are impaired, such as repetitively making a fist with one hand while opening the other. This is also reflected by an inability to draw alternating patterns and by constructional perseveration (Fig. 20.18). Writing is often impaired, more so with lesions of the left hemisphere [6,319]. The hand contralateral to the lesion has a tendency to grasp when the palm is stimulated (grasp reflex) and shown to contain populations of “mirror-neurons,” which discharge specifically when the animal observes the performance of a given motor pattern [399].

Callosal apraxia. In patients with therapeutic callosotomies (section of the corpus callosum), the right hemisphere can organize relatively simple sequences of left-handed movements without the participation of the left hemisphere [487]. It can probably also organize object-free movements, because callosal section does not induce apraxia. Apraxia of the left hand has been reported in clinical cases in which the corpus callosum had been involved by ischemia or tumors (callosal apraxia). These cases, however, are compounded by damage to the mesial aspect of the frontal lobe that by itself may interfere with the performance of bimanual coordination tasks [60,181].

Dressing and constructional apraxia are discussed earlier in this chapter, among the disorders of spatial relationships.

A

B

FIG. 20.17. Apraxia. Apraxia is caused by lesions in the parietal regions shown in the image, which were activated by a skilled manual motor task (difficult > easy Tetris game). Note (1) that the activation is strongly lateralized to the left hemisphere; and (2) that it corresponds to association cortex in the neighborhood of the hand area of the paracentral cortex. Courtesy of Dr. Philip Khon, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD.

FIG. 20.18. A: Perseveration is evident in this copying task by a 76-year-old woman with a recent infarct in the distribution of the left anterior cerebral artery (B). (Reprinted with permission from Masdeu JC et al [319].)
may perform seemingly purposeful movements (such as reaching for an object or imitating what the other hand is doing) that are unwilled by the patient (alien hand sign) [181].

The alien limb sign includes failure to recognize ownership of one’s limb when visual cues are removed, a feeling that one body part is foreign, personification of the affected body part, and autonomous activity that is perceived as outside voluntary control [128]. Although the hand is most frequently affected, any limb or combination of limbs may fulfill the alien limb criteria. In a study of seven patients with the alien hand sign, etiologies included multiple infarcts and corticobasal ganglionic degeneration [128]. All patients in this study had apraxia in response to verbal commands and problems with bimanual coordination; most displayed non–goal-directed involuntary motor activities, and two had self-destructive motor behaviors. Cortical reflex myoclonus was frequently present. Lesions included section of the corpus callosum, mesial frontal lesions, and a combination of posterior corpus callosum infarction with a thalamic infarct [128]. Other causes of the alien hand syndrome include Alzheimer disease, contralateral frontal strokes, corpus callosum infarction, anterior communicating artery rupture, corpus callosotomy, corpus callosum tumors, bifrontal penetrating cerebral injury, and combined posterior corpus callosum and contralateral thalamic lesions [22,23,128,174,181,297,331].

Two distinct alien hand syndromes have been described [142]. The frontal alien hand syndrome occurs in the dominant hand; is associated with reflexive grasping, groping, and compulsive manipulation of tools; and results from damage to the supplementary motor area, anterior cingulate gyrus, and medial prefrontal cortex of the dominant hemisphere and anterior corpus callosum. It is explained by an increased tendency for dominant limb exploratory reflexes coupled with release from an asymmetrically distributed, predominant nondominant hemisphere inhibition. Callosal alien hand syndrome is characterized primarily by intermanual conflict and, in theory, requires only an anterior callosal lesion. It is explained by hemispheric disconnection manifested during behaviors requiring dominant hemisphere control [142]. However, in many cases of a “callosal” alien hand, the supplementary motor area has been involved in addition to the corpus callosum in chronic forms of the alien hand syndrome affecting the left nondominant hand [476].

A paroxysmal form of the alien hand syndrome, probably due to ictal mechanisms, has also been described [290]. Two patients with damage to one frontomedial cortex had brief episodes of abnormal motor behavior of the contralateral arm that featured groping, grasping, and apparently purposeful but perseverative movements that both patients interpreted as alien or foreign. Two other patients with posterior parietal damage reported a paroxysmal feeling of unawareness of the location of the contralateral arm, lack of recognition of the arm as their own, purposeless movements, and personification of the arm [290]. A patient with similar findings from a posterior cerebral artery infarction has been described as having a “sensory alien hand” [17].

Patients with frontal lobe lesions, especially lesions affecting the inferior half of the anterior part of one or both frontal lobes, may demonstrate imitation behavior and utilization behavior [500]. With imitation behavior the patient imitates the examiner’s gestures although not instructed to do so, thinking that he “had to imitate” the examiner. Utilization behavior is a disturbance in response to external stimuli in which the sight of an object implies an “order to use it.” These behaviors are interpreted as release of parietal lobe activities resulting from impaired frontal lobe inhibition [300] and are part of the environmental dependency syndrome, which is a disorder of personal autonomy in which the patient’s activities are excessively dependent on environmental cues [299] (e.g., when the patient sees a bed, she undresses and gets into it).

Lesions in the pathways originating in the mesial frontal cortex are often accompanied by a characteristic gait (apraxia of gait). The patient appears to be stuck to the floor (magnetic gait) and has difficulty lifting up each foot to take the next step [341]. As a result, the feet drag along, and steps are short. Turns are particularly difficult. The resultant gait thus resembles that of patients with Parkinson disease, due to bilateral nigral degeneration. Patients with frontal apraxia of gait due to mesial frontal disease perform clumsily when asked to kick an imaginary ball or to outline a circle with the foot. These movements are performed slowly but correctly by patients with the most common causes of apraxia of gait: bilateral subcortical infarcts in the paracentral white matter of the centrum semiovale and stretching by hydrocephalus of the fibers projecting from the mesial aspect of the frontal lobe as they sweep around the ventricles.

Seizures originating in the supplementary motor area induce head turning to the opposite side and raising of the contralateral hand to the level of the head, in such a way that the patient seems to be performing a military salute (“salutatory” seizures).

Lesions of the mesial aspect of the frontal lobe cause akinesia (paucity of movement). The contralateral limbs are used sparingly, although when used they appear strong. Bilateral lesions cause paucity of movement and of speech (kinetic mutism) [249,319]. Some patients with bilateral mesial frontal lesions (and perhaps also those with bilateral Pallidal pathology) have a remarkable disorder of movement. They can be
Lesions of the medial aspect of the frontal lobe reflexes usually precede the onset of spasticity. Sometime after the lesion occurs, spasticity affected portion of the cortex (305,462) (see Fig. 20.6). When a patient with paratonia is asked to relax a joint (elbow, knee) so that the examiner may move it freely, the involved muscles tense up instead, and the patient appears to the examiner to be trying to actively oppose any movement of the joint by the examiner. The tone of the involved muscles increases in proportion to the speed and strength with which the examiner tries to move the joint.

**“Pyramidal” Weakness.** Lesions of the motor strip or fibers therefrom induce impairment in the voluntary control of the limb represented in the affected portion of the cortex (305,462) (see Fig. 20.6). Sometime after the lesion occurs, spasticity develops in the affected limb. Brisk muscle stretch reflexes usually precede the onset of spasticity.

Clumsiness in the use of the arm is discussed above. Lesions of the medial aspect of the frontal lobe in the area of representation of the legs (paracentral lobule) give rise primarily to weakness of foot dorsiflexion and of alternating movements of the toes. Weakness of the oropharynx, lips, and tongue occur from lesions of the low Rolandic region and insula; weakness of the face from lesions of the Rolandic cortex just above; weakness of the arm, hand, and fingers from even higher lesions; weakness of the leg and foot from lesions of the Rolandic region facing the interhemispheric fissure; and weakness of the shoulder and hip from lesions of the motor areas just anterior to the Rolandic regions. Neuroimaging techniques have confirmed the traditional representation of the motor homunculus described by Penfield (29,375). A Babinski sign and, if the lesion involves the mesial aspect of the first frontal gyrus, a grasp response may be present. Such lesions often affect both hemispheres, causing urinary incontinence with uninhibited emptying of the bladder.

Lesions in the internal capsule are often vascular and tend to spare a parathalamic rim of the capsule where the sensory tracts are located. As a result, they often cause “pure” motor syndromes (13). At superior levels of the internal capsule, the face and bulbar muscles are most affected with lesions in the genu or anterior part of the posterior limb, whereas more posteriorly located lesions cause arm weakness, and those in the most posterior part of the posterior limb give rise to leg weakness and visual field defects. More inferiorly in the capsule, as it approaches the midbrain, the fibers migrate posteriorly and a lesion in the posterior limb can affect face, arm and leg (503). Large capsular lesions have worse prognosis for functional recovery than cortical or corona radiata lesions of a similar size (441).

**Paratonia (Gegenhalten).** This type of increased muscle tone results from rather extensive bilateral dysfunction of the mesial cortex and superior convexity of the frontal lobes (premotor cortex, area 6). When a patient with paratonia is asked to relax a joint (elbow, knee) so that the examiner may move it freely, the involved muscles tense up instead, and the patient appears to the examiner to be trying to actively oppose any movement of the joint by the examiner. The tone of the involved muscles increases in proportion to the speed and strength with which the examiner tries to move the joint.

**“Primitive” Reflexes.** Grasping anything that stimulates the palm of the hand or foot, sucking to lip or facial stimulation, and the corneomandibular reflex are responses, present during infancy, that disappear during childhood and tend to reappear with aging. They can be elicited in hydranencephalic infants lacking suprastratal brain structures. Thus, it is thought that as the infant cortex matures and myelination proceeds, these primitive signs are inhibited.
Cortical or subcortical damage, particularly damage affecting the frontal lobes, would release them. Some “primitive” reflexes have little value in neurologic localization. Up to 25% of normal adults have a palpmontal reflex, which becomes a very common finding in normal elderly individuals [245]. The grasp and suck reflexes are more specific indicators of extensive frontal lobe disease. The grasp and suck reflexes often accompany impaired performance of cognitive tests [477].

**GRASP REFLEX.** The grasp reflex is elicited by stroking lightly the palm of the patient’s hand with the radial aspect of the index finger and then rubbing the palm and the volar aspect of the fingers with a gentle forward motion. The patient’s fingers hook around the hand of the examiner, who can then pull from the flexed fingers of the patient, who is unable to release the grip (forced grasping reflex). For the reflex to be most reliable, the patient should be told not to grab the examiner’s fingers. Patients with mild loss of cortical inhibition may be able to release the grip voluntarily, particularly at the beginning of the eliciting maneuver, before strong tension on the finger flexors is applied. Distracting the patient with a task, such as giving his or her address, allows the reflex to reappear. Damage to the contralateral area 6, particularly in the mesial aspect of the hemisphere, accounts for the release of the grasp reflex.

**PALMOMENTAL REFLEX.** The palpmontal reflex consists of a brief contraction of the ipsilateral mentalis muscle when the palm of the hand is briskly stroked with a blunt object. When pronounced, this reflex may indicate damage to the contralateral paramedial cortex or the fibers from it and can be elicited by stroking the arm or even the chest.

**SUCKING, SNOT, ROOTING REFLEXES.** When tapping on the upper lip elicits a pursing-pouting movement of the lips, the patient is said to have a suck reflex. Curving of the lips around a round object applied to them represents a suck reflex, which when accentuated may be expressed by a sucking position of the lips and turning of the mouth toward a round object that approaches the patient’s mouth or gently strokes her cheek (rooting reflex). The suck reflex may reflect impairment of the corticobulbar projection, whereas the suck reflex correlates better with diffuse frontal premotor disease.

**CORNEOMANDIBULAR REFLEX, EYE, JAW SYNKINESIS.** A corneoanibular reflex occurs when the patient’s jaw deviates to the side opposite a stimulated cornea. Eye jaw synkinesis, which is found in many normal individuals, consists of ipsilateral movement of the jaw when the patient voluntarily looks sideways.

**Opercular Syndrome, Pseudobulbar Palsy.** In addition to dysarthria (and aphasia when on the dominant hemisphere), acute lesions of the frontoparietal operculum cause difficulty in swallowing liquids (dysphagia), which tend to come back through the nose. When the lesions involving the operculum or corticobulbar pathways are bilateral, dysphagia tends to last longer and may be permanent. In those cases, saliva accumulates in the mouth, aspiration of food may cause repeated bouts of pneumonia, and the patient may be aphonic. This array of symptoms resembles the clinical picture produced by involvement of the bulbar muscles themselves or by involvement of the neuromuscular junction, peripheral nerve, or medullary neurons. Thus it has been termed pseudo-bulbar palsy because, unlike actual bulbar palsy, the bulbar muscles themselves are not affected and lack atrophy.

The anterior opercular syndrome (Foix-Chavany-Marie syndrome or the syndrome of facio-pharyngo-glosso-masticatory diplegia with automatic voluntary movement dissociation) is due to bilateral anterior perisylvian lesions involving the primary motor cortex and parietal opercula [310]. Patients with this syndrome lose voluntary control of facial, pharyngeal, lingual, masticatory, and sometimes ocular muscles. Reflexive and automatic functions of these muscles are preserved. These patients may blink, laugh, or yawn spontaneously, but they cannot close their eyes or open their mouths on command. They do not have emotional lability (uninhibited laughter and crying). The gag reflex is decreased, and swallowing is severely impaired [310]. Most often the syndrome is produced by variants of upper motor neuron disorders but may be caused by vascular lesions and by chronic herpes simplex encephalitis [417]. Patients with the anterior opercular syndrome may be distinguished from patients with Broca aphasia, oral-buccal apraxia, pseudo-bulbar palsy, or bulbar palsy [41,310].

Rhythmic teeth grinding, an abnormal form of masticatory activity, may occur with temporal lobe seizures [334].

Ocular motor disturbances related to frontal or parietal lesions are discussed in Chapter 8.

**MOTOR DISTURBANCES OF SYMBOLIC BEHAVIOR**

**Motor (Frontoparietal) Aphasias.** Lesions involving the anterior portion of the frontoparietal operculum cause language disturbances in which production of language is altered and reduced (nonfluent aphasia), but comprehension of spoken language is preserved. As in the posterior (sensory) aphasias, the degree and quality of language impairment in anterior aphasias depends on several factors. First, it depends on the cortical representation of motor sequences (frontal association cortex) and of the integration of kinesthetic and motor information (parietal association cortex)
that mediate speech production. Unilateral lesions of the “face area” of the precentral gyrus (area 4; see Fig. 20.6) cause transient dysarthria [259,]. The verbal utterances contain a correct set of words, disposed in a grammatically correct order (phonemic and morphosyntactic levels), yet the articulation of each sound by the oral muscles is clumsy. The patient speaks slowly and effortfully. Because of oral muscle incoordination, voiced consonants such as b become their devoiced counterparts (b → p), occlusive consonants are abnormally strong, and fricative consonants adopt the related occlusive sound (e.g., z → d). Vowels are abnormally long and hesitant, sounding like pseudodiphthongs. As a result, the patient’s speech resembles that of someone with a foreign accent [284]. Lesions of the precentral gyrus or fibers therefrom cause contralateral facial weakness involving the lower facial muscles, which is most noticeable when the patient speaks; the affected orbicularis oris then shows reduced speed and range of movements. Bilateral lesions of the corticobulbar fibers originating in the face region of area 4 cause lasting dysarthria, which may be severe (pure anarthria or phonetic disintegration syndrome, aphemia). Aphemia (usually transitory) may result from small lesions of Broca area or its subcortical white matter [419]. Such a syndrome is most often caused by bilateral infarcts in the corticobulbar fibers as they course in the anterior portion of the posterior limb of the internal capsule. This explains why this disturbance of speech was termed subcortical motor aphasia. However, these patients, even when mute, can write correctly and have no difficulty in the production of verbal sequences as long as they do not have to articulate them [284]. Aphemia may be the sole manifestation of primary progressive aphasia [83].

By contrast, unilateral left-sided lesions in the strip of cortex immediately anterior to the primary motor cortex for the face, that is, the cortex in the posterior portion of the inferior (and middle?) frontal gyri (Broca area) [97, 262, 347], cause a true language disturbance. Patients with true Broca aphasia usually have extensive damage involving not only Broca area (the inferior left frontal gyrus, which contains areas 44 and 45) but also the surrounding frontal fields (the external aspects of area 6 and areas 8, 9, 10, and 46) and the underlying white matter and basal ganglia [97]. Although the patient knows what he or she wants to say and can recognize an appropriate sentence, he or she cannot produce the appropriate sounds or write a meaningful sequence of letters [219, 318]. There is a drastic loss of speech fluency, with speech becoming effortful and often slow, with pauses between words often outnumbering the words themselves [97]. Speech and writing are impaired to the point of mutism and complete agraphia, in which the patient can copy but cannot write spontaneously or on dictation (Fig. 20.19). Repetition is also impaired, but with smaller lesions or when the patient begins to improve, repetition is usually better than spontaneous speech. The speech of these patients has an agrammatic character; function words, such as articles, are omitted, and verbal endings are dropped. Nouns fare better than verbs or adjectives, adverbs, and other “filler” words. Thus, these patients convey much information using few words (telegraphic speech). Sound substitution, usually by including a stressed syllable of a word that comes later in the sentence, gives rise to literal and phonemic paraphasias. These are recognized by the patient as paraphasic errors, unlike the situation that occurs when paraphasias are uttered as a result of posterior lesions. Naming of objects is also impaired, but, unlike patients with temporal lobe lesions, these patients benefit from cueing. This cueing may be phonetic (e.g., the examiner mouth the beginning sound of the word) or contextual (e.g., “you pound a
Patients with Broca aphasia are often depressed because of their plight and frustrated by specific failures at communication [97]. Lasting aphasia of the type described above, with pronounced agrammatism and markedly reduced fluency (Broca aphasia), corresponds to lesions extending across the frontoparietal operculum, including the postcentral and supramarginal gyri [5]. Patients with this type of Broca aphasia have difficulty understanding sentences whose meaning depends on syntax (e.g., “the boy was kicked by the cow” vs. “the boy kicked the cow”). This impairment may be related to damage to the supramarginal gyrus, which is part of the auditory association cortex [407]. However, cortical stimulation studies suggest a more critical participation of the motor sequencing areas of the frontoparietal perisylvian operculum in the decoding of the phonemes that constitute the syntactic changes. The production of verbs activates selectively Broca area and lesions here may impair some of the semantic aspects of verb production [376,471].

When damage is restricted to Broca area alone or to its subjacent white matter, true Broca aphasia does not develop [97]. Instead, there is a mild and transient aphasia referred to as Broca area aphasia [348]. This transient aphasia, except for decreased spontaneity of the patient’s speech (transcortical motor aphasia), clears completely in the course of a few days or weeks [348].

The structures usually damaged in Broca aphasia are part of a neural network involved in the assembly of both phonemes into words and words into sentences, that is, the ordering of linguistic components in time and space [97]. This network is probably concerned with the relational aspects of language, which include the grammatical structure of sentences and the proper use of grammatical morphemes and verbs; the other cortical components of this network include the lateral left frontal cortices (areas 47,46, and 9), the interconnected left parietal cortices (areas 40,39, and 7), and the sensorimotor cortices above the Sylvian fissure between Broca and Wernicke areas (the lower sector of areas 1,2,3, and 4), with critical subcortical components in the left basal ganglia (head of the caudate nucleus and putamen) [97].

Patients with large perisylvian lesions are mute or have a nonfluent, agrammatic speech accompanied by impaired comprehension and repetition (global aphasia). This type of aphasia thus combines features of Broca and Wernicke aphasia. When caused by an ischemic event, as it is most often the case, the patient may be initially mute or only groan unintelligibly. Patients with global aphasia frequently have stereotypic utterances that perhaps originate from a right-hemisphere mechanism for automatic residual speech, especially speech triggered or influenced by emotions (e.g., expletives). Other automatic-speech routines, such as counting or reciting the days of the week, are often intact, as is the ability to hum previously learned melodies and sing their lyrics [97].

Global aphasia is usually accompanied by weakness of the right side of the face and right hemiplegia. The presence or absence of hemiplegia is an important clue to the localization of brain damage [97]. When hemiplegia is present (classic global aphasia) the damage has affected the anterior language area (as in Broca aphasia), the entire basal ganglia region, the insula and auditory cortices (as in conduction aphasia), and the posterior language region (as in Wernicke aphasia). Such damage almost always is caused by a large infarct in the distribution of the middle cerebral artery [97]. Global aphasia without other lateralizing signs (i.e., no hemiparesis or lasting motor defects) may occur with a single dominant temporoparietal lesion [51] but more often occurs with two discrete lesions in the dominant hemisphere, one frontal and one temporoparietal [473,481]. The latter situation is usually due to embolic stroke [206,481] but may occur with nonembolic etiologies (e.g., intraparenchymal hematoma and cerebral metastases) that spare a wide area of motor, sensory, and language-related structures [287,485].

Another group of globally aphasic patients have dominant frontal lobe damage with extension into the insula and basal ganglia (the temporal and parietal regions are intact). Most of these patients gradually improve but are compromised by residual Broca aphasia [97]. Another subtype of global aphasia is characterized by an extreme loss of communicative abilities (verbal as well as nonverbal); these patients completely lose speech output and are inaccessible to any kind of message, whether given verbally or through gestures (the aphasic isolate) [113]. The prognosis in these individuals is poor, and whereas some lesions affect Broca and Wernicke areas, the location of lesions in other cases ranges from anterior cortical damage to posterior cortical damage to deep nuclei damage [113].

Nonfluency in spontaneous speech was studied in patients whose severity of spontaneous speech ranged from cases with no speech or only verbal stereotypies to those with reduced, hesitant, poorly articulated, agrammatic speech (nonfluent Broca aphasia) [357]. The degree of nonfluency increased depending on the extent of the responsible lesion in two combined subcortical white matter areas: the medial subcallosal fasciculus (located in the lateral angle of the frontal horn) and the periventricular white matter near the body of the lateral ventricle, deep to the lower motor-sensory cortex area for the mouth. The medial subcallosal fasciculus contains...
fibers from the cingulate gyrus and supplementary motor area that course to the caudate nucleus; lesions of this fasciculus may thus impair initiation and preparation of speech movements and limbic aspects of speech. The white matter lesion deep to the motor-sensory cortex area for the mouth likely impairs pathways necessary for motor execution and sensory feedback of spontaneous speech [5,357].

In most right-handed people the left hemisphere is dominant for speech. Only left-hemisphere lesions cause the disturbances of symbolic behavior outlined above. Among left-handers, language dominance is less clear-cut than among right-handers [390]. Left-hemisphere lesions may leave oral language unaltered, whereas writing and reading may be severely impaired (see Fig. 20.15). About 50% of left-handers develop a language deficit, often transient, after lesions of the left hemisphere. Hemispheric dominance appears early in life. Complete transfer of language capabilities to the right hemisphere when the left hemisphere suffers a lesion is unlikely to occur in children older than 6 years [506]. Some studies, but not others, have found greater lateralization of syntactic abilities to the left hemisphere in males [165,440].

In bilingual individuals the cortical representation of both languages is identical if the languages were learned early in life [220,260], or if the individuals are just as fluent in both languages [241]. However, for those who acquired a second language after adolescence, the cortical representation in Broca area (but not in Wernicke) tends to differ for either language [260]. Other studies have shown larger areas of cortical activation with semantic tasks when the second language is used [115]. Prefrontal, Broca and supramarginal cortex play an important role in language switching and lesions in these areas could impair this function [220,388,411].

In addition to the location of the lesion and the pattern of cortical representation, the amount of time elapsed since acute cerebral insult (usually infarction or trauma) determines the degree of language disturbance. The initial difficulty in producing and understanding language (global aphasia) often evolves into Broca aphasia as comprehension of spoken language improves. Anomia may remain as the only language deficit in patients who, months previously had a language deficit ranging from Broca aphasia to transcortical sensory aphasia.

The frontal cortices located on the internal (mesial) cerebral surface of the left hemisphere (e.g., the supplementary motor area and the anterior cingulate gyrus) also play a part in the initiation and maintenance of speech [6,97,105]. Damage to these areas does not cause aphasia directly but rather causes difficulty with initiating movement (akinesia) and mutism. Patients with akinesia and mutism fail to communicate both by word and by gesture or facial expression; their drive to communicate is no longer present [97].

Patients with aphasia or with unilateral or bilateral hemispheric lesions may demonstrate acquired stuttering, which is different from developmental stuttering in that stuttering may occur with singing and frequently is evident throughout the sentence, not just evident at the beginning of a sentence or phrase [218]. Acquired stuttering may occur with stroke, cerebral trauma, Alzheimer disease, renal dialysis, Parkinson disease, and progressive supranuclear palsy [153].

**Transcortical Motor Aphasia.** Similar to Broca aphasia in the lack of verbal spontaneity, transcortical motor aphasia differs from Broca in that the patient can repeat correctly, and may even correct syntactic errors in the original sentence [6,319]. The verbal output may resemble Broca aphasia speech, with aggrammatical, telegraphic speech, or on the contrary, feature grammatically correct utterances with a marked tendency for perseveration. Stuttering and the repetition of the same syllable or word are common. Lesions causing transcortical motor aphasia almost always occur in the dominant frontal lobe, positioned either anterior or superior to Broca area, or are in the supplementary motor area [6,319,404]. Left thalamic lesions may cause a similar syndrome [358,361]. Etiologies include cerebral hemorrhage, anterior cerebral artery distribution infarction, and internal carotid occlusion with infarction in the border zone between the anterior and middle cerebral arteries, tumor, and head trauma.

**Motor Aprosodia.** Patients with nondominant frontal-parietal lesions may be unable to express emotional color in their speech and gestures. This aprosodia may be considered the affective equivalent of motor aphasia.

**Pure Agraphia.** Writing disturbances often accompany language deficits and have similar characteristics. However, the degree and type of impairment can differ widely from the patient's performance with oral material. The extreme case, in which the patient writes poorly, even though oral language, reading, and praxis are normal, is termed pure agraphia. It has been related to affection of the posterior part of the second frontal gyrus (Exner area) or of the superior parietal lobule [302]. Lesions of the nondominant hemisphere may cause letter reduplication, slanted lines, and crowding of the words to the right side of the paper [312].

**DISTURBANCES OF GOAL-ORIENTED BEHAVIOR (EXECUTIVE FUNCTION LOSS)**

Executive processes include (a) focusing attention on relevant information and processes and inhibiting irrelevant ones (“attention and inhibition”); (b)
scheduling processes in complex tasks, which requires the switching of focused attention between tasks ("task management"); (c) planning a sequence of subtasks to accomplish some goal ("planning"); (d) updating and checking the contents of working memory to determine the next step in a sequential task ("monitoring"); and (e) coding representations in working memory for time and place of appearance ("coding"). Tasks involving each of these executive processes are known to be selectively impaired in patients with prefrontal damage [46]. Decision making involves a multicompartmental valuation stage, implemented in ventromedial prefrontal cortex and associated parts of striatum, and a choice stage, implemented in lateral prefrontal and parietal areas [251].

Frontal damage impairs action decisions at a level of abstraction that is dependent on lesion location: rostral lesions affect more abstract tasks, whereas caudal lesions, closer to primary motor cortex, affect more concrete tasks [20]. For instance, in the process of making a phone call, there is the more abstract decision of making the call now to a given person, and the more concrete steps of typing the number and speaking on the phone. While prefrontal cortex is involved in the decision of making the call, premotor cortex provides the motor sequences needed to type the number and speak on the phone. On the convexity of the hemisphere, premotor cortex is strongly lateralized and subserves the functionality of the corresponding paracentral cortex: premotor cortex for the mouth area mediates oral language functions (Broca area); premotor cortex for the hand area subserves writing (Exner area). A patient with an acute infarction in Broca area may be fully motivated to speak on the phone, but may not be able to produce the sequence of mouth movements needed to utter intelligible speech. If this lesion is small, it will produce only a transient impairment, quickly compensated by surrounding cortex of the ipsilateral hemisphere and by contralateral cortical areas. Even more quickly are lesions in prefrontal cortex remedied. Only those that are large or bilateral give rise to clinical symptomatology.

Depending on the prefrontal region predominantly affected, three frontal lobe syndromes have been characterized:

1. **Orbitofrontal and ventromedial prefrontal syndrome (disinhibited).** Symptomatic lesions in the orbitofrontal cortex tend to be bilateral and usually affect also the ventromedial prefrontal cortex. For this reason, it is difficult to separate clinically the effect of lesions in these two cortical regions. Lesions of this area lead to disinhibition and changes of affect. Behavior is impulsive (psychopathic) [137]. When the damage is restricted to the frontal lobes, these patients may be perfectly well oriented and obtain normal or superior scores in the ordinary battery of cognitive tests [137]. However, they often have an inappropriate affective affect (witzelsucht), euphoria, emotional lability, poor judgment and insight, and distractibility [232]. Social judgment becomes impaired, showing rigidity and less ability to perceive the nuances of a given situation. For instance in a game where patients will win money if they allow the person distributing the money to keep more for themselves, patients more often will choose to forego earning any money [266,267]. On the other hand, they will judge attempted murder as more morally permissible relative to healthy controls [508].

With more profound or extensive lesions, patients may show imitation behavior and utilization behavior as part of the environmental dependency syndrome [300]. Lacking self-initiative, the patient's activities are excessively dependent on environmental cues (e.g., when the patient sees a bed, he or she undresses and gets into it) [299]. A patient with a bilateral medial bifrontal lesion picked up and used irrelevant objects not only when they were placed directly in front of him (the induced form of utilization behavior, above), but also when he had been instructed to carry out other tasks and his attention had not been directed to the objects (the incidental form of utilization behavior) [457]. Frontal lobe-like utilization behavior has also been described with paramedian thalamic infarction, suggesting a thalamofrontal component to environmental interactions that require inhibition, self-monitoring, and cognitive flexibility [138].

2. **Prefrontal convexity syndrome.** The lateral prefrontal cortex is closely linked to parietal and temporal structures and to the dorsolateral nucleus of the thalamus. It facilitates the timely performance of an action, by marking the time for the relevant information to be used (working memory). Unilateral lesions here tend to be compensated by the contralateral hemisphere, such that their effects are mostly witnessed acutely. Bilateral lesions, particularly large ones, may have lasting effects. Patients with predominantly left-sided unilateral lesions may have language-related abnormalities, such as poor word list generation, poor abstraction and categorization, verbal impersistence and perseveration, and verbal intrusions, which are segments of speech with little or no relevance to the context that have been picked up from external stimuli (such as a sign) or from previous segments of speech. Patients with right-sided lesions will have a monotonous, computer-like speech lacking prosodic intonation and a
segmented approach to visuospatial analysis. Patients with large bilateral lesions are apathetic, with occasional bursts of angry or aggressive behavior. Other characteristics include indifference, psychomotor retardation, loss of set, and discrepant motor and verbal behavior. Patients have impaired ability to plan their future. Even when they voice a desire to pursue personal endeavors, such as finding a job, they fail to carry out the steps necessary to achieve them.

3. **Medial frontal syndrome (akinetic).** Medial frontal cortex plays a crucial role in initiation, motivation, and goal-directed behaviors. It forms an important part of the dorsal attentional stream [89]. In the posterior portion of the superior frontal gyrus, the supplementary motor area (SMA) and the pre-SMA area, rostral to the SMA, coordinate sensorimotor information in a temporal framework [92,370]. Whereas SMA is related to attention to move, pre-SMA is related to the intention to move [283]. Both SMA and pre-SMA are involved in the perception of the intentionality of other person (“theory of mind”) [436] and in the imitation and learning of motor patterns [413,512]. Below these areas, the cingulate sulcus separates them from the anterior cingulate cortex. To some extent, all these areas functionally overlap [436].

Lesions here are associated with a paucity of spontaneous movement and gesture, sparse verbal output (repetition may be preserved), and, if the lesion extends to the paracentral cortex, lower extremity weakness and loss of sensation, and incontinence. Large bilateral lesions give rise to akinetic mutism, with a complete lack of intentional movement and speech. Stimulus-bound behavior may also be present.

The anterior cingulate cortex is part of a larger matrix of structures (including the amygdala, periaqueductal grey, ventral striatum, orbitofrontal cortex, and anterior insular cortex) that form the rostral limbic system, involved in the assessment of the motivational content of internal and external stimuli and in the regulation of context-dependent behaviors [124]. The affective division of the anterior cingulate cortex modulates autonomic activity and internal emotional responses [105], whereas the cognition division is engaged in response selection associated with skeletonmotor activity and responses to noxious stimuli. Excessive cingulate activity, in cases with seizure activity confirmed in the anterior cingulate cortex, can impair consciousness, alter affective state and expression, and influence skeletonmotor and autonomic activity. Elevated anterior cingulate cortex activity may contribute to tics, obsessive-compulsive behaviors, and aberrant social behavior. Reduced cingulate activity following infarcts, surgery or chronic cocaine use can contribute to behavioral disorders, including akinetic mutism, diminished self-awareness and depression, motor neglect and impaired motor initiation, reduced responses to pain, and aberrant social behavior [124,254]. Surgical cingulotomy, for the treatment of chronic intractable pain, involves the bilateral placement of about 5 mm lesions in the white matter of the anterior cingulate region, about 1.5 cm rostral to the anterior extent of the paracentral lobule [85]. Patients undergoing this procedure who have been followed longitudinally illustrate the changing manifestations of lesions in this region as time elapses and compensatory mechanisms fall in place [272,346]. Acutely after cingulotomy they had mutism, akinesia, blunted affect, lethargy, and apathy. Despite improvement, a few months later a syndrome of impaired executive function and attention remained, characterized by decreased spontaneous response production, along with mild deficits of focused and sustained attention. Patients continued to show performance variability, slowed processing, and vulnerability to interference [85].

With massive bilateral frontal lobe lesions, an akinetic-abulic syndrome may occur in which the patient lies around passively, unable to complete any meaningful task.

### Disturbances Related to Interhemispheric Disconnection (Callosal Syndrome)

Nonsurgical lesions (trauma, infarction, tumor) that destroy the corpus callosum usually involve the medial aspect of the frontal, parietal, or occipital lobes. Thus, it becomes difficult to separate the effects of the callosal lesion per se and the effects of the neighboring hemispheric damage. However, instances like the syndrome of alexia without agraphia, the first callosal disconnection syndrome described [117], clearly demonstrate that callosal lesions can determine clinical symptomatology. Knowledge of the deficit that follows on cleaner callosal lesions derives mainly from the study of epileptic patients who underwent section of the corpus callosum and anterior commissure in order to reduce interhemispheric propagation and kindling. The interhemispheric disconnection does not interfere with most activities of daily living but becomes apparent in the failure, by a left hemisphere-dominant individual, to perform tasks such as the following [179,248]:

1. Name an object briefly presented to the left hemifield, although the same can be chosen by the left hand from an array of different objects. Lack of visual transfer may also be evident at the bedside by testing the visual fields with the usual confrontation
method, which reveals a “double hemianopia.” The patient is asked to point to the moving target first with his left hand (when a right homonymous hemianopia is recorded) and then with his right hand (which fails to point to stimuli in the left hemifield).

1. Read words briefly presented to the right hemifield only (right hemialexia) [84].
2. Read words briefly presented to the left hemifield only (left hemialexia) [84].
3. Imitate with one hand the position of the contralateral hand, which is kept hidden from view.
4. Name objects, kept from view, palpated by the left hand (unilateral tactile anoma). Lack of intermanual coordination and even a situation in which the left hand acts independently from the patient’s volition (alien hand sign) may result from combined callosal and mesial frontal damage [23], and seems to correlate with damage of the midportion of the corpus callosum [174]. A different perspective of the “split-brain” syndrome was proposed by Sergent [432], who considered the “split brain” as a single organism and the two disconnected hemispheres as integral components of this organism connected to one another by subcortical structures. Two commissurotomized patients were presented with simultaneous bilateral information such that neither hemisphere received sufficient information to make a final decision. Only by combining the initially segregated information could a correct response be produced. Both patients performed significantly above chance on a number of tasks suggesting that information divided between the hemispheres could be united, related, and acted on in a unified manner despite each hemisphere being unaware of the information received by the other. Sergent suggests that the commissurotomized brain thus works as a single and unified organism even when the two disconnected hemispheres receive different information [432].

Gait Disorders

Disease of the frontal lobes can cause gait disorders. These disorders and their localization are discussed in Chapter 1.

Dementia

Dementia has been defined as a loss of intellectual abilities of sufficient severity to interfere with social or occupational functioning [9]. More relevant to the scope of this chapter, dementia refers to deterioration of mental function due to diffuse or disseminated disease of the cerebral hemispheres [380]. Bilateral lesions of the medial hypothalamus or thalamus, which are discussed in Chapters 17 and 18, may cause severe memory loss and attentional disorders. The resultant behavior of the patient may be such that the label of dementia is applied to his or her condition. A patient with bilateral frontal disease may have a rather good memory, and yet the ability to plan in the future and to stick with a task is so impaired that it interferes seriously with social or occupational functioning. These two instances exemplify the heterogeneity of the conditions known as dementias as far as cerebral localization is concerned. The onset of dementia can be sudden, as when it follows severe head trauma, or insidious, as with Alzheimer disease. In either case, the demented patient has a clinical presentation that corresponds to bilateral, rather extensive, damage of the cerebral cortex, subcortical structures, or, very often, both.

When the lesions are predominantly cortical, the clinical findings depend on the part of the cortex that bears the brunt of pathology. Senile dementia of the Alzheimer type (which accounts for about more than half the cases of slowly progressive dementias) has an important subcortical component but also tends to affect roughly symmetric areas of the cortex, resulting in a different topographic predominance in different patients. The process spreads from the limbic cortex to the association areas of the neocortex [55,321]. Because the medial aspect of the temporal lobes is involved early, memory loss becomes obvious in many patients with dementia. Involvement of the association cortex of the temporal and parietal lobes gives rise to aphasias, visuospatial deficits, and apraxias [430]. In dementias where the frontal lobes are primarily affected (as in frontotemporal dementias, and in advanced Alzheimer), the patient lacks drive, neglects social nuances, and may have the primitive signs, motor aphasia, and other frontal lobe findings described above [15,189,430]. Elementary motor and sensory disturbances, such as limb weakness, never occur until late in the clinical course.

By contrast, dementias such as progressive supranuclear palsy or others with preferential involvement of the subcortical nuclei cause abnormalities of
movement and overall slowing of psychomotor function, with prominent attentional deficits and forgetfulness [483]. Speech may be dysarthric, but language is normal – that is, aphasia is absent. In subcortical arteriosclerotic encephalopathy, thalamic damage may cause memory loss [483].

Depression and other psychiatric disorders may mimic dementia (“pseudo-dementia”). Because their treatment differs from that of dementia, this distinction is important. Some helpful differential findings are listed in Table 20.4.

In the preceding pages the emphasis has been placed on the symptoms and signs that result from hemispheric lesions. Table 20.5 lists the regions of the cerebral hemispheres and the clinical manifestations of lesions in each region.

### TABLE 20.4 Clinical Features Differentiating Pseudodementia from Dementia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pseudodementia</th>
<th>Dementia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Clinical course and history</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family aware of dysfunction</td>
<td>Family often unaware of degree of dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid progression of symptoms after onset</td>
<td>Insidious, onset can be dated only within broad limits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History of previous psychiatric dysfunction common</td>
<td>Often slow progression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Complaints and clinical behavior</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients usually complain much of cognitive loss</td>
<td>Patients usually complain little of cognitive loss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients emphasize disability</td>
<td>Patients conceal disability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients make little effort to perform even simple tasks</td>
<td>Some patients struggle to perform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patients usually communicate strong sense of distress</td>
<td>Patients often appear unconcerned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affective change often pervasive</td>
<td>Affect labile and shallow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Behavior often incongruent with severity of cognitive dysfunction</td>
<td>Behavior usually compatible with severity of cognitive dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nocturnal accentuation of dysfunction uncommon</td>
<td>Nocturnal accentuation of dysfunction common</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Don’t know” answers typical</td>
<td>“Near miss” answers frequent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory loss for recent and remote events equally severe</td>
<td>Memory loss for recent events more severe than for remote events</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### TABLE 20.5 Consequences of Localized Cerebral Hemispheric Lesions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I. Occipital lobe</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. Mesial</td>
<td>c. Tameness (amygdala)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Visual field defects</td>
<td>d. Hypersexuality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Visual agnosia</td>
<td>e. Hypomotility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Alexia without agraphia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Visual anosognosia; Anton syndrome (denial of blindness)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B. Lateral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Alexia with agraphia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Impaired optokinetic nystagmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Impaired ipsilateral scanning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Palinopsia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Visual allesthesia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C. Laterosuperior aspect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Dominant hemisphere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Transcortical sensory aphasia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Word selection anomia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. Agitated delirium</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Nondominant hemisphere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Impaired recognition of facial emotional expression</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. Lateroinferior aspect</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Dominant hemisphere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Pure word deafness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Sensory aphasia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Nondominant hemisphere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Sensory anoma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Sensory aprosodia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Bilateral lesions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a. Auditory agnosia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. Pure word deafness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Contralateral superior quadrantanopia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E. Nonlocalizing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Auditory hallucinations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TABLE 20.5  Consequences of Localized Cerebral Hemispheric Lesions (Continued)

II. Temporal lobe (Continued)
   2. Complex visual hallucinations
   F. With epileptogenic lesions (mainly inferomedial)
      1. Interictal manifestations (a–f below plus g. or h.)
         a. Deepening of emotions
         b. Tendency to transcendentalize minutia
            (cosmic vision)
         c. Concern with minor detail
            (1) Hypergraphia
            (2) Circumstantiality
         d. Paranoid ideation
         e. Hyposexuality
         f. Abnormal religiosity
         g. Left hemispheric foci
            (1) Ideational aberration
            (2) Paranoia
            (5) Sense of personal destiny
         h. Right hemispheric foci
            (1) Emotional disturbances (sadness, elation)
            (2) Denial
      2. Ictal manifestations
         a. Hallucinations of smell and taste (amygdala)
         b. Visual delusions (déjà vu, jamais vu)
         c. Experiential delusions (déjà vecu, jamais vecu)
         d. Psychomotor seizures (temporal lobe variety
            of partial complex seizures)

III. Parietal lobe
   A. Postcentral gyrus
      1. Simple somatosensory disturbances
         a. Contralateral sensory loss (object recognition
            > position sense > touch > pain and
            temperature, vibration); tactile extinction
         b. Contralateral pain, paresthesias
   B. Mesial aspect (cuneus)
      1. Transcortical sensory aphasia? (dominant
         hemisphere)
      2. Attentional disorder
   C. Lateral aspect (superior and inferior parietal
      lobules)
      1. Dominant hemisphere
         a. Parietal apraxia (higher lesion)
         b. Finger agnosia
         c. Acalculia
         d. Right-left disorientation
         e. Literal alexia (supramarginal gyrus)
         f. Conduction aphasia
      2. Nondominant hemisphere
         a. Anosognosia
         b. Autotopagnosia
         c. Spatial disorientation
         d. Hemispatial neglect (sensory inattention)
         e. Constructional apraxia
         f. Dressing apraxia
         g. Loss of topographical memory
         h. Agraphia
         i. Hemisomatognosia
         j. Asymbolia for pain
   D. Frontal pole, orbitofrontal area (prefrontal)
      1. Blunted affect (apathetic, indifferent)
      2. Impaired appreciation of social nuances
      3. Impaired goal-directed behavior
      4. Impotence
      5. Facetiousness (“witzelsucht” or moria)
      6. Environmental dependency syndrome
      7. Inability to plan and execute multisteped
         processes
      8. Abulia (poverty of thought, action, and emotion)
         with large midline or bilateral dorsofrontal
         lesions

IV. Frontal lobe
   A. Precentral gyrus (motor area 4)
   1. Face area (unilateral: transient; bilateral: lasting)
      a. Dysarthria
      b. Dysphagia
   2. Hand area
      a. Contralateral weakness, clumsiness, spasticity
      b. Hand apraxia
   3. Leg area (paracentral lobule)
      a. Contralateral weakness
      b. Gait apraxia
      c. Urinary incontinence (lasting with bilateral
         lesions)
   B. Mesial aspect (F1, cingulate gyrus)
      1. Akinesia (bilateral akinetic mutism)
      2. Perseveration
      3. Hand and foot grasp
      4. “Salutatory” seizures (“fencer’s posture”)
      5. Alien hand sign
      6. Transcortical motor aphasia (dominant
         hemisphere)
      7. Difficulty with initiating contralateral arm
         movements (may require initiation by examiner)
      8. Bilateral ideomotor apraxia (apraxia of
         sequential act)
   C. Lateral aspect (premotor region)
      1. Middle frontal gyrus (F2)
         a. Impaired contralateral saccades
         b. Pure agraphia (dominant hemisphere)
         c. Contralateral weakness of shoulder (mainly
            abduction and elevation of arm) and hip
            muscles plus limb-kinetic apraxia
         d. Hemiakinetisism (intentional neglect)
      2. F3
         a. Motor aphasia (dominant hemisphere)
         b. Motor aprosodia (nondominant hemisphere)
   D. Frontal pole, orbitofrontal area (prefrontal)
      1. Lack of kinesthetic transfer
      1. Inability to mimic position of the contralateral
         hand
      2. Left hand apraxia
      3. Left hand aprosodia
      4. Right hand constructional apraxia
      5. Internmanual conflict (alien left hand)
   B. Perplexity (and confabulation) trying to explain
      left-handed activity
   C. Double hemianopia
   D. Left hemiparalexia
References


243. Kapur N, Prevett M. Unexpected amnesia: are there lessons to be learned from cases of amnesia following unilateral temporal lobe surgery? Brain 2003;126:2573–2585.


Localization in Clinical Neurology


The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Cerebral Hemispheres


Localization in Clinical Neurology


The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Cerebral Hemispheres 553

The Localization of Lesions Affecting the Cerebral Hemispheres


488. von Economo CB, Koskinas GN. The cytoarchitecture of the adult human cortex. Vienna: Julius Springer Verlag, 1925.


Organization of the Autonomic Nervous System

This section considers only the general anatomic principles of the autonomic nervous system (ANS) that should assist the examiner in determining whether significant autonomic dysfunction is present. For more detailed information, readers are referred to corresponding chapters on this textbook, and standard neuroanatomy textbooks [33,52,84,100,101,117].

The ANS is commonly divided into two major components: (a) sympathetic and (b) parasympathetic, each usually made of preganglionic and post-ganglionic neurons (Fig. 21.1). These two major components provide a dual autonomic innervation to every organ in the body, which have in general opposite effects. Most authors now consider the enteric nervous system (ENS), also referred to as the gut brain, to be a third component of the ANS.

The sympathetic and parasympathetic components have two neuronal populations interposed between the central nervous system and the effector organs. The ANS is bidirectionally connected with a central autonomic network (CAN), which includes the medial prefrontal cortex, insular cortex, central nucleus of the amygdala, hypothalamus, periaqueductal gray region, parabrachial/Kölliker-Fuse nuclear complex, nucleus ambiguus, and nucleus tractus solitarius. This extensively interconnected network controls sympathetic and parasympathetic, neuroendocrine, and respiratory motor neurons [14,77,104].

The ANS consists of both afferent and efferent fibers. Basic morphologic and physiologic differences between the sympathetic and parasympathetic systems are shown on Table 21.1. Sensory afferent signals that drive autonomic activity originate from viscera (visceral sensory), body surface (somatic sensory), and external environment (special sensory). The perikarya of visceral afferent axons are located in dorsal root ganglia.

A two-neuron pathway conveys motor impulses to the autonomic effectors. The perikaryon of the first visceral efferent neuron resides inside the central nervous system (brainstem or spinal cord); its axon (preganglionic) synapses on a ganglion or plexus of neurons. The perikaryon of the second visceral efferent neuron resides outside the central nervous system in a ganglion or plexus of neurons; its axon (postganglionic) synapses on an autonomic effector.

Sympathetic Nervous System

The majority of the sympathetic preganglionic neurons (or primary efferent neurons) are located in the intermediolateral gray cell column (lamina VII or intermediate zone) of spinal cord levels T1 to L2 (or L3). These neurons are organized somatotopically; rostral neurons supply the head and neck, while those in more caudal segments supply the heart, lungs, abdominal viscera, and pelvic viscera in that order. Their axons project onto a postganglionic neuron (or secondary efferent neuron) with its cell body in one of the 22 to 23 pairs of paravertebral sympathetic ganglia (3 cervical, 10–12 thoracic, 4 lumbar, 4–5 sacral) located on either side of the vertebral column or in related prevertebral sympathetic ganglia (celiac, superior mesenteric, and inferior mesenteric). Preganglionic nerve fibers reach the ganglionic neurons via the ventral spinal roots and the myelinated white rami communicantes (14 pairs). Once preganglionic sympathetic fibers reach the chain ganglion, they may synapse with the first paravertebral ganglia they encounter at the level of entry, they may ascend or descend to synapse on neighboring ganglia forming a sympathetic chain, or they may bypass the paravertebral ganglia, joining with other preganglionic fibers to terminate in one of the prevertebral ganglia.

The paravertebral ganglia in the neck fuse to form three ganglia: superior cervical ganglion, middle cervical ganglion, and inferior cervical ganglion. Sometimes, the inferior cervical ganglion (or lower two cervical ganglia) fuses with the first thoracic (sometimes the second thoracic ganglia) sympathetic chain ganglion to form the cervicothoracic or stellate ganglion. At the coccygeal region, the caudal-most ganglia of the right and left paravertebral chains fuse to form the unpaired ganglion impar.
Some fibers pass through the splanchnic ganglia without synapsing, providing innervation to the adrenal medulla. Thus, the adrenal medulla is the only gland innervated by preganglionic (cholinergic) sympathetic nerve fibers, ending directly on modified neuronal cells that secrete adrenaline and noradrenaline into the blood stream. Table 21.2 illustrates the main effects of sympathetic stimulation [49].

From a paravertebral ganglion, postganglionic fibers are distributed as branches to the spinal nerves through the gray rami communicantes (31 pairs), or cranial nerves (IX, X, XII), or they travel along the wall of a blood vessel, or proceed directly to their destination in the various organs including the heart, blood vessels, broncho-pulmonary system, sweat glands, smooth muscles within the gut and bladder, and sexual organs.

FIG. 21.1. Diagram of the autonomic nervous system (ANS). The parasympathetic division (left) arises from CN III, CN VII, CN IX, and CN X and from spinal cord segments S2 to S4. The sympathetic division (right) arises from spinal cord segments T1 to L2.
nucleus in the periventricular gray matter of the rostral medulla), and CN X (nucleus ambiguous in the reticular formation of the medulla, and dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus situated on the floor of the fourth ventricle where it forms the vagal trigone). The largest group of parasympathetic nerve fibers in the body is in the vagus nerves (CN X). Myelinated fibers of the cranial outflow synapse in peripheral ganglia located near or within the innervated organs: ciliary ganglion [CN III], submandibular and pterygopalatine ganglia [CN VII], otic ganglion [CN IX], and cardiac ganglion and plexuses [CN X]. Parasympathetic nerve fibers of CN III flow to the pupillary sphincters and ciliary muscles of the eyes. Parasympathetic fibers of CN VII flow to the lacrimal, nasal, and submandibular glands. Fibers from CN IX pass to the parotid gland. The vagus (CN X) supplies parasympathetic innervation to the heart, lungs, esophagus, stomach, small intestine, proximal half of the colon up to the splenic flexure, liver, gallbladder, pancreas and upper ureters [52,84,101].

The sacral parasympathetic division resides in the intermediolateral cell columns of the second to fourth segments of the sacral (S2–S4) spinal cord. Myelinated axons exit through the ventral roots forming the sacral plexus, and then enter the pelvic splanchnic nerves also called nervi erigentes. Myelinated efferent fibers of the sacral outflow synapse in the intramural ganglion and hypogastric (pelvic) plexuses. The sacral parasympathetic outflow distributes its fibers to the descending colon, rectum, lower portion of the ureters, bladder, and external genitalia [52,84,101]. The genital organs are innervated by three sets of peripheral nerves, namely the sacral parasympathetic (pelvic nerves or nervi erigentes), the thoracolumbar sympathetic (hypogastric and lumbar sympathetic chain), and the sacral somatic nerves (pudendal nerves). The pelvic nerves contain the axons of sacral parasympathetic preganglionic neurons located in the intermediolateral cell column of S2–S4. The hypogastric nerves contain the axons of the sympathetic preganglionic neurons located in the intermediolateral cell column of T11–L2 spinal segments. The pudendal nerves contain the axons of somatic motor neurons located in the ventral horn of S2–S4. Parasympathetic fibers play a major role in penile erection and micturition, while parasympathetic efferents in the pelvic nerves promote bladder emptying (see Chapter 5). The main effects of vagal (cholinergic) stimulation are shown in Table 21.3.

**Parasympathetic Nervous System**

The parasympathetic autonomic nervous system has a cranial (brainstem) division and a sacral division. Parasympathetic preganglionic neurons of the cranial division are located within the nuclei of CN III (Eddinger-Westphal nucleus situated in the rostral midbrain at the level of the superior colliculus), CN VII (superior salivatory and lacrimal nuclei in the pontine tegmentum), CN IX (inferior salivatory nucleus of the vagus situated on the floor of the fourth ventricle), and CN X (nucleus ambiguous in the reticular formation of the medulla, and dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus situated on the floor of the fourth ventricle where it forms the vagal trigone). The largest group of parasympathetic nerve fibers in the body is in the vagus nerves (CN X). Myelinated fibers of the cranial outflow synapse in peripheral ganglia located near or within the innervated organs: ciliary ganglion [CN III], submandibular and pterygopalatine ganglia [CN VII], otic ganglion [CN IX], and cardiac ganglion and plexuses [CN X]. Parasympathetic nerve fibers of CN III flow to the pupillary sphincters and ciliary muscles of the eyes. Parasympathetic fibers of CN VII flow to the lacrimal, nasal, and submandibular glands. Fibers from CN IX pass to the parotid gland. The vagus (CN X) supplies parasympathetic innervation to the heart, lungs, esophagus, stomach, small intestine, proximal half of the colon up to the splenic flexure, liver, gallbladder, pancreas and upper ureters [52,84,101].

**Parasympathetic Nervous System**

The parasympathetic autonomic nervous system has a cranial (brainstem) division and a sacral division. Parasympathetic preganglionic neurons of the cranial division are located within the nuclei of CN III (Eddinger-Westphal nucleus situated in the rostral midbrain at the level of the superior colliculus), CN VII (superior salivatory and lacrimal nuclei in the pontine tegmentum), CN IX (inferior salivatory nucleus of the vagus situated on the floor of the fourth ventricle), and CN X (nucleus ambiguous in the reticular formation of the medulla, and dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus situated on the floor of the fourth ventricle where it forms the vagal trigone). The largest group of parasympathetic nerve fibers in the body is in the vagus nerves (CN X). Myelinated fibers of the cranial outflow synapse in peripheral ganglia located near or within the innervated organs: ciliary ganglion [CN III], submandibular and pterygopalatine ganglia [CN VII], otic ganglion [CN IX], and cardiac ganglion and plexuses [CN X]. Parasympathetic nerve fibers of CN III flow to the pupillary sphincters and ciliary muscles of the eyes. Parasympathetic fibers of CN VII flow to the lacrimal, nasal, and submandibular glands. Fibers from CN IX pass to the parotid gland. The vagus (CN X) supplies parasympathetic innervation to the heart, lungs, esophagus, stomach, small intestine, proximal half of the colon up to the splenic flexure, liver, gallbladder, pancreas and upper ureters [52,84,101].

**Enteric Nervous System**

The ENS, derived primarily from the vagal neural crest cells, consists of an extrinsic and an intrinsic component. The intrinsic component (500 million neurons in the periventricular gray matter of the rostral medulla), and CN X (nucleus ambiguous in the reticular formation of the medulla, and dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus situated on the floor of the fourth ventricle where it forms the vagal trigone). The largest group of parasympathetic nerve fibers in the body is in the vagus nerves (CN X). Myelinated fibers of the cranial outflow synapse in peripheral ganglia located near or within the innervated organs: ciliary ganglion [CN III], submandibular and pterygopalatine ganglia [CN VII], otic ganglion [CN IX], and cardiac ganglion and plexuses [CN X]. Parasympathetic nerve fibers of CN III flow to the pupillary sphincters and ciliary muscles of the eyes. Parasympathetic fibers of CN VII flow to the lacrimal, nasal, and submandibular glands. Fibers from CN IX pass to the parotid gland. The vagus (CN X) supplies parasympathetic innervation to the heart, lungs, esophagus, stomach, small intestine, proximal half of the colon up to the splenic flexure, liver, gallbladder, pancreas and upper ureters [52,84,101].

The sacral parasympathetic division resides in the intermediolateral cell columns of the second to fourth segments of the sacral (S2–S4) spinal cord. Myelinated axons exit through the ventral roots forming the sacral plexus, and then enter the pelvic splanchnic nerves also called nervi erigentes. Myelinated efferent fibers of the sacral outflow synapse in the intramural ganglion and hypogastric (pelvic) plexuses. The sacral parasympathetic outflow distributes its fibers to the descending colon, rectum, lower portion of the ureters, bladder, and external genitalia [52,84,101]. The genital organs are innervated by three sets of peripheral nerves, namely the sacral parasympathetic (pelvic nerves or nervi erigentes), the thoracolumbar sympathetic (hypogastric and lumbar sympathetic chain), and the sacral somatic nerves (pudendal nerves). The pelvic nerves contain the axons of sacral parasympathetic preganglionic neurons located in the intermediolateral cell column of S2–S4. The hypogastric nerves contain the axons of the sympathetic preganglionic neurons located in the intermediolateral cell column of T11–L2 spinal segments. The pudendal nerves contain the axons of somatic motor neurons located in the ventral horn of S2–S4. Parasympathetic fibers play a major role in penile erection and micturition, while parasympathetic efferents in the pelvic nerves promote bladder emptying (see Chapter 5). The main effects of vagal (cholinergic) stimulation are shown in Table 21.3.

**Enteric Nervous System**

The ENS, derived primarily from the vagal neural crest cells, consists of an extrinsic and an intrinsic component. The intrinsic component (500 million neurons in the periventricular gray matter of the rostral medulla), and CN X (nucleus ambiguous in the reticular formation of the medulla, and dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus situated on the floor of the fourth ventricle where it forms the vagal trigone). The largest group of parasympathetic nerve fibers in the body is in the vagus nerves (CN X). Myelinated fibers of the cranial outflow synapse in peripheral ganglia located near or within the innervated organs: ciliary ganglion [CN III], submandibular and pterygopalatine ganglia [CN VII], otic ganglion [CN IX], and cardiac ganglion and plexuses [CN X]. Parasympathetic nerve fibers of CN III flow to the pupillary sphincters and ciliary muscles of the eyes. Parasympathetic fibers of CN VII flow to the lacrimal, nasal, and submandibular glands. Fibers from CN IX pass to the parotid gland. The vagus (CN X) supplies parasympathetic innervation to the heart, lungs, esophagus, stomach, small intestine, proximal half of the colon up to the splenic flexure, liver, gallbladder, pancreas and upper ureters [52,84,101].

The sacral parasympathetic division resides in the intermediolateral cell columns of the second to fourth segments of the sacral (S2–S4) spinal cord. Myelinated axons exit through the ventral roots forming the sacral plexus, and then enter the pelvic splanchnic nerves also called nervi erigentes. Myelinated efferent fibers of the sacral outflow synapse in the intramural ganglion and hypogastric (pelvic) plexuses. The sacral parasympathetic outflow distributes its fibers to the descending colon, rectum, lower portion of the ureters, bladder, and external genitalia [52,84,101]. The genital organs are innervated by three sets of peripheral nerves, namely the sacral parasympathetic (pelvic nerves or nervi erigentes), the thoracolumbar sympathetic (hypogastric and lumbar sympathetic chain), and the sacral somatic nerves (pudendal nerves). The pelvic nerves contain the axons of sacral parasympathetic preganglionic neurons located in the intermediolateral cell column of S2–S4. The hypogastric nerves contain the axons of the sympathetic preganglionic neurons located in the intermediolateral cell column of T11–L2 spinal segments. The pudendal nerves contain the axons of somatic motor neurons located in the ventral horn of S2–S4. Parasympathetic fibers play a major role in penile erection and micturition, while parasympathetic efferents in the pelvic nerves promote bladder emptying (see Chapter 5). The main effects of vagal (cholinergic) stimulation are shown in Table 21.3.
neurons) consists of two interconnected plexuses, the Meissner’s submucosal plexus, and the Auerbach’s myenteric plexus, within the gastrointestinal wall. In humans, the submucosal plexus of Meissner consists of three interconnected layers. The outer layer is also known as the outer submucosal plexus of Schadabasch’s or Henle’s plexus [15]. The extrinsic innervation of the ENS depends on preganglionic parasympathetic and sympathetic outputs that regulate peristalsis and secretion. The parasympathetic output arises in the dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus and in the sacral parasympathetic nucleus of the spinal cord. The sympathetic output originates in the prevertebral ganglia. The primary targets of the ENS are mucosal secretory cells, gastrointestinal neuroendocrine cells, gastrointestinal microvascularature, and immunomodulatory and inflammatory cells in the gut. The ENS influences these effector cells in the gut directly or indirectly through its actions on intermediate cells including neuroendocrine cells, cells of the immune system, and the interstitial cells of Cajal. The interstitial cells of Cajal are a network of small anastomosing cells located within the gut muscle layers, and an integral part of normal gastrointestinal motility and modulation of enteric neural activity [4,17,21,22,39,42,56,68,70,71,80,88]. Disorders of the enteric nervous system may produce motor, secretory, inflammatory, or immune dysfunction.

**CENTRAL AUTONOMIC NETWORK**

Tightly interconnected neuroanatomical structures contribute to regulation of the autonomic circuits.

**Medial Prefrontal Cortex.** The medial prefrontal cortex is highly activated by stress and plays a key role in autonomic and affective responses. The medial prefrontal cortex is implicated in complex cognitive and emotional states and modulation of neuroendocrine and autonomic function [7,54,102,103]. In addition, the anterior cingulate cortex is implicated in modulating sympathetic nervous system tone [30,75].

**Insular Cortex.** The insular cortex plays an important role in the CAN, and is the most important cortical area involved in cardiovascular regulation. Insular cortex neurons have connections with the limbic system and lateral frontal cortical system, and project to the central nucleus of the amygdala and autonomic nuclei of the medulla oblongata [95]. The insula also has wide connections with temporal and parietal cortices, basal ganglia, thalamus, and olfactory cortex. Moreover, the anterior insula has connections to primary and supplementary motor cortices, ventroposterior medial nucleus of the thalamus, and nucleus tractus solitarius, all of them relevant to oropharyngeal swallowing [31]. A possible lateralization in autonomic activity in the insular cortex has been proposed. Some evidence exists for cortical lateralization in the regulation of cardiovascular functions. Patients with right insular cortex lesions seem to be more susceptible to develop cardio-autonomic dysfunction, while the left insular cortex is predominantly responsible for parasympathetic cardiovascular effects [18,29,59,77,83,104–105]. Strokes restricted to the insular cortex have been associated with arterial hypertension, cardiac arrhythmias, increased risk of myocardial injury, raised catecholamines levels, and an increased susceptibility to sudden death [6,11,20,27,44,106].

**Central Nucleus of the Amygdala.** The amygdala has a key role in regulating arousal and vigilance and responds to the acquisition and expression of conditional fear. It is particularly activated by stimuli such as a fearful face [24,51,115,116]. Moreover, the central nucleus of the amygdala is involved in cardiovascular regulation [94].

**Hypothalamus.** Anatomically, the hypothalamus is the highest level of integration of autonomic function. The hypothalamus controls the autonomic nervous system by means of the pituitary gland and by direct descending pathways. Connections to the pituitary enable the hypothalamus to influence activities of the endocrine glands. Descending sympathetic fibers from the hypothalamus are uncrossed, and by way of the lateral tegmentum of the brainstem and lateral medullary formation influence the craniosacral parasympathetic and thoracolumbar sympathetic outflows. In particular, the paraventricular nucleus of the hypothalamus has emerged as one
of the most important control centers in the brain involved in cardiovascular regulation. This nucleus receives afferents from the insula, prefrontal cortex, amygdala, and other hypothalamic nuclei [100]. The lateral hypothalamus, in addition to the insula and the amygdala also play a key role in the autonomic control of the heart.

**Periaqueductal Gray Region.** The periaqueductal gray is divided into four regions, namely the dorsomedial, dorsolateral, lateral, and ventrolateral subdivisions. Chemical stimulation of the dorsolateral gray produces hypertension and tachycardia, while activation of the ventrolateral gray accounts for the opposite effect. Different sets of neurons located in different regions of the periaqueductal gray have been implicated in coordinated patterns of somatic and autonomic changes characteristics of defensive responses [12,19,40,41,110]. A major function of the periaqueductal gray is pain processing and modulation, particularly in descending pain inhibition [12,19,40,41,110].

**Parabrachial Nuclear Complex.** The parabrachial/Kölliker-Fuse nuclear complex located in the dorsolateral pontine tegmentum is divided into three well-defined regions: the medial parabrachial nucleus (corresponding to the classic "pneumotaxic center"), the lateral parabrachial nucleus, and the Kölliker-Fuse nucleus. This nuclear complex plays a key role in the sensory processing of gustatory and visceral information, pain modulation, and automatic control of respiration [13,46,48,67,118]. Moreover, vestibular input projecting to the nucleus tractus solitarius, dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus, and the parabrachial/Kölliker-Fuse nuclear complex, may account for the autonomic effects observed in cases of acute vestibular dysfunction [9,10].

**Nucleus Ambiguous.** The nucleus ambiguous, located in the ventrolateral part of the medullary tegmentum, extends rostrally to the dorsal aspect of the facial nucleus, and caudally to the level of the pyramidal decussation, and with the nucleus tractus solitarii, and the dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus participate in the control of automatic respiration [46]. Involvement of the nucleus ambiguous in the rostral part of the medulla oblongata is more likely to cause dysphagia than lesions involving the nucleus ambiguous in the middle-lower part of the medulla oblongata [58,61].

**Nucleus Tractus Solitarius.** The nucleus tractus solitarius in the dorsal medulla contains the medullary respiratory and lower brainstem hypogastic neurons. It receives afferents from the cardiovascular and respiratory systems for autonomic control of cardiac rhythm, circulation, and respiration, and is believed to be of major importance in cardiovascular and respiratory regulation. Bilateral lesions in the nucleus tractus solitarius cause acute neurogenic hypertension [34].

**Localization Principles.** Autonomic dysfunction may be localized or generalized, primary or secondary, and is usually associated with underactivity (Table 21.4). However, severe paroxysmal sympathetic overactivity, including neurogenic pulmonary edema, may result from acute brain or spinal cord injuries [8,98].

A few examples of localized dysautonomias include Adie’s tonic pupil and Horner’s syndrome described in Chapter 8. Crocodile tears or Bogorad syndrome (gustatolacrimal syndrome) is a rare complication of facial paralysis with incomplete recovery and characterized by excessive lacrimation during food consumption. Gustatory sweating (Frey’s syndrome) is a potential complication of parotid surgery [36,86]. Primary hyperhidrosis, a common and troublesome condition, primarily involves the axillae as well as the palms and soles, and is characterized by an excessive and uncontrolled production of sweat by the sweat glands [92]. Reduced tear secretion is observed in many patients with acute pandysautonomias, multisystem atrophy (Shy Drager syndrome) and Riley-Day syndrome (Chapter 8). Finally, vasovagal syncope in the young, and carotid sinus hypersensitivity in the elderly represent examples of intermittent localized dysautonomias.

### Table 21.4: Cardinal Signs of Autonomic Dysfunction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sympathetic Failure</th>
<th>Parasympathetic Failure</th>
<th>ENS Failure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Orthostatic hypotension</td>
<td>Dry mouth</td>
<td>Anorexia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Widespread anhidrosis</td>
<td>Dry eyes</td>
<td>Early satiety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Impaired pupillary light response</td>
<td>Postprandial abdominal pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fixed heart rate</td>
<td>Vomiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Urinary retention</td>
<td>Diarrhea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sexual dysfunction</td>
<td>Constipation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Intestinal pseudo-obstruction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Adapted from reference 108.*
As various visceral functions are controlled by extrinsic pathways which involve neuronal circuits in the brain, hypothalamus, brainstem, spinal cord, peripheral ganglia, or peripheral nerves, the following considerations appear logical steps when attempting localization. First, is there a significant ANS dysfunction present (Table 21.5)? Second, does the dysautonomia involve the sympathetic, parasympathetic, or ENS? Third, is the involvement central, preganglionic, ganglionic, postganglionic, or localized to the neuroeffector [26]?

Symptoms of dysautonomia are variable, and include cardiovascular symptoms, respiratory abnormalities, gastrointestinal, urogenital, sudomotor, and thermoregulatory manifestations, pupillary abnormalities, and sleep disorders.

Autonomic nervous system dysfunction may manifest with symptoms of orthostatic intolerance, including orthostatic hypotension. Orthostatic hypotension is polyetiological. Several potential causes are non-neurogenic, including medications, hypovolemia, impaired venous return, and cardiac insufficiency. Neurologic disorders likely to cause orthostatic hypotension include multisystem atrophy (MSA), pure autonomic failure (PAF), diabetic neuropathy, autonomic neuropathies, baroreflex failure, and dopamine beta hydroxylase (DBH) deficiency [63,90]. Patients with autonomic failure secondary to DBH, a condition characterized by severe orthostatic hypotension, have normal parasympathetic and sympathetic cholinergic function but lack sympathetic noradrenergic function [25,99]. Rarely, orthostatic hypertension, thought to involve activation of the sympathetic nervous system, has been associated with diabetes mellitus and dysautonomias [43].

### TABLE 21.5 Clinical Presentation of Autonomic Disorders

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Eyes</th>
<th>Gastrointestinal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pupillary abnormalities</td>
<td>Dry mouth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow pupillary responses to light and pain</td>
<td>Sialorrhea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decreased diameter of dark adapted pupils</td>
<td>Esophageal dysmotility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eyelid ptosis</td>
<td>Gastric stasis/gastric paresis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry eyes</td>
<td>Nausea/vomiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alacrima</td>
<td>Bloating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excessive lacrination</td>
<td>Early satiety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiovascular</td>
<td>Weight loss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postural hypotension</td>
<td>Dumping syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postprandial hypotension</td>
<td>Abnormal colonic motility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orthostatic intolerance</td>
<td>Constipation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supine hypertension</td>
<td>Diarrhea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paroxysmal hypertension</td>
<td>Anorectal dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autonomic dysreflexia</td>
<td>Defecatory dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silent myocardial ischemia</td>
<td>Sleep respiratory disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resting tachycardia/bradycardia</td>
<td>Sleep respiratory dysrhythmias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cold hands/cold feet</td>
<td>Erectile failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastrointestinal</td>
<td>Ejaculatory failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sialorrhoea</td>
<td>Retrograde ejaculation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dysphagia</td>
<td>Inability to achieve orgasm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esophageal dysmotility</td>
<td>Reduced genital sensitivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastric stasis/gastric paresis</td>
<td>Loss of vaginal lubrication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nausea/vomiting</td>
<td>Sleep and Respiratory Disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bloating</td>
<td>Sleep respiratory dysrhythmias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early satiety</td>
<td>Insomnia/hypersomnia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight loss</td>
<td>Paroxysmal hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dumping syndrome</td>
<td>Circadian rhythm sleep disorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abnormal colonic motility</td>
<td>REM behavior disorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constipation</td>
<td>Central congenital hypoventilation syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diarrhea</td>
<td>Respiratory stridor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anorectal dysfunction</td>
<td>Metabolic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defecatory dysfunction</td>
<td>Hypoglycemia unawareness</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a* Adapted from references 2, 4, 5, 8, 13, 21, 50, 53, 60, 61, 64–65, 72–74, 76, 79, 89, 93, 108, 111.
Autonomic dysfunction complicates a multiplicity of central nervous system and peripheral nervous system conditions. In many instances, the target organ is obscure and the clinical task is to uncover the pathway involved (e.g., pupillary abnormalities). Autonomic dysfunction is a prominent feature in acute spinal cord injury; acutely, its effects on cardiovascular regulation, respiratory system, and thermoregulation, may be life threatening [2,3,60,82]. Low blood pressure, bradycardia, inability to lose excess heat by sweating, atonic bladder, and paralytic ileus are prominent manifestations of acute spinal cord injury. Autonomic dysfunction is also a major feature of other neurological diseases such as Parkinson’s disease, pure autonomic failure, MSA, dementia with Lewy bodies, and Wernicke’s encephalopathy [13,61,79]. Autoimmune autonomic ganglionopathies are examples of severe but potentially treatable antibody-mediated forms of autonomic failure [62,76,107]. Autonomic dysfunction commonly occurs with multiple sclerosis [53,76]. Disturbances of autonomic function are more common among cluster headache sufferers; parasympathetic overactivity in the greater superficial petrosal nerve causes facial flushing and lacrimation in these patients [35]. In addition, hypothalamic activation also occurs in the trigeminal autonomic cephalgias [69]. Epileptic seizures may manifest autonomic dysfunction including convulsive apnea, abnormal sexual function, and life threatening cardiovascular effects, including sudden unexpected death in epilepsy (SUDEP) [89,97,113].

Most autonomic neuropathies occur in association with a somatic neuropathy, but they can occur in isolation. Autonomic neuropathies may be immune-mediated, infectious, nutritional, toxic, drug-induced, paraneoplastic, hereditary, or idiopathic, and may involve the parasympathetic, sympathetic, or enteric nervous system [38]. Sensory abnormalities predominate in hereditary sensory and autonomic neuropathies (HSAN) [109]. Widespread autonomic dysfunction is prominent in Guillain-Barré syndrome, acute intermittent porphyria, amyloidosis, and diabetes mellitus [82,111,112]. Acute porphyric neuropathy is predominantly motor; autonomic dysfunction is mainly due to vagal insufficiency [87]. Typical symptoms of acute porphyric neuropathy include abdominal pain, vomiting, constipation, tachycardia, hypertension, and bladder dysfunction [78].

Autonomic dysfunction is also the most prominent manifestation of small diameter lightly myelinated or unmyelinated fiber neuropathies, and sudomotor dysfunction is one of the earliest neurophysiologic abnormalities in these neuropathies [37,45,58,66]. Known causes of small fiber neuropathy include diabetes mellitus, amyloidosis, toxins, and inherited sensory and autonomic neuropathies. Neuropathic pain, acroparesthesias, hypohidrosis, or anhidrosis often associated with decreased saliva and tear production, are frequently observed signs in Fabry disease, a rare X-linked disorder caused by a deficiency of the lysosomal enzyme α-gal A (α-galactosidase) [28]. Involvement of the peripheral nervous system in Fabry disease affects mainly small A delta and C fibers [96].

Diabetic neuropathies involve the somatic and autonomic nerves. Symptoms of diabetic neuropathy are often vague. Gastrointestinal dysmotility is common in diabetes, and the role of the ENS has gained considerable importance in accounting for many of these manifestations [23]. Cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy is also one of the most clinically relevant complications of diabetes mellitus. Besides increasing morbidity and mortality, cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy may account for exercise intolerance, cardiac arrhythmias, heart rate variability, and an increased rate of silent myocardial ischemia [32,57]. Ventricular arrhythmias due to relative sympathetic overactivity with early autonomic neuropathy may account for sudden nocturnal death (“dead in bed”) in young people with Type I diabetes mellitus [114]. Rarely, an acute painful autonomic neuropathy may appear shortly after initiation of intensive glycemic control [47].

Autonomic symptoms have also been described in uremic neuropathy, alcoholic neuropathy, familial dysautonomia, HIV infection, leprosy, botulism, tetanus, and venoms of jellyfish and other marine animals [1,16,55].

Finally, many neurogenic and muscle conditions are associated with disorders of gut motility. Gastrointestinal manifestations are prominent manifestations of Parkinson’s disease, Down’s syndrome, neurofibromatosis type 1, Riley-Day syndrome, enteric neuropathies (e.g., Hirschsprung’s disease, celiac disease, intestinal neuronal dysplasia, mitochondrial neuropathies), enteric myopathies (e.g., muscular dystrophies, myotonic dystrophy, familial visceral myopathies), and collagenopathies (e.g., desmosis, connective tissue disorders) [4,17,21,42,68,81,85,88,108]. A rare form of familial visceral neuropathy with neuronal intranuclear inclusions within the neurons of the ENS may also present with a variable phenotype including achalasia, gastrosophageal reflux, intestinal dysmotility and pseudo-obstruction, peripheral neuropathy, and pupillary abnormalities [91].

References


Localization of Lesions in the Autonomic Nervous System 563


Autonomic failure in neu-


The evolution of the diffuse neuroendocrine system—


The correla-
Arterial Blood Supply

The aortic arch gives rise to three major vessels: the brachiocephalic, the left common carotid, and the left subclavian arteries. The brachiocephalic in turn gives rise to the right subclavian and the right common carotid arteries. The two common carotid arteries run upward lateral to the trachea to approximately the level of the fourth cervical vertebra, where each bifurcates into the external and internal carotid arteries (Fig. 22.1). The two vertebral arteries arise from their respective subclavian arteries medial to the anterior scalene muscle and join to form the basilar artery. After originating (first segment) from the subclavian artery, the vertebral artery traverses the foramina transversaria from C6 to C2 (second segment), loops around the atlanto-occipital joint (third segment), and finally pierces the dura passing through the foramen magnum to enter the intracranial cavity (fourth segment) to join the other vertebral artery at the pontomedullary junction. The basilar artery has a relatively constant course, beginning at or slightly below the pontomedullary junction and stretching the length of the pons, tapering to its termination at the pons—midbrain junction where it bifurcates into its two terminal branches, the right and left posterior cerebral arteries (PCA), at the level of the interpeduncular cistern. The basilar artery gives off perforating arteries along its length.

After reaching the ventral surface of the brain, the two carotid arteries and the two vertebral arteries distribute blood in three distinct patterns: median and paramedian arteries, short circumferential arteries, and long circumferential arteries. Three major arteries irrigate the cerebrum: anterior, middle, and posterior cerebral arteries, and three major arteries also irrigate the cerebellum: the posterior inferior cerebellar artery (PICA), the anterior inferior cerebellar artery (AICA), and the superior cerebellar artery (SCA). Likewise, three groups of perforators supply the striatum and thalamus: medial striate arteries from the proximal segment of the anterior cerebral artery; lateral striate arteries from the stem of the middle cerebral artery; and posterior striate arteries from the posterior cerebral arteries. The blood supply of the brainstem, labyrinth, cochlea, cerebellum, subthalamus, portions of the thalamus, and temporo-occipital areas originates from the vertebral-basilar system. The carotid and vertebral-basilar artery systems join at the base of the brain to form the anastomotic circle of Willis [85,86].

The Internal Carotid Artery

The internal carotid arteries irrigate the rostral parts of the brain: the cerebral cortex, deep white matter, basal ganglia, and diencephalon. The internal carotid artery (ICA) may be divided into three main segments: cervical, petrosal, and intracranial. The cervical segment of the ICA has no branches. It ascends vertically in the neck, extending from the common carotid bifurcation to the base of the skull. It then enters the base of the skull through the carotid canal in the petrous portion of the temporal bone. The artery crosses the foramen lacerum and enters the cavernous sinus. The petrosal segment gives off a caroticotympanic branch (to the tympanic membrane) and a vidian branch (artery to the pterygoid canal). The intracranial segment begins distal to the petrous segment and proximal to the anterior clinoid process. Presellar and juxtasellar portions of this vessel are distinguished. The juxtasellar portion lies within the cavernous sinus in close proximity to the oculomotor, trochlear, and abducens nerves (CN III, IV, and VI), and the ophthalmic and maxillary divisions of the trigeminal nerve (CN V). Meningohypophyseal branches (tentorial artery of Bernasconi and Cassinari, dorsal meningeal artery, and inferior hypophyseal artery) arise from the presellar and juxtasellar portions to supply the adjacent meninges and posterior lobe of the hypophysis. The ICA then pierces the dura mater medial to the anterior clinoid process, where it becomes the supraclinoid. The ophthalmic artery, the first major branch of the ICA, arises at the level of the anterior clinoid process. This vessel runs forward initially intracranially, then...
After giving off the AChA, the ICA bifurcates to form the anterior cerebral and middle cerebral arteries.

The Anterior Choroidal Artery

The AChA vascularizes the posterior limb (posterior two-thirds) of the internal capsule, optic tract, lateral geniculate body (hilum and lateral part), optic radiation, amygdala, uncus and adjacent medial temporal lobe, and posterior paraventricular corona radiata.

The Anterior Cerebral Artery

The anterior cerebral artery (ACA) arises below the anterior perforated substance and runs anteromedially to the interhemispheric fissure, where it joins the opposite ACA by way of the anterior communicating artery, closing the rostral portion of the circle of Willis. The ACA supplies the medial surface of the cerebrum and the upper border of the frontal and parietal lobes [32]. It gives origin to (a) medial lenticulostriate branches, (b) pericallosal branches to the corpus callosum, and (c) hemispheric branches. The medial lenticulostriate branches include basal branches, which supply the dorsal aspect of the optic chiasm and the hypothalamus, and the medial striate artery (recurrent artery of Heubner), which supplies blood to the anteroinferior limb of the internal capsule, the anterior aspects of the putamen and caudate nuclei, and the tip of the outer segment of the globus pallidus. The callosal branches arise from the pericallosal artery, which is that portion of the ACA distal to the anterior communicating artery. Others reserve the term pericallosal artery for the segment beyond the origin of the callosomarginal artery. The ACA and the pericallosal arteries also supply the septum pellucidum and the fornix. The hemispheric branches supply the medial surface of the hemisphere and include the orbitofrontal, frontopolar, internal frontal (anterior, middle, and posterior), paracentral, and internal parietal (superior and inferior) branches.

The Middle Cerebral Artery

The middle cerebral artery (MCA), the largest branch of the ICA, arises below the anterior perforated substance and runs anteromedially to the interhemispheric fissure, where it joins the opposite ACA by way of the anterior communicating artery, closing the rostral portion of the circle of Willis. The ACA supplies the medial surface of the cerebrum and the upper border of the frontal and parietal lobes [26]. Three segments of the MCA are recognized: proximal, Sylvian, and distal. From the posterolateral aspect of the proximal segment arise the penetrating lenticulostriate arteries, which nourish the adjacent corona radiata, external capsule, claustrum, putamen, part of the globus pallidus, body of the caudate nucleus, and superior portion of the anterior...
Vascular Syndromes of the Forebrain, Brainstem, and Cerebellum

The Posterior Cerebral Artery

The PCAs are the terminal branches of the basilar artery, although approximately 20%–25% of people have a fetal (embryonic) origin of the PCA. The PCA arises from the rostral end of the basilar artery within the interpeduncular cistern and supplies the occipital lobes and the interpeduncular portions of the temporal lobes. Numerous other branches supply the mesencephalon, thalamus, and other structures. The branches of the PCA have been divided into three groups [126]: (a) the penetrating arteries to the thalamus, thalamus, and other deep structures, (b) the dorsal callosal artery, and (c) the cortical branches. From the origin of the PCA (as it surrounds the midbrain), numerous perforating branches are given off. Mesencephalic branches include the interpeduncular perforators and the short and long circumferential arteries. The arterial supply to the thalamus arises from the posterior communicating arteries and the perimesencephalic segment of the PCA. The dorsal callosal artery or splenial branch anastomoses with distal branches of the ACA. The PCA has four main cortical branches: the anterior temporal, posterior temporal, parieto-occipital, and calcaine arteries. The calcarine artery supplies the visual cortex.

Collateral Circulation

There are three main sources of collateral circulation to the brain that compensate in cases of carotid or basilar occlusion: (a) the circle of Willis, located on the ventral surface of the brain, that connects the internal carotid and vertebrobasilar arterial systems with each other, (b) anastomoses between branches of the extracranial and intracranial arteries, and (c) leptomeningeal anastomoses between the terminal branches of the major arteries of the cerebrum and cerebellum. The most important intracranial anastomoses are those of the circle of Willis. Atypical configurations of the circle of Willis resulting from hypoplasia of one or more component stems are found in 79% of individuals. Persistent primitive carotid basilar anastomoses may occur, such as (a) primitive trigeminal artery, (b) primitive acoustic (otic) artery, (c) primitive hypoglossal artery, and (d) primitive proatlantic artery. A persistent trigeminal artery [100] is the most frequent of the four primitive connections (0.1%–0.2% of adults) and may maintain significant collateral flow.

The arteries of the brain and their main territories of distribution are diagrammed in Figures 22.2 and 22.3.

 Syndromes of the Cerebral Arteries

Cerebrovascular disorders result from either ischemia or hemorrhage within the central nervous system (CNS), and are broadly considered under the term stroke. A stroke is the third most common cause of mortality in most developed countries. A stroke indicates the relatively abrupt (seconds to hours) onset of a focal neurologic deficit resulting from disease (occlusion or rupture) of the arteries or veins that serve the CNS. Although stroke is commonly used to mean cerebral infarction (CI), it is preferable to use more precise terms, such as CI, intracerebral hemorrhage (ICH), or subarachnoid hemorrhage (SAH). The etiologic factors that may give rise to a stroke are many.

Other key factors are whether the deficit is transient or permanent, static or progressive, and whether the ischemia involves the cerebral cortex, subcortical areas, brainstem, or cerebellum. The neurologic deficit reflects the location and size of the lesion. Stroke syndromes may arise from an infarct or a hemorrhage. An infarct is usually due to either thrombosis from atherosclerotic lesions or embolism from the heart, aorta, or extracranial/intracranial vasculature. Hemorrhage may be epidural, subdural, subarachnoid, intra-parenchymal, or intraventricular, and may have various etiologies, including arterial hypertension, saccular aneurysms, arteriovenous malformations, blood dyscrasias, vasculitis, use of sympathomimetic drugs, cerebral amyloid angiopathy, trauma, or neoplasms.

Most cases of acute stroke are ischemic, usually resulting from thrombotic or embolic occlusion of a cerebral artery. Of all strokes, 87% are ischemic strokes. ICH is responsible for approximately 10% of all strokes and SAH accounts for the remainder. Cerebral atherothromboembolism involves predominantly the MCA, followed by the PCA territory; the ACA
FIG. 22.2. The arteries of the brain (basilar view).

FIG. 22.3. Major territories of distribution of brain vessels.
and the basilar artery are involved less frequently. In addition to extracranial atherosclerotic occlusive cerebrovascular disease, sources of cerebral embolism include atrial fibrillation, recent myocardial infarction with a mural thrombus, dilated cardiomyopathies, sick sinus syndrome, rheumatic valvular heart disease, prosthetic heart valves, congenital heart disease, cardiac tumors, and infective and non-bacterial thrombotic (marantic) endocarditis.

**Transient Ischemic Attacks**

TIAs are powerful harbingers of stroke. Hemispheric TIAs have a greater risk for stroke and retinal TIAs. Approximately 10% of patients diagnosed as having a TIA have an ischemic stroke in the 90 days following the TIA diagnosis, with half of these having a stroke within 2 days of the TIA [149]. The ABCD2 score is useful for stroke risk stratification in patients with TIAs: ABCD2 scores of 4 or greater indicate a moderate to high stroke risk and justify prompt hospital admission. ABCD2 score: Age 60 or older = 1 point; Blood pressure =140/90 = 1 point; Clinical unilateral weakness = 2 points; speech impairment = 1 point; Duration 60 minutes or more = 2 points; less than 60 minutes = 1 point; Diabetes = 1 point [150]. TIAs are short-lived episodes of acute, focal, nonconvulsive neurologic dysfunction caused by reversible ischemia to the retina or brain. Onset of symptoms is sudden and often unprovoked, reaching maximum intensity almost immediately. TIAs commonly last 2 to 30 minutes. Patients often have no clinical manifestations by the time they present for medical attention [304]. The episode is followed by complete recovery. However, TIAs may be associated with variable rates of infarction on diffusion-weighted magnetic resonance imaging (DW-MRI) [20]. Thereby, a new “tissue based definition” of TIA has been proposed: brief episodes of neurological dysfunction caused by focal retinal or brain ischemia with symptoms typically lasting less than 60 minutes, and without evidence of acute infarction [4]. Because identification of the arterial territory involved is important in considering the extent of investigation and management, TIAs involving the carotid circulation are distinguished from those involving the vertebrobasilar circulation. TIAs are most often caused by thromboembolism associated with large vessel atherosclerosis, cardioembolism, or small vessel disease. Hemodynamic mechanisms are less common.

Approximately 25% of patients with TIAs complain of headaches during the attack. “Limb-shaking” TIAs may be associated with severe carotid artery stenosis [23].

Symptoms considered typical of TIAs in the carotid and vertebrobasilar circulation are shown in Table 22.1.

**The Carotid Artery Syndrome**

The only feature distinguishing the carotid artery syndrome from the MCA syndrome is amaurosis fugax or transient monocular blindness. Patients with amaurosis fugax often describe sudden onset of transient painless monocular loss of vision sometimes referred to a “curtain” or “shade” being pulled from the top or bottom of a visual field, or as a constriction of the visual field, such as an iris diaphragm type of monocular visual loss [139]. The former type of spell is most likely embolic, whereas the latter is most probably related to marginal perfusion causing diminished blood flow to the retina. Not infrequently, the characteristics of the attacks of visual loss are described as a temporary blackout, dimming, blurring, graying, or fogging of vision. Scintillations are seldom reported. In a subset of the North American Symptomatic Carotid Endarterectomy Trial (NASCET), one-third of patients reported an altitudinal visual loss with an ascending or descending shade [293]. Most attacks are spontaneous and

---

**TABLE 22.1 Symptoms of Transient Ischemic Attacks**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptom</th>
<th>Carotid Artery Territory</th>
<th>Vertebrobasilar Artery Territory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Motor deficit</td>
<td>Contralateral weakness, clumsiness, or paralysis</td>
<td>Bilateral or shifting weakness, clumsiness, or paralysis; ataxia, imbalance, or disequilibrium not associated with vertigo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensory deficit</td>
<td>Contralateral numbness; paresthesias, including loss of sensation</td>
<td>Bilateral or shifting numbness; paresthesias, including loss of sensation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speech deficit</td>
<td>Dysphasia, dysarthria</td>
<td>Dysarthria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Visual deficit</td>
<td>Ipsilateral monocular blindness (amaurosis fugax), contralateral homonymous hemianopia</td>
<td>Diplopia, partial, or complete blindness in both homonymous visual fields</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>Combination of the above</td>
<td>Combination of the above</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Transient vertigo, diplopia, dysarthria, or dysphagia by themselves are insufficient to establish a diagnosis of vertebrobasilar artery territory transient ischemic attacks.*
ulation in young adults and adolescents are associated
with a more benign clinical course than those seen
in older patients and are likely caused by migraine
[301]. Rarely, an intraorbital tumor may compress
the optic nerve or a nutrient vessel in certain gaze
positions, causing transient monocular visual loss.

Atherothrombotic disease of the carotid system
has a predilection for the bifurcation of the common
carotid artery and proximal ICA. This is more fre-
cquent among whites and in men, whereas carotid
artery siphon stenosis is more common among
African Americans and Asians. Patients with carotid
artery occlusive disease may present with recurrent
TIAs, an apoplectic or stepwise onset, or a slowly pro-
gressive neurologic deficit. Atherothrombotic occlu-
sion of the ICA is an important cause of ischemic
stroke. Occlusion of the ICA in the neck may be
asymptomatic in the presence of adequate collateral
circulation, particularly if the occlusion develops
slowly. Infarct patterns following ICA occlusion are
heterogeneous [254]. Infarction of the homolateral
hemisphere may occur when the collateral circula-
tion is inadequate. Occlusion of the intracranial
carotid artery bifurcation also called carotid terminus
or carotid T occlusion typically results in large infarc-
tions involving the MCA and anterior cerebral artery
(ACA) territories, including deep structures perfused
by the lenticulostriate arteries. In instances of a fetal
origin of the posterior cerebral artery (PCA), the
infarction will also involve the PCA territory.

Decreased level of alertness and severe leg weakness
are useful clinical clues to differentiate a carotid T
occlusion from an MCA territory stroke.

Infarcts may involve the entire territory of the
MCA (total), the areas of supply nearest the ICA or
MCA (proximal), the border zone between the ACA
and MCA (watershed), or only the white matter sup-
plied by peripheral branches of the MCA (terminal).
Patients may initially complain of headaches, and
focal seizures may occur. Contralateral hemiplegia,
hemianesthesia, homonymous hemianopia, and
aphasia (if the dominant hemisphere is compromised)
or apractagnosia (if the nondominant hemisphere is

Unilateral loss of vision in bright light (“bright-
light” amaurosis) may occur in patients with high-
grade stenosis or occlusion of the ipsilateral carotid
artery [111]. Episodic bilateral vision impairment
related exclusively to light exposure might occur
with bilateral high-grade stenosis or occlusion of the
ICA [324]. Visual loss may persist for seconds to
hours after exposure and is thought to be related to
bilateral simultaneous retinal ischemia delaying
regeneration of visual pigments in the pigment
epithelial layer.

Differential diagnosis of transient monocular
visual disturbances includes retinal ischemia (retinal
migraine, vasospasm, Raynaud’s phenomenon, ane-
mia, polycythemia, sickle cell disease, carotid artery
compression or occlusion, postural hypotenison, car-
diac arrhythmia); optic disc elevation, dysplasia, or
ischemia (intrapapillary drusen, optic nerve sheath
meningioma, dysplastic coloboma, papilledema, giant
cell arteritis, polyarteritis nodosa, cosinophilic
vasculitis) [234,278]; and mechanical retinal or optic
nerve stimulation (oculodigital phenomenon, light-
ing streaks of Moore, optic neuritis, retinal tear,
flick phosphenes) [60,335]. Attacks of subacute angle
closure glaucoma may also cause transient mono-
cular visual loss [258]. Amaurosis fugax may also occur
in association with the antiphospholipid antibody
syndrome [55,91] and with exercise in healthy young
adults (likely migraine equivalents) [143]. Patients
with multiple sclerosis may also report uniocular or
binocular dimming of vision after exercise (Uthoff
symptom) [285]. Amaurosis fugax and ocular infarc-
tion in young adults and adolescents are associated
with a more benign clinical course than those seen
in older patients and are likely caused by migraine
[301]. Rarely, an intraorbital tumor may compress
the optic nerve or a nutrient vessel in certain gaze
positions, causing transient monocular visual loss.

Atherothrombotic disease of the carotid system
has a predilection for the bifurcation of the common
carotid artery and proximal ICA. This is more fre-
cquent among whites and in men, whereas carotid
artery siphon stenosis is more common among
African Americans and Asians. Patients with carotid
artery occlusive disease may present with recurrent
TIAs, an apoplectic or stepwise onset, or a slowly pro-
gressive neurologic deficit. Atherothrombotic occlu-
sion of the ICA is an important cause of ischemic
stroke. Occlusion of the ICA in the neck may be
asymptomatic in the presence of adequate collateral
circulation, particularly if the occlusion develops
slowly. Infarct patterns following ICA occlusion are
heterogeneous [254]. Infarction of the homolateral
hemisphere may occur when the collateral circulation
is inadequate. Occlusion of the intracranial
carotid artery bifurcation also called carotid terminus
or carotid T occlusion typically results in large infarc-
tions involving the MCA and anterior cerebral artery
(ACA) territories, including deep structures perfused
by the lenticulostriate arteries. In instances of a fetal
origin of the posterior cerebral artery (PCA), the
infarction will also involve the PCA territory.

Infarcts may involve the entire territory of the
MCA (total), the areas of supply nearest the ICA or
MCA (proximal), the border zone between the ACA
and MCA (watershed), or only the white matter sup-
plied by peripheral branches of the MCA (terminal).
Patients may initially complain of headaches, and
focal seizures may occur. Contralateral hemiplegia,
hemianesthesia, homonymous hemianopia, and
aphasia (if the dominant hemisphere is compromised)
or apractagnosia (if the nondominant hemisphere is

TABLE 22.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Microemboli</th>
<th>Appearance</th>
<th>Vessel Occlusion</th>
<th>Origin</th>
<th>Composition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bright plaque</td>
<td>Irregular, bright, orange-yellow, glistening, refractile</td>
<td>May, may not</td>
<td>Eroded atheroma</td>
<td>Cholesterol crystals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White plug</td>
<td>Grayish white, nonrefractile</td>
<td>Often</td>
<td>Carotid thrombus, cardiac source</td>
<td>Platelet-fibrin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcific emboli</td>
<td>Ovoid, gray-white, nonrefractile</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td>Calcific</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Vascular Syndromes of the Forebrain, Brainstem, and Cerebellum

involved) may ensue. The association of amaurosis fugax or ischemic optic neuropathy with contralateral hemiplegia (opticocerebral syndrome) is rarely seen [52]. Acute ICA occlusion may also rarely cause concurrent ophthalmoparesis (transient) with monocular blindness (permanent) [328]. Examination may show an ipsilateral Horner syndrome, usually transient, due to compromise of the sympathetic fibers coursing along the ICA. Ipsilateral optic atrophy seldom occurs. Ischemic oculopatry (ocular ischemic syndrome) can also be a manifestation of carotid artery occlusive disease [334]. Patients with ischemic oculopathy may complain of ocular or orbital pain often relieved by the supine position, decrease in vision, and “bright-light” amaurosis. There may be engorge ment of conjunctival and episcleral vessels, corneal edema, ischemic pseudo-inflammatory uveitis, ruberosis iridis, and anterior chamber cells and flare [220]. The intraocular pressure may be low (early) or abnormally high (late). Occasionally, there may be asymptomatic hypertensive retinal changes noted on funduscopy. Corneal arcus senilis may be less apparent on the side of low perfusion [286]. Venous stasis (hypotensive) retinopathy may occur with high-grade carotid stenosis or occlusion and is characterized by insidious onset, diminution or absence of venous pulsations, dilated and tortuous retinal veins, midperipheral retinal microaneurysms, blossom-shaped hemorrhages in the midperipheral retina, and retinal nerve fiber layer splinter hemorrhages. Hypotensive retinopathy may also include retinal arteriole narrowing, macular edema, and neovascularization in the posterior pole.

Typically, patients present with uniform (proportionate) hemiparesis (face, shoulder, hand, hip, and foot), or facioabralial weakness. On rare occasions, small cortical infarcts may account for weakness limited to a particular group of digits, particularly the index finger [165,170], or finger extensors in cortical infarcts involving the contralateral middle to lower portion of the precentral gyrus [22,64,337]. Moreover, in rare instances, small cortical infarcts may cause pure sensory stroke [330], isolated dysarthria [174], asterixis [162], or upper limb monoaiaxia [237].

The neurovascular examination may disclose a well-localized bruit in the mid- or upper cervical area. Bruits arise when normal laminar flow of blood is disturbed, usually when the diameter stenosis is >50%. Cervical bruits may have many causes. The presence of a cervical bruit does not necessarily indicate underlying carotid atherosclerosis. Correlation with angiography or ultrasound studies show only approximately 60% agreement with cervical auscultation in predicting the presence of carotid stenosis, and may actually disappear with lesions causing diameter stenosis of >90%. Radiated cardiac murmurs, hypodynam ic states, nonatherosclerotic carotid arterial lesions (fibromuscular dysplasia, dissections, radiation vasculopathy), and venous hums can produce cervical murmurs. The absence of a bruit has little diagnostic value. The bruit may disappear when the stenosis is >90%. Conversely, a cervical bruit may be related to flow augmentation due to contralateral ICA occlusion.

Severe stenosis or occlusion of the ICA may cause progressive or episodic weakness of one lower extremity, often aggravated or precipitated by standing or walking [332]. This weakness is thought to be due to hypoperfusion in the border zone between the anterior and middle cerebral arteries. Also, episodic carotid ischemia may rarely cause intermittent limb shaking or repetitive involuntary movements [23,331]. These movements are brief, coarse, irregular or rhythmic, wavering or trembling, and affect the contralateral arm and hand, or arm, hand, and leg. They are characteristically precipitated by standing up, walking, or neck hyperextension and are promptly relieved by assuming the supine or sitting position and are thought to be due to transient hemodynamic ischemic episodes rather than epilepsy. Other atypical carotid distribution transient ischemic manifestations include orthostatic TIAs, transient anosagnosia, and transient loss of pitch perception [99]. Infarcts of the genu of the internal capsule may cause contralateral facial and lingual paresis with dysarthria [48]. A cluster of TIAs (capsular warning syndrome) causing weakness of the contralateral hemibody and reflecting ischemia of a single lenticulostriate artery may occur hours to days before a stroke [94]. This capsular genu syndrome may also be associated with unilateral mastication-palatal-pharyngeal weakness, ipsilateral vocal cord paresis, and mild hand weakness (hand paresis suggests involvement of the anterior part of the posterior limb of the internal capsule). This faciolingual syndrome suggests that a majority of corticopontine and corticobulbar fibers to the facial and hypoglossal nuclei are located in the genu of the internal capsule; the absence of sternocleidomastoid paresis or sensory changes suggests that corticofugal fibers to the nucleus of CN XI and thalamocortical fibers corresponding to buccofacial sensation do not travel in the genu. The inconstant mastication, pharyngeal, palatal, and laryngeal weakness suggest bilateral, although predominantly unilateral, corticofugal projections to the motor nuclei of CN V and CN IX and the nucleus ambiguus or control of these functions by extracapsular fibers [48]. Faciolingual hemiparesis, whether associated with masseter, palatal, pharyngeal, laryngeal, or hand weakness, is highly suggestive of stroke limited to the genu of the contralateral internal capsule. Pure dysarthria, sometimes with contralateral facial weakness, may occur with striatocapsular infarction, with infarction of the
superior portion of the anterior limb of the internal capsule or adjacent corona radiata, with infarction in the superior portion of the genu or adjacent corona radiata, with infarcts of the bulbar motor cortex, or with verteobasilar infarction [93,133,141].

Infarction involving the genu of the internal capsule has also been reported to result in behavioral changes [297]. Damage to the anterior nucleus of the thalamus, which lies immediately inferomedial to the genu of the internal capsule, cannot be ruled out in these cases. The acute syndrome includes fluctuating alertness, inattention, memory loss, apathy, abulia, and psychomotor retardation, suggesting frontal lobe dysfunction. Contralateral hemiparesis and dysarthria are mild, except when the infarct extends to involve the posterior capsular limb. Neuropsychological testing in patients with left-sided infarcts may reveal severe verbal memory loss, occasionally associated with dementia, whereas right-sided infarcts cause transient impairment in visuospatial memory. It has been inferred that the capsular genu infarct interrupts the inferior and anterior thalamic peduncles, resulting in functional deactivation of the ipsilateral frontal cortex (thalamocortical disconnection) [297]. Other authors have failed to see this syndrome with lesions in the genu of the internal capsule [48]. Trismus may seldom follow bilateral capsular genu infarctions [15].

The Anterior Cerebral Artery Syndrome

Infarction in the AChA territory typically results in hemiparesis due to involvement of the pyramidal tract in the posterior limb of the internal capsule, hemisensory loss for light touch and pinprick due to involvement of the superior thalamic radiations situated in the thalamolenticular portion of the posterior limb of the internal capsule, and homonymous hemianopia sparing the horizontal meridian or quadruple sectoranopia secondary to involvement of the optic tract, the lateral geniculate body, the optic radiations, or a combination of these [58,84,138]. A relative afferent pupillary defect may be present in the eye contralateral to the side of the lesion (optic tract lesion). Clinical syndromes with AChA infarction include a pure motor syndrome, a sensorimotor syndrome, and ataxic hemiparesis [138]. CT scan or MRI examination reveals abnormality in the posterior limb of the internal capsule, sparing the thalamus medially and encroaching on the tip of the globus pallidus laterally. A homonymous defect in the upper and lower visual fields sparing the horizontal meridian is characteristic of a lesion in the lateral geniculate body in the territory of the AChA [129]. In a small percentage of patients, AChA territory infarcts on the right side produce mild deficits of visual perception and visual memory for designs, left spatial hemineglect, constructional apraxia, anosognosia, and motor impersistence, and those on the left side produce a mild language disorder characterized by deficiencies with oral word association and dysarthria [46,84]. Bilateral AChA infarction may result in bilateral capsular infarction causing acute pseudobulbar mutism accompanied by varying degrees of facial diplegia, hemiparesis, hemisensory loss, lethargy, neglect, and affect changes [130]. Bilateral involvement of the lateral geniculate bodies may cause bilateral hourglass-shaped visual field defects. Fits of laughter or crying devoid of emotional content have also been described with AChA territory infarctions [88].

The Anterior Cerebral Artery Syndrome

Infarction in the ACA territory causes damage primarily to the medial frontal and parietal areas including the cingulate gyrus, basal aspects of the frontal lobes, rostrum, genu, trunk, and splenium of the corpus callosum, anterior portions of the diencephalon, head of the caudate nucleus, and anterior limb of the internal capsule.

Whether embolic, atherothrombotic, vasospastic, or the result of lacunar infarcts or arterial dissections, infarctions limited to the distribution of the ACA are rare, representing about 0.6% to 3% of CIs [12,47,153,274]. The clinical picture varies according to the site of occlusion and patency of available collaterals [47,79,263]. Infarction in the territory of the hemispheric branches of the ACA often results in contralateral weakness involving the lower extremity and, to a lesser extent, the arm (especially the shoulder). Patients may display lack of initiative or abulia. Paratonia (gegenhalten) and a grasp reflex may be present. With bilateral damage to the mesiofrontal region, patients may exhibit frontal lobe release signs, akinetiform mutism, paraplegia, urinary incontinence, and amnesia with apathy [47,221]. With involvement of the anterior corpus callosum, they may have left arm apraxia (anterior disconnection syndrome) or hyperlexia [295]. Sensory examination may show contralateral tactile sensory loss affecting primarily the lower extremity. A number of patients have impaired articulation and a soft whispering voice. Bilateral ACA infarcts, unrelated to underlying anatomic abnormalities, occurred after viper envenomation [134]. With unilateral left-sided lesions, they may have transcortical motor aphasia. Some patients exhibit memory and emotional disturbances and impaired planning abilities. In some cases, there are disturbances of sphincter control with urinary incontinence (transient with unilateral lesions). Some patients demonstrate gait and postural
Vascular Syndromes of the Forebrain, Brainstem, and Cerebellum

disorders. Dominant medial frontal damage that includes the supplementary motor cortex may cause a disturbance of upper extremity control, including impaired bimanual coordination, the alien hand sign, and intermanual conflict [213]. Other manifestations include motor perseveration, ideomotor apraxia, amnesia, gaze deviation, anosognosia, and parkinsonism [155]. Large right ACA infarctions may cause a hemiplegia with the arm and leg affected more than the face, marked sensory neglect, impaired copying and micrographia [183].

Leg-predominant weakness with stroke is due to ACA infarction in only 25% of the cases. More often, it is related to lesions in the corona radiata or internal capsule, in the territory of the AChA or perforators (approximately 30%), or in the brainstem (approximately 25%) and can occur with lesions in the MCA territory or with thalamic hemorrhage [276]. Regarding lesions in the medial aspect of the frontal lobe, those restricted to the precentral gyrus portion of the paracentral lobule cause a contralateral, predominantly distal leg weakness. Lesions involving, in addition to the precentral gyrus, the premotor cortex and the supplementary motor area cause leg weakness, predominantly distal, and less severe proximal weakness of the arm. Lesions affecting the medial part of the premotor cortex and the supplementary motor area, while sparing the precentral gyrus, cause a contralateral hemiparesis, more pronounced in the leg, and predominating proximally in both leg and arm. Lesions of the internal capsule or brainstem cause proportional leg weakness. The weakness of the legs with these capsular and brainstem strokes suggests a somatotopic organization of the pyramidal tracts, with the leg fibers being probably dorsolaterally situated and the arm fibers situated ventromedially [276].

The syndrome of homolateral ataxia and crural paresis, with hemiparesis that predominates in the leg and homolateral ataxia in the arm, can occur with superficial ACA infarcts in the paracentral area [45]. Involvement of the corticopontocerebellar fibers at their origin along with damage to the lower limb motor strip or underlying white matter appear to cause this clinical syndrome in these cases. Ataxic hemiparesis has also been described with lesions of the pons, corona radiata, thalamus, lentiform nucleus, or other structures.

Infarction in the territory of the medial lenticulostriate artery (artery of Heubner) results in contralateral weakness of the face and arm without associated sensory loss. Therefore, with proximal ACA infarction, severe contralateral hemiplegia may result, with paralysis of the face, tongue, and arm from damage to the anterior limb of the internal capsule and paralysis of the leg from paracentral damage. Infarction of the basal branches of the ACA cause transient memory disorders, anxiety, and agitation. Patients with occlusion of the pericallosal branches may show apraxia, agraphia, and tactile anomia of the left hand. Distal occlusion of the ACA may cause infarction localized to the caudate nucleus (occasionally extending to involve the anterior limb of the internal capsule and anterior putamen), resulting in slight, transient hemiparesis, dysarthria, behavioral and cognitive deficits (e.g., agitation, hyperactivity, abulia, contralateral neglect), and language impairment [63].

Movement disorders are unusual following ACA territory infarcts. A minority of patients with small anterior frontal lesions may exhibit asterixis. Hemiparkinsonism has been found with lesions involving the supplementary motor area or cingulate gyrus. Micrographia has also been described with ACA infarcts [164,183]. Involuntary masturbation using the left hand, due to a callosal type of alien hand syndrome and right-sided hemiballismus following bilateral ACA infarcts, highlights the rich semiology of these infarcts [28].

The Middle Cerebral Artery Syndrome

The MCA is the largest branch of the ICA and a continuation of this artery in the direction of the sylvian fissure. The MCA territory is the most common site of ischemic stroke. The clinical syndromes of MCA territory infarction vary according to the site of occlusion (e.g., stem, superior division, inferior division, lenticulostriate branches) and the available collaterals. Clinical features of MCA territory infarction are extremely diverse (e.g., complete MCA territory, deep territory, superficial anterior [superior] territory, and superficial posterior [inferior] territory) [128,218,261,320].

Contralateral weakness affecting the face, the arm, and, to a lesser extent, the leg is a common manifestation of MCA territory infarction. Similarly, contralateral hemisensory loss involving the face, the arm, and, to a lesser extent, the leg is also frequent. Perioral and distal upper limb sensory dysfunction (cheiro-oral syndrome) may occur [43]. Although the cheiro-oral syndrome has been attributed to a lesion of the contralateral postcentral gyrus, it may also be seen with lesions of the contralateral corona radiata [240] or thalamus [158], and even with brainstem lesions [9,125,209,241]. Ataxic hemiparesis with cheiro-oral syndrome may occur with a contralateral posterior capsular infarction [78].

With MCA territory infarction, there may be paresis and apraxia of conjugate gaze to the opposite side, with transient tonic deviation of the eyes and head toward the side of the lesion. Infarcts in the dominant hemisphere for language can be followed by Broca’s, Wernicke’s, conduction, or global aphasia, depending on the site and extent of involvement.
Alexia with agraphia may occur with the involvement of the left angular gyrus. Combinations of finger agnosia, acaulilia, right–left disorientation, and agraphia (Gerstmann’s syndrome) may be encountered. Infarction in the nondominant hemisphere causes inattention, neglect, denial, apraxic syndromes, and impaired prosody. Rarely, nondominant infarction may cause an acute confusional state and acute agitated delirium with affective and autonomic excitement, delusions, and hallucinations [226]. Lesions of either hemisphere may give rise to contralateral homonymous hemianopia or contralateral homonymous inferior quadrantanopia. Cataleptic posturing in isolation from other manifestations of the catatonic syndrome has been mentioned in association with MCA territory infarction [271].

Occlusion of the superior division of the MCA causes contralateral hemiparesis with predominant involvement of the upper extremity and face, hemisensory loss, and conjugate gaze deviation. Visual fields tend to be spared. Superior division of the dominant MCA infarcts causes left hemisensory loss, and conjugate gaze deviation. Visual fields tend to be spared. Superior division of the dominant MCA infarcts causes left hemisensory loss, and conjugate gaze deviation. Visual fields tend to be spared. Superior division of the dominant MCA infarcts causes left hemisensory loss, and conjugate gaze deviation. Visual fields tend to be spared. Superior division of the dominant MCA infarcts causes left hemisensory loss, and conjugate gaze deviation. Visual fields tend to be spared.

Wernicke’s aphasia occurs with inferior division of the dominant MCA infarcts. Inferior division of the MCA infarcts of either hemisphere produces homonymous hemianopia or quadrantanopia. Right inferior division of the MCA infarcts may also cause left visual neglect. Temporal lobe involvement can cause an agitated and confused state.

Strokes restricted to the insular cortex have been associated with somatosensory deficits; gustatory disorders; vestibular-like manifestations; cardiovascular disorders including arterial hypertension and arrhythmias; and language and neuropsychological disorders including aphasia, dysarthria, and somatoparaphrenia [65,102,314]. While laterality of autonomic function in the insular cortex remains controversial, insular strokes have also been associated with an increased risk of myocardial injury, cardiac arrhythmias, and sudden death [19,70].

Occlusion of the lateral striate branches of the MCA causes striatocapsular infarction with the involvement of the rostral aspect of the head of the caudate, the anterior limb of the internal capsule, and the putamen (a comma-shaped area on CT scan or MRI) [93]. Clinical manifestations include hemiparesis, affecting mainly the upper limb, and “cortical” abnormalities (aphasia, neglect, and dyspraxia). Less frequently, a pure motor hemiparesis with minimal cortical signs may be seen and, rarely, subtle changes such as dysarthria alone or upper limb clumsiness may occur. Causes of striatocapsular infarction include cardioembolic disease and occlusive vascular disease, more often in the internal carotid than in the MCA [93].

The centrum ovale, which contains the core of the hemispheric white matter, receives its blood supply from the superficial (pial) MCA system through perforating medullary branches, which course toward the lateral ventricles. Patients with infarcts involving the centrum ovale limited to the territory of the perforating medullary branches without the involvement of the lenticulostriate territory often have large infarcts associated with severe disease of the ipsilateral carotid artery and with acute neurologic–neuropsychological impairment no different from that with large MCA infarction. Small infarcts are associated with hypertension or diabetes and with “lacunar syndromes,” usually of progressive onset [49].

Double (multiple) infarcts of the MCA territory of the dominant hemisphere may result in global aphasia without hemiparesis [307], hemianopic hemiplegia without sensory impairment [42], or conductive aphasia with hemiparesis [42]. Bilateral supranuclear facio-pharyngo-glossomasticatory paresis with automatic-voluntary dissociation (Foix-Chavany-Marie syndrome) may also result from bilateral anterior opercular infarcts [269]. Moreover, bilateral temporal infarcts may result in cortical deafness or a Kluver-Bucy syndrome [73].

Malignant MCA territory infarcts resulting from space occupying lesions, often due to an occlusion of the proximal MCA (M1 segment), are associated with an 80% mortality rate [123,128,140]. Occlusion at the origin of the MCA may result in severe flaccid hemiparesis/hemiplegia, contralateral homonymous hemianopia, hemianesthesia, conjugate gaze deviation, pupillary dilatation, and progressive decrease in the level of alertness [140,271]. Neurological deterioration may occur independent from raised intracranial pressure [255]. Global aphasia occurs if the left MCA is occluded. Occlusion of the right MCA produces left body neglect, and bilateral eyelid ptosis. Eyelid ptosis may be an early sign of herniation in large hemispheric infarcts and attributed to upper brainstem involvement [40,171].

**VERTEBROBASILAR ARTERY SYNDROMES OF THE BRAINSTEM AND CEREBELLUM**

The dominant arterial territories of the brainstem and cerebellum have been carefully delineated by Tatu et al. [298]. The main arterial trunks supplying the brainstem include the vertebral artery, anterior
Vascular Syndromes of the Forebrain, Brainstem, and Cerebellum

spinal artery, PICA, basilar artery, AICA, SCA, PCA, posterior communicating artery, and AChA. The cerebellar arterial supply on its lower half originates from the PICAs and AICAs, while the superior half of the cerebellum is irrigated by the SCA.

Connected to the brainstem by three pairs of cerebellar peduncles, the main symptoms of cerebellar infarction include vertigo, dizziness, nausea, vomiting, ataxia, and nystagmus. If the lateral cerebellar hemisphere is involved, patients may have vertigo, ataxia, limb dysmetria and ataxia, nausea, vomiting, conjugate or dysconjugate gaze palsies, miosis and dysarthria. If the infarction is large, lethargy may occur. Hydrocephalus or herniation may develop. With a cerebellar pressure cone (tonsillar hernia), there is downward displacement of the cerebellar tonsils through the foramen magnum, resulting in hemorrhagic necrosis of the cerebellum and cerebellar tonsils and groove of the ventral surface of the medulla oblongata. Clinical manifestations may include neck stiffness, cardiac and respiratory rhythm disturbances, and apnea. With ascending transtentorial herniation (upward herniation syndrome), there is upward displacement of the superior aspect of the cerebellar hemisphere through the free edge of the tentorial incisura, resulting in midbrain compression. Clinical manifestations include lethargy, coma, paralysis of upward gaze, midposition and unreactive pupils, and abnormal extensor posturing. There is also a syndrome of combined dorsolateral medullary and cerebellar infarction that may be caused by a vertebral artery occlusion or a medial PICA occlusion. Although a PICA occlusion can be the cause of Wallenberg (lateral medullary) syndrome, this syndrome is more often caused by an intracranial vertebral artery occlusion.

The AICA syndrome causes a ventral cerebellar infarction. This artery vascularizes the anterior surface of the simple, superior and inferior semilunar lobules and flocculus, as well as the middle cerebellar peduncle and often the lower aspect of the pontine tegmentum. The signs and symptoms include vertigo, nausea, vomiting, and nystagmus caused by involvement of the vestibular nuclei. There may be ipsilateral facial hypalgesia and thermoanesthesia and corneal hypesthesia because of involvement of the trigeminal spinal nucleus and tract. Ipsilateral deafness and facial paralysis occurs because of involvement of the lateral pontomedullary tegmentum. An ipsilateral Horner syndrome is due to compromise of the descending oculosympathetic fibers. Contralateral trunk and extremity hypalgesia, and thermoanesthesia is caused by involvement of the lateral spinothalamic tract. Finally, ipsilateral ataxia and asynergy is caused by involvement of the cerebellar peduncle and cerebellum. Infarcts in the distribution of the AICA may be forerunners of a basilar artery occlusion.

The SCA vascularizes the superior half of the cerebellar hemisphere and vermis, dentate nucleus, and upper aspect of the pontine tegmentum. Infarction in the territory of the SCA produces a dorsal cerebellar syndrome. Vertigo is less common with SCA infarcts than with other cerebellar stroke syndromes. Nystagmus is caused by the involvement of the medial longitudinal fasciculus and the cerebellar pathways. An ipsilateral Horner syndrome is produced by involvement of the descending oculosympathetic tract. Ipsilateral ataxia and asynergy and gait ataxia are caused by the involvement of the superior cerebellar peduncle, brachium pontis, superior cerebellar hemisphere, and dentate nucleus. There is an intention tremor caused by the involvement of the dentate nucleus and superior cerebellar peduncle. Choreiform dyskinesias may be present ipsilaterally. Contralaterally, there is hearing loss caused by lateral lemniscus disruption and transecting and extreme hypalgesia, and thermoanesthesia caused by spinothalamic tract involvement. Patients with SCA territory infarction may also experience ocular contrapulsion (eyes pushed away from side of the lesion).

The midbrain is vascularized by paramedian basilar artery branches, mesencephalic PCA branches, superior cerebellar artery branches, and posterior choroidal artery branches. The midbrain contains the nuclei for the oculomotor (III), trochlear (IV), and portions of trigeminal (V) complex. Weber’s syndrome is caused by infarction in the distribution of the penetrating branches of the PCA affecting the cerebral peduncle, especially medially, with damage to the fascicle of CN III and the pyramidal fibers. The resultant clinical findings are contralateral hemiparesis caused by corticospinal and corticobulbar tract involvement and ipsilateral oculomotor paresis, including a dilated pupil. A slight variation of this syndrome is the midbrain syndrome of Foville in which the supranuclear fibers for horizontal gaze are interrupted in the medial cerebral peduncle, causing a conjugate palsy to the opposite side. Benedikt’s syndrome is caused by a lesion affecting the mesencephalic tegmentum in its ventral portion, with the
involvement of the red nucleus, brachium conjunctivum, and fascicle of CN III. This syndrome is caused by infarction in the distribution of the penetrating branches of the PCA to the midbrain. The clinical manifestations are an ipsilateral third nerve paresis, usually with pupillary dilation, and a contralateral hemiunferor, hemiataxia, or hemichorea. Claude’s syndrome (featuring elements of both Benedikt’s and Nothnagel’s syndromes) is caused by lesions that are more dorsally placed in the midbrain tegmentum than in Benedikt’s syndrome. There is injury to the dorsal red nucleus, which results in more prominent cerebellar signs (asynergia, ataxia, dysmetria, and dysdiadochokinesia) without the involuntary movements. Nothnagel’s syndrome is characterized by an ipsilateral third nerve paresis with contralateral cerebellar ataxia. Nothnagel’s syndrome is caused by a lesion in the area of the superior cerebellar peduncle, in the distribution of the penetrating branches of the PCA to the midbrain, and may represent a variant of the dorsal midbrain syndrome [201]. Parinaud’s (dorsal midbrain syndrome, pretectal syndrome, Sylvian aqueduct syndrome) syndrome can result from infarctions in the midbrain territory of the PCA penetrating branches. This syndrome is characterized by supranuclear paralysis of vertical gaze, defective convergence, spasm/paresis of accommodation, convergence–retraction dysnystagmus, light–near dissociation of the pupils, lid retraction (Collier’s sign), and skew deviation.

Pure motor hemiparesis, four-limb ataxia, and hyposthesia ataxic hemiparesis caused by midbrain lesions are discussed with lacunar syndromes. Other infarctions in the distribution of the penetrating branches of the PCA to the midbrain may be characterized by nuclear oculomotor palsy, unilateral or bilateral internuclear ophthalmoplegia, pseudoabducens palsy, and locked-in syndrome [61]. Parkinsonism and micrographia have rarely been observed in patients with midbrain and thalamomesencephalic strokes [177].

Atherothrombotic disease in the vertebrobasilar system has a predilection for the distal vertebral artery and the lower or middle basilar artery [274]. Atherosclerotic involvement of the intracranial portion of the vertebrobasilar system frequently occurs in tandem with and is the common pathologic mechanism associated with the syndrome of vertebrobasilar infarction. Top of the basilar or rostral basilar artery syndrome [61] is caused by infarction of the midbrain, thalamus, hypothalamus, paramedian diencephalon, medial temporal lobes and occipital lobes [215]. It is caused by occlusive vascular disease, often embolic in nature of the rostral basilar artery. The following signs may occur:

**Behavioral abnormalities** include coma, akinetic mutism, hypersonomolence, memory disturbances, or agitated delirium. Peduncular hallucinosis, reported with focal lesions of the cerebral peduncles or with bilateral involvement of the medial aspect of the substantia nigra pars reticulata and characterized by complex, nonthreatening visual hallucinations, may also be present [114,212].

**Ophthalmologic findings** include unilateral or bilateral paralysis of upward or downward gaze, impaired convergence, pseudoabducens palsy, convergence–retraction nystagmus, abnormalities of ocular abduction, Collier’s sign, skew deviation, and oscillatory eye movements. Visual disorders that may be present include homonymous hemianopia or quadrantanopia, cortical blindness, and Balint’s syndrome characterized by psychic paralysis of gaze, simultanagnosia, and optic ataxia [225]. Alexia without agrapahia may be seen with dominant occipital lesions. Bilateral lesions may produce visual agnosia or prosopagnosia. Pupillary abnormalities include small and reactive pupils, large or midposition and fixed pupils, and occasionally midbrain corectopia characterized by eccentric or oval pupils.

**Motor and sensory deficits** may likewise occur. Although there are many named classic pontine syndromes (e.g., Millard-Gubler, Raymond, Foville’s, Raymond-Cestan, Marie-Foix, and Brissaud), the most useful categorization is based on neuroanatomical divisions (ventral, tegmental, and bilateral) [27]. Pontine infarcts can cause pure motor hemiparesis, sensorimotor stroke, ataxic hemiparesis, dysarthria–clumsy hand syndrome, ataxic tetraparesis, or bilateral cerebellar ataxia [194]. Pontine infaracts may produce combined motor, sensory, cerebellar, and cranial nerve dysfunction. The pons contains the nuclei for the abducens (CN VI), facial (CN VII), vestibulocochlear (CN VIII), and a portion of the nuclei of the trigeminal (CN V) nerve. Locked-in syndrome (“ventral pontine syndrome” or “deafferented state”) is the result of bilateral destruction usually at the level of the basis pontis involving the rostral and middle pontine segments interrupting the descending corticobulbar and corticospinal tracts, causing quadriplegia, aphasis, anarthria, and impairment of the horizontal eye movements. Wakefulness is maintained because of sparing of the ascending reticular formation. The patient can move his or her eyes vertically and can blink because the supranuclear ocular motor pathway lies more dorsally. Pupillary reactivity is spared. Respiratory function remains intact. Most cases are due to thrombotic or embolic occlusion of the perforating paramedian branches of the basilar artery. In some patients, there is a “heralding” hemiparesis that may be misleading, making the lesion seem cortical in nature. However, within a few hours, there is progression to bilateral hemiplegia and cranial nerve findings associated with the locked-in
syndrome [247]. Pathologic laughter (Fou rire pro-
dromique) may herald the development of a brain-
stem stroke as a result of basilar artery occlusion
[119]. Pure motor hemiparesis and ataxic hemipares-
sis caused by pontine lesions are discussed with lac-
unar syndromes.

Occlusion of the AICA can lead to the lateral
inferior pontine syndrome. Findings associated with
this syndrome include ipsilateral facial paralysis,
impaired facial sensation, paralysis of conjugate gaze
to the side of the lesion, deafness, tinnitus, and ataxia.
Contralateral to the lesion, there is hemibody impair-
ment to pain and temperature, which in some
instances includes the face. There may be horizontal
and vertical nystagmus and oscillopsia. Bilateral sud-
den deafness may be the heralding manifestation of
an anterior inferior cerebellar artery infarction [195].

The medial inferior pontine syndrome is caused by
occlusion of a paramedian branch of the basilar
artery. With this syndrome, there is ipsilateral paraly-
sis of conjugate gaze to the side of the lesion,
abducens nerve palsy, nystagmus, and ataxia. Con-
tralateral to the lesion, there is hemibody impairment
of tactile and proprioceptive sensation and paralysis of
the face, arm, and leg. An occlusion of the AICA may
lead to the total unilateral inferior pontine syndrome,
a combination of the symptoms and signs seen with
the lateral and mediod pontine syndromes.

The lateral pontomedullary syndrome can occur with
the occlusion of the vertebral artery.

The manifestations are a combination of the
medial and lateral inferior pontine syndromes.
Occlusion of the paramedian branches of the mid-
basilar artery can lead to ipsilateral impaired sensory
and motor function of the trigeminal nerve with limb
ataxia, characteristics of the lateral midpontine syn-
drome. Ischemia of the median pontine region is
caused by occlusion of the paramedian branch of the
midbasilar artery and can lead to ipsilateral limb
ataxia. Contralateral to the lesion, eye deviation and
paralysis of the face, arm, and leg occur. Although
there are predominant motor symptoms, which pre-
dominate in the upper extremity because of the
somatotopic organization of the corticospinal tract in
the basis pontis, variable impaired touch and propri-
ception may also occur. Paramedian pontine base
lesions may also result in dysarthria. The lateral su-
perior pontine syndrome may occur with the occlusion
of the superior cerebellar artery and produces a char-
acteristic ipsilateral Horner syndrome, horizontal
nystagmus, paresis of conjugate gaze, occasional
deaftness, and severe gait and limb ataxia. Contralat-
eral to the lesion, there is hemibody impaired sensa-
tion to pain and temperature, skew deviation, and
impaired tactile, vibratory, and proprioceptive sensa-
tion in the leg greater than in the arm.

Pontine infarctions may also produce transient
pathologic crying and laughter [177], horizontal gaze
abnormalities including abducens nerve palsy, INO,
horizontal gaze palsy, a one-and-a-half syndrome
[155], transient upbeat nystagmus [196], hemi-
see-saw nystagmus [72], loss of vertical saccades and pursuit
with horizontal gaze palsy [193], numbness and
hypesthesia of the midline facial region [207], trigem-
inal sensory neuropathy and neuralgia [142,156,182],
isolated volitional type of facial palsy [305,311], ipsi-
lateral facial spasm and contralateral hemiparesis
[325], hemimasticatory spasm [122], body lateropul-
sion [333], anosognosia for hemiplegia [18], and uni-
lateral hyperhidrosis [248]. The medulla oblongata
contains the nuclei for the glossopharyngeal (CN IX),
vagus (CN X), and hypoglossal (CN XII), as well as
portions of the trigeminal (CN V) nuclei, vestibulo-
ocochlear (CN VIII), and spinal accessory (CN XI)
nerves. The lateral medullary syndrome (Wallenberg
syndrome) is most often caused by atherosclerotic
occlusion or dissection of the intracranial segment of
the vertebral artery. Less commonly, it is caused by
occlusion of PICA, small vessel infarction or cardiac
embolism [166]. Dissections were more frequent with
caudally placed medullary lesions. Depending on the
extent of the medullary damage, clinical findings vary
considerably [80]. Wallenberg syndrome consists of a
constellation of signs and symptoms including ipsi-
lateral limb and gait ataxia with a tendency to fall to
the ipsilateral side (body lateropulsion) due to involve-
ment of the restiform body and inferior surface of the
cerebellar hemisphere. There is ipsilateral facial
hypalgesia and thermoanesthesia because of involve-
ment of the descending tract and nucleus of the
trigeminal nerve. There is paresis of the pharyngeal
muscles with palatal weakness, decreased gag reflex,
dysphagia, and dysphonia due to ipsilateral vocal cord
paresis caused by the involvement of the nucleus
ambiguus. An ipsilateral Horner syndrome is present
because of compromise of the descending oculosym-
 pathetic pathways. Contralateral trunk and extremity
hypalgesia and thermoanesthesia occurs caused by involve-
ment of the spinohalamic tract. These patients experience vertigo and often an illusionary
tilting of the environment by 90 to 180 degrees. Nys-
tagmus and a host of oculomotor symptoms may be
caused by compromise of the ipsilateral vestibular
nuclei or functional compromise of the fastigial
nucleus. Patients may demonstrate a horizontal rota-
tory jerk nystagmus, beating away from the side of the
lesion; the nystagmus either stops or reverses with eye
closure [95]. There may be gaze-evoked nystagmus,
seesaw nystagmus, impaired contralateral pursuit eye
movements, saccadic lateropulsion, oculor lateropul-
sion [131,180,184,287], skew deviation, and ipsi-
lateral horizontal gaze deviation.

Vascular Syndromes of the Forebrain, Brainstem, and Cerebellum

579
The classic sensory signs of Wallenberg syndrome, due to involvement of the crossed lateral spinothalamic tract and the ipsilateral descending tract and nucleus of the trigeminal nerve, include the loss of pain and heat sensation in the ipsilateral face and contralateral hemibody and extremities. However, numerous variants of this classic sensory pattern have been recognized, including contralateral or bilateral facial sensory changes due to the involvement of the ascending as well as the descending trigeminal fibers, partial involvement of the face, changes in the sensory level of the trunk, sensory changes in the ipsilateral extremities, and hemisensory loss of the contralateral whole hemibody [82,154,173,179,210,317].

As a rare occurrence, some patients with Wallenberg syndrome display ipsilateral facial palsy presumably due to the involvement of an aberrant corticobulbar tract, or extension of the infarct to the pons with compromise of the facial nerve nucleus or fascicles; emotional-facial paresis related to involvement of looping medullary corticofacial projections in the upper medulla [66]; ipsilateral hemiplegia (Opalski syndrome) due to submedullary extension; ipsilateral wild arm ataxia probably related to involvement of the lateral cuneate nucleus [81]; clumsiness of the ipsilateral upper limb resulting from extension of the lesion into the subolivary area [56]; central pain combining thermal hypesthesia with thermal and touch allodynia [253]; isolated contralateral thermoanesthesia of the trunk and limbs from involvement of the dorsal portion of the lateral spinothalamic tract [10]; and loss of taste resulting from involvement of the nucleus and tractus solitarius. Contralateral hyperhidrosis and ipsilateral anhidrosis can also be observed in the late phase of patients with the Wallenberg syndrome and is likely due to a lesion of the sympathetic pathway [265]. Hiccough has been attributed to involvement of the respiratory centers in the medullary reticular formation.

The medullary medullary syndrome (Dejerine's syndrome) is less common and may be caused by distal atherosclerotic vertebral artery occlusive disease [173,318]. Vertebral artery dissection, dolichoectasia of the vertebrobasilar system, or embolism are less common causes of the medullary medullary infarction. The findings associated with this syndrome include an ipsilateral lower motor neuron paralysis of the tongue and contralateral paralysis of the arm and leg. The face is often spared. An ipsilateral lingual palsy is seen in only half of the cases. In rare instances, upbeat nystagmus may be present [173]. A crossed motor hemiparesis (hemiplegia cruciata) is an extremely rare occurrence [39]. In addition, there is contralateral loss of tactile, vibratory, and position sense. These signs are attributed to the involvement of the pyramidal tract rostral to their decussation, the fibers and nucleus of the hypoglossal nerve, and the medul lamellaris [26,306]. As a rare occurrence, some patients with medullary infarcts display triaparesis probably due to a presumptive rostral decussation of lower extremity fibers [110] or isolated acute bilateral tongue paralysis due to exclusive and simultaneous involvement of the hypoglossal nerves at the medullary tegmentum [30]. The occlusion of the vertebral artery can lead to a total unilateral hemimedullary (Babinski-Nageotte) syndrome, which is a combination of the medial and lateral medullary syndrome. Bilateral medial medullary and bilateral lateral medullary syndromes are extremely rare. Because of the separate arterial topography supplying the medulla, the simultaneous occurrence of ischemic lesions involving the lateral and medial parts of the medulla is extremely rare [112,229].

THE POSTERIOR CEREBRAL ARTERY SYNDROME

In the majority of people, the two PCAs are the terminal branches of the basilar artery, but in 20%–25%, one of the PCAs may originate from the ICA via a posterior communicating artery. The clinical picture of PCA territory infarction varies according to the site of occlusion and the availability of collaterals. Occlusion of the precommunicating PI segment causes midbrain, thalamic, and hemispheric infarction. Occlusion of the PCA in the proximal ambient segment before branching in the thalamogeniculate pedicle causes lateral thalamic and hemispheric symptoms. Occlusions may also affect a single PCA branch, primarily the calcarine artery, or cause a large hemispheric infarction of the PCA territory. Whether embolic, thrombotic, migrainous, or due to intrinsic atherosclerotic disease, partial syndromes of the PCA are the rule [192]. Another cause of PCA infarcts is compression of the artery against the tentorium during uncal herniation [265]. Infarction in the distribution of the hemispheric branches of the PCA may produce contralateral homonymous hemianopia caused by infarction of the striate cortex, the optic radiations, or the lateral geniculate body. There is partial or complete macular sparing if the infarction does not reach the occipital pole. The visual field defect may be limited to a quadrantanopia. A superior quadrantanopia is caused by infarction of the striate cortex inferior to the calcarine fissure or the inferior optic radiations in the temporo-occipital lobes. An inferior quadrantanopia is the result of an infarction of the striate cortex superior to the calcarine fissure or the superior optic radiations in the parieto-occipital lobes.

More complex visual changes may occur, including formed or unformed visual hallucinations,
visual and color agnosias, or prosopagnosia. Finally, some alteration of sensation with PCA hemispheral infarctions occurs, including paresthesiae, or altered position, pain, and temperature sensations. Sensory findings may indicate thalamic ischemia due to occlusion of the precommunal or proximal postcommunal segments of the PCA, thalamoparietal ischemia due to occlusion of the more distal PCA or its parieto-occipital branches, or brainstem ischemia caused by vascular occlusive disease in the proximal verte-brobasilar arterial system [115]. Infarction in the distribution of the callosal branches of the PCA involving the left occipital region and the splenium of the corpus callosum produces alexia without agraphia (pure word blindness), occasionally associated with color anoma and object and photographic anoma [51]. In this syndrome, patients can write, speak, and spell normally but are unable to read words and sentences. The ability to name letters and numbers may be intact, but there can be inability to name colors, objects, and photographs. Right hemispheric PCA infarctions may cause contralateral visual field neglect. Amnesia may present with PCA infarctions that involve the left medial temporal lobe or when there are bilateral mesiotemporal infarctions [61,106,214,250,251]. In addition, an agitated delirium may occur with unilateral or bilateral penetrating mesiotemporal infarctions [89]. Large infarctions of the left posterior temporal artery territory may produce an anomic or transcortical sensory aphasia. Infarctions in the distribution of the penetrating branches of the PCA to the thalamus can cause aphasia if the left pulvinar is involved, akinetic mutism, global amnesia, and the Dejerine-Roussy syndrome.

Oclusion of the calcarine artery may be associated with pain in the ipsilateral eye [266]. Bilateral infarctions in the distribution of the PCA may cause bilateral homonymous hemianopia. Bilateral occipital or occipitoparietal infarctions may result in cortical blindness with preserved pupillary reflexes. Patients often deny or are unaware of their blindness (Anton’s syndrome). Bilateral altitudinal visual field defects seldom result from bilateral occipital lobe infarcts [202]. Infarction in the territory of the hemispheric branches of the PCA may also be accompanied by formed or unformed visual hallucinations (“release hallucinations”) [59], visual and color agnosias, or prosopagnosia (agnosia for familiar faces). Apraxia of ocular movements is often present with bilateral lesions. Some patients with bilateral occipital or parieto-occipital infarctions have a Balint syndrome. Proximal PCA occlusion may simulate MCA occlusion when it causes hemiparesis, hemianopsia, hemispatial neglect, aphasia, and sensory loss or inattention [68]. “Cortical” signs are probably explained by thalamic involvement.

**SYNDROMES OF THALAMIC INFARCTION**

The thalamus is the largest subdivision of the diencephalon. The main thalamic blood supply originates from the posterior communicating arteries and the perimesencephalic segment of the PCA. Thalamic infarctions typically involve one of the four major vascular regions (Fig. 22.4): posterolateral, anterior, paramedian, and dorsal [51,275,281]. Posterolateral thalamic infarctions result from occlusion of the thalamogeniculate branches arising from the P2 segment of the PCA. Three common clinical syndromes may occur: pure sensory stroke, sensorimotor stroke, and the thalamic syndrome of Dejerine-Roussy. In the latter syndrome, the patient has contralateral sensory loss to all modalities, with occasional sparing of the face because of the more medial location of the nucleus ventralis posteromedialis, severe dysesthetics of the involved side (thalamic pain), vasomotor disturbances, transient contralateral hemiparesis, and mild choreoathetoid or ballistic movements. The pain or involuntary movements may present weeks or months after the stroke. Anterior thalamic infarction results form occlusion of the polar or tuberothalamic artery. The main clinical manifestations consist of fluctuating levels of consciousness, abulia, apathy, disinhibition, lack of insight and personality changes, contralateral emotional-facial paresis, occasional hemiparesis, and visual field deficits. Left-sided infarcts are associated with language deficits (thalamic aphasia, dysprosody, dysarthria); selective impairment in semantic memory may be seen [279], whereas hemineglect, alien hand syndrome, and visual spatial deficits [205,242] may be seen primarily in patients with right-sided lesions. Paramedian thalamic infarctions result from occlusion of the paramedian or thalamic and subthalamic arteries (thalamoperforating pedicle). Main clinical manifestations include somnolence or transient loss of consciousness, memory loss or mood disturbances, and vertical gaze abnormalities. Paramedian thalamic infarcts may also produce abnormal sleep and body core temperature abnormalities [224] and bilateral eyelid tremor on voluntary eyelid closure [152]. Paramedian thalamic infarcts may be unilateral or bilateral, and often result from an embolic occlusion of the basilar apex, causing a disconnection between the thalamus and the frontal lobes. Bilateral paramedian thalamic infarcts are rare; a venous etiology is seldom responsible. These infarcts may result in hypersonolence, marked memory impairment with perseveration and confabulation, akinetic mutism, acute dementia [245], lexical semantic deficits [90], and hypersexuality [231]. A rare variant, named the artery of Percheron, is a solitary trunk arising from one of the proximal segments of the PCA, and supplies the paramedian thalami.
and rostral midbrain bilaterally. Occlusion of this artery results in bilateral medial thalamic infarcts [185, 208, 249].

Dorsal thalamic infarctions result from occlusion of the posterior choroidal arteries. These infarctions are characterized by the presence of homonymous quadrantanopia or homonymous horizontal sectoranopias. There may also be an asymmetric optokinetic response and hemibody (face and arm) hynesthesia. Involvement of the pulvinar may account for thalamic aphasia.

Movement disorders after thalamic infarcts are rare and include myoclonic dystonia, asterixis, postural, action, and task-specific tremors [116, 151, 162, 163, 198, 243]. Hemiataxia and hemiataxia-hynesthesia has also been associated with strokes involving perforating branches of the lateral thalamus [216].
BORDER ZONE ISCHEMIA

During or after cardiac surgery or after an episode of severe hypotension, ischemia may occur in the border zone or watershed areas between the major circulations. Border zone ischemia is often explained by the combination of two frequently interrelated processes: hypoperfusion and embolization [29]. Border zone ischemia may result in several characteristic syndromes [136]:

1. Ischemia in the border zone territory of all three major arterial systems (anterior, middle, and posterior cerebral arteries) may result in bilateral parieto-occipital lesions. Patients develop bilateral lower altitudinal visual field defects; difficulty in judging size, distance, and movement; and disorders of smooth ocular pursuit. Optic ataxia or cortical blindness may also occur.

2. Ischemia between the anterior and middle cerebral arteries (bilateral) may result in bifrontal cortical sensorimotor impairment, initially affecting whole limbs but later confined to the hands and forearms. Also, there may be a disturbance of volitional saccadic eye movements due to frontal eye field involvement.

3. Ischemia of the border zone territory between the middle and PCA may result in bilateral parieto-temporal lesions. Initially, there is cortical blindness that rapidly improves but leaves a marked dyslexia, dyscalculia, dysgraphia, and memory defect for verbal and nonverbal material.

Unilateral watershed infarcts may occur during episodes of systemic hypotension when there is pre-existing ipsilateral vascular disease causing focal hypoperfusion in the most distal territory [50]. Syncope at onset and focal limb shaking are frequent and suggest acutely lowered cerebral perfusion. Most patients have ICA occlusion or tight stenosis with a hemodynamically significant cardiopathy, increased hematocrit, or acute hypotension. Embolic infarction is uncommon. In a review of 51 patients with symptomatic unilateral watershed infarcts [50], three types were noted:

1. Watershed infarcts in the border zone between the superficial territories of the middle and anterior cerebral arteries (anterior watershed infarct) were seen in 22 patients. Typically, anterior infarcts mainly caused cortical hemiparesis (leg greater than arm) sparing the face, associated in one-half of patients with impaired sensation of the same topography, usually of “noncortical” type (elementary modes of sensation). Dominant-hemisphere lesions often caused transcortical motor aphasia preceded by mutism for 1 hour to 1 week; less frequently, isolated word-finding difficulty was noted. With nondominant-hemisphere lesions, mood disturbances (apathy or euphoria) were common.

2. Watershed infarcts in the border zone between the superficial territories of the middle and the PCA (posterior watershed infarcts) were noted in 20 patients. In posterior infarcts, hemianopsia was the most common abnormality, always noncongruent, and usually with macular sparing and predominantly in the lower quadrant. “Cortical” hemihypesthesia (two-point discrimination, stereognosis) was also common, but limb weakness was rare. With dominant-hemisphere lesions, language disturbances were common, with isolated word-finding difficulty (anomia), transcortical sensory aphasia, and, rarely, Wernicke’s aphasia. Speech disorders were never preceded by mutism, and approximately one-half of the patients showed marked depression. With nondominant-hemisphere lesions, contralateral hemispatial neglect and anosognosia were common.

3. Watershed infarcts in the border zone between the superficial and deep territories of the MCA (subcortical watershed infarcts) occurred in nine patients. Hemiparesis was common, and approximately one-half of the patients had hemisensory (usually “noncortical”) defects. Language disorders (Broca’s aphasia, global aphasia, transcortical motor aphasia) were common with dominant hemisphere lesions, and nondominant lesions often had hemineglect.

Infarctions at the boundary between the ACA, MCA, and posterior cerebral artery, ipsilateral to a severe stenosis or occlusion of the ICA, resulting in reduced blood flow to the white matter of the angular gyrus of the inferior parietal lobe, may cause an evolving nonpyramidal motor deficit of the hand [300].

Other watershed areas are those between the PICA, the AICA, and the SCA.

Lacunar Infarcts

Ischemic strokes may result from (a) large artery atherosclerotic disease resulting in stenosis or occlusion, (b) small vessel or penetrating artery disease (lacunes), (c) cardioaortic embolism, (d) nonatherosclerotic vasculopathies, (e) hypercoagulable disorders, and (f) infarcts of undetermined cause. Lacuna refers to small necrotic/cystic lesions of the brain or brainstem associated with arterial hypertension. As such, lacuna is a pathologic term. A lacunar syndrome is the clinical picture due to lacuna or lacune. However, lacunar syndromes may be associated with nonlacunar mechanisms of infarction, and
may even be mimicked by subcortical and brainstem hemorrhages.

Lacunes are small ischemic infarcts in the deep regions of the brain or brainstem that range in diameter from 0.5 to 15 mm resulting from occlusion of a single perforating vessel (e.g., AChA, MCA, posterior cerebral artery, or basilar artery). Lacunes usually occur in patients with lipohyalinosis of penetrating arteries or branches related to long-standing arterial hypertension [104,219,222]. Longstanding hypertension induces hypertrophy of the media and deposition of fibrinoid material into the vessel wall, eventually leading to vessel occlusion. Diabetes mellitus is also a well-known risk factor for lacunar infarction. Extracranial arterial and cardiac sources of embolism are found less frequently. The most frequent sites of lacunes are the putamen, basis pontis, thalamus, posterior limb of the internal capsule, and caudate nucleus, in that order. Lacunes may also occur in the anterior limb of the internal capsule, subcortical cerebral white matter, cerebellar white matter, and corpus callosum. Most lacunes are asymptomatic, and although they generally carry a relatively favorable prognosis, multiple lacunes may lead to pseudobulbar palsy or cognitive deficits. In general, most patients with lacunar infarcts have a good functional recovery, with a lower recurrence rate than other ischemic stroke subtypes. Shortly before onset of a lacunar stroke, TIsAs may occur. Associated headaches are rare.

Lacunar infarcts represent an important ischemic stroke subgroup; it has been estimated that they may account for up to 25% of strokes [24,238,252]. At least 20 lacunar syndromes have been described [71]. However, it is important to recognize the lacunar infarcts can have atypical presentations [13]. The five best recognized clinical syndromes related to lacunar strokes can be described as follows:

1. **Pure motor hemiparesis or pure motor stroke** is often due to an internal capsule, corona radiata, or basis pontis lacune and is characterized by a unilateral motor deficit (hemiparesis or hemiplegia) involving the face, arm, and, to a lesser extent, the leg, accompanied by mild dysarthria, particularly at the onset of stroke [235]. Patients may have a series of preceding TIsAs (capsular warning syndrome). There should be no aphasia, apraxia, or agnosia, and there are no sensory, visual, or higher cortical disturbances. Clinical findings usually do not distinguish between capsular or pontine pure motor hemiparesis, but the combination of dysarthria and a history of previous transient gait abnormality or vertigo favor a pontine location [235]. Pure motor stroke is the most common of the classic lacunar syndromes, and caused by lacunar infarct in 85% of patients [14]. Ischemic cortical lesions may also cause pure motor hemiparesis [154]. A pure motor monoparesis is seldom caused by a lacunar infarct.

2. **Pure sensory stroke**, also known as pure paresthetic stroke or pure hemisensory stroke, is often due to a lacune involving the ventro-olateral nucleus of the thalamus. It is characterized by numbness, paresthesias, and a unilateral hemisensory deficit involving the face, arm, trunk, and leg. Subjective symptoms often predominate over objective findings in this syndrome. Sensory symptoms due to stroke often produce distal manifestations in the form of chiro-oral, cheiro-oral-pedal syndromes [105,167,175]. Only rarely are the sensory manifestations restricted to proximal body segments [168,169,172]. Small ischemic strokes in the internal capsule/corona radiata, subthalamicus, midbrain, or the parietal cortex may also cause a pure sensory stroke [154,282], as may pontine lacunes localized to the medial lemniscus [283] or paramedian dorsal pons. Differentiation of a pontine pure sensory syndrome from a thalamic pure sensory syndrome may be difficult. Brainstem (pontine or midbrain) pure sensory strokes often show a discrepancy between superficial and deep sensations. In pontine pure sensory stroke, vibration and position sense (medial lemniscal modalities) are often reduced on the paresthetic side, whereas sensation to pinprick and temperature (spinothalamic modalities) is preserved. Conversely, in cases of pure sensory stroke involving the thalamus, internal capsule, or corona radiata, both spinothalamic and medial lemniscal modalities are compromised [282,283]. Likewise, ipsilateral impairment of smooth pursuit and vestibulo-ocular reflex may indicate a pontine lesion in patients with hemisensory stroke [148]. A pure sensory deficit affecting pain and temperature sensation only has been described because of a small hemorrhage in the dorsolateral midbrain that was limited to the dorsal spinothalamic tract [5,21].

In a report of 21 patients with pure sensory stroke, 11 patients had thalamic strokes (pansensory or restricted sensory loss), 7 patients had lacunes or hemorrhages in the lenticulocapsular region or corona radiata (abnormalities of spinothalamic tract sensation), 2 patients had pontine tegmental strokes (selective sensory loss of the medial lemniscal type), and 1 had a small cortical infarct (cortical sensory loss) [167]. Hemisensory deficits of all modalities were usually associated with a relatively large lacune or hemorrhage in the lateral thalamus, whereas tract-specific or restricted
sensory changes suggested very small strokes in the sensory pathway from the pons to the parietal cortex [167].

3. Ataxic hemiparesis is often due to a lacune affecting either the contralateral posterior limb of the internal capsule or the contralateral basis pontis [120,154,302]. However, after extensive investigations, a diagnosis of lacunar infarct due to hypertensive small artery disease has been found in only slightly more than half of the cases of ataxic hemiparesis [230]. Ataxic hemiparesis is characterized by mild to moderate hemiparesis, predominantly in the lower extremity, and an ipsilateral cerebellar type of incoordination of the arm and leg out of proportion to the weakness. There is usually an extensor plantar response and no dysarthria. Facial involvement is rare. Cortical signs or visual field deficits are absent. This syndrome has also been described with contralateral thalamocapsular lesions, lesions of the contralateral red nucleus, lesions of the corona radiata, lentiform nucleus, with superior cerebellar artery territory infarcts, and with superficial ACA territory infarcts in the paracentral area.

A patient with weakness of the right leg and homolateral ataxia of the arm, caused by a subcortical infarct in the area supplied by the ACA in the left paracentral region, showed decreased blood flow in the left lateral frontal cortex and in the right cerebellar hemisphere (crossed cerebralcerebellar diaschisis) [117]. The homolateral ataxia of the arm was thought to be caused by decreased function of the right cerebellar hemisphere because of a lesion of the corticopontine-cerebellar tracts, whereas cranial hemiparesis was thought to be due to a lesion of the upper part of the corona radiata.

Numerous reports have expanded the spectrum of clinical syndromes and signs associated with ataxic hemiparesis. The following are included: hemiataxia-hypesthesia syndrome, painful ataxic hemiparesis, hyposthesic ataxic hemiparesis, ataxic hemiparesis accompanied by contralateral sensorimotor or motor trigeminal weakness, dysarthria-hemiataxia, and quadrafacial hemiparesis [7,120,155,216,230,267].

4. Dysarthria—clumsy hand syndrome is often due to a lacune involving the depth of the basis pontis between its upper third and lower two-thirds and is characterized by supranuclear facial weakness, deviation of the protruded tongue, dysarthria, dysphagia, loss of fine motor control of the hand, and an extensor plantar response. Lacunar infarcts in the anterior limb or genu of the internal capsule, coronal radiata, basal ganglia, thalamus, and cerebral peduncle may also cause this syndrome [11,154]. Lacunar infarctions or small hemorrhages involving the putamen and genu of the internal capsule may cause the dysarthria—clumsy hand syndrome associated with micrographia [236]. Dysarthria is also a major sign in other lacunar syndromes such as dysarthria—pure motor hemiparesis, pure dysarthria, dysarthria—facial paresis, and dysarthria—facial—lingual paresis (capsular genu syndrome) [310,311].

5. Sensorimotor stroke is often due to a lacune typically involving the postero-ventral thalamus and adjacent posterior limb of the internal capsule. Lacunar infarcts in the lateral pons have also been associated with this syndrome. Sensorimotor stroke due to a lacunar infarct causes hemibody (face, arm, and leg) sensorimotor involvement. Involvement of the face and arm, but not the leg, suggests a non-lacunar mechanism [41].

Cerebral Hemorrhage Syndromes

Intracerebral hemorrhage (ICH) is a common cause of disability and death. It is one of the most deadly stroke subtypes accounting for approximately 10% to 15% of all strokes, with an estimated 30-day mortality ranging from 30% to 52% [1, 321]. There are a number of causes of ICH (Table 22.3) [38]. Besides trauma, ICH may be a complication of longstanding arterial hypertension, intracranial aneurysms, intracranial vascular malformations, bleeding diatheses, cerebral amyloid angiopathy, primary or metastatic brain tumors, vasculitis, anticoagulant therapy, antiplatelet therapy, thrombolytic therapy, or use of illicit drugs. Brain hemorrhages associated with cerebral venous occlusive disease, infectious disorders, or following surgical procedures, reversible cerebral vasoconstriction syndromes [270], or autonomic dysreflexia are less frequent, but well recognized [97,263]. Approximately 80% of all hypertensive ICHs are supratentorial, and 20% are infratentorial, and more commonly involve the arterial territories of the lenticulostriate, thalamoperforators, superior cerebellar, and paramedian branches of the basilar artery [113,211].

Intracerebral hematomas associated with intracranial aneurysms most often result from ruptured MCA, anterior communicating, or ICA aneurysms. MCA aneurysms often cause anterior temporal lobe or insular hematomas. Hematomas originating from aneurysms of the anterior communicating artery complex or more distal branches of the ACA involve the septum and inferior frontal lobes. Distal ACA aneurysms cause hematomas of the anterior superior aspect of the corpus callosum. Hematomas arising
from ruptured ICA bifurcation aneurysms involve the anterior temporal lobes or temporal horns. Ruptured intracranial aneurysms may also be the source of intraventricular and subdural hemorrhages.

**General Features of the Clinical Syndrome**

Clinical features of an ICH may resemble those of an ischemic stroke. Severe hypertension, underlying bleeding diathesis, or severe headaches and vomiting, favor a presumptive clinical diagnosis of ICH. The clinical course of an ICH is usually characterized by nonfluctuating or gradual deterioration over minutes to hours. Hematoma growth is commonly observed during the first hours of symptom onset and correlates with poor outcomes [57]. The presence of a “spot sign” within the brain hematoma on computerized tomography angiography (CTA) or contrast extravasation on head CT following CTA are sensitive predictors of hematoma growth [124,319].

Observed neurologic manifestations vary with location, size, direction of spread, and rate of development of ICH [103]. Depending on location and size, half of the patients present with headaches, nausea, and vomiting. There may be a variable level
of alertness. Seizures are common with lobar hemorrhages. Meningeal irritation may be seen when bleeding extends into the subarachnoid space. Ophthalmoscopy may show retinal hemorrhages.

The most common sites involved by spontaneous ICH are the putamen, the lobar subcortical white matter, the thalamus, the cerebellum, the pons, the caudate nucleus, and the ventricles.

**Specific Signs by Location**

**PUTAMINAL HEMORRHAGE**

Approximately one-third of all hemorrhages involve the putamen. Hemorrhages may remain localized to the putamen or enlarge to involve adjacent structures such as the internal capsule, corona radiata, centrum semiovale, external capsule, claustrum, temporal lobe, or may rupture into the ventricular system [289]. Most putaminal hemorrhages remain localized to the lenticular nucleus or propagate towards the insula. Typically, patients present with contralateral hemiparesis or hemiplegia and conjugate gaze preference to the side of the hematoma [132]. The pupils are usually spared. There may be contralateral hemisensory loss. Left putaminal hemorrhages may cause aphasia. Right putaminal hemorrhages cause apraactagnosia, left visual field neglect, and constructional apraxia. Patients with right putaminal hemorrhage may also demonstrate alloesthesia, whereby a noxious stimulus on the side of the hemisensory disturbance is perceived (after a half-second delay) at the corresponding area of the other (normal) side [159]. Alloesthesia is frequently noted in the trunk and proximal limbs and seldom in the face or distal limbs. Impaired level of consciousness at presentation, hydrocephalus, intraventricular extension, and large hematoma volume are often predictors of poor functional outcome or death [92,308,309].

Chung et al, in a study of 215 patients, classified putaminal/striatocapsular hemorrhages into five regional types and one massive type [75]. The striatocapsular region encompassed the lenticular nucleus, caudate nucleus, internal capsule, external capsule, and subinsular area.

1. **Anterior type (11%).** These small hematomas occurred in the territory of the artery of Heubner and involved the head and body of the caudate nucleus. Rupture into the anterior horn of the lateral ventricle was a frequent finding. Major clinical symptoms and signs were severe headache and meningismus, transient mild hemiparesis, and behavioral abnormalities including confusion, aphasia, and perseveration. Outcome was usually very favorable.

2. **Middle type (7%).** These moderate size hematomas occurred in the territory of the medial lenticulostriate arteries and involved the globus pallidus and middle portions of the medial putamen. Ventricular rupture was uncommon. Major clinical signs were transient conjugate gaze paresis towards the site of the hematoma and contralateral hemibody sensorimotor deficits. The clinical course was favorable in half of the patients who returned to normal activities.

3. **Posteromedial type (4%).** These very small hematomas occurred in the territory of the AChA and involved the anterior half of the posterior limb of the internal capsule. Major clinical signs were dysarthria and contralateral motor/sensory deficits. The outcome was excellent.

4. **Posterolateral type (33%).** These moderate to large size hematomas occurred in the territory of the posteromedial branches of the lateral lenticulostriate arteries, and involved the posterior half of the putamen and posterior limb of the internal capsule. Major clinical features included impaired consciousness, contralateral hemiparesis or hemisensory deficits, language dysfunction, neglect or anosognosia. Clinical course was fair to poor in 75% of cases, and excellent in the remaining 25%.

5. **Lateral type (21%).** These often large elliptically shaped hematomas in the territory of the lateral branches of the lateral lenticulostriate arteries involve the region between the external capsule and the insular cortex. Major clinical features were variable levels of alertness and conjugate gaze paresis in the acute phase. Other clinical signs included hemiparesis, language dysfunction, or anosognosia. Prognosis was in general excellent except in cases of large hematomas.

6. **Massive (24%).** These very large hematomas occupied the entire striatocapsular area; the caudate nucleus and anterior limb of the internal capsule were occasionally spared. This type of hematoma was commonly associated with ventricular rupture and hydrocephalus. Patients were often unconscious, with evidence of ocular motility including “wrong-way eye deviation,” and signs indicative of subfalcine or tentorial herniation. Case fatality was 81%.

**LOBAR HEMORRHAGE**

Lobar ICH accounts for 7% to 32% of nontraumatic intracranial bleeding [289]. Lobar hemorrhages originate from the gray-white matter junction, extend into the adjacent white matter, and mainly involve one lobe. Lobar hemorrhages result from a variety of causes, including cerebral arteriovenous malformations, intracranial aneurysms, bleeding diathesis, coagulopathies, primary or metastatic brain tumors, cortical or dural venous sinus thrombosis, cerebral...
nerve palsy). The eyes may become tonically deviated impaired abduction of one or both eyes (pseudo-sixth light-near dissociation, and disconjugate gaze with convergence-retraction nystagmoid movements, pupillary extension accounts for restriction of vertical gaze, conscious and hypersomnolence. Inferomedial system may account for decreased level of consciousness and anosognosia. Dominant paretal lobe hematomas may cause a Gerstmann syndrome.

Dominant temporal lobe hemorrhages [264] cause Wernicke’s aphasia. Hematomas affecting the left temporoparietal area produce conduction or global aphasia. Temporal lobe hemorrhages may also cause headaches around or anterior to the ipsilateral ear, contralateral superior quadrantanopia or homonymous hemianopia, and, occasionally, agitated delirium.

Patients with occipital lobe hemorrhages [264] have sudden ipsilateral orbital pain and contralateral homonymous hemianopsia.

Focal seizures with secondary generalization may occur during the acute phase of a lobar hematoma. Large lobar hematomas may also produce hydrocephalus [246,316].

THALAMIC HEMORRHAGE
Hemorrhages within the thalamus are usually hypertensive but may be due to underlying structural lesions [187]. Thalamic hemorrhages may be confined to the thalamus or extend laterally to involve the internal capsule, inferomedially to compromise the subthalamus and midbrain, or medially to involve the third ventricle. Ventricular extension is often compatible with good clinical outcomes [190,335].

Clinical features of thalamic hemorrhages vary according to the intrathalamic location of the bleed and the bleeding source [74]. The classic picture of thalamic hemorrhage [103] is characterized by contralateral paresis and oculomotor abnormalities including impaired vertical gaze. Hemiparesis occurs with involvement of the internal capsule. Left thalamic hemorrhages may cause transient aphasia, whereas right thalamic hematomas may result in visuoperceptual abnormalities, anosognosia, and arm levitation [306]. Compromise of the ascending reticular activating system may account for decreased level of consciousness and hypersonolience. Inferomedial extension accounts for restriction of vertical gaze, convergence-retraction nystagmoid movements, pupillary light-near dissociation, and disconjugate gaze with impaired abduction of one or both eyes (pseudo-sixth nerve palsy). The eyes may become tonically deviated downward and slightly abducted. They may be tonically deviated away from the thalamic hematoma (“wrong-way eyes”), or there may be a conjugate gaze deviation, as seen in putaminal hemorrhages. The initial neurologic syndrome does not reliably discriminate thalamic hemorrhages from thalamic infarcts [291].

Detailed clinical findings are exemplified by a study that described 50 patients with thalamic hemorrhages [325]. Seven patients had small bleeds (<8 mm) and presented with transient hemiparesis and numbness or headache with papilledema. All these patients recovered. Twenty-four patients had larger hemorrhages (9–30 mm) but no ventricular blood and presented with hemiparesis. Nineteen patients had large bleeds (>30 mm) with intraventricular hemorrhage, impaired consciousness, hemiparesis, headache, pupillary abnormalities (smaller pupil ipsilateral to bleed), and vertical gaze impairment. All the patients with large hemorrhages died.

Others [157] have classified small thalamic hemorrhages (<2 cm) into four types according to localization:

1. Anterolateral type. These patients had mild “prefrontal” signs (e.g., impaired verbal memory and inattention) and mild sensory and motor impairment.

2. Posterolateral type. These patients had severe motor and sensory disability and ocular abnormalities (miosis, loss of light reflex, upward gaze palsy). They had the poorest prognosis of patients with small thalamic hemorrhages, with persistent hemiparesis or sensory loss in most.

3. Medial type. These patients had disturbed consciousness in the acute stage followed by impaired “prefrontal” signs (e.g., decreased spontaneity, memory impairment) of long duration.

4. Dorsal type. These patients presented with “parieto-occipital” signs (e.g., aphasia with left-sided lesions, and topographic memory disturbances with right-sided lesions).

A syndrome of posterior thalamic hemorrhage has been described [133] and consists of saccadic hypometria away from the side of the lesion (due to involvement of fibers from the frontal eye fields that pass near the dorsal thalamus on their way to the superior colliculus and pretectal nuclei), defective smooth ocular pursuit toward the lesion with corresponding optokinetic abnormalities, mild ipsilateral ptosis and miosis (due to associated ipsilateral hypothalamic involvement), unilateral sensory “thalamic” neglect, contralateral sensorimotor hemiparesis, and forced horizontal gaze toward the lesion.

In another study of 175 patients, thalamic hemorrhages were classified into four regional types and one global type [74]:
Vascular Syndromes of the Forebrain, Brainstem, and Cerebellum

1. **Anterior type (7%)**. This type occurred in the territory of the tuberobasilic arteries. The hematomas often ruptured into the anterior horn of the lateral ventricle. Major clinical signs were acute behavioral abnormalities. The clinical course was usually benign.

2. **Posteromedial type (14%)**. This type occurred in the territory of the thalamic–subthalamic paramedian arteries. The hematomas often ruptured into the third ventricle, causing marked hydrocephalus, and often extended medially, involving the mesencephalon. Mesencephalic involvement was associated with poor outcome.

3. **Posterolateral type (44%)**. This type occurred in the territory of the thalamogeniculate arteries and was characterized by large hematomas, rupture into the posterior horn of the lateral ventricle, and frequent extension into the posterior limb of the internal capsule. Clinical signs included marked sensory and motor findings, hemineglect in right-sided hematomas, and language abnormalities in left-sided lesions. Case fatality was high (35%) and resulted in permanent neurologic sequelae frequently.

4. **Dorsal type (18%)**. These hematomas occurred in the territory of the posterior choroidal arteries. Sensory and motor signs were common and many were initially misdiagnosed as having lacunar infarcts. Prognosis was excellent.

5. **Global type (18%)**. These hematomas occupied the entire area of the thalamus and were clinically similar to the posterolateral type with the presence of severe sensory and motor signs. This type of thalamic hemorrhage is commonly associated with hydrocephalus, mass effect, and a poor prognosis. These patients are often stuporous or comatose, displaying decerebrate posturing, upward gaze paralysis, and small but reactive pupils. Case fatality was 81%.

**CEREBellar HEMORRHAGE**

Cerebellar hematomas account for 10% of spontaneous ICH. Primary cerebellar hemorrhage is the most common cause of non-traumatic cerebellar hemorrhage. Clinical presentation may be acute, subacute, or chronic [54,127,260,292]. Variations in location, size, and development of the hematoma; brainstem compression; fourth ventricular rupture; and development of hydrocephalus result in variations in the mode of presentation of cerebellar hemorrhage. A massive hemorrhage may lead to tonsillar herniation or upward tentorial herniation, or local brainstem compression. Hypertensive cerebellar hematomas most frequently occur in the region of the dentate nucleus on either side as a consequence of a rupture of a distal branch of the superior cerebellar artery due to necrotizing hypertensive arteriopathy. Infrequent causes are hemorrhages associated with arteriovenous malformations, metastatic lesions, or anticoagulant therapy. Less often, the epicenter of a cerebellar hematoma involves the vermis; these hemorrhages often seen in the younger age group may be caused by vascular malformations. Cerebellar hemorrhages remote from the site of surgery have been reported as a complication of cervical/thoracic/lumbar spinal surgery, ventriculoperitoneal/lumboperitoneal shunts, and a number of supratentorial surgical interventions [17,33,53,67,101,137,191,204,227,228,233,272]. Cerebellar hemorrhages have also been found among extremely low birth weight infants [203].

Features of acute cerebellar hemorrhage include sudden occipital or frontal headache, dizziness, vertigo, nausea, repeated vomiting, slurred speech, and inability to stand or walk. Truncal or limb ataxia, ipsilateral gaze palsy, and small reactive pupils are common findings. Horizontal gaze paresis, paretic nystagmus, and facial weakness are also frequent. Ipsilateral horizontal gaze paresis and peripheral facial palsy are indicative of pontine compression and may herald further clinical deterioration. Frank hemiparesis is absent, although variable degrees of hemiparesis may be seen. Ocular bobbing, skew deviation, and a decreased corneal reflex may be present. Typical manifestations include appendicular ataxia, peripheral facial paresis, and ipsilateral gaze palsy. Large cerebellar hematomas may be accompanied by arterial hypertension and bradycardia. Small (usually <3-cm diameter) cerebellar hematomas may only present with vomiting and without headaches, gait instability, or limb ataxia.

**PONTINE HEMORRHAGE**

Pontine hemorrhages account for approximately 10% of spontaneous ICHs and are usually due to longstanding arterial hypertension, or less commonly due to ruptured vascular malformations [76]. Primary pontine hemorrhages usually arise from ruptured paramedian arterioles, and often develop at the midpontine level near the junction of the basis pontis and tegmentum. Signs and symptoms depend on size, location, and presence or absence of ventricular rupture or hydrocephalus [326]. Goto et al. [121] classified these hemorrhages as tegmental and tegmentobasilar. Massive pontine hemorrhages involve the whole pons, compressing the fourth ventricle, causing obstructive hydrocephalus [121]. Massive pontine hemorrhages cause coma, decerebrate rigidity, quadriplegia, hyperthermia, tachycardia, absent corneal reflexes, absent horizontal eye movements, and miotic (2–3 mm) but reactive pupils. Ocular bobbing may be present. A locked-in syndrome is rarely
found as these hematomas symmetrically dissect the pons, destroying the more dorsal structures. Coma, absent oculocephalic reflexes, absent corneal reflexes, lack of motor responses, hypertension, tachycardia, hyperthermia, acute hydrocephalus, and intraventricular hemorrhage predict a very poor outcome [326]. Pontine hematomas are rarely associated with bilateral deafness due to involvement of the ventral acoustic striae decussating in the trapezoid body [96].

Primary pontine hematomas have been divided into three clinical types [189]:

1. **Classic type (60%)**. There is severe pontine destruction with quadriparesis, coma, hyperthermia, tachycardia, and death.
2. **Hemipontine syndrome (20%)**. The hematoma involves both the basis pontis and pontine tegmentum unilaterally. Patients present with hemiparesis, preserved consciousness, skew deviation, unilateral absent corneal reflex, dysarthria, facial nerve palsy, contralateral extremity and ipsilateral facial sensory changes, and survival with functional recovery.
3. **Dorsolateral tegmental syndrome (20%)**. This syndrome manifests by gaze paresis or ipsilateral abducens nerve palsy (or both), skew deviation, unilateral absent corneal reflex, unilateral facial nerve palsy, contralateral extremity and ipsilateral facial sensory loss, dysarthria, motor sparing, preserved consciousness, occasional gait or limb ataxia, and survival with functional recovery.

**CAUDATE HEMORRHAGE**

Hemorrhages within the caudate nucleus result from rupture of the artery of Heubner or branches of the medial lenticulostriate arteries. The least common of the hypertensive ICIs, caudate hematomas cause headache, vomiting, neck stiffness, confusion, and behavioral changes with decreased short-term memory [290]. Variable findings include a transient contralateral conjugate gaze paresis, contralateral hemiparesis, transient hemisensory deficits, and, rarely, an ipsilateral Horner syndrome when the hematoma extends into the hypothalamus [290].

**MESENCEPHALIC HEMORRHAGE**

Hemorrhages within the mesencephalon [322] often present with headaches, vomiting, and loss of consciousness. Unequal pupils, that are unreactive to light but retain the near reflex, are common, as is impairment of conjugate upgaze. Partial dorsal mesencephalic hemorrhages may cause a dorsal mesencephalic (Parinaud’s) syndrome (with rostral tectal plate bleeds), a vertical gaze palsy, skew deviation, and bilateral Horner syndrome (with unilateral superior colliculus bleed), as well as bilateral trochlear nerve palsies, unilateral Horner syndrome, and ataxia (with hemorrhages involving the caudal tectal plate) [206,268].

**LATERAL TEGMENTAL BRAINSTEM HEMORRHAGE**

Lateral tegmental pontomesencephalic hemorrhages present with small reactive pupils, ipsilateral conjugate gaze palsy, ipsilateral internuclear ophthalmoplegia, contralateral hemiparesis, contralateral sensory deficits, and ipsilateral ataxia [62]. Variable findings include altered vertical gaze, skew deviation, ocular bobbing, decreased hearing, dysarthria, dysphagia, decreased ipsilateral facial sensation or absent corneal reflex, and bilateral eyelid ptosis. Rarely, patients may have ataxia due to involvement of the pedunculopontine nucleus [206], or a crossed oro-cruatal syndrome due to involvement of the rostral spinal trigeminal nucleus and lateral aspect of the spinothalamic tract [77].

**MEDULLARY HEMORRHAGE**

Primary medullary hemorrhage is extremely rare. Most frequent manifestations include headache, vertigo, sensory disturbances, dysphagia, palatal weakness, nystagmus, hypoglossal palsy, cerebellar ataxia, and limb weakness [25,34].

**INTERNAL CAPSULAR HEMORRHAGE**

Small hemorrhages arising within the genu or posterior limb of the internal capsule may cause a pure motor hemiparesis or a mixed sensorimotor syndrome [176]. In rare instances, paraparesis results from bilateral hemorrhages involving the posterior limb of the internal capsule [296].

**INTRAVENTRICULAR HEMORRHAGES**

Intraventricular hemorrhages most commonly result from ventricular extension of a parenchymal hematoma. Primary intraventricular hemorrhages in adults may be caused by ruptured anterior communicating artery aneurysms, arteriovenous malformations near the ventricles or choroid plexus, intraventricular tumors (choroid plexus papillomas), bleeding diathesis, coagulopathies, thrombotic agents, or moyamoya disease. Clinical features include headache, nausea, vomiting, impaired consciousness, memory disturbances, and nuchal rigidity. In very low birthweight infants, the majority of intraventricular hemorrhages arise in the subependymal germinal matrix [31,289].

**Syndromes Related to Cerebral Aneurysms**

Intracranial aneurysms may be saccular, fusiform, traumatic, dissecting, mycotic, oncotic, flow related, or associated with a vasculitic process. An estimated
three to six million people in the United States have an intracranial saccular aneurysm [217]. Unruptured, asymptomatic intracranial saccular aneurysms are found in about 5% of autopsies [145]. The prevalence of intracranial saccular aneurysms is estimated to be 9.6 per 100,000 people [244]. Approximately 85% of intracranial saccular aneurysms involve the anterior (carotid) circulation, and 15% the posterior (vertebral-basilar) circulation. Aneurysms are multiple in approximately 10% to 30% of cases.

Intracranial saccular aneurysms arise from bifurcation points of major intracranial arteries, most commonly in the circle of Willis. Most are found at the junction of the anterior communicating artery with the ACA, the junction of the ICA and the posterior communicating artery, the MCA bifurcation, the ICA bifurcation, and the pericallosal/callosomarginal artery bifurcation. Most posterior circulation aneurysms arise from the basilar artery apex, and the remaining from the PICA, vertebral artery, AICA, or SCA.

Intracranial aneurysms are rare in children and adolescents. Pediatric intracranial aneurysms most often involve the distal ICA or posterior circulation; posterior communicating artery aneurysms are rare (4%) in this segment of the population.

Ruptured intracranial saccular aneurysms tend to be larger than 7 mm in diameter. Arbitrary lines have been proposed with recommendations for conservative management (due to apparent lower-risk of rupture), for unruptured intracranial aneurysms smaller than 7 mm in diameter, in the anterior circulation [144]. Once an intracranial aneurysm reaches a diameter (2.5 cm (giant aneurysm)), it often behaves like a space-occupying lesion [144], although they may be associated with TIAs or ischemic strokes due to embolization from the aneurysmal sac [239,256]. A brief discussion of selective aneurysmal syndromes follows.

Cavernous Internal Carotid Artery Aneurysms

Ruptured cavernous ICA aneurysms seldom cause subarachnoid hemorrhage [188]. Cavernous ICA aneurysms when ruptured may produce a carotid-cavernous fistula, or expand and cause a regional syndrome.

A carotid-cavernous fistula may produce the following [83]:

1. Ocular pain
2. Pulsating exophthalmos
3. Cephalic or ocular bruit
4. Chemosis and redness of the conjunctiva
5. Diplopia due to abducens palsy

6. Decreased visual acuity due to pressure on the optic nerve, glaucoma, or retinal and optic nerve hypoxia

UNRUPTURED CAVERNOUS ICA ANEURYSM

When symptomatic, unruptured cavernous ICA aneurysms may produce the following:

1. Ocular pain
2. Abducens, oculomotor, or trochlear nerve palsies with a small pupil due to oculosympathetic dysfunction
3. Pain and numbness in the distribution of the ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve; occasionally, all three trigeminal nerve divisions may be affected
4. Bilateral ophthalmoplegia

With anterior extension, the patient may have exophthalmos, chemosis, or optic atrophy. With posterior extension, the patient may have deafness or facial palsy.

Posterior Communicating Artery Aneurysms

Unruptured aneurysms of the internal carotid-posterior communicating artery junction may present with headache, ocular pain, and third cranial nerve (oculomotor nerve) palsy with pupillary involvement. Compressive subarachnoid lesions may occasionally spare the pupil [Chapter 8]. Pupillary sparing third nerve palsies due to posterior communicating artery aneurysms may occur early, although most patients ultimately progress to pupil involvement [16,146].

Middle Cerebral Artery Aneurysms

The following manifestations may be seen [108]:

1. Headache
2. Partial seizures with elementary symptomatology, complex partial seizures, or generalized tonic-clonic seizures
3. Aphasia
4. Transient sensorimotor deficits
5. Homonymous visual field defects

Vertebrobasilar Artery Aneurysms

Unruptured basilar artery aneurysms may present with the following [3]:

1. Vertebrobasilar TIAs
2. Cerebellopontine angle syndrome
3. Alternating hemiplegia with cranial nerve palsies
4. Ataxia
5. Atypical facial pain
6. Abducens or facial palsies  
7. Oculomotor palsy  
8. Nonhemorrhagic thalamic infarctions

Subarachnoid Hemorrhage

Subarachnoid hemorrhage (SAH) may be traumatic or non-traumatic (spontaneous). Most spontaneous SAH are due to ruptured intracranial aneurysms. Aneurysmal SAH is an important cause of mortality and serious morbidity, accounting for approximately 5% to 10% of all strokes. Annual incidence has been estimated at 2 to 25 per 100,000 people. In the United States, aneurysmal SAH affects about 30,000 people every year. Less common causes of non-traumatic, non-aneurysmal SAH include non-aneurysmal perimesencephalic SAH, blood dyscrasias; cerebral amyloid angiopathy; primary, metastatic or meningeal neoplasms; vasculitis; drug abuse; cerebral venous occlusive disease; bacterial meningitis; spinal cord vascular malformations; and spinal cord tumors. Not all cases of spontaneous SAH are explained even after a thorough search [8,98,135,327].

Premonitory symptoms occur in a significant proportion of cases. The most common premonitory symptom is headache that may not be associated with other neurological findings. At least one-third of patients with aneurysmal SAH have a warning leak, known as a sentinel hemorrhage. An aneurysm should be suspected when the following occur:

1. Late onset of migraine-like headache with no family history of migraine  
2. Change in the headache pattern in a known migraineur  
3. Severe abrupt localized and persistent headache described as "worst headache ever"  
4. Migrainous headaches refractory to conventional therapy

Other premonitory symptoms may include episodes of neck stiffness, diplopia, nausea, vomiting, and photophobia. Hemorrhage into the subarachnoid space is heralded by the development of abrupt and excruciating headaches (thunderclap headache) often described as the "worst headache ever," nausea, vomiting, and neck stiffness. Headache occurs in 85% to 95% of patients. Many variations to the clinical picture occur, depending on the severity of the SAH presence of associated hematoma, occurrence of cerebral vasospasm, development of hydrocephalus, increased intracranial pressure, or intercurrent complication (e.g., hyponatremia). Aneurysmal SAH is a medical emergency. Errors and delays in diagnosis are not infrequent, particularly among patients with mild symptoms [186]. Pain response to commonly used therapies in the management of acute headaches does not rule out SAH. The clinical diagnosis of SAH is determined from the symptomatology and verified by noncontrast cranial CT scan or lumbar puncture and by pan-cerebral catheter angiography. A noncontrast CT scan obtained in the first 24 hours is positive in more than 90% of cases, but the sensitivity falls to 60% after index bleed [284]. If the CT scan is negative, a lumbar puncture should always be performed, usually confirming the diagnosis. Improper evaluation of the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) results can lead to uncomfortable situations. The opening pressure is usually elevated. Erythrocytes in the CSF that do not decrease in subsequent tubes (between the first and last tube), accompanied by a pink-tinged (within 4–5 hours) or yellow-tinged xanthochromic (>6 hours) supernatant, an elevated protein level, and increased pressure are typical CSF findings. However, spin for xanthochromia may not be present within 12 hours of SAH, and sequential clearings of blood between tubes 1 and 4 are not reliable. CSF glucose is normal or may be slightly decreased [315]. If the diagnosis of SAH is established, the next step is to delineate the abnormal anatomic site that bled. Pan-cerebral angiography remains the gold standard method for this purpose. However, approximately 20% of angiograms are negative; a second study yields the correct diagnosis in approximately 1% to 2% of cases [262]. MRI may be helpful in differentiating the causes of SAH from lesions other than aneurysms. Although conventional catheter angiography remains the most precise investigation, CTA is a very useful technique and a reasonable substitute [69,313].

The clinical presentation of SAH is often abrupt, with the onset of severe headache, photophobia, nausea, vomiting, meningeal irritation, and in many instances transient unconsciousness cranial nerve palsies and focal neurologic deficits. Transient loss of consciousness may occur as a result of an abrupt rise in intracranial pressure. A considerable number of patients with aneurysmal SAH die before reaching a hospital. Seizures, either focal or generalized, may occur. Patients may also complain of photophobia, phonophobia, severe neck stiffness or backache. Other signs of SAH include lethargy, vertigo, abducens, or oculomotor nerve palsies, visual field cuts, paresis or paresthesias.

Meningismus, with nuchal rigidity and Kernig sign, is a common sign, but it may be absent in one-third of the cases. Ophthalmoscopic findings may include papilledema and vitreous, subhyaloid, or preretal hemorrhage. The syndrome of vitreous hemorrhage in association with any forms of intracranial or SAH is known as Terson syndrome [277]. Ptosis or diplopia is most frequently caused by oculomotor
Vascular Syndromes of the Forebrain, Brainstem, and Cerebellum

Progressive vasospasm is characterized by increasing headaches, meningismus, low-grade fever, decreased alertness, and focal neurologic deficits that correspond to the region of the brain supplied by the arteries in spasm, usually near the territory of distribution of the artery affected by the aneurysm. The most reliable predictor for the development of cerebral vasospasm is the amount and distribution of blood on the GT scan after SAH. A thick, localized clot or diffuse SAH is more commonly seen in patients with poor neurologic status [2].

Repeated hemorrhages into the subarachnoid space can give rise to superficial siderosis of the CNS characterized by sensorineural deafness and cerebellar ataxia. Other features include dementia, hydrocephalus, corticospinal tract signs, anosmia, bladder disturbance, anisocoria, extraocular motor palsies, optic neuropathy, nystagmus, dysarthria, neck or backache, sensory signs, bilateral sciatica, lumbo-sacral radiculopathies, and other lower motor neuron signs. Other vascular lesions associated with superficial siderosis of the CNS include arteriovenous malformations, unruptured intracranial aneurysms, cavernous malformations, and telangiectasias. Superficial siderosis can also be caused by chronic bleeding from a brain or spinal cord tumor—most commonly a cauda equina myxopapillary ependymoma, posterior fossa tumors, hemispherectomy, radiotherapy, cervical root avulsion with subsequent pseudomeningocelevformation, cervical or lumbar meningoceles, subdural hematoma, and trauma associated with warfarin use. Other sources include meningiomas, oligodendrogliomas, pineocytomas, paragangliomas, repair of occipital encephalocele and neonatal intraventricular bleeding [118,147].

References


31. Bogousslavsky J, Regli F. Anterior cerebral artery infarction in the Lausanne stroke registry—clinical
Localization in Clinical Neurology


Vascular Syndromes of the Forebrain, Brainstem, and Cerebellum
Localization in Clinical Neurology


Most causes of coma speedily threaten life or recovery of neurological function. Thus, they must be promptly identified and treated. Unfortunately, patients with a depressed level of alertness cannot give an account of the events leading to their situation, and often no one who has observed the patient before admission is available to provide such information. Thus, the physician has to rely on examination of the patient, not only to localize the damaged anatomic structures but also to identify the offending agent. The examination should be thoughtful and well informed but not necessarily long. A delay in protecting the airway of a poorly responsive patient may cause irreparable neurological damage \[123\].

The diagnosis of impaired alertness and coma is well reviewed in some excellent monographs \[118,189\]. The following pages draw heavily from these sources. Unlike in previous editions of this book, the diagnosis of death based on neurological criteria (\textit{brain death}) is discussed at the end of this chapter. Despite the availability of neurophysiological and neuroimaging tools to help make this diagnosis, the neurological examination, object of this chapter, remains critical \[178\].

The Unresponsive Patient

Terms such as \textit{coma}, \textit{stupor}, \textit{lethargy}, and the like indicate a depressed level of alertness. These terms, however, fail to convey vital information needed for neurologic localization and management. Rather than using one of these terms, a description of the patient's level of responsiveness (incorporating some detail of the patient's responses to diverse reproducible stimuli) facilitates communication among members of the health care team, enhances consistency in successive evaluations of the patient, and sets the basis for a rational diagnostic assessment. For instance, stating that "the patient was stuporous" provides little information. Instead, the real situation can be much better conveyed by explaining in everyday English that "Mr. Z lay motionless in bed unless called loudly by name, when he opened his eyes briefly and looked to the left. He failed to answer any questions or to follow instructions."

Two terms have gained acceptance among neurologists and are widely used: akinetic mutism and locked-in syndrome. \textit{Akinetic mutism} \[141\] refers to a state in which the patient, although seemingly awake remains silent and motionless. Only the eyes dart in the direction of moving objects, such as the examiner approaching the patient's bed. The examiner, attempting to converse with a patient in this state, gets the distinct impression of failing to draw the patient's attention and interest. Despite the lack of movement, there are few signs indicative of damage to the descending motor pathways. Instead, "frontal release signs," such as grasp or sucking, may be present. Patients who remain completely motionless are not seen as often as those who move one side or one arm in a stereotyped fashion but in every other respect fit into the syndrome of akinetic mutism. In such cases, the paralyzed side may display signs of corticospinal tract involvement, such as hyperreflexia and a Babinski sign.

If a history is available, akinetic mutism can usually be distinguished from psychogenic (often catatonic) unresponsiveness. Otherwise, the diagnosis may be difficult. Particularly when exposed to painful stimuli (such as those caused by soiled linen or a decubitus ulcer) or to infection, patients with akinetic mutism appear excited and tachycardic and perspire heavily, thus superficially resembling a catatonic patient. Signs of frontal release or corticospinal tract damage favor the diagnosis of akinetic mutism. In the catatonic patient, the electroencephalogram (EEG) is normal (often desynchronized, with low-voltage fast activity), but in the patient with akinetic mutism, the EEG may show slow-wave abnormalities \[102\].

Lesions that cause akinetic mutism affect bilaterally the frontal region (anterior cingulate gyri), the diencephalo-mesencephalic reticular formation, the globus pallidus, or the hypothalamus \[31,92,101\]. Common causes are anoxia, head trauma, cerebral infarction, severe acute hydrocephalus, and direct compression by tumors \[95,172\]. Other extensive lesions, such as air embolism or end-stage degenerative or infectious brain disorders, such as Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease, can also cause this syndrome \[3,51,109,150,175\]. Metabolic or ictal disorders disrupting the same areas may give rise to a transient disorder of alertness similar to akinetic mutism \[7,143\]. A syndrome of transient mutism and relative akinesia may occur a few days after midline cerebellar or fourth ventricular surgery \[18,21,36\]. One such patient improved after dopaminergic stimulation, suggesting...
involvement of the dopaminergic pathways, at least in some cases [18]. Hyperkinetic mutism, with continuous bilateral ballism and dystonia, has been described in a diabetic with multiple subcortical and cortical infarcts [53].

When the cerebral hemispheres have sustained severe and widespread damage (such as that due to severe trauma, anoxia, or encephalitis), the patient may, after some weeks of complete unresponsiveness, evolve into a situation similar to akinetic mutism, with the return of sleep–wake cycles. These patients, however, demonstrate obvious signs of pronounced bilateral corticospinal tract damage. This situation, in which the patient's functions are restricted to the autonomic sphere, has been termed the vegetative state [4]. The vegetative state has been defined as a chronic neurologic condition characterized by lack of awareness of self and external stimuli, accompanied by sleep–wake cycles, with preservation of vital vegetative functions, such as cardiac function, respiration, and maintenance of blood pressure. Patients in a vegetative state show no evidence of sustained, reproducible, purposeful, or voluntary behavioral responses to visual, auditory, tactile, or noxious stimuli; show no evidence of language comprehension or expression; have bowel and bladder incontinence; and have variably preserved cranial nerve and spinal reflexes. Persistent vegetative state is defined as a vegetative state present one month after acute traumatic or nontraumatic brain injury or lasting for at least one month in patients with degenerative or metabolic disorders or developmental malformations [4].

In addition to its pejorative connotation, the term persistent vegetative state assumes that it is possible from the physical examination combined with available clinical information to define accurately the patient's state of awareness. Given that motor responses on the part of the patient are needed to evaluate the presence of awareness of self and external stimuli, in many of these patients with severe damage to motor mechanisms it is very difficult to assess the degree of awareness. The presence of extensive damage on MRI or CT is helpful but does not define this issue either [181]. In some patients meeting diagnostic criteria for the chronic vegetative state, functional neuroimaging has documented awareness and the ability to follow commands [97]. Given the shortcomings of the term persistent vegetative state, it is better to refer to this state as persistent unresponsiveness. Responses are all that the examiner can evaluate. Persistent unresponsiveness is a descriptive term reflecting accurately the information on the patient, and avoids the pitfall of making inaccurate assumptions as to the degree of awareness or the level of brain function in a given patient.

Recovery of consciousness from a posttraumatic persistent unresponsive state is unlikely after 12 months in adults and children [91]. Recovery from a nontraumatic persistent unresponsive state after three months is rare in both adults and children, but it can happen, usually with residual severe disability [9,37].

Even more vague and inaccurate than the term “vegetative state” is the more recent “minimally conscious state.” If a short description is to be used, “minimally responsive” seems much more appropriate [10]. Recovery from the minimally responsive state has been documented even after 19 years from onset [174].

The locked-in syndrome refers to a condition in which the patient is mute and motionless (deafferented) but remains awake, alert, aware of self, and capable of perceiving sensory stimuli. Although horizontal eye movements are often impaired due to involvement of the paramedian pontine reticular formation, the patient’s level of alertness can be gleaned from her response to commands involving vertical eye movements or eyelid movements. The EEG reflects the patient's state of wakefulness. The locked-in syndrome is usually due to basilar artery thrombosis with ventral pontine infarction, pontine hemorrhage or tumor, or central pontine myelinolysis (osmotic demyelination syndrome) [50,96]. These lesions involve the descending motor pathways bilaterally in the basis pontis but spare the more dorsal reticular formation. Bilateral ventral midbrain lesions [23,41,94], tentorial herniation [68,183], Guillain–Barré syndrome [8,124], or myasthenia gravis may rarely cause this syndrome. In locked-in syndrome due to mesencephalic lesions, bilateral ptosis and vertical (as well as horizontal) ophthalmoplegia are present. Fou rire prononiqué (pathologic laughter at the onset of a stroke) may rarely herald the onset of a bilateral ventral pontine stroke leading to a locked-in syndrome [176].

**Anatomic Substrate of Alertness**

In general, the maintenance of consciousness depends on interaction between the ascending reticular activating system (ARAS) and the cerebral hemispheres. Damage to the ARAS, described in animals by Moruzzi and Magoun in 1949 [99], induces a state of coma in which the animal becomes unresponsive and its EEG shows sleep patterns despite vigorous sensory stimulation. In humans, the ARAS lies in the paramedian tegmental region of the posterior portion of pons and midbrain [110]. It is a
Signs with Localizing Value in Coma

In a comatose patient, the respiratory pattern, pupillary response, eye movements, and position or movements of the limbs provide important clues to the anatomic site and nature of the injury.

Respiratory Patterns

Although the respiratory pattern of a patient in coma may be helpful in localizing the level of structural dysfunction in the neuraxis [156], metabolic abnormalities may affect the respiratory centers of the pons (pneumotaxic and apneustic) and medulla (expiratory and inspiratory) and result in patterns resembling those due to neurologic disease (Fig. 23.2). Thus, caution and a thorough evaluation of the metabolic status of the patient must guide the interpretation of respiratory changes.

POSTHYPERVENTILATION APNEA

This condition reflects mild bilateral hemispheric dysfunction. Because demonstration of this respiratory abnormality requires the patient’s active cooperation, this sign is mentioned here mainly to clarify the genesis of other respiratory patterns. To elicit this phenomenon, the patient is simply asked to take five deep breaths. This maneuver normally decreases arterial pCO₂ by about 10 mm Hg and, in the...
Metabolic disturbances, such as uremia, diffuse anoxia, and heart failure, often underlie this breathing disorder. This pattern of respiration may also be seen in some elderly individuals during sleep and in some normal individuals at high altitudes.

Cheyne–Stokes respiration in patients with supratentorial mass lesions may indicate incipient transtentorial herniation [118].

HYPERVENTILATION WITH BRAINSTEM INJURY

Patients with lesions of the midbrain and pons often have prolonged and rapid hyperpnea. Because most of these patients are relatively hypoxic despite the excessive ventilatory effort, this type of breathing cannot truly be called neurogenic hyperventilation. In a few cases where pulmonary or metabolic causes of hyperventilation were absent, brainstem tumors were found at autopsy. In these cases, tumoral metabolism may have lowered the pH of the local cerebrospinal fluid, thereby providing a stimulus to the respiratory center of the medulla [117]. Central neurogenic hyperventilation, responsive to morphine and methadone, occurred with an astrocytoma centered in the medial tegmental parapontine reticular formation [56].

APNEUSTIC BREATHING

Apneustic breathing is characterized by a long inspiratory pause, after which the air is retained for several seconds and then released. This abnormality appears with lesions of the lateral tegmentum of the lower half of the pons.

CLUSTER BREATHING

Breathing with a cluster of breaths following each other in an irregular sequence may result from low pontine or high medullary lesions.
ATAXIC BREATHING
This type of breathing has a completely irregular pattern (also called the atrial fibrillation of respiration) in which inspiratory gases of diverse amplitude and length are intermingled with periods of apnea. This respiratory abnormality, often present in agonal patients, heralds complete respiratory failure and follows damage of the dorso-medial medulla. The most common etiologies for this pattern include cerebellar or pontine hemorrhages, trauma, and posterior fossa tumors. Less often, a paramedian medullary infarct (usually due to severe atherosclerosis of a vertebral artery) may cause this syndrome. The classic breathing pattern described by Biot was ataxic breathing in patients with severe meningitis [118].

“ONDINE CURSE”
Pathways from the cerebral cortex subserving voluntary respiration are separate from those descending from the medulla subserving automatic respiration; thus, selective impairment of automatic or voluntary breathing is possible [156]. Descending pathways that are under voluntary control travel within the dorsal cord in the region of the corticospinal tract, whereas pathways from primary medullary respiratory centers travel in the ventrolateral cord, with anatomic separation of inspiratory and expiratory pathways [156].

Ondine curse refers to the loss of automatic breathing during sleep. This respiratory pattern, obviously absent in comatose patients, is mentioned here because it occurs with lower brainstem dysfunction. Responsible lesions have a similar or somewhat lower location than those that cause ataxic breathing but are smaller or develop more slowly. Both unilateral [5,82] and bilateral [30] medullary tegmental infarcts have produced this syndrome. This disorder has also been recorded with high cervical cord lesions after surgical section of the ventrolateral spinal cord for pain relief [75,170], probably because of reticulospinal tract interruption. Of 12 patients who died with presumed Ondine curse after high cervical percutaneous cordotomy for pain, all had lesions involving the region of the anterolateral funiculus in the C2 segment containing pain fibers activated from the second to fifth thoracic dermatomes [75].

Central hypoventilation may be caused by unilateral caudal brainstem infarction [12]. One patient with nearly complete loss of ventilation involving both automatic and voluntary components had an infarct involving the reticular formation, nucleus tractus solitarius, nucleus ambiguous, and nucleus retroambigus on the right, which spared the dorsal motor nucleus of the vagus nerve and sensory and corticospinal tracts. A second patient with hypoventilation more selectively involving automatic responses (Ondine curse) had an infarct involving the medullary reticular formation and nucleus ambiguous that spared the nucleus tractus solitarius. These cases suggest that unilateral involvement of the pontomedullary reticular formation and nucleus ambiguous is sufficient for generating loss of automatic respiration, whereas an associated lesion of the nucleus tractus solitarius may lead to more severe respiratory failure involving automatic and voluntary responses [12]. Central hypventilation or apnea has also been reported with bilateral damage to the high cervical spinal cord or with dorsolateral lesions of the tegmentum of the medulla. A selective paresis of voluntary but not automatic respiration has been described with a discrete infarction of the ventral basis pontis, further suggesting that automatic and voluntary respirations are controlled by anatomically independent pathways [100].

In patients who have lost all respiratory reflexes and are intubated, the self-cycling of the ventilator may erroneously suggest that the patient is triggering it [182].

Temperature Changes
Hyperthermia is not uncommon in coma caused by severe traumatic brain injury [165]. Patients in coma are predisposed to infection, but in a proportion of patients, hyperthermia may be neurogenic, that is, related to an altered temperature regulation system. In many of these instances, they correspond to hypothalamic dysfunction (see Chapter 17). Neurogenic hyperthermia has also been described with pontine tegmental lesions [110].

The Pupils
Pupillary shape, size, symmetry, and response to light provide valuable clues to brainstem and third cranial nerve function. The pupillary light reflex is very resistant to metabolic dysfunction. Abnormalities of this reflex, particularly when unilateral, indicate structural lesions of the midbrain or oculomotor nerve. A few exceptions are noteworthy. Atropinic agents, instilled into the eyes, applied on the skin (e.g., transdermal scopolamine) [24], ingested, or given during cardiopulmonary resuscitation, may cause pharmacologic iridoplegia. In these cases, a solution of 1% pilocarpine applied to the eye will fail to constrict the pupils, whereas in the case of anoxic pupillary dilatation, this cholinergic agent, acting directly on the constrictor of the iris, produces miosis. Because many patients in coma have small pupils, anticholinergic agents are sometimes used to facilitate visualization of the optic fundi, thus eliminating a potentially useful diagnostic indicator. In many
The areas of the brain and anatomic pathways that mediate the pupillary light reflex are reviewed in Chapter 8, in which the origin and course of sympathetic and parasympathetic influences on the iris muscle are described.

Various structural lesions causing coma may be associated with pupillary abnormalities (Fig. 23.3):

1. **Sleep or bilateral diencephalic dysfunction** (metabolic coma) is accompanied by small pupils that react well to light (“diencephalic” pupils).
2. Unilateral hypothalamic damage induces miosis and anhidrosis on the side of the body ipsilateral to the lesion.
3. **Midbrain lesions** causing coma usually produce distinct pupillary abnormalities. **Tectal or pretectal lesions** affecting the posterior commissure abolish the light reflex, but the pupils, which are mid-sized or slightly large, may show spontaneous oscillations in size (hippus) and become larger when the neck is pinched (ciliospinal reflex). **Tegmental lesions**, which involve the third nerve nucleus, may cause irregular constriction of the sphincter of the iris, with a resultant pear-shaped pupil or displacement of the pupil to one side (midbrain corectopia) [151]. The pupils, often

![FIG. 23.3. Pupillary responses characteristic of lesions at different levels of the brain.](image-url)
unequal, tend to be midsized and lack light or ciliospinal responses. Unilateral or bilateral oval pupils (which may be fixed to light) may occur with severe cerebrovascular lesions that injure the oculomotor or pupillomotor fibers. The oval shape is due to nonuniform paresis or paralysis of the pupil sphincter, with resultant eccentric antagonistic effects of pupil dilators.

4. Pontine tegmental lesions cause small pupils due to interruption of descending sympathetic pathways. Pinpoint pupils, when observed with a magnifying glass, may be seen to constrict to light, may occur with pontine hemorrhage, and are due to a combination of sympathetic damage and parasympathetic irritation.

5. Lateral pontine, lateral medullary, and ventrolateral cervical cord lesions produce an ipsilateral Horner syndrome.

6. Oculomotor nerve compression and elongation by herniation of the uncus of the temporal lobe (through the tentorial incisura) affect pupillary function earlier and more noticeably than the extrinsic eye movements subserved by this cranial nerve. Possible explanations for pupillary dilation on the side of a mass lesion include compression of the third cranial nerve by uncal herniation beneath the tentorial edge; compression of the nerve by the posterior cerebral artery or by the hippocampal gyrus; stretching or buckling of the nerve by traction at the superior orbital fissure, posterior clinoid, or clivus; or compression of the midbrain oculomotor complex [137]. The light reflex is sluggish or absent, and, unlike the situation with midbrain involvement, the pupil becomes widely dilated owing to sparing of the sympathetic pathways (Hutchinson pupil).

Ropper studied the pupil opposite the one already enlarged from transtentorial herniation in 13 patients [135]. In most patients, the pupil was initially 2.5 to 4 mm in diameter with a diminished or absent light reaction; this initial phase was followed by a slight reduction in pupil size, then reenlargement to greater than the original pupil size, all with preserved roundness. Subsequent deterioration varied, but a transitional oval pupil shape was infrequent, and oculomotor function was otherwise preserved until both pupils were enlarged and fixed to light. Thus, subsequent neurologic deterioration in a patient with transtentorial herniation can often be appreciated by change in the reactivity and size of the opposite pupil [135]. Other reports have demonstrated a paradoxical initial enlargement of the pupil opposite the side of a mass lesion, especially with acute subdural hematoma [115] or intraparenchymal [22] or subarachnoid [88] hemorrhage.

7. Other oculomotor nerve lesions causing pupillary abnormalities are less likely to impair consciousness, except when associated with a subarachnoid hemorrhage. Posterior communicating artery aneurysms can compress the third nerve and a massive subarachnoid hemorrhage may result in coma. Rarely, with the Guillain–Barré syndrome patients may become completely paralyzed and lose even their pupillary response [8,124]. This complete locked-in state may be mistaken for severe anoxic brain damage in these patients who are obviously prone to anoxic events [80]. However, in a locked-in patient, the electroencephalogram will show normal or slightly slow brain activity.

With acute neurosurgical lesions, fixed pupils are not necessarily a sign of irreversible coma. In a series of 40 patients with fixed pupils, 25% of them made a functional recovery [146]. None of these patients recovered after more than 6 hours with fixed pupils.

### Eye Movements

The anatomic pathways subserving eye movements were reviewed in Chapter 8. In the comatose patient, the assessment of eye movements helps to determine the level of structural brainstem damage (Fig. 23.4) or the depth of coma induced by metabolic agents.

In the absence of voluntary eye movements, the assessment of ocular motility in comatose patients relies heavily on reflex eye movements, including the oculocephalic reflex, elicited by the doll’s eye maneuver, and the oculovestibular reflex, elicited by instillation of cold or warm water into the external auditory canal [16,118]. Caloric testing with 50 mL of ice water instilled over 30 seconds into the external auditory canal, after the head is raised 30 degrees and an intact tympanic membrane is documented, provides a stronger stimulus than the oculocephalic reflex. If only the latter reflex is present, either caloric stimulation has been performed inadequately (e.g., hindered by the presence of wax in the external auditory canal) or there is damage to the labyrinth (e.g., by ototoxic antibodies) or the vestibular nuclei in the laterosuperior medulla.

Because of the absence of cortical control of eye movements, the comatose patient lacks voluntary saccades, including the quick phase of nystagmus and tracking eye movements. Instead, if the brainstem is intact, the eyelids are closed, and the eyes, slightly divergent, drift slowly from side to side (rolling eye movements). Spontaneous blinking requires an intact pontine reticular formation. Blinking induced by a bright light is probably mediated by the
1. Short-cycle periodic alternating gaze (ping-pong gaze), which consists of roving of the eyes from one extreme of horizontal gaze to the other and back, with each oscillating cycle taking 2.5 to 8 seconds [32,54,90,161]. This finding usually indicates bilateral cerebral damage (e.g., bilateral cerebral infarcts) with an intact brainstem, but it has also been described with posterior fossa hemorrhage, basal ganglia infarcts, hydrocephalus, and overdose of the monoamine oxidase inhibitor tranylcypromine [54,77,78,128,153,177]. The disorder may occasionally occur in coma with no structural hemispheric lesion [76,190]. A man in his twenties, with chronic hydrocephalus from infancy and absent vertical eye movements, had ping-pong gaze since childhood only when awake [78]. One case was attributed to bilateral lesions of the cerebral peduncles [76].
Crevits and Decruyenaere described three patients with ping-pong gaze (due to hepatic encephalopathy, carbon monoxide intoxication, and hypoxia, respectively) and proposed that this term be reserved for those forms of periodic alternating gaze without a silent period [26]. They noted that the only constant clinical implication of ping-pong gaze was integrity, at least in part, of the lower brainstem, with lack of cortical inhibition of the horizontal gaze centers in the brainstem. This disorder of ocular motility had no prognostic value [26].

Ping-pong gaze must be differentiated from periodic alternating gaze deviation, which is an alternating horizontal conjugate gaze deviation lasting 1 to 2 minutes in each direction. Periodic alternating gaze deviation usually occurs in alert patients with structural lesions involving the cerebellum and brainstem, such as the Arnold-Chiari malformation or medulloblastoma, but it has been described in obtunded or comatose patients with hepatic encephalopathy [6].

2. Repetitive divergence is rarely seen in patients with coma from metabolic encephalopathy (e.g., hepatic encephalopathy) [104]. With this disorder, the eyes are midposition or slightly divergent at rest. They then slowly deviate out, become fully deviated for a brief period, and then rapidly return to primary position before repeating the cycle. These motions are synchronous in both eyes.

3. Nystagmoid jerking of a single eye, in a vertical, horizontal, or rotatory fashion, may occur with mid-to-lower pontine damage [118]. Pontine lesions occasionally give rise to disconjugate rotatory and vertical movements of the eyes, in which one eye may rise and intort as the other falls and extorts [118]. This type of movement should not be confused with see-saw nystagmus, which is very seldom seen in comatose patients [64].

4. Electrographic status epilepticus without appendicular motor manifestations, due to anoxia, may result in brisk, small amplitude, mainly vertical (occasionally horizontal) eye movements detectable by passive lid elevation [157].

5. Ocular bobbing refers to intermittent, often conjugate, brisk, bilateral downward movement of the eyes with slow return to midposition [39]. Both mesencephalic and medullary burst neuron centers may play a part in its genesis [138]. Cold calorics may increase the amplitude and frequency of the bobbing or have no effect [27]. Ocular bobbing has been associated with intrinsic pontine lesions (e.g., hemorrhage, tumor, infarction, central pontine myelinolysis) [60, 79, 93, 138, 167, 190], extra-axial posterior fossa masses (e.g., aneurysm rupture or cerebellar hemorrhage or infarction) [13, 48, 108], diffuse encephalopathy (e.g., anoxia, poststatus epilepticus) [157], diffuse encephalopathy, rarely pontine [157], and toxic-metabolic encephalopathies (e.g., acute organophosphate poisoning) [34, 49, 162]. “Typical” ocular bobbing, which is associated with preserved horizontal eye movements, is thought to be specific but not pathognomonic of acute pontine injury, whereas “atypical” ocular bobbing, which is associated with absent horizontal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Movement</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Localization</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Periodic alternating gaze (ping-pong gaze)</td>
<td>Cyclic horizontal rowing</td>
<td>Bilateral cerebral damage, rarely posterior fossa lesion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repetitive divergence</td>
<td>Slow deviation out, rapid return to primary</td>
<td>Metabolic encephalopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nystagmoid jerking of a single eye</td>
<td>Vertical, horizontal, or rotatory movements</td>
<td>Diffuse encephalopathy (e.g., anoxia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status epilepticus</td>
<td>Small-amplitude vertical (occasionally horizontal) eye movements</td>
<td>Diffuse encephalopathy (e.g., anoxia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ocular bobbing</td>
<td>Fast down, slow up</td>
<td>Pontine, extra-axial posterior fossa mass, diffuse encephalopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inverse ocular bobbing (ocular dipping)</td>
<td>Slow down, fast up</td>
<td>Anoxia, poststatus epilepticus (diffuse encephalopathy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reverse ocular bobbing</td>
<td>Fast up, slow down</td>
<td>Diffuse encephalopathy, rarely pontine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow-upward ocular bobbing (converse ocular bobbing, reverse ocular dipping)</td>
<td>Slow up, fast down</td>
<td>Diffuse encephalopathy, rarely pontine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pretectal pseudobobbing</td>
<td>“V pattern”: down and in</td>
<td>Pretectal (e.g., hydrocephalus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertical ocular myoclonus</td>
<td>Pendular, vertical isolated eye movements</td>
<td>Pontine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
eye movements, is thought to be less helpful in predicting the site of abnormality [162]. Monocular bobbing (paretic bobbing), which consists of a quick downward movement of one eye and intorsion or no movement in the other eye, may occur with cerebellar lesions or after sudden changes in visual input. Disconjugate ocular bobbing, with movements involving sometimes one eye and sometimes the other, may also occur without oculomotor nerve palsy [43].

6. **Inverse ocular bobbing (ocular dipping or fast-upward ocular bobbing)** [44,70,85,93,131,145,159,173] consists of a slow-downward eye movement with fast return to midposition, which may occur in anoxic coma or after prolonged status epilepticus [70,133,159]. It probably reflects diffuse brain dysfunction rather than a single structural lesion because brainstem horizontal gaze reflexes are usually intact. Ocular dipping has also been described associated with deafness in a patient with pinealoblastoma [169]. Inverse/reverse ocular bobbing consists of inverse ocular bobbing in which the eyes do not stop on rapidly returning to primary position but shoot into upgaze and slowly return to midposition [140,168].

7. **Reverse ocular bobbing** (fast-upward ocular bobbing) consists of fast-upward eye movement with a slow return to midposition, which may occur in patients with metabolic encephalopathy, viral encephalitis, or pontine hemorrhage [15,44,93]. It has been described with coma, due to combined phenothiazine and benzodiazepine poisoning [81]. Occasionally, ocular bobbing, ocular dipping, and reverse bobbing may occur at different times in the same patient [140].

8. **Slow-upward ocular bobbing** (converse ocular bobbing or reverse ocular dipping) is characterized by slow-upward eye movements followed by fast return to midposition [44,93]. This eye movement disorder has been described with pontine infarction (the patient had a one-and-a-half syndrome) [44] and with metabolic or viral encephalopathy (i.e., diffuse cerebral dysfunction) [95].

9. **Pretectal pseudobobbing** has been described with acute hydrocephalus [65] and consists of arrhythmic, repetitive downward and inward ("V-pattern") eye movements at a rate ranging from 1 per 3 seconds to 2 per second and an amplitude of 1/5 to 1/2 of the full voluntary range. These movements may be mistaken for ocular bobbing, but their V pattern, their faster rate, and their pretectal rather than pontine-associated signs distinguished them from true pontine bobbing. Thus, patients with pretectal pseudobobbing may have abnormal pupillary light reactions, intact horizontal eye movements, open and often retracted eyelids, a blink frequently preceding each eye movement, and a mute or stuporous rather than a comatose state. Pretectal pseudobobbing probably represents a variety of convergence nystagmus, and its presence usually indicates the need for prompt surgical attention (e.g., hydrocephalus decompression) [65]. It is possible that some cases of "ocular bobbing" associated with thalamic hemorrhage or tentorial herniation may actually be cases of pretectal pseudobobbing.

10. **Vertical ocular myoclonus** consists of pendular, vertical isolated movements of the eyes noted in patients either locked-in or comatose after severe pontine strokes [61]. Their frequency is 2 Hz, and other rhythmic body movements at a similar frequency occur after a 6-week to 9-month delay. These movements are generally associated with palatal myoclonus (palatal tremor), with which they share a common mechanism [61].

**ABNORMALITIES OF LATERAL GAZE**

*Conjugate Gaze.* When both eyes remain deviated toward the same side in a comatose patient, the lesion may be in the cerebral hemisphere (most often involving the frontal eye fields) or in the pontine tegmentum. In the case of a hemispheric lesion, unless the patient is having a seizure, the eyes "look toward the lesion" (away from the hemiparetic side) but can be brought to the other side with the oculocephalic maneuver, caloric testing, or both. A seizure originating in the frontal or occipital lobes may cause deviation of the eyes and head away from the lesion, but such deviation is brief and usually accompanied by nystagmoid jerks; as soon as the seizure ceases, the eyes return to "look" toward the lesion. Thalamic and, rarely, basal ganglionic lesions, almost always hemorrhagic, may produce forced deviation of the eyes to the side contralateral to the lesion (wrong-way eyes) [166]. Very rarely, frontal-perisylvian lesions may cause wrong-way eyes [113].

Predominantly unilateral lesions affecting the tegmentum of the lower pons cause a horizontal gaze palsy toward the side of the lesion so that the eyes look toward the hemiparetic side. Neither the oculocephalic maneuver nor caloric testing overcomes a pontine gaze palsy.

Coma due to toxic substances is often accompanied by impaired conjugate eye movements, horizontal as well as vertical [119]. Thiamine deficiency, causing Wernicke encephalopathy, is a treatable cause of ophthalmoparesis and coma. It need not accompany alcoholism [191].
Disconjugate Gaze. Isolated failure of ocular adduction, in the absence of pupillary changes and with normal vertical eye movements (elicited by oculo-lophtalic or oculo-vestibular reflexes), indicates a lesion of the medial longitudinal fasciculus (MLF) in the upper pons ipsilateral to the eye that fails to adduct. MLF involvement is commonly bilateral in comatose patients. Rarely, metabolic coma (such as that due to barbiturates, amitriptyline [52], or hepatic failure [19]) may induce a transient MLF syndrome that can usually be overcome by vigorous caloric testing.

Latent strabismus may become apparent when the level of alertness is mildly impaired but disappears in deep coma. Because strabismus involves a single muscle, it seldom mimics neurogenic oculoparesis except, perhaps, when abduction is reduced.

ABNORMALITIES OF VERTICAL GAZE
In patients in light coma, upward gaze can be tested by holding the eyelids open and gently touching the cornea with a wisp of cotton or a similar object. With this stimulus, the eyeballs tend to roll upward (Bell's phenomenon). Unless the patient is intubated or has a neck injury, the doll's head maneuver can be used to elicit the vertical component of the oculocephalic reflex. Irrigation of both ears with cold water induces downward deviation of the eyes; warm water induces upward deviation.

Disconjugate vertical gaze in the resting position (skew deviation) may be seen with lesions at different areas of the brainstem, with increased intracranial pressure, or with hepatic coma (see Chapter 8). Persistent deviation of the eyes below the horizontal meridian signifies brainstem dysfunction, which is often due to a structural lesion that affects the tectum of the midbrain but is occasionally caused by metabolic encephalopathy (e.g., hepatic coma [69]). It is also present frequently after anoxic brain damage caused by cardiac arrest, typically a few days after the event [57]. Tonic downward deviation of the eyes, often accompanied by convergence, may occur with thalamic hemorrhage, probably due to pressure on the dorsal mesencephalon. Forced downward deviation of the eyes has also been reported in patients feigning coma [159]. Forced downward deviation of the eyes during caloric testing often occurs in coma induced by sedative drugs [155]. Tonic upgaze has been reported shortly after severe anoxic encephalopathy [57,67] and with phenothiazine intoxication. Paresis of upward gaze is usually present with bilateral midbrain tegmental damage. Downward gaze is preferentially affected by bilateral lesions of the superomedial perirubral region in the ventral portion of the origin of the Sylvian aqueduct from the third ventricle. In many of these patients, the lesion extends into the medial thalamic nuclei [112]. Large midbrain tegmental lesions abolish vertical gaze. At rest, the eyes remain in midposition or may be disconjugately deviated in the vertical plane.

Bilateral ptosis newly developed in patients with evolving massive hemispheric infarction seems to suggest compression of the midbrain [11].

Corneal Reflex
The corneal reflex has a higher threshold in comatose patients. Nonetheless, it must be elicited by a gentle and aseptic stimulus to avoid the risk of an infected corneal ulceration in patients with decreased corneal sensitivity (as with cranial nerve V lesions, ipsilateral lateral pontomedullary lesions, or contralateral parietal lesions) [107], or impaired eye closure (as with cranial nerve VII lesions and low pontine lesions). In the latter cases, the stimulus may induce deviation of the jaw to the opposite side (corneopterygoid reflex), and, given an intact upper pons and midbrain, the eyes may roll upward (Bell's phenomenon).

Motor Activity of the Body and Limbs
When examining a patient in coma, observation of the movements and of the tone and reflexes of the limbs supplies information that has a less clear-cut localizing value than similar findings in alert patients. Rarely is a metabolic coma (notably hypoglycemic) accompanied by hemiparesis; however, other motor patterns, widely known as decorticate (flexor posture) and decerebrate (extensor posture) rigidity, are often produced by metabolic disorders [46] and do not have the structural implications that their names, coined during experimental work, would suggest. Of course, structural damage to the origin or course of the motor pathways may give rise to such patterns, which, in these cases, are often asymmetric. However, because metabolic coma is more frequent than structural coma, metabolic coma is often responsible for the motor patterns discussed below (Fig. 23.5).

In light coma, the general motor responses may oscillate between lying quietly in bed and wildly thrashing about. The latter situation occurs when a painful stimulus (such as that caused by a subarachnoid hemorrhage or a full bladder) rouses the patient, whose diminished attention prevents any coherent sequence of movements. Such patients, however, try to avoid painful stimuli by appropriately withdrawing a limb or using it to brush off the offending agent. Gently sliding a cotton-tipped stick along the patient's forehead often proves enough of a stimulus to obtain
such a response. Asymmetric responses betray a deficit of the motor or sensory pathways, or both.

The tone of the extremities can be checked by lifting the arms from the bed and flexing the patient’s knees and releasing them. In light coma, the limbs fall slowly to the resting position. A parietal limb falls like a “dead weight.” Thus, a hemiparesis, or even monoparesis, can be easily detected.

Anoxic lesions of the cerebral border zones may result in predominant damage to the cortex in the area of representation of the arms. Such patients may have bilateral arm weakness with relatively spared lower extremity function (man-in-the-barrel syndrome) [35].

When the level of coma deepens or a structural lesion affects a cerebral hemisphere and the diencephalon, decorticate rigidity may appear; this rigidity is contralateral to the hemispheric lesion. Decorticate rigidity is characterized by adduction of the shoulder and arm, flexion at the elbow, and pronation and flexion at the wrist; the leg remains extended at the hip and knee (see Fig. 23.5).

Severe metabolic (e.g., anoxic) disorders or lesions of the upper brainstem give rise to decerebrate rigidity, which is characterized by extension and pronation of the upper extremities and forcible plantar flexion of the foot (see Fig. 23.5). Brought about by painful stimuli, opisthotonus develops periodically with hyperextension of the trunk and hyperpronation of the arms. In experimental animals, decerebrate rigidity results from brainstem transection at the collicular level, below the red nuclei but leaving intact the pontine reticular formation and vestibular nuclei. The action of the vestibular nuclei, unchecked by higher centers, may explain the increased extensor tone characteristic of decerebrate rigidity. Structural lesions that cause this motor pattern usually affect the midbrain and upper pons rather directly, as in the case of brainstem infarcts, or indirectly, by ischemia produced by pressure arising in the supratentorial compartment (downward herniation) or in the posterior fossa.

In a given patient, one side may demonstrate decorticate posturing, whereas the other side, innervated by the motor pathways that have undergone greater damage, displays decerebrate rigidity.

Abnormal extension of the arms with weak flexion of the legs usually indicates damage of the pontine tegmentum [118]. With even lower lesions involving the medulla, total flaccidity ensues.

Flaccidity in a critically ill patient can also be produced by a polyneuropathy (“critical illness neuropathy”). More recently, it has been recognized that many cases of flaccidity in comatose patients, particularly those on steroid treatment, are caused by a severe necrosis of the thick fibers of striated muscle cells (“critical illness myopathy”) [2,148].

When the entire brain, including the brainstem, has undergone total or subtotal irreversible damage, compatible with the diagnosis of death caused by brain destruction, spontaneous reflex movements of spinal origin can still be witnessed in
the corpse [149]. Plantar withdrawal responses, muscle stretch reflexes, undulating toe movements, abdominal contractions, Lazarus sign, and respiratory-like movements, among others, have been described [149]. Lazarus sign refers to complex movements suggesting purposeful activity. In one instance, the arms, with flexed elbows and hands held together, adopted a praying position, which was followed by hand separation as the arms fell to the sides of the torso; the legs also performed walking-like movements [86]. Other manifestations of the Lazarus sign have included shoulder adduction, bringing both arms to the chest, moving the hands to the neck, sometimes crossing and touching each other, and then finally falling to the bed. Passive flexion of the neck may elicit a jerk that raises the four limbs off the bed [136]. Spinal automatisms may be present in as many as 40% of heart-beating cadavers, typically within the first 24 hours after total brain destruction, although elaborate movements are much less frequent [149]. In the absence of any brain stem–mediated response, such as facial movements or a gag reflex, limb or trunk movements are more likely to be mediated by the spinal cord. In doubt, ancillary procedures can confirm the total destruction of the brain.

Clinical Presentations of Coma-Inducing Lesions Depending on Their Location

Metabolic Encephalopathy (Diffuse Brain Dysfunction)

The phylogenetically newer brain structures tend to be more sensitive to metabolic injury. This holds true even though the target of various metabolic abnormalities or toxic agents may vary slightly. For instance, carbon monoxide poisoning causes pallidal necrosis in addition to the widespread cortical damage expected from any hypoxic insult. Functions subserved by complex polysynaptic pathways are affected earlier by metabolic disturbances than those mediated by a few neurons. Thus, higher cortical functions and attention succumb early to metabolic insults, whereas the pupillary light reflex remains to the brink of brainstem death. Survival of other functions ranges between these two extremes. By the time decerebrate posturing appears, the corneal reflexes may be severely depressed, but some eye movements may be elicited by the doll’s eye maneuver or caloric stimulation.

Asymmetric motor findings speak against the diagnosis of metabolic encephalopathy. However, downward deviation of the eyes may be occasionally associated with hepatic encephalopathy [69]. Some toxic substances, like ethylene glycol, produce focal brain injuries with the corresponding neurological localizing findings [98]. Focal seizures are common in metabolic encephalopathies, particularly those coursing with breakdown of the blood–brain barrier, such as eclampsia, malignant hypertension, and acute intermittent porphyria [87].

Toxic-metabolic disorders often induce abnormal movements (tremor, asterixis, myoclonus, and seizures) that seldom accompany focal structural lesions of the brain. But because these two types of etiologic factors often coexist, the diagnostic specificity of these abnormal movements is far from absolute.

The tremor of metabolic encephalopathy is coarse and irregular and ranges from 8 to 10 cycles per second. Its amplitude is greatest when the patient holds his hand outstretched, but in less responsive patients it may be felt by holding the patient’s fingers extended.

Asterixis is a sudden, brief loss of postural tone that is translated into a flapping movement when the hand is held in dorsiflexion at the wrist and the fingers are extended and abducted. This hand posture requires some cooperation from the patient, but asterixis can also be elicited by passively extending the patient’s fingers and wrist. Asterixis at the hip joints can be elicited by a maneuver in which the hips are passively flexed and abducted at about 60 to 90 degrees between the thighs [105]. This asterixis seems to be provoked by involuntary contraction of the hip adductors against gravity and may be especially prominent in stuporous patients with hepatic encephalopathy. Asterixis is present with slight stupor and wanes as coma deepens. Unilateral asterixis may appear when a toxic encephalopathy coexists with a structural lesion of the motor pathways that project to the limb with asterixis. Unilateral asterixis may be seen contralateral to lesions of the mesencephalon, ventrolateral thalamus, primary motor cortex, or parietal lobe [17,28,33,89,103,127,160] or ipsilateral to lesions of the pons or medulla [114]. Episodes of lapses of postural control by the reticular formation may be responsible for midbrain asterixis. For this reason, midbrain asterixis has been considered a “segmental form of drop attack” [14]. Occasionally, bilateral asterixis may occur with bilateral lesions of the mid-pons [14] or with bilateral mesencephalic lesions [73].

Multifocal myoclonus consists of sudden, nonrhythmic twitching that affects first one muscle, then another, without any specific pattern except a tendency to involve the facial and proximal limb musculature. Causes of multifocal myoclonus include uremic and hyperosmolar-hyperglycemic encephalopathy, carbon dioxide narcosis, and a large dose of intravenous penicillin [47].
Generalized myoclonus, usually postanoxic, involves mainly the axial musculature, which contracts suddenly, making the patient jump with a certain periodicity [59]. It may also appear as irregular brief jerks in both face and limbs. The myoclonus, often stimulus sensitive, is most prominent in the first postresuscitation day and tends to abate spontaneously in subsequent days. The patients often have a burst-suppression pattern on EEGs and cerebral edema or infarcts on CT or MRI. Severe anoxic cortical and brainstem damage are the most common pathologic correlates of generalized myoclonus (also called myoclonic status), which carries a poor prognosis [111,184].

In addition to symmetric motor findings, hyperventilation or hypoventilation and the presence of acid–base imbalance are characteristic of metabolic coma. Respiratory depression often follows intoxication with opioid substances and darkens its prognosis [55].

Supratentorial Structural Lesions
To cause coma, supratentorial lesions must affect both cerebral hemispheres (e.g., massive bihemispheric or bilateral thalamic infarction) [74]. The clinical presentation of these lesions, and of subarachnoid hemorrhage, resembles in many aspects the presentation of metabolic disorders. For instance, in postoperative coma, often chalked to metabolic causes, ischemic brain lesions may play a major role [45]. However, many cerebral infarcts, even when bilateral, are often staggered, appear more abruptly than metabolic encephalopathies, and cause asymmetric motor signs, at least early in their course. Sudden onset of severe headache (“thunderclap headache”) and signs of meningeal irritation separate subarachnoid hemorrhage from metabolic encephalopathies [83]. Pituitary apoplexy can also present with headache and stupor [163].

The following discussion deals mainly with supratentorial lesions that cause mass effect and secondarily impair consciousness by compressing the diencephalic and upper brainstem structures. Prime examples are hemispheric tumors, subdural or intracerebral hemorrhage, and massive infarcts. When the intracranial pressure of the supratentorial compartment reaches a certain level, the brain substance is squeezed through the tentorial opening. Occasionally, the syndrome of transtentorial herniation may occur with minimal downward displacement of the upper midbrain [134]. Depending on the supratentorial location of the mass and the size of the tentorial opening, either of two clinically relevant syndromes may result: lateral (uncal) herniation or central (transtentorial) herniation.

LATERAL HERNIATION
In patients with a wide tentorial opening, lateral extracerebral or temporal lobe masses push the mesial temporal lobe (uncus anteriorly, parahippocampal gyrus posteriorly) between the ipsilateral aspect of the midbrain and the free edge of the tentorium (Fig. 23.6). As the tongue of herniated tissue compresses the third cranial nerve and posterior cerebral artery downward, the ipsilateral pupil becomes progressively dilated and responds sluggishly to light (Fig. 23.7). This stage can be rather brief and, depending on the size and acuteness of the lesion, it may last from a few minutes to several hours. Prompt recognition and removal (often surgical) of the offending agent is mandatory at this stage because the usual progression is deadly. The posterior cerebral artery, pinched against the tentorial edge by the herniated parahippocampal gyrus, becomes occluded, giving rise to a hemorrhagic mesial occipital infarct. The herniated hippocampus also pushes the midbrain against the rigid edge of the dura on the opposite side of the tentorial opening. This rigid structure carves out a notch (Kernohan notch) in the lateral aspect of the midbrain, interrupting the cerebral peduncle (particularly the fibers that project to the leg) on the side opposite the original temporal lobe lesion (see Fig. 23.6). This results in hemiparesis ipsilateral to the original lesion (Kernohan notch phenomenon). If misinterpreted, such hemiparesis may prove to be a false localizing sign. Therefore, when a dilated pupil and hemiparesis appear ipsilaterally, the original lesion is likely to be on the side of the abnormal pupil.

At this point, anteroposterior elongation and downward displacement of the midbrain have already caused tearing of the paramedian perforating vessels that feed the midbrain tegmentum. The consequent infarction and hemorrhages (Duret hemorrhages) that involve this structure render recovery almost impossible. The pupil that was larger may become a little smaller as the sympathetic pathway is damaged in the midbrain, while the other pupil becomes midsize and unresponsive. Oculomotor paresis appears, first in the eye originally involved, and shortly afterward in the other eye. Abduction may remain as the only elicitable eye movement.

Many causes of lateral herniation, such as hematomas, can be surgically treated. However, patients with a combination of absent pupillary, corneal, and oculocephalic reflexes and extensor posturing before craniotomy have a very poor prognosis [121]. Survivors of tentorial herniation may be left in a locked-in or chronic vegetative state [68] and may demonstrate oculomotor nerve dysfunction, internuclear ophthalmoplegia, vertical gaze paresis, pretectal signs [20,62], homonymous hemianopia or
occasional patients develop optic atrophy, indicating that a pregeniculate mechanism may also be operant [63].

CENTRAL HERNIATION
Unlike temporal masses, frontal, parietal, or occipital masses first compress the diencephalon, which, blindness [63], parkinsonism and other extrapyramidal syndromes, or spastic limb weakness [20]. A proportion of these patients may recover, particularly with aggressive therapy [120,183]. Bilateral visual loss after tentorial herniation is likely due to bilateral posterior cerebral artery compression or stretch resulting in bilateral occipital infarction; however, occasional patients develop optic atrophy, indicating that a pregeniculate mechanism may also be operant [63].

FIG. 23.6. Lateral transtentorial herniation: (A) basal view, (B) coronal view. In this example, a subdural hematoma is causing a marked shift of the midline structures and herniation of the parahippocampal gyrus through the tentorial notch. Occlusion of the posterior cerebral artery, which is pinched between the herniated hippocampal tissue and the rigid end of the tentorium, has resulted in medial temporo-occipital infarction. The midbrain is compressed against the contralateral free tentorial edge, causing a laceration of the crus cerebri (Kernohan notch). Stretching of the slender perforating branches of the basilar artery has produced petechial hemorrhages in the tegmentum of the midbrain (Duret hemorrhages).
rhages (Duret) in the tegmentum of the midbrain (first) and pons (afterward) (Fig. 23.8). Paralleling the pathologic changes of central herniation, the clinical picture reflects an orderly rostrocaudal progression of brainstem damage. The characteristic evolution of the clinical picture has
been termed the central syndrome of rostral-caudal deterioration [118]. Description of this syndrome enables one to review the characteristic clinical findings with lesions at the different levels of the brainstem (Fig. 23.9). In acute illness, MRI changes of brain herniation (incisural or foramen magnum) tend to parallel the clinical signs of brain herniation; in chronic cases, clinical and MRI scans correlate less well, with MRI sometimes revealing major degrees of anatomic herniation well in advance of clinical abnormalities [126].

**Early Diencephalic Stage.** Impaired attention and somnolence appearing in a patient with a supratentorial mass usually herald the beginning of this stage. The respiratory pattern is normal but is punctuated by deep sighs and yawns. In the periods of greater somnolence, the pupils become tiny but react to light, whereas the eyes become slightly divergent, moving slowly from side to side (roving eye movements). Attempts to perform the doll’s eye maneuver may provide enough of a stimulus to awaken the patient, and quick eye movements (saccades) are then elicited rather than the slow adrenergic movements of the oculocephalic reflex. For the same reason, caloric stimulation may induce nystagmus. The patient resists passive motion of the limbs (paratonia), may have grasp reflexes, and brushes off appropriately any noxious stimulus. Plantar responses are usually bilaterally extensor.

**Late Diencephalic Stage.** At this stage, the patient cannot be aroused. Cheyne-Stokes respiration replaces normal breathing. The pupils remain small and reactive. Roving eye movements have disappeared, but the doll’s eye maneuver or caloric stimulation easily elicits full and conjugate deviation of the eyes. As the process advances, however, tectal dysfunction may result in restriction of upward gaze. Light painful stimuli fail to elicit any response; heavier ones may induce decorticate posturing, which appears earlier on the side of a previous hemiparesis, opposite the supratentorial lesion. Plantar responses are bilaterally extensor.

Proper diagnosis and treatment at this stage of the syndrome of central herniation may still result in recovery of neurologic function. Once the clinical picture evolves into the next stage (caused by hemorrhages and infarction of the midbrain tegmentum), the prognosis is very poor, except in children.

**Midbrain–Upper Pons Stage.** The patient now breathes rather quickly and evenly. Temperature oscillations are common, and an occasional patient may develop diabetes insipidus because of stretching of the median eminence of the hypothalamus. The pupils become midsized, unequal, and irregular, often pear-shaped and eccentric. Terminal generalized anoxia causes a systemic release of epinephrine, and the pupils may be transiently dilated. The doll’s eye maneuver and caloric testing elicit restricted or no vertical eye movements. The eyes often move disconjugately in both the horizontal and the vertical planes. Bilateral impairment of adduction may reflect dysfunction of both third nerve nuclei, of the medial longitudinal fasciculi, or both. Noxious stimuli give rise to decerebrate posturing.

**Lower Pontine Stage.** Respiration becomes quicker and shallower. Apneustic breathing, common with primary ischemic lesions of this area, is infrequent in patients with transtentorial herniation, perhaps because more medially located structures are preferentially damaged. The pupils remain unchanged from the previous stage, but eye movements are now unobtainable. Decerebrate rigidity decreases. Plantar stimulation may elicit not only bilateral Babinski signs but also withdrawal of the legs, with flexion at the knee and hip.

**Medullary Stage.** In this agonal stage, ataxic breathing soon gives way to apnea. The blood pressure drops, and the pulse becomes irregular [125].

Large acute supratentorial lesions, particularly massive intraventricular hemorrhage, may cause a quick decompensation of brainstem function, leading to respiratory failure without the step-wise progression described above. Smaller intraventricular hemorrhages may impair reflex eye movements in the horizontal and vertical planes while the patient’s level of consciousness is only mildly depressed. This phenomenon may be secondary to the action of the blood on the floor of the fourth ventricle and may have played a role in an unusual case of transient locked-in syndrome with intraventricular hemorrhage and a transtentorial herniation [183].

Although the clinical deterioration of patients with supratentorial masses often follows the pattern described above, early depression of the level of alertness in patients with an acute hemispheric mass may be more related to distortion of the brain by horizontal rather than vertical displacement of brain tissue [132]. Ropper showed that a horizontal pineal body shift of 0 to 3 mm from the midline was associated with alertness, 3 to 4 mm with drowsiness, 6 to 8.5 mm with stupor, and 8 to 13 mm with coma [132]. With extratemporal masses, the perimesencephalic cistern was often widened, rather than filled by herniated medial temporal lobe. On coronal MRI images, horizontal displacement of the midline of the brain at the level of the incisura correlated better than vertical displacement with the level of alertness...
FIG. 23.9. Clinical findings with central transtentorial herniation, from early (A) to late (D) stages. (Modified from McNealy DE, Plum F. Brainstem dysfunction with supratentorial mass lesions. Arch Neurol 1962;7:10. Copyright 1962, American Medical Association.) (continued)
The Localization of Lesions Causing Coma

C. Midbrain–upper pons

- Respiratory pattern: \[ \text{or} \]
- No stimulation
- Reaction to light
- Ciliospinal reflex
- Caloric stimulation
- Noxious stimulation elicits decerebrate posturing
- Doll's eye maneuver
- Plantar stimulation may elicit Babinski signs and leg withdrawal with flexion at the knee and hip

D. Lower pons–upper medulla

- Respiratory pattern: \[ \text{or} \]
- No stimulation
- Reaction to light
- Ciliospinal reflex
- Decreased rigidity of decerebrate posturing
- Caloric stimulation
- Doll's eye maneuver

FIG. 23.9. (Continued)
The studies do not disprove that anteroposterior elongation of the midbrain, with subsequent ischemia of the midbrain tegmentum, may play a role in the genesis of coma and subsequent brainstem deterioration, as outlined above.

As far as the prognosis of lobar hemorrhages, a Glasgow coma score <14 predicted deterioration [40]. Initial CT characteristics predictive of deterioration include hemorrhage volume >60 mL, shift of the septum pellucidum, effacement of the contralateral ambient cistern, and widening of the contralateral temporal horn [40]. Deeper putaminal hemorrhages fare worse when accompanied by hydrocephalus and the patient has a Glasgow Coma Scale score less than 8 [116]. The Glasgow coma scale is widely used [164], but a new scale (FOUR) predicts better the outcome of the more severely impaired patients [180].

Some patients develop severe brain edema and coma after minor head trauma with a lucid interval. A disturbance of ionic channels has been suspected because this syndrome is more frequent in families with familial hemiplegic migraine, known to be associated with abnormalities of the calcium channel. A S218 L mutation in the CACNA1A calcium channel has been reported in some of these patients [72].

False localizing signs with supratentorial masses may mislead the observer about the hemisphere involved (e.g., hemiparesis ipsilateral to the lesion due to Kernohan notch) or falsely localize the primary process to the posterior fossa. The latter occurs mainly with lesions located in the midline (e.g., hydrocephalus) or in areas of the frontal and temporal lobes that are clinically “silent.” Extracerebral lesions (e.g., subdural hematoma) in the elderly may behave in a similar manner. These lesions fail to cause focal deficits but raise the pressure of the intracranial contents and produce cranial nerve dysfunction that may be mistaken for evidence of a posterior fossa lesion. Sixth nerve palsy and papilledema are the commonest false localizing signs, but other ophthalmoplegias, trigeminal neuralgia or numbness, unilateral or bilateral deafness, facial palsy, and even weakness in the distribution of the ninth to twelfth cranial nerves may appear as a consequence of raised intracranial pressure with a supratentorial lesion.

**Subtentorial Structural Lesions**

Destructive lesions (e.g., infarcts, small hemorrhages) of the brainstem can be easily localized clinically. Compressive lesions that cause coma tend to be associated with brisk involvement of the cerebellum or fourth ventricle. Cerebellar hemorrhage is the prime example [187]. Early in the clinical course, occipital headache, vomiting, and ataxia are usually prominent. In the process of rostrocaudal deterioration characteristic of downward transtentorial herniation, all the structures at a particular brainstem level tend to be affected at the same time. This does not happen with compressive lesions of the posterior fossa. Unless massive, these lesions affect one level more than others, often asymmetrically, giving rise to preferentially unilateral brainstem and cerebellar signs.

Lesions that compress the upper brainstem may cause upward transtentorial herniation of the tectum of the midbrain and of the anterior cerebellar lobe, giving rise to signs of midbrain dysfunction with coma, hyperventilation, fixed pupils, and vertical ophthalmoplegia. Lower lesions impinge on the pontine tegmentum, causing somnolence, pinpoint pupils that react briskly to light, oculoparetic nystagmus on lateral gaze, and truncal ataxia. Appendicular ataxia may be so mild as to pass unnoticed. As pontine function becomes worse, horizontal gaze disappears and cannot be elicited with the doll’s eye maneuver or caloric testing, whereas impairment of vertical eye movements clearly lags behind. With lower lesions that impinge mainly on the medulla, respiratory ataxia evolving to apnea and circulatory abnormalities precede changes in the level of alertness. The medulla is particularly resistant to infarction, spontaneous hemorrhages, and even traumatic lesions [179]. However, it is preferentially affected in Listeria monocytogenes rhombencephalitis [171] and in Leigh disease [142,188].

Deterioration with pontine hemorrhages depends on the cause of the lesion. Bleeding from cavernous angiomas has a much better prognosis than hypertensive hemorrhage [122]. More important for surgical decision making are prognostic factors with cerebellar hemorrhages. Anatomic findings that predict deterioration with cerebellar hemorrhage include displacement of the fourth ventricle, brain stem deformity, hydrocephalus and compression of the basal cisterns [71,158]. In some series, a hematoma size of more than 3 cm also worsens prognosis [158]. Clinically, patients fare poorly who have abnormal corneal and ocuulocephalic responses, a Glasgow coma score less than 8, and motor response less than localization to pain [158].

Mass lesions in the posterior fossa may cause downward herniation of the cerebellar tonsils through the foramen magnum, with subsequent infarction of the tonsils, medulla, and even upper cervical spinal cord. Generalized anoxia and circulatory failure consequent to medullary dysfunction play a role in the genesis of these infarcts.
When patients with preexisting brain stem lesions, most often from strokes or multiple sclerosis, suffer an anoxic or metabolic insult, they may lose all brain stem reflexes transiently [129]. The diagnosis of irreversible damage of the brain stem has to be done more cautiously in these patients.

Psychogenic Unresponsiveness

The patient may hold the eyes forcibly closed and resist eyelid opening or may keep the eyes open in a fixed stare, interrupted by quick blinks. The pupils, which are of normal size and position, react to light unless a cycloplegic drug has been instilled into them. The doll’s eye maneuver elicits random or no eye movements. Caloric testing is more helpful because it gives rise to classic vestibular nystagmus with a quick component that requires activity of the frontal eye fields. This quick component is, conversely, absent in comatose patients. Muscle tone and reflexes are normal. The patient may hyperventilate or breathe normally. Psychogenic unresponsiveness often recurs and as such is frequently misdiagnosed as an epileptic or migrainous disorder [29,147,152].

Diagnosis of Death Caused by Brain Destruction

Although the term “brain death” has been used for years and continues to be widely used, it is not helpful in the clinical setting. Speaking about “brain death” often confuses the families of the so-called brain-dead individual, who end up by asking their physicians whether their loved one—forget about his or her brain—is dead or not [154]. Furthermore, “brain death” implies that in the process of dying there is “brain death,” caused by unavoidable events, and the real death, caused by the physicians turning off ventilation support with the connivance of the relatives. This false impression, source of delays, expenses and guilt, can be avoided by clear explanations and the use of a term similar to the one heading this section.

The American Academy of Neurology criteria for the diagnosis of death caused by brain destruction in adults [186] recommends the following steps:

1. **The clinical evaluation (prerequisites).**
   A. Establish irreversible and proximate cause of coma. The cause of coma can usually be established by history, examination, neuroimaging, and laboratory tests. Exclude the presence of a CNS-depressant drug effect by history, drug screen, calculation of clearance using five times the drug’s half-life (assuming normal hepatic and renal function), or, if available, drug plasma levels below the therapeutic range. Prior use of hypothermia (e.g., after cardiopulmonary resuscitation for cardiac arrest) may delay drug metabolism. The legal alcohol limit for driving (blood alcohol content 0.08%) is a practical threshold below which an examination to determine death could reasonably proceed. There should be no recent administration or continued presence of neuromuscular blocking agents (this can be determined by the presence of a train of four twitches with maximal ulnar nerve stimulation). There should be no severe electrolyte, acid–base, or endocrine disturbance (defined by severe acidosis or laboratory values markedly deviated from the norm).

B. **Achieve normal core temperature.** In most patients, a warming blanket is needed to raise the body temperature and maintain a normal or near-normal temperature (36°C). After the initial equilibration of arterial CO₂ with mixed central venous CO₂, the PaCO₂ rises steeply, but then more slowly when the body metabolism raises PaCO₂. To avoid delaying an increase in PaCO₂, normal or near-normal core temperature is preferred during the apnea test.

C. **Achieve normal systolic blood pressure.** Hypotension from loss of peripheral vascular tone or hypovolemia (diabetes insipidus) is common; vasopressors or vasopressin are often required. Neurologic examination is usually reliable with a systolic blood pressure of ≥100 mm Hg.

D. **Perform one neurologic examination (sufficient to pronounce death in most US states).** Only one neurologic examination should be sufficient to pronounce death if a certain period of time (in practice, usually several hours) has passed since the onset of the brain insult, to exclude the possibility of recovery. However, some US state statutes require two examinations separated by a certain amount of time. Legally, all physicians are allowed to determine death in most US states. Neurologists, neurosurgeons, and intensive care specialists may have specialized expertise. It seems reasonable to require that all physicians making a determination of death due to brain destruction be intimately familiar with the diagnostic criteria and have demonstrated competence in this complex examination. “Brain death” statutes in the United
States differ by state and institution. Some US state or hospital guidelines require the examiner to have certain expertise.

II. The clinical evaluation (neurologic assessment).

A. Coma. Patients must lack all evidence of responsiveness. Eye opening or eye movement to noxious stimuli is absent. Noxious stimuli should not produce a motor response other than spinally mediated reflexes. The clinical differentiation of spinal responses from retained motor responses associated with brain activity is discussed earlier in this chapter, in the section on “Motor Activity of the Body and Limbs.”

B. Absence of brainstem reflexes.

a. Absence of pupillary response to a bright light is documented in both eyes. Usually the pupils are fixed in a midsize or dilated position (4–9 mm). Constricted pupils suggest the possibility of drug intoxication. When uncertainty exists, a magnifying glass should be used.

b. Absence of ocular movements using oculocephalic testing and oculovestibular reflex testing. Once the integrity of the cervical spine is ensured, the head is briskly rotated horizontally and vertically. There should be no movement of the eyes relative to head movement. The oculovestibular reflex is tested by irrigating each ear with ice water (caloric testing) after the patency of the external auditory canal is confirmed. The head is elevated to 30 degrees. Each external auditory canal is irrigated (one ear at a time) with approximately 50 mL of ice water. Movement of the eyes should be absent during 1 minute of observation. Both sides are tested, with an interval of several minutes.

c. Absence of corneal reflex. Absent corneal reflex is demonstrated by touching the cornea with a piece of tissue paper, a cotton swab, or squirts of water. No eyelid movement should be seen.

d. Absence of facial muscle movement to a noxious stimulus. Deep pressure on the condyles at the level of the temporomandibular joints and deep pressure at the supraorbital ridge should produce no grimacing or facial muscle movement.

e. Absence of the pharyngeal and tracheal reflexes. The pharyngeal or gag reflex is tested by stimulating the posterior pharynx with a tongue blade or suction device. The tracheal reflex is most reliably tested by examining the cough response to tracheal suctioning. The catheter should be inserted into the trachea and advanced to the level of the carina followed by one or two suctioning passes.

C. Apnea.

a. Absence of a breathing drive is tested with a CO₂ challenge. Documentation of an increase in PaCO₂ above normal levels is typical practice. It requires preparation before the test.

b. Prerequisites: (i) normotension, (ii) normothermia, (iii) euvolemia, (iv) eucapnia (PaCO₂ 35–45 mm Hg), (v) the absence of hypoxia, and (vi) no prior evidence of CO₂ retention (i.e., chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, severe obesity).

c. Procedure:

1. Adjust vasopressors to a systolic blood pressure ≥100 mm Hg.
2. Preoxygenate for at least 10 minutes with 100% oxygen to a PaO₂ ≥200 mm Hg.
3. Reduce ventilation frequency to 10 breaths per minute to eucapnia.
4. Reduce positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) to 5 cm H₂O (oxygen desaturation with decreasing PEEP may suggest difficulty with apnea testing).
5. If pulse oximetry oxygen saturation remains >95%, obtain a baseline blood gas (PaO₂, PaCO₂, pH, bicarbonate, base excess).
6. Disconnect the patient from the ventilator.
7. Preserve oxygenation (e.g., place an insufflations catheter through the endotracheal tube to a point near the level of the carina and deliver 100% O₂ at 6 L/min).
8. Look closely for respiratory movements for 5 to 10 minutes. Respiration is defined as abdominal or chest excursions and may include a brief gasp.
9. Abort if systolic blood pressure decreases to <90 mm Hg.
10. Abort if oxygen saturation measured by pulse oximetry is <85% for >30 seconds. Retry procedure with T-piece, CPAP 10 cm H₂O, and 100% O₂ 12 L/min.
11. If no respiratory drive is observed, repeat blood gas (PaO₂, PaCO₂, pH, bicarbonate, base excess) after approximately 8 minutes.
12. If respiratory movements are absent and arterial PCO₂ is ≥60 mm Hg (or 20 mm Hg increase in arterial PCO₂ over a baseline normal arterial PCO₂), the apnea test result is positive (i.e., supports the clinical diagnosis of death).

13. If the test is inconclusive but the patient is hemodynamically stable during the procedure, it may be repeated for a longer period of time (10–15 minutes) after the patient is again adequately preoxygenated.

An apnea test can be performed in up to about 90% of patients suspected of death by brain destruction [185]. In some cases, ancillary tests, such as electroencephalography or neuroimaging, are needed. But although ancillary tests can render impressive findings (Fig. 23.10) and may help the patient’s relatives to understand the nature of the event, the diagnosis most often rests on the clinical evaluation [178].

References


FIG. 23.10. 99mTc HM-PAO brain perfusion studies of a patient (left) and a heart-beating cadaver having undergone death by brain destruction a few hours prior to the scan (right). Scintigraphy was obtained from anterior, posterior and both lateral projections, after injection in the ICU and a brief scanning procedure at the nuclear medicine service. Note that in the corpse, instead of normal brain perfusion, there is an empty area outlined by the skull. In the corpse, the activity in extracerebral tissues appears higher than in the patient because the threshold has been lowered for the cadaver study, to increase sensitivity for the detection of any remaining brain activity. Images courtesy of Dr. Javier Arbizu, from the Nuclear Medicine Service of the Clínica Universidad de Navarra, Pamplona, Spain.
Localization in Clinical Neurology


The Localization of Lesions Causing Coma

101. Nagaratnam N, McNeil C, Gilhotra JS. Akinetism and mixed transcortical aphasia following...


The Localization of Lesions Causing Coma


Alertness
anatomic substrate of, 604–605
disturbances of, 442–443
and sleep. See under Hypothalamus and pituitary gland
Alexander's law, 265
Alexia
with agraphia, 520, 520f
without agraphia, 519–520, 520f
Anton syndrome, 520–521
for braille, 520
for Japanese kanji, 520
due to parietooccipital lesions, 519
Alexithymia, 510
Alien hand sign, 533
Alien limb sign, 533
Allesthesia, 528
Allocentric spatial neglect, 508
Alloesthesia, 528
Alternate cover test, 177–178, 178f
Alternating abducens hemiplegia, 393
Amacrine cells, 133
Amaurosis fugax, 572
Anmestic syndromes, 512
Amygdala, 512
central nucleus of, 560
Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, 239
Anatomy
of anterior thoracic nerves, 30
of axillary nerve, 30–31, 30f
of basal ganglia, 455–457, 456f, 457f
of brachial plexus, 75–76, 75f
of cerebellum, 403–406, 404f
of cerebral hemispheres, 493–500, 494f, 495f, 496f,
497f, 498–499f, 500f, 501f
of dorsal scapular nerve, 27
of facial nerve, 561–562, 561f
of femoral nerve, 48–51, 49f
of genitofemoral nerves, 47
of gluteal nerves, 53
of hypoglossal nerve, 377
of hypothalamus and pituitary gland, 419, 420f, 421f,
422f
of iliohypogastric, 47
of ilioinguinal nerves, 47
of intercostobrachial nerve, 47
of lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 52–53
of long thoracic nerve, 27–28, 28f
of lumbar plexus, 81–82
of median cutaneous nerves, 46
of median nerve, 32–34

Note: Page locators followed by f and t indicates figure and table respectively.

Abadie sign, 109
Abdominal dyskinesias, 463
Abducens nerve (cranial nerve VI), 198–204, 199f
localization of, 199f
Abducens nerve palsy, 326
Abductor digiti minimi (C8–T1), 39
Abductor hallucis syndrome, 59
Abductor pollicis brevis (C8–T1), 34
Abductor pollicis longus (C7–C8), 44
Aberrant regeneration, 192
Abetalipoproteinemia, 192
Abnormal saccadic velocity, 239–240
Acalculia, 530–531
Accessory deep peroneal nerve, 56
Accessory nerve, branches to, 73
Accessory optic system (AOS), 222
Achromatopsia, 516
Acoustic neuromas, 349
Acquired horizontal diplopia, 176f
Acquired monocular pendular nystagmus, 260
Acquired pendular nystagmus, 262
Acquired vertical diplopia, 198
Action myoclonus, 471
Action myoclonus renal failure syndrome (AMRF), 473
Acute acquired comitant esotropia, 242
Acute bilateral ophthalmoplegia, 204
Acute esotropia, 242
Acute hyperthermia, 423
Acute labyrinthitis, 352
Acute thalamic esotropia, 203, 242
Acute vestibular neuronitis, 352
Acute vocal cord paralysis, 366
Adductor pollicis (C8–T1), 39
Adie tonic pupil syndrome, 213, 215
Agitation
delirium syndrome, 510
Agnosia
apperceptive visual, 516
associative visual, 516
auditory, 521–522
auditory verbal, 348
color, 516–517
finger, 529
landmark, 518
prosopoaffective, 448
Agraphia, 530
alexia and, 519–520, 520f
pure, 538
Akathisia, 464
Akinetic mutism, 424, 603
Akinetic mutism, 424, 603

631
Anatomy (Continued)
of medulla oblongata, 385, 386f
  of mesencephalon, 395–397, 396f
  of musculocutaneous nerve, 31, 31f
  of obturator nerve, 51f, 52
  of olfactory nerve, 127
  of pons, 392–393
  of posterior femoral cutaneous nerve, 53
  of pudendal nerve, 53–54
  of radial nerves, 43–44, 43f
  of smooth pursuit system, 221–223, 222f
  of spinal accessory nerve, 369–370, 370f
  of spinal cord, 99–102
  of spinal nerve and roots, 89
  of subclavian nerve, 27
  of subscapular nerves, 29
  of suprascapular nerve, 28–29, 28f
  of thalamus, 435–439, 436f
  of thoracodorsal nerve, 29
  of trigeminal nerve, 305–308, 309f
  of ulnar nerve, 38–39, 38f
  of vagus nerve, 363f, 363–364
  See also Sciatic nerve
Anconeus muscles (C6–C8), 43
Anesthesia dolorosa, 444
Aneurysm, 203
Anisocoria
  simple, 208
  See also Pupillary inequality
Anomia
  semantic, 523, 524
  word-selection, 523
Anorexia nervosa, 427
Anosmia, 127–130
Anosodiaphoria, 528
Anosognosia, 528
Ansae hypoglottica, 73, 377
Anterior (frontal) apraxias, 532–534
Anterior alexia, 519
Anterior cerebral artery (ACA), 568, 574–575
Anterior choroidal artery (ACChA), 568, 574
Anterior cingulate cortex, 540
Anterior horn cell syndromes, 109–110, 109f
Anterior inferior cerebellar artery (AICA), 235, 323, 407.
  See also Inferior cerebellar infarct
Anterior interosseous nerve syndrome, 35
Anterior ischemic optic neuropathy (AION), 157,
  163–164, 164t
Anterior opercular syndrome, 535
Anterior spinal artery, 102
Anterior thalamic region, 449
Anterior thoracic nerves (C5–T1), 30, 76
Anterior tibial nerve syndrome, 61
Anterior vestibular arteries, 344
Anterograde amnesia, 512
Anterolateral thalamic territory. See Tuberothalamic
  territory of thalamus
Anti-glutamic acid decarboxylase (anti-GAD), 234
Anti-GQ1b antibody syndrome, 204
Anti-hypertensive medications, 208
Antisaccades, 224
Anton syndrome, 501, 520–521
Anxietas tibiarum, 475
Apathy, 428
Ape hand, 34
Aphasia, 519
  Broca's, 537
  classification of, 526t
  conduction, 524, 525
  frontoparietal, 535–538, 536f
  global, 537
  motor, 535–538, 536f
  optic, 516
  posterior, 522–527, 523f
  thalamic, 448
  transcortical motor, 538
  transcortical sensory, 525–526
Apnea, 624–625, 625f
Apneustic breathing, 606
Aponeurotic ptosis, 275t
Apperceptive visual agnosia, 516
Applause sign, 482
Apraclonidine drops, 208
Apractic agraphia, 529
Apraxia, 532f
  anterior (frontal), 532–534
  dressing, 529
  of eyelid opening, 274, 274t
  opercular syndrome, 535
  paratonia (gegenhalten), 534
  parietal, 531–532
  primitive reflexes, 534–535
  corneomandibular reflex,
  grasp reflex, 535
  palmomental reflex, 535
  rooting reflexes, 535
  pseudobulbar palsy, 535
  pyramidal weakness, 534
  of speech, 534
Arcade of Frohse, 44
Archierebellum, 403
Archicortex, 496
Arcuato cerebellar tract, 405
Argyll-Robertson pupil, 215
Arterial blood supply
  anterior cerebral artery, 568, 574–575
  anterior choroidal artery (ACChA), 568, 574
  anterior cingulate cortex, 540
  anterior horn cell syndromes, 109–110, 109f
  anterior inferior cerebellar artery (AICA), 235, 323, 407.
  See also Inferior cerebellar infarct
Arterial spinal cord infarction, 110–111, 112t
Arterial supply. See Vascular supply of spinal cord
Arteritis, 163
Arthroscopy, 51
Arthrotomy, 51
Ascending reticular activating system (ARAS), 604, 605f
Ascending tracts of spinal cord, 100–101
Asculitides, 355
Associative visual agnosia, 516
Index 633

Asterognosis, 527
Asterixis, 615
Asymmetric binocular eye oscillations. See Monocular eye oscillations
Ataxia, 407–408
  acute, causes of, 408t
  chronic, causes of, 409t
  recurrent, causes of, 408t
Ataxia telangiectasia, 230
Ataxia with oculomotor apraxia type 2 (AOA2), 237
Ataxia-telangiectasia, 234
Ataxic breathing, 607
Ataxic hemiparesis, 394, 585
Athetosis, 464
Athetotic dystonia, 464
Attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), 239
Attention disturbances, 503, 505f, 507f
  nonspatial inattention, 508–509
  unilateral inattention
    alesthesias, 507
    extinction, 506
    hemiakinesia, 507, 508
    hemi-inattention, 506
    sensory, 507–508
Attentional dyslexia, 519
Atypical sensory syndrome, 528
Auctioner’s jaw, 465
Auditory agnosia, 521–522
Auditory hallucinations, 521
Auditory pathways. See under Vestibulocochlear nerve
Auditory verbal agnosia, 348
Auricular nerve, 73, 74f
Autonomic disturbances, 443. See also under Hypothalamus and pituitary gland
Autonomic dysfunction, 565
  cardinal signs of, 561t
  clinical presentation of, 562t
Autonomic dysreflexia, 117
Autonomic nervous system (ANS), 558f, 559t
  enteric nervous system, 559–563
  parasympathetic nervous system, 559, 560t
  sympathetic nervous system, 557–558
  See also Central autonomic network (CAN)
Autonomous neurogenic bladder, 121
Autosomal recessive ataxias, 408
Autosomal recessive myopathy, 182
Axillary nerve (C5–C6), 30–31, 30f
Axillary pain, 94

Babinski-Nageotte syndrome, 391
Balint syndrome, 237, 518
Ballismus, 463–464
Basal ganglia
  anatomy of, 456f, 457f
    nigral afferents and efferents, 456–457
    pallidal afferents and efferents, 455–456
    striatal efferents, 455
    striatum, input into, 455
  dyskinesias
    abdominal, 463
    akathisia, 464

athetosis, 464
ballismus, 463–464
chorea, 458–461, 462t
dystonia, 464–466, 467t
myoclonus, 471, 472t, 473–474
orofacial, 462, 463t
painful legs and moving toes syndrome, 474–475
paroxysmal, 470–471
periodic limb movements of sleep, 475
restless legs syndrome, 475
tardive, 461
tics, 475–476
torticollis, 466, 468
tremor, 476–478

tardive, 461

tics, 475–476
torticollis, 466, 468
tremor, 476–478
hypokinetic and bradykinetic disorders
  cortical-basal ganglionic degeneration, 481
  lesions of, 457–458
  lewy body dementia, 483
  multiple systems atrophy, 483
  paraneoplastic movement disorders, 484
  Parkinsonism, 478–480
  progressive supranuclear palsy, 481
  stiff-man syndrome, 480–481
Basilar communicating artery, 439
Basilar syndrome, 398
  behavioral abnormalities, 398
  disorders of eye movements, 398
  motor and sensory deficits, 398
  pupillary abnormalities, 398
  visual defects, 398
Basket cells, 403
Bassen-Kornzweig syndrome, 192
Batson’s plexus, 103
Beanie cap, 26
Beevor’s sign, 94, 117
Behavioral abnormalities, 398
Bell’s phenomenon, 325, 327, 329, 613
Belly dancer’s dyskinesia, 463
Belt projection, 343
Benedikt syndrome, 188, 577. See also Dorsal cranial nerve III fascicular syndromes
Benign alternating anisocoria, 216
Benign hereditary chorea (BHC), 459
Benign paroxysmal positioning vertigo (BPPV), 270, 350–351
Benign paroxysmal vertigo of childhood, 355
Bent-knee pulling test, 94
Bernhardt-Roth syndrome, 53
Biballismus, 463
Bielschowsky’s head-tilt test, 176
Big toe drop, 60
Bilateral alitudinal defects, 147
Bilateral anterior interosseous nerve syndromes, 35
Bilateral centrobasal infarcts, 394
Bilateral ciliary ganglion schema, 213
Bilateral facial nerve palsy, 330t
Bilateral homonymous hemianopia, 156
Bilateral occipital lobe lesions, 155
Bilateral recurrent laryngeal palsy, 366
Bilateral ring defects, 148

Index 633
Binasal hemianopias, 151
Binocular symmetric conjugate eye oscillations, 262
Binocular symmetric jerk in eccentric gaze, 269–271
Binocular symmetric jerk nystagmus, 264–266
Binocular symmetric pendular conjugate eye oscillations, 262–264
acquired pendular nystagmus, 262
congenital nystagmus, 262
head-shaking nystagmus, 263
horizontal pendular pseudonymstagnus, 263
latent nystagmus, 262
manifest latent nystagmus, 262
palatal myoclonus or tremor, 263
Binocular vertical diplopia, 177t
Bipolar cells, 153
Bitemporal field defects, 148
Bitemporal hemianopia, 143
Blepharospasm, 332, 333, 469
Blind spot enlargement, 145
Blink reflex, 310
Blinking, 311, 609
Bogorad syndrome, 561
Border zone ischemia, 583
Botulism, 181
Bowler's thumb, 38
Bow-tie nystagmus, 268
Brachial mononeuropathies, 8
Brachial plexus, 75f
anatomy of, 75–76
brachial mononeuropathies, 8
medial cord of, 80
lesions of, 76–78
of lateral cord, 80
of medial cord, 80
of posterior cord, 80
lower plexus paralysis, 79–80
medial cord of, 80
middle plexus paralysis, 79
neuralgic amyotrophy, 78
posterior cord of, 80
thoracic outlet syndrome
neuropathic signs and symptoms, 81
vascular signs and symptoms, 80–81
total plexus paralysis, 78–79
upper plexus paralysis, 79
Brachialis muscles (C5–C6), 44
Brachioradialis muscles (C5–C6), 44
Brachium conjunctivum, 406
Brachium pontis, 406
Bradykinesia, 479
Bradykinetic disorders, hypokinetic and. See under
Basal ganglia
Braille, alexia with, 520
Brain death. See Death by brain destruction
Brainstem
lesions, 348–349, 365
medulla oblongata
anatomy of, 385, 386f
medullary syndromes, 387–392, 390t
vascular supply of, 385–387
mesencephalon
anatomy of, 395–397, 396f
mesencephalic syndromes, 397–398
vascular supply of, 397
pons
anatomy of, 392–393
pontine syndromes, 393–395
vascular supply of, 393
reflexes, absence of, 624
universal dissociative anesthesia syndrome, 395
See also Pontine syndromes, classification of
Breast cancer, 366
Broca's aphasia, 537
Broca's area, 536, 536f
Brodmann's cytoarchitectural map, 496, 497f
Brown's superior oblique tendon sheath syndrome, 180
Brown-Séquard syndrome, 106
Bruns nystagmus, 269
Burners, 79
Cacosmia, 131
Callosal apraxia, 532
Callosal syndrome, 540–541
Caloric balance and feeding behavior
emaciation
anorexia nervosa, 427
diencephalic syndrome of infancy, 427
lateral hypothalamic syndrome, 427
obesity, 426
Kleine-Levin syndrome, 427
Laurence-Moon-Bardet-Biedl syndrome, 427
Prader-Willi syndrome, 427
Caloric testing, 219–220
Camptocormia (bent spine syndrome), 480
Canal of Guyon, 39
Canalithiasis, 350
Cancer-associated retinopathy (CAR) syndrome, 145
Canine tooth syndrome, 180
Cardiac manifestations, 424–425
Cardiovascular disorders, 355
Carotid artery bifurcation, CT angiogram
of, 568f
Carotid artery dissection, signs and symptoms of, 211t
Carotid artery syndrome, 571–574, 572t
Carotid terminus, 572
Carotid cavernous sinus fistula (CCF), 204
Carotid sinus nerve, 361
Carpal tunnel syndrome, 35–36
Carpet carrier's palsy, 32
Catamenial sciatica, 58
Cauda equina, 99, 118
Caudal vermis syndrome, 412
Caudate hemorrhage, 590
Cavernous internal carotid artery aneurysms, 591
Cavernous malformations, 111
Cavernous sinus, 184, 185f, 191, 314
Cecocentral defect, 144
Cerebral aneurysms, 590
  cavernous internal carotid artery aneurysms unruptured, 591
  middle cerebral artery aneurysms, 591
  posterior communicating artery aneurysms, 591–592
  vertebralbasilar artery aneurysms, 591–592
Cerebral arteries, syndromes of, 569
  anterior cerebral artery syndrome, 574–575
  anterior choroidal artery syndrome, 574
  carotid artery syndrome, 571–574, 572t
  middle cerebral artery syndrome, 575–576
  border zone ischemia, 583
  posterior cerebral artery syndrome, 580–581
  thalamic infarction syndromes, 581–582, 582f
  vertebrobasilar artery syndromes, 576–580
  transient ischemic attacks, 571, 571t

Cerebral hemispheres
  anatomy of, 493–500, 494f, 495f, 496f, 497f, 498–499t,
  500f, 501f
  symptoms and signs of, 500–503, 504–505t
  attention, disturbances of, 503–506
  cerebral hemispheric lesions, 542–543t
  dementia, 541, 542t
  emotional disturbances, 509–511
  gait disorders, 541
  interhemispheric disconnection disturbances, 540–541
  memory disturbances, 511–514, 513f
  pseudodementia, 542t
  sensory disturbances, 531
  vegetative disturbances, 503
  See also Apraxias

Cerebral hemorrhage syndromes
  caudate hemorrhage, 590
  cerebellar hemorrhage, 589
  general features of, 586–587
  intracerebral hemorrhage, definition of, 585
  internal capsular hemorrhage, 590
  intraventricular hemorrhage, 590
  lateral tegmental brainstem hemorrhage, 590
  lobar hemorrhage, 587–588
  medullary hemorrhage, 590
  mesencephalic hemorrhage, 590
  pontine hemorrhage, 589
    classic type, 590
    dorsolateral tegmental syndrome, 590
    hemipontine syndrome, 590
  putaminal hemorrhage
    anterior type, 587
    lateral type, 587
    massive, 587
    middle type, 587
    posterolateral type, 587
    posteromedial type, 587
  spontaneous intracerebral hemorrhage, etiologies of, 586t
  thalamic hemorrhage
    anterior type, 589
    anterolateral type, 588
Cerebral hemorrhage syndromes (Continued)
dorsal type, 588
dorsal type, 589
global type, 589
medial type, 588
posterior lateral type, 588, 589
posterioromedial type, 589
Cerebral lesions, 348
Cerebral loop, 120
Cerebral polyopia, 174
Cerebrocerebellum, 405
Cereulocerebellar tract, 406
Cervical plexus
cutaneous branches of, 74f
great auricular nerve, 73
greater occipital nerve, 73
lesser occipital nerve, 73
transverse colli, 73
lesions of, 73–75
muscular branches of, 74f
accessory nerve, branches to, 73
ansa hypoglossi, 73
levator scapulae, branches to, 73
middle scalene, branches to, 73
phrenic nerve, 73
Cervical roots, lesions affecting, 90, 92t
C1 lesions, 92
C2 lesions, 92
C3 nerve root, 92
C4 lesions, 92
C5 nerve root, 92–93
C6 root, 93
C7 nerve root, 93
C8 lesions, 93
Cervical spondylotic myelopathy, 116
Cervicobrachial neurovascular compression syndrome. See Thoracic outlet syndrome
Charcot-Weilbrand syndrome, 515
Charles Bonnet syndrome, 515
Cheiralgia paresthetica. See Superficial branch of radial nerve
Cheyne-stokes respiration, 606
Chiasmal syndromes, 144, 148, 149f, 150t, 151t
Childhood strabismus, 179–180, 179t
Cholinergic deficiency, 509
Cholinergic supersensitivity, 215
Chorda tympani, 323
Chorea, 458–461, 462t
Chorein, 459
Choreoathetosis, 464
Chronic hypothermia, 423
Chronic pain, 429
Chronic progressive external ophthalmoplegia (CPEO), 181, 182
Gillespie reflex, 608
Gingulate gyrus, 495
Circadian abnormalities, 424
Circularexion, 220
Circumferential arteries
mesencephalon
anterior choroidal arteries, 397
posterior cerebral arteries, 397
posterior choroidal arteries, 397
quadrigeminal arteries, 397
superior cerebellar arteries, 397
pons, 393
Claude-Bernard syndrome, 188, 216, 227, 397f, 398
Clonic perseveration, 449
Cluster breathing, 606
Coffin-Siris syndrome, 235
Cogan congenital ocular motor apraxia, 237
Cogan’s lid-twitch sign, 181
Collet-Sicard syndrome, 372, 379
Color agnosia, 516–517
Color blindness, 516
Color perception, 142–143
Color vision loss, 143
Coma, 424
alertness, anatomic substrate of, 604–605
coma-inducing lesions
metabolic encephalopathy, 615–616
supratentorial structural lesions, 616
death by brain destruction, 623–625
eye movements, 609–612, 610f, 611t
lateral gaze, abnormalities of
conjugate gaze, 612
disconjugate gaze, 613
lateral herniation, 616–617, 617f
central herniation, 617–619
early diencephalic stage, 619
late diencephalic stage, 619
lower pontine stage, 619
medullary stage, 619, 622–623
midbrain-upper pons stage, 619
pupils, 607–609, 608f
respiratory patterns, 606f
apneustic breathing, 606
ataxic breathing, 607
cheyne-stokes respiration, 606
cluster breathing, 606
hyperventilation with brainstem injury, 606
Ondine’s curse, 607
posthyperventilation apnea, 605–606
temperature changes, 607
unresponsive patient, 603–604
vertical gaze, abnormalities of corneal reflex, 613–615
Comitant strabismus, 175
Common peroneal nerve
lesions of
anterior tibial (deep peroneal) nerve syndrome, 61
at fibular head, 59–60
lateral cutaneous nerve of calf, 61
rupture of tibialis anterior tendon, 60–61
superficial peroneal nerve syndrome, 61
See also under Sciatic nerve
Complete spinal cord transection, 104t, 105f
autonomic disturbances, 106
motor disturbances, 105–106
sensory disturbances, 104–105
Complex visual hallucinations, 514
Compulsive eye opening, 332
Disconjugate gaze, 613
gaze palsies, 251–258, 253t
Divergence
ystagmus, 261
paralysis, 242
repetitive, 611
Dix-Hallpike maneuvers, 351, 351f
Dizziness, 346
and vertigo, systemic causes of. See under Vestibulocochlear nerve
Dorello’s canal, 199
Dorsal cerebellar infarct, 414–415
Dorsal cranial nerve III fascicular syndromes, 397–398
Dorsal cutaneous branch, 42, 42f
Dorsal gray commissure, 100
Dorsal horn, 99
Dorsal median sulcus, 99
Dorsal mesencephalic syndromes, 398
Dorsal midbrain syndrome, 247, 248t
Dorsal pontine syndromes. See under Pontine syndromes, classification of
Dorsal scapular nerve (C4–C5), 27, 76
Dorsal spinocerebellar tract, 405
Dorsolateral prefrontal cortex (DLPFC), 230
Dorsolateral sulcus, 99
Dorsolateral tegmental syndrome, 590
Double athetosis, 464
Downbeat nystagmus (DBN), 247, 266–268, 267t, 410
etiologies of, 267t
Downgaze palsies, 249
Dressing apraxia, 529
Droopy shoulder syndrome, 81
Drop finger deformity, 46
Drop foot, 60
Dropped head syndrome, 373, 374t
Drug-induced nystagmus, 266
Drugs, 355
and toxic myelopathies, 119t
Duane retraction syndrome, 201
Ductions, 178
Dupuytren contracture, 37
Duret hemorrhages, 616
Dysaesthesia, 521
Dysarthria clumsy hand syndrome, 393–394, 585
Dysconjugate bilateral symmetric eye oscillations, 260–261
see-saw nystagmus, 260–261, 260t
Dyskinesias. See under Basal ganglia
Dyskinetic movements, 333
Dysmetria, 408
Dysmetric saccades, 238–239
Dystaxia, 407
Dystonia, 464, 464t–466, 467t
of embouchure, 469
Dystonic movements, 333
Dystonic spasm, 464
Echographia, 529
Edrophonium (tensilon) injection, 239
Egocentric hemispatial neglect, 508
Eight-and-a-half syndrome, 326
Eighth cervical, lesions of, 116
Ejaculation, 122
Ekbom syndrome, 475
Elbow
nerve lesions above, 34, 39–41
Electrographic status epilepticus, 611
Emesis, 425
Emotional behavior, disturbances of. See under Hypothalamus and pituitary gland
Emotional disturbances, 509–511
Endocrine disturbances, 428
Endolymphatic hydrops, 352
Endpoint nystagmus, 270
Entophthalmos, 164
Enteric nervous system (ENS), 559–563. See also Central autonomic network (CAN)
Entopic ocular phenomena, 156
Entrapment neuropathies of lower limbs, 62t
of upper limbs, 62t
Ephaptic transmission, 192
Epilepsy, 503
Epileptic monocular horizontal nystagmus, 260
Epileptic myoclonus, 471
Epileptic nystagmus, 266
Epileptic skew deviation, 256
Epileptogenic lesions, 243
Episodic anisocoria, 215. See also Periodic pupillary phenomena
Episodic ataxia, 408
Episodic encephalopathy, 216
Episodic headache, 429
Episodic unilateral mydriasis, 216
Erb–Duchenne type paralysis. See Upper plexus paralysis
Erection, 122
Esotropia, 176t
acute, 242
Essential myoclonus, 471
Essential tremor, 476
Esthesioneuroblastomas, 130
Excitatory burst neurons (EBN), 225
Excyclotropia, 195–196
Executive function loss, 538–540. See also Frontal lobe syndromes
Exophthalmos, 164
Exotropia, 176t
Exposure keratopathy, 204
Extensor carpi radialis brevis (C5–C7), 44
Extensor carpi radialis longus (C5–C6), 44
Extensor carpi ulnaris (C7–C8), 44
Extensor digiti minimi (C7–C8), 44
Extensor digitorum brevis, 56
Extensor digitorum longus, 56
Extensor hallucis longus, 56
Extensor indicis (C7–C8), 44
Extensor pollicis brevis (C7–C8), 44
Extensor pollicis longus (C7–C8), 44
External spermatic (genital) branch, 48
Extramedullary and intramedullary cord lesions
autonomic manifestations, 114
motor function disturbances, 114
pain
funicular (central), 114
radicular, 113–114
vertebral, 114
sensory disturbances, 114
sphincter function disturbances, 114
Extramedullary lesions, 362–363
Extraspinal system, 102–103
intermediate (midthoracic) region, 103
lower (thoracolumbosacral) region, 103
upper (cervicothoracic) region, 105
Eye movements, abnormal, 332
dyskinetic movements, 333
dystonic movements, 333
facial myokymia, 334–335
fasciculations, 335
focal cortical seizures, 335
hemifacial spasm, 333–334
myoclonus, 335
postparalytic spasm, 334
synkinetic movements, 334
tics and habit spasms, 335
lesions affecting
facial canal distal to departure of chorda tympani, 327
facial canal distal to meatal segment, nerves within, 326
lesions distal to stylomastoid foramen, 327–330
meatal (canal) segment, 326
localization of lesions
central facial palsy, 324–325
cerebellopontine angle lesions, 326
pontine lesions, 325–326
paralysis, 329
peripheral facial nerve palsies, etiologies of, 328

Facial numbness, 313
Facial pain, 167
False localizing signs, 622
False ptosis, 275
Familial cortical myoclonic tremor with epilepsy (FCMTE), 234
Familial dyskinesia and facial myokymia (FDFM), 460
Familial periodic ataxia, 355
Familial vestibulopathy, 352
Fascicular lesions, 188. See also Pontine lesions
Fasciculations, 335
Fasciculus cuneatus, 101
Fasciculus gracilis, 101
Fastigial oculomotor region (FOR), 231
Fatal familial insomnia, 443
Fecal incontinence, 122
Femoral nerve (L2–L4), 48–51, 49f
Fibular head, 59–60
Fibular tunnel syndrome, 60
Fifth cervical segment, lesions of, 115–116
Fifth lumbar segment, lesions of, 117
Filum terminale, 99
Finger agnosia, 529
Flail arm syndrome, 110
Flail leg syndrome, 110
Flexion-adduction sign, 78
Florid carpi radialis (C6–C7), 33
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Flexor carpi ulnaris (C7–T1), 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexor digiti minimi (C8–T1), 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexor digitorum longus muscles, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexor digitorum profundus I and II (C7–C8), 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexor digitorum profundus III and IV (C7–C8), 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexor digitorum superficialis (C7–T1), 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexor hallucis longus, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexor pollicis brevis (C8–T1), 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deep head of, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexor pollicis longus (C7–C8), 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flight-of-colors phenomenon, 143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flocculus, 224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floppy head syndrome, 373, 374f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flouren’s law, 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluitis’s neuropathy, 37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flyn phenomenon, 215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focal cortical seizures, 335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focal lip dystonia, 469</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focal myopathy, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foix-Chavany-Marie syndrome, 535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foot drop, 58, 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foramen magnum syndrome, lesions of, 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foramen ovale, 305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forearm, nerve lesions in, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foster Kennedy syndrome, 130–131, 159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fou t tire prodomique, 579, 604</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth cranial nerve. See Trochlear nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth lumbar segment, lesions of, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth nerve palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bilateral, 196–197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etiologies of, 196t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foville syndrome, 202, 326, 394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freezing phenomena, 479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friedreich ataxia, 233, 408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Froment’s prehensile thumb sign, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frontal apraxias, 532–534</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frontal eye field (FEF), 228–229, 242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frontal lesions, 243–245</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frontal lobe hemorrhages, 588</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frontal lobe syndromes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medial frontal syndrome (akinetic), 540</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orbitofrontal prefrontal syndrome, 539</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prefrontal convexity syndrome, 539–540</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ventromedial prefrontal syndrome, 539</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frontal lobectomy, 129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frontotemporal aphasias, 535–538, 536f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frontotemporal lesions, bilateral, 231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full-field optokinetic reflex, 220–221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Funicul pain, 114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gag reflex, 361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gait disorders, 108, 541</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galloping tongue, 380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>γ-aminobutyric acid (GABA), 456</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ganglion cells, 133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gantzer’s muscle, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gasserian ganglion, 305, 313–314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastrointestinal abnormalities, 425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaze distractibility, 239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaze-evoked amaurosis, 167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaze-evoked nystagmus, 269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaze-evoked tinnitus, 347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaze holding, 227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaze holding nystagmus, 259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaze palsies. See under Eye movements, supranuclear control of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaze, short-cycle periodic alternating, 610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gelastic seizures, 429</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geniculate ganglion, 321, 323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitofemoral nerves (L1–L2), 47–48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gerstmann syndrome, 529</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gilles de la Tourette syndromes, 475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glasgow Coma Scale, 622</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Global aphasia, 537</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glossopharyngeal nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anatomy of, 361, 362f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clinical evaluation of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>autonomic function, 362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motor function, 361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reflex function, 361–362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sensory function, 361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>localization of lesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cerebellopontine angle syndrome, 362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extramedullary lesions, 362–363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glossopharyngeal neuralgia, 363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jugular foramen syndrome, 363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nuclear and intramedullary lesions, 362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retropharyngeal nerve, 363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supranuclear lesions, 362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syncope from, 366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glossopharyngeal neuralgia, 363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gluteal nerves (L4–S2), 53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glutethimide, 608</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Godtfredsen syndrome, 202, 379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Golgi cells, 403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gonomyergia paresthetica, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gradenigo syndrome, 202, 314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graefe sign, 278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Granule cells, 403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grasp reflex, 535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greater superficial petrosal nerve, 322, 323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guillain–Mollaret triangle, 262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hair cells, 341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Half-moon syndrome, 147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lesions at, 36–37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nerve lesions at, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thalamic, 446, 449</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handbag paresthesia, 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handcuff neuropathy, 42, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hanging leg syndrome, 50, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harlequin syndrome, 212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haw river disease, 233, 250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head impulse maneuver, 220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head injury, 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head pionis, 373</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head tilt, 196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headache, 388, 429</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Head-shaking nystagmus (HSN), 220, 263</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hearing loss, 521
Hemianoscopy, 528
Heel-knee-shin test, 408
Heimann-Bielchowsky phenomenon, 260
Hematologic disorders, 355
Hematomyelia, 112
Hemiakinesia, 507, 508
Hemianopia, 145
Hemiataxia, 582
Hemiataxia-hypesthesia syndrome, 446, 582
Hemiatrophy, 464
Hemihallusmus, 446, 463
Hemicerebral, 461
Hemidystonia, 465
Hemidystonia-hemiatriphomy syndrome, 465
Hemifacial spasm, 333–334
Hemianaesthesia, 506
Hemimasticatory spasms, 311
Hemimicrosoma, 156
Hemiplegia cruciata, 388
Hemipontin syndrome, 590
Hemisection of spinal cord. See Brown-Séard syndrome
Hemisomatognosia, 528
Hemispheric lesions, 247
Hemispheric strokes, 503
Hemis-Saw nystagmus, 201
Hemorrhage, 113, 235
Hennebert sign, 271
Hemisyndrome, 271
Hemispheric degenerations, 233
Hereditary cerebellar degenerations, 246
Hereditary childhood-onset dystonia, 465
Hereditary neuralgic amyotrophy, 78
Hering's law, 277
Herpes zoster, 90
ophthalmicus, 202
Heschl's gyrus, 494
Heubner, artery of, 575
Hippocampal gyrus, 495
Hippocampus (medial temporal lobe), 230
Hitzig zones, 109
Holmes-Adie syndrome, 213
Homonymous hemianopia (HH), 151–152, 155
Homonymous quadrantopia, 155
Homonymous quadranthropic visual field, 154
Horizontal binocular diplopia, 175
Horizontal conjugate gaze palsy, 243t, 244t
frontal lesions, 243–245
mesencephalic lesions, 245
parietal lesions, 245
pontine lesions, 245–246
thalamie lesions, 245
Horizontal disconjugate eye oscillations, 260
convergence nystagmus, 261
convergence–retraction nystagmus, 261
divergence nystagmus, 261
oculomastatory mydriathymsia, 262
pretectual pseudobobbling, 261
Horizontal homonymous sector defect, 152
Horizontal nystagmus, 264
Horizontal pendular pseudonystagmus, 263
Horner syndrome, 114
diagnosis of, 208
etiologies of, 210–211t
postganglionic, 209, 211
preganglionic, 209
See also Sym pathetic dysfunction in pupil
House-Brackmann classification of facial function, 324t
Hoyt-Spencer sign, 164
Human T-lymphotropic virus type 1 (HTLV-1), 108
Huntington disease, 250, 458, 459
Hutchinson pupil, 191
Hydrocephalus, 248
Hyperdeviation, 175
Hyperdysuria, 426
Hypergraphia, 529
Hyperhydrosis, 425
primary, 561
Hyperkinetic mutation, 604
Hypernatremia, essential, 426
Hyperostosis cranialis interna, 327
Hyperphoria, 177t
Hyperreflexic neurogenic bladder, 121
Hypersomnia, 424
Hyperthermia, 15, 607, 608
acute, 423
malignant, 423
neuroleptic malignant syndrome, 424
paroxysmal, 423
pyrogen induced, 423
Hypertrophia, 177t
Hyperventilation, 270, 355
with brainstem injury, 606
Hypodeviation, 175
Hypoglossal nerve
anatomy of, 337
clinical evaluation of, 377–378
motor speech disorders, 381t
localization of lesions
abnormal tongue movements, 380
intramedullary lesions, 378–379
nuclear lesions, 378
peripheral lesions, 379–380
supranuclear lesions, 378
Hypoglossal nucleus, 385
Hypoglossal-vertebral entrapment syndroms, 379
Hypoglycemia, 355
Hypogonadotropic hypogonadism, 428
Hypokinetic and bradykinetic disorders. See under Basal ganglia
Hypostasia, 131
Hypotensive akathisia, 464
Hypothalamic osmoreceptors, 425
Hypothalamic and pituitary gland
alertness and sleep, disturbances of a kinesthetic mutism, 424
circadian abnormalities, 424
coma, 424
hypersomnia, 424
insomnia, 424
narcolepsy, 424
Lumbicals III and IV (C8–T1), 39
Lutz posterior internuclear ophthalmoplegia. See
Internuclear ophthalmoplegia (INO)

Macro square-wave jerks, 235
Macropsia, 156
Macropsia, 156
Maddox rod test, 178
Mal de debarquement (mal de mer), 356
Malignant hyperthermia, 423
Medial cutaneous nerves (C8–T1), 46
Medial femoral cutaneous nerve, 48
Medial frontal syndrome (akinetic), 540
Medial longitudinal fasciculus (MLF), 218, 344.
See also Internuclear ophthalmoplegia
Medial medullary syndrome, 379, 387–388
Medial plantar nerve, 56, 59
Medial plantar nerve, 56, 59
Medial prefrontal cortex, 560
Medial reticulospinal tract, 102
Medial superior temporal (MST) area, 221, 223f
Medial sural cutaneous nerve, 55
Medial thalamic region of thalamus, 449
Medial vestibular nucleus (MVN), 225, 227
Medial vestibulospinal tract, 344
Median nerve (C6–T1), 33f
Mediotegmental infarcts, 394
Medulla oblongata
anatomy of, 385, 386f
medullary syndromes
lateral medullary syndrome, 388–392, 390t
lateral pontomedullary syndrome, 392
medial medullary syndrome, 387–388
opalski (submedullary) syndrome, 392
vascular supply of, 385
lateral bulbar branches, 386–387
paramedian bulbar branches, 386
Medullary syndromes. See under Medulla oblongata
Medulloblastoma, 235
Meige syndrome, 333, 469
Melkersson-Rosenthal syndrome, 329
Membranous labyrinth, 343
Memory disturbances, 428, 443–444
Ménière's disease, 352–353
Meningismus, 592
Meralgia paresthetica, 53
Mesencephalic hemorrhage, 590
Mesencephalic lesions, 247, 248t, 348
Middle cerebellar peduncle, 406
Middle cerebral artery (MCA), 568–569
aneurysms, 591
syndrome. See under Cerebral arteries, syndromes of
Middle plexus paralysis, 79
Middle scalene, branches to, 73
Milkmaid's grip, 458
Millard-Gubler syndrome, 202, 325, 393
Miller Fisher syndrome, 204
Mitochondrial encephalopathy, 239
Mittal and tufted cells, 127
Mobius syndrome, 201
Monocular alititudinal defects, 147
Monocular diplopia, ocular causes of, 174t
Monocular eye oscillations
  acquired monocular pendular nystagmus, 260
  epileptic monocular horizontal nystagmus, 260
  spasmus nutans, 259–260
Monocular pendular nystagmus, acquired, 260
Monocular visual field defects, 146
Mononeuropathy multiplex, 25–26
Monoradiculopathy, 93
Mood and affect, disturbances of, 443
Morton’s metatarsalalgia, 59
Motion perception impairment, 519
Motor (frontoparietal) aphasias, 535–538, 536f
Motor apraxia, 465
Motor (frontoparietal) aphasias, 535–538, 536f
Motor homunculus, 8
Motor impersistence, 332
Motor neglect, 446
Motor paralytic bladder, 121
Muller’s muscle, 173
Multifocal mononeuropathy. See Mononeuropathymultiplex
Multifocal myoclonus, 615
Multiple ocular motor nerve palsies, 204–206
Multiple sclerosis, 354–355
Multiple sensory defects, 355
Multiple systems atrophy (MSA), 483
Musculocutaneous nerve (C5–C7), 31–32, 32f
Myasthenia gravis, 181
Myasthenic (Lambert-Eaton) syndrome, 181
Myasthenia gravis, 181
Myotonic dystrophy, 466
Myotome, 89
Narcissistic neurosis, 203
Narcolepsy, 424
Nasoalveolar cleft, 306
Neck-tongue syndrome, 316
Neglect dyslexia, 519
Neocerebellum, 403
Neocortex, 496, 496t
Nerve fiber bundle defects, 144, 145
Nerve of Hering, 361
Nerve lesions
  of anterior thoracic nerves, 30
  of anterior median nerve, 31, 30f
  of dorsal scapular nerve, 27
  of femoral nerve, 48, 49f
  of genitofemoral nerves, 47–48
  of gluteal nerves, 53
  of iliohypogastric, 47–48
  of ilioinguinal nerves, 47–48
  of lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 52
  of long thoracic nerve, 27–28
  of median cutaneous nerve, 46
  of median nerve, 34–38
  of musculocutaneous nerve, 51–52, 51f
  of obturator nerve, 51–52, 51f
  of posterior femoral cutaneous nerve, 53
  of pudendal nerve, 53–54
  of radial nerves, 44–46, 43f
  of subclavian nerve, 27
  of subscapular nerves, 29
  of suprascapular nerve, 29
  of thoracodorsal nerve, 30
  of ulnar nerve, 39–43, 38f
  See also Sciatic nerve
Neuralgic amyotrophy, 35, 74, 78
Neuroacanthocytosis (chorea-acanthocytosis), 459
Neuroferritinopathy, 460
Neurogenic bladder, 118–122
Neurogenic plexopathy, 118–122
Neurogenic pseudoclaudication of cauda equine, 96
Neurogenic thoracic outlet syndrome, 81
Neuroimaging, 503
Neuroleptic malignant syndrome, 424
Neurologic localization
  clinical diagnosis, 2–4
  history of, 1–2
  lesion localization, 2–4
  motor system
    anatomy of, 5–10, 6f, 7f
    signs and symptoms, 10–13, 10t
    postural and gait disorders, 15–22
  sensory abnormalities
    anatomy of, 13–15
    sensory signs and symptoms, 15, 18t
  See also Posture and gait, neural structures in
Neuromyelitis optica (NMO), 161–163, 162–163t
Neuromyotonia, 316
Nigral afferents and efferents, 456–457
Nitrous oxide, 108
Nondiabetic lumbosacral radiculoplexus neuropathy, 83
Nonhypokinetic gait, 478
Nonspatial inattention, 508–509
Nonspecific thalamic nuclei, 435
Nontumoral myelopathies, 119t
Notalgia paresthetica, 94
Nothnagel’s syndrome, 578
Nuclear complex of posterior commissure (NPC), 277
Nuclear lesions, 310–312, 362, 365, 372
  hypoglossal nerve, 378
See also Pontine lesions
Nucleus ambiguus, 364, 361
Nucleus cuneatus, 385
Nucleus gracilis, 385
Nucleus of optic tract (NOT), 222
Nucleus prepositus hypoglossi (NPH), 225, 227
See also Sciatic nerve
Nerve root irritation, signs and symptoms with, 92t
Nervi erigentes, 559
Neural integrator, 217, 225, 227, 259
Neuralgic amyotrophy, 35, 74, 78
Neuroacanthocytosis (chorea-acanthocytosis), 459
Neuroferritinopathy, 460
Neurogenic bladder, 118–122
Neurogenic pseudoclaudication of cauda equine, 96
Neurogenic thoracic outlet syndrome, 81
Neuroimaging, 503
Neuroleptic malignant syndrome, 424
Neurologic localization
  clinical diagnosis, 2–4
  history of, 1–2
  lesion localization, 2–4
  motor system
    anatomy of, 5–10, 6f, 7f
    signs and symptoms, 10–13, 10t
    postural and gait disorders, 15–22
  sensory abnormalities
    anatomy of, 13–15
    sensory signs and symptoms, 15, 18t
  See also Posture and gait, neural structures in
Neuromyelitis optica (NMO), 161–163, 162–163t
Neuronotonia, 316
Nigral afferents and efferents, 456–457
Nitrous oxide, 108
Nondiabetic lumbosacral radiculoplexus neuropathy, 83
Nonhypokinetic gait, 478
Nonspatial inattention, 508–509
Nonspecific thalamic nuclei, 435
Nontumoral myelopathies, 119t
Notalgia paresthetica, 94
Nothnagel’s syndrome, 578
Nuclear complex of posterior commissure (NPC), 277
Nuclear lesions, 310–312, 362, 365, 372
  hypoglossal nerve, 378
See also Pontine lesions
Nucleus ambiguus, 364, 361
Nucleus cuneatus, 385
Nucleus gracilis, 385
Nucleus of optic tract (NOT), 222
Nucleus prepositus hypoglossi (NPH), 225, 227
Ocular motility, disturbances of, 447–448
Ocular motor apraxia, 237
Ocular motor dysfunction, 410
Ocular motor muscles and nerves
childhood strabismus, 179–180, 179t
diplopia, 173–175
monocular, ocular causes of, 174t
by retinal disease, 182–183
diplopia testing, 175
objective testing, 176–179
subjective testing, 175–176
orbital muscles, 173
disease of, 180–182
nerves and localization of lesions, 183, 185f, 186t
abducens nerve (cranial nerve VI), 198–204, 199t
fourth nerve palsy, etiologies of, 196t
multiple ocular motor nerve palsies, 204–206
oculomotor nerve (cranial nerve III), 184–193
sixth nerve palsy, etiology of, 200–201t
trochlear nerve (cranial nerve IV), 193–198, 194f, 195t, 196t
pupil
Argyll-Robertson pupil, 215
Flynn phenomenon, 215
parasympathetic dysfunction, 212–215, 213t, 214t
parasympathetic innervation, 206–207, 207f
periodic pupillary phenomena, 215–216, 217t
pupillary inequality, 207
simple anisocoria, 208
sympathetic dysfunction, 208–212, 210–211t
sympathetic innervation, 206–207, 206f
Ocular motor nuclei, 218
Ocular motor system. See Eyelids; Eye movements, supranuclear control of; Nystagmus; Ocular motor muscles and nerves
Ocular motor vermis, 222, 231
Ocular neuromyotonia (ONM), 193
Ocular sympathetic palsy (Horner syndrome), 114
Ocular tilt reaction (OTR), 232, 233, 256
ascending pontomedullary vestibulo-ocular (VOR)-OTR, 257
descending mesencephalic integrator-OTR, 257
Ocular torsion, 178
Oculocephalic reflex, 609
Oculogyric crisis, 250–251, 251t, 464
Oculomasticatory myorhythmia, 262
Oculomotor nerve, 184–193, 184f, 185f
compression, 609
lesions, localization of, 186t
palsy, 190
Oculomotor paresis with cyclic spasms, 192
Oculopatellar myoclonus, 263, 474
Oculopatellar tremor (OPT), 264
Oculosympathetic lesions, 275
Oculosympathetic palsy, 263
Oculosympathetic spasm, 216
Oculovestibular reflex, 609
Olfactory dysfunction, 129
Olfactory dysfunction, 129
Olfactory glomeruli, 127
Olfactory nerve, 128f, 130t
anatomy of, 127

Nucleus reticularis pontis caudalis (NRPC), 225
Nucleus subcuneiformis, 228
Nucleus tractus solitarius, 561–563, 561f, 562t
Numb cheek syndrome, 315
Numb chin syndrome, 315
Nyleen-Barany maneuver, 270, 351, 351f
Nystagmoid jerking, 611
Nystagmus, 390
acquired monocular pendular, 260
acquired pendular, 262
clinical classification of
asymmetric binocular eye oscillations, 259
binocular symmetric conjugate eye oscillations, 262
binocular symmetric jerk in eccentric gaze, 269–271
binocular symmetric jerk nystagmus, 264–266
binocular symmetric pendular conjugate eye oscillations, 262–264
dyssynergic bilateral symmetric eye oscillations, 260–261
horizontal dyssynergic eye oscillations, 261–262
monocular eye oscillations, 259
predominantly vertical jerk nystagmus, 266–269
congenital, 262
congenital, 262
corvature-retraction, 261
divergence, 261
epileptic, 266
epileptic monocular horizontal, 260
gaze holding, 259
jerk nystagmus, 259
latent, 262
lid, 271
manifest latent, 262
and ocular oscillations, 258
optokinetic drum, 258–259
oscillopsia, 258
periodic downbeat, 265
positional, 270, 410
rebound, 270
reversed optokinetic, 220, 262
saccadic intrusions, 271
see-saw, 260–261, 260t
systems classification of, 259
torsional, 266, 390
vestibular, 219–220, 259
visual stabilization, 259
voluntary, 236
windmill, 263
Obturator nerve (L2–L4), 51–52, 51f
Occipital condyle syndrome, 379
Occipital lesions, 154
Occipital lobe, 493
hemorrhages, 588
Occipital nerve, 73, 74f
Occipitotemporal gyrus, 495
Occipital alignment, dysfunction of, 389
Ocular bobbing, 611
Ocular disorders, 355–356
Ocular flutter, 235–236
Ocular motility, disturbances of, 447–448
Ocular motor apraxia, 237
Ocular motor dysfunction, 410
Ocular motor muscles and nerves
childhood strabismus, 179–180, 179t
diplopia, 173–175
monocular, ocular causes of, 174t
by retinal disease, 182–183
diplopia testing, 175
objective testing, 176–179
subjective testing, 175–176
orbital muscles, 173
disease of, 180–182
nerves and localization of lesions, 183, 185f, 186t
abducens nerve (cranial nerve VI), 198–204, 199t
fourth nerve palsy, etiologies of, 196t
multiple ocular motor nerve palsies, 204–206
oculomotor nerve (cranial nerve III), 184–193
sixth nerve palsy, etiology of, 200–201t
trochlear nerve (cranial nerve IV), 193–198, 194f, 195t, 196t
pupil
Argyll-Robertson pupil, 215
Flynn phenomenon, 215
parasympathetic dysfunction, 212–215, 213t, 214t
parasympathetic innervation, 206–207, 207f
periodic pupillary phenomena, 215–216, 217t
pupillary inequality, 207
simple anisocoria, 208
sympathetic dysfunction, 208–212, 210–211t
sympathetic innervation, 206–207, 206f
Ocular motor nuclei, 218
Ocular motor system. See Eyelids; Eye movements, supranuclear control of; Nystagmus; Ocular motor muscles and nerves
Ocular motor vermis, 222, 231
Ocular neuromyotonia (ONM), 193
Ocular sympathetic palsy (Horner syndrome), 114
Ocular tilt reaction (OTR), 232, 233, 256
ascending pontomedullary vestibulo-ocular (VOR)-OTR, 257
descending mesencephalic integrator-OTR, 257
Ocular torsion, 178
Oculocephalic reflex, 609
Oculogyric crisis, 250–251, 251t, 464
Oculomasticatory myorhythmia, 262
Oculomotor nerve, 184–193, 184f, 185f
compression, 609
lesions, localization of, 186t
palsy, 190
Oculomotor paresis with cyclic spasms, 192
Oculopatellar myoclonus, 263, 474
Oculopatellar tremor (OPT), 264
Oculosympathetic lesions, 275
Oculosympathetic palsy, 263
Oculosympathetic spasm, 216
Oculovestibular reflex, 609
Olfactory dysfunction, 129
Olfactory dysfunction, 129
Olfactory glomeruli, 127
Olfactory nerve, 128f, 130t
anatomy of, 127
localization of lesions
causing anosmia, 127–130
causing cacosmia, 131
Foster Kennedy syndrome, 130–131
causing parosmia, 131

Olfactory neuroblastosmas. See Esthesioneuroblastosmas
Olfactory trigone, 127
Olivocerebellar tract, 405
Omnipause cells, 227
Onidne’s curse, 607
One-and-a-half syndrome, 254, 255
Opalski syndrome, 389, 392
Opercular syndrome, 533
Ophthalmoplegia, acute bilateral, 204
Ophthalmoplegic migraine, 192
Opponens digitii minimi (C8–T1), 39
Opponens pollicis (C8–T1), 34
Opsononus (saccadomania), 236
Opsononus-myoclonus syndrome, 473
Optic aphasia, 516
Optic chiasm, 135–138
Optic nerves, 135–138, 157–159, 158t
intracanalicular portion, 136
intracranial portion, 136
intraocular portion, 135
intraorbital portion, 135–136, 136f
Optic neuritis, 160–161, 161t
Optic neuropathy
anteros ischemic optic neuropathy (AION), 163–164, 164t
mass lesions of orbit, 164–167
neuromyelitis optica (NMO), 161–163, 162–163t
optic neuritis, 160–161, 161t
Optic radiations, 139, 139f
Optic tracts, 138
and lateral geniculate bodies, 135f, 138–139
Optico-cerebral syndrome, 573
Optokinetic drum, 258–259
Optokinetic reflex, 220
Orbital blow-out fractures, 180
Orbital muscles, 173
disease of, 150–182
Orbital myositis, 182, 183t
Optic pathways lesions
pupillary light reflex, 159–160, 160t
retina and optic nerve, 157–159, 158t
Orbital pseudotumor, 182, 183t
Ophthofrontal and ventromedial prefrontal syndrome, 539
Orofacial dyskinesia, 333, 462, 463t
Orolingual tremor, 477
Orthostatic myoclonus, 473
Orthostatic tremor, 478
Oscillopsia, 258

Pain
funicular (central), 114
paresthesias and, 444
radicular, 113–114
thalamic, 444
vertebral, 114
Painful legs and moving toes syndrome, 474–475
Palatal myoclonus, 263, 473–474, 474
Palatal reflex, 361
Palatal tremor, 473
Paleocerebellum, 403
Paleocortex, 496
Paleocortical system, 100
Palinopsia, 515
Palilidal afferents and efferents, 455–456
Palmar and dorsal digital branches, 42
Palmar digital branches of median nerve, 37–38, 37f
Palmar digital nerves, 33
Palmaris brevis (C8–T1), 39
Palmaris brevis spasm syndrome, 41
Palmaris longus (C7–T1), 33
Palmomental reflex, 535
Palpebromandibular synkinesia (SPMS), 310
Panayiotopoulos syndrome, 503
Pancerebellar syndrome, 412
Pands (pediatric autoimmune neuropsychiatric disorders associated with Strep infections), 476
Papilledema, 157
Paraballismus, 463
Parabrachial nuclear complex, 561
Paradoxical triceps reflex, 116
Parahippocampal gyrus, 495
Paralexias, 519
Paramedian pontine reticular formation (PPRF), 222, 225, 392
Paramedian pontine syndromes. See under Pontine syndromes, classification of
Paramedian territory of thalamus, 440–441
Paramedian tracts (PMT), 227
Paramedian vessels
mesencephalon, 397
pons, 393
Paraneoplastic brachial plexopathy, 78
Paraneoplastic cerebellar degeneration, 234
Paraneoplastic movement disorders, 484
Parasympathetic dysfunction (pupil), 212–215, 213t, 214t
Parasympathetic fibers, 361
Parasympathetic innervation of pupil, 206, 207f
Parasympathetic nervous system, 559, 560t
Parasympathetic drug, 214
Paraxial myoclonus, 473
Paroxysmal dyskinesias, 470–471
Paroxysmal exertion-induced dyskinesia, 470
Paroxysmal hyperthermia, 423
isolated peripheral facial nerve palsy, 326
Millard-gubler syndrome, 325
Pontine syndromes, classification of
dorsal
Foville syndrome, 394
Raymond-Cestan syndrome, 394
lateral
Marie-Feix syndrome, 395
paramedian
bilateral centrobasal infarcts, 394
unilateral medio basal infarcts, 394
unilateral medio central, 394
unilateral medio lateral basal infarcts, 394
ventral
ataxic hemiparesis, 394
dysarthria–cholmy hand syndrome, 393–394
locked-in syndrome, 394
Millard-Gubler syndrome, 393
pure motor hemiparesis, 393
Raymond syndrome, 393
Pontine tegmental lesions, 202, 609
Pontocerebellum, 405
Porphyric neuropathy, 26
Portio major, 305, 306
Portio minor, 305
Positional nystagmus, 270, 410
Positron emission tomography (PET), 118
Postcentral gyrus, 495
Posterior aphasias, 522–527, 523f
Posterior aprosodia, 527
Posterior cerebral artery (PCA), 569, 580–581
Posterior choroidal arteries, 441–442
Posterior column disease, 108–109, 109t
Posterior commissure (PC), 247
Posterior communicating artery aneurysms, 591
Posterior cutaneous nerve
of arm, 43
of forearm, 43
Posterior femoral cutaneous nerve (S1–S3), 53
Posterior fossa lesions, 365
Posterior inferior cerebellar artery (PICA), 407
Posterior parietal cortex (PPC), 229–230
Posterior spinal arteries, 102
Posterior thalamic hemorrhage, 223
Posterior vermal split syndrome, 412
Posterior vestibular artery, 344
Posterolateral column syndrome, 107–108, 107t
Posture and gait, neural structures in
automatic pilot disorder, disequilibrium with
basal ganglia lesions, 21
disorganized gait, 22
freezing of gait, 22
hemispheric paracentral periventricular white matter
lesions, 21–22
magnetic gait, 22
thalamic lesions, 21
cerebellar ataxic gait, 19–20
choreic, hemiballistic, and dystonic gaits, 20
complex gait disorders of central origin
brainstem disequilibrium, 21
cautious gait, 20–21
gait and balance, examination of, 17, 19
Parkinsonian gait, 20
sensory and lower motor gait disorders
steppage gait, 19
vestibular ataxia, 19
waddling gait, 19
simpler gait disorders of central origin, 19
spastic gait, 19
Postfixed chiasm, 136
Postganglionic Horner syndrome, 209, 211
Posthyperventilation apnea, 605–606
Postparalytic spasm, 334
Postural fixation disorders, 479
Postural tremor, 476
Pourfour du Petit syndrome, 216
Prader-Willi syndrome, 427
Precentral gyrus, 101
Precocious puberty, 428
Predominantly vertical jerk nystagmus,
266–269
Prefixed chiasm, 136
Prefrontal convexity syndrome, 539–540
Prefrontal cortex (PFC), 229
Preganglionic Horner syndrome, 209
Preganglionic trigeminal nerve roots, 312–313
Prepontine cistern, 199, 202
Presyncopal faintness, 346
Pretectal pseudobobbing, 261, 612
Pretrigeminal neuralgia, 313
Prevost or vulpian sign, 243
Primary aberrant regeneration, 192, 193
Primary deviation, 178
Primary polydipsia, 426
Primary progressive myoclonus of aging, 471
Primary visual cortex, 140
Primitive reflexes, 534–535
Procerus sign, 482
Progressive ataxia and palatal tremor (PAPT), 474
Progressive heterochromia, 208
Progressive supranuclear palsy, 481
Pronator quadratus (C7–C8), 34
Pronator syndrome, 34–35
Pronator teres (C6–C7), 33
Propriospinal myoclonus (PSM), 473
Pseudoexophthalmos, 164
Psychiatric disorders, 356
Pseudo–Foster Kennedy syndrome, 131
Pseudo-horizontal gaze palsy, 246
Pseudohypothyroidism, 53
Pseudopapilledema, 159
Pseudopallidolledema, 159
Pseudoparaplegia, 275
Pseudoparesthesia, 528
Pseudoulnar nerve palsy, 42–43
Psychiatric disorders, 356
nerve lesions
  in axilla, 44
  of dorsal digital nerves, 46
  at elbow, 45–46
  of posterior cutaneous nerve, 44
  pseudoradial nerve palsy, 46
  spiral groove of humerus, 44–45
  of superficial branch, 46
Radial sensory entrapment, 46
Radiation therapy, 82
Radicular pain, 89
Radiculopathy
  bilateral, 90
  unilateral, 90
Radiculoplexopathy, 77
Raeder paratrigeminal neuralgia, 211, 314
Rage and fear, 428
Ramírez-Cestan syndrome, 394
Rebound nystagmus, 270
Recognition memory, 513
Recurrent laryngeal nerve, 365–366
Reflex blepharospasm, 332
Reflexive saccades, 224
Reinhold's syndrome, 391
Relative afferent pupillary defect (RAPD), 150, 151, 160
Reproductive functions, disturbances of. See under
  Hypothalamus and pituitary gland
Reset osmostat hyponatremia, 426
Respiratory abnormalities, 425
Respiratory myoclonus, 473
Respiratory synkinesis, 79
Resting tremor, 476
Restless legs syndrome, 475
Reticular formation, 344
Reticulocerebellar tract, 405
Reticulospinal tract of spinal cord, 102
Retrograde amnesia, 512
Retroorbital pain, 202
Retroparotid space, nerves within, 363
Resting tremor, 476
Reversal of gaze, 237
Psychogenic dizziness. See Psychiatric disorders
Psychogenic flutter, 236
Psychogenic tremor, 478
Ptosis, 272–276
  aponeurotic, clinical features of, 275t
  apraxia of eyelid opening, 274, 274t
  bilateral, 274, 613
  etiologies of, 273t
  false, 275
  recurrent, 275
  supranuclear, 274
  unilateral, 272
Pubal nerve (S1–S4), 53
Pulse-synchronous torsional pendular nystagmus, 271
Punt's palsy, 60
Pupil, 607–609, 608f. See under Ocular motor muscles
  and nerves
Pupillary abnormalities, 398, 608, 608f
Pupillary dilatation, 191
Pupillary inequality, 207
Pupillary light reflex, 159–160, 160t
Pupillary signs in ICU, 217t
Pupillomotor, 160
Pure motor hemiparesis, 393, 584
Pure motor hemiplegia, 388
Pure motor stroke, 584
Pure sensory stroke, 584
Pure word deafness, 348, 521
Purkinje cells, 403
Purser syndrome, 445
Pushing palsy, 60
Putaminal hemorrhage. See under Cerebral
  hemorrhage syndromes
Pyramidal cortex, 496
Pyramidal syndrome, 10
Pyramidal tract disease, 110, 110t
Pyrogen, 423
Quadrantanopia, 145
Quadriplegia, 10, 12
Quadriparesis, 12
Quadriplegia, 10, 12
Quadriparesis, 12
Quadraplegia, 10, 12
Quadriparesis, 12
Rabbit syndrome, 478
Radial nerves (C5–C8), 43f
  muscles
    abductor pollicis longus, 44
    anconeus, 43
    brachialis, 44
    brachioradialis, 44
    extensor carpi radialis brevis, 44
    extensor carpi radialis longus, 44
    extensor carpi ulnaris, 44
    extensor digiti minimi, 44
    extensor digitorum, 44
    extensor indicis, 44
    extensor pollicis brevis, 44
    extensor pollicis longus, 44
    supinator, 44
    triceps, 43
Reticulocerebellar tract, 405
Rapid-onset dystonia Parkinsonism, 466
Raymond-Cestan syndrome, 394
Rheumatoid arthritis, 26
Rhomboid atrophy, 26
Rhythmic myoclonus, 471
Rhythmic palatal myoclonus, 474
Riche-Cannieu anastomoses, 34
Riddoch's phenomenon, 145
Ring scotomas, 145
Rinne’s test, 346
Riserus sardonicus, 478
Rhesus macaque, 34
Rhesus monkey, 34
Rhodopsin, 133
Rock-climbers tremor. See Physiologic tremor
Roger's sign, 315
Root pain, 89
Rooting reflexes, 535
Ross syndrome, 213
Rostral vermis syndrome, 411
Rotational vertebral artery syndrome (RVAS), 270
Roving eye movements, 609
Rowland-Payne syndrome, 209, 366
Rubrospinal tract, 102
Rucksack paralysis, 27
Runner's dystonia, 469
Saccades, 221
abnormalities, 391
antisaccades, 224
cerebellar control of, 232f
impaired initiation of, 237–238
inaccurate. See Dysmetric saccades
intentional, 224
lateralpulsion of, 231
reflexive, 224
spontaneous, 224
See also Inappropriate saccades; Saccadic eye movements
Saccadic eye movements, 224–225
abnormal saccades, 235–240
abnormal saccadic velocity, 239–240
dysmetric saccades, 238–239
impaired initiation of saccades, 237–238
macro square-wave jerks, 235
ocular flutter, 235–236
opsoclonus (saccadomania), 236
square-wave jerks, 235
anatomy of, 225–227
basal ganglia, 230
cerebellum on eye movements, 231–235
collicular system, 227–228
higher level control of saccades
dorsolateral prefrontal cortex, 230
frontal eye field, 228–229
hippocampus, 230
parietal eye field, 229
posterior parietal cortex, 229–230
prefrontal cortex, 229
supplementary eye field, 229
neural integrator, 227
saccadic pathways, 230–231
See also Saccades
Saccadic intrusions, 235, 271. See also Inappropriate saccades
Saccadic omission, 225
Sacral segments, lesions of, 117
Sandifer's syndrome, 471
Saphenous nerve, 48
Saturday night palsy, 45
Scalenus anticus syndrome, 80
Scapula alata, 28
Schwabach's test, 346
Sciatic nerve (L4-S3), 54f, 57f
common peroneal nerve
extensor digitorum brevis, 56
extensor digitorum longus, 56
extensor hallucis longus, 56
lesions of, 59–61
tibialis anterior muscles, 56
nerve lesions
of common peroneal nerve, 59–61
of sciatic nerve proper, 57–59
of sural nerve, 61–62
of tibial nerve, 59
sciatic nerve proper, 54–55
tibial nerve, 55f
flexor digitorum longus muscles, 56
flexor hallucis longus, 56
lesions of, 59
tibialis posterior muscles, 56
Sciatic nerve schwannoma, 59
Scotoma, 144
Second lumbar segment, lesions of, 117
Secondary deviation, 178
Secondary myoclonus, 473
Secretion of antidiuretic hormone (SIADH), 593
See-saw nystagmus, 260–261, 260t
Selective saccadic palsy, 246
Semantic anomia, 523, 524
Semicircular canals, 343
Semilunar ganglion, 305
Sensorimotor, 120
functions, complex, 448
nerve palsy, 31
stroke, 585
Sensorimotor disturbances (in cerebral hemispheres)
in goal-oriented behavior, 538–540
motor disturbances
motor aphasia, 535–538, 536f
motor apraxia, 538
pure agraphia, 538
transcortical motor aphasia, 538
See also Frontal lobe syndromes
Sensorineural deafness. See under Vestibulocochlear nerve
Sensory amusia, 522
Sensory disturbances (in cerebral hemispheres)
auditory information, disturbances in
auditory agnosia, 521–522
auditory hallucinations, 521
hearing loss, 521
posterior aphasia, 522–527, 523f
sensory amusia, 522
smell and taste, 514
Somatosensory perception disturbances
acalculia, 530–531
agraphia, 530
body schema disturbances, 528–530
elemental somatosensory disturbances, 527–528
vision
alexia, 519–521, 520f
delusions, 514–516
motion perception impairment, 519
visual agnosia, 516–519
visual hallucinations, 514–516
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sensory inattention, 507–508</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensory modalities, loss of, 444–445</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensory paralytic bladder, 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sensory syndromes, 528</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sentinel hemorrhage, 592</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sequential eye movements, 228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seventh cervical segment, lesions of, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sexual behavior, excessive, 428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sexual function, 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shaky legs syndrome. See Orthostatic tremor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shoulder droop of mobile phone user, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shoulder dystocia, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shy drager syndrome, 561</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signe du journal, 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silent sinus syndrome, 164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simian hand, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple visual hallucinations, 514</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sixth cervical segment, lesions of, 115–116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sixth nerve palsy, etiology of, 200–201t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skew deviation, 255, 256, 257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slimmer’s paralysis, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slip phenomena, 174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slow-upward ocular bobbing, 612</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smell and taste, 514</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smooth pursuit system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anatomy of, 221–225, 222f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lesions affecting, 223–224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sogg sign, 197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somatosensory pathways, 14f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space-occupying cerebellar infarcts, 412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spasmodic dysphonia, 469–470</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spasmodic laryngeal dyspnea, 470</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spasmus nutans, 259–260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spastic gait, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spherical ametropia, 143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sphincter function disturbances, 114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal accessory nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anatomy of, 369–370, 370f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dropped head syndrome, 373, 374t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floppy head syndrome, 373, 374t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infranuclear lesions, 372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jugular foramen syndrome, 372–373</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neck, 373–374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>skull and foramen magnum, 372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>localization of lesions, 370–374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nuclear lesions, 372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sternocleidomastoid muscle, 370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supranuclear lesions, 371–372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syndromes (cranial nerves IX through XII), 373t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trapezius muscle, 370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anatomy, 99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arterial supply. See Vascular supply of spinal cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ascending tracts of, 100–101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corticorubrospinal tract, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corticospinal tract, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross-sectional anatomy of, 99–100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>descending tracts of, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lateral reticulospinal tract, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medial reticulospinal tract, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vestibulospinal tract, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compression. See Pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infarction, 110, 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lesions of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anterior horn cell syndromes, 109–110, 109t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brown-Séuard syndrome, 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>central spinal cord syndrome, 105f, 106–107, 106t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complete spinal cord transaction, 104–106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>posterior column disease, 108–109, 109t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>posterolateral column disease, 107–108, 107t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pyramidal tract disease, 110, 110t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>localization of lesions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of cauda equina, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of conus medullaris, 117–118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of eighth cervical, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fecal incontinence, 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of fifth cervical segment, 115–116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of fifth lumbar segment, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of first lumbar segment, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of first thoracic segments, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foramen magnum syndrome, 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of fourth lumbar segment, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neurogenic bladder with, 118–122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of sacral segments, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of second lumbar segment, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sexual function, 122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of seventh cervical segment, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of sixth cervical segment, 115–116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of third lumbar segment, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of thoracic segments, 116–117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of upper cervical cord, 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>physiology of, 103–104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transaction. See Complete spinal cord transaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vascular disorders of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arterial spinal cord infarction, 110–111, 112t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extramedullary and intramedullary lesions, 113, 114t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hemorrhages, 113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vascular malformations, 111–113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>venous spinal cord infarction, 111, 112t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See also Pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal epidural hematoma, 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal myoclonus, 473</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal nerve and roots</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anatomy of, 89, 90f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etiologies of, 89–90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>localization of nerve root syndromes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cervical roots, affecting, 90–93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lumbar and sacral roots, lesions of, 94–95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thoracic roots, affecting, 93–94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lumbosacral disc disease, localization of, 95–96, 95f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neurologic signs and symptoms, 92t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>principles of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motor signs, 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reflex signs, 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sensory symptoms, 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal subarachnoid hemorrhage, 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spinal tumors, 119t</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Spinocerebellar ataxia with saccadic intrusions (SCASI), 234
Spinocerebellum, 405
Spinoreticulothalamic system, 100
Spinothalamic tracts, 12
Splenial brain syndrome, 541
Spongothallopathies, 119
Sponylolsetral cervical myelopathy, 116
Spontaneous intracerebral hemorrhage, etiologies of, 586
Spontaneous jerk nystagmus, 266
Spontaneous saccades, 224
Spontaneous symmetric conjugate jerk nystagmus, 264
Square-wave jerks, 235
Square-wave saccadic intrusions, 234
Steele-Richardson-Olszewski syndrome. See Progressive supranuclear palsy
Stellate cells, 403
Stellwag sign, 278
Stemnecleidomastoid muscle, 370
Steppage gait, 19
Stiff limb syndrome, 480
Stiff person syndrome, 250, 480–481
Stingers, 79
Stria Gennari, 140
Striatal efferents, 455
Striata cortex, 140, 155
Striatopallidal motor, 456
Striatum, input into
cortical projections to, 455
nigrostriatal projections, 455
raphe nuclei-striatal projections, 455
thalamostriatal projections, 455
Stroke, 569
pure motor, 584
pure sensory, 584
Stylo presented foramen, 323
Subacute facial numbness, 316
Subangular alexia, 519
Subarachnoid hemorrhage (SAH), 592–593
Subclavian muscle, nerve to, 76
Subclavian nerve (C5–C6), 27
Submedullary syndrome, 392
Subcortical nerves (C5–C7), 29
Subcortical hemorrhage, 264
Superficial peroneal nerve syndrome, 61
Superior cerebellar artery (SupCA), 407. See also Dorsal cerebral infarct
Superior cerebellar peduncle, 406
Superior colliculi, 227, 230
Superior gluteal nerve, 53
Superior homonymous quadrant defects, 14H, 152, 154
Superior laryngeal nerve, 365
Superior oblique click syndrome, 180
Superior oblique myokymia, 198
Superior orbital fissure syndrome, 341
Superior semicircular canal dehiscence syndrome, 271
Surinatal channel syndrome, 45
Supinator muscles (C6–C7), 44
Supplementary eye field (SEF), 223f, 228, 229, 242, 243
Supplementary motor area (SMA), 540
Supranuclear facial muscle, 321
Supranuclear lesions, 310, 362, 365
hypoglossal nerve, 378
spinal accessory nerve, 371–372
See also Central facial palsy
Supranuclear ptosis, 274
Suprascapular nerve (C5–C6), 28–29, 28f, 76
Supratenorital structural lesions, 616
Surfer's neuropathy, 51
Susac's syndrome, 349
Swallow syncope, 366
Sydenham chorea, 460
Sympathetic dysfunction in pupil, 208–212, 210–211t
Sympathetic innervation, 206–207, 206f
Sympathetic nervous system, 557–558
Symptomatic myoclonus, 473
Synkinetic movements, 334
Syringomyelia, 107
Systolic blood pressure, 623
Tabes dorsalis, 108
Tardive dyskinesia, 461
Tardy ulnar nerve palsy, 40
Tarsal tunnel, 56, 59
Task-specific tremor, 478
TAT (tibialis anterior tendon), 60
Tear secretion, abnormalities of, 330–331
Tectocerebellar tract, 406
Temperature regulation. See under Hypothalamus and pituitary gland
Temporal field defects, 145
Temporal lobe, 493
hemorrhages, 588
Temporal lobectomy, 129
Tennis dystonia, 469
Teres minor paresis, 31
Terson syndrome, 592
Tethered spinal cord, 118
Thalamic amnesia, 443
Thalamic astasia, 445
Thalamic hemorrhage. See under Cerebral hemorrhage syndromes
Thalamic infraction syndromes, 581–582, 582f
Thalamic lesions, 245, 247
Thalamic nuclei, 437–438f
Thalamic structures, 230
Thalamogeniculate territory of thalamus, 441
Thalamus
clinical manifestations of, 442
alertness, disturbances of, 442–443
autonomic disturbances, 443
complex sensorimotor functions, disturbances of, 448
executive function, disturbances of, 448–449
memory disturbances, 443–444
motor disturbances, 445–447
ocular motility, disturbances of, 447–448
sensory disturbances, 444–445

See also Central facial palsy

Supranuclear ptosis, 274
Suprascapular nerve (C5–C6), 28–29, 28f, 76
Supraspinatus paresis, 29
Supratentorial structural lesions, 616
Surfer's neuropathy, 51
Susac's syndrome, 349
Swallow syncope, 366
Sydenham chorea, 460
Sympathetic dysfunction in pupil, 208–212, 210–211t
Sympathetic innervation, 206–207, 206f
Sympathetic nervous system, 557–558
Symptomatic myoclonus, 473
Synkinetic movements, 334
Syringomyelia, 107
Systolic blood pressure, 623
Tabes dorsalis, 108
Tardive dyskinesia, 461
Tardy ulnar nerve palsy, 40
Tarsal tunnel, 56, 59
Task-specific tremor, 478
TAT (tibialis anterior tendon), 60
Tear secretion, abnormalities of, 330–331
Tectocerebellar tract, 406
Temperature regulation. See under Hypothalamus and pituitary gland
Temporal field defects, 145
Temporal lobe, 493
hemorrhages, 588
Temporal lobectomy, 129
Tennis dystonia, 469
Teres minor paresis, 31
Terson syndrome, 592
Tethered spinal cord, 118
Thalamic amnesia, 443
Thalamic astasia, 445
Thalamic hemorrhage. See under Cerebral hemorrhage syndromes
Thalamic infraction syndromes, 581–582, 582f
Thalamic lesions, 245, 247
Thalamic nuclei, 437–438f
Thalamic structures, 230
Thalamogeniculate territory of thalamus, 441
Thalamus
clinical manifestations of, 442
alertness, disturbances of, 442–443
autonomic disturbances, 443
complex sensorimotor functions, disturbances of, 448
executive function, disturbances of, 448–449
memory disturbances, 443–444
motor disturbances, 445–447
ocular motility, disturbances of, 447–448
sensory disturbances, 444–445
Index

Thalamus (Continued)
functional anatomy of, 435–439, 436t
ischemic thalamic lesions, localization of, 439
paramedian territory, 440–441
posterior choroidal arteries, 441–442
thalamogeniculate territory, 441
tuberothalamic territory, 441
topographic localization of
anterior thalamic region, 449
medial thalamic region, 449
posterior region, 449
ventrolateral thalamic region, 449
vascular supply of, 439, 439f
Third lumbar segment, lesions of, 117
Third nerve palsies (TNP), 186t
Thoracic outlet syndrome
neuropathic signs and symptoms, 81
vascular signs and symptoms, 80–81
Thoracic roots, lesions affecting
T1 lesions, 93
T2–T12 nerves, 93–94
Thoracic segments, lesions of, 116–117
Thoracodorsal nerve (C6–C8), 29–30
Thunderclap headache, 616
Thyroid (Graves') ophthalmopathy, 180, 181t
Tibial foot, 57
Tibial nerve
lesions of
within foot, 59
popliteal fossa, 59
tarsal tunnel, 59
See also under Sciatic nerve
Tibialis anterior muscles, 56
Tibialis anterior tendon (TAT), 60
Tibialis posterior muscles, 56
Tics, 475
and habit spasms, 335
of Tourette syndrome, 476
Tinel's sign, 36, 38, 46
Tinnitus, 345, 346, 347
Toilet seat sciatic neuropathy, 58
Tolosa–Hunt syndrome, 203
Tongue movements, abnormal, 316
Tongue numbness, 316
Tongue protrusion dystonia, 469
Tonic pupil
clinical features of, 213f
etiologies of, 214f
Tornado epilepsy, 355
Torsional nystagmus, 266, 390
Torticollis, 466
blepharospasm, 469
musician's dystonia, 468–469
spasmodic dysphonia, 469–470
writer’s cramp, 468–469
yips, 468–469
Total plexus paralysis, 78–79
Tourette syndrome, 250
Tourniquet paralysis, 45
Transcortical motor aphasia, 538
Transcortical sensory aphasia, 525–526
Transient ischemic attacks (TIA), 354, 571, 571t
Transentorial herniation, lateral, 617f, 618f
Transverse colli nerves, 73, 74f
Transverse myelopathy. See Complete spinal cord
transaction
Trapezius muscle, 370, 371
Trapezius paresis, unilateral, 371
Trauma, 31, 76, 263, 410, 446, 476–478, 615
Trendelenburg's sign, 53
Triad neuropathy, 34
Triceps muscles (C6–C8), 43
Trigeminal (gasserian) ganglia, 305
Trigeminal nerve anatomy of
motor portion, 305, 306f
sensory portion, 305–308, 307f, 309f
clinical evaluation of
motor evaluation, 309–310
reflex evaluation, 310
sensory evaluation, 308–309
jaw drop, 316
localization of lesions
cavernous sinus syndrome, 314
gasserian ganglion, 313–314
Gradenigo’s syndrome, 314
nuclear lesions, 310–312
preganglionic trigeminal nerve roots, 312–313
Raeder’s paratrigeminal syndrome, 314
superior orbital fissure syndrome, 314
supranuclear lesions, 310
mandibular division of, 308, 309f, 315
maxillary division of, 308, 308f, 314
ophthalmic division of, 313
peripheral branches of, 314–316
skin areas, 307f
Trigeminal neuralgia, 312, 313
Trigeminal sensory neuropathy, 310
Trigeminocerebellar tract, 405, 406
Trismus, 309
Trochlear nerve, 193–198, 194f, 195t, 196t
excyclotropia, 195–196
head tilt, 196
incomitant hypertropia, 195
Trombone tongue, 380
Tropheryma whippelii, 335
Tropia, 175, 176
Truncal ataxia, 109
Tuberothalamic territory of thalamus, 441
Tullio phenomenon, 271
Tumarkin's otolithic catastrophe, 353
Uhthoff's symptom, 161
Ulnar flexion
maneuver, 40
paralysis of, 39
Ulnar nerve (C7–T1), 38f
anatomy
abductor digitii minimi, 39
adductor pollicis, 39
vascular disorders of spinal cord. See under spinal cord
vascular supply of spinal cord, 102f
extraspinal system, 102–103
intermediate (midthoracic) region, 103
lower (thoracolumbosacral) region, 103
upper (cervicothoracic) region, 103
intraspinal system, 103
vascular thoracic outlet syndrome, 80–81
vasomotor, 25
vegetative state, 604
venous spinal cord infarction, 111, 112t
venous thrombosis, 111
ventral anterior nucleus, 437
ventral corticospinal tract, 101
ventral cranial nerve III fascicular syndrome, 397
ventral gray commissure, 100
ventral horn, 99
ventral median fissure, 99
ventral pontine syndromes. See under pontine syndromes, classification of
ventral posterior nuclear group, 435
ventral spinocerebellar tract, 406
ventral spinothalamic tract, 101
ventral tegmental tract (VTT), 268, 269
ventral white commissures, 100
ventricular arrhythmias, 563
ventrolateral sulcus, 99
ventrolateral thalamic region of thalamus, 449
vernal's syndrome. See jugular foramen syndrome
vertebral artery, 386
vertebral pain, 114
vertebrobasilar artery aneurysms, 591–592
vertebrobasilar artery syndromes, 576–580
vertical conjugate gaze palsy, 247–251
hemispheric lesions, 247
midbrain lesions, 247, 248t
oculogyric crisis, 250–251, 251t
thalamic lesions, 247
vertical diplopia, 180
vertical disconjugate eye oscillations, 260
vertical dysconjugate gaze palsies, 255
vertical gaze abnormalities of
corneal reflex, 613–615
impairment, 251t
vertical neural integrator, 226
vertical ocular myoclonus, 612
vertigo
central causes of, 353
dizziness and. See under vestibulocochlear nerve
localization of lesions causing, 349
peripheral causes of, 350
secondary to middle ear disease, 353
secondary to trauma, 353
secondary to viral infections, 353
and vestibular function. See under vestibulocochlear nerve
vesper's curse, 96
vestibular dysfunction testing, 219–220
vestibular epilepsy, 355
vestibular imbalance, dynamic, 220
flexor carpi ulnaris, 39
flexor digitii minimi, 39
flexor digitorum profundus III and IV, 39
flexor pollicis brevis, deep head of, 39
interosseus muscles, 39
lumbricals iii and iv, 39
opponens digitii minimi, 39
palmaris brevis, 39
nerve lesions
of dorsal cutaneous branch, 42, 42f
above elbow, 39–40
at elbow, 40–41
in forearm, 41
in hand, 41
of palmar and dorsal digital branches, 42
pseudounar nerve palsy, 42–43
at wrist, 41
uncinate bundle, 406
unilateral anhidrosis, 425
unilateral icthal mosaic, 216
unilateral inattention. See under Attention disturbances
unilateral mediodorsal in falls, 394
unilateral mediocentra, 394
unilateral mediolateral basal in falls, 394
unilateral visual inattention, 145
universal dissociative anesthesia syndrome, 395
upbeat nystagmus (UBN), 268, 269t, 387
etiologies of, 269f
uppholsterer's posterior interosseus neuropathy, 45
upper cervical cord, lesions of, 115
upper lid retraction, bilateral, 266
upper motor neuron lesions, bilateral, 325
upper plexus paralysis, 79
urethral reflex loop, 120
urine, storage of, 120, 120f
ultricular pathways, 219f
vagal lesions, 364
vagal metastasis, syncope from, 366
vagoglossopharyngeal neuralgia, 363
vagus nerve
anatomy of, 363t, 363–364
clinical evaluation
motor function, 364
reflex function, 365
sensory function, 364–365
localization of lesions
brainstem, lesions within, 365
glossopharyngeal nerve, syncope from, 366
nuclear lesions, 365
posterior fossa lesions, 365
recurrent laryngeal nerve, 365–366
superior laryngeal nerve, 365
subnuclear lesions, 365
vagal metastasis, syncope from, 366
vagus nerve proper, lesions affecting, 365
proper, lesions affecting, 365
valsava maneuver, 270, 271
variant ataxia-telangiectasia, 237
vascular claudications, 96t
Vestibular neuronitis, acute, 352
Vestibular nuclei, 344
Vestibular nystagmus, 259, 264
Vestibular pathways, 218, 218f
Vestibulo-ocular reflex (VOR), 219, 220
Vestibulocerebellar tract, 405
Vestibulocerebellum, 405
Vestibulocochlear nerve
  auditory pathways, 341–343, 342f
  first-order neurons, 341
  fourth-order neurons, 343
  second-order neurons, 341
  third-order neurons, 341, 342f
benign paroxysmal positioning vertigo, 350–351
central nervous system disorders
  benign paroxysmal vertigo of childhood, 355
  familial periodic ataxia, 355
  central vestibular syndrome, vascular causes of, 353–354
cerebellopontine angle tumors, 355
dizziness and vertigo, systemic causes of cardiovascular disorders, 355
drugs, 355
  hematologic disorders, 355
  hyperventilation syndrome, 355
  hypoglycemia, 355
  hypothyroidism, 355
  Mal de debarquement (mal de mer), 356
  multiple sensory deficits, 355
  ocular disorders, 355–356
  psychiatric disorders, 356
  vasculitides, 355
Ménière’s disease, 352–353
multiple sclerosis, 354–355
peripheral vestibulopathy, 351–352
  acute labyrinthitis, 352
  acute vestibular neuritis, 352
  disabling positional vertigo, 352
sensory neural deafness
  Rinne’s test, 346
  Schwabach’s test, 346
  Weber’s test, 345–346
sensory neural deafness, localization of lesions causing brainstem lesions, 348–349
cerebellopontine angle syndrome, 349
cerebral lesions, 348
  peripheral nerve lesions, 349
vertigo
  central causes of vertigo, 353
  localization of lesions causing, 349
  peripheral causes of vertigo, 350
  secondary to middle ear disease, 353
  secondary to trauma, 353
  secondary to viral infections, 353
vestigo and vestibular function
  associated auditory symptoms, 346–347
  central neurologic dysfunction, 347
  characteristics of symptoms, 346
  etiologic search, 347–348
vestibular epilepsy, 355
vestibular system, 343
cerebellum, 344
  lateral vestibulospinal tract, 344
  medial longitudinal fasciculus, 344
  medial vestibulospinal tract, 344
  reticular formation, 344
Wernicke’s encephalopathy, 355
Vestibular ataxia, 19
Vestibulocerebellum, 20
Vestibulocerebellar pathways, 218f
Vestibulocular reflex (VOR) disorders, 353
  labyrinth and vestibular nucleus, 217
  medial longitudinal fasciculus, 218
  ocular motor nuclei, 218
vestibular pathways, 218, 218f
Vestibulospinal tract of spinal cord, 102
Vibration-induced median neuropathy, 36–37
Vidian nerve, 323
Vision.
  See under Sensory disturbances (in cerebral hemispheres)
  Visual acuity, 142
  impaired, 429
  Visual agnosia
    apperceptive, 516
    associative, 516
    cerebral achromatopsia, 516
    color agnosia, 516–517
    landmark agnosia, 518
    prosopagnosia, 517–518, 517f
    visual simultanagnosia, 518
  Visual field defects, 398, 429
    localization of
      bilateral homonymous hemianopia, 156
      bilateral occipital lobe lesions, 155
      bilateral ring defects, 148
      binasal hemianopia, 151
      bilateral occipital lobe lesions, 155
      bilateral ring defects, 148
      central neurologic dysfunction, 347
      characteristics of symptoms, 346
      etiologic search, 347–348
vestibular epilepsy, 355
vestibular system, 343
  cerebellum, 344
  lateral vestibulospinal tract, 344
  medial longitudinal fasciculus, 344
  medial vestibulospinal tract, 344
  reticular formation, 344
Wernicke’s encephalopathy, 355
Vestibular ataxia, 19
Vestibulocerebellum, 20
Vestibulocerebellar pathways, 218f
Vestibulocular reflex (VOR) disorders, 353
  labyrinth and vestibular nucleus, 217
  medial longitudinal fasciculus, 218
  ocular motor nuclei, 218
vestibular pathways, 218, 218f
Vestibulospinal tract of spinal cord, 102
Vibration-induced median neuropathy, 36–37
Vidian nerve, 323
Vision.
  See under Sensory disturbances (in cerebral hemispheres)
  Visual acuity, 142
  impaired, 429
  Visual agnosia
    apperceptive, 516
    associative, 516
    cerebral achromatopsia, 516
    color agnosia, 516–517
    landmark agnosia, 518
    prosopagnosia, 517–518, 517f
    visual simultanagnosia, 518
  Visual field defects, 398, 429
    localization of
      bilateral homonymous hemianopia, 156
      bilateral occipital lobe lesions, 155
      bilateral ring defects, 148
      binasal hemianopia, 151
      bilateral occipital lobe lesions, 155
      bilateral ring defects, 148
      central neurologic dysfunction, 347
      characteristics of symptoms, 346
      etiologic search, 347–348
Visual pathways
        anatomy of
        optic chiasm, 135–138
        optic nerves, 135–138
        optic radiations, 139, 139f
        optic tracts and lateral geniculate bodies, 135f, 138–139
        retina, 133–135, 134f, 135f
        vascular supply of, 140–141
        visual cortex and visual association areas, 140
        localization of lesions
        pupillary light reflex, 159–160, 160t
        retina and optic nerve, 157–159, 158t
        signs and symptoms in, 165–166t
        visual perception, 142–144
        See also Optic neuropathy; Visual field defects

Visual perception
        color perception, 142–143
        contrast sensitivity, 142–143
        visual acuity, 142
        visual fields, 143–144

Visual simultanagnosia, 518

Visual stabilization nystagmus, 259

Vitamin B12 deficiency, 107

Vitamin E deficiency, 253

Voiding, 120, 121f

Voiding dysfunction, 109

Volitional facial paresis, 325

Voluntary nystagmus, 236

Voluntary sphincter, 122

Waardenburg syndrome, 329

Waddling gait, 19

Wall eyed-bilateral internuclear ophthalmoplegia
        (WEBINO) syndrome, 253

Wallenberg syndrome, 311, 354, 580
        ocular motor abnormalities, 390t
        See also Lateral medullary syndrome

Wartenberg’s syndrome. See Superficial branch of radial nerve

Water balance, disturbances of. See under Hypothalamus
        and pituitary gland

Weakness of divergence, 242

Weber syndrome, 188. See also Ventral cranial nerve III
        fascicular syndrome

Weber’s test, 345–346

Wemicke encephalopathy, 204, 355

Wemicke’s aphasia, 522

Whipple disease, 249, 262

White matter lesions, 502

Willbrand’s knee, 136, 138, 138f, 148

Wilson disease, 239, 477

Windmill nystagmus, 263

Windmill pitcher’s radial neuropathy, 44, 45

Winged scapula, 28

Woodhouse sakati syndrome, 466

Word-selection anomia, 523

Wrist drop, 44

Wrist, nerve lesions at, 41

Writer’s cramp, 468–469

Yips, 468–469

Yoga foot drop, 60

Yoga neuropathy, 58

Zone of lissauer, 100

Zoster sine herpete, 326